

E. Y. Holt, Jr.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950



LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950



UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE
WASHINGTON : 1950

THE SECRETARY OF THE NAVY,
Washington, 7 February 1950.

LETTER OF PROMULGATION

The Landing Party Manual, United States Navy, 1950, contains instructions for Naval landing parties and emergency ground defense force units and it is issued for the use and guidance of the U. S. Naval Service. It is effective upon receipt and supersedes the publication Landing Force Manual, United States Navy, 1938, and all subsequent changes thereto.

FRANCIS P. MATHEWS.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Preface.

Chapter 1. INTRODUCTION.

2. DRILL.

3. CEREMONIES.

4. EQUIPMENT AND UNIFORMS.

5. INTERIOR GUARD DUTY.

6. SHELTER.

7. FIELD SANITATION, PERSONAL HYGIENE, AND FIRST AID.

8. MARCHES, SECURITY ON THE MARCH, AND OUTPOSTS.

9. BASIC COMBAT TECHNIQUES.

10. COMBAT PRINCIPLES.

11. SPECIAL OPERATIONS.

12. PHYSICAL DRILL.

13. SMALL ARMS MARKSMANSHIP.

14. GLOSSARY.

PREFACE

The Landing Party Manual is published in fourteen chapters to facilitate changes and to provide for issue of separate chapters to organizations not requiring the complete publication.

The Navy acknowledges the courtesy of the Army and Marine Corps for authorizing the use of various publications in the preparation of this manual.

Record of changes

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY, 1950

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

	<i>Par.</i>	<i>Page</i>
Section I. SCOPE OF MANUAL.....	1-1	3
II. ORGANIZATION OF NAVAL LANDING PARTY.....	1-2	4
III. ORGANIZATION OF UNITS WITHIN NAVAL LANDING PARTY.....	1-11	6

SECTION I

SCOPE OF MANUAL

Scope of manual.....	Par. 1-1	Page 3
----------------------	----------	--------

1-1 SCOPE OF MANUAL.—*a.* The drills and instructions set forth in this manual are intended as a guide for the training and operations of landing parties organized by units afloat and emergency ground defense force units organized at naval shore establishments. Where instructions refer to units afloat or naval landing parties, it is intended that such instructions be utilized by shore stations and naval emergency ground defense forces (NEGDF) as applicable.

b. (1) Modern warfare requires highly trained units for successful operations against a major enemy force. Neither the time, facilities, nor opportunity are ordinarily available for gathering together several ship's landing parties for the specialized training of a combat unit that is necessary for a major ground force operation.

(2) The conduct of military operations of the nature usually associated with modern amphibious operations or major land warfare is beyond the scope of this manual. Ground force operations are secondary duties for Naval personnel; however, a reasonable state of readiness for such action should be maintained.

c. The drills, ceremonies, combat principles, tactics and techniques herein described have

been prepared to assist ships' landing parties to accomplish the organization and training necessary to be in readiness for:

- (1) Limited ground force operations.
- (2) Military police duties during disturbances.
- (3) Parades and ceremonies.

d. The scope of *b* (1) above has been generally confined to:

- (1) Emergencies requiring weapons no larger than small arms,
- (2) Emergencies requiring equipment limited to that which can be reasonably carried on the person or supplied from other equipment and stores normally available, and
- (3) Duration of the operation approximately 1 week.

e. Detailed information contained in other publications which are issued by or are available to the naval service has been omitted from this manual, except by reference. In general, training requirements are adequately covered in this manual. Detailed instructions and more extensive training when required may be supplemented by applicable publications indicated in the list of Marine Corps training publications, list and index of Army publications and other technical publications promulgated by offices and bureaus of the Navy Department.

SECTION II

ORGANIZATION OF NAVAL LANDING PARTY

	Par.	Page
General.....	1-2	4
Ship's landing party.....	1-3	4
Naval ground force organization.....	1-4	4
Equipment and ammunition.....	1-5	5
Basis of organization.....	1-6	5
Priority of personnel.....	1-7	5
Training.....	1-8	5
Use of marines.....	1-9	5
Ratings and ranks.....	1-10	5

DE, DM, DMS,

CM..... One rifle platoon less one squad.

c. Division flagships of BB, CVB, CV, CVL, CA, CLC and CL classes are required to organize battalion headquarters companies for battalions formed by their divisions in addition to the regular ship's landing party. (See paragraph 1-15c).

d. A company headquarters will be organized by DD, DE, DM, and DMS Division flagships for companies formed by their divisions. This will be in addition to the ship's regular landing party and be organized in accordance with paragraph 1-14c.

e. Auxiliaries are not required to form units of the naval landing party organizations. However, when participating in ceremonies, the organizations prescribed in this chapter may be followed.

1-4 NAVAL GROUND FORCE ORGANIZATION.—*a.* A naval landing party for a specific task may consist of naval personnel from one or more ships organized, equipped and capable of ground force operation under command of the senior officer present or a commander assigned by appropriate authority.

b. A naval emergency ground defense force (NEGDF) may consist of naval personnel from one or more shore establishments or a combination of shore base personnel and landing parties from units afloat, organized, equipped, and capable of ground force actions under command of the senior officer present or a commander assigned by appropriate authority.

c. Service organization.—The organization and equipment prescribed herein will indicate the desired standard for ship, division, force and fleet naval landing party.

d. Parade organization.—When a landing party is required to take part in a parade or ceremony, the organization of personnel in

1-2 GENERAL.—*a.* Each ship (for which the organization is specified in 1-3b below), division, force, and fleet shall maintain a permanently organized naval landing party consisting of headquarters, rifle, machine gun, and other units as prescribed by the force or fleet commander. Shore stations will maintain naval emergency ground defense force (NEGDF) organizations consisting of headquarters, rifle and other units as prescribed by the responsible naval authority.

b. The organization will follow the pattern outlined herein, and flexibility to meet the requirements of a specific task will be provided by deletion or addition of an entire element (squad, platoon, etc.).

1-3 SHIP'S LANDING PARTY.—*a.* The ship's landing party varies in size and composition according to the type of ship. It is mandatory that smaller ships follow their designated organization closely in order that the units of several ships or shore stations may be banded together to form a larger ground force with balanced subordinate units of known personnel and weapon strength.

b. Combatant ships are required to maintain a naval landing party organization as follows:

- BB, CVB, CV..... One rifle company.
- CVL, CA, CL, CLC..... One rifle company less one rifle platoon.
- CLAA, CLK..... One rifle company less one rifle platoon and machine gun platoon.
- DD..... One rifle platoon.

units should remain the same as the service organization but equipment carried may be modified to conform to the nature of the ceremony.

1-5 EQUIPMENT AND AMMUNITION.—*a.* Since it is intended that the naval landing party will not be employed beyond the scope of "limited ground force operations" during an emergency, the equipment and weapons prescribed are limited to light infantry weapons and that equipment which can be carried on the person.

b. For equipment and weapons authorized, see the current NAVORD List of Small Arms and Infantry Equipment for Naval Ships and Stations.

c. For ammunition authorized, see the current NAVORD List of Small Arms Ammunition Allowances for All Ships and Stations.

d. Many items of equipment and supplies required for specific operations must be provided from that which is normally stocked for performance of primary missions.

e. Naval emergency ground defense force units will be based upon the same tables of organization and strengths as those prescribed herein except that machine gun units will be omitted and M-1 rifles will be substituted for automatic rifles in the rifle squads.

1-6 BASIS OF ORGANIZATION.—The organization of the various units described in this manual are based on the organization of similar Marine Corps units.

1-7 PRIORITY OF PERSONNEL.—*a.* At the discretion of the commanding officer, the landing party personnel requirements from any

ship should not be taken from personnel normally required for:

(1) Split plant operation of the engineering department on a watch-and-watch basis.

(2) The operation of all aircraft.

(3) The operation of one turret.

(4) The operation of all antiaircraft batteries.

(5) The operation of all control stations.

(6) Manning of CIC and radar on a watch-in-three basis.

b. The size of naval emergency ground defense force units at shore stations will be limited by the maximum number of personnel that actually can be made available on an additional duty basis to accomplish the necessary training and be capable of accomplishing the tasks required.

1-8 TRAINING.—Periodic training is necessary to keep the naval landing party organization in a state of readiness for any of its probable tasks. Training should be continuous and integrated with primary employment schedules. An annual schedule should be accomplished which will produce the readiness required to accomplish the missions specified in the emergency plans.

1-9 USE OF MARINES.—Marines will compose the entire landing party whenever the number present is adequate. In a mixed force the special training of Marine officers and men will be utilized to the greatest practicable extent to increase the efficiency of the force.

1-10 RATING AND RANKS.—Throughout this manual ratings and ranks of various members of the units discussed are given as a guide to show relative importance of the various offices and as such are not mandatory.

SECTION III

ORGANIZATION OF UNITS WITHIN NAVAL LANDING PARTY

	Par.	Page
Organization of the rifle squad.....	1-11	6
Organization of the rifle platoon.....	1-12	6
Organization of the machine gun platoon..	1-13	7
Organization of the rifle company.....	1-14	7
Organization of the infantry battalion...	1-15	8
Organization of the regiment.....	1-16	11
Tables of organization.....	1-17	12

1-11 ORGANIZATION OF THE RIFLE SQUAD.—A squad at normal strength comprises a petty officer (squad) leader, 3 fire team leaders, and 9 nonrated men, a total of 13.

1-12 ORGANIZATION OF THE RIFLE PLATOON.—*a.* The rifle platoon at normal strength consists of platoon headquarters and 3 rifle squads, a total of 1 officer and 44 enlisted.

b. The platoon headquarters is composed of:
 1 lieutenant (jg) or ensign—platoon leader.
 1 petty officer, second class—platoon chief (second in command).
 1 petty officer, third class—platoon guide.
 3 nonrated men—messengers.

c. The platoon, once organized, should be maintained as a platoon until its strength is reduced below two squads.

d. Platoons organized for independent missions, or a ship's landing party the size of a platoon, should include such of the following as are considered necessary for contemplated operations:

(1) Medical officer or hospital corpsman and litter bearers as required.

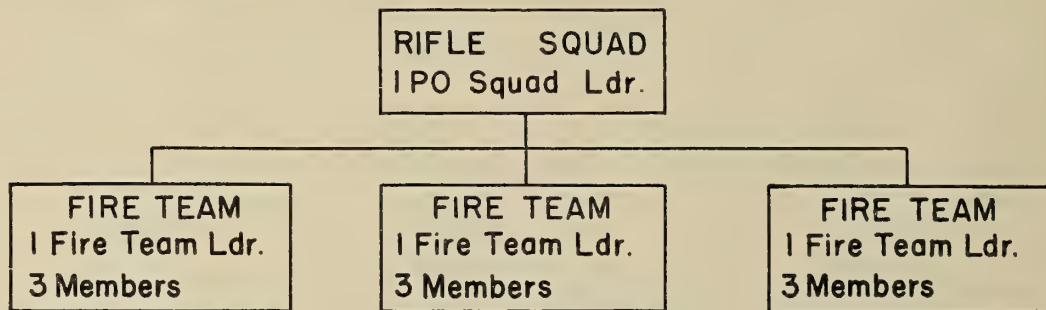


FIGURE 1.—Organization, the rifle squad.

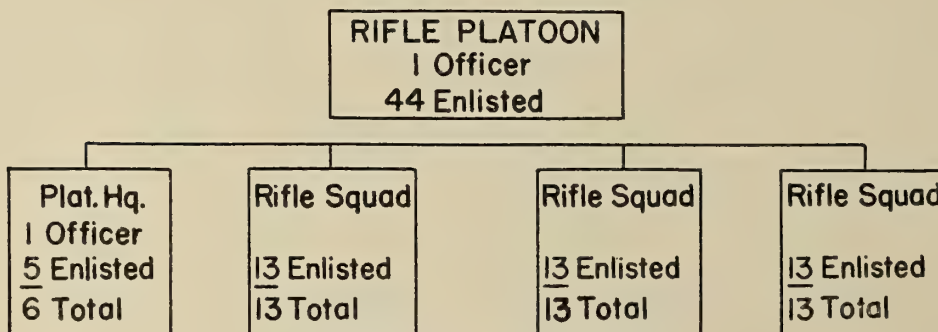


FIGURE 2.—Organization, the rifle platoon.

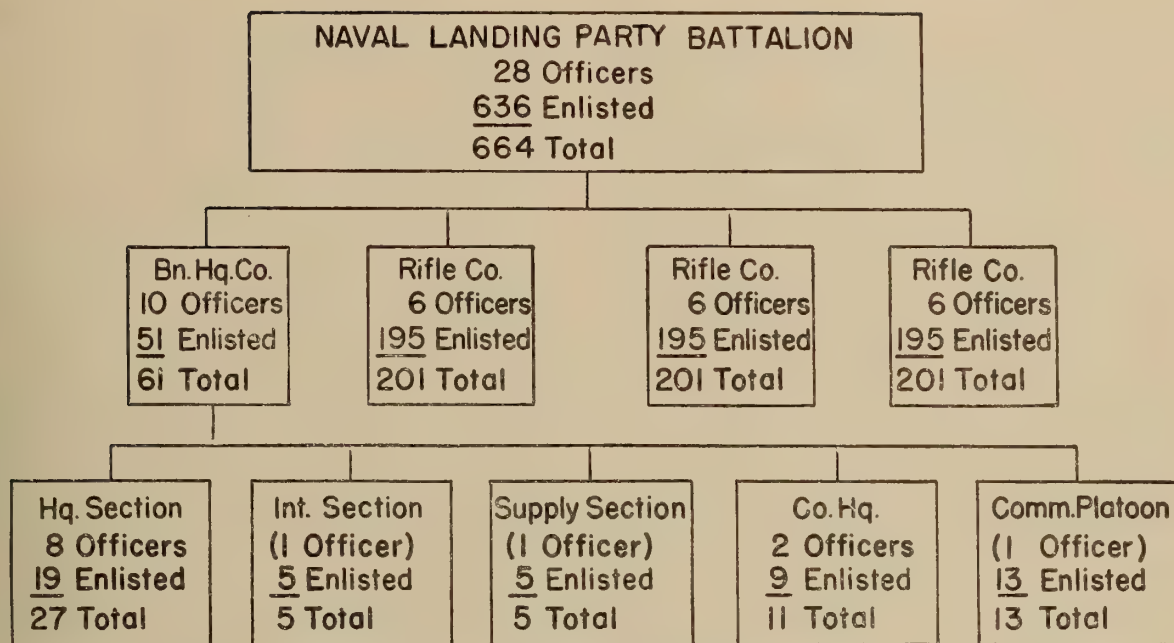


FIGURE 3.—Organization, the machine gun platoon.

(2) A supply group of one storekeeper, one ship's cook (to handle emergency rations), and an "other duty" detail of two men assigned to platoon headquarters.

(3) One machine gun section.

(4) A signaller as one of the platoon messengers.

1-13 ORGANIZATION OF THE MACHINE GUN PLATOON.—*a.* The machine gun platoon at normal strength is composed of 1 officer and 55 enlisted. The platoon is composed of platoon headquarters and 3 sections.

b. The platoon headquarters is composed of:

- 1 lieutenant (jg) or ensign—platoon leader.
- 1 petty officer, first class—platoon chief (second in command).
- 3 nonrated men—(1 ammunition man, 2 messengers).

c. Each section is composed of a section headquarters and two squads. Each section headquarters is composed of one petty officer third class as section leader.

d. When reinforcing other units for special missions, the section should be the smallest reinforcing element of the platoon.

1-14 ORGANIZATION OF THE RIFLE COMPANY.—*a.* The rifle company at normal

strength is composed of company headquarters, 3 rifle platoons, and 1 machine gun platoon, a total of 6 officers and 195 enlisted.

b. The initial organization of the company should be maintained as far as practical. If any platoon within a company is reduced below two squads, it is either increased to the required number by transfers from other platoons, or it is broken up and its members assigned to other platoons. A company reduced in strength to less than four squads should be organized as a single platoon, but retains the company designation.

c. Company headquarters.—The company headquarters organized as the headquarters section is composed of two officers and eight enlisted as follows:

- 1 lieutenant, USN—company commander.
- 1 lt. (jg) or ensign—executive officer.
- 1 chief petty officer—company CPO (first sergeant).
- 1 petty officer, first class—infantry chief.
- 1 petty officer, second class—pharmacist mate.
- 1 petty officer, third class—storekeeper.
- 1 nonrated man—signaller.
- 1 nonrated man—small-arms gunner's mate.
- 2 nonrated men—messengers.

d. A company organized for independent missions, or a ship's landing party the size of a company on an independent mission should include in its company headquarters such of the following as are considered necessary for the contemplated operation:

(1) Medical section of one medical officer or additional corpsmen and litter bearers from company personnel as required.

(2) Ammunition and ration party consisting of two nonrated men per platoon.

(3) Artificers.

1-15 ORGANIZATION OF THE INFANTRY BATTALION.—*a.* A naval landing party battalion at normal strength is composed of three rifle companies and a headquarters com-

pany. The organization of a naval landing force battalion should be modified as necessary to enable the battalion to best perform its anticipated mission. Suitable modifications in battalion organization might include:

(1) Reducing rifle companies to two.

(2) Omitting the machine gun platoons in companies.

(3) Reducing or increasing personnel in the battalion headquarters company.

b. For ceremonies and parades, the machine gun platoon in the rifle companies may parade as a rifle platoon. Band personnel may be added to battalion headquarters company for ceremonies.

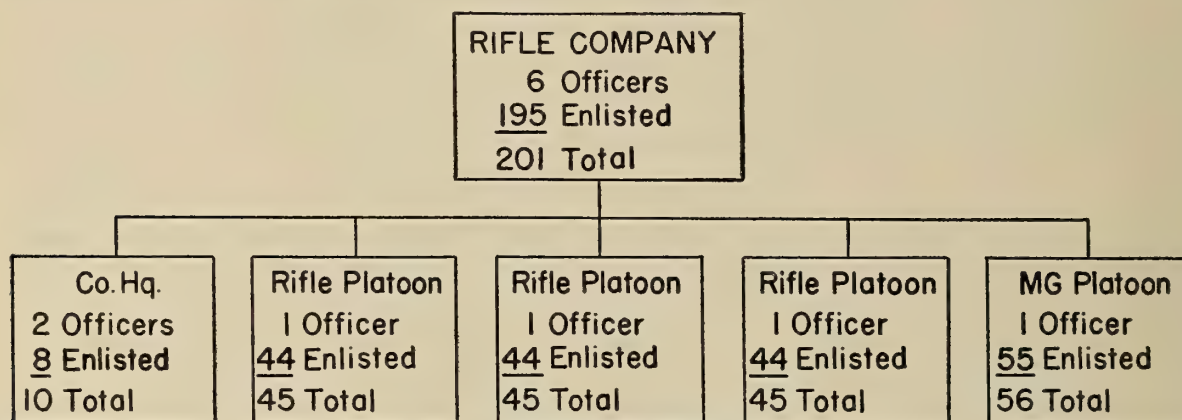


FIGURE 4.—Organization, the rifle company.

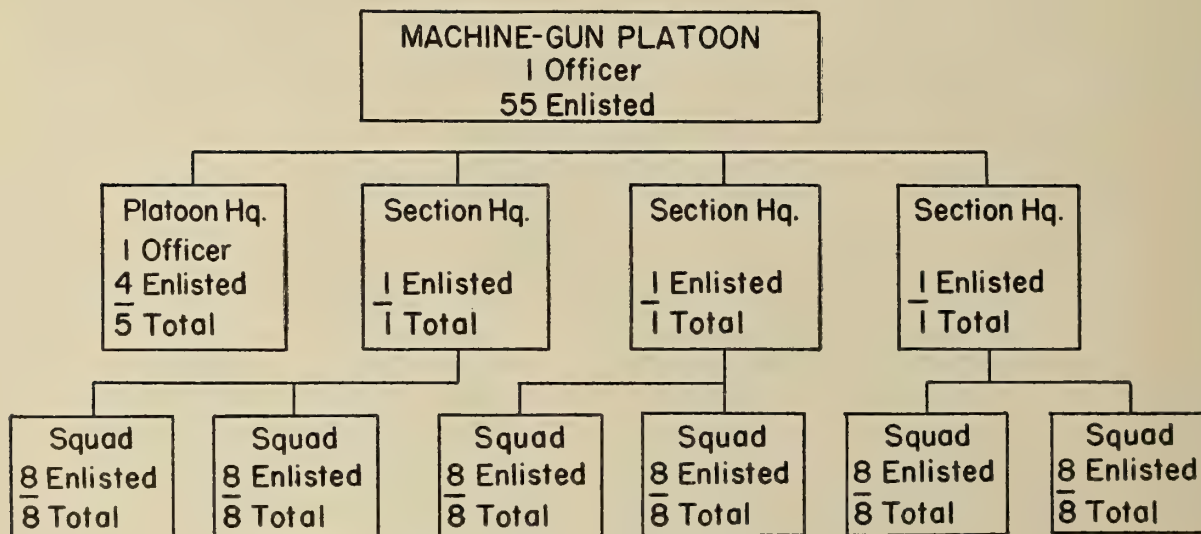


FIGURE 5.—Organization, naval landing party battalion.

c. The battalion headquarters company furnishes the personnel and equipment necessary to the battalion commander for the proper execution of his command and administrative functions, and such other personnel as will enable the battalion to be self-contained. The headquarters company is broken down into subdivisions. The composition of each subdivision as shown below should be followed as a guide. In some cases two or more functions may be filled by one officer.

(1) *Headquarters section*.—Provides for the command, supply, and administration of the battalion as a whole. It comprises:

- 1 commander—battalion commander.
- 1 lt. commander—executive officer.

The commissioned and enlisted staff. (See par. 1-15e.)

(2) *Company headquarters*.—Provides for the command, supply, and administration of the battalion headquarters company only. It is composed of:

- 1 lieutenant—company commander.
- 1 lt. (jg) or ensign—company executive officer who also acts as battalion chemical officer.
- 1 chief petty officer—infantry chief and company chief petty officer.
- 1 petty officer, first class—Yeoman.
- 1 petty officer, third class—carpenter's mate.
- 2 nonrated men—buglers.
- 4 nonrated men—other duty.

(3) *Communication platoon*.—The communication platoon comprises a platoon headquarters, message center and messenger section, and radio, visual, and panel section.

(a) Platoon headquarters is composed of:

- 1 lt. (jg) or ensign—battalion communication officer, carried in complement of the battalion staff.
- 1 petty officer, first class—second in command. A signalman or radioman capable of coordinating the work of the sections.

(b) *Message center and messenger section*.—In general, a message center corresponds to a communication office aboard ship. As far as practical all outgoing messages are dispatched through it and all incoming messages are

received, recorded, and delivered by it. This section furnishes messengers to the battalion commander and staff as required. Additional messengers may be assigned from rifle companies. It is made up as follows:

- 1 petty officer, third class—communication yeoman in charge.
- 1 nonrated man—yeoman striker.
- 4 nonrated men—messengers.

(c) *Radio, visual, and panel section* made up as follows:

- 1 petty officer, third class—radioman in charge.
- 4 nonrated men—handle radio, visual, or panel duties as prescribed.

(4) *Supply section*.—This section, working for the supply officer on the battalion staff, is organized as follows:

- 1 petty officer, first class—assistant to the supply officer.
- 1 petty officer, third class—ammunition and ordnance.
- 3 nonrated men—other duty as prescribed by supply officer.

(5) *Intelligence section*.—Commanded by the battalion intelligence officer, carried in the complement of the battalion staff, composed as follows:

- 1 petty officer, second class—yeoman in charge.
- 1 nonrated man—yeoman striker (draftsman).
- 1 nonrated man—yeoman striker (intelligence clerk).
- 2 nonrated men—scouts and observers.

(6) *Medical section*.—The medical section is incorporated in the Headquarters section and is composed of 1 medical officer and 11 enlisted. Corpsmen may be prorated to the rifle companies, a portion retained to form the battalion aid station.

d. *Responsibility for training the battalion headquarters company*.—(1) The company commander is responsible for the general training of the company and for supervision of special and technical training.

(2) The responsibility for the special and technical training of each platoon and section is normally placed upon the officer under whom the platoon or section functions.

(3) Company training will include close-order drill.

e. The battalion staff.—The commissioned and enlisted staff of the battalion commander is as follows:

- 1 lieutenant commander—second in command; battalion executive officer.
- 1 lieutenant—operations officer.
- 1 lieutenant—supply officer.
- 1 lieutenant—medical officer.
- 1 lt. (jg) or ensign—adjutant.
- 1 lt (jg) or ensign—communication officer.
- 1 lt. (jg) or ensign—intelligence officer.
- 1 chief petty officer—battalion chief petty officer.
- 1 chief petty officer—chief commissary steward.
- 1 petty officer, first class—yeoman.
- 1 petty officer, second class—yeoman.
- 2 petty officers, third class—yeoman.
- 1 petty officer, third class—gunner's mate.
- 1 nonrated man—yeoman striker.

In addition to the above are one chief petty officer, six petty officers, and four hospital apprentices, which make up the battalion medical section.

f. Duties of the members of the battalion staff.—

(1) *Executive officer.*—In general, his position corresponds to that of an executive officer of a ship. He coordinates the work of the other staff members and is in command in the absence of the battalion commander.

(2) *Battalion adjutant.*—Responsible for staff functions relating to personnel. In addition he supervises:

- (a) Postal service.
- (b) Reports concerning, and handling of, prisoners of war and enemy civilians.
- (c) Strength and casualty reports, station bills and rosters, and other personnel statistics.
- (d) General regulations and routine administration which especially concern personnel, or routine not otherwise assigned to another staff section.

(3) *Intelligence officer.*—Responsible for the collection, classification, and evaluation of information concerning the enemy and the dissemination of the resultant intelligence. His primary function is to keep the commander informed with regard to the enemy's situation

and probable intentions. In combat, his section maintains one or more observation posts within his organization's zone of action or area. His duties also include employment of translators and interpreters and procurement and distribution of maps. He also keeps the commander informed with regard to disposition of friendly neighboring units.

(4) *Operations officer.*—Responsible, in general, for those functions which relate to organization, training, and operations. He arranges for coordination and employment in combat, of the combined elements. He performs the following:

(a) Prepares for, and supervises:

- 1. Training.
- 2. Tactical disposition of troops.
- 3. Security measures, reconnaissance, and liaison with adjacent units.

(b) Keeps himself informed with regard to:

- 1. Adaptability of terrain for combat operations.

- 2. Instructions, tactical plans, and operation orders received from higher or adjacent units.

(c) Prepares written operation orders, and after they are approved, is responsible for their timely delivery to the troops. Prepares estimates of the situation and plans for combat when required. Assists the organization commander in the preparation and issuance of oral operation orders.

(d) Keeps the war diary.

(5) *Supply officer.*—The supply officer is responsible, in general, with all matters relating to supply. His duties include the supervision of activities concerning:

- (a) Procurement, storage, and distribution of all supplies, including rations and ammunition.

- (b) Procurement of shelter and facilities, including their leasing, repair, maintenance, and disposition.

- (c) Construction of facilities relating to supply, shelter, and transportation.

- (d) Payment for damages or claims.

- (e) Payment for hired labor.

(6) *Communication officer.*—His duties include:

- (a) Command of the communications platoon, and responsibility for its technical training and functioning.

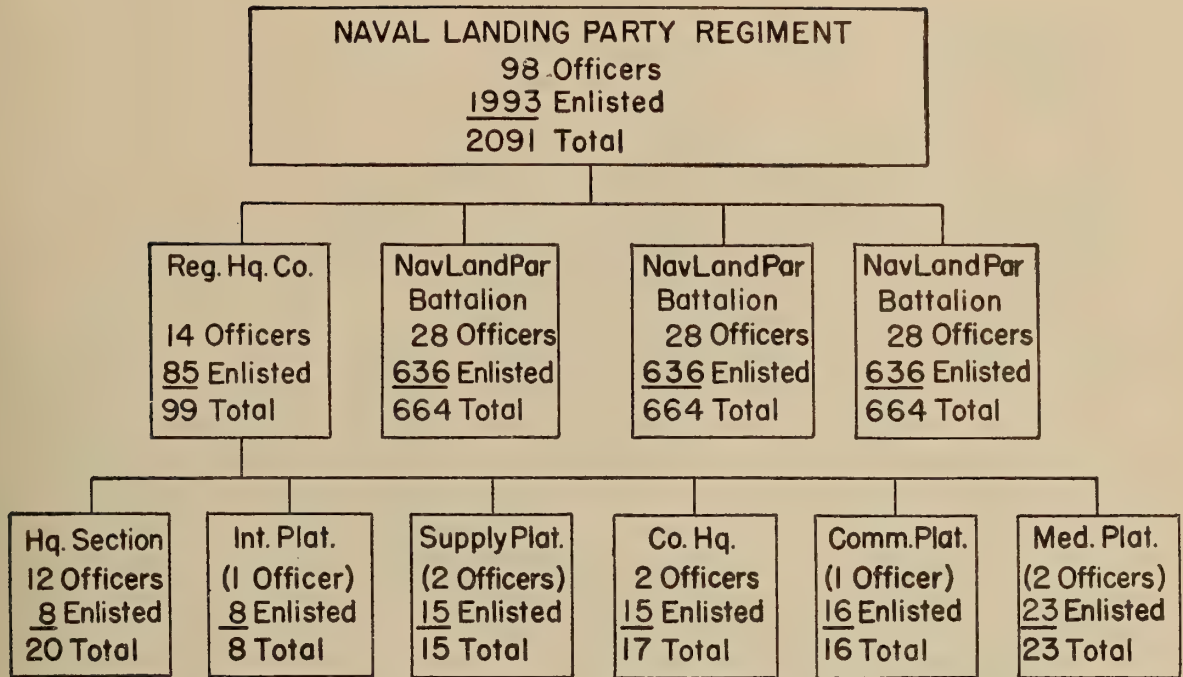


FIGURE 6.—Organization, naval landing party regiment.

(b) Establishment and operation of the signal communication system, including the message center.

(7) *Medical officer*.—His duties include:

(a) Technical advisor to the commander and the staff on all matters pertaining to the health and sanitation of the command, or occupied territory; the care and disposition of sick and wounded; the location and utilization of medical personnel; and the training of all troops in hygiene, sanitation, and first aid.

(b) Supply of medical and dental equipment and supplies.

(c) For additional duties see Medical Department Manual, U. S. Navy.

1-16 ORGANIZATION OF THE REGIMENT.—*a.* A naval landing party regiment at normal strength comprises a headquarters company and two or more battalions (usually three). As the regiment is envisaged to be formed only for parade purposes, no regimental service troops are shown.

b. The regimental headquarters company.—The organization, formation, functions, responsibility for training, duties of staff members, etc., of the regimental headquarters company are, in general, similar to those of the

battalion headquarters company. The principal differences include:

(1) The regiment is commanded by a captain, USN.

(2) The executive officer is a commander.

(3) The individual members of the regimental staff are of higher rank than the officers holding corresponding positions in a battalion.

(4) The regimental staff may include the following additional officers:

1 paymaster.

1 chaplain.

1 dental officer.

1 warrant officer, assistant to supply officer.

(5) The intelligence section, designated as a platoon, has three additional scouts and observers.

(6) The communication platoon has three additional messengers in the messenger section.

(7) The medical section, designated as a platoon, has 12 additional hospital corpsmen. The section establishes a regimental medical headquarters.

(8) The supply section, designated as a platoon, has 10 additional nonrated men.

(9) Company headquarters in the regimental headquarters company has an additional six nonrated men as other duty.

1-17 TABLES OF ORGANIZATION.—

- a. Rifle company naval landing party.
 b. Headquarters company naval landing party battalion.
 c. Naval landing party battalion.

RIFLE COMPANY NAVAL LANDING PARTY

	Co. Hq.	Machine-gun platoon					Rifle platoon			Pl. Total company Hq. MG and 3 rifle platoons
	Headquarters section	Platoon headquarters	Section		Total section Hq. & 2 squads	Total platoon Hq. & 3 sections	Platoon headquarters	Rifle squad	Total platoon (Hq. & 3 squads)	
Lieutenant.....	1									1
Commanding officer.....	(1)P									
Lieutenant(jg) or ensign.....	1	1				1	1		1	5
Executive officer.....	(1)c									
Platoon commander.....		(1)c					(1)c			
Total Commissioned.....	2	1				1	1		1	6
Chief petty officer.....	1 c									1
Petty officer, first class.....	1	1				1				2
Infantry chief.....	(1)c									
Platoon chief, machine gun..		(1)c								
Petty officer, second class.....	1						1		1	4
Platoon chief, rifle.....							(1)c			
*Pharmacist's mate.....	(1)									

*Pistol, .45 caliber stocked for defensive use.

	Co. Hq.	Machine-gun platoon					Rifle platoon			Pl. Total company Hq. MG and 3 rifle platoons
	Headquarters section	Platoon headquarters	Section			Total platoon Hq. & 3 sections	Platoon headquarters	Rifle squad	Total platoon (Hq. & 3 squads)	
			Section head- quarters	Machine-gun squad	Total section Hq. & 2 squads					
Petty officer, third class.....	1		1		1	3	1	1	4	16
Platoon guide, rifle.....							(1)			
Section leader, machine gun.....			(1)c							
Squad leader, rifle.....								(1)c		
Storekeeper.....	(1)c									
Seaman, first class.....	2	1		1	2	7		3	9	36
Fire team leader.....								(3)		
Machine-gun crewman (ammo.)..		(1)c								
Signalman, visual.....	(1)c									
Small-arms mechanic.....	(1)c									
Squad leader, machine gun.....				(1)c						
Seaman, first or second class.....	2	2		7	14	44	3	9	30	136
Gunner, machine.....				(1)p						
Gunner, machine, assistant.....				(1)p						
Machine-gun crewman (ammo.)..				(5)c						
Rifleman.....								(3)		
Rifleman messenger.....	(2)	(2)c					(3)			
Rifleman automatic.....								(3)b		
Rifleman automatic, assistant....								(3)		
Total Enlisted.....	8	4	1	8	17	55	5	13	44	195
Total Navy.....	10	5	1	8	17	56	6	13	45	201
Individual weapons										
c—Carbine, .30 caliber.....	6	5	1	6	13	44	2	1	5	65
p—Pistol, .45 caliber.....	2			2	4	12				14
b—Rifle, .30 cal., Brown. Au.....								3	9	27
All others—Rifle, .30 cal. M1.....	2						4	9	31	95

HEADQUARTERS COMPANY NAVAL LANDING PARTY BATTALION

	Headquarters section	Intelligence section	Supply section	Communications platoon			Company headquarters	Total company
				Platoon headquarters	Message cen. & mess. section	Radio, vis. and panel section		
Commander.....	1							1
Battalion commander.....	(1)p							
Lt. commander.....	1							1
Executive officer.....	(1)p							
Lieutenant.....	3						1	4
Operations officer.....	(1)p							
Company commander.....							(1)c	
Supply officer.....	(1)c							
*Medical officer.....	(1)							
Lieutenant (jg) or ensign.....	2			1			1	4
Adjutant.....	(1)c							
Communication officer.....				(1)C				
Intelligence officer.....	(1)c							
Co. exec.; chem. officer.....							(1)c	
Total Commissioned.....	7			1			2	10
Chief yeoman.....	1 c							1
Chief steward's mate.....	1 c							1
*Chief pharmacist's mate.....	1							1
Infantry chief.....							1 c	1
Petty officer, first class.....	3		1	1			1	6
Yeoman, first class.....	(1)c						(1)c	
*Pharmacist's mate, first class.....	(2)							
Radioman, first class.....				(1)c				
Storekeeper, first class.....			(1)c					
Petty officer, second class.....	3	1						4
Boatswain's mate.....		(1)c						
*Pharmacist's mate.....	(2)							
Yeoman.....	(1) c							

* Includes twelve pistols, .45 caliber, for defensive use.

	Headquarters section	Intelligence section	Supply section	Communications platoon			Company headquarters	Total company
				Platoon headquarters	Message cen. & mess. section	Radio, vis. and panel section		
Petty officer, third class.....	5		1		1	1	1	9
* Pharmacist's mate.....	(2)							
Carpenter.....							(1)	
Yeoman.....	(2)							
Message center.....					(1)			
Supply.....			(1)					
Radio.....						(1)c		
Small arms.....	(1)							
Seaman, first class.....	1	2	1	1	1		2	8
Clerk.....	(1)							
Code clerk.....					(1)c			
Draftsman.....		(1)						
Intelligence clerk.....		(1)						
Supply.....			(1)					
Radio—general.....				(1)c				
Bugler.....							(2)c	
Seaman, first or second class.....	4	2	2		4	4	4	20
Messenger.....					(4)			
Radio operator.....						(4)c		
Scout.....		(2)						
* Hospital apprentice.....	(4)							
Other duty.....			(2)c				(4)	
Total Enlisted.....	19	5	5	2	6	5	9	51
Total Navy.....	27	5	5	2	6	5	11	61
Individual weapons								
c—Carbine, .30 caliber.....	7	1	3	3	2	5	6	27
p—Pistol, .45 caliber.....	15							15
All others—Rifle, .30 caliber M1.....	4	4	2		4		5	19

*Includes twelve pistols, .45 caliber, for defensive use.

NAVAL LANDING PARTY BATTALION

	Headquarters company	Three rifle companies	Total battalion
Commander.....	1		1
Lt. commander.....	1		1
Lieutenant.....	4	3	7
Lieutenant (jg) or ensign.....	4	15	19
Total Commissioned.....	10	18	28
Chief yeoman.....	1	3	4
Chief boatswain's mate.....	1		1
Chief pharmacist's mate.....	1		1
Chief steward's mate.....	1		1
Petty officer, first class.....			
Yeoman.....	2		2
Radioman.....	1		1
Gunner's mate.....		3	3
Pharmacist's mate.....	2	3	5
Storekeeper.....	1		1
Petty officer, second class.....			
Yeoman.....	1		1
Boatswain's mate.....	1	9	10
Pharmacist's mate.....	2	3	5
Petty officer, third class.....			
Yeoman.....	2		2
Boatswain's mate.....		45	45
Radioman.....	2		2
Carpenter.....	1		1
Storekeeper.....	1	3	4
Pharmacist's mate.....	2		2
Gunner's mate.....	1		1
Seaman, first or second class.....	28	516	544
Total.....	61	603	664
Individual weapons			
Carbine, .30 caliber.....	27	195	222
Pistol, .45 caliber.....	15	42	57
Rifle, .30 cal. Browning Auto.....		81	81
Rifle, .30 cal. M-1.....	19	285	304

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 2

DRILL

CHAPTER 2

DRILL

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL.....	2-1	21
II. INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION WITHOUT ARMS.....	2-8	26
III. INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION WITH ARMS.....	2-10	36
IV. DRILL, THE SQUAD.....	2-19	63
V. DRILL, THE PLATOON.....	2-37	70
VI. DRILL, THE COMPANY.....	2-56	79
VII. FORMATIONS OF THE BATTALION.....	2-69	85
VIII. FORMATIONS OF THE REGIMENT.....	2-78	90

SECTION I

GENERAL

	Par.	Page
Purpose and scope.....	2-1	21
Drill instructors.....	2-2	22
Grouping.....	2-3	23
Commands.....	2-4	23
General rules for close-order drill.....	2-5	24
Detail drill.....	2-6	24
Mass commands.....	2-7	25

2-1 GENERAL.—*a. Purpose.*—The purposes of drills are to:

(1) Enable a commander to move his command from one place to another in an orderly manner and to provide simple formations from which dispositions for combat may be readily assumed.

(2) Aid in disciplinary training by instilling habits of precision and response to the leader's orders.

(3) Give junior officers and petty officers practice in commanding troops.

(4) Provide a means of enhancing the morale of a unit, and develop the spirit of cohesion through pride in its appearance and ability.

b. Scope.—The drill prescribed in this chapter is designed for general use. The diagrams of organizations shown in the figures herein are based specifically on approved Tables of Organization and Equipment. They must be adapted to the actual strength of the units concerned. They may be adapted to any type unit, to changes in Tables of Organization and Equipment, and to the drill space available.

c. Definitions.—(1) *Alinement.*—A straight line on which several elements are formed or are to be formed; or the dressing of several elements on a straight line.

(2) *Base.*—The element on which a movement is regulated.

(3) *Cadence.*—The uniform step and rhythm in marching.

(4) *Center.*—The middle point or element of a command.

(5) *Column.*—A formation in which the elements are placed one behind another.

(6) *Depth.*—The space from head to rear of any formation or of a position, including the leading and rear elements. The depth of a man is assumed to be 12 inches.

(7) *Distance.*—Space between elements in the direction of depth. Distance is measured, with respect to individuals, from the back of the person in front to the chest of the person in rear; vehicles, from the rear end of the vehicle in front to the front end of the vehicle in rear. Distance between troops in formation, whether of individuals or vehicles, is measured from the rear rank of the unit in front to the front rank of the unit in rear. Platoon Leaders, guides, and others whose position in a formation is at 40 inches distance from a rank are themselves considered as a rank. Otherwise the commander of any unit and those accompanying him are not considered in measuring distance between units. The color and color guard are not considered in measuring distance between subdivisions of a unit with which they are posted. The distance between ranks of dismounted men is 40 inches, in both line and column.

(8) *Double time.*—Cadence at the rate of 180 steps per minute. (See (25) below.)

(9) *Element.*—An individual, squad, section, platoon, company, or larger unit forming a part of a still larger unit.

(10) *File.*—A column of individuals or vehicles one behind the other.

(11) *Flank.*—The right or left of a command in line or in column or the element on the right or left of the line.

(12) *Formation.*—Arrangement of the elements of a command in line, in column, or in any other prescribed manner.

(13) *Front*.—The space occupied by an element measured from one flank to the opposite flank. The front of a man is assumed to be 22 inches.

(14) *Guide*.—An individual upon whom the command (or elements thereof) regulates its march.

(15) *Head*.—The leading element of a column.

(16) *Interval*.—Space laterally between elements of the same line. Interval is measured, with respect to individuals, from the shoulder or elbow; vehicles, from the hub of the wheel or the track. Between troops in formation, it is measured from the left flank of the unit on the right to the right flank of the unit on the left. The commander of any unit or of any element thereof, and those accompanying him are not considered in measuring intervals between units. The color and color guard are not considered in measuring the interval between subdivisions of a unit with which they are posted. The normal interval between individuals is one arm's length; the close interval is 4 inches.

(17) *Left*.—The left extremity or element of a body of troops.

(18) *Line*.—A formation in which the different elements are abreast of each other.

(19) *Mass formation*.—The formation of a company or larger unit in which the elements in column are abreast of each other at less than normal distances and intervals.

(20) *Pace*.—A step of 30 inches; the length of the full step in quick time.

(21) *Piece*.—As used in this manual, an individual firearm such as rifle, carbine, or automatic rifle.

(22) *Quick time*.—Cadence at the rate of 120 steps per minute. (See 25 below).

(23) *Rank*.—A line of individuals or vehicles placed side by side.

(24) *Right*.—The right extremity or element of a body of troops.

(25) *Step*.—The normal pace in marching. It is the distance measured from heel to heel between the feet of a man marching. The half step and back step are 15 inches. The right step and left step are 12 inches. The steps in quick and double time are 30 and 36 inches, respectively.

2-2. DRILL INSTRUCTORS.—*a.* The training of personnel in drill is an important duty of all officers and petty officers. Every officer and petty officer should take pride in being known as an efficient drill instructor from the beginning of his career. If the officer knows the drill regulations thoroughly and knows how to impart this knowledge to his men, he will soon acquire a reputation for efficiency and will gain the respect and confidence of those under him.

b. The qualifications of a good drill instructor which should be cultivated by all officers and petty officers are:

(1) A detailed and thorough knowledge of all drills.

(2) Ability to impart this knowledge by proper methods of instruction.

(3) A strict adherence to rules and regulations which will serve as an example to the men under instruction.

(4) Energy, perseverance, and enthusiasm.

(5) Patience and good manners.

c. The drill instructor must present a smart appearance at all times. Occasionally, officers and petty officers will insist on smart appearance in their men while they (the instructors) are examples of just the opposite. The troops are basically imitators and, as a rule, pattern their conduct after their leaders. They have a right to a good pattern and it is the responsibility of the drill instructor to furnish it. The power of example is well known and appreciated.

d. An instructor must constantly observe his men and correct mistakes immediately. The individual or unit should then repeat the movement properly until a reasonable degree of proficiency is attained. The instructor should be sparing of reprimands. A junior officer or petty officer should never be reprimanded in the presence of his subordinates. Above all, an instructor should never lose his temper.

e. The good drill instructor refreshes his mind before each drill by reading over the paragraphs referring to the movements to be executed. He quickly learns the mistakes most commonly made and how they may be avoided. He always considers the welfare of his men.

f. The position of the instructor with reference to his unit is a matter of great importance. He should be far enough away to see all of his

men, but close enough to detect mistakes and to be heard by all when he gives commands or explanations.

g. The precision and snap with which a drill is executed will depend largely upon the manner in which the commands are given. Every word of a command should be distinctly pronounced so that it may be readily understood by the entire unit.

h. It is the duty of the instructor to explain briefly each movement and then to demonstrate it. He requires men to take the proper positions unassisted and touches them only for the purpose of correction when they are unable to correct themselves. He avoids keeping them too long at any position or movement. When practicable, they should be faced away from the sun. Each position or movement must be understood before passing to another. The instructor exacts by degrees the desired precision and uniformity.

i. Drills should be frequent and of short duration. Smartness and precision should be required in the execution of every detail.

2-3 GROUPING.—*a.* In order to facilitate individual instruction, men are divided into small groups. Each of these groups is formed as a squad. (See pars. 2-19 and 2-20.)

b. As instruction progresses, they are grouped according to proficiency. Those who show a lack of aptitude are separated from the others and placed under the most experienced instructors. Care should be taken that men who are naturally inapt are not ridiculed or treated harshly; an officer should carefully supervise the instruction of such men to insure that they are given firm, but quiet and considerate handling.

2-4 COMMANDS.—*a.* There are two kinds of commands.

(1) The preparatory command, such as FORWARD, which indicates the movement that is to be executed. When appropriate, the preparatory command includes the unit designation.

(2) The command of execution, such as MARCH, HALT, or ARMS, which causes the desired movement, or halt, or element of the manual to be executed.

(3) In certain commands, the preparatory command and the command of execution are combined, as for example: FALL IN, AT EASE, and REST.

b. Preparatory commands are indicated in this chapter by SMALL CAPITAL LETTERS and those of execution by LARGE CAPITAL LETTERS.

c. Generally, when giving commands to troops, the commander faces them. When the platoon is part of a larger unit at drill or ceremonies, the leader turns his head toward the unit to give commands but does not face about.

d. Subordinate leaders repeat preparatory commands and give the proper new command or caution for the movement of their own unit **except** in platoon and mass formations when all men of the unit are to execute the movement simultaneously.

e. If at a halt, the commands for movements involving marching, such as 1. COLUMN RIGHT, 2. MARCH, are not prefaced by the command FORWARD.

f. The cadence of commands should be adjusted to that of quick time, even though no marching is involved, as, for instance, in the manual of arms. Giving commands, in unison while marching at quick time is a good exercise for developing this cadence. The interval or pause between the preparatory command and the command of execution should be adapted to the size of the unit. It should be of uniform length for any given unit, so that everybody in the unit will know when to expect the command of execution and be prepared to respond instantaneously.

(1) For the squad or platoon, the best interval is that which allows the planting of one foot between the two commands, for example 1. COLUMN LEFT, (step) 2. MARCH.

(2) For the company or larger unit, the interval must be long enough to permit subordinate commanders to repeat the preparatory command or to give the proper command for their particular units and allow men time to be prepared for the command of execution. Practice with the units themselves or with individuals representing the subordinate commanders is the best exercise in achieving this.

2-5 GENERAL RULES FOR CLOSE-ORDER DRILL.—*a.*

The explanation of a movement in the text that may be executed toward either flank is generally given for execution toward but one flank. To adapt such a description to execution of the movement toward the opposite flank, it is necessary only to substitute the word "left" for "right" or "right" for "left," as the case requires.

b. To revoke a command or to begin again a movement improperly begun from a halt, the command **AS YOU WERE** is given, at which the movement ceases and the former position is resumed.

c. Unless otherwise announced, the guide of an element of a company in column or line is right.

(1) To march with the guide other than as prescribed above, or to change the guide, the commands **GUIDE RIGHT (LEFT), (CENTER)**, are given. The leading man in each file is responsible for the interval. The guide is responsible for the direction and cadence of march.

(2) The announcement of the guide, when made in connection with a movement, follows the command of execution for the movement.

(3) In column, the guide of the leading platoon is charged with the step and direction; the guides in the rear preserve the space, step, and distance.

(4) When a platoon in line is given the commands: 1. **RIGHT**, 2. **FACE**, the platoon guide will execute right face with the platoon, and immediately face to the right in marching and march to a position in front of the right squad leader, halt, and execute left face.

(5) When a platoon in column is given the commands: 1. **COLUMN OF FILES FROM THE LEFT**, 2. **MARCH**, the guide will, on the preparatory command, take position in front of the left file so that he will be at the head of the column.

(6) When a platoon in column is given the commands: 1. **COLUMN OF TWOS FROM THE LEFT**, 2. **MARCH**, the guide will, on the preparatory command, take position in front of the right file of the column of twos.

d. (1) Partial changes of direction may be executed by interposing in the preparatory command the word "half" as **COLUMN HALF**

RIGHT (LEFT), so as to change direction forty-five degrees.

(2) Slight changes in direction are effected by the commands: **BEAR TO THE RIGHT (LEFT)**. The guide or guiding element moves in the indicated direction, and the remainder of the command conforms.

e. For drill purposes, platoons within each company or squads within each platoon may be numbered from right to left when in line, and from front to rear when in column.

f. The posts of officers, petty officer, guidons, and special units in the various formations of units are shown in the figures or explained in the text.

(1) When changes of formation involve changes of posts, the new post is taken by the most direct route, except where otherwise prescribed, as soon as practicable after the command of execution for the movement; officers and petty officers who have prescribed duties in connection with the movement take their new posts when such duties are completed. In executing any movement or facing when aligning units, or in moving from one post to another, officers and petty officers maintain a military bearing and move with precision.

(2) In subsequent movements after the initial formation, guidons and special units maintain their relative positions with respect to the flank or end of the command on which they were originally posted.

(3) In all formations and movements; a petty officer commanding an element takes the same post as prescribed for an officer in command. His piece is carried in the prescribed manner. When giving commands, making reports, or drilling a unit, a petty officer armed with a rifle carries it at the right shoulder.

(4) When acting as instructors, officers and petty officers go wherever their presence is necessary. They correct mistakes and insure proper performance in ranks.

2-6 DETAIL DRILL.—*a.* All movements for the purpose of instruction may be divided into motions and executed in detail. When movements are being executed "by the numbers," the command of execution determines the prompt execution of the first motion. The other motions are executed in proper sequence at the commands **TWO, THREE**, etc. To

execute the movement in detail, the instructor commands **BY THE NUMBERS**; all movements thereafter are executed in detail, one motion for each count, until the command **WITHOUT THE NUMBERS** is given.

2-7 MASS COMMANDS.—By requiring the individual to rely upon his own initiative and intelligence, both to give commands correctly and to execute properly the movement ordered, mass commands assist in overcoming diffidence, timidity, and awkwardness and develop confidence, self-reliance, assertiveness, and enthusiasm. The method of instruction in giving mass commands is as follows:

a. Each individual is required to give commands as if he alone were giving them to the entire unit. The volume of the combined voices encourages each man to exert himself in performing the movements with snap and precision.

b. Mass commands in drill are usually confined to simple movements with short preparatory commands and commands of execution which are executed simultaneously by all elements of the unit. Movements which require a repetition of the preparatory command by subordinate leaders or instructors are not applicable to mass commands.

c. The unit commander, in conducting the drill, announces: **CADENCE DRILL** to indicate that all commands will be given for each movement by the unit en masse, and executed in cadence; then, for each exercise in cadence drill, he announces the movement to be executed, and the personnel of the unit give the commands and execute them in unison. Examples are:

(1) Instructor:

1. CALL THE PLATOON TO ATTENTION.
2. COMMAND.

Mass:

1. PLATOON,
2. ATTENTION.

(2) Instructor:

1. FACE THE PLATOON TO THE RIGHT.
2. COMMAND.

Mass:

1. RIGHT.
2. FACE.

(3) Instructor:

1. HALT THE PLATOON,
2. COMMAND.

Mass:

1. PLATOON,
2. HALT.

d. Marching movements may be conducted in a similar manner as follows:

(1) Instructor:

ALL MOVEMENTS UNTIL FURTHER NOTICE WILL BE AT YOUR COMMAND.

(2) Instructor:

1. FORWARD MARCH,
2. COMMAND.

Mass:

1. FORWARD,
2. MARCH.

(3) Instructor:

1. BY THE RIGHT FLANK,
2. COMMAND.

Mass:

1. BY THE RIGHT FLANK,
2. MARCH.

e. When the instructor desires to terminate mass commands, he cautions: **AT MY COMMAND.**

f. Counting cadence is a valuable aid in teaching new men group coordination, cadence, and rhythm. The commands are: 1. **COUNT CADENCE**, 2. **COUNT**, the command of execution being given as the left foot strikes the ground. The group then calls the cadence for eight steps in a firm, vigorous manner commencing when the left foot again strikes the ground as follows: **ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR, ONE, TWO, THREE, FOUR.** These commands are not executed in a boisterous manner or by shouting.

SECTION II

INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION WITHOUT ARMS

	Par.	Page
Positions.....	2-8	26
Steps and marching.....	2-9	31

2-8 POSITIONS.—*a. Position of attention.*—

(1) Heels on the same line and as near each other as the conformation of the man permits.

(2) Feet turned out equally and forming an angle of 45°.

(3) Knees straight without stiffness.

(6) Head erect and squarely to the front; chin drawn in so that the axis of the head and neck is vertical; eyes straight to the front.

(7) Weight of the body resting equally on the heels and balls of the feet.

(8) In assuming the position of attention, the heels are brought together smartly and audibly. (See fig. 1.)

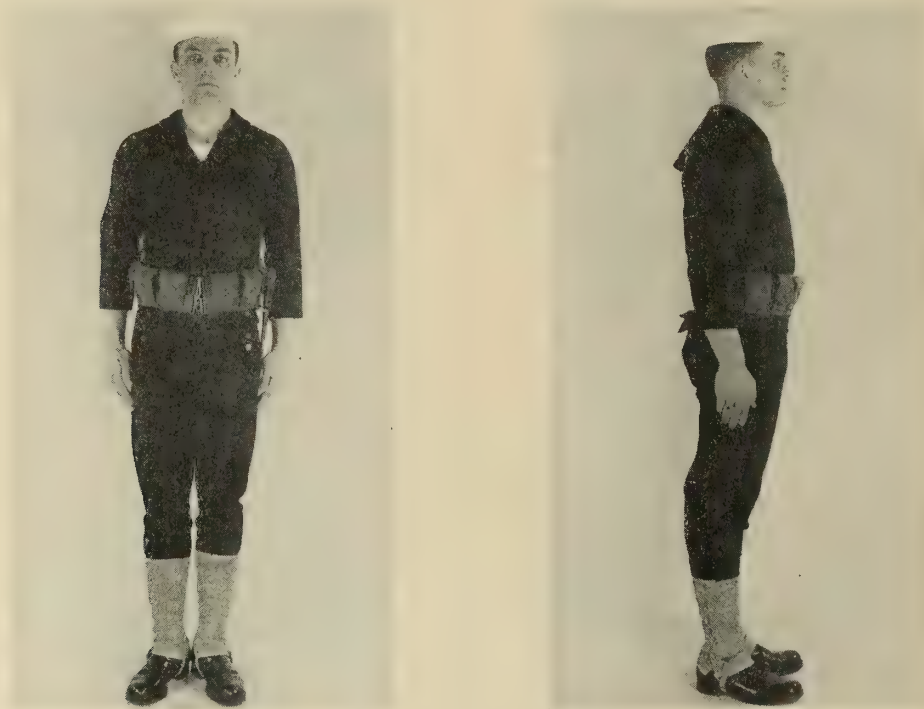


FIGURE 1.—Position of attention.

(4) Hips level and drawn back slightly; body erect and resting equally on hips; chest lifted and arched; shoulders square and falling equally.

(5) Arms hanging straight down without stiffness so that the thumbs are along the seams of the trousers; backs of hands out; fingers held naturally.

b. Rests.—All rests are executed from the halt. The commands are: FALL OUT; REST; AT EASE; and 1. PARADE, 2. REST.

(1) At the command FALL OUT, men leave ranks but are required to remain in the immediate vicinity. They resume their former places at attention at the command FALL IN.

(2) At the command REST, the right foot

is kept in place. Silence and immobility are not required.

(3) At the command AT EASE, the right foot is kept in place. Silence, but not immobility, is required.

(4) At the command of execution REST, of 1. PARADE, 2. REST, move the left foot smartly

c. Eyes right or left.—The commands are: 1. EYES, 2. RIGHT, (LEFT), 3. READY, 4. FRONT. At the command RIGHT, each man turns his head and eyes smartly to the right. The men on the extreme right file keep their head and eyes to the front. At the command FRONT, the head and eyes are



FIGURE 2.—Parade rest.

twelve inches to the left of the right foot, keeping the legs straight so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time, clasp the hands behind the back, palms to the rear, thumb and fingers of the right hand clasping the left thumb without constraint; preserve silence and immobility. This command is executed from the position of attention only. (See fig. 2.)

(5) Being at any of the rests except FALL OUT, to resume the position of attention, the commands are: 1. SQUAD, (PLATOON, COMPANY, ETC.) 2. ATTENTION. At the command ATTENTION, take the position of attention as described in paragraph 2-8 *a*.

turned smartly to the front. The opposite is carried out for EYES LEFT. (See figs. 3 and 4.)

d. Facings.—All facings are executed from the halt and in the cadence of quick time.

(1) *Right, (left) face.*—The commands are: 1. RIGHT, (LEFT;) 2. FACE. At the command FACE, which is equivalent to the count of ONE in this movement, slightly raise the left heel and the right toe; face to the right, turning on the right heel, assisted by a slight pressure on the ball of the left foot. Hold the left leg straight without stiffness. (TWO) place the left foot smartly beside the right. Execute 1. LEFT, 2. FACE, by turning on the left heel and the ball of the right foot in a corresponding manner. (See figs. 5 and 6.)



FIGURE 3.—Eyes right.



FIGURE 4.—Eyes left.



(1) Right face.



(2) One.



(3) Two.

FIGURE 5.—Right face.



(1) Left face.



(2) One.



(3) Two.

FIGURE 6.—Left face.

(2) *About face.*—The commands are: 1. ABOUT, 2. FACE. At the command FACE, carry the toe of the right foot to a position touching the ground a half-foot length to the rear and slightly to the left of the left heel without changing the position of the left foot; weight of the body mainly on the heel of the left foot; right leg straight without stiffness. (TWO) Face to the rear, turning to the right on the left heel and on the ball of the right foot; place the right heel beside the left. In facing about, the arms are held in the normal position of attention and not allowed to swing wide. Men are taught to experiment with the position in which they place the toe of the right foot until they have attained balance and self-assurance in execution. (See fig. 7.)

e. Hand salute.

(1) The commands are: 1. HAND, 2. SALUTE. At the command SALUTE, raise the right hand smartly until the tip of the forefinger touches the lower part of the headdress above and slightly to the right of the right eye, thumb and fingers extended and joined, palm

down, upper arm horizontal, forearm inclined at 45°, hand and wrist straight; at the same time, turn the head and eyes toward the person saluted.

(TWO) Return the hand smartly in one motion to its normal position by the side. (See fig. 8.)

(2) Saluting distance is that distance at which recognition is easy. Usually it does not exceed thirty paces. The salute is rendered when the person to be saluted is six paces distant, or at the nearest point of approach if it is apparent that he is not going to approach to within six paces. Hold the first position of the salute until the person saluted has passed or the salute is returned; then execute the second movement of the hand salute.

(3) At the command of execution ARMS of the command PRESENT ARMS, men not armed, men with weapons slung, and men equipped with a weapon which has no manual of arms or for which the manual of arms does not prescribe the salute using the weapon, execute the hand salute, holding the salute until the command of execution ARMS of the



FIGURE 7.—About face.



FIGURE 8.—Hand salute.

command ORDER ARMS. When the hand salute is executed with the weapon slung from the right shoulder, the left hand is placed on the sling to steady the weapon.

2-9 STEPS AND MARCHINGS.—a. General.—(1) When executed from a halt, all steps and marchings, except right step, begin with the left foot.

(2) The instructor indicates the proper cadence when necessary by counting cadence, but such counting by the instructor should be held to the minimum.

(3) When executing a change of direction while on the march, the commands, both preparatory and of execution, are given as the foot in the direction of the turn strikes the ground.

b. Quick time.—To march forward in quick time, being at a halt, the commands are: 1. FORWARD, 2. MARCH. At the command FORWARD, shift the weight of the body to the right leg without perceptible movement. At the command MARCH, step off smartly with the left foot and continue the march with 30-inch steps taken straight forward without stiffness or exaggeration of movements. Swing the arms easily in their natural arcs about 6 inches

straight to the front and 3 inches to the rear of the body.

c. Double time.—To march in double time, being at a halt or in march in quick time, the commands are: 1. DOUBLE TIME, 2. MARCH.

(1) If at a halt, at the command DOUBLE TIME, shift the weight of the body to the right leg without perceptible movement. At the command MARCH, raise the forearms, fingers closed, knuckles out, to a horizontal position along the waistline and take up an easy run with the step and cadence of double time, allowing the arms to take a natural swinging motion across the front of the body. Be sure to keep the forearms horizontal.

(2) If marching in quick time, at the command: 1. DOUBLE TIME, 2. MARCH, given as either foot strikes the ground, take one more step in quick time and then step off in double time.

(3) To resume the quick time from double time, the commands are: 1. QUICK TIME, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot in double time; resume the quick time, dropping the hands by the sides.

d. Halt.—The commands are: 1. SQUAD (PLATOON, COMPANY), 2. HALT.

(1) When marching in quick time, at the command HALT, given as either foot strikes the ground, execute the halt in two counts by advancing and planting the other foot and then bringing up the rear foot.

(2) When marching in double time, at the command HALT, given as either foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the other foot as in double time, then halt in two counts as in quick time.

(3) When executing right step or left step, at the command HALT, given as the heels are together, plant the foot next in cadence and come to the halt when the heels are next brought together.

e. Mark time.—The commands are: 1. MARK TIME, 2. MARCH.

(1) Being in march, at the command MARCH, given as either foot strikes the ground advance and plant the other foot; then bring up the foot in rear, placing it so that both heels are on line, and continue the cadence by alternately raising and planting each foot. When raised, the ball of the foot is about 2 inches above the ground.

(2) Being at a halt, at the command MARCH, raise and plant first the left foot, then the right as described above.

(3) Mark time may be executed in either quick time cadence or double time cadence. While in a unit marking time, the elements will correct any errors in alinement.

(4) The halt is executed from mark time, as from quick time or double time, by taking vertical steps in place of horizontal steps. Forward march, halt, and mark time may be executed one from the other in quick time or double time.

f. Half step.—The commands are: 1. HALF STEP, 2. MARCH.

(1) Being in march, at the command MARCH, take steps of 15 inches in quick time instead of the normal thirty inches. The half step is executed in quick time only.

(2) To resume the full step from half step, the commands are: 1. FORWARD, 2. MARCH.

g. Right step.—The commands are: 1. RIGHT STEP, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, carry the right foot 12 inches to the right; then

place the left foot beside the right, left knee straight. Continue in the cadence of quick time. The right step is executed in quick time from a halt for short distances only.

h. Left step.—The commands are: 1. LEFT STEP, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, carry the left foot 12 inches to the left; then place the right foot beside the left, right knee straight. Continue in the cadence of quick time. The left step is executed in quick time from a halt for short distances only.

i. Back step.—The commands are: 1. BACKWARD, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, take steps of 15 inches straight to the rear. The back step is executed in quick time for short distances only.

j. To face to the right (left) in marching.—The facings in marching are an important part of such movements as column right, close, take interval, and extend. For individual or group instruction in facing to the right (left) in marching, the commands are: 1. BY THE RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK, 2. MARCH.

(1) To face to the right (left) in marching and advance from a halt, at the command of execution of the movement, turn to the right (left) on the ball of the right (left) foot, at the same time, step off with the left (right) foot in the new direction with a half or full step in quick time or double time, as the case may be.

(2) To face to the right (left) in marching and advance, being in march, at the command of execution, given as the right (left) foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left (right) foot; then face to the right (left) in marching and step off with the right (left) foot in the new direction with a half or full step in quick or double time, as the case may be.

k. To face to the rear in marching.—The commands are: 1. TO THE REAR, 2. MARCH.

(1) Being in march at quick time, at the command MARCH, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; then turn to the right about on the balls of both feet and immediately step off with the left foot. (See fig. 9.)

(2) Being in march at double time, at the command MARCH, given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance two steps in the original direction; turn to the right about while



FIGURE 9.—To the rear, march.

taking four steps in place, keeping the cadence, and step off.

l. To march by the flank.—Being in march, the commands are: 1. BY THE RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, given as the right (left) foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left (right) foot then face to the right (left) in marching and step off in the new direction with the right (left) foot. (See fig. 10.)

m. To change step.—The commands are: 1. CHANGE STEP, 2. MARCH.

(1) Being in march in quick time, at the command MARCH given as the right foot strikes the ground, advance and plant the left foot; then plant the toe of the right foot near the

heel of the left and step off with the left foot.

(2) The same movement may be executed on the right foot by giving the command of execution as the left foot strikes the ground and planting the right foot; then plant the toe of the left foot near the heel of the right and step off with the right foot.

n. To march at route step.—The commands are: 1. ROUTE, STEP, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, men are not required to maintain silence or to march in cadence at attention.

o. To march at ease.—The commands are: 1. AT EASE, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, men are not required to march in cadence at attention, but are required to maintain silence.



(1) March.



(2) One.



(3) Two.

FIGURE 10.—By the right flank, march.

SECTION III

INDIVIDUAL INSTRUCTION WITH ARMS

	Par.	Page
General.....	2-10	36
Manual of arms, the rifle.....	2-11	36
Loadings and firings, the rifle.....	2-12	44
Manual of arms, the automatic rifle.....	2-13	46
Manual of arms, the carbine.....	2-14	46
Manual of the pistol.....	2-15	49
Manual of the sword.....	2-16	51
Manual of the guidon.....	2-17	56
Manual of the color and standard.....	2-18	58

2-10 GENERAL.—*a.* As soon as practicable, the man is taught the use, care, and nomenclature of his weapon. When fair progress has been made in instruction without arms, he is taught the manual of arms. Instruction without arms and with arms should alternate.

b. FALL IN is executed with the rifle at order arms and with the automatic rifle and carbine at sling arms. (See pars. 2-13 and 2-14.)

c. When troops are formed under arms, pieces are immediately inspected at the commands: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS. A similar inspection is made before dismissal. If cartridges are found in the chamber, receiver, or magazine, they are removed and placed in the belt.

d. (1) Rifles are habitually carried at right shoulder arms. Automatic rifles and carbines are habitually carried at sling arms.

(2) Weapons are not carried with cartridges in either the chamber or the receiver except when specifically ordered. When loaded (actual or simulated), they are carried locked. At all other times, they are carried unlocked, with the trigger pulled, to prevent damage from long-continued compression of the hammer spring.

e. (1) Before starting any movement for troops armed with rifles, except those movements indicated in (2) and (3) below, the commands: 1. RIGHT SHOULDER (SLING), 2. ARMS, are given before the command for the movement.

(2) Movements for short distances may be executed at the trail by prefacing the preparatory command with the command AT TRAIL as: 1. AT TRAIL, FORWARD, 2. MARCH. The trail is taken at the command MARCH, and the order is resumed on halting.

(3) When the facings, alinements, opening and closing of ranks, side step, back step, forming for shelter tents, extending and closing are executed with the rifle at order arms, the weapon is brought to the trail while in motion, and the order is resumed on halting. The position of trail arms is taken at the command of execution in each case.

(4) At the command HALT, men armed with the rifle remain at the position of right (left) shoulder arms until the command: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS, is given.

(5) In formations of mixed weapons, unless the automatic rifle and carbine are already slung, they are slung from the right shoulder at the command ARMS of 1. RIGHT SHOULDER, 2. ARMS. They are kept slung until the command REST or UNSLING ARMS, except in the case of carbines when executing port and inspection arms, (See pars. 2-14*b*, and *c*.) In long halts at attention, the men carrying such equipment may be directed to unsling arms. (See pars. 2-13, and 2-14.)

f. The bayonet is fixed only when so ordered.

g. In double time under arms, a disengaged hand has the same motion as when without arms.

h. Being at sling arms, not in ranks, the individual man renders the hand salute.

i. For action of men armed with a weapon which has no manual of arms, when the command: PRESENT, 2. Arms is given see paragraph 2-8*e* (3).

2-11 MANUAL OF ARMS, THE RIFLE.—

a. In all positions of the left hand at the

balance, the thumb clasps the rifle; the sling is included in the grasp of the hand. (See fig. 11.) In describing the manual of arms, the term "at the balance" refers to a point, on the U. S. Rifle, caliber .30, M1, just forward of the trigger housing.



FIGURE 11.—Left hand at the balance.

b. In all positions with the rifle diagonally across the body, the barrel is up, butt in front of the right hip, barrel bisecting the angle of the neck with the left shoulder. The rifle is grasped at the balance with the left hand, palm toward the body, wrist straight. (See fig. 11).

c. The cadence of the motions is that of quick time. Recruits are first required to give their whole attention to the details of the motions, the cadence being gradually acquired as they become accustomed to handling their rifles. The instructor may require them to count aloud in cadence with the motions.

d. The manual of arms is taught at a halt. For the purpose of instruction, it may be taught BY THE NUMBERS. (See par. 2-6). It is not executed in marching except when marching at attention, to pass from right shoulder to left shoulder or port arms and the reverse. These movements may be used to add interest

to the drill or to prevent fatigue in long marches at attention.

e. Any appropriate position of the manual of arms may be ordered from a previous position by giving the proper commands.

f. *Position of order arms.*—The butt of the rifle rests on the ground, barrel to the rear, toe of the butt on line with the toe of, and touching the right shoe, right hand holding the rifle between the thumb and fingers, left hand is in the position of attention without arms. (See fig. 12.)



FIGURE 12.—Position of order arms.

g. *Trail arms.*—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. TRAIL, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, raise the rifle and incline the muzzle forward so that the barrel makes an angle of about 15° with the vertical, the right arm slightly bent. (See fig. 13.)

h. *Order arms.*—Being at trail arms, the command is: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, lower the rifle with the right hand and resume the order. (See par. 2-11f.)

i. *Sling arms.*—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. SLING, 2. ARMS. This movement is not executed in cadence and may be supplied to any rifle, automatic rifle, light



FIGURE 13.—Position of trail arms.



FIGURE 14.—Position of sling arms.

machine gun, light mortar, etc. Loosen the sling, if not already loosened, and in the most convenient manner assume the position shown in figure 14. This position is authorized for long parades or marches and for occasions when the prolonged holding of the piece becomes a hardship on the troops. When used in ceremonies, the bayonet may be fixed.

j. Unslung arms.—Being at sling arms, the command is: 1. UNSLING, 2. ARMS, 3. ADJUST, 4. SLINGS. At the command ARMS, pieces are unslung. At the command SLINGS, slings are adjusted to the drill position. This adjustment of the sling will be made before precise movements of the manual are to be executed.

k. Port arms.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. PORT, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, raise the rifle with the right hand and carry it diagonally across the front of the body until the right hand is in front of and slightly to the left of the face so that the barrel is up, butt in front of the right hip, barrel bisecting the angle of the neck and the left shoulder. At the same time, grasp the rifle at the balance with the left hand, palm toward the body, wrist straight. (See fig.

15-1.) (TWO) Carry the right hand to the small of the stock, grasping it, palm down, holding the right forearm horizontal; left elbow resting against the body; the rifle in a vertical plane parallel to the front. (See fig. 15-2.)

l. Present arms.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, with the right hand carry the rifle in front of the center of the body, barrel to the rear and vertical; grasp it with the left hand at the balance, forearm horizontal and resting against the body. (TWO) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand. (See figs. 16-1 and 16-2.)

m. Order arms.—Being at present or port arms, the command is: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, move the right hand from its grasp on the stock and regasp the piece between the upper sling swivel and the stacking swivel. (TWO) Release the grasp of the left hand and lower the rifle to the right so that the butt is 3 inches from the ground, barrel to the rear, left hand with fingers extended and joined steadying the rifle, forearm and wrist straight and inclining downward. (See fig. 17.) (THREE) Complete the order by lowering the rifle gently to the ground with the right hand.



First position



Second position

FIGURE 15.—Execution of port arms.



First position



Second position

FIGURE 16.—Present arms.

Cut away the left hand smartly to the side. Care must be exercised to insure that the rifle is lowered gently and not thrust down forcibly.



FIGURE 17.—Next to the last position in executing order arms.

n. Inspection arms.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, take the position of port arms. (THREE) With the fingers of the left hand closed, place the left thumb on the operating rod handle and push it smartly to the rear until it is caught by the operating rod catch; at the same time, lower the head and eyes sufficiently to glance into the receiver. (FOUR) Having found the receiver empty, or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front; at the same time, regrasp the piece with the left hand at the balance. (See fig. 18.)

o. Order (right shoulder, left shoulder, port) arms.—Being at inspection arms, the command is: 1. ORDER (RIGHT SHOULDER, LEFT SHOULDER, PORT), 2. ARMS. At the preparatory command, place the rear edge of the right hand against the operating rod handle with the fingers extended and joined, forcing the operating rod handle slightly to the rear, and, at the same time, depress the follower with the right thumb; as the bolt rides forward over the

follower, remove the thumb from the follower and release the operating rod handle; pull the trigger, and resume port arms. At the command ARMS, complete the movement ordered, except in the case of port arms which will already have been executed.

p. Right shoulder arms.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. RIGHT SHOULDER, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, raise and carry the rifle diagonally across the body with right hand as shown in figure 19-1; at the same time, grasp it at the balance with the left hand. (TWO) Regrasp it with the right hand on the butt, the heel between the first two fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock. (See fig. 19-2.) (THREE) Without changing the grasp of the right hand, place the rifle on the right shoulder, barrel up and inclined at an angle of about 45° from the horizontal, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder, right elbow against the side, forearm horizontal, the rifle in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front. Carry the left hand, thumb and fingers extended and joined, to the small of the stock, first joint of the forefinger touching the rear end of the receiver, wrist straight, and elbow down. (See fig. 19-3.) (FOUR) Cut away the left hand smartly to the side. (See fig. 19-4.)

q. Port arms.—Being at right shoulder arms, the command is: 1. PORT, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, press the rifle butt down quickly and throw the rifle diagonally across the body; at the same time, turn the butt clockwise one-quarter turn so as to bring the barrel up, the right hand retaining its grasp on the butt, the left grasping the rifle at the balance. (TWO) Change the right hand to the small of the stock.

r. Order arms.—Being at right shoulder arms the command is: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, execute the first movement prescribed in paragraph 2-11*q* for port arms from right shoulder arms. (TWO) (THREE) (FOUR) Execute the three movements prescribed in paragraph 2-11*m* for order arms from port arms.

s. Right shoulder arms.—Being at port arms, the command is: 1. RIGHT SHOULDER, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, change the right hand to the butt as described in paragraph 2-11*p*. (See fig. 19-2.) Execute the last two



FIGURE 18.—Final position of inspection arms.



First position



Second position



Third position



Fourth position

FIGURE 19.—Execution of right shoulder arms.

movements prescribed in paragraph 2-11*p* for right shoulder arms from order arms. (See figs. 19-3 and 19-4.)

t. Left shoulder arms.—Being at port arms, the command is: 1. LEFT SHOULDER, 2. ARMS.

(1) At the command ARMS, release the grip of the left hand on the rifle, and with the right hand still grasping the small of the stock, place it on the left shoulder, barrel up, trigger guard in the hollow of the shoulder. At the same time grasp the butt with the left hand, heel of the butt between the first and second fingers, thumb and fingers closed on the stock, left forearm horizontal, left elbow against the side, the rifle in a vertical plane perpendicular to the front. (TWO) Drop the right hand smartly to the right side.

(2) Left shoulder arms may be ordered when rifles are at the order, right shoulder, or present. At the command ARMS, execute port arms and continue in cadence to the position ordered. (See figs. 20-1 and 20-2.)

u. Port arms.—Being at left shoulder arms,

the command is: 1. PORT, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, grasp the rifle with the right hand at the small of the stock. (TWO) Release the grasp of the left hand at the same time carry the piece with the right hand to the position of port arms and then regrasp it with the left.

v. Order (right shoulder) arms.—Being at left shoulder arms, the command is: 1. ORDER (RIGHT SHOULDER), 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, execute port arms as described in paragraph 2-11*u.* and continue in cadence to the position ordered as described in paragraphs 2-11*m.* and 2-11*p.*

w. Parade rest.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. PARADE, 2. REST. At the command REST, move the left foot smartly 12 inches to the left of the right foot, keeping the legs straight so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. At the same time incline the muzzle of the rifle to the front, the right arm extended, and hold the left hand behind the body, resting in the small of the back, palm to the rear. (See fig. 21.)



FIGURE 20.—Second and third positions of left shoulder arms.



FIGURE 21.—Position of parade rest.



FIGURE 22.—Rifle salute at right shoulder arms.

x. Squad attention.—Being at parade rest, the command is: 1. SQUAD, 2. ATTENTION. At the command ATTENTION, resume the position of order arms.

y. Rifle salute.—(1) Being at right shoulder arms, the command is: 1. RIFLE, 2. SALUTE. At the command SALUTE, carry the left hand smartly to the small of the stock, forearm horizontal, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, first joint of the forefinger touching the rear end of the receiver; look toward the person saluted. (See fig. 22). 3. TWO cut away the left hand smartly to the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.

(2) Being at order or trail arms, the command is: 1. RIFLE, 2. SALUTE. At the command SALUTE, carry the left hand smartly to the right side, palm of the hand down, thumb and fingers extended and joined, forearm and wrist straight, first joint of forefinger touching the barrel between the stacking swivel and muzzle at a point which best suits the conformation of the man, and look toward the person saluted. (See fig. 23.) 3. TWO cut away the left hand smartly to the side; turn the head and eyes to the front.



FIGURE 23.—Rifle salute at order arms.

z. (1) *Fix bayonets*.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. **FIX**, 2. **BAYONETS**. At the command **BAYONETS**:

(a) If the bayonet scabbard is on the belt, move the muzzle of the rifle to the left front and grasp the rifle below the stacking swivel with the left hand; grasp the bayonet with the right hand, back of the hand toward the body; pressing the spring with the forefinger, draw the bayonet from the scabbard and fix it on the barrel, glancing at the muzzle; resume the order. (See fig. 24.)



FIGURE 24.—Fix bayonets.

(b) If the bayonet scabbard is on the haversack, draw and fix the bayonet in the most convenient manner.

(c) These movements are not executed in cadence.

(2) *Unfix bayonets*.—Being at order arms, the command is: 1. **UNFIX**, 2. **BAYONETS**. At the command **BAYONETS**:

(a) If the bayonet scabbard is on the belt, take the position for fixing bayonets; grasp the handle of the bayonet with the right hand; pressing the spring, raise the bayonet until the handle is about 12 inches above the muzzle of the rifle; drop the point to the left, turning the

back of the hand toward the body; and, glancing at the scabbard, return the bayonet, the blade passing between the left arm and the body. Regrasp the rifle with the right hand and resume the order.

(b) If the bayonet scabbard is on the haversack, remove the bayonet from the rifle as described above and return it to the scabbard in the most convenient manner.

(c) These movements are not executed in cadence.

2-12 LOADING AND CEREMONIAL FIRING THE RIFLE.—a. General rules.—

(1) For ceremonial firing, the front rank only of units larger than a squad executes the loading and firing. A squad is always formed in line preliminary to such firing.

(2) Rifles are loaded while locked.

(3) Except during firing, if rifles have been ordered loaded, they are kept loaded and locked without command until the command **UNLOAD** or 1. **INSPECTION**, 2. **ARMS**.

(4) Automatic riflemen do not execute the ceremonial loadings and firings.

b. *To load*.—(1) The unit being in any formation, standing at attention, the commands are: 1. **WITH BLANK CARTRIDGES**, 2. **LOAD**. At the command **LOAD**, each front rank rifleman faces half right and carries the right foot 12 inches to the right and to such position as will secure the greatest firmness and steadiness of the body. The rifle is raised or lowered and dropped into the left hand at the balance, right hand at the small of the stock, muzzle in the air at an angle of 45°. (See fig. 25.) The operating rod handle is pulled smartly to the rear with the forefinger of the right hand, until the operating rod is caught by the operating rod catch. With the right hand, a fully loaded clip is placed on top of the follower. The right side of his right hand is placed against the operating rod handle and with the thumb presses the clip down into the receiver until it engages the clip latch. The thumb is swung to the right so as to clear the bolt in its forward movement. The operating rod handle is released. The operating rod handle is pushed forward with the heel of the right hand to make certain of complete closing of the bolt and the right hand is carried to the small of the stock.

(2) For instruction in loading, the commands are: 1. **SIMULATE**, 2. **LOAD**. At the command **LOAD**, execute loading as described above, except that the handling of cartridges is simulated.

(3) To use the rifle as a single loader, at the command **LOAD**, take the position of **LOAD** and open the bolt. With the right hand, place one round in the chamber, seating it in place with the thumb. With the side of the right hand against the operating rod handle and the fingers extended and joined, force the operating rod handle slightly to the rear, depress the follower with the right thumb, and permit the bolt to ride forward about 1 inch over the follower; then remove the thumb from the follower, release the operating rod handle and push forward on the operating rod handle with the heel of the hand to be certain that the bolt is completely closed. Carry the right hand to the small of the stock.

c. To unload.—Being in any formation, the command is: **UNLOAD**. At the command **UNLOAD**, take position of **LOAD**. Hook the right thumb over the operating rod handle, pull and hold the operating rod in the extreme rear position. Hold the rifle with the right hand, thumb on the operating rod handle, fingers around trigger guard. Steady the rifle by pressing the stock against the right hip. Place the left hand over the receiver and release the clip latch with the left thumb. Catch the ejected clip in the left hand, return the clip to

the belt, return the left hand to the balance. Place the right side of the right hand against the operating rod handle and force the operating rod slightly to the rear. Depress the follower with the right thumb and permit the bolt to ride forward about 1 inch over the follower. Remove the thumb from the follower and release the operating rod handle. Bring the rifle to the order.

d. To fire by volley.—(1) Being in firing formation with rifles loaded, the commands are: 1. **READY**, 2. **AIM**, 3. **SQUAD**, 4. **FIRE**. For ceremonial purposes blank ammunition is used, and only the front rank executes the commands. At the command **READY**, take the position of **LOAD**, if not already in that position. At the command **AIM**, raise the rifle with both hands to a position 45° from the horizontal, the rifle resting in the palm of the left hand, the butt placed and held firmly against the shoulder. The left hand is well under the rifle, grasping it at or in front of the balance, the right hand grasping the small of the stock. The right elbow is at the height of the shoulder. The right cheek is pressed firmly against the stock as far forward as it can be placed without straining. The left eye is closed, the right eye looking over the rear sight. Press the safety lock of the rifle to its forward position with the trigger finger. (See fig. 26.) At the command **FIRE**, the trigger is squeezed quickly. The rifle is then lowered to the position of load and is reloaded.



FIGURE 25.—Ceremonial firing: position of load.



FIGURE 26.—Ceremonial firing: position of fire.

(2) To continue the firing, the commands are: 1. AIM, 2. SQUAD, 3. FIRE. Each command is executed as explained above.

(3) To cease firing, the command is: CEASE FIRING. At the command CEASE FIRING, firing ceases. Rifles not already in the position of load are brought to that position.

2-13 MANUAL OF ARMS, THE AUTOMATIC RIFLE.—*a. General rules.*—Except when otherwise prescribed, the automatic rifle is habitually carried slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the rear, right hand grasping the sling, hand in front of the armpit. (See fig. 27.)

b. For marches and field exercises, the automatic rifle may be carried slung over either shoulder.

c. When troops are at ease, the automatic rifle is kept slung unless otherwise ordered.

d. When troops are at rest, the automatic rifle may be unslung.

e. Only the following movements of the manual are executed by the automatic rifleman:

(1) *Parade rest.*—Being at sling arms, execute as without arms keeping the right hand on the sling.

(2) *Inspection arms.*—Being at sling arms, at the command ARMS, grasp the magazine with the left hand; at the same time, press the magazine release with the right hand. Withdraw the magazine with the left hand and place it in the belt. Pull back the operating handle with the left hand.

(3) *To resume sling arms.*—Being at inspection arms: 1. ORDER (PORT, RIGHT SHOULDER, LEFT SHOULDER), 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, pull the trigger, replace the magazine, and resume the position of attention, the automatic rifle being kept slung.

f. When a unit is formed or dismissed, men armed with the automatic rifle execute inspection arms at the commands: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS.

g. Men armed with the automatic rifle salute with the hand salute when not in ranks, or when in ranks and the commands: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS is given.

h. For instructions, ceremonies, and drill, the organization commander may, at his discretion substitute rifles for automatic rifles.

2-14 MANUAL OF ARMS, THE CARBINE.—*a. Carrying position.*—(1) Except as otherwise prescribed, the carbine will habitually be carried for drills, ceremonies, and guard duty slung over the right shoulder, butt down, barrel to the left, right hand grasping the sling, hand in front of the armpit. (See fig. 28-1.) The magazine normally will be inserted in the receiver for ceremonies and guard duty only. When troops are at ease, the carbine is kept slung unless otherwise ordered. When troops are at rest, the carbine may be unslung and held in any desired position. In coming to the position of attention, the carrying position is assumed. The hand salute is executed in the normal manner, as without arms, after releas-



FIGURE 27.—Position of automatic rifle slung over right shoulder.

ing the grasp of the right hand from the sling. The parade rest is executed, as without arms, keeping the right hand on the sling.

(2) For dismounted marches or field exercises, the carbine will be carried in the manner prescribed by the unit leader. Depending on whether the unit is to move on foot or by truck, or whether personnel are to be employed in serving a weapon, he may choose any of the following methods:

(a) Slung over either right or left shoulder, with muzzle up.

(b) Slung across the back, muzzle down, with sling over the right or left shoulder. (See fig. 28-2.)

(c) Slung across the back, muzzle up, with sling over the right or left shoulder. (See fig. 28-3.)

(d) Carried in the holster.

b. Port arms.—Being at sling arms, to come to the position of port arms, grasp the sling with the left hand above the right (see fig. 29-1), lifting the piece from the shoulder and at the same time withdrawing the right arm from between the piece and the sling. Grasp the small

of the stock with the right hand, bringing the piece to a vertical plane parallel to and about 4 inches in front of the center of the body, barrel extending upward and to the left at an angle of 45°. (See fig. 29-2.) With the left hand, grasp the hand guard about 3 inches below the upper band. (See fig. 29-3.) The position of port arms is not assumed when the carbine is carried in the holster. Port arms with the carbine is not executed as part of the manual of arms with the rifle.

c. Inspection arms.—Being at sling arms, the command is: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS. At the command of execution, grasp the sling with the left hand above the right, lifting the piece from the shoulder and at the same time withdrawing the right arm from between the piece and the sling. Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand, resting the butt of the piece just in front of the right hip, barrel elevated at an angle of 45°, muzzle to the front. Press the magazine lock to the left with the forefinger of the right hand and, at the same time, withdraw the magazine from the receiver with the left hand, inserting it between the body and belt in front of the left hip. (See fig. 30-1.) Assume the position of port arms. With the forefinger of the right hand, pull the operating slide all the way back and press down on the operating slide catch with the right thumb, locking the operating slide in its rear position; regasp the small of the stock and at the same time lower the head and eyes sufficiently to glance into the chamber. Having found the chamber empty, or having emptied it, raise the head and eyes to the front. (See fig. 30-2.) Inspection arms with the carbine is not executed as part of the manual of arms with the rifle.

d. To resume sling arms.—Being at inspection arms, the command is: 1. ORDER (RIGHT SHOULDER), 2. ARMS. At the preparatory command, release the operating slide by pulling the operating handle slightly to the rear with the right forefinger and allowing the slide to go forward; pull the trigger and replace the magazine. At the command of execution, sling the carbine over the right shoulder and resume the position of attention.



Carbine slung



Across back muzzle down



Across back muzzle up

FIGURE 28.—Carrying positions for the carbine.



First position



Second position



Third position

FIGURE 29.—Execution of port arms with the carbine.



FIGURE 30.—Execution of inspection arms with the carbine.

e. Port arms.—Being at inspection arm, the command is: 1. PORT, 2. ARMS. At the command PORT, release the operating slide as described above, pull the trigger, and replace the magazine. At the command ARMS, complete the movement.

2-15 MANUAL OF THE PISTOL.—*a. General.*—(1) The movements herein described differ in purpose from the manual of arms for the rifle in that they are not designed to be executed in exact unison, there being, with only a few exceptions, no real necessity for their simultaneous execution. They are not therefore planned as a disciplinary drill to be executed in cadence with snap and precision, but merely as simple, quick, and safe methods of handling the pistol.

(2) In general, movements begin and end at the position of raise pistol.

(3) Officers and enlisted men armed with the pistol remain at the position of attention during the manual of arms, but render the hand salute at the command PRESENT, ARMS.

b. Raise pistol.—The command is: 1. RAISE, 2. PISTOL. At the command PISTOL,

unbutton the flap of the holster with the right hand and grasp the stock, back of the hand outward. Draw the pistol from the holster; reverse it, muzzle up, the thumb and last three fingers holding the stock, the forefinger extended outside the trigger guard, raise the forearm so the barrel is inclined to the front at an angle of 30° , the hand as high as, and 6 inches in front of, the point of the right shoulder. (See fig. 31-1.)

c. Withdraw magazine.—The command is: WITHDRAW MAGAZINE. At the command WITHDRAW MAGAZINE, without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the right; press the magazine catch with the right thumb and with the left hand remove the magazine. (See fig. 31-2.) Place magazine between the belt and outer garment, in front of the left hip.

d. Open chamber.—The command is: OPEN CHAMBER. At the command OPEN CHAMBER, resume the position of raise pistol. Without lowering the right hand, grasp the slide with the thumb and the first two fingers of the left hand (thumb on the left side of slide

and pointing downward); keeping the muzzle elevated, shift the grip of the right hand so that the right thumb engages the slide stop. (See fig. 31-3.) Push the slide downward to its full extent and force the slide stop into its notch with the right thumb without lowering the muzzle of the pistol.

e. Close chamber.—The command is: CLOSE CHAMBER. At the command CLOSE CHAMBER, with the right thumb press down the slide stop and let the slide go forward. Squeeze the trigger, being sure that the muzzle is still elevated.

f. Insert magazine.—The command is: INSERT MAGAZINE. At the command INSERT MAGAZINE, without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel to the right. Grasp a magazine with the first two fingers and thumb of the left hand; withdraw it from the belt and insert it in the pistol. Press it fully home.

g. Load.—The command is: LOAD. At the command LOAD, if a loaded magazine is not already in the pistol, insert one. Without lowering the right hand, turn the barrel slightly to the left. Grasp the slide with the thumb and fingers of the left hand (thumb on right side of slide and pointing upward). (See fig. 32-1.) Pull the slide downward to its full extent. Release the slide and engage the safety lock.

h. Unload.—The command is: UNLOAD. At the command UNLOAD, withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber as prescribed above. Glance at the chamber to verify that it is empty. Close the chamber. Take the position of raise pistol and squeeze the trigger. Then insert an empty magazine.

i. Inspection arms.—The command is: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, withdraw the magazine. Open the chamber as prescribed above. Take the position of raise pistol. The withdrawn magazine is held in the open left hand at the height of the belt. (See fig. 32-2.) After the pistol has been inspected or at the command 1. RETURN, 2. PISTOL, close the chamber, take the position of raise pistol, and squeeze the trigger, being sure that the muzzle is still elevated. Insert an empty magazine and execute return pistol.

j. Return pistol.—The command is: 1. RETURN, 2. PISTOL. At the command PISTOL, lower the pistol to the holster, reversing it,

muzzle down, back of the hand to the right; raise the flap of the holster; with right thumb insert the pistol in the holster; button the flap of the holster with the right hand.

2-16 MANUAL OF THE SWORD.—*a. General rules.*—(1) Officers and enlisted men armed with the sword execute the manual in the same manner.

(2) The officers' sword scabbard is attached to the sling with the edge of the sword blade to the rear.

(3) The enlisted men's sword scabbard is carried suspended from the belt by a frog, the edge of the sword blade to the front.

(4) All commands to troops under arms are given with the sword drawn.

(5) In general, on all duties under arms, officers and men armed with the sword, draw and return sword with the commander of the unit to which attached without command.

(6) The position of carry sword is assumed:

(a) To give commands.

(b) To change position at quick time.

(c) To address or when being addressed by a superior officer.

(d) At the preparatory command for and while marching at quick time.

(7) The position of present sword is assumed:

(a) To salute with the sword.

(b) In executing present arms when the unit is presented to the colors or to any person, or when the *National Anthem (To the Color)* is played.

(c) In executing eyes right (left) when marching past a reviewing officer or stand, except that officers in the interior of a mass formation do not execute present sword.

(8) The position of the sword at parade rest is assumed by officers whenever the unit executes parade rest. (See fig. 33.)

(9) In marching with the sword at the carry, the arms are swung about 6 inches to the front and 3 inches to the rear of the body.

(10) In marching in double time, the sword is carried diagonally across the breast, edge to the front, the left hand steadying the scabbard.

(11) The sword will be drawn by officers and men so armed at all times when in formation with troops under arms, except when at rest, at ease, or when marching at route step or at ease.



FIGURE 31.—Manual of the pistol.



3APH — Post Photographic

FIGURE 32.—Manual of the pistol.

(12) Being at present sword, officers and men execute order sword at the command order arms. If the command be other than order arms, they execute carry sword at the command of execution and retain this position until the command order or present arms is given.

(13) *The sword knot.*—(a) When the sword knot is worn, the right wrist may be placed in it before grasping the grip.

(b) When publishing the orders, the sword is held suspended from the right wrist by the sword knot, which may be placed on the wrist before drawing the sword and taken off after returning it.

(c) Enlisted men not provided with the sword knot, return sword prior to reading orders or calling the roll, unless this can be done without reference to a roster of the company or unit concerned.

b. To draw sword.—The commands are: 1. DRAW, 2. SWORD.

(1) At the command DRAW, grasp the scabbard with the left hand at the upper band, turn the guard to the front, seize the grip with the right hand, and draw the blade 6 inches out of the scabbard, pressing the scabbard against the thigh with the left hand. (See fig. 34-1.)

(2) At the command SWORD, draw the sword smartly, raising the arm to its full extent, at an angle of about 45°, the sword in a straight line with the arm, edge down; drop the left hand by the side (See fig. 34-2).

(3) After a slight pause bring the back of the blade against the shoulder seam of the coat, the blade vertical, back of the grip to the rear, the arm nearly extended, the thumb and forefinger embracing the lower part of the grip, the thumb against the thigh, the fingers joined behind the end of the hilt. This is the position of carry sword. (See fig. 34-3.)

c. To present sword.—The commands are: 1. PRESENT, 2. SWORD, or 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS, or 1. EYES, 2. RIGHT.

(1) At the command PRESENT (or EYES), being at the carry or order, carry the sword to the front, point up, edge to the left, raising the hand as high as the neck and 6 inches in front of it, the thumb on the left side of the grip, elbow close to the body, the blade inclined slightly to the front. (See fig. 35-1.) At the command SWORD (or ARMS or RIGHT),

drop the point of the sword near the ground by extending the arm, so that the right hand is brought to the side of the right thigh, the thumb on the left of the grip, the blade inclining downward and to the front, edge to the left. (See fig. 35-2.)

(2) To salute with the sword, present sword is executed when 6 paces from the person saluted or at the nearest point of approach, if more than six paces. The second position is held until the person saluted has passed or the salute is returned, or at the command FRONT. The sword is then returned to the order if at a halt, or to the carry if on the march.

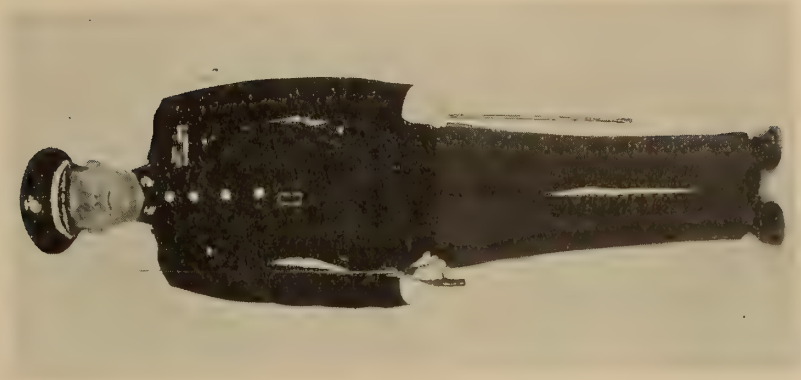
d. Order sword.—The commands are: 1. ORDER, 2. SWORD.

(1) Being at the carry or at present sword, at the command SWORD, drop the point of the sword to the front on the ground, edge down, thumb on the back of the grip, the arm hanging naturally by the side. (See fig. 36.)

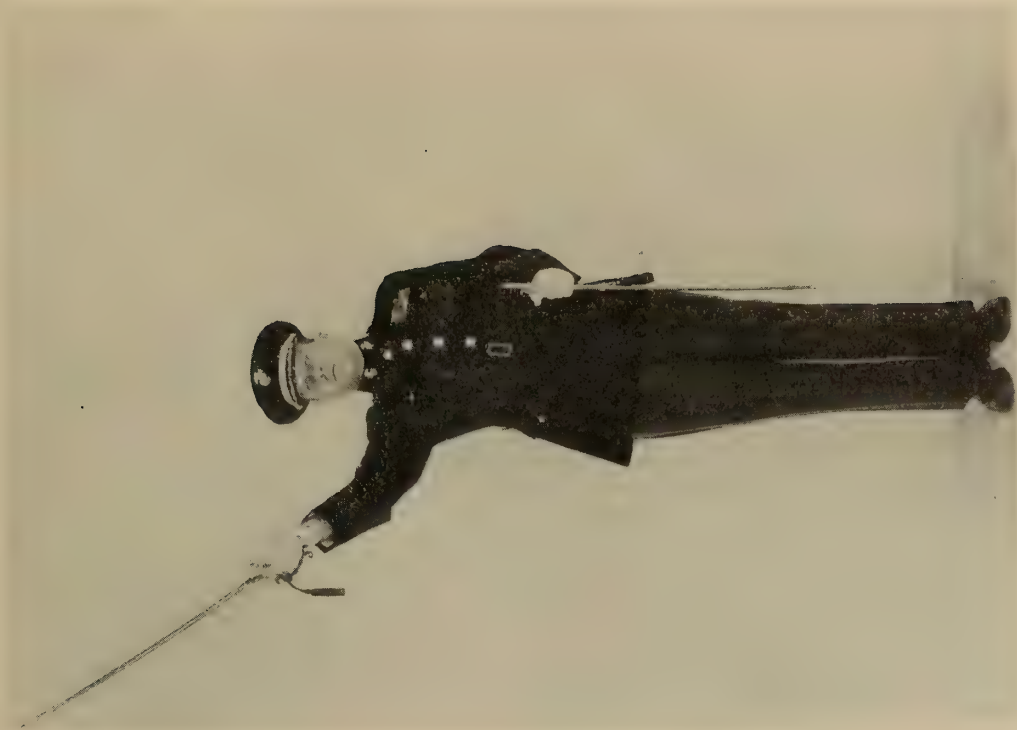
(2) In executing the carry from present sword while marching, the sword is first turned to the position of order, but with the point of the sword about 3 inches from the ground.



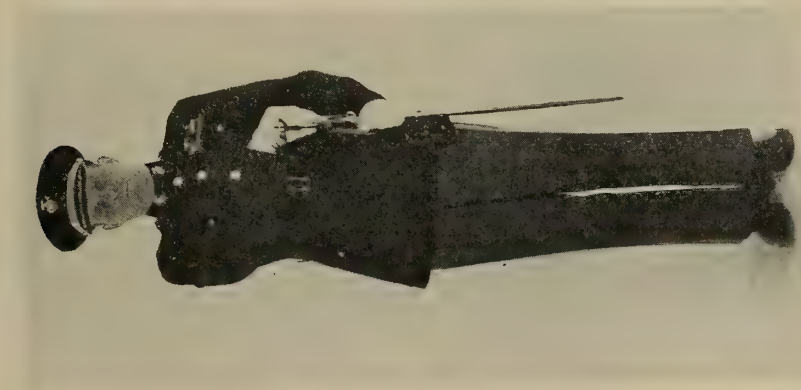
FIGURE 33.—Manual of the sword. Parade rest.



Third position



Second position
FIGURE 34.—Manual of the sword. Draw sword.



First position

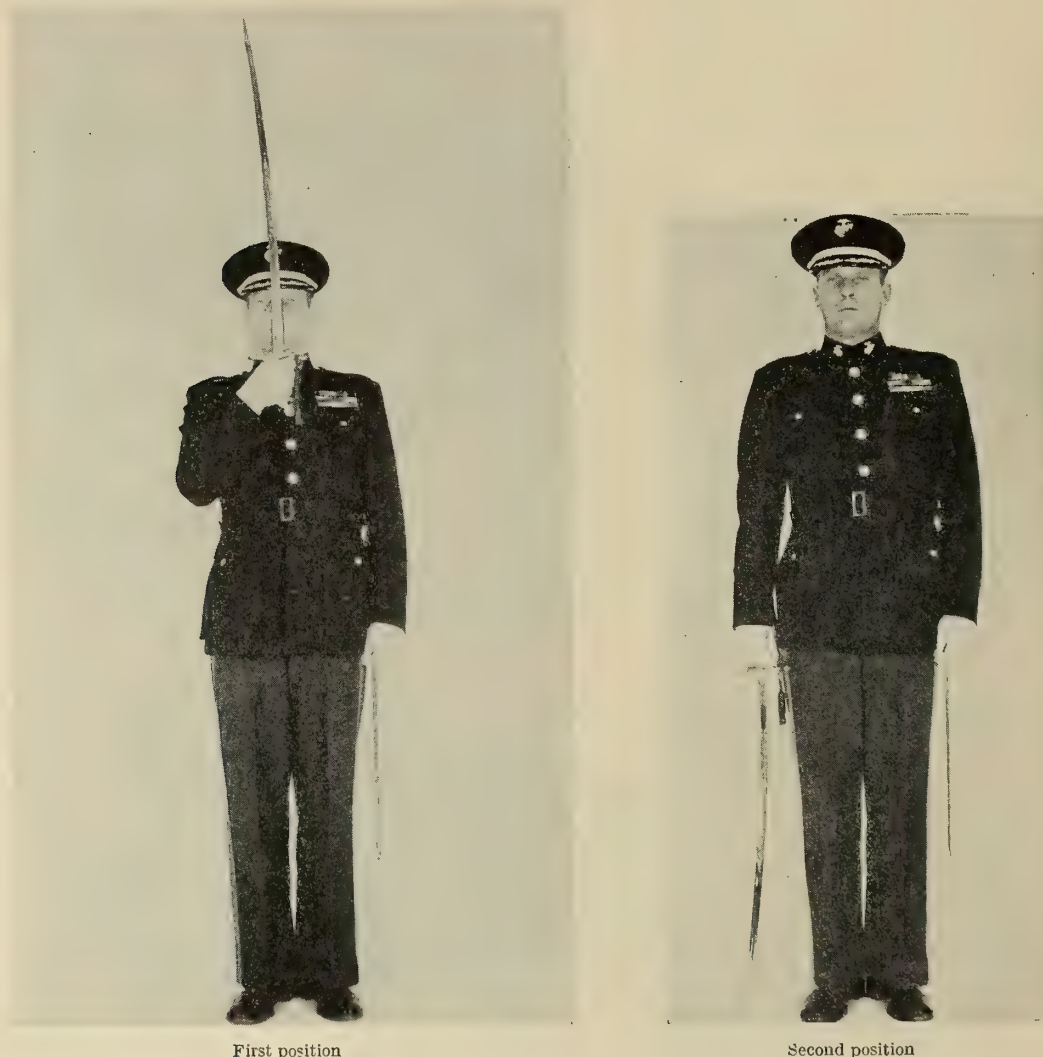
e. Parade rest.—Being at order sword, the commands are: 1. PARADE, 2. REST. At the command REST, move the left foot 12 inches to the left of the right foot, keeping the legs straight, so that the weight of the body rests equally on both feet. Place the left hand behind the body, resting in the small of the back, palm to the rear. At the command ATTENTION, resume the position of attention.

f. To return sword.—The commands are: 1. RETURN, 2. SWORD.

(1) *Officers' sword.*—Being at the order or carry, at the command RETURN, execute the first motion of present sword, at the same time grasp the scabbard at the upper band with the

left hand and turn its rear edge to the front. At the command SWORD, lower the point of the blade, describing a semicircle to the left; turn the head slightly down and to the left, fixing the eyes on the opening of the scabbard, insert the point, guiding it with the thumb and forefinger of the left hand. (See fig. 37.) Look to the front; return the sword smartly; turn the edge of the sword to the rear; drop both hands to the sides.

(2) *Enlisted men's sword.*—The return is executed as prescribed for the officers' sword except that the rear edge of the scabbard is not turned to the front.



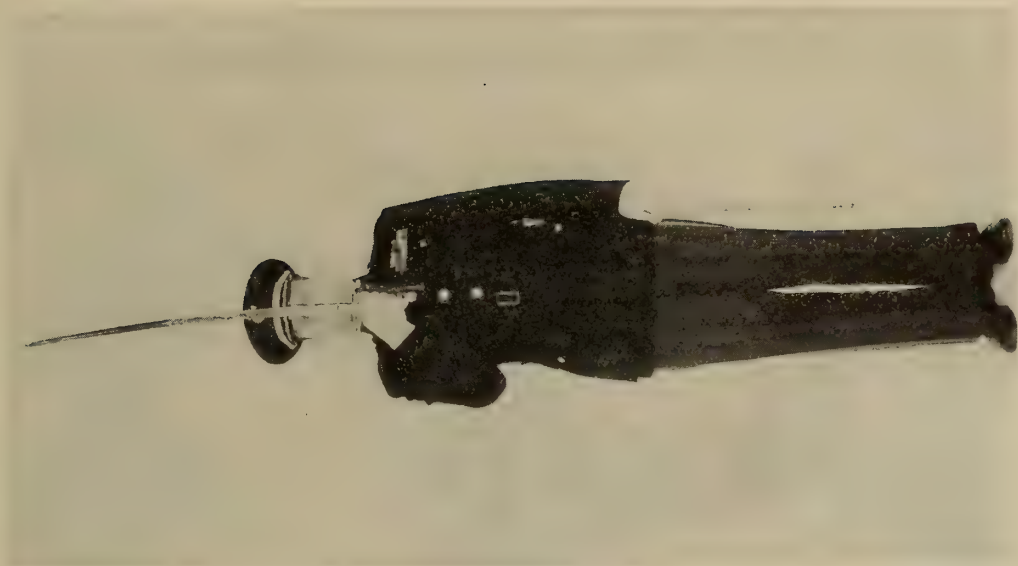
First position

Second position

FIGURE 35.—Manual of the sword. Present sword.



FIGURE 36. — Manual of the sword. Order sword.



First position



Second position

FIGURE 37. — Manual of the sword. Return sword.

2-17 MANUAL OF THE GUIDON.—*a.* The guidon is a company identification flag. It is carried at ceremonies and at other times when prescribed by the commander. In garrison, the guidon may be displayed at company headquarters between morning and evening colors, except during inclement weather and when carried in formation. On the march, the guidon is with the company baggage or left at the company office should the baggage not be carried; during combat, the guidon is always with the company baggage. The guidon bearer

is a specially selected enlisted man designated by the company commander.

b. General rules.—The guidon is brought to present arms, parade rest, and the order with the company. At the command of execution of other movements of the manual, it is brought to carry guidon, unless already in that position. When the bearer is executing the facings, side step, or alinements, and when troops are marching, the guidon is at the carry. (See fig. 38.) When marching at route step or at ease, it may be held in either hand. When at the order,



FIGURE 38.—Manual of the guidon.
Carry guidon.



FIGURE 39.—Manual of the guidon.
Order guidon.



FIGURE 40.—Manual of the guidon. First
position of carry guidon.



FIGURE 41.—Manual of the guidon. Present guidon.

unless otherwise prescribed, it is brought to the carry at the command of execution for marching in quick time.

c. Carry guidon.—The staff of the guidon is held vertically in the right hand, resting in the hollow formed by the thumb and first finger, back of the hand to the right, arm extending downward, staff resting in the hollow of the shoulder, ferrule 6 inches from the ground as shown in figure 38.

d. Being at carry guidon, to execute order guidon.—Allow the staff to slide through the right hand until the ferrule is on the ground on line with and touching the toe of the right shoe, at which time the right hand regrips the staff as in the carry. (See fig. 39.)

e. Being at order guidon, to execute carry guidon.—Grasp the staff with the left hand, at the same time loosening the grip of the right hand on the staff. Raise the guidon vertically through the right hand until the ferrule is 6

inches from the ground, then regrip the staff with the right hand. Cut the left hand smartly away. (See fig. 40.)

f. Being at order guidon, to execute parade rest.—Execute in the same manner as parade rest with the rifle.

g. Being at carry or order guidon, to execute present guidon.—(1) The commands are: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, lower the guidon straight to the front, extending the right arm nearly horizontal until the lance, resting in the pit of the right arm, is horizontal. (See fig. 41.)

(2) In passing in review, the guidon bearer executes eyes right and present guidon at the first movement of the company commander's hand salute (or at the second movement of present sword) and returns to front and carry guidon at the last movement of the company commander's salute.

h. Being at present guidon, to execute carry guidon.—Grasp the staff with the left hand, palm up, at a point just beyond the right hand. With the left hand, carry the guidon up and back to the position of carry guidon. At the same time, lower the right hand, retaining its grasp on the staff to the right side, cut the left hand smartly away.

i. Being at present guidon, to execute order guidon.—Execute as prescribed above for carry guidon except that when the guidon is brought to the vertical position, the staff is allowed, if necessary, to slide through the right hand, the left hand steadying the staff, until the guidon is in the position of order guidon.

j. Individual salute by the guidon bearer.—The guidon being at the carry or the order, the salute is given with the left hand in the same manner as a rifle salute at order arms.

k. Double time.—At double time, the guidon is held diagonally across the body, the right hand grasping the staff at the position used at the carry, right forearm horizontal, elbow near the body, left hand grasping the staff opposite the junction of the neck and left shoulder.

2-18 MANUAL OF THE COLOR AND STANDARD.—*a.* The following rules will govern the use and care of colors and standards:

(1) The national and regimental (organization) flags carried by dismounted organizations are called the “national color” and the “regimental (organization) color.” The term “color” implies the national color. The term “colors” implies both the national color and regimental color.

(2) The national and regimental flags carried by mounted or motorized organizations are called the “national standard” and the “regimental standard.” The term “standard” implies the national standard. The term “standards” implies both the national standard and the regimental standard.

(3) In garrison and on board ship, the colors of an organization, when not in use, are cased and kept in the office or quarters of the commanding officer.

(4) Colors are cased when they are furled and placed within protective covering. Colors should be frequently unfurled and aired when not in use.

(5) Colors may be carried in any formation in which two or more companies participate and in escorts when ordered.

(6) At regimental formations, the colors are with the designated color company. When the regimental formation is broken up, as at drill or field exercises, the colors join the regimental commander or are dismissed as directed.

(7) Not more than one national color will be carried by a regiment or any part thereof when assembled as a unit.

(8) Each landing party battalion is equipped with a national color and an organization color. When participating independently in operations, ceremonies, or street parades ashore, each battalion will carry its own colors. When two or more such battalions are formed as a regiment, only one national color and one organization color will be carried.

(9) When the organization color is draped in mourning, the mourning shall consist of a streamer of black crepe, 7 feet long and about 12 inches wide, with a bow knot tied in the center, the streamer attached at the knot to the ferrule below the spearhead. The two loops of the bow knot shall each be about 6 inches long.

b. The color guard.—(1) The color guard consists of two petty officers, who are the color bearers, and two experienced nonrated men. The color bearers are unarmed, the nonrated men are armed with rifles or pistols. The senior color bearer carries the national color and commands the color guard. He gives the necessary commands for movements and for rendering honors. The junior color bearer carries the regimental color. The regimental color is always placed on the left of the national color in whatever direction they face. When only the national color is carried, the color guard will include only one color bearer.

(2) The color guard is formed and marched in one rank at close interval, the color bearers in the center. The color guard does not execute to the rear march, about face, or fix bayonets. When the unit to which it is attached moves to the rear for short distances, the color guard, at the command of the senior color bearer, executes column right (left) twice, marches to the new line, again executes column right (left) twice, and halts in its proper place. When the unit to which it is attached marches to the flank in

column, the color guard executes column right (left) instead of right (left) face.

(3) At the command of the senior color bearer, the nonrated men of the color guard present arms, or if armed with the pistol, execute the hand salute on receiving and parting with the colors. After having parted with the colors, the guard is brought to order arms by command of the senior remaining member who is placed as right man of the guard.

(4) Having received the colors, the senior color bearer conducts the guard to its proper position before the color company. Having parted with the colors, the guard is dismissed by the senior color bearer.

(5) At drills and ceremonies in which the colors are to participate, except escort of the color, the colors are received by the color company prior to the formation of the battalion with the following ceremony: The color company is formed, its commander facing the front. The color guard, conducted by the senior color bearer, approaches from the front and halts at a distance of 10 paces from the company commander. The company commander then faces his company and brings it to present arms, faces the colors and salutes, and again faces his company and brings it to order arms. The nonrated men of the color guard execute present and order arms with the color company. The color guard is then marched by the senior color bearer directly to its post. It takes post on the left when the company is in line or mass and in rear when the company is in column. When the color company joins the battalion, the color guard takes its appropriate post in the battalion formation. When the color battalion joins the regiment, the color guard takes its appropriate post in the regimental formation.

(6) When in formation, the color guard executes at ease and rest with the color-company, keeping the pikes of the colors vertical.

(7) When it is desired to dismiss the color guard at the conclusion of a drill or ceremony in which the colors have participated, it proceeds from its position and halts 10 paces in front of and facing the company commander of the color company. The company presents arms as described in (5) above. The color guard then escorts the colors to the office, quarters, or tent of the commanding officer.

The color guard is dismissed from organizations smaller than a company (funeral escort) in a similar manner.

(8) In campaigns, prior to engagement of the regiment, the colors are stored as directed by the commanding officer.

c. Position of the color at the order.—At the order, the heel of the pike rests on the ground on line with and touching the toe of the right shoe. The right hand, at a convenient place on the pike, clasps it with the thumb, back of the hand to the right, and holds it in a vertical position. (See fig. 42.)



FIGURE 42.—Manual of the color. Position of the order.

d. Position of the color at the carry.—At the carry, the heel of the pike rests in the socket of the sling; the right hand grasps the pike at the height of the shoulder; the pike is inclined slightly to the front. (See fig. 43.)

e. Position of the color at parade rest.—(1) Parade rest with the color is similar to parade rest with the rifle, except that the pike is kept vertical.

(2) The order is resumed at the command ATTENTION.

(3) The order and parade rest are executed with the color company.

f. Position of regimental color at color salute.—This position is assumed from the carry by slipping the right hand up the pike to the height of the eye, then lowering the pike by straightening the arm to the front. When the regimental color salutes with troops who execute present arms from the order, the position of carry is assumed at the command ARMS, and the color salute then executed. (See fig. 44.)

g. Position of the colors during the manual of arms.—The colors remain at the order during the execution of the manual of arms.

h. Salutes by the regimental color.—(1) The regimental color salutes in all military cere-

monies while the *National Anthem* or *To the Color* is being played and when rendering honors to its regimental commander or an individual of higher rank, but in no other case.

(2) If marching, the regimental color salutes when 6 paces from the front of the person entitled to the salute and resumes the carry when 6 paces beyond him.

(3) When passing in review, the color guard executes eyes right at the command of the senior color bearer, who commands: 1. EYES, 2. RIGHT and 1. READY, 2. FRONT at the saluting distances prescribed in (2) above. When the grade of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, the regimental color salutes at the command RIGHT and resumes the carry at the command FRONT. The man on the right flank does not execute eyes right. In those organizations which do not execute eyes right in passing in review, the standard guard omits this compliment. Where applicable, the regimental standard salutes at the command of the senior standard bearer, who commands: 1. STANDARD, 2. SALUTE. The return to the carry is made at the command: 1. CARRY, 2. STANDARD.

i. Salutes by the national color.—The national color renders no salute.



FIGURE 43.—Manual of the color. Position of the carry.



FIGURE 44.—Manual of the color. Position of color salute.

SECTION IV

DRILL, THE SQUAD

	Par.	Page
General.....	2-19	63
To form the squad.....	2-20	63
Previous instructions applicable.....	2-21	65
To dismiss the squad.....	2-22	65
To count off.....	2-23	65
To aline the squad.....	2-24	66
Being in line at normal interval to obtain close interval.....	2-25	66
Being in line at close interval to extend to normal interval.....	2-26	66
Being in line, to march to the flank.....	2-27	66
To march to the oblique.....	2-28	66
To march toward the flank while in march.....	2-29	67
Being in column, to change direction.....	2-30	67
Being in line, to take interval and assemble.....	2-31	67
To stack arms.....	2-32	67
To take arms.....	2-33	68
To form column of twos from single file.....	2-34	68
To form single file from column of twos.....	2-35	68
Column of twos.....	2-36	68

2-19 GENERAL.—*a.* A squad is a group of men organized as a team. It consists of a leader and other personnel authorized by appropriate Tables of Organization and Equipment. When the squad leader is absent, he is replaced by the second in command. When the second in command is also absent, the next senior member of the squad acts as leader, and so on. If the seniority of different members is not known, men are designated by name as successive leaders.

b. The squad is always kept intact, so far as practicable. The normal formation is a single rank or single file as shown in figure 46. This permits variation in the number of men composing the squad. The original formation is always in line. Column formation, when used, is taken from line formation.

c. The squad marches in line for minor changes of position only.

d. Figure 45 shows a key to the symbols used in this manual.

	REGIMENTAL COMMANDER AND STAFF		PLATOON GUIDE
	BATTALION COMMANDER AND STAFF		SECTION LEADER OR CHIEF OF SECTION
	COMPANY COMMANDER OR LIEUTNANT		SQUAD LEADER OR PETTY OFFICER, THIRD CLASS
	EXECUTIVE OFFICER OR SECOND IN COMMAND		FIRE TEAM LEADER
	PLATOON COMMANDER OR ENSIGN		RIFLEMAN
	CHIEF PETTY OFFICER		COLORS
	PLATOON CHIEF PETTY OFFICER, SECOND CLASS		GUIDON BEARER

FIGURE 45.—Key to symbols used in diagrams in this manual.

2-20 TO FORM THE SQUAD.—*a.* The command is: FALL IN. At the command FALL IN the squad forms in line on the squad leader as shown in figure 46. On falling in, each man, except the one on the left, extends his left arm laterally at shoulder height, palm of the hand down, fingers extended and joined. Each man, except the one on the right, turns his head and eyes to the right and places himself in line so that his right shoulder touches lightly the tips of the fingers of the man on his right. As soon as proper interval has been obtained, each man drops his arm smartly to his side without command and turns his head smartly to the front.

b. To form at close interval, the commands are: 1. AT CLOSE INTERVAL, 2. FALL IN. At the command FALL IN, the men fall in as indi-

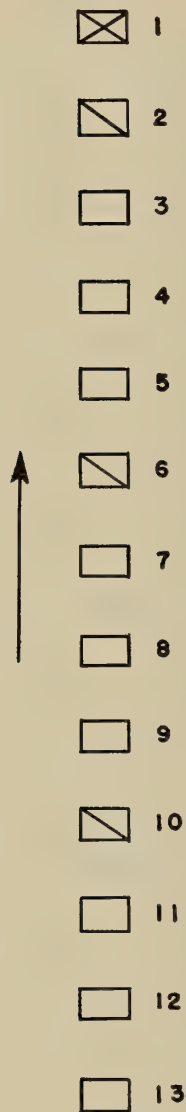
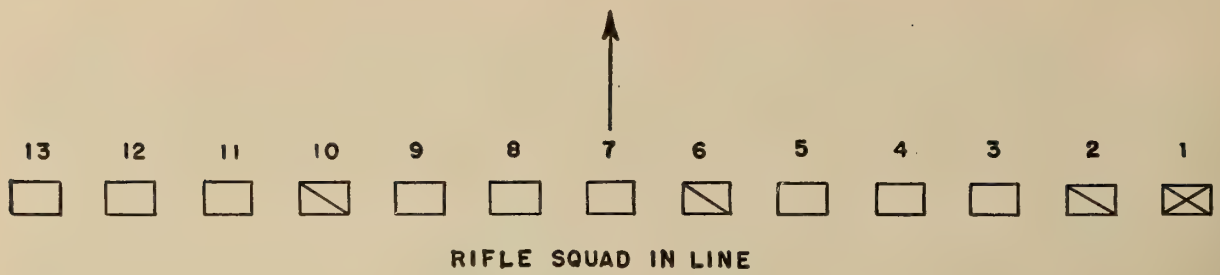


FIGURE 46.—Squad formations.



FIGURE 47.—Fall In.



FIGURE 48.—At close interval. Fall in.

cated in *a* above, except that close interval is obtained by placing the left hand on the hip as shown in figure 48. In this position, the heel of the palm of the hand rests on the hip, the fingers and thumb are extended and joined, and the elbow is in the plane of the body.

c. If the squad is formed under arms, pieces are inspected at once.

2-21 PREVIOUS INSTRUCTIONS APPLICABLE.—The squad executes the positions, movements, and manual of arms as prescribed in previous sections of this chapter, all men executing the movements simultaneously.

2-22 TO DISMISS THE SQUAD.—The commands are: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS, 3. PORT, 4. ARMS, 5. DISMISSED. If the squad is not under arms, the single command DISMISSED is used.

2-23 TO COUNT OFF.—*a.* The command is: 1. COUNT, 2. OFF. At the command OFF, each man of the squad, except the one on the right flank, turns his head and eyes to the right. The right flank man calls out, "one," vigorously, but without exaggeration. Each man in succession calls out in the same manner, "two," "three," etc., turning his head

and eyes smartly to the front as he calls his number.

b. This command may be given whenever desirable to insure that the men know their relative positions in the squad.

2-24 TO ALINE THE SQUAD.—*a.* If in line, the commands are: 1. DRESS RIGHT (LEFT) or 1. AT CLOSE INTERVAL, DRESS RIGHT (LEFT), 2. DRESS, 3. READY, 4. FRONT. At the command DRESS, each man except the one on the left extends his left arm (or if at close interval, places his left hand upon his hip), and all aline themselves to the right. The instructor places himself on the right flank one pace from and in prolongation of the line and facing down the line. From this position, he verifies the alinement of the men, ordering individuals to move forward or back as necessary. Having checked the alinement, he faces to the right in marching and moves three paces forward, halts, faces to the left and commands: 1. READY, 2. FRONT. At the command FRONT, arms are dropped quietly and smartly to the side, and at the same time, heads turned smartly to the front.

b. If in column, the command is: COVER. At the command COVER, men cover from front to rear with 40 inches distance between men.

2-25 BEING IN LINE AT NORMAL INTERVAL, TO OBTAIN CLOSE INTERVAL.—The commands are: 1. CLOSE, 2 MARCH. At the command MARCH, all men except the

right-flank man face to the right in marching and form at close interval as prescribed in paragraph 2-20*b*.

2-26 BEING IN LINE AT CLOSE INTERVAL, TO EXTEND TO NORMAL INTERVAL.—The commands are: 1. EXTEND, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, all men except the right-flank man face to the left in marching and form at normal interval as prescribed in paragraph 2-20*a*.

2-27 BEING IN LINE, TO MARCH TO THE FLANK.—The commands are: 1. RIGHT (LEFT), 2. FACE, 3. FORWARD, 4. MARCH. The movements are executed as explained in paragraphs 2-8*d* (1) and 2-9*b*. All men step off simultaneously.

2-28 TO MARCH TO THE OBLIQUE.—*a.* For the instruction of new men, the squad being correctly alined, the instructor causes each man to face half right (left), points out his position, and explains that it is to be maintained in the oblique march. (See fig. 49.)

b. The squad being in any formation, the commands are: 1. RIGHT (LEFT) OBLIQUE, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, given as the right foot strikes the ground, each individual advances and plants the left foot, faces to the half right in marching, and steps off in a direction of 45° to the right of his original front. He preserves his relative position, keeping his shoulders parallel to those of the guide, and so regulates his step that the ranks remain parallel to their original front.



FIGURE 49.—Right oblique.

c. To resume the original direction, the commands are: 1. FORWARD, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, each individual faces to the half left in marching and then moves straight to the front.

d. The command HALT is given on the left foot when halting from right oblique and on the right foot when halting from left oblique. At the command HALT, given as the left (right) foot strikes the ground, each individual advances and plants the right (left) foot, turns to the front on the ball of the right (left) foot, and places the left (right) foot by the side of the right (left) foot.

e. To stop temporarily the execution of the movement for the correction of errors, the commands are: 1. IN PLACE, 2. HALT. All halt in place without facing to the front and stand fast. To resume the movement, the commands are: 1. RESUME, 2. MARCH.

f. If at half step or mark time while obliquing, the full step is resumed by the command: 1. RESUME, 2. MARCH.

g. The word "oblique" is pronounced to rhyme with "strike."

2-29 TO MARCH TOWARD THE FLANK WHILE IN MARCH.—a. The commands are: 1. BY THE RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, each individual executes the movement as prescribed in paragraph 2-9j(2).

b. This movement is used when a quick movement to the right or left for a short distance is required. Normally, the unit is halted, faced in the desired direction, and moved forward again by the command: 1. FORWARD, 2. MARCH.

2-30 BEING IN COLUMN, TO CHANGE DIRECTION.—The commands are: 1. COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT) (HALF RIGHT) (HALF LEFT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the leading man executes the movement as prescribed in paragraph 2-9j(2). The other men in the column execute the same movement successively and on the same ground as the leading man.

2-31 BEING IN LINE, TO TAKE INTERVAL AND ASSEMBLE.—a. To take interval, the commands are: 1. TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the right flank man stands

fast and extends his left arm at shoulder height, palm of the hand down, fingers extended and joined, until the man on his left obtains the proper interval; he then drops his arm. Other men face to the left in marching and advance until they have an interval of two arms' length from the man on their right. Each man, except the one on the left, who raises his right arm only, extends both arms laterally at shoulder height. All, except the right flank man, then turn their heads and eyes to the right and place themselves in line so that the finger tips of each man's right hand touch lightly the finger tips of the left hand of the man on his right. As soon as each man aligns himself at two arms' length interval from the man on his right, he drops his right arm to the side and turns his head and eyes to the front. He drops his left arm to the side when the man on his left has obtained his proper interval. If under arms, rifles are slung prior to the execution of this movement.

b. To assemble, the commands are: 1. ASSEMBLE TO THE RIGHT (LEFT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the right flank man stands fast. All other men face to the right in marching and form at normal intervals as described in paragraph 2-20a.

2-32 TO STACK ARMS.—The rifle squad being in line at normal or close interval, the commands are: 1. STACK, 2. ARMS. Numbers 3, 7, and 11 make the stacks except when there is no one on their left. For squads of more than 14 men, additional stackmen are designated.

a. At the command ARMS, the man on the left of the stackman regrips his rifle (the left rifle of the stack) at the balance with his right hand; raises it, barrel up, to the horizontal; and passes it to the stackman, who grasps it with his left hand between the upper sling swivel and the stacking swivel.

b. The stackman places the butt of the left rifle between his feet, the barrel to the front, the muzzle inclined slightly to the front, his thumb and forefinger raising the stacking swivel. He then throws the butt of his own rifle (the center rifle), with the barrel to the rear, 2 feet in advance of the butt of the left rifle and 6 inches to the right of his right toe. At the same time, his right hand shifts to the

stacking swivel and engages it with that of the left rifle.

c. The man to the right of the stackman regrasps his rifle (the rifle on the right of the stack), his right hand at the small of the stock, his left hand between the upper sling swivel and the stacking swivel. Keeping his right foot in place, he steps to the left front and carries his rifle well forward, barrel up. (See fig. 50-1.) With the forefinger of his left hand guiding the stacking swivel, he engages it with the free hook of the center rifle's stacking swivel. Rotating the rifle outward so that the barrel rests in the angle formed by the other two rifles (see fig. 50-2), he lowers the butt to the ground so that it forms a uniform stack with them. He then resumes the position of attention.

d. Other rifles and any carbines or automatic rifles of the squad, held approximately vertically, are passed toward the nearest stack and laid on the stack by the stackman, barrel toward the stack. Care is exercised that pieces laid on the stack are at a sufficient angle from the vertical to insure their remaining in place. (See fig. 50-3.)

2-33 TO TAKE ARMS.—The squad being in line behind the stacks, the commands are: 1. TAKE, 2. ARMS. At the command ARMS, the procedure of stacking arms is reversed. The loose weapons are first passed back. In breaking the stack, the stackman grasps his rifle and that of the man on his left, so that the rifles will not fall when the man on the right

raises and disengages his rifle. Each man, as he receives his rifle, resumes the position of order (sling) arms.

2-34 TO FORM COLUMN OF TWOS FROM SINGLE FILE.—The squad being in column at a halt, to form column of twos the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF TWOS TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the leading man stands fast; the second man in the squad moves by the oblique until he is to the left of and abreast of the squad leader or leading man, with normal interval, and halts; the third man moves forward until behind the squad leader or leading man, with normal distance, and halts; the fourth man moves by the oblique until he is to the left of and abreast of the third man, with normal interval, and halts; and so on.

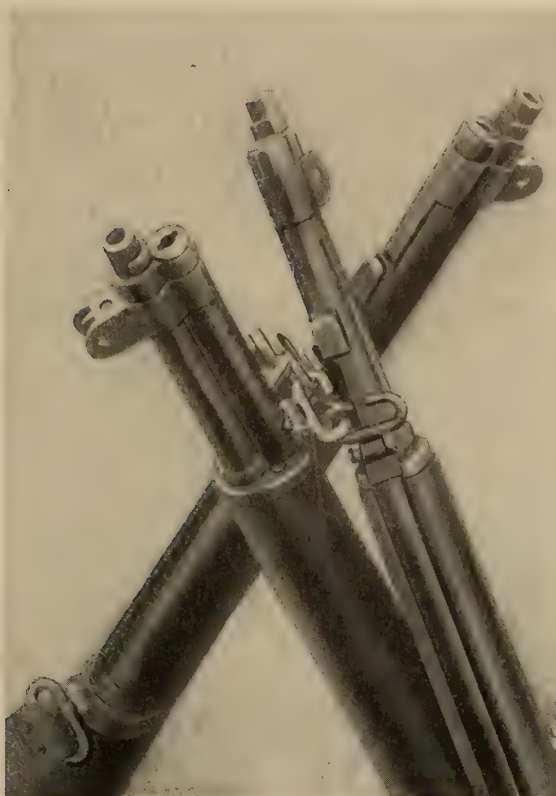
2-35 TO FORM SINGLE FILE FROM COLUMN OF TWOS.—The squad being in column of twos at a halt, to form single file, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF FILES FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the leading man of the right column moves forward, the leading man of the left column steps off to the right oblique, then executes left oblique so as to follow the right file at normal distance. Remaining twos follow successively in like manner.

2-36 COLUMN OF TWOS.—A small group, not at drill, may be marched in column of twos by forming in two ranks and giving the command; 1. RIGHT (LEFT), 2. FACE.



(1) Stack arms: man on the right engages stacking swivel of his rifle with that of the center rifle.

FIGURE 50.—Stack arms.



(2) Stack arms: barrel of the right rifle rests in the angle formed by the other two rifles.



(3) Stack arms: the completed stacks.

FIGURE 50.—Stack arms—Continued

SECTION V

DRILL, THE PLATOON

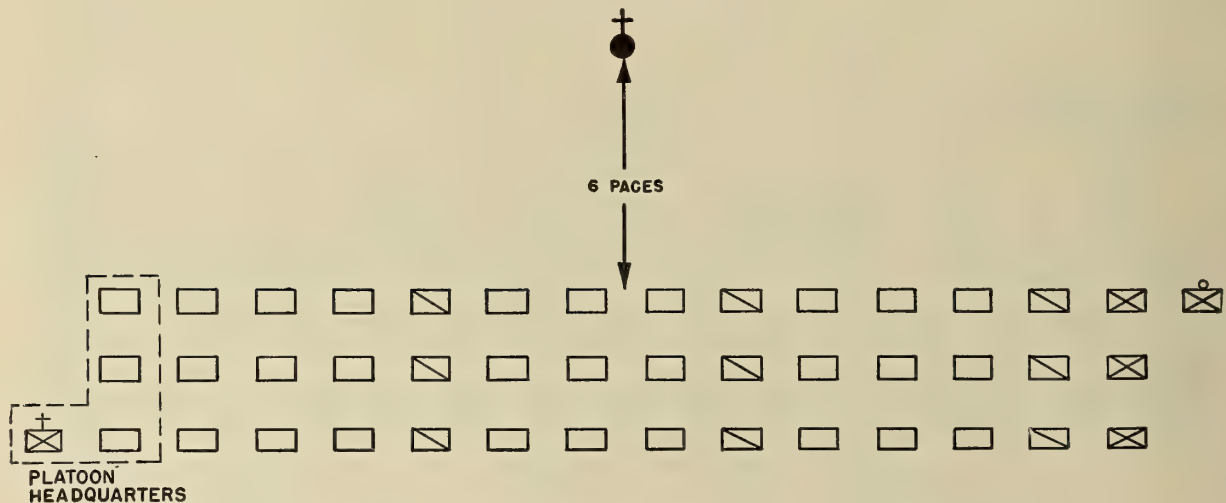
	Par.	Page		Par.	Page
Composition and formation of the platoon-----	2-37	70	To form column of twos and single file and reform-----	5-54	73
Formation of the section-----	2-38	71	To form for physical drill-----	2-55	74
Positions of individuals-----	2-39	71			
To form the platoon-----	2-40	71			
To dismiss the platoon-----	2-41	71			
Platoon formations for marching-----	2-42	72			
Guide in marching-----	2-43	72			
Supplementary commands-----	2-44	72			
Being in column at normal interval, to march (form) at close interval-----	2-45	72			
Being in column at close interval, to march (form) at normal interval-----	2-46	72			
Being in column, to change direction-----	2-47	72			
Being in column, to form line to front---	2-48	72			
Being in any formation in march, to march toward the flank-----	2-49	72			
To stack arms-----	2-50	72			
Being in line, to open ranks-----	2-51	72			
Being at open ranks, to close ranks-----	2-52	73			
To form for shelter tents-----	2-53	73			

2-37 COMPOSITION AND FORMATION OF THE PLATOON.—*a.* A platoon consists of a platoon headquarters and two or more sections or squads. Platoon headquarters consists of a platoon commander and one or more assistants.

b. The platoon forms in two or more ranks with 40 inches distance between ranks.

c. The platoon in line is alined as prescribed for the squad in paragraph 2-24. The alinement of each rank is verified by the platoon leader.

d. The platoon in line closes and extends as prescribed for the squad in paragraphs 2-25 and 2-26.



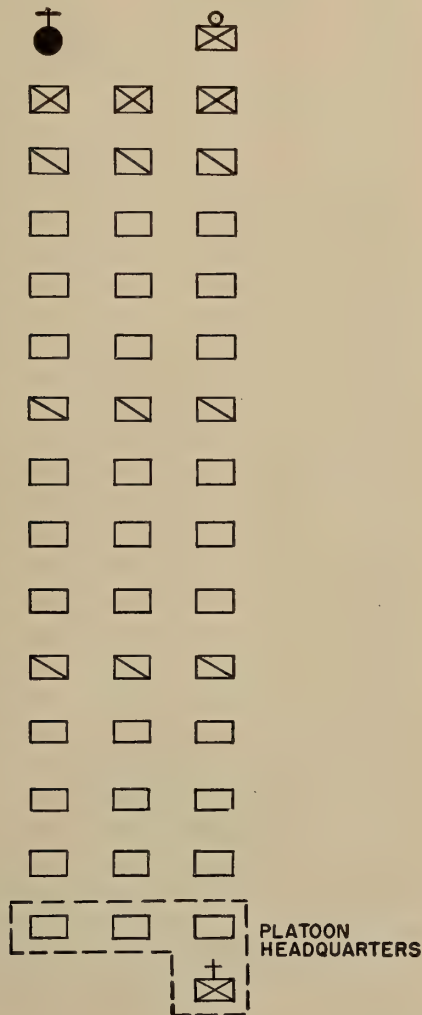
NOTE : NORMAL INTERVAL ----- ARMS LENGTH
 CLOSE INTERVAL ----- 4 INCHES
 DISTANCE ----- 40 INCHES

FIGURE 51.—Rifle platoon in line at normal interval.

e. The platoon in line takes interval and assembles as prescribed for the squad in paragraph 2-31. This movement may be ordered, after ranks are opened, for the display of field equipment or for other special purposes.

f. Movements are described herein for column of threes or fours and may be executed by either formation.

2-38 FORMATION OF THE SECTION.—A section normally forms and drills as part of a platoon. As used herein, the term "section" is



NOTE : NORMAL INTERVAL ——— ARMS LENGTH
CLOSE INTERVAL ——— 4 INCHES
DISTANCE ——— 40 INCHES

FIGURE 52.—Rifle platoon in column at normal interval.

synonymous with "squad" or "platoon" depending on its size.

2-39 POSITIONS OF INDIVIDUALS.—a. The platoon leader takes post six paces in front of the center of his platoon when in line. (See fig. 51.) In march formation, he marches at the head of his platoon as shown in figure 52.

b. The platoon petty officer takes post to the left of the left man of the rear rank when the platoon is in line unless otherwise indicated. In march formation, he follows the rear man in the right squad of the unit. He observes the conduct of the unit and sees that the proper formation is maintained and that commands are promptly and properly executed.

c. The platoon guide is posted to the right of the right flank man of the front rank when in line. In column, he takes post in front of the right flank man. He is responsible for maintaining the proper direction and cadence of march of the platoon.

d. Other petty officers and nonrated men, whose positions are not otherwise prescribed, may be attached to platoons to equalize the strength thereof without interfering with the permanent squad organization. They fall in on the left when in line or in rear when platoons are in column.

2-40 TO FORM THE PLATOON.—a. The command is: FALL IN. At the command FALL IN, the platoon guide takes his position so that the leading rank will fall in with its center opposite and three paces from the platoon petty officer. The other ranks form in rear of the leading squad or section with 40 inches distance between ranks. Members of the rear ranks extend their arms to obtain their approximate intervals, but cover the corresponding members of the leading rank.

b. To form at close interval, the commands are: 1. AT CLOSE INTERVAL, 2. FALL IN. At the command FALL IN, the movement is executed as prescribed in *a* above, except that squads form at close interval. (See par. 2-20*b*.)

c. The platoon is normally formed and dismissed by the platoon petty officer.

2-41 TO DISMISS THE PLATOON.—The commands are: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS, 3. PORT, 4. ARMS, 5. DISMISSED. If not

under arms, the single command **DISMISSED** is employed.

2-42 PLATOON FORMATIONS FOR MARCHING.—*a.* The normal formation for marching is in column of two or more files, files abreast, squad leaders at the heads of their squads. (See fig. 52.)

b. The platoon marches in line only for minor changes of position.

c. The platoon being in line to march to the right (left), the commands are: 1. **RIGHT**, (**LEFT**), 2. **FACE**, 3. **FORWARD**, 4. **MARCH**. This marches the platoon in column of two or more files to the right (left).

2-43 GUIDE IN MARCHING.—Except when otherwise directed, men in ranks maintain the proper distance and interval and align themselves on the men toward the flank on which the guide is marching. When it is desired to guide toward the left, the command is **GUIDE LEFT**. The guide and the platoon leader then change their relative positions.

2-44 SUPPLEMENTARY COMMANDS.—Whenever commands are given involving movements in which all squads in the platoon do not execute the same movement simultaneously, the squad leaders give the appropriate supplementary commands for the movement of their squads.

2-45 BEING IN COLUMN AT NORMAL INTERVAL, TO MARCH (FORM) AT CLOSE INTERVAL.—The commands are: 1. **CLOSE**, 2. **MARCH**.

a. Being in march in column at the command **MARCH**, the squad(s) away from the guide obliques toward the guide until the interval between men is 4 inches, and takes up the half step when abreast of the base squad. The base squad takes up the half step until the dress has been regained.

b. Being at a halt in column, the squads close by executing right (left) step. (See fig. 53.)

2-46 BEING IN COLUMN AT CLOSE INTERVAL, TO MARCH (FORM) AT NORMAL INTERVAL.—The commands are: 1. **EXTEND**, 2. **MARCH**.

a. Being march in column, at the command **MARCH**, the squad(s) away from the guide obliques away from the guide until the interval between files is one arms length, and takes up

the half step when abreast of the base squad. The base squad takes up the half step until the dress has been regained.

b. Being at a halt in column, squads extend by executing right (left) step.

2-47 BEING IN COLUMN, TO CHANGE DIRECTION.—The commands are: 1. **COLUMN RIGHT (LEFT)**, 2. **MARCH**. The right flank man of the leading rank (the guide and platoon leader excepted) is the pivot of this movement. At the command **MARCH**, the right flank man of the leading rank faces to the right in marching as prescribed in paragraph 2-9j(2), and takes up the half step until the other men of his rank are abreast of him; he then resumes the full step. The other men of the leading rank oblique to the right in marching without changing interval, place themselves abreast of the pivot man, and conform to his step. The ranks in rear of the leading rank execute the movement on the same ground and in the same manner as the leading rank (See fig. 54.)

2-48 BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM LINE TO FRONT.—The commands are: 1. **COLUMN RIGHT**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **PLATOON**, 4. **HALT**, 5. **LEFT**, 6. **FACE**. Column right is executed as prescribed in paragraph 2-47. The command **HALT**, is given after the change of direction is completed.

2-49 BEING IN ANY FORMATION IN MARCH, TO MARCH TOWARD THE FLANK.—The commands are: 1. **BY THE RIGHT (LEFT) FLANK**, 2. **MARCH**. At the command **MARCH**, given as the right foot strikes the ground, each individual executes the movement as prescribed in paragraph 2-9j (2). If the platoon is in column at close interval, the squads in rear of the squad which becomes the leading squad take up the half step until they each reach 40 inches distance from the squad ahead. This movement is used for short distances only.

2-50 TO STACK ARMS.—Before stacking arms, ranks are opened. Arms are then stacked by each squad as prescribed in paragraph 2-32.

2-51 BEING IN LINE, TO OPEN RANKS.—The commands are: 1. **OPEN RANKS**, 2. **MARCH**, 3. **READY**, 4. **FRONT**. At the command **MARCH**, the front rank takes two paces forward, halts, and executes dress right.

The second rank takes one pace forward, halts, and executes dress right. The third rank, if present, stands fast and executes dress right. Each succeeding rank present takes two (four) (six) steps backward, halts and executes dress right. Each squad executes dress right individually. The platoon leader, moving by the most direct route, places himself on the flank of the platoon toward which the dress is made, one pace from and in prolongation of the front rank and facing down the line. From this position, he alines the front rank. He then faces to the left in marching, halts on the prolongation of each succeeding rank, executes right face, and alines that rank. After verifying the alinement of the rear rank, he faces to the right in marching, moves three paces beyond the front rank, halts, faces to the left and commands: 1. READY, 2. FRONT.

2-52 BEING AT OPEN RANKS, TO CLOSE RANKS.—The commands are: 1. CLOSE RANKS, 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the front rank stands fast; the second rank takes one pace forward and halts. Each succeeding rank present takes two (three) (four) (five) paces forward respectively, and halts. Each man covers in file.

2-53 TO FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS.—*a.* Shelter tents will be pitched in line and in formation only for purposes of instruction and for formal field inspections of equipment. Normally, in bivouac, full use will be made of available cover and concealment, and straight lines will be avoided.

b. The platoon is formed for pitching shelter tents in one line. If sufficient space is not available, squad lines may be used.

c. If men are armed with rifles, rifles will be slung prior to forming for shelter tents.

d. The platoon being in line, to form in one rank for pitching shelter tents, the commands are: 1. FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH, 3. TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 4. MARCH, 5. COUNT OFF.

(1) At the command FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS TO THE LEFT, the second in command moves to a position on the right of the right man of the front rank. The messengers take position on the left of the left man of the rear rank.

(2) At the command MARCH, all squads except the squad in the first rank face to the left in marching and step off. Squad leaders move their squads into line abreast of the squad(s) already on line by giving the appropriate commands: 1. BY THE RIGHT FLANK, 2. MARCH, and 1. SQUAD, 2. HALT.

(3) At the commands 3. TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 4. MARCH, 5. COUNT OFF, given by the platoon leader, the entire rank executes these movements as prescribed in paragraphs 2-31*a* and 2-23.

e. On direction of the platoon leader, the odd numbers draw their bayonets and thrust them into the ground alongside the outside of the left heel near the instep. The bayonet indicates the position of the front tent pole. Men not equipped with bayonets mark the place with the left heel. Odd and even numbers (Nos. 1 and 2; Nos. 3 and 4; etc.) pitch tents together.

f. To assemble, the commands are: 1. ASSEMBLE TO THE RIGHT, 2. MARCH, 3. RIGHT, 4. FACE, 5. COLUMN OF TWOS (THREES, FOURS) TO THE RIGHT, 6. MARCH. (See pars. 2-31*b* and 2-54.) The platoon petty officer and messengers resume their normal posts.

2-54 TO FORM COLUMN OF TWOS AND SINGLE FILE AND RE-FORM.—The platoon may be marched in column of twos or single file by the procedure given below. This is not a precise movement. It is practiced in drill so that, when necessary, the movement may be executed smoothly and without delay. The change of column is always made from a halt.

a. Being in column of threes, to form column of twos, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF TWOS FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the right two squads march forward; the left squad forms column of twos to the left as prescribed for the squad in paragraph 2-34, and then executes column half right and column half left so as to follow in column the leading squads. Normal distances are maintained. (See fig. 55-1.)

b. Being in column of twos, to re-form in column of threes, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF THREES TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the leading two squads stand fast. The rear squad

forms single file from the right, as indicated in figure 55-2, moving into its normal place beside the leading squads by executing column half left, then column half right. It is halted when its leading file is on line with the leading rank of the platoon.

c. The following movements are executed in a manner similar to those explained in *a* and *b* above:

(1) Being in column of four or more files, to form column of twos, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF TWOS FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), 2. MARCH.

(2) Being in column of twos, to re-form in column of four or more files, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF FOURS (FIVES, SIXES) TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH.

(3) Being in column of two or more files, to form single file, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF FILES FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT), 2. MARCH.

(4) Being in single file, to re-form in column of two or more files, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF TWOS (THREES, FOURS) TO THE LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH.

2-55 TO FORM FOR PHYSICAL DRILL.—
See chapter 12.

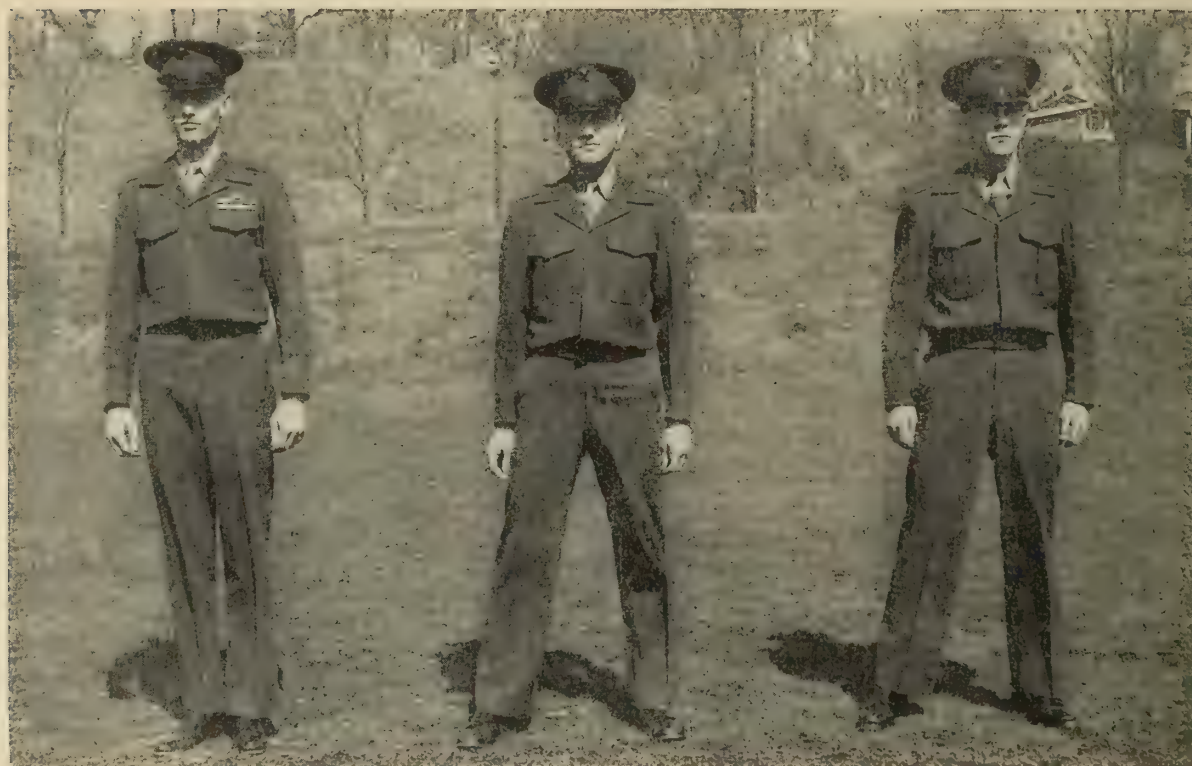


FIGURE 53.—Close march.



FIGURE 53.—Close march—Continued



March



Two

FIGURE 54.—Column right, march.



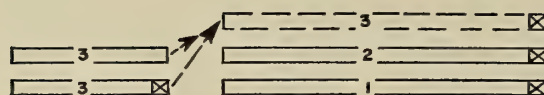
Movement completed

FIGURE 54.—Column right, march—Continued



COLUMN OF TWOS FROM COLUMN OF THREES

FIGURE 55-1



REFORM COLUMN OF THREES

FIGURE 55.—Column of twos from column of threes and re-form.

SECTION VI

DRILL, THE COMPANY

	Par.	Page
General.....	2-56	79
Rules for company drill.....	2-57	79
To form the company.....	2-58	80
Being in line to march to the right (left).....	2-59	80
To form with close interval between men.....	2-60	81
To dismiss the company.....	2-61	81
To aline the company.....	2-62	82
Previous instructions applicable.....	2-63	82
Being in column at close interval, to form company mass.....	2-64	82
Being in column, to form extended mass formation.....	2-65	82
Being in mass formation, to change direction.....	2-66	83
Being in company mass, to form column.....	2-67	84
To form column of platoons in line.....	2-68	84

2-56 GENERAL.—*a.* A company consists of a company headquarters and two or more platoons.

b. For close-order drill and ceremonies, company headquarters personnel present may be attached to platoons to equalize the strength thereof, but without interfering with the permanent squad organization. For marches or special purposes, members of the company headquarters command group are formed as shown in figure 57 or as directed by the company commander or higher authority.

c. (1) Posts of officers, key petty officers, and the guidon bearer at the various company formations for drills and ceremonies are as shown in figures 56, 57, 58, 59, and 60.

(2) In all cases, distances are normal except for the guidon bearer with the company in line or in mass formation when he is one pace to the rear and three paces to the left of the company commander.

(3) For marches in the field, the guidon is disposed with company headquarters baggage or as otherwise directed. If carried by the guidon bearer, the latter takes the position shown in figure 57.

2-57 RULES FOR COMPANY DRILL.—

a. The platoon, rather than the company, is the basic drill unit. Only such formations are prescribed for the company as are necessary for marches, drills, and ceremonies. The company forms in line, in column, in mass or extended mass formation, and in column of platoons in line as shown in figures 56, 57, 58, 59, and 60.

b. In company drill, if all men in the unit are to execute the same movement simultaneously, the platoon leaders repeat the preparatory commands of the company commander for the facings and marchings, except that when the preparatory command of the company commander is **COMPANY** the platoon leaders give the preparatory command **PLATOON**. When the platoons of the company are to execute a movement in successive order, such as a column movement, the platoon leader of the first platoon to execute the movement repeats the company commander's preparatory command, and those of following platoons give an appropriate caution such as **CONTINUE THE MARCH**. Platoon leaders of following platoons repeat the company commander's preparatory command and command of execution at the proper time to cause their platoons to execute the movement on the same ground as the first platoon. In giving commands or cautions, platoon leaders may prefix the number of the platoon, as 1. **FIRST PLATOON**, 2. **HALT**, or **SECOND PLATOON**, **FORWARD**. The foregoing applies, when necessary, to movements executed in route step or at ease. Platoon leaders do not repeat the company commander's commands for the company to fall out, stack arms, take arms, or execute the manual of arms, or commands which do not require coordinated execution.

c. Whenever commands are given involving movements of the company in which one pla-

toon stands fast or continues the march, while one or more of the others do not, its leader commands: **STAND FAST** or **CONTINUE THE MARCH**, as the case may be.

d. The company does not execute marchings in line except for minor changes in position.

2-58 TO FORM THE COMPANY.—*a.*

The chief petty officer takes post nine paces in front of the point where the center of the company is to be, faces that point, and commands: **FALL IN**. At the command **FALL IN**, the company forms in two or more ranks with normal interval between men (unless close interval is directed) and three-pace intervals between platoons as indicated in figure 56.

b. Each platoon petty officer takes post three paces in front of the point where the center of his platoon will be. The platoons then form as prescribed in paragraph 2-41, under the supervision of the platoon petty officers.

c. The platoon petty officers then command: **REPORT**. Remaining in position (at order arms if armed with the rifle) the squad leaders, in succession from front to rear in each platoon, salute and report, "All present," or "Seaman ----- absent." Platoon petty officers then command: 1. **INSPECTION**, 2. **ARMS**, 3. **ORDER**, 4. **ARMS**, and face about. At command **REPORT**, given by the chief petty officer, the platoon petty officers, beginning with the right platoon, successively salute and report, "All present or accounted for" or "----- men absent."

d. All platoons having reported, the chief petty officer commands: **POSTS**. The platoon petty officers face about and move by the most direct routes to the positions shown in figure 55. The chief petty officer then faces the company

commander, salutes, and reports, "Sir, all present or accounted for" or "Sir, ----- men absent," and without command faces about and moves by the most direct route to the position shown in figure 56. Upon completion of the chief petty officer's report, the company commander draws sword, if so armed.

e. If the platoons cannot be formed in regularly organized squads, the platoon petty officers command: 1. **INSPECTION**, 2. **ARMS**, 3. **RIGHT SHOULDER**, 4. **ARMS**, and call the roll. Each man as his name is called answers, "Here," and comes to order arms. The platoon petty officers then divide the platoons into squads and report as described above.

f. The company commander places himself 12 paces in front of the center of and facing the company in time to receive the report of the chief petty officer. The second in command and officers commanding platoons take their posts immediately after the chief petty officer has reported and, when armed with the sword, draw sword with the company commander; when armed with the carbine, they stand at attention with the piece in the carrying position.

g. In forming the company, all who are required to salute and make a report, report in the position of salute and hold the salute until it is returned. The officer receiving the report does not return the salute until the report is completed.

2-59 BEING IN LINE, TO MARCH TO THE RIGHT (LEFT).—The company is faced to the right (left) and marched as prescribed for the platoon in paragraph 2-27. The company commander, chief petty officer, and guidon bearer take positions as shown in figure 57.

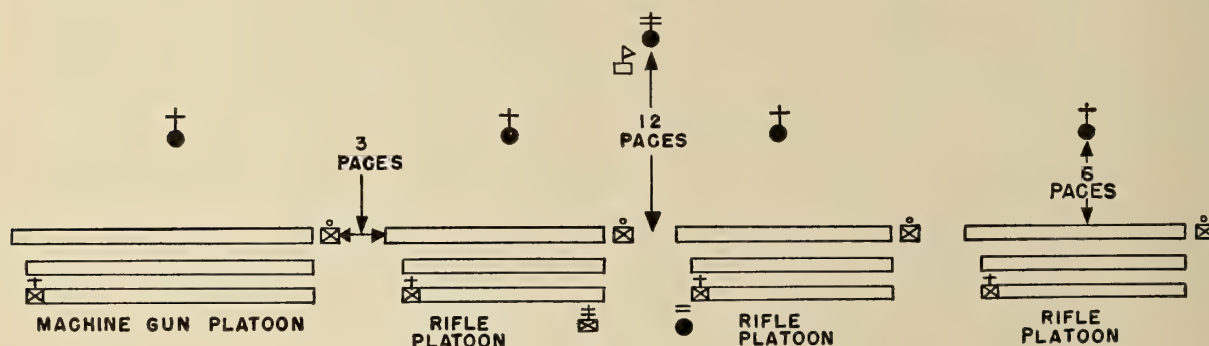


FIGURE 56.—Rifle company in line.

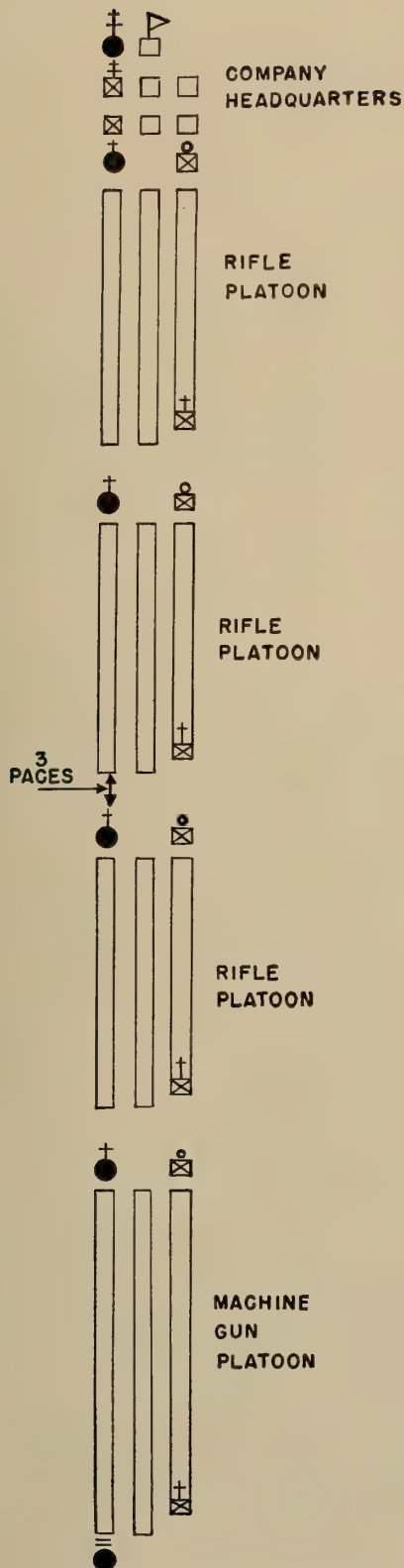


FIGURE 57.—Rifle company in column.

The second in command of the company will normally take post in rear of the left squad of the rear platoon at 40 inches distance.

2-60 TO FORM WITH CLOSE INTERVAL BETWEEN MEN.—The commands are: 1. AT CLOSE INTERVAL, 2. FALL IN. At the command FALL IN, the company forms as prescribed in paragraph 2-57, with each platoon forming as prescribed in paragraph 2-40*b*. This formation is used only for roll calls or where space is limited.

2-61 TO DISMISS THE COMPANY.—

a. The commands are: 1. CHIEF PETTY OFFICER, 2. DISMISS THE COMPANY. The company being in line at a halt, at the command 1. CHIEF PETTY OFFICER, the chief petty officer moves by the most direct route to a point three paces from the company commander (nine paces in front of the center of the company), halts, and salutes. The company commander acknowledges the salute and commands: 2. DISMISS THE COMPANY. The platoon petty officer salutes; the company commander acknowledges the salute, returns the sword, if so armed, and falls out; the other officers of the company return sword, if so armed, and fall out at the same time. The platoon petty officers take their posts three paces in front of the centers of their platoons. The chief petty officer, when his salute is returned, executes about face and commands: 1. INSPECTION, 2. ARMS, 3. PORT, 4. ARMS, 5. DISMISSED.

b. The platoons being in line at a halt, dismissal may also be ordered by the command DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS. The platoon commanders salute; the company commander acknowledges the salute and falls out. The platoon commanders execute about face and order the dismissal of the platoons with the commands: 1. PLATOON PETTY OFFICER, 2. DISMISS THE PLATOON. This is executed as prescribed for 1. CHIEF PETTY OFFICER, 2. DISMISS THE COMPANY as in *a* above, the platoon petty officer taking the post three paces in front of the center of his platoon.

c. The chief petty officer may cause platoons to be dismissed by the platoon petty officers by giving them the command DISMISS YOUR PLATOONS. The platoon petty officers salute; the chief petty officer acknowledges the salute and falls out. The platoon petty officers

then execute about face and dismiss their platoons as prescribed in paragraph 2-42.

2-62 TO ALINE THE COMPANY.—*a.* The company being in line at a halt, to align the company the command of the company commander is: DRESS RIGHT (CENTER, LEFT). At the command DRESS RIGHT, the platoon leader of the base platoon dresses his platoon immediately by the commands: 1. DRESS RIGHT, 2. DRESS, 3. READY, 4. FRONT. When DRESS CENTER is given, the leader of the center platoon dresses his platoon to the right in the same manner. Each platoon leader dresses his platoon toward the center (right or left) of the company as soon as the base platoon or, if not adjacent to the base platoon, the platoon next toward the base platoon has completed its dress.

b. The company being in mass formation at a halt, to align the company, the commands of the company commander are: 1. DRESS RIGHT (LEFT), 2. DRESS, 3. READY, 4. FRONT. At the command DRESS, the alinement of each rank is verified promptly by the platoon leader of the base platoon. When the platoon leader resumes his post, the company commander commands: 3. READY, 4. FRONT.

2-63 PREVIOUS INSTRUCTION APPLICABLE.—The company marches, executes change of direction, closes and extends intervals between squads in column, opens and closes ranks, stacks and takes arms as in platoon drill.

2-64 BEING IN COLUMN AT CLOSE INTERVAL, TO FORM COMPANY MASS.—

a. The company being at a halt, the commands are: 1. COMPANY MASS LEFT (RIGHT), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the leading platoon stands fast. The rear platoon(s) moves to positions alongside the leading platoon(s) at 4-inch intervals by executing column half left then column half right. Each platoon is halted when its leading rank is on line with the leading rank of the platoon(s) already on line. This forms the company in mass, with 4-inch intervals between all adjacent men in ranks. (See fig. 58.)

b. The company being in march, the commands are the same as given in *a* above. The movement is executed as described in *a* above, except that immediately after the command MARCH, the leading platoon is halted by the

commands 1. PLATOON, 2. HALT, given by the platoon leader.

2-65 BEING IN COLUMN, TO FORM EXTENDED MASS FORMATION.—The commands are: 1. COMPANY MASS ----- PACES left (right), 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the movement is executed as described in paragraph 2-64 above except that the rear platoon(s) moves to position alongside the leading platoon(s) at the intervals ordered, by executing column left and column right. Each platoon is halted when its leading rank is on line with the leading rank of the platoon(s) already on line. (See fig. 59.) This formation is used for drills and ceremonies if it is desired to increase the size of the mass in order to present a more impressive appearance. The company in this formation drills in the same

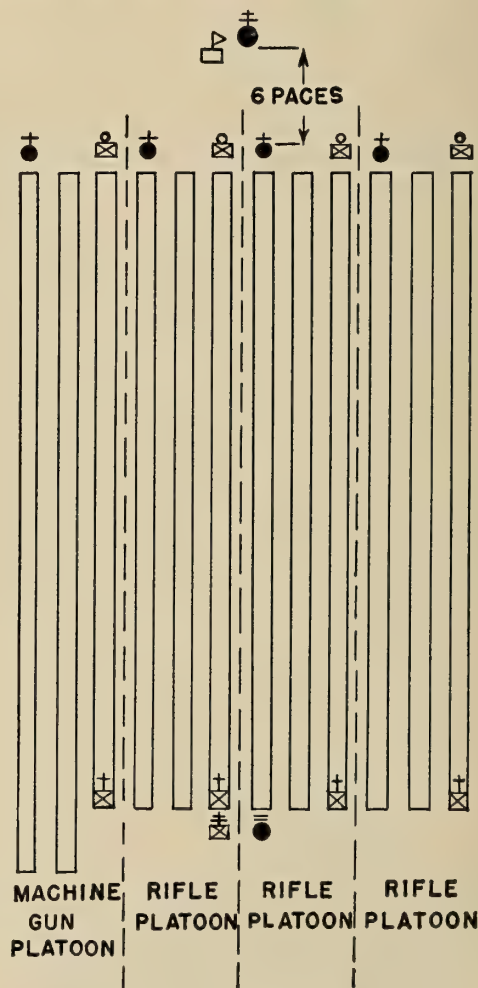


FIGURE 58.—Rifle company in mass formation.

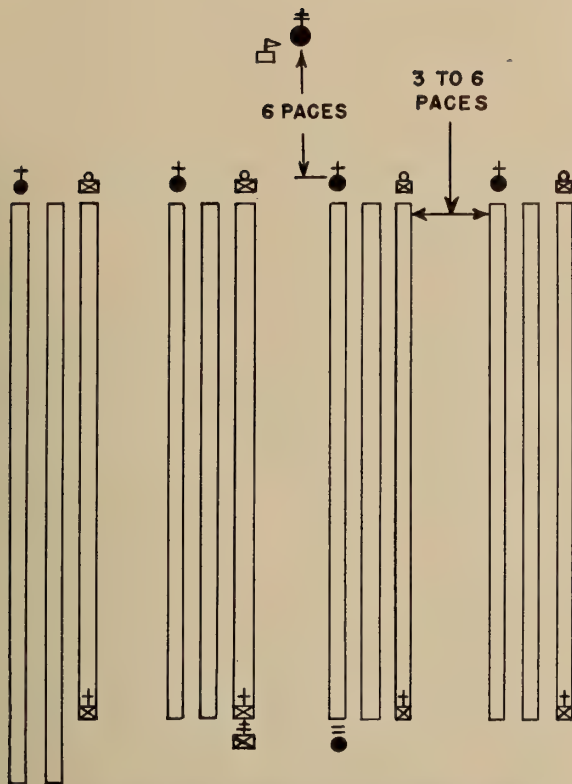


FIGURE 59.—Rifle company in extended mass formation.

manner as for mass formation, maintaining the interval between platoons.

2-66 BEING IN MASS FORMATION, TO CHANGE DIRECTION.—*a.* The commands are: 1. RIGHT (LEFT) TURN, 2. MARCH, 3. FORWARD. 4. MARCH. The right flank man of the line of guides and platoon leaders is the pivot of this movement. At the command MARCH, he faces to the right in marching and takes up the half step. Other first-rank men execute a right oblique, advance until opposite their place in line, execute a second right oblique, and, upon arriving abreast of the pivot man, take up the half step. Each succeeding rank execute a second right oblique, and upon arriving abreast of the pivot man, take up the half step. Each succeeding rank executes the movement on the same ground and in the same manner as the first rank. All take the full step at the command: 3. FORWARD, 4. MARCH, which is given by the company commander after the entire company has changed direction.

b. In turning to the left on a moving pivot, each rank guides left until the command: 3. FOR-

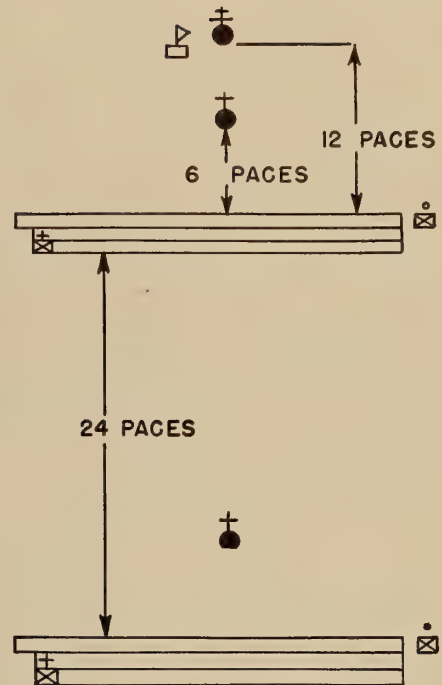


FIGURE 60.—Rifle company in column of platoons in line (with ranks closed).

WARD, 4. MARCH, after that, the guide is right unless otherwise announced.

c. The company commander faces the company and marches backward until the change in direction has been completed.

2-67 BEING IN COMPANY MASS, TO FORM COLUMN.—*a.* Being at a halt, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF FILES (TWOS, THREES, OR MORE), 2. RIGHT (LEFT) PLATOON, FORWARD, 3. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the right platoon marches forward. Each of the remaining platoons follow in column in its normal formation, executing column half right and column half left upon the commands of its leader.

b. Being in march, the commands are: 1. COLUMN OF FILES (TWOS, THREES, OR MORE), 2. RIGHT (LEFT) PLATOON, FORWARD, DOUBLE TIME, 3. MARCH. At the command MARCH, the right platoon takes up the double time. Each of the remaining platoons continues in quick time, taking up the double time at the command of its leader in time to take its place in the formation.

2-68 TO FORM COLUMN OF PLATOONS IN LINE.—Being in column of twos (threes) (fours), the commands are: 1. COMPANY MASS 24 PACES RIGHT, 2. MARCH, 3. LEFT, 4. FACE. (See fig. 60.) This formation is used for inspections.

SECTION VII

FORMATION OF THE BATTALION

	Par.	Page
General.....	2-69	85
Commands and orders.....	2-70	85
Staff.....	2-71	85
Formations.....	2-72	86
To form in column.....	2-73	86
To form in line with companies in line (for ceremonies).....	2-74	87
To form in line with companies in formation (for ceremonies).....	2-75	88
To form battalion in mass.....	2-76	89
To dismiss the battalion.....	2-77	89

2-69 GENERAL.—*a.* The formations described in this section pertain to the infantry battalion. Using them as a guide, corresponding units of other arms and of the services conform so far as is appropriate.

b. When practicable, the formation and movement of the subdivisions of the battalion should be made clear to subordinate commanders before starting the movement.

c. The battalion drills by command when in mass formation. Such drill is limited to movements for ceremonies where the units of the battalion execute the manual, facings, and marchings as one body at the command of the battalion commander. These movements are executed by the battalion in a manner similar to that prescribed for the company.

d. The assembly of units in mass formation is directed by the battalion commander. Each company commander moves his company to its place in the most convenient manner.

e. To assume any formation, the battalion commander indicates the formation desired, the point where the right (left) of the battalion is to be, and the direction in which the line or column is to face. Formations should be such that, in approaching the line on which the battalion forms, column and lines are either perpendicular or parallel to the front.

f. Upon completion of the movement ordered by the battalion commander, companies

may be given AT EASE until another movement is ordered. In ceremonies, after the ceremony has started, units remain at attention until ordered to stand at ease by the next higher commander.

g. After a battalion is halted, its subdivisions make no movement to correct alinement or position unless so directed by the battalion commander.

h. When a unit is presented to its commander or to a reviewing officer, the officer who presents it faces his unit in giving the commands: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS. When all elements of his unit are at present arms, he faces to the front and salutes. The members of his staff salute and terminate the salute with him. His guidon or flag bearer (if present) executes and terminates present guidon with his salute.

i. Officers armed with the sword in the interior of a mass formation remain at carry sword at all times except when the battalion is at rest or at ease.

2-70 COMMANDS AND ORDERS.—The commands or orders of the battalion commander are given orally, by bugle, by signal, or by means of staff officers or orderlies who communicate them to the commanders concerned.

2-71 STAFF.—*a.* The staff of a commander forms in his rear in one rank at a distance of one and one-half paces. Enlisted personnel form one and one-half paces in rear of the commissioned staff. If only one staff officer is present, he is posted one pace to the right and one and one-half paces to the rear of the commander. Staff officers usually are arranged from right to left in order of rank, the senior on the right, but the commander may cause them to be arranged in any order he desires. Enlisted personnel forming with the staff ordinarily are posted in order of rank from right to left, except that the bearer of a general or flag officer's flag is on the right.

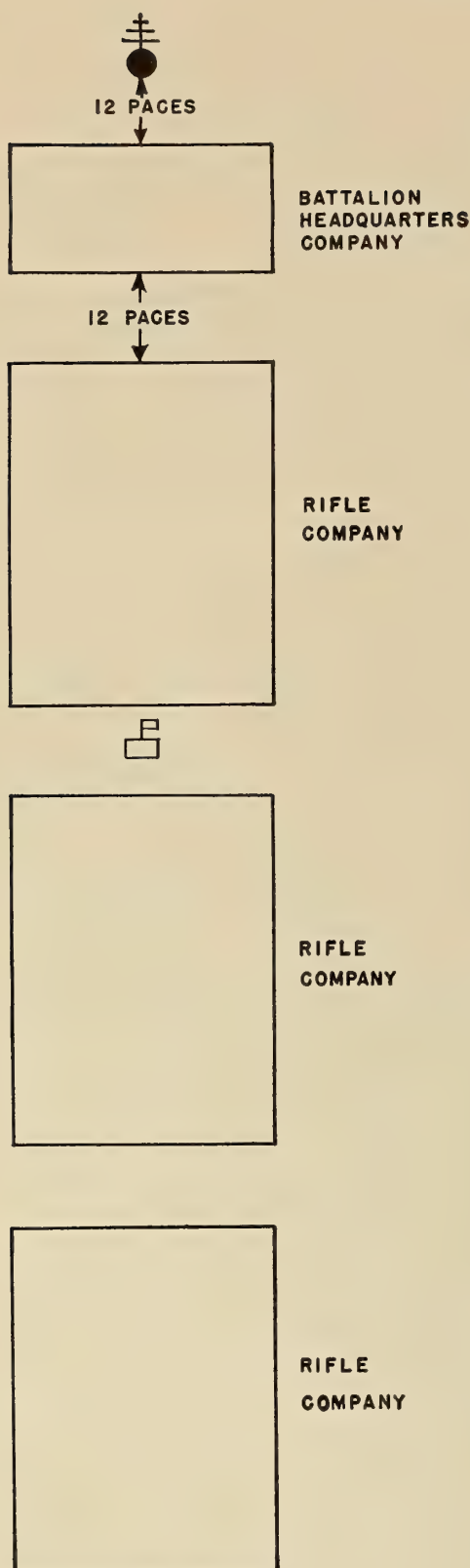


FIGURE 61.—Battalion in column.

b. When necessary to reduce the front of the staff as in marching, it forms a column of threes under the direction of the senior staff officer and follows the commander.

c. When it is prescribed that the staff change its position in order to place itself in rear of the battalion commander (who has faced about, as when the battalion commander, having formed his battalion, faces the reviewing officer by facing about), the senior staff officer will, by appropriate commands, cause the staff to execute left face, change direction to the right twice (column right), halt, and face to the right, placing it in its correct position.

d. When the battalion commander faces to the right (left) and marches off, the staff conforms by making a turn, guiding on the staff officer on the right.

2-72 FORMATIONS.—a. Formations for the battalion are shown in figures 61 to 64, inclusive.

b. The band is posted by the adjutant as indicated in figures 62 and 63.

c. Attached units take position as directed by the battalion commander and conform to the formation and movements of the battalion.

d. In whatever direction the battalion faces, the companies are designated numerically from right to left in line and from head to rear in column; that is, first company, second company, third company, etc.

e. The terms "right" and "left" apply to actual right and left as the troops face.

f. The designation "center company" indicates the right center or the actual center company, according to whether the number of companies is even or odd.

g. Personnel of the battalion headquarters company may be attached to other companies of the battalion for ceremonies.

h. The battalion commander supervises the formation from such positions as will best enable him to correct alignments, intervals, and distances. With his staff (less the adjutant) he takes post in time to receive the report.

i. Any formation or combination of formations may be employed to meet existing conditions of space or purpose.

2-73 TO FORM IN COLUMN.—a. The battalion may form in column from line of companies in line by executing right face.

Usually, the battalion commander prescribes the formation, the direction in which the column will face, the hour or forming, the location of the head of the column, and the order in column of the headquarters, the companies, attached units, and trains. Company commanders form their units as prescribed and place them in their proper places in column by the time indicated, reporting their arrival in place to the battalion commander or adjutant. (See fig. 61.)

2-74 TO FORM IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN LINE (FOR CEREMONIES.)—

a. The adjutant indicates the line on which the battalion is to form with two flags, one on each flank. He takes post on the right of and facing down the line, and draws sword, if so armed.

b. When the band is present, the adjutant orders the band: SOUND ATTENTION. At the sounding of *Attention* by the band, the companies are brought to attention and to

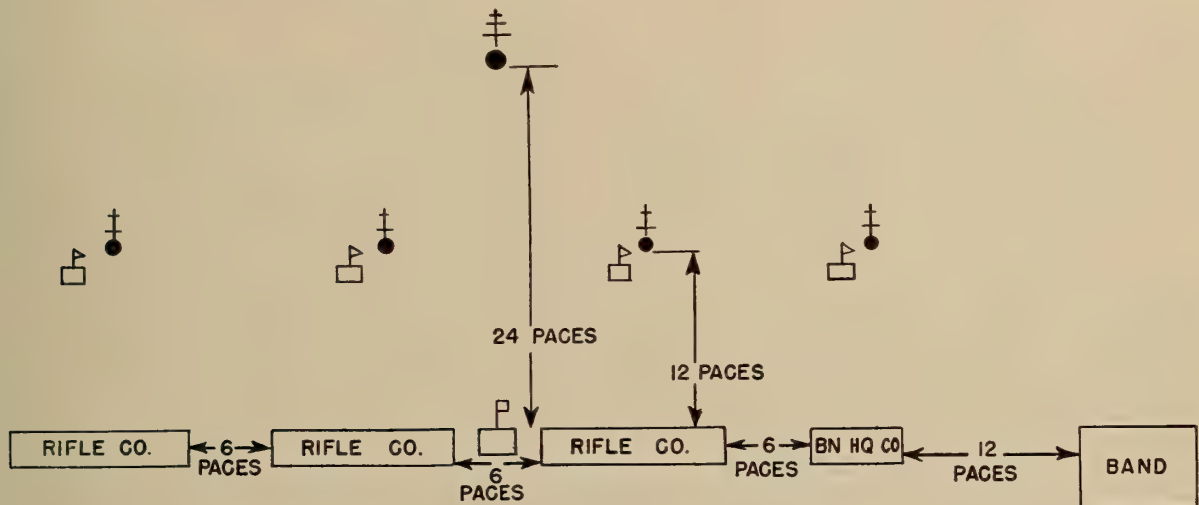
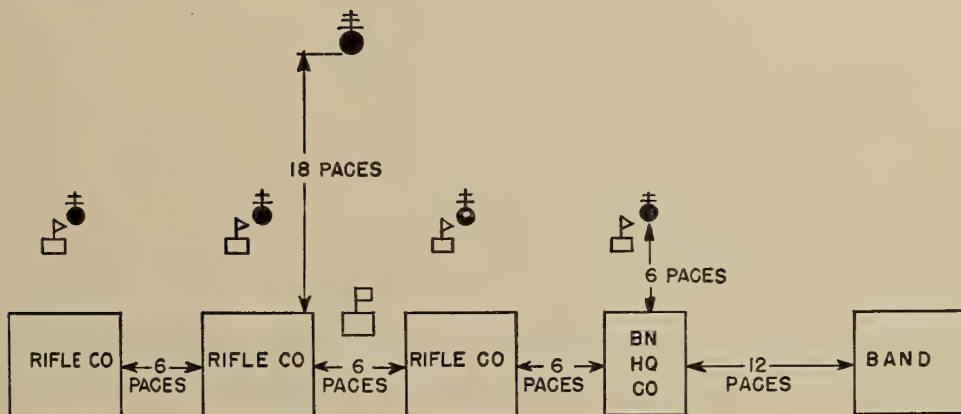
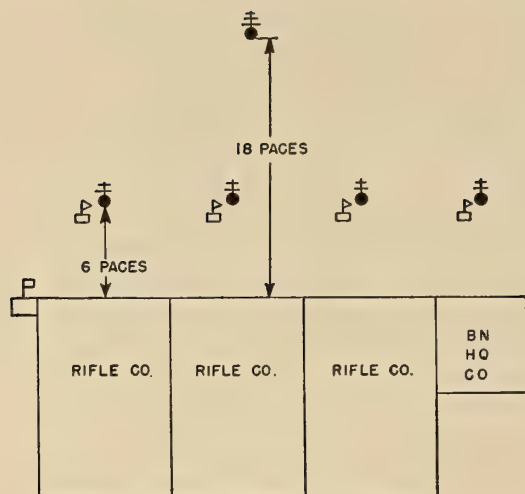


FIGURE 62.—Battalion in line with companies in line.



NOTE: RIFLE COMPANIES MAY FORM AND MARCH WITH 3 TO 6 PACES BETWEEN PLATOONS TO MAKE THE MASS APPEAR LARGER.

FIGURE 63.—Battalion in line with companies in mass formation.



NOTE: EACH COMPANY IS FORMED IN COLUMN AT CLOSE INTERVAL WITHOUT DISTANCE BETWEEN PLATOONS. COMPANIES ARE FORMED ABREAST, NORMALLY WITHOUT INTERVAL. IF A WIDER FRONTAGE IS DESIRED, COMPANIES MAY FORM WITH 3 PACES INTERVAL.

FIGURE 64.—Battalion in mass formation.

right shoulder arms from front to rear, respectively. After assuring himself that the entire battalion is at attention and at right shoulder arms, the adjutant orders the band: **SOUND ADJUTANT'S CALL.**

c. Companies are marched from the left flank in column of threes (or fours) so as to arrive at positions parallel to and in rear of the line successively from right to left. The command of execution for their movement is so time that they will step off at the first note of the march following *Adjutant's Call*. The line of march is sufficiently off the line on which the battalion is to form to permit the expeditious alinement of guides of the right company by the adjutant. As each company arrives in rear of its position, it is halted and faced to the left. The company commander then commands: **GUIDES ON LINE.** At this command, the guide of each platoon moves (at the trail) to his position on the line indicated by the flags and faces the adjutant. The adjutant alines the guides of the right company; the guides of other companies cover the guides already on the line. As soon as the guides have established themselves on the line, the company is alined as prescribed in paragraph 2-62. The right man of the front rank places himself so that his chest touches the guide.

d. When all units have reached their positions on the line, the band stops playing, and the adjutant moves by the most direct route to a position midway between the line of company commanders and the battalion commander and faces the battalion.

e. When all units are dressed, the adjutant commands: 1. **GUIDES**, 2. **POSTS**. At the command **POSTS**, the guides move to their normal positions in ranks.

f. The adjutant then brings the battalion to present arms, faces the battalion commander, salutes, and reports: "Sir, the battalion is formed."

g. The battalion commander returns the salute and orders: "Take your post, sir." The adjutant passes to the battalion commander's right and takes his post on the line of the staff. The battalion commander draws sword (if so armed) and brings the battalion to order arms. (See fig. 62.)

2-75 TO FORM IN LINE WITH COMPANIES IN MASS FORMATION (FOR CEREMONIES).—a. The procedure is the same as in forming in line except that:

(1) Companies are marched from either flank in mass formation to their position in line, the line of march being well in rear of the line on which the battalion is to form. When opposite its place in line, each company executes **LEFT (RIGHT) TURN**. As soon as this column movement has been initiated, the company commander orders: **GUIDE OF RIGHT PLATOON ON THE LINE**. At this command, the guide of the right platoon moves out at double time to the line indicated by the flags, halts, comes to order arms, and faces the adjutant. The guide indicates the right of the company.

(2) At the command: 1. **GUIDES**, 2. **POSTS**, the guides move to their normal positions.

b. Companies may be marched to position in column of threes (or fours) instead of in mass formation as above. The procedure is the same as above except that:

(1) As soon as the column movement has been initiated, the company commander orders: **GUIDE OF LEADING PLATOON ON LINE**. The guide moves out to his position on the line, the company commander commands: 1. **COM-**

PANY MASS LEFT (COMPANY MASS ----- PACES LEFT), 2. MARCH, the command of execution being so timed that the leading platoon will halt just short of the line of guides. The remaining platoons successively move into position on the left of the leading platoon at the designated interval.

(2) At the command: 1. GUIDES, 2. POSTS, the guides move to their normal positions. (See fig. 63.)

2-76 TO FORM BATTALION IN MASS.—

The procedure is the same as in forming in line except that companies are marched from either flank in column of threes (or fours) at close interval without distance between platoons, the line of march being well in rear of the line on which the battalion is to form. When opposite its place in line, each company commander executes column left (right). As soon as this column movement has been initiated, the company commander commands: GUIDE OF THE LEADING PLATOON ON THE LINE. The

guide moves out, the company is halted, and guides take their posts as described in paragraph 2-74. (See fig. 64.)

2-77 TO DISMISS THE BATTALION.—

a. The battalion commander commands: DISMISS YOUR COMPANIES. At this command, each company commander salutes the battalion commander. He acknowledges the salutes. Each company commander marches his company to the place of dismissal, and dismisses it as prescribed in paragraph 2-61.

b. The companies having marched off, the battalion commander dismisses his staff.

c. In case the battalion commander desires to release the companies to their commanders, without prescribing that the companies promptly be dismissed, he commands: TAKE CHARGE OF YOUR COMPANIES. Company commanders salute and the battalion commander returns the salute. The company commanders then take charge of their companies.

SECTION VIII

FORMATIONS OF THE REGIMENT

	Par.	Page
Formation.....	2-78	90
To form the regiment.....	2-79	90
Staff.....	2-80	90
To dismiss the regiment.....	2-81	90

2-78 FORMATIONS.—For the formations of the regiment, see figures 65, 66, 67, and 68.

2-79 TO FORM THE REGIMENT.—*a.* The regiment does not drill by command. Its battalions form and march as directed by the regimental commander. When practicable, the formation and movement of the subdivisions of the regiment should be made clear to subordinate commanders before starting the movement.

b. The regimental commander prescribes the formation, the uniform, individual and unit equipment, the place where the regiment is to form, the direction in which it will face, the hour of forming, location of the head of the column (or right of the line), and the order in column or line of the headquarters, the band, battalions, special and attached units, and trains.

c. The regimental commander gives his orders either orally, by bugle, by signal or in writing. They may be given directly to the officers concerned or communicated to them through his staff.

d. Before the regiment is formed, the regimental commander may cause the positions which are to be taken by the larger elements to be indicated by markers.

e. Battalions (or special units) are given

REST upon arrival at their designated places.

f. For ceremonies, the procedure as described for the formation of the battalion is followed except that battalion adjutants take post on the line on which the regiment is to form at *Adjutant's Call*. Battalion adjutants face down the line from positions 6 paces from the point where the right flanks of their respective battalions will rest. When all units of their battalions are on line, they move to their posts by the most direct routes.

g. The regimental adjutant acts for the regiment in a manner similar to that prescribed for the battalion adjutant.

h. When a commander, or adjutant gives a command which is to be executed by troops under the command of a subordinate commander, as when a regimental adjutant causes the troops to be brought to attention, the command is given in a voice just loud enough to be distinctly heard by the subordinate commanders. It is not separated into a preparatory command and a command of execution, nor is it given so smartly as to cause its being executed prematurely by some of the troops.

2-80 STAFF.—The regimental staff forms, changes position, and marches in a manner similar to that prescribed for the battalion staff. (See par. 2-71.)

2-81 TO DISMISS THE REGIMENT.—To dismiss the regiment, the regimental commander orders the battalion (special unit) commanders to dismiss their organizations.

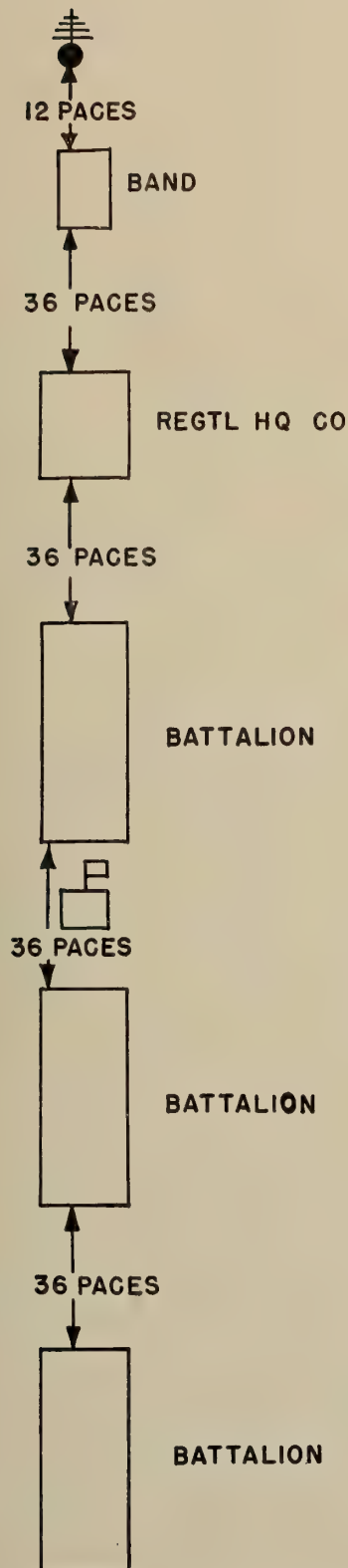


FIGURE 65.—Regiment in column with battalions in column.
795287°—50—7

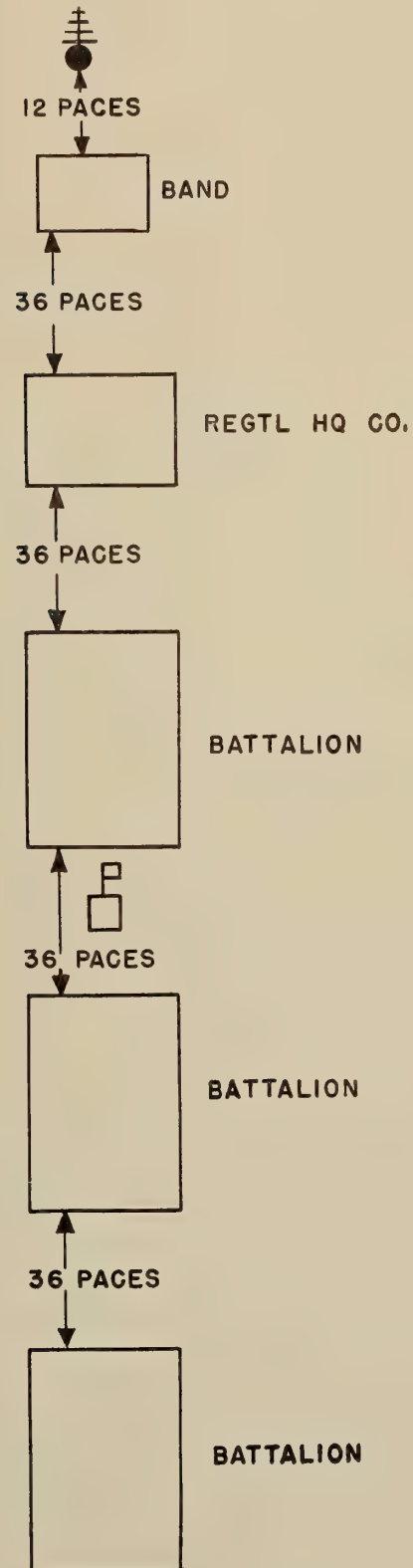


FIGURE 66.—Regiment in column with battalions in mass formation.

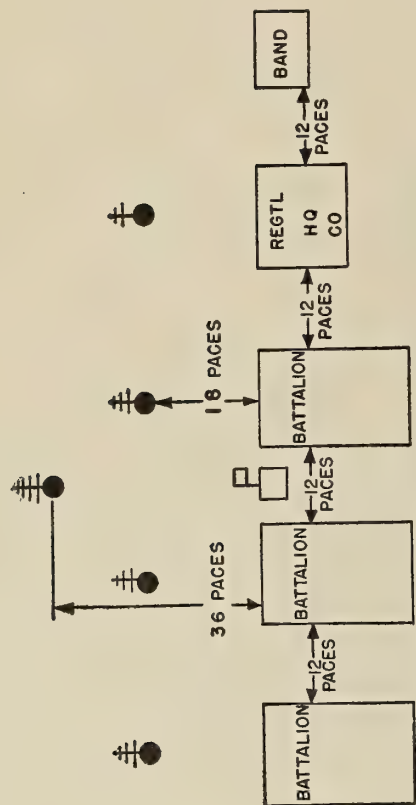


FIGURE 67.—Regiment in line with battalions in mass formation.

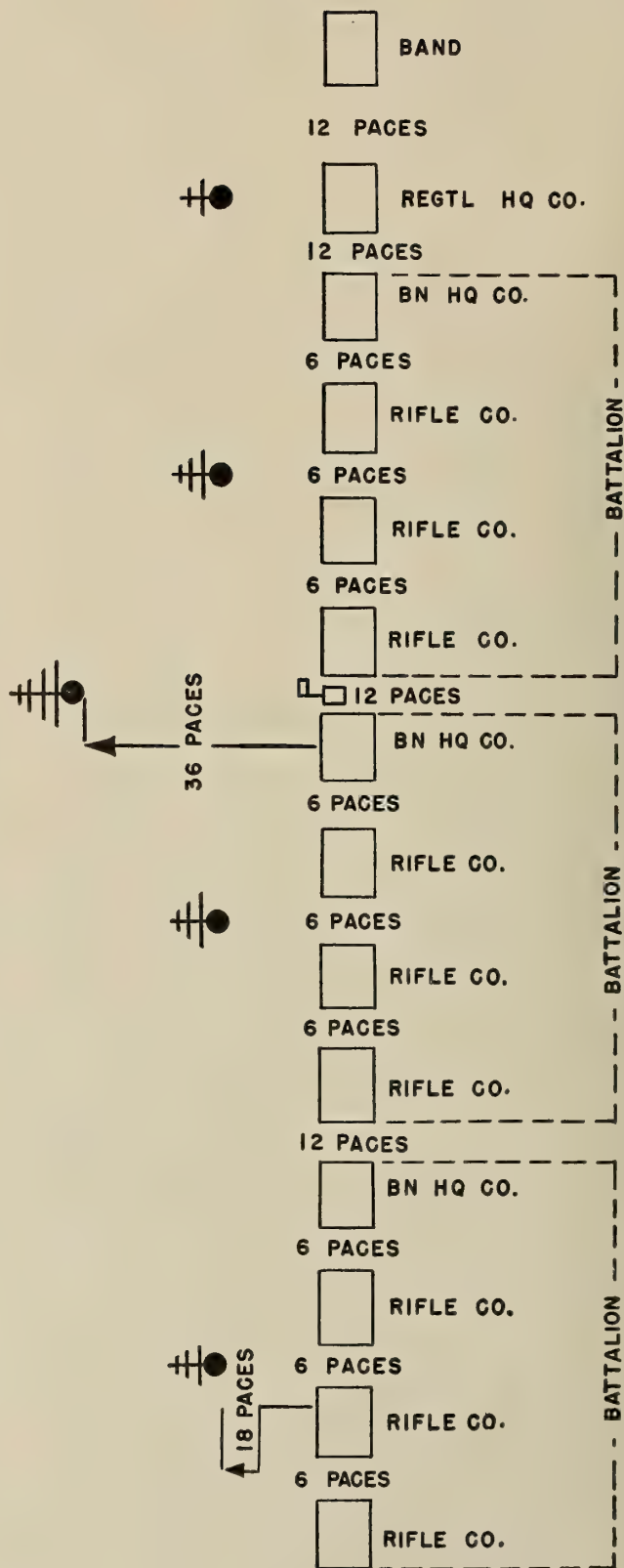


FIGURE 68.—Regiment in line with companies in mass formation.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 3 CEREMONIES

CHAPTER 3

CEREMONIES

Section	Par.	Page
I. GENERAL RULES FOR CEREMONIES.....	3-1	97
II. REVIEWS.....	3-6	98
III. PRESENTATION OF DECORATIONS.....	3-13	104
IV. PARADES.....	3-14	105
a. Battalion or Regimental.....	3-14	105
b. Battalion Ceremonial.....	3-15	105
c. Regimental Ceremonial.....	3-16	107
d. Street.....	3-17	107
V. ESCORT OF THE NATIONAL COLOR.....	3-18	109
VI. ESCORT OF HONOR.....	3-19	111
VII. HONORS.....	3-20	112
VIII. FUNERALS.....	3-26	114
IX. INSPECTIONS.....	3-31	123
a. Company.....	3-32	123
b. Battalion.....	3-35	124
c. Regimental.....	3-36	125
X. GUARD MOUNTING.....	3-38	126

SECTION I

GENERAL RULES FOR CEREMONIES

	Par.	Page
Arrangements of units in formation-----	3-1	97
Staff salutes-----	3-2	97
Place of formation-----	3-3	97
Modification of formation-----	3-4	97
Organization and equipment-----	3-5	97

3-1 ARRANGEMENT OF UNITS IN FORMATION.—*a.* When forming a mixed detachment composed of seamen and marines, the marines shall always be placed on the right or at the head of the column of troops in battalion or other infantry formation, and the senior officer of the Navy (line), or of the Marine Corps, according to rank, shall command the detachment (Navy Regulations).

b. The commanding officer of the unit concerned and his staff will actively supervise formations for all ceremonies. They will move to such positions as will best enable them to make corrections.

c. Companies in battalions, battalions in regiments, and special units are formed as prescribed in regulations governing the formations of battalions and regiments. (See ch. 2.)

d. After the troops are formed, the subordinate commanders and their staffs face to the front, and the commander and his staff face the command.

3-2 STAFF SALUTES.—When passing in review, when troops are brought to PRESENT ARMS, when passing the color, and during the playing of *To the Color* or the *National Anthem*, the staffs of the various commanders of troops execute the salute with their commanders. At other times, only the commander salutes.

3-3 PLACE OF FORMATION.—*a.* At ASSEMBLY, companies are formed and inspected on their designated parade.

b. At *Adjutant's Call*, except for ceremonies involving a single battalion, each battalion will be formed on its own parade, reports received, and the battalion presented to the battalion commander. At the second sounding of *Adjutant's Call*, the regiment is formed on the regimental parade.

3-4 MODIFICATION OF FORMATIONS.—Formations for ceremonies may be modified by commanding officers only when the nature of the ground or exceptional circumstances require such changes to be made.

3-5 ORGANIZATION AND EQUIPMENT.—For training, it is desirable in ceremonies and street parades, to have ships' landing party units organized, armed, and equipped as for combat operations ashore.

SECTION II

REVIEWS

	Par.	Page
Elements of a review.....	3-6	98
Commanding officer of troops.....	3-7	98
Preparations.....	3-8	98
Troop formations.....	3-9	98
Forming for the review.....	3-10	98
Reviewing party.....	3-11	99
Ceremony for a review.....	3-12	101

3-6 ELEMENTS OF A REVIEW.—A review consists of four parts:

- a.* Formation of troops.
- b.* Presentation and honors.
- c.* Inspection (passing around the troops).
- d.* March in review.

3-7 COMMANDING OFFICER OF TROOPS.—The senior officer present in the ceremony is designated as commanding officer of troops. He is responsible for the formation, presentation, and march in review. A commander reviewing his own troops designates some other officer as commanding officer of troops. When the review is given for a visiting high commander or civilian dignitary, the local commander designates a commanding officer of troops so that he may accompany and receive the review with the visitor.

3-8 PREPARATIONS.—The line on which the troops are to form and along which they are to march is marked out or otherwise designated by the adjutant of the unit. The post of the reviewing officer is marked with a flag which will be placed opposite the center of the line of troops. (See fig. 1.)

3-9 TROOP FORMATIONS.—*a.* Any of the formations prescribed for the battalion or regiment may be used. (See Ch. 2.) Such formation may be modified to meet the local situation. The formation used depends on the space available and the formation in which the units are to pass in review; however, the formation selected should have all squad columns either perpendicular or parallel to the line on which the troops form.

b. In reviews of a regiment or larger group, especially when troops pass in review in mass formation, special arrangements are made to provide for the forming of normal march columns after the troops have passed the reviewing officer. This may be done by assigning areas, that will not block the line of march, into which different units can move while still in mass formation.

3-10 FORMING FOR THE REVIEW.—*a.* Battalions and regiments are formed on the line of troops as prescribed in Chapter 2, Sections VII and VIII. In reviews in which two or more arms are present, the troops are arranged as directed by the commanding officer of troops. The following order, from right to left in line, may be used as a guide: infantry regiments and other units which contain foot troops; artillery; tanks; motorized service units. In each category, the units are arranged in order of rank of their commanders, with senior commander on the right.

b. Troops move to position in the most convenient manner. In large reviews, the commanding officer of troops prescribes the routes and time of arrival. If the frontage of units has been measured and marked, they may arrive in any convenient order and occupy their place in line. If this is not done, units must form successively from the right. The former method is preferable.

c. (1) When all units are formed and alined, the troops are presented to the commanding officer of troops by a designated staff officer, normally the adjutant. The commanding officer of troops and his staff take position so as to be in front of the post of the reviewing officer, midway between the line of the next lower echelon commanders in the formation and the post of the reviewing officer.

(2) If the formation consists of one battalion, it executes PRESENT ARMS at the command of

the adjutant. If the formation consists of one regiment, at the command of the adjutant, the commanders of battalions and special units bring their units to present arms, starting with the center (right center) battalion and continuing simultaneously toward both flanks. If the formation consists of two or more regiments, the regimental commanders repeat the command of the adjutant, starting with the center (right center) regiment and continuing simultaneously toward both flanks. The battalion and special unit commanders within the respective regiments then bring their units to present arms as described above.

(3) The commanding officer of troops returns the salute of the staff officer who presented the command directs him to take his post. He then executes DRAW SWORD (if so armed) and brings the command to ORDER ARMS and gives REST or AT EASE. The commanding officer of troops and his staff then change position so as to face the post of the reviewing officer.

d. (1) When a review is held at evening colors, the troops must be formed in sufficient time so that the commanding officer of troops can bring them to PRESENT ARMS, and command SOUND RETREAT (or give a signal to the band or buglers) at the correct time for COLORS. The bugles sound retreat and immediately afterward the band plays the *National Anthem*. The flag is lowered as the band plays the *National Anthem*.

(2) The commanding officer of troops remains facing the troops and salutes at the first note of the *National Anthem*. Upon completion of the last note of the *National Anthem*, he faces the reviewing officer and salutes him. The reviewing officer returns the salute. The commanding officer of troops again faces the troops, brings them to order arms and the ceremony proceeds.

3-11 REVIEWING PARTY.—a. When the troops have formed on the line and have been presented to the commanding officer of troops,

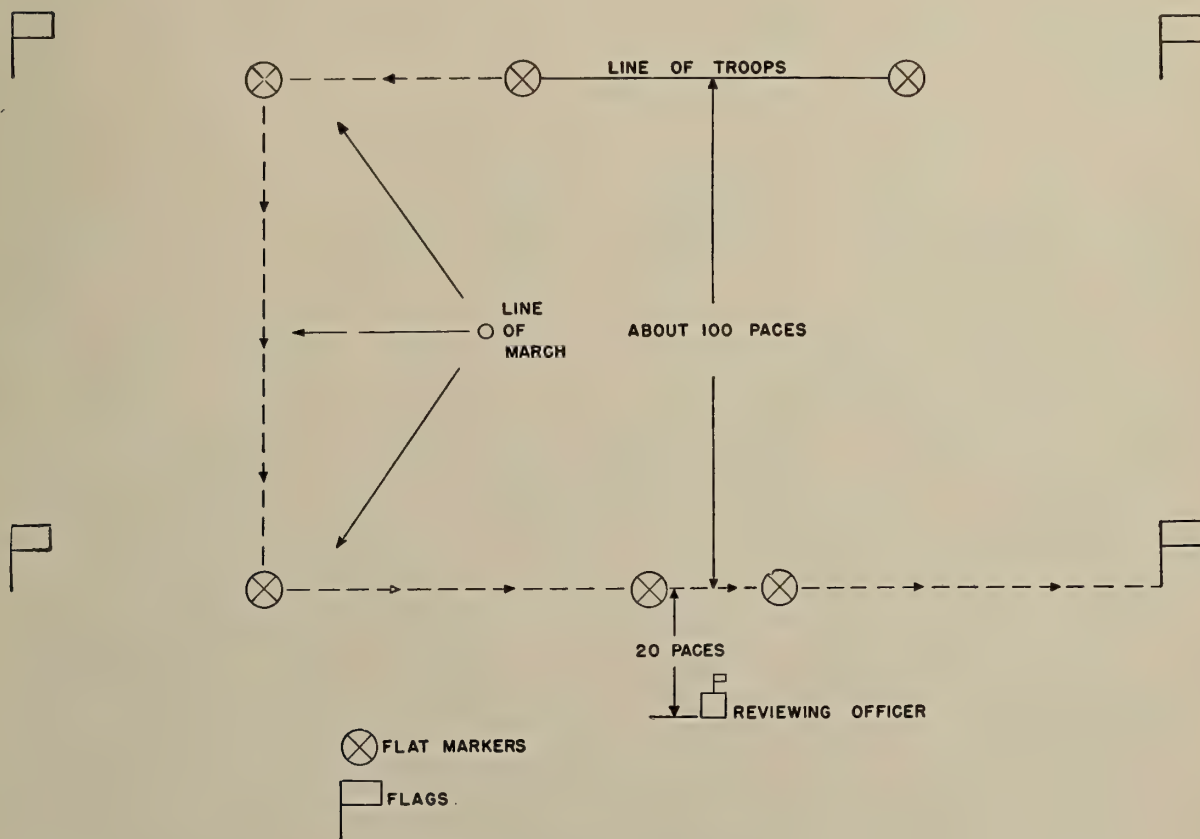
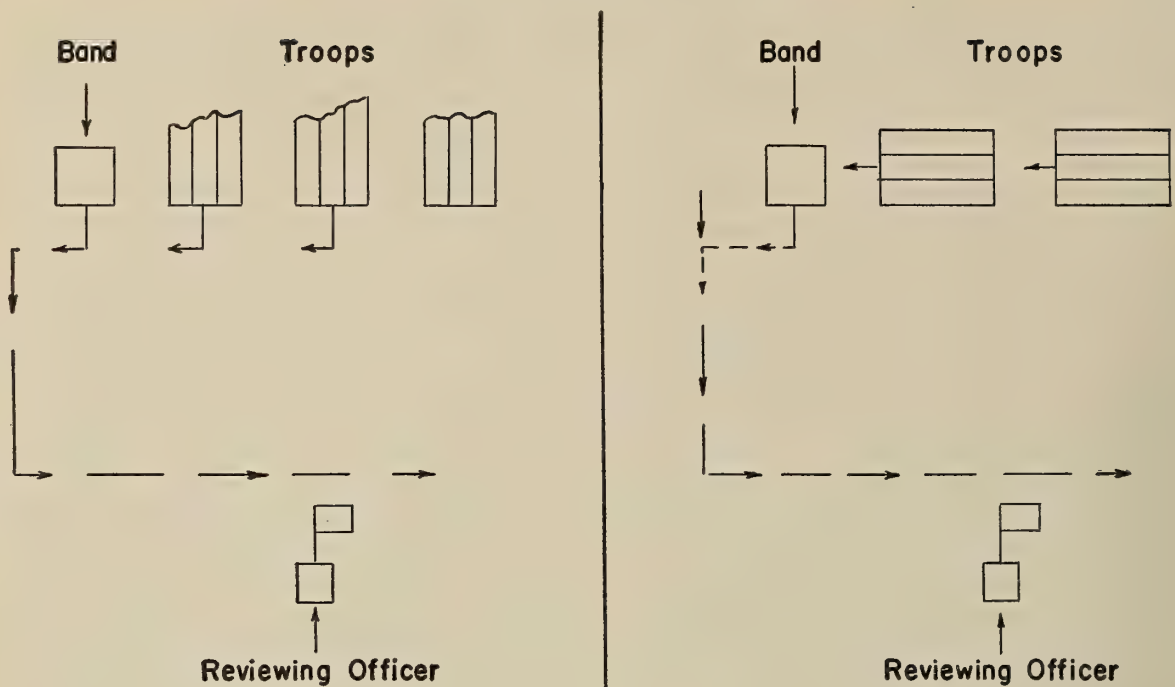


FIGURE 1.—Preparations for review.



Units in column. To pass in review, units execute column right and follow line of march.

Units in line. To pass in review, units execute right face and follow line of march.

FIGURE 2.—Formations for review.

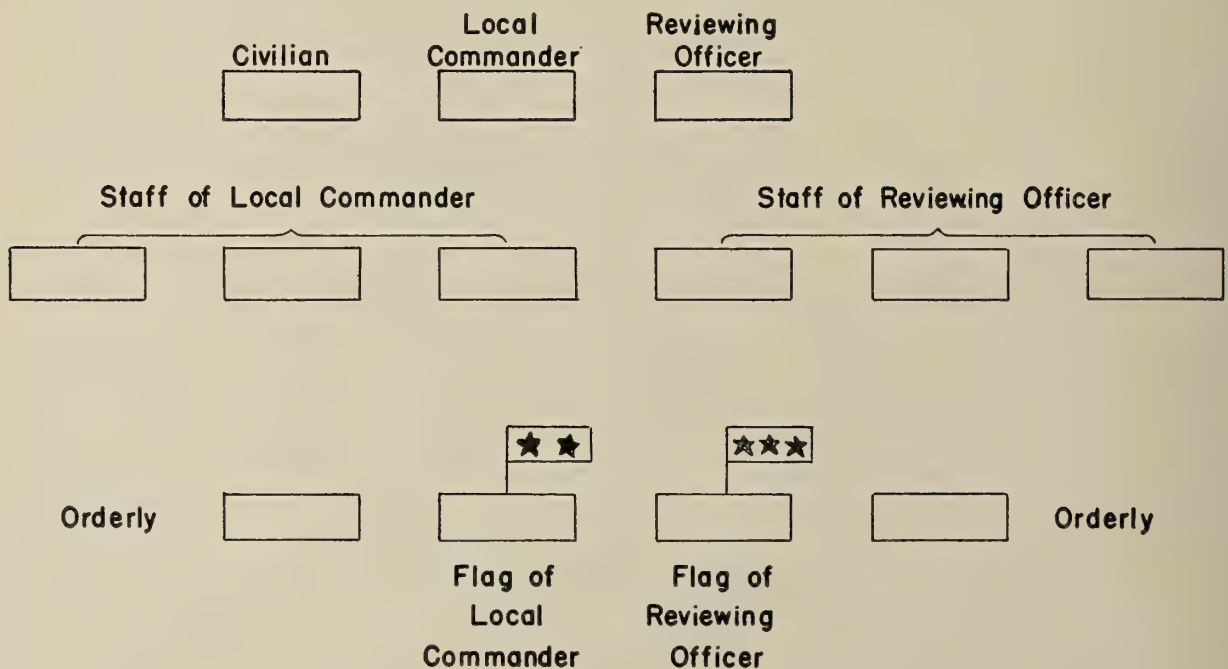


FIGURE 3.—Reviewing party.

the reviewing officer with his staff and orderlies moves to his position opposite the center of the line of troops to receive the review.

b. The local commander (if not acting as commanding officer of troops), distinguished civilians invited to accompany the reviewing officer, staffs, and enlisted personnel take positions facing the troops as shown in figure 3. When an organization is to be reviewed before an inspecting or other officer junior in rank to the local commander, the former takes position on the left of the local commander.

c. An officer from the local staff is designated to escort distinguished civilians and to indicate to them their proper places. If a civilian is to receive the review, he takes position on the right of the local commander and, if necessary, timely explanation of the ceremony is made to him.

3-12 CEREMONY FOR A REVIEW.—

a. Presentation and honors.—(1) As the reviewing officer moves to his position, the commanding officer of troops brings his command to attention. Troops come to attention at the commands of their respective battalion commanders.

(2) When the reviewing officer is in position, the commanding officer of troops faces his troops and directs PRESENT ARMS, which is executed in the manner prescribed in paragraph 3-10. When all units have come to present arms, he turns about and salutes the reviewing officer. His staff and orderlies salute with him.

(3) Honors are then rendered to the reviewing officer when his grade so entitles him, as prescribed in U. S. Navy Regulations. The band (or a designated band near the center of the command, if more than one band is present) or field music sounds the honors when the commanding officer of troops and his staff salute the reviewing officer as prescribed in (2) above. When the honors are completed, the commanding officer of troops terminates his salute (his staff conforming) and brings the troops to order arms. If the formation consists of more than one battalion, he orders AT EASE.

(4) When artillery is present in the review and when the commanding officer of troops deems it practicable, a salute may be fired. The first gun is fired with the first note of the honors. The detachment firing the salute

rejoins its unit after the salute is fired. The salute may be fired for those entitled to a gun salute in addition to the salute provided in U. S. Navy Regulations, for visiting officials. Its use should be limited to special ceremonial occasions.

(5) When the grade of the reviewing officer entitles him to the honor, each regimental color salutes with its command.

(6) The reviewing officer, his staff, and all military spectators salute at the first note of the music and retain the salute until the music is completed.

b. Inspection.—(1) The reviewing officer and his party move forward to the commanding officer of troops. The two exchange salutes. Staffs do not salute. The commanding officer of troops then conducts the reviewing party around the formation, beginning with the unit on the right of the line and passing in front of the line and then back around the rear of the formation. While passing around the troops, the reviewing officer may direct that his staff, flag, and orderlies remain at the post of the reviewing officer, or that only his personal staff and flag accompany him. The commanding officer of troops and the local commander accompany the reviewing officer while passing around the troops and march on that side of the reviewing officer which is away from the troops. The staffs of the commanding officer of troops, of the local commander (if present), and of the reviewing officer follow, each staff following its own commander in column of files. In passing around the troops, the staffs maintain the formation in which they commence their march. If the inspection is to be made in motor cars, the reviewing party enters cars which drive up to the post of the reviewing officer after completion of the honors. One seat in each car on the side away from the troops during the inspection is left vacant. The cars move to the post of the commanding officer of troops. The commanding officer of troops exchanges salutes with the reviewing officer, enters the reviewing officer's car, and occupies the vacant seat. His staff officers occupy the vacant seats in the remaining cars. Orderlies and flags remain at their posts.

(2) The reviewing officer makes such general inspection of the command as he may desire

while passing around the troops. A detailed inspection is not a part of the ceremony of review.

(3) The band of an organization plays while the reviewing officer is passing around the troops.

(4) If the formation is standing at ease, each company or massed unit is brought to attention as the reviewing party approaches.

(5) As the reviewing party approaches each front line company or battalion (if battalion is in mass formation), its commander gives the commands, 1. EYES, 2. RIGHT. The men execute eyes right and as soon as the reviewing officer comes into their line of vision they follow him with their eyes, turning the head, until the reviewing officer reaches their front where the head and eyes of each man individually, remain fixed to the front.

(6) On arriving at the right of the band after passing around the line, the commander of troops salutes and halts. The reviewing officer returns the salute and proceeds with his staff to his post. When the reviewing officer and his staff have passed him, the commander of troops and his staff move directly to their posts facing the reviewing officer. If the inspecting party is in motor vehicles, the stop is made at the post of the commander of troops, where the commander of troops dismounts, exchanges salutes with the reviewing officer, and resumes his post, his staff dismounting and resuming their posts at the same time. The vehicles then proceed to the post of the reviewing officer, where the members of the reviewing party dismount and resume their posts.

(7) If decorations are to be presented, that ceremony (see Sec. III, Par. 3-13) is carried out when the reviewing officer and the commanding officer of troops with their staffs return to their respective posts following the inspection of troops.

c. The march in review.—(1) When the reviewing party is again in place, the commanding officer of troops commands: PASS IN REVIEW. At the command, PASS IN REVIEW, the band of the right unit changes direction, if necessary, and halts.

(2) When the band has halted, the commander of the unit next to the band gives the command to put the troops in the march

formation designated for the review. Troops pass in review in quick time only.

(3) Other units move out in succession so as to follow at the prescribed distance.

(4) The band and each unit change direction at the points indicated without command from the commanding officer of troops. At each change of direction the commander of each mass formation (company or battalion) in turn commands: 1. LEFT TURN, 2. MARCH, 3. FORWARD, 4. MARCH. The third and fourth commands are given so that the unit steps off at full step when the change of direction is completed. Regimental commanders and battalion commanders move into position in the column at the head of their troops after the first change of direction.

(5) The commanding officer of troops moves into position at the head of the column after the second change of direction.

(6) Each commander, when he arrives 6 paces from the front of the reviewing officer, salutes. He terminates the salute when his staff has passed 6 paces beyond the reviewing officer. His staff salutes and terminates the salute with him.

(7) The band (each band if more than one) executes column left when it has passed the reviewing officer. It executes a second column left and a third column left so as to place the band in front of and facing the reviewing officer and at least 12 paces from the left flank of the marching troops. It continues to play until the regiment has passed. It then ceases playing and follows in rear of its regiment. The band of the following regiment commences to play as soon as the preceding band has ceased. In large commands, two bands may remain alongside of each other after they have turned out of column to alternate the playing. Such an arrangement is necessary to rest the musicians if the playing of march music is to be long continued. In large commands, bands may be massed and posted as directed by the commanding officer of troops as another alternative.

(8) Each company commander (or the senior company commander if the battalion is in mass formation) without turning his body commands: 1. EYES, 2. RIGHT, 3. READY, 4. FRONT.

He gives the command **RIGHT** when he is 6 paces from the front of the reviewing officer and the command **FRONT** when the rear of his unit has passed 6 paces beyond the reviewing officer. He brings his sword to the first position of present sword at the command **EYES** and to the second position at the command **RIGHT**. He resumes carry sword at the command **FRONT**. In each company or mass formation the men on the right do not execute eyes right.

(9) When passing in review, at the command, 1. **EYES**, 2. **RIGHT**, the following salute:

(a) The officer who gives the command and his staff execute present sword (or hand salute if armed with pistol or carbine). Orderlies execute hand salute. Guidon bearers execute present guidon. They all terminate the salute (or come to carry sword or guidon) with the commander.

(b) In battalion mass formation at the command, 1. **EYES**, 2. **RIGHT**, company commanders and officers in the front rank of the mass execute present sword (or hand salute if armed with pistol or carbine). No others salute.

(c) In a company not a part of a battalion mass formation, platoon leaders execute present sword (or hand salute if armed with pistol or carbine).

(d) All terminate the salute at the command **FRONT**. Those with sword or guidon return to the carry.

(e) The band leader and the drum major execute and terminate the salute at the points prescribed for other commanders.

(f) If the reviewing officer is entitled to a regimental color salute, the regimental color

salutes when 6 paces from his front and is raised when six paces beyond him. (For salutes by the regimental color see par. 2-18*h*.)

(10) Troops march in review with the guide toward the flank on which the reviewing officer is posted.

(a) After saluting the reviewing officer in passing in review, the commanding officer of troops turns out of the column and takes post at normal interval on the side of the reviewing officer toward the direction of march of the command, and returns sword. The members of his staff accompany him, take post at normal interval on the corresponding side of the reviewing officer's staff, and return sword with him. When the rear element of his command has passed, the commanding officer of troops, without changing his position, salutes the reviewing officer with the hand salute. He and the members of his staff then rejoin the command. If the commanding officer of troops and his staff are in motor cars, the cars are parked on the side of the reviewing officer toward the direction of march and in rear of the lines occupied by the reviewing officer, the commanding officer of troops and their staffs.

(11) All individuals at the reviewing stand salute the color as it passes. When passing around the troops, the reviewing officer and those accompanying him salute the color when passing in front of it.

(12) The reviewing officer returns the salute of the commanding officer of troops and the salutes of subordinate commanders down to include the battalion commanders. Those who accompany the reviewing officer do not salute.

SECTION III

PRESENTATION OF DECORATIONS

Presentation of decorations-----	Par. 3-13	Page 104
----------------------------------	--------------	-------------

3-13 PRESENTATION OF DECORATIONS.—*a.* Whenever practicable, a review will be held on occasions of:

(1) The presentation of an American decoration.

(2) The decoration of the colors.

(3) The presentation of a foreign decoration.

b. After the reviewing officer has inspected the troops and resumed his post, the commanding officer of troops, from his post commands, orders, or signals: 1. PERSONS TO BE DECORATED AND ALL COLORS, CENTER. 2. MARCH. At the command MARCH, persons to be decorated and all colors move by the most direct route and take post as follows:

(1) The persons to be decorated in single rank in the center of the command and 10 paces in front of the line of company commanders according to the rank of the decorations to be conferred, highest ranking decoration on the right. Those receiving similar decorations take position in accordance with their military rank within each decoration group.

(2) Colors to be decorated in single rank five paces in front of the center of the line of persons to be decorated in groups according to rank of decoration to be bestowed, highest ranking decoration on the right.

(3) All other colors with color guards in single rank 5 paces in rear of the center of the persons to be decorated and in the same relative position as their location in the command.

(4) The commanding officer of troops takes post 5 paces in front of the center of the leading element. At the same time his staff, under command of the senior staff officer, executes right face, moves to the right a sufficient distance to provide clearance for the colors and persons to be decorated, then halts and executes left face. The staff returns to position after the detachment has passed. When the staff has effected the necessary clearance, the commanding officer of troops commands: 1. FORWARD, 2. MARCH. At the command

MARCH, the commanding officer of troops, persons to be decorated, and the colors advance, the band playing. In all ranks, the guide is center. The detachment is halted by the commanding officer of troops when he has reached a point of 10 paces from the reviewing officer by the command: 1. DETACHMENT, 2. HALT. The band ceases playing when the detachment halts. The commanding officer of troops then salutes the reviewing officer and reports "Sir, the persons (colors) to be decorated are present." The reviewing officer returns the salute and directs that the command be presented. The commanding officer of troops returns to his post, in front of the center of his command, by moving around the right flank of the persons or colors to be decorated and then directly to his post. On reaching his post he commands: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS, faces about, and salutes. The band then plays the *National Anthem*. If only a field music is present, he sounds *To the Color*. On completion of the music, the commanding officer of troops brings the command to order arms. The persons to be decorated salute and terminate the salute at the commands PRESENT ARMS and ORDER ARMS, respectively, of the commanding officer of troops.

c. A designated officer of the staff then reads the order announcing the awards. After the reading of the order, the reviewing officer, accompanied if necessary by his staff or designated members thereof, advances to the colors and to the line of persons to be decorated and fastens the appropriate streamer to the staff of the color, and pins the decoration awarded on the left breast of each person.

d. He then resumes his post. The persons decorated, at the command of the senior officer or enlisted man, then form line at normal interval on the left of the local commander or as otherwise directed, and the colors are returned to their posts by the most direct route. When the colors have returned to their posts the reviewing officer directs the commanding officer of troops to march the command in review.

SECTION IV

PARADES

	Par.	Page
Battalion or regimental parade.....	3-14	105
Battalion ceremonial parade.....	3-15	105
Regimental ceremonial parade.....	3-16	107
Street parades.....	3-17	107

3-14 BATTALION OR REGIMENTAL PARADE.—*a.* The battalion or regimental parade is executed in the same manner as a review, except that the appearance and movement of the troops in formation are the primary considerations. For this reason, the troops usually form without heavy weapons or transportation, and all companies form as, and execute the movements prescribed for, foot troops. Small detachments are attached to larger units. The march to the initial formation is made to music (band or field music).

b. At evening parade, evening colors precedes the presentation of the troops to the reviewing officer.

c. The presentation of decorations or escort of the national color may be included after the troops have been presented to the reviewing officer.

d. The reviewing officer's inspection of troops is omitted.

e. The ceremonial parades described in paragraphs 3-15 and 3-16 are for use at the option of local commanders in lieu of the ceremony described above.

3-15 BATTALION CEREMONIAL PARADE.—*a.* The parade field is prepared and marked as prescribed for reviews. (See fig. 1.)

b. The battalion commander takes post in the same relative position as the reviewing officer does for a review. (See fig. 1.)

c. At *adjutant's call*, the troops are formed in line with companies in line, or in line with companies in mass (or extended mass) formation as for a review.

d. After the battalion has been formed and alined and the guides have taken their posts, the adjutant takes a post between the battalion commander and the center of the troops and commands: 1. PARADE, 2. REST. When the troops have executed parade rest, he com-

mands: SOUND OFF. The adjutant and the battalion commander with his staff stand at attention during the playing of the *Sound Off*, the marching by of the band, and the sounding of *Retreat* (if an evening parade).

e. At the command, SOUND OFF, the band, in place, plays the *Sound Off* of three chords, and at the conclusion of the third chord moves forward, playing a march in quick time. It executes column left so as to march across the front of the troops midway between the adjutant and the line of troops. When the band has passed the left of the line, it countermarches and returns over the same ground to the right of the line. After it passes beyond the right of the troops, it executes column right. When the entire band has passed beyond the front rank of the troops, it again countermarches and halts in its original position. When the band ceases playing the march, the *Sound Off* is again played. At evening parade, *Retreat* is then sounded by the field music.

f. (1) If it is not an evening parade, immediately after the last note of the *Sound Off* at the conclusion of the march by the band, the adjutant commands: 1. BATTALION, 2. ATTENTION, 3. PRESENT, 4. ARMS. The adjutant then faces about, salutes the battalion commander and reports, "Sir, the parade is formed." The battalion commander directs the adjutant, "Take your post, Sir," and draws sword. The adjutant passes by the battalion commander's right and takes post one and one-half paces to the rear and one pace to the right of the battalion commander.

(2) If the parade is an evening parade, the adjutant, immediately after the conclusion of *Retreat*, commands: 1. BATTALION, 2. ATTENTION, 3. PRESENT, 4. ARMS. The adjutant continues facing the troops and salutes. The band then plays the *National Anthem*, and the flag is lowered. The troops remain at present arms during the playing of the *National Anthem*. At the completion of the *National anthem*, with the troops still at present arms, the adjutant terminates his salute, faces about,

salutes the battalion commander and continues as described in paragraph *f*(1) above.

g. The battalion commander then commands: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS, and gives such movements of the manual of arms as he may desire. Officers, petty officers in command of platoons, the color guard and guidon bearers having once executed order arms, remain in that position during the movements of the manual.

h. (1) The battalion commander then directs the adjutant, "Receive the reports, Sir." The adjutant, passing by the battalion commander's right, advances toward the center of the battalion, halts midway between it and the battalion commander, and commands: REPORT.

(2) At the command REPORT, the company commanders in succession from the right salute and report, "----- company, all present or accounted for"; or "----- company, (number) officers or men absent." The adjutant returns each company commander's salute after the report is made. He returns to carry sword (if so armed) after acknowledging each salute.

(3) The reports having been received, the adjutant faces the battalion commander, salutes, and reports, "Sir, all present or accounted for," or "Sir (number) officers or men absent."

i. The battalion commander then directs, "Publish the orders, Sir." The adjutant then faces the troops and commands: ATTENTION TO ORDERS. He publishes the orders and then commands: 1. OFFICERS, 2. CENTER, 3. MARCH. After giving the command MARCH, the adjutant turns about and takes his post with the battalion commander.

j. (1) At the command OFFICERS, all company officers execute carry sword (if so armed), and all guidon bearers execute carry guidon.

(2) At the command, CENTER, when companies are in line, all company commanders, officers commanding platoons, and guidon bearers face to the center. When companies are in mass formation, all company commanders and guidon bearers face to the center. Officers commanding platoons step 1 pace forward and face to the center. Officers second in command move around the flank nearest to the center and take post in column formed by the platoon leaders.

(3) At the command MARCH, the band plays, officers and guidon bearers close to the center, halt, and individually face to the front; company commanders when moving to the center, oblique to the front and close on a line 4 paces in advance of the line of guidon bearers; guidon bearers close on their own line, each taking post in rear of his own company commander; all other officers close on the line of platoon leaders.

(4) The officers and guidon bearers having closed and faced to the front, the senior commands: 1. FORWARD, 2. MARCH. The officers and guidon bearers advance, the center officer of the leading rank being the guide, and march on the battalion commander. The officers and guidon bearers are halted by the senior with the leading rank 6 paces from the battalion commander. They halt and salute the battalion commander, who returns the salute. The battalion commander then commands: 1. CARRY, 2. SWORD. At the first command, the guidon bearers grasp the lance with the left hand, executing the first position of carry guidon, and the officers execute order sword. At the second command, the officers execute carry sword, and the guidon bearers complete the carry guidon. The battalion commander then gives such instructions as he deems necessary.

k. The battalion commander then commands: 1. OFFICERS, 2. POSTS, 3. MARCH.

(1) At the command POSTS, all officers and guidon bearers face about.

(2) At the command MARCH, they step off, the center officer of the leading rank being the guide as before.

(3) The senior officer commands: 1. OFFICERS, 2. HALT, in time to halt the leading rank 6 paces from the line of companies when companies are in line and 3 paces when they are in mass formation. He then commands: 1. POSTS, 2. MARCH.

(a) At the command POSTS, officers and guidon bearers face outward.

(b) At the command MARCH, officers step off in succession at 4 paces distance, resume their posts, and execute order sword; guidon bearers step off with their company commanders, resume their posts and execute order guidon. The music ceases to play when the

last officer has resumed his post. During the execution of officers center and officers post, except when saluting the battalion commander, all officers remain at carry sword, and all guidon bearers remain at carry guidon.

l. The battalion commander then gives the commands for the battalion to pass in review and returns sword.

m. The battalion passes in review according to the commands and principles given for a review. When the last company has passed, the ceremony is concluded.

n. The band continues to play while the companies are in march upon the parade ground. After passing in review, companies are marched to their respective parades and dismissed.

3-16 REGIMENTAL CEREMONIAL PARADE.—*a.* The regiment is ordinarily formed in line of companies with companies in mass formation. The parade proceeds as for the battalion with the following exceptions:

(1) "Regimental commander" is substituted for "battalion commander," and "regiment" for "battalion" in the description; and "battalions" for "battalion" in the commands.

(2) In moving across the front of the regiment, the band passes midway between the adjutant and the line of battalion commanders.

(3) The battalions execute present arms, order arms, parade rest, come to attention and such other movements of the manual of arms at the command of execution of their respective commanders, starting with the center or right center battalion and continuing simultaneously toward each flank. Reports are made by battalion instead of company commanders.

(4) After publishing his orders, the adjutant commands: 1. OFFICERS, 2. CENTER, 3. MARCH. Battalion commanders and their staffs close on the line of battalion commanders, company commanders oblique to the front and close on a line 4 paces in rear of the battalion staffs, guidon bearers oblique to the front and close on a line four paces in rear of the company commanders, other officers oblique to the front and close on a line 4 paces in rear of the guidon bearers.

(5) The officers and guidon bearers are returned to their posts and the regiment

marches in review as in a battalion parade.

3-17 STREET PARADES.—*a.* (1) Street parades are ordinarily commanded by a person who is designated as grand marshal. He appoints a chief of staff and aides, and issues a general order giving directions for the formation, movement, and dismissal of the parade. This order includes:

(a) The names of his staff officers, and when and where they are to report to him.

(b) The assignment of organizations and their order in brigades and divisions, and names and assignment of brigade commanders and marshals of divisions.

(c) The streets upon which the different brigades and divisions form, the direction in which their lines or columns face, where the right or head rests, and the width of the front of the subdivisions in column.

(d) The time for each division to complete its formation and stand ready to march.

(e) The time and place from which the head of the parade will move, the line of march, and the direction of the guide.

(f) Honors to be paid by the troops during the march.

(g) Instructions for the dismissal of the parade.

(h) Instructions regarding uniform.

(2) The grand marshal may review the parade, just prior to its dismissal, at some designated point beyond the reviewing stand.

b. The order of precedence in street parades is as follows:

(1) Cadets, United States Military Academy.

(2) Midshipmen, United States Naval Academy.

(3) Cadets, United States Coast Guard Academy.

(4) United States Army.

(5) United States Marines.

(6) United States Naval Forces.

(7) United States Coast Guard detachments.

(8) National Guard organizations which have been federally recognized.

(9) Marine Corps Reserve.

(10) Naval Reserve.

(11) Other organizations of the Organized Reserve, National Guard, Naval Militia, Reserve Officers' Training Corps, and other train-

ing units in the order prescribed by the grand marshal of the parade.

(12) Veterans and patriotic organizations in the order prescribed by the grand marshal of the parade.

(13) When foreign troops are invited to participate in parades within the territorial jurisdiction of the United States, they will be assigned a position of honor ahead of United States troops, and next after the grand marshal and his staff, except that a small detachment of United States troops will immediately precede the foreign troops as a guard of honor.

(14) On occasions when troops of two or more foreign nations participate, the order of precedence among them will be determined by the grand marshal in accordance with the one of the following methods which he deems appropriate.

(15) When the parade or exercise is in honor of a particular nation, as, for example, in the celebration of a national holiday of that nation, the troops of such nation should be assigned a position in the line ahead of all others.

(16) Except as provided in (15), the order of precedence among foreign troops will normally be fixed by—

(a) The relative ranks of the commanders of

the forces from which the parade detachments are drawn, but in cases where this method is not applicable, it may be fixed by—

(b) The relative ranks of the commanders of the parade detachments; or

(c) The alphabetical order in the English language of the names of the national concerned.

c. (1) The grand marshal marches at the head of the parade; his staff, chief of staff on the right, marches $1\frac{1}{2}$ paces to his rear in one or more ranks. The grand marshal is usually preceded by mounted police and a platoon of dismounted police who clear the way. The marshal of the first division marches 24 paces in rear of the staff of the grand marshal.

(2) Odd-numbered divisions are ordinarily formed in streets to the right of the line of march, the first division nearest the starting point. Even-numbered divisions are similarly formed on the streets to the left. Among the formations which may be used for street parades are column of threes (or fours); two or more columns of threes (or fours) abreast; and mass formation. Transportation marches in single column or column of twos, threes, or fours as the street width permits.

(3) In long parades rifles may be carried at sling arms with bayonets fixed.

SECTION V

ESCORT OF THE NATIONAL COLOR

	Par.	Page
Escort of the national color.....	3-18	109

3-18 ESCORT OF THE NATIONAL COLOR.—*a.* Escort of the national color may be executed:

(1) During the ceremony for parade or review when it is desired that the battalion or regiment formally receive the national color as a part of the ceremony.

(2) Prior to the ceremony for parade or review, when the troops are formed as a unit on a separate parade and marched to the designated parade area.

b. (1) When the ceremony of escort of the national color is to take place, the color guard obtains the regimental color and takes its post with the color company prior to the regiment being formed. This is done informally.

2. The regiment being in line and the entire color guard in position with the regimental color but without the national color, the regimental commander details a company, other than the color company, to receive and escort the national color to its place. During the ceremony the regimental color remains with the color guard at its post with the regiment.

(3) The band moves straight to its front until clear of the line of battalion commanders, changes direction, if necessary, and halts. The designated company forms column of threes 15 paces in rear of the band with the color bearer in rear of the leading platoon.

(4) The escort then marches without music to the regimental commander's office and forms in line facing the entrance.

(5) The color bearer, preceded by the senior platoon commander of the escort company and followed by a designated petty officer (non-commissioned officer) of the escort company, obtains the color.

(6) When the color bearer returns, followed by the platoon commander and the petty officer,

he halts before the entrance, facing the escort. The platoon commander places himself on the right and the petty officer on the left of the color bearer. The escort is then brought to present arms, and the field music sounds *To the Color*. The platoon commander and the petty officer salute at the command of the company commander.

(7) At the last note of the music, the company commander brings the company to order arms. The platoon commander and the petty officer terminate their salute and return to their posts in the company. The company is formed in column, the band taking post in front of the column. The color bearer places himself in the center of the space in rear of the leading platoon. The escort then marches in quick time, back to the regiment, the band playing. The march is conducted so that the escort arrives at a point 50 paces in front of the right of the regiment, and then moves parallel to its front. When the color arrives opposite the center of the regiment, the escort and band are formed in line facing the regiment. The color bearer, passing between the platoons, advances and halts 6 paces in front of the regimental commander at his post 30 paces in front of the center of the regiment.

(8) The color bearer having halted, the regimental commander faces about and commands: PRESENT ARMS. The commanding officer of the center (or right center) battalion commands: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS. The other battalion commanders, continuing simultaneously toward both flanks, and the escort commander, bring their units to present arms. The regimental commander then faces to the front and salutes; the field music then sounds *To the Color*. The regimental color salutes while *To the Color* is being played.

(9) The regimental commander then faces about and brings the regiment to order arms

and the national color bearer moves to his post on the right of the regimental color.

(10) After the escort executed order arms, at the command of its commander it faces to the right and, preceded by the band, marches to its place in line, passing around the left flank and rear of the regiment.

(11) The band plays until the escort passes

the left of the line. It then returns to its post on the right, passing in rear of the regiment.

(12) The regiment may be given the command REST when the escort passes the left of the line.

c. Escort of the national color is executed by a battalion according to the same principles as for a regiment.

SECTION VI

ESCORT OF HONOR

	Par.	Page
Escort of honor.....	3-19	111

3-19 ESCORT OF HONOR.—*a.* Escorts of honor are detailed for the purpose of receiving and escorting personages of high rank, civil or military. The troops detailed for this duty are selected for their military appearance and superior discipline.

b. The escort is formed in line, opposite the place where the personage is to present himself, the band on the flank of the escort toward which it is to march. Upon the appearance of the personage, the escort is brought to attention. When the personage has taken position from which to receive honors, the escort is brought to present arms, and the honors due his rank are rendered. Upon completion of the honors, the escort is brought to order arms.

Ordinarily the person so honored will, upon completion of the honors, inspect his escort. The escort is then formed in column and takes up the march. The personage with his staff or retinue takes position in rear of the column. When the personage leaves the escort, line is again formed, and when he has taken position from which to receive them, the same honors are rendered as on his arrival.

c. When the position of the escort is at a considerable distance from the point where the personage is to be received, as for instance where a courtyard or wharf intervenes, a double line of sentries facing inward, is posted from that point to the escort. The sentries successively salute as the personage passes.

d. An officer is designated to accompany the personage.

SECTION VII

HONORS

	Par.	Page
Prescribed honors.....	3-20	112
Rendering honors to visiting officials....	3-21	112
Departure.....	3-22	112
Honors to the national color.....	3-23	113
Honors to the national anthem.....	3-24	113
Additional honors.....	3-25	113

3-20 PRESCRIBED HONORS.—

Afloat: For tables of prescribed honors to be rendered afloat see Navy Regulations.

Ashore: The same salutes, honors, and ceremonies, insofar as may be practicable, are rendered in connection with official visits to naval stations and Marine Corps posts and bases as are accorded on similar visits to ships of the Navy. A unit other than the interior guard will normally be detailed as honor guard for rendering the required honors at shore stations. The honor guard prescribed in Navy Regulations shall be not less than the following strength when rendering honors ashore:

Guard of the day—one rifle squad.

Full guard—one rifle platoon.

The following elements required in prescribed honors afloat are dispensed with when rendering honors ashore:

a. Manning the rail.

b. Piping alongside and over the side.

c. Side boys.

3-21 RENDERING HONORS TO VISIT- ING OFFICIALS.—

Afloat: For sequence and procedure in rendering the prescribed honors afloat see Navy Regulations.

Ashore: When the honors prescribed for the naval service are to be rendered ashore the following sequence will be followed:

a. On the appearance of the visiting official, *Attention* is sounded on the bugle and the honor guard or other formation of troops brought to attention, unless already at attention.

b. When the official reaches the position from which he is to receive the honors the for-

mation is brought to present arms. All officers and men in uniform but not in formation salute.

c. Appropriate ruffles and flourishes are sounded when the formation is brought to present arms. The personal flag or national color, if specified for display during the visit, is broken when present arms is executed.

d. The formation is brought to order arms after ruffles and flourishes, or following the *National Anthem*, or *To the Color* if either of these is specified. In the absence of ruffles and flourishes, the formation is brought to order arms when the commander of the formation has exchanged salutes with the official.

e. When music follows ruffles and flourishes, the formation is brought to order arms on the sounding of the last note.

f. If a salute is required to be fired upon arrival, it begins as soon as practicable after the music is completed. Officers and men stand at attention, facing the official, or if he is not in view, facing the saluting battery during the salute. If it is specified that the national flag, or foreign national ensign (if foreign country has no ensign, the foreign national flag may be used) is to be displayed during the gun salute only, it is broken at the sound of the first gun and hauled down at the sound of the last gun.

3-22 DEPARTURE.—Prescribed honors are rendered on departure of an official in a manner similar to that on arrival except that:

a. Honors do not commence until the official has completed his personal leave-taking from the senior officer present.

b. Gun salutes, if specified, commence just prior to the time that the official leaves the area where honors were rendered.

c. If a personal flag or national ensign has been flown during the visit, or if a national ensign has been displayed during the gun salute, it shall be down by the last gun of this salute.

3-23 HONORS TO THE NATIONAL COLOR.—*a. By color escorts.*—(See sec. V, ch. 3.)

b. The national color will be raised at 0800 and lowered at sunset.

c. During the raising and lowering of the national color:

Afloat: The following ceremonies are observed at COLORS on board ships in commission: The Guard of the Day and the band are present. At morning COLORS, *Attention* is sounded on the bugle. This is followed by the playing of the *National Anthem* by the band, at the beginning of which the ensign is hoisted smartly to the peak or truck. All officers and men face the ensign and render the salute required for honors to the *National Anthem*. The Guard of the Day and sentries under arms come to the position of present arms while the *National Anthem* is being played. In the absence of a band, or a bugle, *Attention* is sounded by other appropriate means and the procedure prescribed followed during the raising or lowering of the ensign. After the playing of the *National anthem* prescribed honors to foreign ensigns are rendered, at morning COLORS only, by the band playing the appropriate foreign *National Anthem* (Navy Regulations). The salute and present arms terminate with the sounding of *Carry On*. The same ceremonies are observed at sunset, the ensign being started from the peak or truck at the beginning of the *National Anthem* and the lowering so regulated as to be completed at the last note. In the absence of a band, *Retreat* is sounded on the bugle.

Ashore: The same ceremonies are observed, insofar as may be practicable, at shore stations. See chapter 5 for details of raising and lowering the flag ashore.

d. On the quarterdeck.—(See Navy Regulations.)

e. Individuals.—When passing or being passed by an uncased national color, honors are rendered by saluting when the color is six paces away and holding the salute until the color is passed or passes by six paces. Small flags carried by individuals and flags flying from flag poles at shore stations are not saluted except in the case of flags being raised or lowered on flagpoles during morning or evening colors.

f. Troops in formation.—When passing, or

being passed by an uncased national color the troops are brought to attention if marching, and to attention at order arms if stationary, and the troop commander renders the prescribed salute for his unit.

g. Occupants of vehicles.—During morning or evening COLORS and the playing of the *National Anthem*, or when passing or being passed by an uncased national color, all vehicles in motion will be brought to a halt. Persons riding in a passenger car or on a motorcycle will dismount and salute. However the drivers of these vehicles need not dismount. Occupants of other types of military vehicles remain seated at attention in the vehicle, the individual in charge of each vehicle dismounting and rendering the hand salute.

3-24 HONORS TO THE NATIONAL ANTHEM.—*a. Individuals not in formation.*—

Whenever the *National Anthem* is played, all naval personnel not in formation stand at attention facing the music except at *Colors* when they face the ensign (national color at shore stations). If in uniform and covered, the individual salutes at the first note of the anthem, retaining the position of salute until the last note of the anthem. If not in uniform and covered, the individual uncovers at the first note of the anthem, holds the headdress over the heart and so remains until the last note. In inclement weather the headdress may be raised slightly and held above the head. In boats, only the boat officer, or in his absence the coxswain, stands and salutes, other members of the crew and passengers who already are standing stand at attention, all others remain seated. The same marks of respect prescribed for observance during the playing of the *National Anthem* of the United States, are shown to the *National Anthem* of any other country, formally recognized by the Government of the United States.

b. Troops in formation.—Troops in formation are halted if marching, brought to attention at order arms, and the troop commander renders the prescribed salute for his unit.

3-25 ADDITIONAL HONORS.—For vessels passing close aboard, for dignitaries officially embarked in boats passing close aboard, and for ships passing Washington's tomb. (See Navy Regulations.)

SECTION VIII

FUNERALS

	Par.	Page
General.....	3-26	114
Duties of the officer in charge of the ceremony.....	3-27	115
Receiving the remains.....	3-28	116
The procession.....	3-29	117
At the grave.....	3-30	117

3-26 GENERAL.—*a.* When not contrary to orders and regulations, the extent to which the naval service participates in a funeral is influenced by the expressed wishes of the family of the deceased.

b. The composition and strength of the escort will be as prescribed in Navy Regulations, or as modified by proper authority.

c. The military features of a funeral usually commence at one of the following places: home of the deceased, mortuary, railroad station, church, chapel, gates of the cemetery, or at the grave; however, they may commence at any designated location.

d. The ceremony begins when the remains are first received by the escort. Prior to that time, the body bearers may be detailed to transfer the remains where necessary.

e. In general, one of the following procedures governs:

(1) The escort receives the remains at the place designated and conducts them to the chapel for services and then to the grave.

(2) The escort receives the remains at the chapel prior to the services and, upon completion of services, conducts them to the grave.

(3) The escort receives the remains at the gates of the cemetery and conducts them to the grave.

(4) The escort receives the remains at the grave.

f. Each time the body bearers move the remains:

(1) The escort is brought to present arms.

(2) The band renders the prescribed honors, followed by appropriate music.

(3) The pallbearers execute the hand salute.

(4) All persons in the naval service in uniform, except the body bearers, salute with the hand.

(5) All persons in the naval service in civilian clothing uncover and hold the headdress over the left breast.

g. In draping the casket with the national color, the union is placed at the head of the casket and over the left shoulder of the deceased, but the color shall not be lowered into the grave nor allowed to touch the ground. When the casket is draped with the national color the cap and sword of the deceased will not be displayed thereon.

h. The casket is always carried foot first, except that the casket of a clergyman is carried into and out of the church or chapel head first.

i. The pallbearers will walk or ride, depending on the distance, to the place of interment.

j. As required, the senior pallbearer will give cautionary commands to the other pallbearers in a low voice. Normally, they salute at the command PRESENT ARMS, given by the escort commander.

k. At the funeral of a flag or general officer, his personal flag will be carried in the procession immediately in front of the hearse or caisson. In the event the deceased was a unit commander or captain of a ship, the command pennant or commission pennant will also be carried.

l. Should the entrance of the cemetery prevent the hearse or caisson from accompanying the escort to the grave, the procession halts at the entrance, the casket is removed from the hearse or caisson, then the procession is again put into motion.

m. When the deceased is entitled to such honors, the minute gun salute prescribed by Navy Regulations, is fired, the first round as the remains enter the cemetery. While the

casket is being lowered into the grave, three volleys are fired at 5-second intervals. (See par. 2-12*d*.)

n. When the band has started a hymn and it becomes necessary to stop playing, the band will continue to play until the end of a stanza has been reached.

o. Officers in uniform attending a funeral in an official capacity will wear a mourning band on the left arm and, if armed with a sword, a mourning knot on its hilt.

p. Participation by fraternal or patriotic organizations.

(1) At the request of the immediate family of the deceased, or its representative, fraternal or semi-military organizations of which the deceased was a member may be permitted to take part in the funeral service.

(2) If the ritual is military or semi-military in nature, the rites will begin immediately upon the conclusion of the military religious service. If the ritual contains the firing of three volleys and the sounding of *TAPS*, these features of the military ceremony may be postponed until their appropriate place in the ritual, when they may be rendered by the military firing party and bugler.

(3) Non-military rituals by fraternal organizations will be held at the conclusion of *TAPS*. The military escort will be marched away from the site of the grave promptly and quietly at the termination of the military ceremonies.

q. Cremation.—(1) In cases where the remains are cremated and the ashes interred with military honors, the provisions of paragraphs 3-26 to 3-30, inclusive, with necessary modifications, will govern. The word "casket" is construed to mean the receptacle containing the ashes.

(2) For all phases of the funeral where the cremated remains are carried by hand, one enlisted man will be detailed to carry the receptacle containing the ashes. Four enlisted men will also be detailed as flag bearers. When the receptacle containing the ashes is carried from the conveyance into the chapel, from the chapel to the conveyance, or from the conveyance to the grave, the flag bearers will follow the receptacle, the flag being folded as prescribed in chapter 5, and carried by the leading flag bearer on the right.

(3) When the receptacle has been placed on the stand before the chancel of the chapel or when placed in the conveyance, the flag will be folded and placed beside the receptacle. If the caisson is equipped with a casket container for the receptacle, the open flag will be laid upon the container as prescribed for a casket.

(4) When no hearse or caisson is used, suitable transportation will be provided for the receptacle bearer and the flag bearers.

(5) When the remains are conducted to a crematory and the ashes are to be interred with military honors at a later time, the ceremony will consist only of the escort to the crematory. Arms will be presented as the remains are borne into the crematory. The firing of volleys and sounding of *TAPS* are omitted. In case the funeral ceremony is held at the crematory and no further military honors by the naval service are anticipated, the volleys will be fired (if local ordinances permit) and *TAPS* sounded outside the crematory.

3-27 DUTIES OF THE OFFICER IN CHARGE OF THE CEREMONY.—*a*. Prior to a funeral, if practicable, an officer will be detailed as officer in charge of the ceremony. He will confer with the clergy and funeral director, and together they will see that all necessary arrangements have been made for the funeral. The chaplain will perform the duties of the officer in charge of the ceremony in case no officer is so designated.

b. As soon as the service in the chapel has begun, the officer in charge will:

(1) See that the caisson or hearse takes position in front of the chapel and is made ready to receive the casket.

(2) See that a conveyance for flowers takes position at the side or rear entrance of the chapel.

(3) See that cars to be occupied by the clergy (if riding), pallbearers (when riding) and members of the immediate family are arranged in their proper order. (See fig. 4.)

(4) Designate four of the body bearers, who, after the casket has been placed on the caisson or in the hearse, will enter the chapel through the side or rear door and assist in carrying out flowers. The remaining body bearers will secure the casket on the caisson. As soon as the four body bearers have loaded the flowers in the

flower truck, they will take position in rear of the caisson or hearse.

c. When the body is transferred from the hearse to the caisson, the officer in charge will be in the vicinity of the caisson and indicate by signal to the escort commander when the transfer starts and when it has been completed.

d. When the procession has been put in motion, the officer in charge will proceed to the grave and await the arrival of the funeral party. He will determine the location at the grave for the band, escort, firing party if separated from the escort, the bugler, and other units, and indicate them to the unit commanders upon their arrival at the grave.

e. He will signal the body bearers to remove the remains from the caisson or hearse and the escort and band to render the honors, after the band, escort, and other units are in position at the grave.

f. When the widow or mother of the deceased is unaccompanied, the officer in charge will escort her from her car to the grave and will, when practicable, remain with her until the completion of the commitment service, assisting her in every way possible.

g. After commitment service at the grave, he will secure the folded color from the body bearers and deliver it to the family of the deceased.

h. When situations arise which are not covered by these instructions, the officer in charge will be guided by his own judgment.

i. Final decisions regarding any matters pertaining to handling or movement of troops will be made by the officer in charge, and all orders to troops in a funeral party will be given through him.

j. At funerals where a funeral director is engaged by the family, it is essential that the officer in charge cooperate with him and not arbitrarily endeavor to assume duties which the funeral director is being paid to perform.

k. Explain the nature and significances of the volleys to the next of kin, or those representing the next of kin, and ascertain whether it is desired that the volleys be fired.

3-28 RECEIVING THE REMAINS.—

Whenever the remains are received, the following procedure will govern. (See figs. 4, 5, and 7.)

a. *The escort.*—The escort will be formed opposite the place where the remains are to be received. At the appearance of the remains, or when all is in readiness to receive the remains, the commander of the escort will command: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS. Arms are brought to the order after the remains have been received and the doors of the hearse are closed, or the casket is secured to the caisson.

b. *The band.*—The band will be formed on the flank toward which the escort is to march. At the command ARMS, by the escort commander, the band will render honors as prescribed in chapter 5, Navy Regulations (provided the deceased is entitled to such honors), followed by appropriate music, ceasing to play at the end of the stanza after arms are brought to the order.

c. *The bearer of the personal flag of the deceased.*—The bearer will take position immediately in front of the hearse or caisson and will march in this position.

d. *The pallbearers.*—(1) *When remains are received at the chapel before services.*—The pallbearers form at the entrance of the chapel, juniors nearest the door, in two ranks, facing each other with sufficient interval for the casket to pass between them.

(a) As the casket is being removed from the hearse or caisson, they execute the first motion of hand salute.

(b) When the casket has passed, they execute the second motion of the hand salute, face toward the door, close interval, follow the casket into the chapel, and take seats reserved for them, usually the left front pews.

(2) *When the remains are received from a building* (see fig. 4).—The pallbearers assemble inside of the building in columns of twos, in inverse order of rank, junior to the left front, prepared to march out.

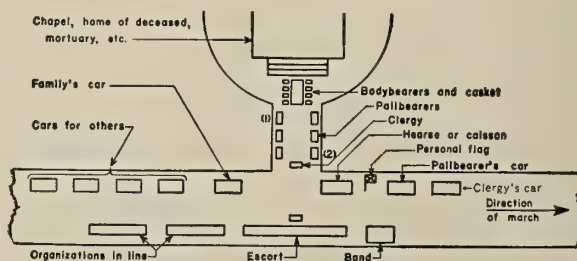


FIGURE 4.—Receiving the remains from a building.

(a) They follow the clergy out of the building (preceding the casket), open out, halt, face each other, and salute while the casket is passing between them.

(b) They remain at the position of the hand salute until the escort executes order arms.

(c) They then take their place in column of files on each side of the casket, in inverse order of rank, junior in front on the left, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the hearse or caisson.

(3) *When the remains are received at the gates of the cemetery* (see fig. 5).—The pallbearers form in single rank on the flank of the escort, opposite the hearse or caisson and in such order of rank that will facilitate getting into position alongside the caisson.

(a) They execute and terminate the hand salute on the commands of the escort commander.

(b) They take their position beside the caisson as prescribed in subparagraph (c) above.

e. The body bearers.—The body bearers, if not already with the remains, form on the left of the pallbearers.

(1) They leave the formation at the proper time in order to receive the casket and carry it to the chapel, caisson, or grave.

(2) They form according to height on both sides of the casket.

(3) Indoors, while not carrying the casket, body bearers will uncover. At all other times, they remain covered.

3-29 THE PROCESSION.—*a.* After the remains have been placed in the hearse or on the caisson and all is in readiness, the band and escort are put in march by the escort commander upon signal from the officer in charge of the ceremony. Elements in rear conform.

b. The procession forms in the following order (see fig. 6):

- (1) The escort commander.
- (2) Band or field music.
- (3) The escort in suitable formation.
- (4) The clergy.
- (5) The pallbearers, if riding.

(6) Personal flag of the deceased (general officers and flag officers).

(7) *The casket.*—If pallbearers are present and not riding, they form in inverse order of rank in column of files on each side of the hearse

or caisson, junior in front on the left, the leading member of each column opposite the front wheels of the hearse or caisson. If pallbearers are riding, the body bearers will take place as described for pallbearers beside the hearse or caisson.

(8) The body bearers, if the pallbearers are not riding, in column of twos behind the hearse or caisson.

(9) Family of the deceased.

(10) Enlisted men.

(11) Officers from ship or organization of the deceased in inverse order of rank.

(12) Other officers in inverse order of rank.

(13) Foreign officers.

(14) Distinguished persons.

(15) Delegations.

(16) Societies.

(17) Citizens.

c. The procession marches in slow time to solemn music.

d. When the place of interment is at a considerable distance, the escort, after leaving the place where the remains were received, may march at ease in quick time until it approaches the burial ground, when it is brought to attention. The band does not play while the troops are marching at ease.

e. The field musics may alternate with the band in playing.

3-30 AT THE GRAVE.—*a.* Upon the arrival of the procession at a point adjacent to the grave, units turn out of column and take positions as follows (see fig. 7):

(1) *The band.*—In line with and on the right of the escort when formed at the grave.

(2) *The escort.*—In line facing the grave, at a position indicated by the officer in charge of the ceremony, at least 50 feet from the grave, so that the mourners will not be disturbed when the volleys are fired.

(3) *The clergy.*—Near the caisson or hearse and between it and the grave.

(4) *The bearer of the personal flag of the deceased.*—Between the clergy and the caisson or hearse.

(5) *The pallbearers.*—Near the clergy, between the clergy and the grave in two ranks, facing each other, juniors nearest the grave, with sufficient interval to permit the casket to pass between them.

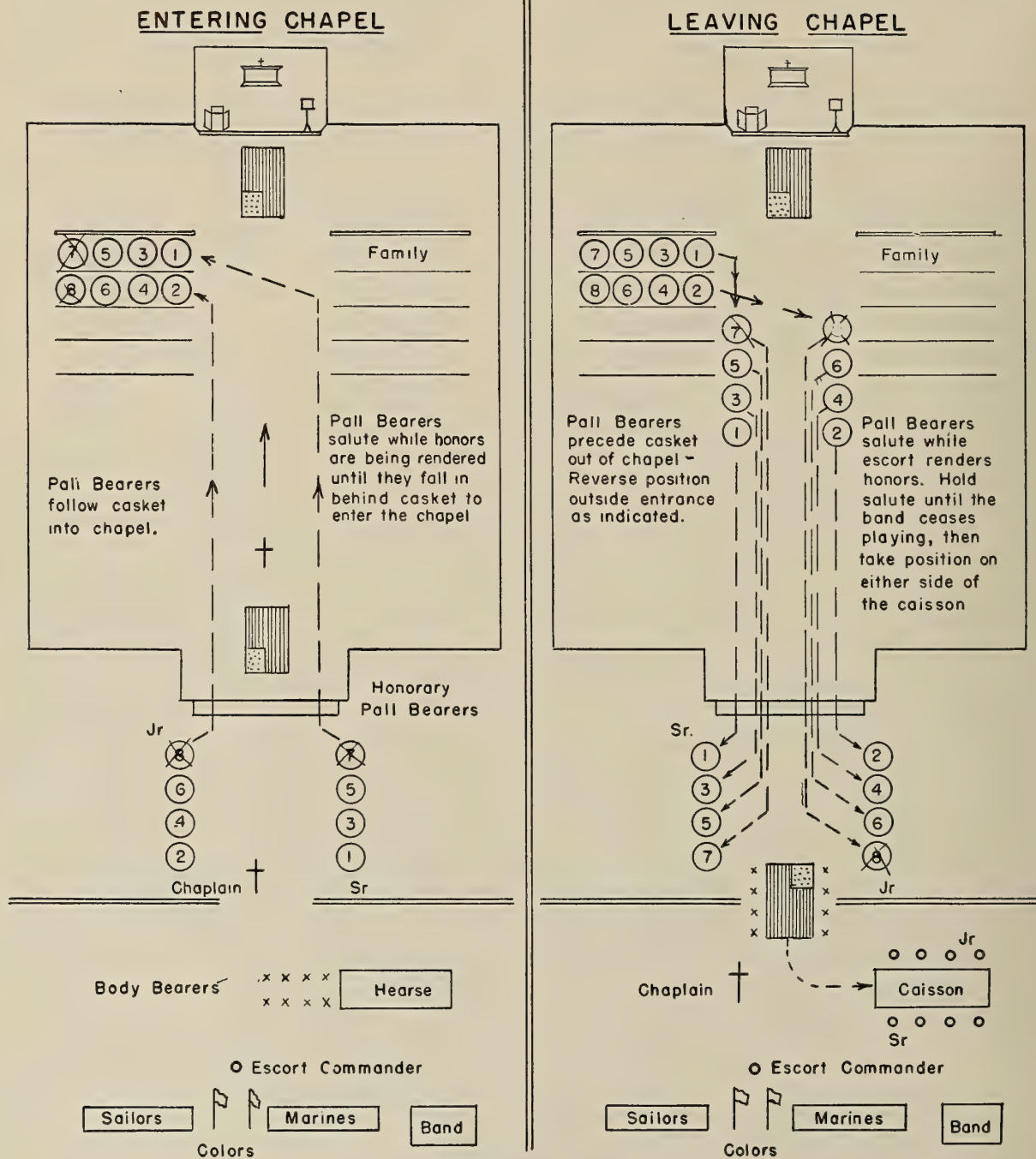
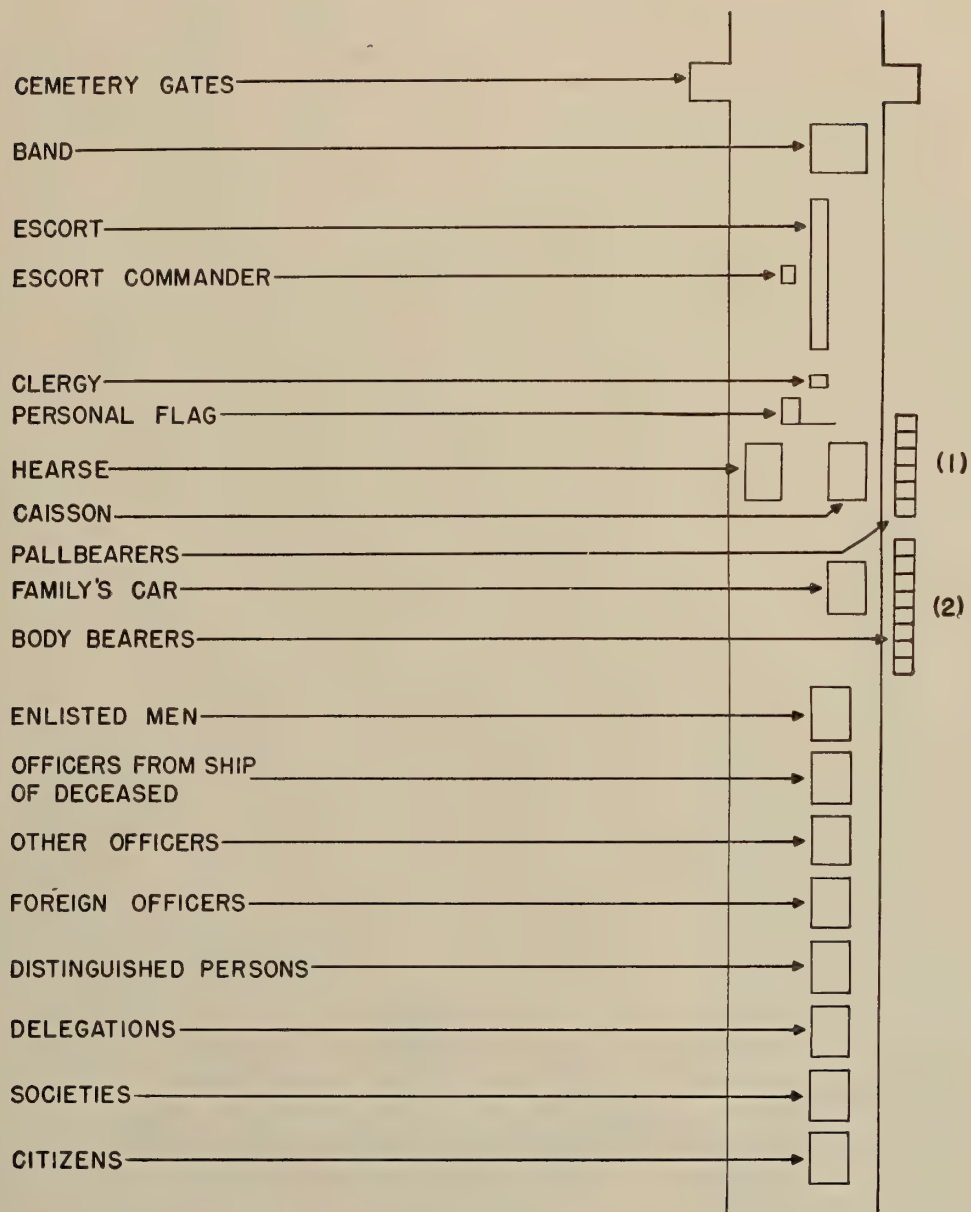


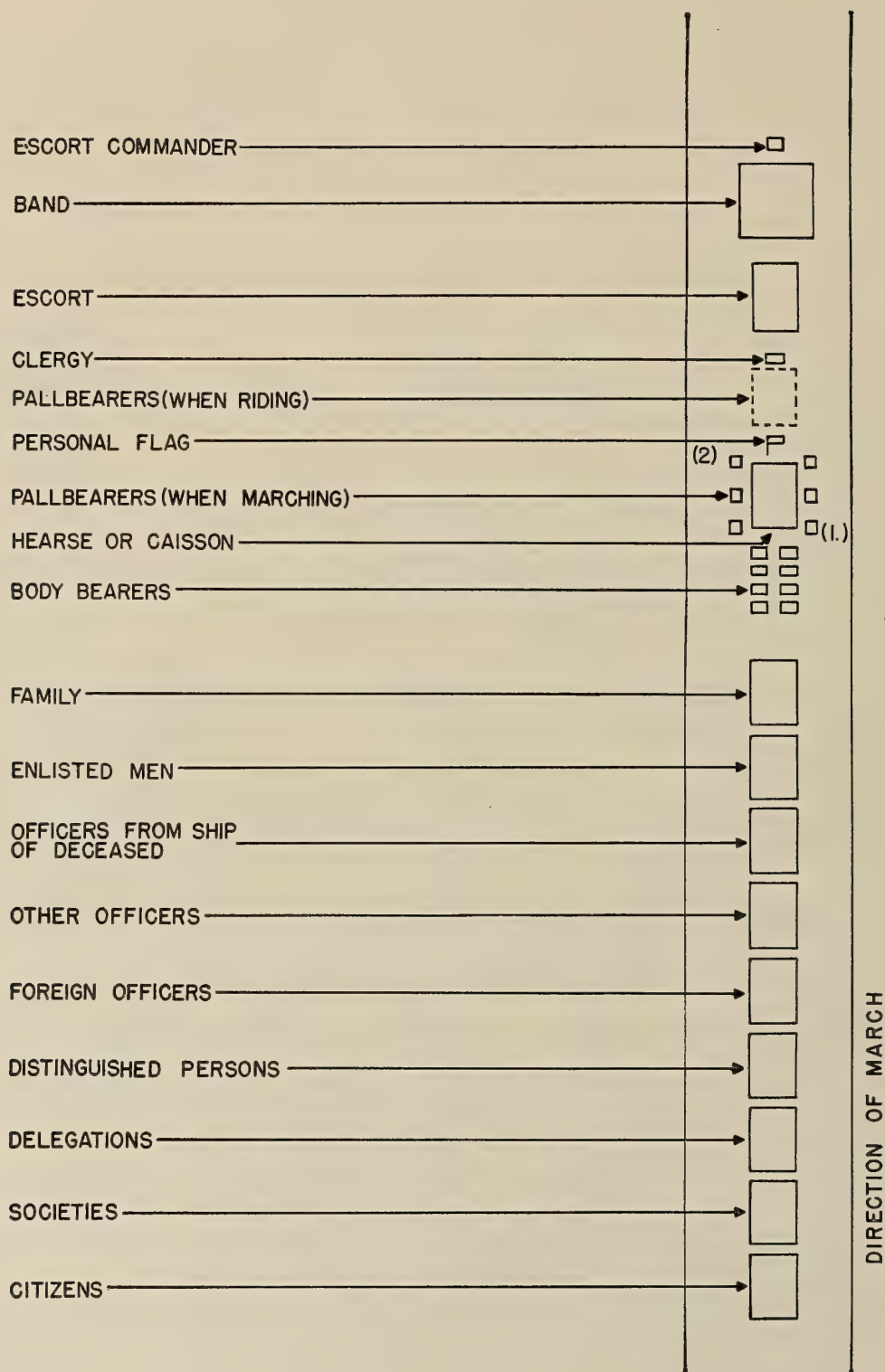
FIGURE 5.—Entering chapel. Leaving chapel.



(1) IN SUCH ORDER OF RANK AS WILL FACILITATE GETTING INTO POSITION ALONGSIDE THE CAISSON.

(2) IN SUCH ORDER OF RANK AS WILL FACILITATE GETTING INTO POSITION TO TRANSFER THE REMAINS TO THE CAISSON.

FIGURE 6.—Receiving the remains at the gates of the cemetery (when remains are transferred from hearse or caisson).



(1.) SENIOR PALLBEARER (2.) JUNIOR PALLBEARER

FIGURE 7.—Order of march of funeral procession.

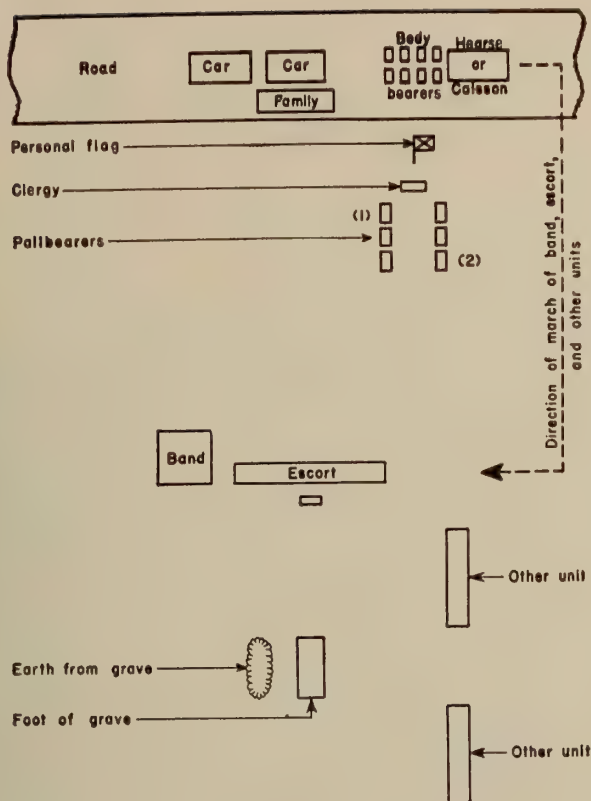


FIGURE 8.—Receiving the remains at the burial ground.

(6) *The family of the deceased.*—Near the caisson or hearse.

(7) *Other units.*—In separate lines near to and facing the grave, at positions indicated by the officer in charge of the ceremony.

b. When all units are in position and upon signal by the officer in charge of the ceremony, the body bearers remove the casket from the caisson or hearse, carry it between the pallbearers and in front of the escort, and place it over the grave (on the lowering device). They then raise the flag by the corners and sides and hold it waist high until the service is concluded.

c. As the body bearers remove the casket from the caisson or hearse:

(1) *The band.*—Renders the prescribed honors followed by appropriate music, ceasing to play when the casket is placed over the grave.

(2) *The escort.*—Presents arms, and remains at present arms until the casket is placed over the grave.

(3) *The clergy.*—Precedes the personal flag and the casket.

(4) *The flag bearer.*—Follows the clergy, preceding the casket, and takes position at the head of the grave where he will remain during the services.

(5) *The pallbearers.*—Execute the hand salute. They execute the second motion of the hand salute when the casket has passed, face the grave, close interval and follow the casket. Upon arrival at the grave, they form in two ranks facing the grave, usually just in rear and to one side of the clergy.

(6) *The family of the deceased.*—Follow the pallbearers and take position provided for them.

d. When the casket is placed over the grave and the family has arrived:

(1) *The commander of the escort.*—Commands: 1. PARADE, 2. REST. The escort executes parade rest with officers and men inclining their heads.

(2) *Pallbearers and other units.*—Execute parade rest in a similar manner at the command of the escort commander.

(3) *The body bearers.*—Remain in their places and hold the color so that if the casket is low-

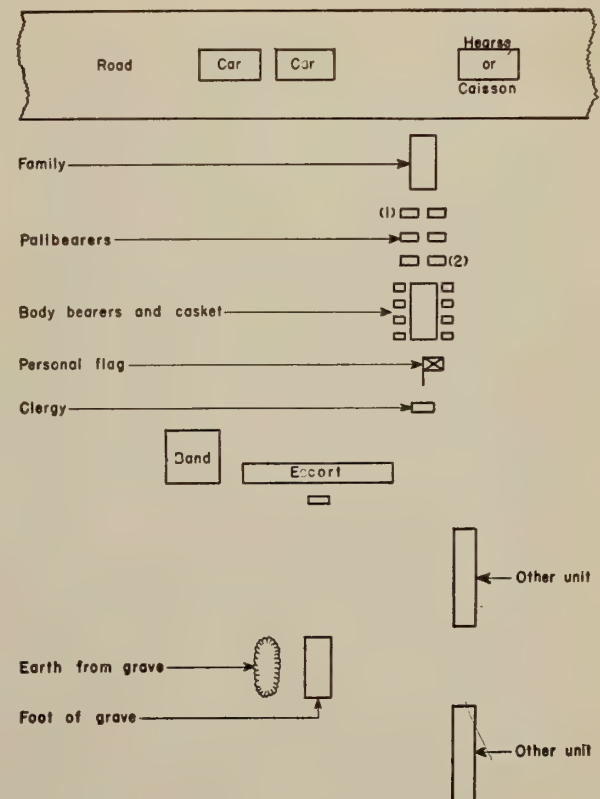


FIGURE 9.—March to the grave.

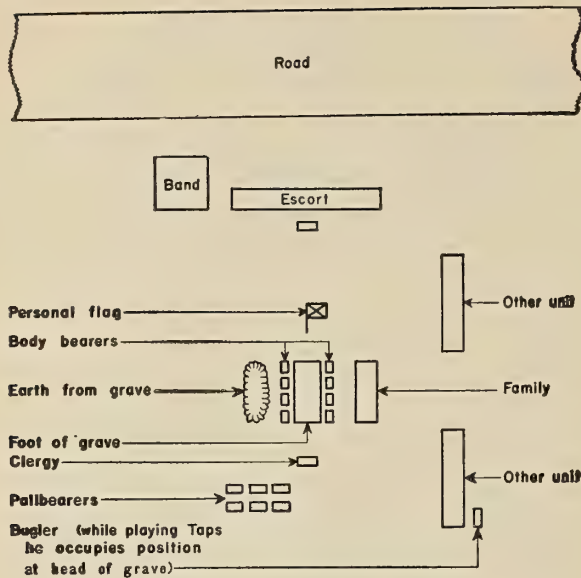


FIGURE 10.—A distribution of units at the grave.

ered it will be lowered from under the color, the color not being permitted to touch the ground.

(4) *The clergy.*—Conducts the commitment services.

e. Upon completion of the commitment services:

(1) *The commander of the escort.*—Causes the escort to resume attention. He then commands: 1. ESCORT LESS FIRING PARTY, 2. PRESENT, 3. ARMS, 4. FIRING PARTY, 5. FIRE THREE VOLLEYS. The squad leader or petty officer in charge then gives commands to execute the firing of three volleys in accordance with paragraph 2-12d. When the escort is larger than one platoon, a platoon is designated as the firing party, the front rank only executing the firing. The firing party fires three volleys of blank cartridges, assumes the position of ready, and remains in this position until the conclusion of *TAPS*. (See par. 2-12, ch. 2.)

(2) *Pallbearers.*—Come to attention at the command of the escort commander and salute at his command PRESENT ARMS.

(3) *Other units.*—Are brought to attention and to present arms at the same time as the escort.

(4) *The clergy.*—Come to attention and if in uniform, salutes.

(5) *The band leader.*—Comes to attention and salutes.

(6) *The personal flag of the deceased.*—If necessary, steps aside to permit the bugler to take his post to sound *TAPS*, comes to attention and salutes.

(7) *The bugler.*—At the command PRESENT ARMS takes position at the head of the grave, salutes, sounds *TAPS* immediately following the last volley, again salutes, faces about and rejoins his unit.

f. *After the last note of TAPS.*—(1) *The escort commander.*—Causes rifles of the firing party to be locked, brings the entire escort to order arms, and after the color has been folded by the body bearers, marches the escort and band in quick time to a suitable location for dismissing the formation. The band does not play during the march from the grave. At the first halt, the rifles of the firing party are unloaded and inspected. If the escort and band continue in formation after leaving the cemetery, when clear of the cemetery the mourning and muffling are removed from any colors that may be present and the band plays march music.

(2) *The pallbearers.*—Fall out and withdraw.

(3) *The flag bearer.*—Folds the flag and rejoins his unit.

(4) *Body bearers.*—Fold the color, turn it over to the officer in charge of the ceremony, and march away as may be directed.

(5) *Other units.*—March from the vicinity of the grave following the escort.

SECTION IX

INSPECTIONS

	Par.	Page
General.....	3-31	123
Company inspection.....	3-32	123
Inspection of personal field equipment while in ranks.....	3-33	124
Inspecting officer other than company commander.....	3-34	124
Battalion inspection.....	3-35	124
Regimental inspection.....	3-36	125
Inspection of quarters or camp.....	3-37	125

3-31 GENERAL.—The company is the basic unit for inspection. Battalion, regimental, and higher commanders or inspecting officers inspect each company in its own area, or have it march to a designated place at a specified time for inspection. Under special conditions, an entire battalion or regiment may be formed and inspected in one large formation.

3-32 COMPANY INSPECTION.—*a. Formation.*—The company forms in line or in a column of platoons in line as described in section VI, chapter 2. (See figs. 56 and 59, ch. 2.) If transportation is to be included in the formation, it forms in line 5 yards in rear or as directed. Drivers remain with their vehicles. Transportation may be inspected separately from the foot elements, as directed.

b. Procedure.—(1) The company commander commands: **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION.** At this command, platoon commanders cause ranks to be opened. They then place themselves, facing to the front, three paces in advance of the right flank of their platoons.

(2) Ranks having been opened, the company commander commands: **AT EASE.** He then inspects the company. During the inspection, officers, petty officers, and guidon bearers not in ranks come to attention at order arms as the inspecting officer approaches, and after being inspected resume the position of at ease. The company commander may direct the chief petty officer to join him and take down notes as he inspects. The company commander, com-

mencing at the head of the column or right of the line, makes a minute inspection of the arms, equipment, dress, and appearance of the personnel of the company. As he approaches each platoon, its commander brings the platoon to attention and salutes. As soon as inspected, the platoon commander returns sword (if so armed), places himself to the right of the company commander, and accompanies him throughout the inspection of the platoon.

(3) The inspection is made from right to left in front and from left to right in rear of each rank.

(4) Each man executes inspection arms as the company commander or inspecting officer reaches his position.

(5) The company commander takes the rifle, grasping it with the right hand just above the lower band, the man dropping his hands. He inspects the rifle and, with the hand and rifle in the same position as in receiving it, hands it back to the man, who takes it with the left hand at the balance and executes order arms.

(6) Should the piece be inspected without handling, each man executes order arms as soon as the company commander has passed to the next man.

(7) Men armed with the automatic rifle, carbine, and pistol execute their respective inspection arms and resume their original positions after their weapons have been inspected.

(8) Upon completion of the inspection of each platoon, its commander resumes his post (as in (1) above), faces down the line, and commands: 1. **CLOSE RANKS**, 2. **MARCH**, and adds **REST** after ranks have been closed.

(9) The company commander may direct the platoon commanders to make the detailed inspection of arms or other equipment of the men of their platoon.

3-33 INSPECTION OF PERSONAL FIELD EQUIPMENT WHILE IN RANKS.—

a. The company forms in column of platoons with platoons in line. The company commander, after the inspection of arms has been completed in a platoon, directs the platoon commander to prepare for inspection of equipment. The platoon commander provides the additional distance necessary for the display of equipment between the opened ranks by the commands: 1. FIRST SQUAD, TWO PACES FORWARD, 2. MARCH; 1. SECOND SQUAD, ONE PACE FORWARD, 2. MARCH. He then causes the platoon to take interval. Interval having been taken, the platoon commander commands: 1. UNSLING EQUIPMENT, 2. DISPLAY EQUIPMENT.

b. At the command UNSLING EQUIPMENT, each man draws his bayonet and with his left hand thrusts it into the ground, ring to the front, the bayonet outside of and against his left heel near the instep to mark the line for the rear edge of equipment when displayed. Men not armed with the bayonet mark the place with the left heel. Each man then lays his rifle (automatic rifle) (carbine) on the ground, muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, butt near the toe of his right foot, unslings his equipment, and places it on the ground at his feet, haversack to the front, the pack one foot in front of his toes.

c. At the command DISPLAY EQUIPMENT, packs are opened and equipment displayed as prescribed in chapter 4. Equipment is displayed in the interval to the left of each man. When arrangement of the equipment is completed, each man resumes his original position in ranks.

d. The company commander then passes along the ranks as before and inspects the equipment. He then directs the platoon commander to have packs rolled and the platoon assembled.

e. The platoon commander then commands: ROLL PACKS. Each man assembles his equipment, rolls his pack, and, leaving his equipment in its position on the ground at his feet, resumes the position of attention.

f. All equipment having been assembled the platoon commander commands: SLING EQUIPMENT.

g. Packs are slung, belts fastened, and weapons taken.

h. The platoon commander then causes the platoon to assemble.

i. In units which have special combat equipment, such as machine guns, mortars, signal or command post equipment, the company commander, after packs have been opened (or after the individual inspection has been completed), directs: DISPLAY MACHINE GUN (MORTAR OR OTHER) EQUIPMENT. Gun squads under the direction of their leaders break ranks and lay out their weapons and accessories for inspection as prescribed in the gun drill for the weapon. Headquarters personnel lay out the fire control, communication, or other combat equipment in a similar manner. The equipment is displayed 3 paces from the flank of each squad on the side from which interval was taken. The rear of this equipment is placed on line with the rear of the individual field equipment.

3-34 INSPECTING OFFICER OTHER THAN THE COMPANY COMMANDER.—

Should the inspecting officer be other than the company commander, the latter, after commanding AT EASE, will face to the front. When the inspecting officer approaches, the company commander will face about, bring the company to attention, face to the front and salute. As soon as the company commander has been inspected he faces about, commands REST, returns sword and accompanies the inspecting officer. During the inspection of a platoon, its commander marches on the right of the inspecting officer. The inspection proceeds as previously prescribed.

3-35 BATTALION INSPECTION.—*a.* The battalion is formed in column of companies, each company being formed in column of platoons in line. Before the inspection, the battalion commander indicates whether heavy weapons and special equipment are to be displayed for inspection or left on their transportation.

b. The battalion being in a column of platoons in line, the battalion commander commands: PREPARE FOR INSPECTION. At this command, all companies are prepared for inspection. The color bearer and the color guard proceed to the head of the column and

take position 3 paces in rear of the battalion staff.

c. The battalion commander then commands: REST, returns sword, and inspects his staff and color guard. When the battalion commander approaches the staff, the officers, without command, come to attention and execute order sword. When they have been inspected, they execute return sword and accompany the battalion commander. As the battalion commander approaches the color guard, the color bearer commands: 1. COLOR GUARD, 2. ATTENTION. The color guard may be dismissed as soon as inspected.

d. The battalion commander, commencing at the head of the column, makes an inspection of the arms, equipment, dress, and appearance of the personnel of each company.

e. As the battalion commander approaches each company, its commander faces toward it and commands: 1. COMPANY, 2. ATTENTION, faces to the front and salutes. As soon as he has been inspected, the company commander faces about and commands: REST, returns sword, and accompanies the battalion commander. The inspection proceeds as prescribed for company inspection.

f. The battalion commander may direct the company commanders to make the detailed inspection of the arms or other equipment of their companies. He may require officers of his staff to assist in the inspection, especially by checking equipment.

g. When a company has been inspected, the battalion commander may direct that it be dismissed or otherwise occupied.

h. When desired, the battalion commander may direct that companies not under inspection stack arms, fall out, and resume their places in time to be inspected.

i. If the inspecting officer is an officer other than the battalion commander, the latter pre-

pares the battalion for inspection as prescribed in the preceding paragraphs. Upon the approach of the inspecting officer, the battalion commander brings the battalion to attention, faces to the front, and salutes. The inspecting officer inspects the battalion commander who then commands: REST, returns sword and accompanies the inspecting officer. The inspection then proceeds as previously prescribed.

3-36 REGIMENTAL INSPECTION.—

Only in an exceptional situation will a regimental inspection be ordered; however, when held, the principles are the same as described for the battalion. The regiment may be formed in any formation suitable to the space and ground available. Battalions are prepared for inspection as prescribed for battalion inspection. Upon the approach of the inspecting officer, each battalion commander brings his battalion to attention and salutes. Battalion inspection then follows.

3-37. INSPECTION OF QUARTERS OR CAMP.—

a. (1) In quarters the men stand near their respective bunks uncovered and without equipment or arms; in camp they stand in front of their tents covered but without equipment or arms.

(2) If inspection of individual equipment or clothing has been ordered, each man arranges the required articles as prescribed in Chapter 4.

b. Battalion.—During inspection of the camp or quarters of a company, the battalion commander accompanied by the company commander, is preceded by the chief petty officer who calls the men to attention as the inspecting party approaches. Such other officers as may be designated follow the battalion commander.

c. Regimental.—The procedure is the same as outlined in *b* above. The regimental commander is accompanied by the battalion commander and the commander of the company being inspected.

SECTION X

GUARD MOUNTING

Guard mounting-----	Par. 3-38	Page 120
---------------------	--------------	-------------

3-38 GUARD MOUNTING.—*a.* See chapter 5, interior guard duty.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 4

EQUIPMENT AND UNIFORMS

CHAPTER 4

EQUIPMENT AND UNIFORMS

	Par.	Page
Section I. INDIVIDUAL-----	4-1	131
II. INDIVIDUAL CLOTHING AND UNIFORMS-----	4-4	143
III. MARINE CORPS PACK, M1941-----	4-9	145
IV. WEARING OF EQUIPMENT-----	4-20	155
V. DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT-----	4-24	159
VI. DISPLAY OF CLOTHING ON THE BUNK-----	4-26	167

SECTION I

INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT

	Par.	Page
Equipment, general.....	4-1	131
Equipment, medical personnel.....	4-2	131
Equipment, special operations.....	4-3	131

4-1 EQUIPMENT, GENERAL.—*a.* Individual equipment carried by the various members of the landing party depends on the mission assigned and the nature of the contemplated operation. As outlined in chapter 1, these missions include:

(1) Limited field operations during an emergency.

(2) Police duties during a disturbance.

(3) Parades and ceremonies.

b. The commander of the landing party prescribes appropriate equipment needed to fulfill these missions. Where combat operations are contemplated, the various members of the landing party will normally carry the articles of basic, supplementary, and organic combat equipment listed for them in table 1.

These articles of equipment are illustrated in figures 1 through 10.

4-2 EQUIPMENT, MEDICAL PERSONNEL.—*a.* Medical personnel carry the same basic individual combat equipment as other personnel shown in table 1. Normally, they do not carry arms. An additional canteen is carried.

b. In the event that the enemy does not comply with "Rules of Land Warfare," it may be necessary to arm the medical personnel, for protection of the wounded. The weapon issued to medical personnel in this event will be the pistol, automatic, cal. 45.

c. For special equipment to be issued medical personnel, see the Handbook of the Hospital Corps, U. S. Navy.

4-3 EQUIPMENT, SPECIAL OPERATIONS.—*a.* Where deemed necessary by the commander of the force, individuals may be issued special articles of equipment as required to conform to weather and type of operation.

TABLE 1.—Infantry combat equipment of the naval landing party

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
	Rifle squad leader	Fire team leader	Automatic rifleman	Assistant automatic rifleman	Rifleman	Rifle platoon guide	Machine gun squad leader	Gunner	Assistant gunner	Ammunition carrier	Light machine gun section leader	Messenger	Ammunition petty officer	Signalman, visual	Draftsman, cook, bugler, store-keeper, carpenter, small arms mechanic	Nonrated or additional duty, artificer	Chief of section intelligence	Rated men of supply section	Chiefs, message center and radio, visual and panel sections; code clerk; radioman	Officers and senior petty officers	Total rifle platoon	Total machine gun platoon	Total rifle company
BASIC INDIVIDUAL COMBAT EQUIPMENT																							
Blanket ¹	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Can, meat, w/cover and knife, fork, and spoon	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Canteen, w/canteen cup and cover	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Helmet, steel, M1, w/liner	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Pack, Marine Corps, M1941, complete (haversack, knapsack, belt, suspenders) ²	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Packet and Pouch, first aid	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Poncho	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Tag, identification	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	90	112	402
Tent, shelter half, w/guy line, tentpole and 5 tent pins	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
SUPPLEMENTARY INDIVIDUAL COMBAT EQUIPMENT																							
Bayonet M1 and scabbard		1		1	1	1						1				1	1				31	0	96
Knife, w/sheath	1		1				1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1		14	54	101
Belt, pistol w/magazine pockets ²												1											
pockets 1 carbine, 1 pocket f/pistol	1						1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1	5	56	81
Belt, cartridge, cal. 30		1			1	1						1					1	1			22	0	69
Belt, magazine, M1937, f/BAR			1	1																	18	0	54
Book, field message, NMC 694 QM ⁴	1					1	1				1	1		2			1		2	1	9	13	47
Carbine, cal. 30, M1 w/5 magazines	1						1			1	1	1	1	1	1			1	1	1	5	44	65
Case, dispatch and map											1	1	1	1	1					1	2	2	11
Compass, lensatic, modified prismatic type w/case	1	1				1	1				1						1			1	15	11	59
Cutters, wire, heavy duty, w/carrying case	1																						
Flashlight w/bulb and batteries														1					1	1	3	0	10
Glasses, field, w/case and strap											1			1					1	1	2	2	12
Mask, gas, service, lightweight	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Magazines, BAR			13	12										1							225	0	675
Pistol, automatic, cal. 45, w/3 magazines, holster, and lanyard ⁵								1	1														
Pliers w/case																				1	0	12	14
Rifle, U. S., cal. 30, M1, w/combination tool and oil and thong case		1		1	1	1						1					1	1			31	0	95
Rifle, automatic, cal. 30, Browning, M1918A2 w/bipod, butt rest, and kit, spare parts and accessories			1																		9	0	27
Tool, entrenching, w/carrier	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	45	56	201
Watch, wrist, luminous dial	1										1			1			1		1	1	5	5	24
Whistle	1					1	1				1									1	6	11	32
ORGANIC COMBAT EQUIPMENT																							
Barrels, spare, f/gun, machine, cal. 30, Browning, M1919A4, w/carrier							1														0	6	6
Box, ammunition, f/gun, machine, cal. 30, Browning, M1919A4								1	1	1	2										0	28	28
Brassard, MP or SP ⁷																					0	0	50
Chest, spare parts, f/gun, machine, cal. 30, Browning, M1919A4											1										0	3	3
Gun, machine, cal. 30, Browning, M1919A4									1													6	6
Nightstick, police ⁷																						0	50
Rod, cleaning, machine gun							1															6	6
Tripod f/gun, mach, cal. 30, Browning, M1919A4								1													0	6	6

¹ Where the field transport pack is carried an additional blanket may be carried as prescribed by the landing party commander.² Or Army pack, field, cargo, and combat w/suspenders.³ Messengers in the machine gun platoon and in communication platoon are armed with carbines.⁴ Standard Navy message blanks may be furnished in lieu of book, field message, NMC 694 QM.⁵ Carried in lieu of the carbine by lieutenant commanders and above, commanding officers of companies, battalion operations officers, executive officers of battalions, and battalion commanding officers.⁶ Includes 1 pistol for pharmacist mate if prescribed.⁷ For police duty only.



FIGURE 1.—Basic individual combat equipment.



FIGURE 2.—Supplementary individual combat equipment, rifle squad leader.

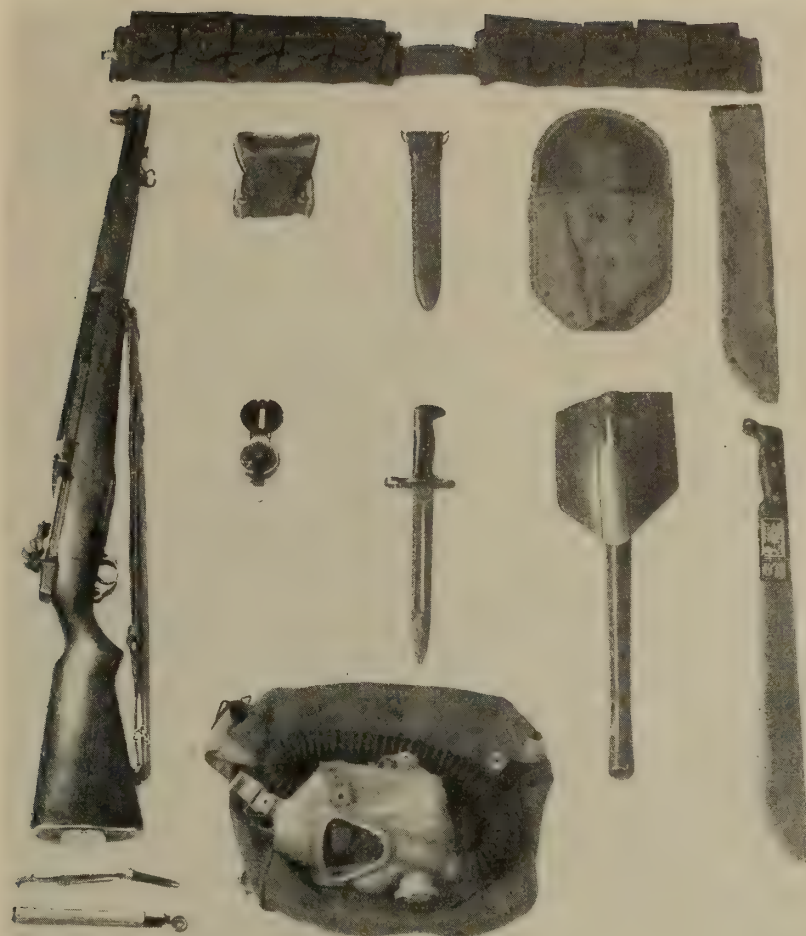


FIGURE 3.—Supplementary individual combat equipment, fire team leader.



FIGURE 4.—Supplementary individual combat equipment, automatic rifleman.



FIGURE 5.—Supplementary individual combat equipment, assistant automatic rifleman.



FIGURE 6.—Supplementary individual combat equipment, rifleman.



FIGURE 7.—Supplementary individual and organic combat equipment, light machine gun squad leader.



FIGURE 8.—Supplementary individual and organic combat equipment, gunner and assistant gunner, light machine gun squad. (Assistant gunner carries gun, gunner carries tripod.)



FIGURE 9.—Supplementary individual and organic combat equipment, ammunition carrier, light machine gun squad.



FIGURE 10.—Supplementary combat equipment, officers and senior petty officers. (Carbine or pistol as indicated in table 1.)

SECTION II

INDIVIDUAL CLOTHING AND UNIFORMS

	Par.	Page
Uniforms and clothing, general.....	4-4	143
Uniforms, combat.....	4-5	143
Uniforms, guard and police duty.....	4-6	143
Uniforms, parades and ceremonies.....	4-7	143
Uniform, cold-weather and special operations.....	4-8	144

4-4 UNIFORMS AND CLOTHING, GENERAL.—*a.* Uniforms and clothing worn by members of the naval landing party will depend upon the mission assigned and the nature of the contemplated operation. The uniform to be worn is prescribed by the commander of the landing force and, in general, will normally conform to the types of uniform outlined in paragraphs 4-5, 4-6, 4-7, and 4-8.

b. Whether a landing party is engaged in field operations, police and guard duty, or parades and ceremonies on foreign shores, each individual is, in the eyes of the people of that foreign country, a representative of the United States, and more specifically, the United States Navy. A smart appearance and a military manner are closely associated with proper wearing of the uniform. Unit commanders should insure a uniformity of dress among the personnel of their unit in conformity with the directives of the landing party commander.

4-5 UNIFORM, COMBAT.—*a.* Where the landing party is engaged in landings involving limited field operations, the uniform shown in table 2, below, is appropriate.

TABLE 2.—*Combat uniform*

WARM-WEATHER OPERATIONS

U. S. Navy				U. S. Marine Corps	
Officers	Chief warrant and warrant officers	Chief petty officers	Enlisted	Officers	Enlisted
Working, khaki.....	Working, khaki.....	Working, khaki.....	Dungarees.....	Utility.....	Same. ¹

COLD-WEATHER OPERATIONS

Service dress, blue, A or B.	Service dress, blue, A or B.	Service dress, blue, A or B.	Undress, blue, A or B...	Winter service. Field or service jacket, service trousers. Overcoat. ¹	Same. ¹
Overcoat ¹	Overcoat ¹	Overcoat ¹	Peacoat ¹		

¹ Selected items of special winter clothing and foul-weather clothing may be worn as prescribed by the landing party commander, in addition to or in lieu of clothing prescribed above.

NOTE.—Steel helmet w/liner, leggings, and field shoes are standard items of all combat uniforms.

4-6 UNIFORM, GUARD AND POLICE DUTY.—*a.* Where the landing party is engaged primarily in guard or police duty during disturbances which may involve fighting, the uniform shown in table 2 is normally worn.

b. If the landing party is engaged in guard or

police duty of a routine nature the uniform shown in table 3 is normally worn.

4-7 UNIFORM, PARADES AND CEREMONIES.—*a.* Where the landing party is engaged primarily in parades and ceremonies, the uniform shown in table 3 below is normally worn.

TABLE 3.—*Parades and ceremonies uniform*
WARM-WEATHER DUTY

U. S. Navy				U. S. Marine Corps	
Officers	Chief warrant and warrant officers	Chief petty officers	Enlisted	Officers	Enlisted
Service dress, white.....	Service dress, white.....	Service dress, white.....	Undress, white, A.....	Summer service.....	Same.
COLD-WEATHER DUTY					
Service, dress, blue, A or B.	Service, dress, blue, A or B.	Dress, blue, A or B.....	Dress, blue, A or B.....	Undress, blue.....	Same.

NOTE.—Leggings may be prescribed at the discretion of the landing party commander.

4-8 UNIFORM, COLD-WEATHER AND SPECIAL OPERATIONS.—*a.* Where deemed necessary by the party commander, additional

articles of clothing for cold weather or special operations may be issued.

SECTION III

THE MARINE CORPS PACK, M1941

	Par.	Page
Nomenclature and description.....	4-9	145
Marine Corps pack, M1941, assembly---	4-10	148
The light marching pack, assembly-----	4-11	148
The marching pack, assembly-----	4-12	149
The field marching pack, assembly-----	4-13	150
The transport pack, assembly-----	4-14	150
The field transport pack, assembly-----	4-15	152
The knapsack pack, assembly-----	4-16	152
The baggage pack, assembly-----	4-17	153
The knapsack musette pack, assembly---	4-18	154
The knapsack, hand carried, assembly---	4-19	154

4-9 NOMENCLATURE AND DESCRIPTION.—*a.* The pack, Marine Corps M1941, complete, consists of the haversack (fig. 11), the knapsack (fig. 12), and the belt suspenders (fig. 13). It is issued as basic individual combat equipment to both officer and enlisted personnel.

b. The haversack (figs. 11 and 14) is designed to carry the personal articles required when going ashore for combat. When the blanket roll is not carried, the two side blanket roll straps may be buckled together around the haversack to secure them. The top blanket roll strap is tightly rolled and secured at the top of the pack. When packed, the inside flaps, front and rear, fold over to protect the contents. The articles normally secured to or carried in the haversack include the following:

(1) Bayonet with scabbard, hooked to bayonet attachment and passed through bayonet loop.

(2) Intrenching tool, with carrier, hooked to intrenching tool attachment and secured by intrenching tool strap.

(3) Poncho, folded and inserted in haversack to act as a pad against the back.

(4) Meat can with cover.

(5) Knife, haversack.

(6) Fork, haversack.

(7) Spoon, haversack.

(8) One socks, pair.

(9) One undershirt.

(10) One drawers.

(11) Towel.

(12) Toilet articles.

(13) Extra shoe and legging laces.

c. The knapsack is designed to carry the extra clothing which cannot be carried in the haversack, particularly when sea bags cannot be transported, or when traveling by ship or rail and sea bags are not accessible. The following minimum articles are usually carried in the knapsack:

(1) One shoes, pair.

(2) One trousers.

(3) Two shirts or jumpers.

(4) Two socks, pair.

(5) Two undershirts.

(6) Two drawers.

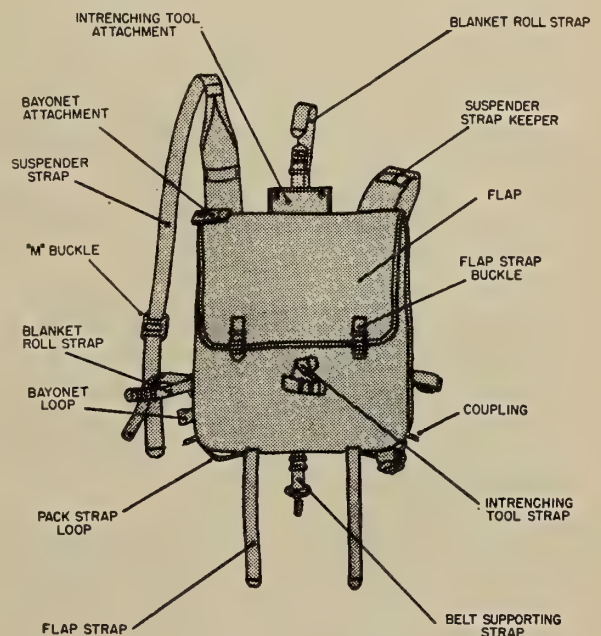


FIGURE 11.—The haversack.

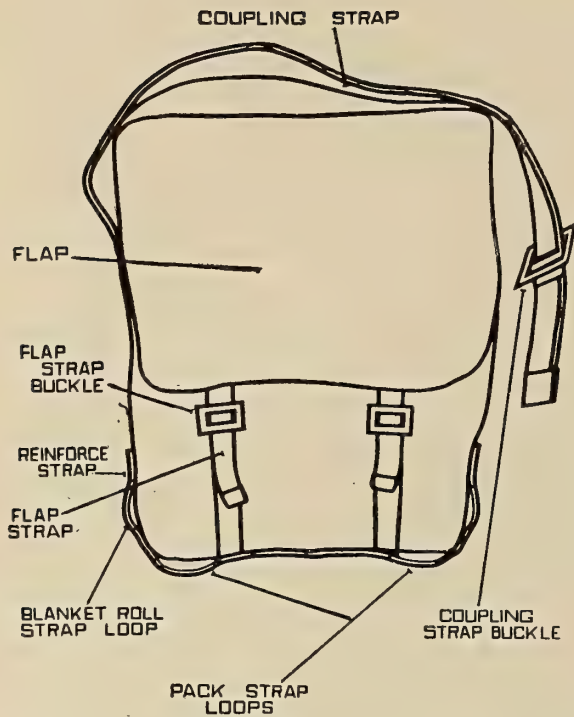


FIGURE 12.—The knapsack.

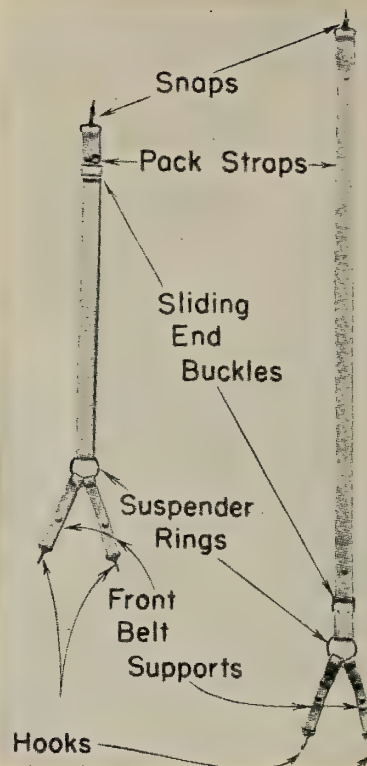


FIGURE 13.—The belt suspenders.



FIGURE 14.—The haversack and contents.

d. Belt suspenders assist in supporting one of the following with its appendages:

- (1) Belt, cartridge, caliber .30 rifle.
- (2) Belt, pistol, web.
- (3) Belt, BAR.

e. The blanket roll when carried with the pack may be made up as either a short or a long roll.

(1) *Short blanket roll.*—

(a) Components:

1. One blanket.
2. One line, guy, shelter tent.
3. Five pins, shelter tent.
4. One pole, shelter tent.
5. One tent, shelter, each half.

(b) To assemble:

1. Lay out shelter half.
2. Fold blanket and place poles, pins, and guy line as shown in figure 17. The width of the folded blanket should be the length of the extended tent pole.

3. Roll from bottom edge of tent.
4. Secure with tie-ties.

(c) Uses:

1. Component of field marching pack.
2. Component of baggage pack.

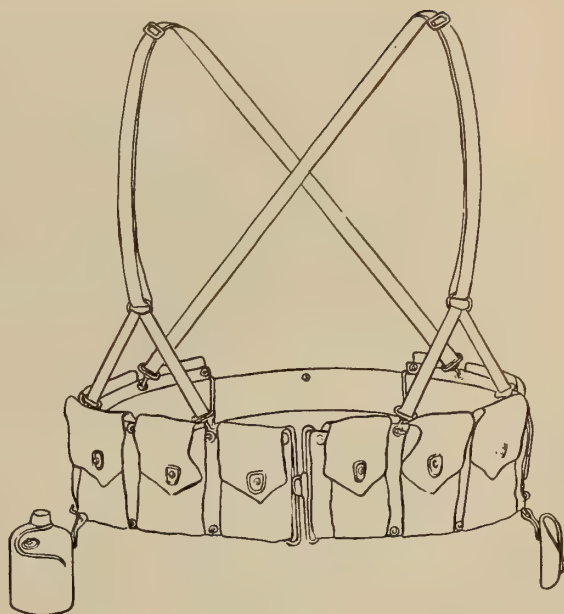


FIGURE 16.—Belt suspenders supporting a belt.

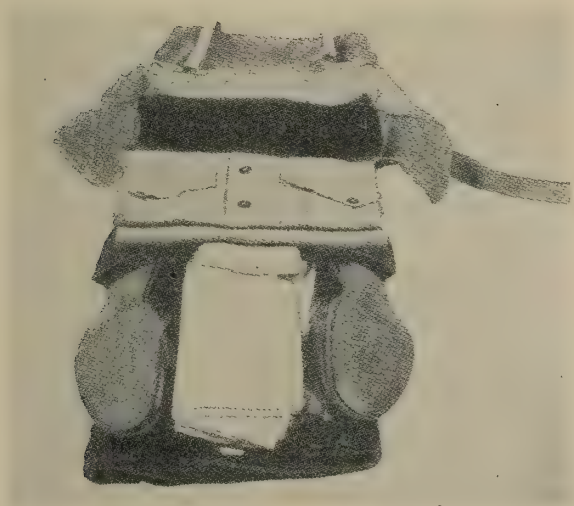


FIGURE 15.—The knapsack and contents.

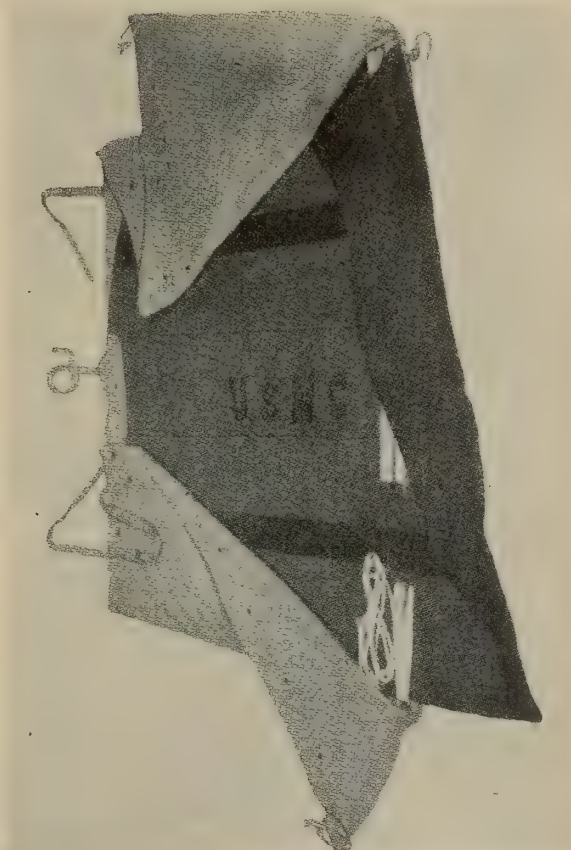


FIGURE 17.—Blanket roll, short, method of rolling.

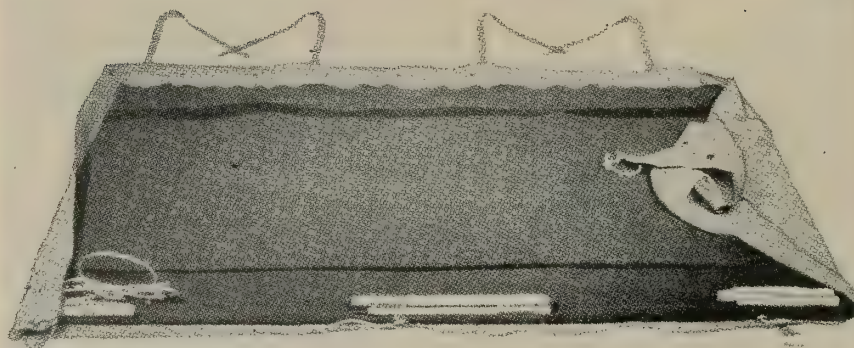


FIGURE 18.—Blanket roll, long, method of rolling.

(2) *Long blanket roll.*—

(a) Components:

1. One blanket (two blankets may be carried).
2. One line, guy, shelter tent.
3. Five pins, shelter tent.
4. One pole, shelter tent.
5. One tent, shelter, each half.

(b) To assemble:

1. Lay out shelter half.
2. Fold blanket in half and lay out with pole, pins, and guy line as shown in figure 18.
3. Roll from bottom edge of tent.
4. Secure with tie-ties.

(c) Uses: Component of field transport pack.

4-10 MARINE CORPS PACK, M1941—ASSEMBLIES.—*a.* There are several types of pack which can be made from the Marine Corps Pack, M1941. The most useful of these are the light marching pack, the marching pack, the field marching pack, the transport pack, and the field transport pack. The knapsack pack, the baggage pack, the knapsack musette pack, and the knapsack, hand carried can be made up for special situations.

4-11 THE LIGHT MARCHING PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The light marching pack (fig. 20) consists of the haversack, supported by its own suspender straps. When prescribed, it may be with or without the cartridge belt.

b. To assemble the light marching pack, pass the free ends of the haversack suspender straps up and through the first slot from the top of the M buckles and down and through the second slot. (The top of the M buckle is that part of the buckle with the snap hole on it.) The M buckle should be so placed that the top of the buckle is facing the top of the pack.

c. Pass the free ends of the haversack suspender straps through the pack strap loops from front to rear having first given them a half turn inward to make them lie better. (The front of the pack is that part which rests on the man's back.)



FIGURE 19.—Blanket rolls, short and long, rolled.



FIGURE 20.—The light marching pack.

d. Pass the free ends of the haversack suspender straps up and through the third slot from the top of the M buckle and down and through the fourth slot from the top and adjust to conform to the wearer.

4-12 THE MARCHING PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The marching pack (fig. 21) consists of the haversack, belt suspender, belt, and equipment as prescribed. Normally, this equipment will consist of all individual equipment as shown in table 1, paragraph 4-1, section I, of this chapter. This pack is used as a combat pack and on marches and field exercises not involving bivouac.

b. To assemble the marching pack, pass the free end of the haversack suspenders strap up and through the top slot of the M buckle, down and through the fourth slot. The top of the M buckle should be facing the top of the haversack.

c. Couple the haversack suspenders to the belt suspenders by passing the free end of the haversack suspenders strap through the belt suspender ring, doubling the strap back upon

itself and passing it through the keeper on the broad part of the suspender.

d. Pass the end of the belt suspender pack straps through the haversack pack strap loops from front to rear. Note that the belt suspenders DO NOT PASS OVER THE SHOULDERS. They pass under the pack and support it. Give the pack straps a half turn inward before passing through the loops as this causes them to lie more flatly against the body than if passed through the loops without a turn.

e. Cross pack straps behind haversack.

f. Couple belt suspender snaps into haversack suspender M buckles.

g. Adjust length of pack straps and haversack suspender straps. For this pack they must be almost as short as adjustments permit.

h. Try on pack without cartridge belt and adjust until comfortable. It is important to understand that the belt does not help to carry the pack when it is properly adjusted. The pack helps to carry the belt. Therefore, the pack should always be adjusted before fastening the belt around the waist.



Front view.

Rear view.

Side view.

FIGURE 21.—Marching pack.

i. Put on belt and fasten belt suspender hooks into eyelets along top edge of belt. Each man should determine which eyelets he should use to make the pack comfortable. Short waisted men will usually fasten the front hooks into the eyelets nearest the belt buckle. Long waisted men will usually fasten them into the second and third eyelets. The front supporting strap should tend to pull the suspender ring away from the armpit. The other supporting strap should be spaced to conform to the front straps.

j. Hook the haversack belt supporting strap into the center rear eyelet in the belt.

4-13 THE FIELD MARCHING PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The field marching pack (fig. 22) consists of the marching pack and the short blanket roll. It is carried on marches and field exercises involving bivouac.

b. To assemble the field marching pack, first assemble the marching pack as described in paragraph 4-12.

c. Assemble the short blanket roll as described in paragraph 4-9 (1) (*b*).

d. Bend blanket roll around sides and top of haversack so that free edge of shelter half will shed water.

e. Secure blanket roll to haversack with three blanket roll straps.

4-14 THE TRANSPORT PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The transport pack (fig. 23) consists of the marching pack and the knapsack. It may be used when traveling by rail, ship, or other transport when blankets are not required in the immediate possession of the men, or for field exercises when slow movement due to carrying extra weight is not of importance.

b. To assemble the transport pack, pass the knapsack coupling strap through the two haversack couplings, draw up snugly, and buckle.

c. Pass end of belt suspender pack strap through knapsack pack strap loops as described for the haversack in paragraph 4-11*d*.



Rear view.



Side view.

FIGURE 22.—Field marching pack.



Rear view.



Side view.

FIGURE 23.—Transport pack.

- d.* Cross pack straps behind haversack.
- e.* Couple pack strap snaps into haversack suspender M buckles.
- f.* Adjust length of pack straps and haversack suspender straps. For this pack, the straps will have to be lengthened almost to their limit.
- g.* Try on pack without belt as described in paragraph 4-12*h*.
- h.* Put on belt and fasten hooks as described in paragraph 4-12*i*.

4-15 THE FIELD TRANSPORT PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The field transport pack (fig. 24) consists of the transport pack and the long blanket roll. It is used when traveling by rail, ship, or other transport, and for field exercises when slow movement due to carrying extra weight is unimportant.

b. To assemble the field transport pack, first assemble the transport pack as described in paragraph 4-14 above.

c. Shape long blanket roll to pack as described in paragraph 4-13*d*.

d. Secure long blanket roll to haversack by top blanket roll strap and to knapsack by side blanket roll straps.

4-16 THE KNAPSACK PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The knapsack pack (figs. 25 and 26) consists of the knapsack, belt, and belt suspenders. This pack can be used in conjunction with other equipment which must be carried on the shoulders. Figure 26 shows a walkie-talkie radio set carried by its own suspenders above the knapsack pack.

b. To assemble the knapsack pack, pass the belt suspender pack straps downward through the pack strap loops in the knapsack reinforcing band.

c. Couple the pack strap snaps into the top eyelets of the belt in rear so that knapsack will be supported by the reinforcing band riding on top of the belt (fig. 25).

d. Cross the suspenders, pass them over the shoulders, and fasten belt supporting hooks into belt eyelets. In this case the belt serves to support the pack.



FIGURE 24.—Field transport pack.

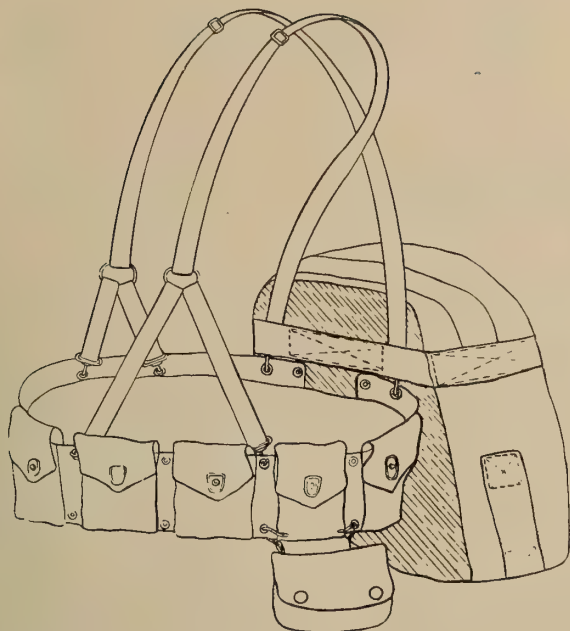


FIGURE 25.—Knapsack pack.

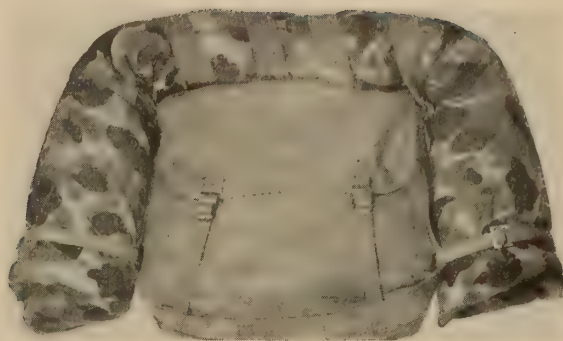


FIGURE 27.—Baggage pack.

4-17 THE BAGGAGE PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The baggage pack (fig. 27) consists of the knapsack and short blanket roll. It is not carried by the man but may be prescribed to secure equipment left behind on the march or to be moved ashore or transported forward.

b. To assemble the baggage pack, first assemble the short blanket roll.

c. Attach blanket roll to knapsack with the two side blanket roll straps. Pass the coupling strap over the top of the blanket roll and buckle in place.



FIGURE 26.—Knapsack pack



FIGURE 28.—Knapsack musette pack.

4-18 THE KNAPSACK MUSETTE PACK, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The knapsack musette pack (fig. 28) consists of the knapsack and the web trouser belt used as a sling.

b. To assemble the knapsack musette pack, buckle the trouser belt to the coupling strap and coupling strap buckle.

c. Sling across shoulder.

4-19 THE KNAPSACK PACK, HAND CARRIED, ASSEMBLY.—*a.* The knapsack pack, hand carried, consists only of the knapsack.

b. It is assembled by buckling the coupling strap into the coupling strap buckle, using the strap as a carrying handle.

SECTION IV

WEARING OF EQUIPMENT

	Par.	Pag
Introduction.....	4-20	155
The helmet.....	4-21	155
The pack.....	4-22	155
Individual equipment.....	4-23	155

4-20 INTRODUCTION.—*a.* Combat equipment is worn or carried in a specified standard manner for convenient use, to present a uniform appearance, and to facilitate inspections.

b. A smart appearance and a military manner are closely associated with proper wearing of equipment. Unit commanders should, by frequent inspections, constantly strive to maintain high standards for the proper wearing of equipment.

4-21 THE HELMET.—*a.* The helmet (fig. 29) with its liner is always worn in combat. For police and guard duty, or parades and ceremonies, the liner only may be worn as prescribed by the commander of the landing party.

b. The helmet, when worn in the prescribed manner, affords maximum protection to the forehead, temples, and back of the neck. The liner headband, helmet chinstrap, and liner chinstrap must be adjusted to conform with the size of the man's head. Proper fitting of the helmet is described below and illustrated in figure 29.

(1) Set squarely on the head with:

(*a*) Forward edge of the helmet on line and level with the eyebrows.

(*b*) Rear edge of the helmet low over the neck and parallel to the deck.

(*c*) Lobe of the ear, only, showing.

(2) Chin strap of the helmet kept firmly fastened under the chin.

(3) Liner chin strap tightly secured up and over the front edge of the helmet.

4-22 THE PACK.—*a.* Section III of this chapter describes in detail the various types of packs which can be made from the Marine

Corps Pack, M1941. Figures 20 through 28 illustrate these packs, the manner of wearing and methods of assembly.

b. An ill-fitting or incorrectly worn pack will cause the wearer to become chafed or unduly fatigued because of the unequal distribution of weight.

c. The pack should be worn as outlined below:

(1) Top of the haversack parallel to the neck and even with the level of the wearer's shoulders. If the top of the haversack is lower than the shoulders, the suspender straps must be shortened in order to adjust the pack in a higher position. If the top of the haversack is too high above the shoulders, the suspender straps must be lengthened to lower the pack.

(2) Sides of the haversack and knapsack (when carried) should be perpendicular to the neck.

(3) When the field marching pack or field transport pack is carried, the blanket roll should be fitted to the neck so that it does not ride so high that it will dislodge the helmet from the wearer's head.

(4) The blanket roll should be as tightly rolled as possible and its ends evenly alined on both sides of the pack. Blanket roll straps should be neatly and tightly secured with no loose ends showing.

(5) The pack should be packed so that mess gear and like items do not dig into the back. This can be accomplished by placing the poncho and clothing on the side nearest the wearer's back.

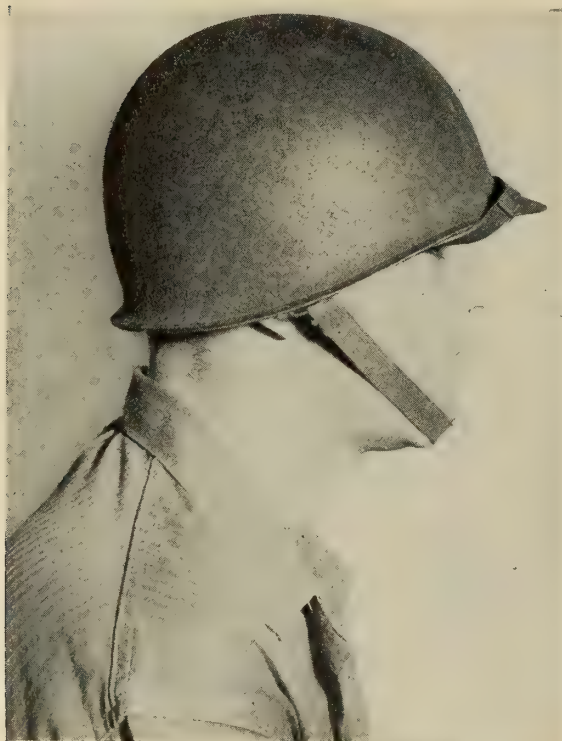
4-23 INDIVIDUAL EQUIPMENT.—Individual equipment is worn as prescribed below:

a. Bayonet and scabbard.—(1) On the cartridge or pistol belt. Scabbard hooked to eyelets of the belt at a point opposite the left hip.

(2) On the haversack—scabbard hooked to bayonet attachment and passed through bayonet loop.



Front view.



Side view.

FIGURE 29.—The helmet.

(3) Bayonet ring is to the front when bayonet is worn on the belt. Ring is to the rear when worn on the haversack.

(4) When the pack is worn and the bayonet carried, the bayonet will be secured to the pack.

b. Canteen, canteen cup, and cover.—On the pistol, BAR or cartridge belt—hooked to eyelets at a point over the right buttocks.

c. Case, dispatch, and map.—Resting on the right buttock and suspended by a strap passing over the left shoulder.

d. Cutters, wire, and carrier.—Attached to the pistol belt to the rear of the bayonet.

e. Compass and case.—Attached to the belt on the right of the buckle between the right hip and the buckle.

f. Flashlight.—Carried in haversack.

g. Glasses, field, with case and carrying strap.—On the left side of the wearer. May be worn on the belt without carrying strap or suspended by the carrying strap passed over the right shoulder.

h. Holster and pistol.—Hooked to the eyelets of the pistol belt at the right hip.

i. Intrenching tool and carrier.—Hooked to the intrenching tool attachment on the haversack and secured by the intrenching tool strap.

j. Kit, spare parts, and accessories, BAR.—Hooked to the eyelets on the BAR belt to the right of the buckle and forward of the right hip.

k. Lanyard, pistol.—(1) Without shoulder strap—hooked to pistol and looped around the body so that the loop is around the left shoulder and under the right arm.

(2) With the shoulder strap—hooked to pistol with loop passing around the right shoulder under the shoulder strap.

l. Machete and sheath.—(1) Where no intrenching tool is carried—in the same position as the intrenching tool.

(2) Where intrenching tool is carried—hooked to eyelets on the belt at the left hip.

m. Mask, gas, service, light weight and carrier (see fig. 30).—(1) Slung at back carry. (See fig. 31.) Hold shoulder strap of gas mask carrier in palm of left hand flap of carrier facing away from the body. Grasp top of shoulder strap forming a large loop and swing over the head, passing the left elbow through the loop. Place the strap at junction of the neck and right shoulder and position carrier at left side. (The shoulder strap slide should be moved so that the carrier will be at the waist-line.) Then shorten the shoulder strap by

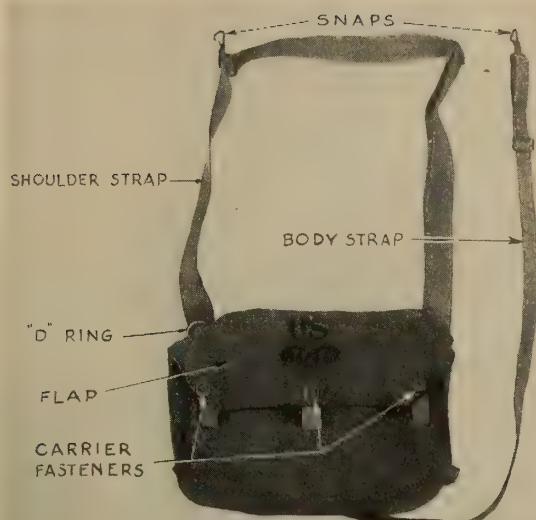


FIGURE 30.—Mask, gas, service, light weight, in its carrier.

hooking the harness snap into the D ring on the upper right corner of the carrier. Slide carrier around under the left arm to position on the back. Pass the body strap across the rear of the body **over the equipment**, around the right side and fasten to sliding loop on the shoulder strap. **The carrier is then in a diagonal position on the back.** When the gas mask is slung at the back carry with the pack, the carrier is up-ended and positioned high at the left, resting against the side of the pack.

(2) *Slung at side carry* (see fig. 32).—Hold shoulder strap of carrier in the palm of the left hand, flap of carrier facing away from the body. With both hands, grasp top of shoulder strap forming a large loop and swing over the head, passing the left elbow through the loop. Place the strap at the junction of the neck and right shoulder and position carrier at left side. (The shoulder strap slide should be moved so that the carrier will be at the waistline.) Then adjust the body strap to pass around the body

and fasten to the small D ring on the lower left corner of the carrier. (If desired the carrier can be moved to the front for carrying on the lap or to the back of the left hip.)

(n) *Pockets, magazine, f/pistol or carbine.*—Attached to the belt on the left of the buckle, open ends up, flaps closed.

(o) *Packet, first aid, and pouch.*—(1) On the cartridge belt—hooked to eyelets under the fifth pocket to the left of buckle.

(2) On the BAR belt—hooked to eyelets on the belt at the left hip.

(3) On the pistol belt—hooked to eyelets on the belt in rear of the left hip.

(p) *Rod, cleaning, machine gun.*—In the haversack.



FIGURE 31.—Mask, gas, back carry.



Front view.



Side view.

FIGURE 32.—Mask, gas, side carry.

7/11/16
P. 11/16

SECTION V

DISPLAY OF EQUIPMENT

	Par.	Page
Examination of equipment in ranks.....	4-24	159
Examination of equipment on the bunk..	4-25	164

4-24 EXAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT IN RANKS.—(See figs. 33, 34, and 35.)—*a.* Equipment is examined in ranks so that the commander may readily inspect the pack, its contents and the items of individual equipment carried by each man. Such an inspection affords an opportunity to check on the condition of the equipment; to ascertain whether it is serviceable; to see if each individual has in his possession the necessary items of equipment, and the proper number; and to provide a uniform manner of displaying equipment which facilitates the task of inspection.

b. The two methods of examining equipment in ranks are:

(1) Inspection of equipment while being worn by the individual.

(2) Inspection of equipment having been displayed on the ground by the individual.

c. When equipment is to be inspected in ranks **on the individual**, the commander causes his unit to prepare for inspection and the inspection is conducted as prescribed for a company in Chapter 3, paragraph 3-32.

d. When equipment is displayed for inspection, the commander causes his unit to prepare for inspection as prescribed in Chapter 3, paragraph 3-32, and the equipment is laid out as described in the following paragraphs.

(1) At the command, **DISPLAY EQUIPMENT**, the pack assembly is uncoupled so that the blanket roll, knapsack (if worn), haversack, and belt (with suspenders attached), are free from each other.

(2) Each man then unrolls his blanket roll and places the shelter half on the ground to his front with the triangular ends folded under and the front end of the shelter half to the front.

(3) The blanket(s) are then folded as shown

in figures 33, 34, and 35, and placed on top of the shelter half. The manner of folding the blanket(s) will vary, as shown, depending upon the type of pack worn when equipment is examined in ranks. (If it is desired to display the Transport Pack, or any pack which does not include the blanket roll, the poncho will be unfolded and placed on the ground in lieu of the shelter half and blanket(s).

(4) Each man then removes from his belt his canteen cover, canteen cup, canteen, first-aid kit, and any other items of equipment attached to the belt, except the belt suspenders which are left attached. He then places the belt in the center of and along the lower edge of the blanket, 6 inches from the edge. The suspenders are folded under the belt and crossed on the blanket as shown. The cartridge belt is placed with ammunition pouches up, flaps closed, the top of the belt to the front.

(5) Each man then removes the contents of his haversack and knapsack (if carried), detaches his intrenching tool and carrier, and places the haversack and knapsack on the blanket, flap side up, top to the front, and 3 inches to the rear of the belt. The flap(s) are then folded or opened down over the top of the belt. If both haversack and knapsack are to be displayed, the haversack is placed on the right of the blanket and the knapsack on the left. (See figs. 34 and 35.) If the haversack only is to be displayed, it is placed behind the center of the belt with flap opened over the belt. (See fig. 33.)

NOTE.—The right of the blanket is the side of the blanket to the right of the man as he stands in ranks facing the inspecting officer. (See fig. 33.)

(6) Each man then places his poncho, single fold to the front, on top of the body of the haversack. On the poncho, he places his towel, toilet articles, and extra shoe and legging laces. On the opened flap of the haversack, he places



FIGURE 33.—Field marching pack displayed for inspections (as seen by the inspecting officer).



FIGURE 34.—Field transport pack displayed for inspections (as seen by the inspecting officer).



FIGURE 35.—Field transport pack displayed for inspection showing carbine, field planner, compass, whistle, wire cutter, magazines for carbine, pocket magazine for magazines carbine, and case map and dispatch (as seen by the inspecting officer).

the articles of clothing carried therein, in the following order from the rear:

(a) Drawers, folded, single fold to the front, name visible.

(b) Undershirt, single fold to the front, name visible.

(c) Socks, foot folded under, name visible across top weave which is folded under to level of stenciled name.

(7) On top of the knapsack (if displayed), he places the articles of clothing carried therein except shoes. The shoes, with the left sole down, right sole up, right shoe on the right, toes overlapping, and name visible (tops are turned down if field shoes are carried), are placed on the blanket just to the rear of the knapsack. Other articles of clothing carried in the knapsack are placed on the knapsack and opened flap in the following order beginning at the top:

(a) Trousers, single fold to the front, fly folded back so name is visible.

(b) Shirts or jumpers, single fold to the front, sleeves under, name visible.

(c) Drawers, folded so name is visible.

(d) Undershirts, single fold to the front, name visible.

(e) Socks, foot folded under, name visible across top weave which is folded under to level of stenciled name.

(8) Rations, if carried, are placed just behind the belt between haversack and knapsack and/or on either side if necessary. (See figs. 33 and 34.)

(9) The following articles are then placed on the blanket in the center, starting at the top of the blanket, in the following order:

(a) Shelter-tent pole, folded with pin to the right.

(b) Shelter-tent pins, in the manner illustrated.

(c) Guy rope, rolled and tied, long axis of roll left to right.

(d) Meat can, with handle closed, hinge to the left.

(e) Meat-can cover, ring to the left.

(f) Knife, fork, and spoon, handles to the left, edge of knife toward fork.

(g) First-aid pouch, snaps up, flap opened and folded out and down towards bottom of the blanket.

(h) First-aid packet is placed on the opened flap of the first-aid pouch, ring up and to the front.

(i) Canteen cup to left of first-aid pouch, canteen to right of first-aid pouch (concave curves to the right).

(10) On the right edge of the blanket is placed the rifle, carbine, or automatic rifle, muzzle toward the man, one inch from the top of the edge of the blanket, sling to the left, with butt plate cap opened and oil and thong case and combination tool displayed under the butt plate as shown in figures 33, 34, and 35.

(11) In the space between the weapon and the articles listed in subparagraph *m*, each man places the following articles in the order listed starting from the top of the blanket:

(a) Gas mask, carrier opened and facepiece out just below the carrier with inside of facepiece down.

(b) Canteen cover, flaps opened and down, to the right of the canteen.

(12) On the left of the blanket he places the following articles:

(a) Bayonet, two inches from and parallel to the left edge of blanket, ring to the left, top of hilt on line with top edge of first-aid packet.

(b) Bayonet scabbard, two inches from and parallel to left edge of blanket, with bottom edge of scabbard on line with center ridge of meat-can cover.

(c) Intrenching tool and carrier as shown in figures 33, 34, and 35. Exact placement depends on type carried.

(13) Other equipment is placed as shown in figures 33, 34, and 35 or as described below.

(14) All equipment then being displayed, the man assumes the position of attention, toes just behind edge of the center of the shelter half at a point approximately behind the tent pole and facing the inspecting officer.

(15) The foregoing paragraphs and figures 33, 34, and 35 display basic items of combat equipment. There are, however, certain items of equipment carried by individuals which are peculiar to the combat duties they carry out. These articles must also be displayed for the

reasons outlined in subparagraph *a*. The placement of these articles is described below:

(*a*) Book, field message; in same position as map and dispatch case.

(*b*) Holster, pistol, cal. .45, M1916 (hip); on blanket just under magazines, holster flap closed with holster pointed to the right.

(*c*) Helmet steel, w/liner; displayed only in the event other headgear is worn. The helmet carried on the pack will be displayed top up on the blanket just above the bayonet scabbard.

(*d*) Kit, spare parts and accessories, BAR; in the position shown for the combination tool and oil and thong case. The kit will be displayed with cover open.

(*e*) Lanyard, pistol; displayed in double loop, parallel to and 2 inches from right edge of blanket, snap toward bottom of blanket, top of loop 2 inches from top edge of blanket.

(*f*) Magazines, pistol, automatic, cal. .45; in same relative positions as magazines for carbine (fig. 35).

(*g*) Magazines, BAR; left in belt pockets.

(*h*) Overcoat; when overcoat is carried in the roll in lieu of the second blanket, it will be displayed, folded with name visible, parallel to and along the extreme left edge of the blanket.

(*i*) Pistol, automatic, cal. .45, M1911 or M1911A1; slide back, pointed to the right, muzzle 2 inches from right edge of blanket, just above magazines.

(*j*) Pocket, magazine, double web for pistol; in same relative position as shown for pocket, magazine, for carbine.

(*k*) Tags, identification; slung around the neck but exposed for inspection.

The inspection is conducted as prescribed in chapter 3.

4-25 EXAMINATION OF EQUIPMENT ON THE BUNK.—(See fig. 36.)—Equipment is inspected on the bunk for the same reasons it is inspected in ranks, with the limitation of the size of the bunk being the determining factor as to what equipment is displayed. It furnishes a means of combining barracks and personnel inspection with inspection of the basic articles of equipment each man is issued. The standard method prescribed for laying out equipment on the bunk provides a uniform and speedy method of arrangement and facilitates inspection. When it is desired to so inspect

equipment on the bunk, the bunk is made in the regulation manner. The equipment is then laid out as follows:

NOTE.—The right side of the bunk is the side on the man's right as he stands at the head of the bunk. The head of the bunk is the end on which the pillow is placed.

a. The haversack is placed flap up and closed, top to the foot of the bunk, 3 inches from the left side and 2 inches from the bottom of the bunk.

b. The knapsack is placed, flap up and closed, top to the bottom of the bunk, in a corresponding position to the haversack, on the right side of the bunk.

c. The belt suspenders and blanket roll straps are placed across the haversack and knapsack as shown in figure 36. The snaps of the suspenders and buckles of the blanket roll straps are to the left and the suspenders are above the blanket roll straps.

d. The shelter half and poncho are folded to approximately the size of the haversack and are placed, single fold to the front, on the bunk 2 inches above and in line with the haversack and knapsack. The shelter half is placed on the left side of the bunk above the haversack and the poncho on the right side of the bunk above the knapsack.

e. The belt is placed across the poncho and shelter half, flaps closed and up, the top of the belt toward the foot of the bunk.

f. The following articles are placed on the bunk, starting from the center edge of the sheet fold, toward the foot of the bunk in the following manner:

(1) Shelter-tent pole, folded with pin to the right.

(2) Shelter-tent pins, overlapping, three heads to the right, two to the left.

(3) Guy rope, rolled and tied, on axis of roll left to right.

(4) Meat can, with handle closed, hinge to the left.

(5) Meat-can cover, ring to the left.

(6) Knife, fork, and spoon, handles to the left, edge of the knife toward fork.

(7) First-aid pouch, snaps up, flap opened and folded out and down toward foot of the bunk.

(8) First-aid packet is placed on the opened flap of the first-aid pouch, ring up and to the front.

(9) Canteen cup to the left of the first-aid pouch, canteen to right of first-aid pouch (concave curves to the right).

g. On the left side of the bunk are placed the following articles:

(1) Bayonet, 6 inches from and parallel to left edge of bunk, ring to the left, top of hilt on line with knife, haversack.

(2) Bayonet scabbard, 6 inches from and

parallel to left edge of bunk, with bottom edge of scabbard on line with handle of meat can.

h. The canteen cover is placed on the right side of the bunk, flaps opened and down, to right of meat-can cover and knife, fork, and spoon. The flaps, when extended, are on a line with the spoon and bottom of bayonet hilt.

i. Other equipment may be displayed as desired within the limitations of the space afforded by the size of the bunk.

j. The man stands at attention at the right side of the head of the bunk.

SECTION VI

DISPLAY OF CLOTHING ON THE BUNK

Display of Clothing on the Bunk-----	Par. 4-26	Page 167
--------------------------------------	-----------	----------

4-26 DISPLAY OF CLOTHING ON THE BUNK (MARINE CORPS.).—*a.* Clothing is displayed on the bunk in the uniform manner herein prescribed in order to facilitate the task of inspection. The inspection affords an opportunity to check the amount of clothing each man has in his possession, its condition and state of repair, whether or not it is properly marked and gives a general indication of the care and cleanliness exercised by the individual. When it is desired to have clothing displayed on the bunk for such inspection, the bunk is made down so that the stenciled name on the blanket is exposed along the center of the foot edge of the bed. The clothing is then laid out as follows (see fig. 37):

NOTE.—The right side of the bunk is the side on the man's right as he stands at the head of the bunk. The head of the bunk is the end on which the pillow is placed.

(1) The following articles are arranged on the part of the pillow toward the foot of the bunk in the following order from right to left:

(*a*) Cap, frame, dress; on its right side, visor to the right, right side of sweatband turned down exposing name.

(*b*) Cap, garrison, service winter; on its right side, with left lower edge turned back exposing the name in center of lining on right side.

(*c*) Cap, garrison, service summer; same as cap, garrison, service winter.

(*d*) Cap, utility (if issued); on its back, visor to the right, exposing name.

(2) The cap covers and helmet, fiber (when issued) are arranged nearly vertical against the bunk head-piece with insides to the front exposing names. Cap covers are placed on the right.

(3) The following articles are folded so that, when displayed, the name will be legible from the foot of the bunk. They are arranged, each article overlapping the one previously listed,

from the edge of the pillow toward the foot of the bunk as follows:

(*a*) On the right side of the bunk:

Shirts.

Undershirts.

Scarfs, field.

Gloves, leather, woolen and cotton, fingers pointed toward the pillow, palm down.

(*b*) In the center of the bunk:

Overcoat.

Coat, dress.

Jacket, service, wool kersey.

Jacket, service, khaki, summer.

Coat, utility (if issued).

Leggings, with extra pair of shoe laces, legging laces, and marking outfit (stamp, stencil, etc.) on top.

(*c*) On the left side of the bunk:

Trousers, dress.

Trousers, service winter.

Trousers, service summer.

Trousers, utility (if issued).

Drawers.

Socks.

(4) The following articles are extended full length across the bunk below the articles listed in subparagraph *c* above and placed, buckles to the right, under side up with name legible from the foot of the bunk in the following order from head to foot:

Belt, cloth.

Belt, trouser, woven.

(5) One pair of shoes, partially laced with ends of laces tucked inside of shoes, is displayed in the center of the bunk at the foot, left sole down, right sole up, right shoe on the right, toes overlapping, top of left shoe displayed so that name is legible. Extra shoes with laces attached and folded in are placed under the bunk on the deck, toe to the foot and on line with the foot of the bunk.



FIGURE 37.—Display of clothing on the bunk (Marine Corps). This figure illustrates the relative positions of items of clothing to be displayed, not the quantity.



FIGURE 38.—Display of clothing on the bunk (Navy). This figure illustrates the relative positions of items of clothing to be displayed, not quantity.



FIGURE 39.—Display of clothing and equipment on the bunk (Marine Corps). (This figure illustrates the relative positions of items of clothing and equipment to be displayed, not the quantity.)

(6) Box, clothing, barracks (if issued), is placed at the foot of the bunk, lid open, tray partially laid back, and contents neatly arranged. All articles of clothing are removed therefrom and displayed on the bunk.

(7) Locker, steel (if issued), is opened with contents neatly arranged. All articles of clothing are removed therefrom and displayed on the bunk.

(8) Card holder, bunk (if issued), is properly

filled out and suspended over the center of the top rail of the footpiece.

(9) The man stands at attention at the right side of the bunk, at its head.

b. For display of clothing (Navy) see figure 38.

c. If it is desired to display both clothing and equipment on the bunk, it will be done as shown in figure 39.

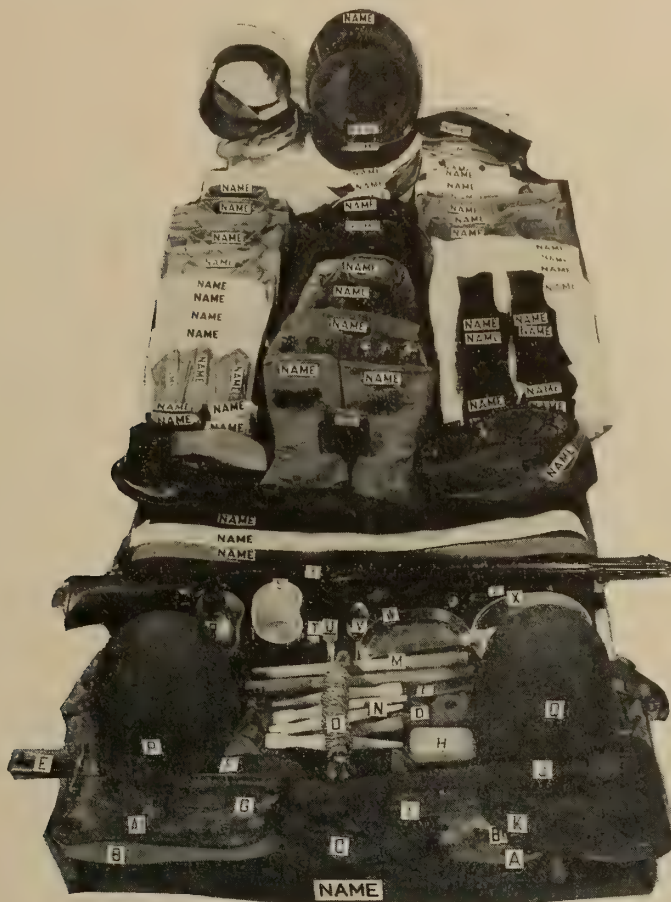


FIGURE 39.—Continued.

- A Haversack.
- A1 Poncho.
- B Knapsack.
- B1 Shelter half.
- C Gas mask.
- D Cartridge belt.
- E Bayonet.
- F Bayonet scabbard.
- G Canteen cover.
- H First-aid packet.
- I First-aid pouch.
- J Entrenching tool.
- K Entrenching tool carrier.
- L Suspenders.

- M Tent pole.
- N Tent pegs.
- O Guy line.
- P Helmet.
- Q Helmet liner.
- R Canteen.
- S Canteen cup.
- T Knife.
- U Fork.
- V Spoon.
- W Meat can cover.
- X Meat can.
- Y Rifle.
- Z Oil and thong case and combination tool.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 5

INTERIOR GUARD DUTY

CHAPTER 5

INTERIOR GUARD DUTY

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL INFORMATION-----	5-1	177
II. DUTIES OF PERSONNEL-----	5-9	179
III. ORDERS-----	5-21	185
IV. FORMATIONS-----	5-24	188
V. GUARD MOUNTING-----	5-29	190
VI. RELIEVING THE OLD GUARD-----	5-32	201
VII. GUARD ABOARD SHIP-----	5-39	203
VIII. THE COLORS-----	5-42	205
IX. BRIG ADMINISTRATION AND PRISONER GUARD-----	5-43	208

SECTION I

GENERAL INFORMATION

	Par.	Page
General.....	5-1	177
Definitions.....	5-2	177
Classification.....	5-3	177
Composition.....	5-4	177
Length of tour.....	5-5	177
Data for guard details.....	5-6	177
Notice of guard details.....	5-7	177
Detail of officers.....	5-8	178

5-1 GENERAL.—*a.* Commanding officers of ships and commandants or commanding officers of shore stations establish and maintain interior guards within the jurisdiction of their commands except where the watchman system of guard is employed.

b. Interior guards are used to preserve order, protect property, and enforce police regulations.

c. Where no separate prison facilities exist, the prisoner and brig routine may be placed under the jurisdiction of the interior guard.

d. Interior guards are to be distinguished from outguards which are employed to protect and defend tactical areas, and from guards in riot duty and other special type operations, wherein specially organized and equipped troops conduct guard duty in a manner commensurate with the requirements of the local situation. (See Chs. 8 and 11.)

e. The provisions of this chapter are written primarily from the standpoint of the performance of interior guard duty ashore. However, the same general instructions apply to the performance of guard duty aboard ship subject to the provisions of section VII.

5-2 DEFINITIONS.—*a.* For definitions of various terms used in this chapter, see chapter 14, Glossary.

b. Terms such as **Sergeant of the Guard** and **Corporal of the Guard**, are used to indicate the official designation of the office and are not necessarily descriptive of the ratings of the petty officers performing these duties.

5-3 CLASSIFICATION.—The various elements of an interior guard, classified according

to their purposes and the manner in which they perform their duties, are as follows:

a. The main guard.

b. Special guards: train guards, boat guards, park guards, and other guards detailed for specific purposes.

c. Prisoner guards.

5-4 COMPOSITION.—An interior guard will be of such strength, detailed from such units, and equipped as the commanding officer directs. In order that guard duty may not interfere with normal training, the smallest possible number of men will be detailed.

5-5 LENGTH OF TOUR.—*a.* Members of the main guard will habitually be relieved every 24 hours. The length of the tour of enlisted men detailed on other guards will be regulated by specific orders.

b. When personnel is limited, interior guard duty may be performed by a running guard, preferably not less than five men to a post, each of whom is relieved after a 4-hour watch.

c. A relief is required to be in garrison (on board ship), fit for duty, 4 hours before its next watch.

5-6 DATA FOR GUARD DETAILS.—*a.* The commanding officer will publish the necessary information relative to the new guard in sufficient time for commanders to make details from their organizations. This information should include orders relative to guard mounting whether formal or informal, prescribe the uniform to be worn, and other pertinent details not covered in existing orders.

b. If formal guard mounting is to be held, the adjutant, sergeant major, and band to attend will be designated by the commanding officer.

5-7 NOTICE OF GUARD DETAILS.—*a.* Guard details are posted on unit bulletin boards as early as practicable.

b. Officers are notified in person or by written orders of their detail for guard.

5-8 DETAILS OF OFFICERS.—*a.* At each station or post ashore, the commanding officer shall detail daily an officer of the command for duty as officer of the day. (See Navy Regulations.) He is responsible, as the direct representative of the commanding officer, for the performance of the guard, preserving order, protecting property, enforcing regulations, and guarding prisoners. For duties of the officer of

the day aboard ship, see section VII, Guard Duty Aboard Ship.

b. An officer will be detailed as commander of the guard when, in the discretion of the commanding officer, such assignment is necessary. If more than one officer is detailed for duty with the guard, the senior is the commander of the guard. When no commissioned officer is detailed, the duties of commander of the guard will be executed by the sergeant of the guard.

SECTION II

DUTIES OF PERSONNEL

	Par.	Page
General.....	5-9	179
Commanding officer.....	5-10	179
Officer of the day.....	5-11	179
Commander of the guard.....	5-12	180
Sergeant of the guard.....	5-13	181
Corporal of the guard.....	5-14	182
Field musics (buglers).....	5-15	182
Nonrated men of the guard.....	5-16	182
Guardhouse sentry.....	5-17	183
Orderlies.....	5-18	183
Color guards.....	5-19	183
Watchmen and special guards.....	5-20	183

5-9 GENERAL.—The responsibilities and duties of certain members of the guard are of a special nature. Accordingly, duties not included herein should be prescribed in special orders issued by the commanding officer. Whenever practicable, these orders should be reduced to writing and made available to those concerned.

5-10 COMMANDING OFFICER.—The commanding officer or his representative receives the report of the officers of the day immediately after guard mounting. He or his representative carefully examines the sergeant of the guard report book and then relieves the old officer of the day and gives the new officer of the day his instructions.

5-11 OFFICER OF THE DAY.—*a.* The officer of the day is responsible for the proper performance of duty by the main guard and other guards when specifically directed. He is charged with the execution of all orders of the commanding officer relating to interior guard duty.

b. His actual tour begins when he receives the instructions of the commanding officer and ceases when he has been relieved by the same authority. In case of emergency during the interval between guard mounting and reporting to the commanding officer, the officer of the day senior in rank assumes authority over both guards.

c. In the absence of special instructions from the commanding officer, the officer of the day will inspect each relief of the guard and sentries at least once while on post and will make such additional inspections at such times during the day and night as he may consider necessary. He will inspect them at least once between midnight and daylight.

d. He prescribes visits of inspection to be made by officers and petty officers of the guard whenever he considers it necessary.

e. In case of alarm of any kind, he will at once take steps to protect life and public property, and to preserve order, using the guard for this purpose.

f. He will keep the guard informed as to his whereabouts at all times.

g. In the performance of his duties, he takes orders only from the commanding officer, except that in case of an alarm of any kind and at a time of great danger, the senior line officer present is competent to give necessary orders to the officer of the day for the employment of the guard.

h. When the prison guard is included in the interior guard, the officer of the day, in the absence of special orders from the commanding officer will see that the provisions of section IX of this chapter are complied with.

i. The old officer of the day will:

(1) In the absence of special instructions release at guard mounting all prisoners (other than general court-martial prisoners) whose sentences expire that day.

(2) Report to the commanding officer all cases of prisoners with no record of charges against them.

(3) Carefully examine the guard report book before guard mounting and have any errors therein corrected. He will enter thereon under the heading "Report of the Officer of the Day," the hours he visited sentries and other pertinent

data concerning his tour of duty directed by the commanding officer. After having assured himself of the correctness and completeness of the guard report book, he shall make the following entry over his signature, "I have personally examined this report and find it to be correct."

j. Both the old and new officers of the day after guard mounting will—

(1) Verify the count of prisoners (if the prison guard is included in the interior guard) and inspect the guardhouse and premises together.

(2) Report to the commanding officer or his representative as follows: on presenting themselves both salute. The old officer of the day standing on the right of the new then says, "Sir, I report as old officer of the day," and presents the guard report. As soon as the commanding officer or his representative notifies the old officer of the day that he is relieved, the latter salutes and retires—the new officer of the day again salutes and says, "Sir, I report as new officer of the day." After receiving his instructions, he salutes and retires.

5-12. COMMANDER OF THE GUARD.—

a. The commander of the guard is responsible for the instruction, discipline, and performance of the guard.

b. The commander of the guard will—

(1) Receive and obey the orders of the commanding officer, and officer of the day.

(2) Report to the officer of the day all guard orders received from persons other than the officer of the day.

(3) Transmit to his successor all instructions and informations relating to his duties.

(4) See that all members of the guard are correctly instructed in their orders and duties, and that they understand and properly perform them.

(5) Question his petty officers and sentries relative to the instructions that they may have received from the old guard.

(6) See that visits of inspection are made as directed by the officer of the day.

(7) See that all sentries are relieved at the proper time.

(8) See that proper calls are sounded at the hours prescribed by the commanding officer.

(9) See that all general and special orders are posted in the guardhouse, and when practicable in sentry boxes or other sheltered places on each post to which they apply.

(10) Inspect the guardhouse and brig at least once during his tour and at such other times as he may consider necessary. Where there is no prison officer, he will inspect the meals sent to the guardhouse or prepared therein, and see that the quarters are kept properly policed.

(11) Inspect the guard at reveille and evening colors and at such other times as may be necessary to assure himself that the men are properly uniformed, equipped, and in condition to perform their duties.

(12) Visit each relief at least once while it is on post. At least one of these visits will be made between midnight and daylight.

(13) Prepare the guard for inspection by other officers as directed.

(14) Form the guard in case of an alarm and in emergencies cause the proper call to be sounded and the officer of the day to be notified at once.

(15) Send a patrol to a sentry's post should the sentry call, "the guard," and, except on board ship, make the patrol as strong as possible should the sentry discharge his piece three times in rapid succession.

(16) A commander of the guard leaving the guardhouse for any reason will inform the next in command of his destination and probable time of return. Except in emergencies, the commander of the guard may divide the night with the next in command, but retains his responsibility. The one on watch must be constantly on the alert.

(17) Notify the officer of the day at once should a member of the guard be taken sick or for any reason leave his post.

(18) Require members of the guard, upon leaving the guardhouse to be properly equipped and armed according to the character of the service in which engaged or as directed by the commanding officer. He may permit them to remove their headdress, overcoats, and gloves while at the guardhouse.

(19) Cause the details to be made for raising and lowering the flag at morning and evening colors.

(20) See that the colors are kept in the best possible condition and that they are never handled except in the performance of duty.

(21) Report to the officer of the day when colors are not in serviceable condition.

(22) Detain at the guardhouse all suspicious-looking persons or parties and report the circumstances to the officer of the day who will decide what action is to be taken.

(23) Be responsible for the security of the prisoners under charge of the guard. The commander of the guard becomes responsible for them after their number has been verified and they have been turned over to the custody of his guard. The prisoners will be verified and turned over to the new guard without parading them unless the commanding officer or officer of the day directs otherwise.

(24) Cause the corporals of the old and new reliefs, immediately before each relief goes on post, to verify together the number of prisoners who should then be at the guardhouse.

(25) Cause any person sent to the guardhouse for confinement to be searched for unauthorized articles in his possession. (See par. 5-44a (2) (d).)

(26) See that the sentences of the prisoners under his charge are strictly executed.

(27) See that the brig is administered in accordance with section IX of this chapter.

(28) Report all confinements to the officer of the day without delay.

(29) Enter a report of his tour of duty in the guard report book and on completion of his tour present it to the officer of the day.

5-13 SERGEANT OF THE GUARD.—

a. The senior petty officer of the guard, whatever his grade, will officially be known as the sergeant of the guard. He receives and obeys orders only from the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers of the guard. If there is no officer of the guard, he will perform the duties prescribed for the commander of the guard.

b. The sergeant of the guard will—

(1) Have general supervision over the other petty officers, buglers (field musics), and non-rated men of the guard. He will be thoroughly familiar with their orders and duties.

(2) Be responsible for the property under charge of the guard and see that it is cared for

properly. He will report any discrepancies to the commander of the guard. He will list all articles taken out by working parties and see that such articles are returned in good condition unless they are issued and cared for by the prison officer or similar authority.

(3) Prepare duplicate lists of the names of the petty officers, buglers (field musics) and non-rated men of the guard, showing the reliefs and posts or duties of each. One list is given to the commander of the guard and the other retained by himself.

(4) See that all reliefs are turned out at the proper time and that the corporals of the guard thoroughly understand and are prompt and efficient in the discharge of their duties. He will designate bunks in the same vicinity for each relief, so that it may be quickly found, and turned out.

(5) Make such inspections and see that the other petty officers of the guard make such inspections and patrols as may be prescribed by superior authority.

(6) Turn over his duties to the next ranking petty officer before absenting himself from the guardhouse.

(7) Take the place of the corporal of the guard whose relief is on post or designate another petty officer to do so, should the corporal of the guard be called away from the guardhouse.

(8) Be responsible for the proper police of the guardhouse, including the area around it.

(9) Report as may be directed by the commanding officer to the adjutant's office for the guard report book.

(10) Report the following to the commander of the guard, or, if none be detailed, to the officer of the day:

(*a*) Any suspicious or unusual occurrence that comes to his notice.

(*b*) All persons arrested by the guard.

(*c*) The approach of an armed party.

(*d*) Any orders or instructions received from persons other than commander of the guard, or the officer of the day.

(11) When the prison guard is included in the interior guard, the sergeant of the guard may be assigned the duties of brig warden. When so assigned, he will administer the brig in accordance with the orders of the officer of

the day, the commander of the guard, and the provisions of section IX of this chapter.

5-14 CORPORAL OF THE GUARD.—*a.* A petty officer of the guard detailed for duty in charge of a relief of the guard will be officially known as the corporal of the guard. He receives and obeys orders only from the commanding officer, officer of the day, officers of the guard, and petty officers of the guard senior to himself.

b. The corporal of the guard will:

(1) If members of the guard are not assigned to reliefs and posts by higher authority, immediately after the division of the guard into reliefs, assign the members of his relief to posts. Such assignment will not be changed during the same tour except by direction of the commander of the guard or higher authority.

(2) Make a list of the members of his relief, including himself. This list will show the number of the relief, the post to which each man is assigned, and his name and organization. The list will be made in duplicate; one copy given to the sergeant of the guard and the other retained by himself.

(3) Instruct the members of his relief regarding their orders and duties.

(4) Post and relieve sentries of his relief.

(5) Become thoroughly acquainted with all orders of every sentry of his relief, and see that each understands, carries out, and correctly transmits such orders in detail to his successor.

(6) Call his own relief and cause its members to fall in promptly should the guard be turned out.

c. In addition, the corporal whose relief is on post will:

(1) Take post near the entrance of the guardhouse, or as may be directed on board ship. He will not fall in with the guard when it is formed. There will be at least one petty officer constantly on the alert at the guardhouse, usually the petty officer whose relief is on post.

(2) Report at once to the sergeant of the guard or the commander of this guard any violations of regulations, or any unusual occurrence which is reported to him or which comes to his notice.

(3) Wake the petty officer whose relief is next on post in time for the latter to verify the

prisoners, form his relief, and post it at the proper time.

(4) Notify the sergeant of the guard whenever it becomes necessary for him to leave his post.

(5) After informing the sergeant of the guard, proceed at once to any sentry who should call "Corporal of the guard No. ----."

(6) Promptly notify the commander of the guard and sergeant of the guard, should a sentry call "fire", or "the guard."

(7) If a sentry calls "relief," relieve him by the man next for duty on that post. If the sentry is relieved for a short time only, post him again as soon as the necessity for his relief ceases.

(8) Examine persons or parties detained by a sentry. If there is doubt of their authority to be there, conduct them to the commander of the guard.

(9) Arrest all suspicious and disorderly persons and those taken in the act of violating regulations. Conduct such persons to the commander of the guard at once.

(10) See that no person enters the guardhouse or crosses the posts of the sentries posted there, except by proper authority.

(11) During the time for challenging, challenge all suspicious looking persons or parties he may observe. He will advance such persons or parties in the same manner as do sentries on post. (See par. 5-23*k*.)

5-15 BUGLERS (FIELD MUSICS) OF THE GUARD.—*a.* As many buglers of the guard will be detailed as the commanding officer may direct.

b. The buglers (field musics) of the guard will:

(1) Remain at the guardhouse during their tour of duty, unless otherwise directed by the commanding officer.

(2) Sound calls as prescribed by the commanding officer.

5-16 NONRATED MEN OF THE GUARD.—*a.* Nonrated men are normally assigned to reliefs by the sergeant of the guard and to posts by the corporal of their reliefs. They are not changed from one relief to another except by proper authority.

b. Nonrated men of the guard must be familiar with the general orders for sentries and with special orders applying to their particular

posts. For general orders for sentries, see par. 5-22.

c. The main guard should be provided with sufficient extra nonrated men to provide at least one additional man as a supernumerary with each relief. Nonrated men detailed as supernumeraries must be familiar with the general orders for sentries and will be familiarized with the special orders of the sentries they may relieve.

d. Whenever the guard or relief is dismissed, each member not at once required for duty will place his rifle or pistol if so armed, in the arm rack or stack and will not remove it therefrom unless required in the performance of duty.

e. Members of the main guard, except orderlies, will not leave the immediate vicinity of the guardhouse without permission from the commander of the guard. Permission to leave will only be granted in cases of necessity.

5-17 GUARDHOUSE SENTRIES.—*a.* When the brig is part of the guardhouse, Sentry No. 1 at the guardhouse is directly charged with guarding the prisoners except when they are under the charge of prisoner guards. At such times, he will remain on the alert at the main entrance of the guardhouse. The orders that apply to his post are:

(1) He will allow no prisoner to escape, and will maintain an accurate record of the location of all prisoners.

(2) He will allow no prisoner to cross his post from the guardhouse except when passed by an officer or petty officer of the guard.

(3) He will allow no one to communicate with prisoners without authority from a superior from whom he receives orders.

(4) He will promptly report to the corporal of the guard any suspicious noise made by the prisoners.

(5) Whenever prisoners are brought to his post he will halt them and call, "Corporal of the guard (so many) prisoners."

(6) He will not allow prisoners to pass into the guardhouse until the corporal of the guard has responded to the call and ordered him to do so.

(7) He will, during the time for challenging, challenge any person or party in the same manner as other sentries.

(8) After receiving an answer to his challenge, the sentry calls the corporal of the guard, repeating the answer to his challenge. He does not in such cases repeat the number of his post. He remains in the position assumed in challenging until the corporal of the guard has recognized or advanced the person or party challenged, when he resumes walking his post. If the person is entitled to the salute, he salutes, and resumes walking his post as soon as the salute has been acknowledged.

(9) In case of fire or disorder or the presence of suspicious or disorderly persons in the vicinity of his post, he will call the corporal of the guard and report the facts to him.

5-18 ORDERLIES.—*a.* When so directed by the commanding officer, the officer who inspects the guard at guard mounting will select from the members of the new guard an orderly for the commanding officer and such other orderlies and color guards as may be required. For these positions, the men are chosen who are most correct in the performance of duty, in military bearing, neatness of person and uniform, and whose arms and equipment are in the best condition.

b. When directed by the commander of the guard to fall out and report, the orderly will give his name and organization to the sergeant of the guard and, leaving such arms and equipment at his quarters as are not specified for orderlies, will proceed at once to the officer to whom he is assigned, reporting, as for example, "Sir, Seaman (Private) -----, reports as orderly."

c. The tour of duty of an orderly ends when he is properly relieved by the orderly selected from the guard relieving his own, or as otherwise directed by the commanding officer.

5-19 COLOR GUARDS.—Guards may be furnished for the colors when unfurled and posted out of doors. For this purpose, guards are detailed and governed by the same regulations as apply to other members of the main guard.

5-20 WATCHMEN AND SPECIAL GUARDS.—*a. Watchmen.*—Petty Officers and nonrated men may be detailed as watchmen and as such receive their orders and perform their duties as directed by the commanding officer.

b. Special guards.—Special guards will generally be mounted informally. Sentries will be posted and relieved according to the general principles of sentries of the main guard unless circumstances make this impracticable.

c. When petty officers and nonrated men are employed as watchmen or special guards, they are formed into one or more detachments under the command of a petty officer, and with

sufficient petty officers to function independently. The commanding officer establishes such regulations for the watchmen and special guards system as will meet the requirements of the post. Tours of duty of not longer than 8 hours are considered normal. Sufficient supernumeraries should be provided so that personnel will be off duty one day in each seven. Experienced men should be used for this service.

SECTION III

ORDERS FOR SENTRIES

	Par.	Page
Classes.....	5-21	185
General orders.....	5-22	185
Regulations relating to general orders....	5-23	185

5-21 CLASSES.—Orders for sentries are of two classes: general orders and special orders. General orders apply to all sentries and special orders relate to particular posts and duties.

5-22 GENERAL ORDERS.—All sentries are required to memorize the following general orders for sentries:

(1) To take charge of this post and all government property in view.

(2) To walk my post in a military manner, keeping always on the alert, and observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing.

(3) To report all violations of orders I am instructed to enforce.

(4) To repeat all calls from posts more distant from the guardhouse than my own.

(5) To quit my post only when properly relieved.

(6) To receive, obey, and pass on to the sentry who relieves me, all orders from the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and petty officers of the guard only.

(7) To talk to no one except in the line of duty.

(8) To give the alarm in case of fire or disorder.

(9) To call the corporal of the guard in any case not covered by instructions.

(10) To salute all officers, and all colors and standards not cased.

(11) To be especially watchful at night and, during the time for challenging, to challenge all persons on or near my post, and to allow no one to pass without proper authority.

5-23 REGULATIONS RELATING TO GENERAL ORDERS.—All sentries are required to familiarize themselves with the following regulations relative to the general orders for sentries:

a. No. 1—To take charge of this post and all government property in view.—(1) All persons of whatever rank in the service are required to respect members of the guard in the performance of their duties.

(2) A sentry will report immediately to the corporal of the guard by telephone or other means, every unusual or suspicious occurrence noted.

(3) He will arrest all suspicious looking persons and all parties involved in a disorder occurring on or near his post. He will turn over to the corporal of the guard all persons arrested.

(4) The number, limits, and extent of his post will constitute part of the special orders of a sentry. The limits of his post will be so defined as to include every place to which he is required to go in the performance of his duties.

b. No. 2—To walk my post in a military manner, keeping always on the alert and observing everything that takes place within sight or hearing.—A sentry will patrol his post in such a manner as to be constantly alert to all occurrences that he can see or hear.

c. No. 3—To report all violations of orders I am instructed to enforce.—A sentry will report a violation of orders at the first opportunity. He will arrest or detain the offender if necessary and call the corporal of the guard.

d. No. 4—To repeat all calls from posts more distant from the guardhouse than my own.—All calls from posts that are farther from the guardhouse than a sentry on a particular post are repeated by that sentry. To call the corporal of the guard for any purpose other than fire or disorder (*h* below), a sentry will call, "Corporal of the guard, Number ----."

e. No. 5—To quit my post only when properly relieved.—(1) If relief becomes necessary by reason of sickness or other cause, a sentry will call, "Corporal of the guard, Number ---- relief," or communicate by telephone or other means with the corporal of his relief.

(2) Sentries will leave their posts for meals only as specifically authorized by the commanding officer. If a sentry is not relieved by the new sentry at the expiration of his tour, the old sentry will not abandon his post but will communicate with the corporal of the guard or his relief by telephone or other means and comply with the instructions received.

f. No. 6—To receive, obey, and pass on to the sentry who relieves me, all orders from the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and petty officers of the guard only.—(1) During his tour of duty, a sentry is subject to the orders of the commanding officer, officer of the day, and officers and petty officers of the guard only, but any officer is authorized to investigate apparent violations of regulations by members of the guard.

(2) A sentry will quit his weapon only on an explicit order from a person from whom he lawfully receives orders while on post. Unless necessity therefore exists, no person will require a sentry to quit his piece, or even require it to be inspected.

g. No. 7—To talk to no one except in line of duty.—(1) When persons make proper inquiries of a sentry, courteous, brief answers will be given. Long conversations will be discouraged. When challenging or holding conversations with a person, a sentinel armed with a rifle will take the position of port arms. If armed with the pistol, he will take the position of raise pistol when challenging.

(2) Sentries posted as gate guards or similar guards should be selected with regards to their appearance and ability to answer inquiries. Sentries so selected should receive special instructions preparatory to their answering inquiries regarding the location of various headquarters activities, the presence of senior officers, and other such information.

h. No. 8—To give the alarm in case of fire or disorder.—In case of fire, the sentry will immediately call, "Fire, Number ----," and give the alarm or make certain that an alarm has already been given. He will then take the necessary action to direct the responding fire apparatus to the fire. If possible, the sentry will extinguish the fire. Sentries shall immediately transmit to the guardhouse, by telephone or other means, information of any dis-

order and will take proper police action with regard thereto. If necessary, the sentry will call, "The guard, Number ----." In either case, except afloat, if the danger is great, he will discharge his piece three times in rapid succession before calling.

i. No. 9—To call the corporal of the guard in any case not covered by instructions.—Whenever a sentry on post encounters a situation not covered by his instructions, or about which he is in doubt, he will call the corporal of the guard for instructions.

j. No. 10—To salute all officers, all colors and standards not cased.—(1) Colors and standards are considered to be cased when enclosed in a protective covering.

(2) Sentries render salutes as prescribed in Navy Regulations, with the following exceptions:

(a) No salute is rendered by a member of the guard who is engaged in the performance of a specific duty, the proper execution of which would prevent saluting.

(b) A sentry armed with a pistol does not salute after challenging. He stands at raise pistol until the challenged party has passed.

(3) During the hours when challenging is prescribed the first salute is given an officer as soon as he has been advanced and duly recognized.

(4) A sentry in conversation with an officer will not interrupt the conversation to salute, but in case the officer salutes a senior the sentry will also salute.

(5) The marks of respect prescribed for observance during the playing of the *National Anthem* or *To the Colors* as set forth in United States Navy Regulations, shall be observed by members of the guard, except under the circumstances presented in paragraph *j* (2) (a) above.

(6) A sentry salutes as follows:

(a) If walking post he halts and, if armed with a rifle, salutes by presenting arms; if otherwise armed, he renders the hand salute.

(b) If doing patrol duty, he does not halt, unless spoken to, but renders the rifle salute; if otherwise armed, he renders the hand salute.

(c) If in a sentry box, he stands at attention in the doorway, upon the approach of the person or party entitled to the salute and, if

armed with the rifle, salutes by presenting arms; if otherwise armed he renders the hand salute.

k. No. 11—To be especially watchful at night and, during the time for challenging, to challenge all persons on or near my post, and to allow no one to pass without proper authority.—(1) During challenging hours, if a sentry sees any person or party on or near his post, he will advance quickly along his post toward such person or party, and when within 30 paces will challenge sharply, "HALT! Who is there?" The sentry ordinarily continues to advance while challenging, but he may halt if circumstances require. After challenging, the sentry places himself in the most advantageous position from which to pass or arrest the person or party. In selecting this position, the sentry may require the challenged person or one of a party to advance toward him, or to remain halted, or to advance to a particular place, or to face toward the light, or to take whatever position necessary in order that he may most surely and promptly determine whether the person or party should be passed or turned over to the guard.

(a) If the person or party challenged is mounted or in a vehicle, the sentry will proceed as when the person or party challenged is on foot. If necessary to the proper performance of his duty, he may cause one or all of a party to dismount.

(b) The sentry will permit only one of a party to approach him for the purpose of being duly recognized.

(c) The sentry must satisfy himself beyond a reasonable doubt that those challenged are what they represent themselves to be and have a right to pass. If he is not satisfied, he will detain the person or party and call the corporal of the guard by the nearest telephone or other means.

(d) When a party approaches, the sentry, on receiving an answer that indicates that the party is authorized to pass, will say, "Advance one to be recognized," and when that one has been recognized will then say, "Advance friend, (officer of the day, etc.)," repeating the answer to the challenge. Thus, if the answer is "Patrol (friend, etc.)," the sentry will say, "Advance one to be recognized." The person or party being advanced is allowed to approach close

enough to be recognized and is halted. When recognized, the sentry will say, "Advance patrol (friend, etc.)."

(e) If a person approaches alone, he will be directed to advance to be recognized and when recognized will be advanced as indicated above for one of a party. Thus, if the answer is, "Friend (officer of the day, etc.)," the sentry will call, "Advance, friend (officer of the day, etc.), to be recognized." After recognition, the sentry will say, "Advance friend (officer of the day, etc.)."

(2) If two or more persons or parties approach the sentry's post from different directions at the same time, they will be challenged in turn and required to halt and remain halted until advanced.

(a) The senior is first advanced in accordance with the foregoing rules.

(b) If a person or party is already advanced and in conversation with a sentry, the latter will challenge any other person or party that may approach. If the person or party challenged is senior to the one already on his post, the sentry will advance the new person or others that may be challenged; otherwise the sentry will advance no one until the senior leaves. He will advance only the senior of the remaining ones and so on.

(c) The following order of rank governs a sentry in advancing different persons or parties approaching his post; commanding officer, officer of the day, officer of the guard, officers, patrols, relief, petty officers of the guard in order of rank, and friends.

(3) A sentry must never allow himself to be surprised, nor permit two parties to advance upon him at the same time.

(4) Answers to a sentry's challenge intended to confuse or mislead him are prohibited, but the use of such an answer as "Friend" is not to be misunderstood as misleading; it is the usual answer made by officers or patrols when the purpose of their visit makes it desirable that their official capacity should not be announced.

(5) The commanding officer may limit challenging to suspicious looking persons, or eliminate it altogether at his discretion. A sentry may, however, challenge any person or party whom he considers suspicious.

SECTION IV

FORMATIONS

	Par.	Page
General.....	5-24	188
When turned out.....	5-25	188
To form the guard.....	5-26	188
To turn out prisoners.....	5-27	188
To post reliefs.....	5-28	188

5-24 GENERAL.—*a.* At all formations, the guard forms under arms.

b. Members of the guard, or reliefs, upon forming, execute inspection arms.

5-25 WHEN TURNED OUT.—*a.* A formal inspection may be prescribed periodically, at which all members of the guard, except those on post or specifically excused, will be present.

b. When directed by the commanding officer, the guard may be turned out as a compliment to visiting officers or civilian dignitaries. The compliment of the guard consists of the guard turning out and presenting arms.

5-26 TO FORM THE GUARD.—*a.* *For inspection.*—(1) When directed to turn out for inspection, the guard is formed and inspection conducted as prescribed for the inspection of a platoon or company, depending on the size of the guard.

(2) The post of the senior petty officer, if he is in command of the guard, is the same as in the case of an officer. If not commander of the guard, his position is in rear of the right file of the guard. The next ranking petty officer is right guide. The corporals of the guard take positions as do squad leaders in the usual platoon formation. Each relief forms as one squad. The reliefs form in numerical order from front to rear. The platoon is thus composed of two, three, or four ranks depending on the number of reliefs. The buglers (field musics) form a file three paces to the right of the guard. Should the guard be of company size, each relief may form as a platoon with the corporal acting as platoon commander.

(3) At night, the roll may be called by reliefs and numbers instead of names. Thus, the first

relief being on post; second relief; corporal; No. 1; No. 2; etc.; third relief, corporal; No. 1; 2; etc.

(4) If the sergeant of the guard is also the commander of the guard, he forms the guard as sergeant of the guard and then takes post and proceeds as commander of the guard.

b. As a compliment.—(1) When directed to turn out as a compliment, the guard is formed in the same manner as for inspection.

(2) The guard is brought to present arms when the person entitled to the compliment approaches, and is brought to order arms when he has returned the salute of the commander of the guard.

(3) If the person receiving the compliment, desires to inspect the guard, the inspection is conducted as prescribed for the inspection of a company or platoon, depending upon the size of the guard.

5-27 TO TURN OUT PRISONERS.—*a.* Prisoners, when turned out with the guard, are placed in line in an interval in its center, under the direction of the sergeant of the guard.

b. The sergeant of the guard, immediately before forming the guard, will turn over his keys to the petty officer at the guardhouse. The guard having been formed to receive the prisoners, the doors of the guardroom and cells are then opened by the petty officer having the keys. The prisoners file out under the supervision of the guard, the petty officer having the keys, the sentry on duty at the guard house, and such other sentries as may be necessary. They form in line in the interval made in the guard.

c. The prisoners under the same supervision as before, return to their proper rooms or cells.

5-28 TO POST RELIEFS.—*a. General.*—(1) At an appropriate time before sentries are due to go on post, the corporal assembles them, checks their appearance, fitness for duty,

condition of arms if carried, issues ammunition if required, and assures himself that they understand their general and special orders and any special instructions. When the relief is large, it may be more convenient to form the relief, call the roll, and inspect the sentries in ranks. The corporal then reports to the commander of the guard that his relief is ready to be posted, or if directed, posts the sentries without so reporting. The corporal will personally supervise the posting of each sentry of a new relief. The corporal moves his relief to their posts by marching or by vehicle. When movement is by truck, the relief will embark in the inverse order from which the sentries will debark at their respective posts.

(2) Where there are few posts, or the posts are only a short distance from the guardhouse, the corporal may send his sentries to their posts by direct order. Thus, "Private A, Private B, take your posts," or if the roll has been called, "Take your posts." Each sentry will then proceed directly to his post. Where sentries are sent to their posts by direct order, one sentry relieves another by meeting at a particular point at a prearranged time. The sentry

on post at the expiration of his tour will remain on post within view of the prearranged relieving point and when relieved by the new sentry he will proceed directly to the guardhouse and report to the corporal of the old relief. When reliefs are posted in this manner, the last sentry on duty on a night post will proceed directly to the guardhouse at a designated time.

(3) The corporal writes down the names of the sentries, the number of their posts, the time and date they were posted, or directed to their posts, and the time they report back to the guardhouse upon being relieved.

(4) If the relief was posted with arms loaded, the corporal of the old relief will see that no cartridges are left in the chambers or magazines before dismissing the members of the old relief. The same rule applies to the prisoner guard.

b. Sentries mounted on horses, bicycles, motorcycles, or other vehicles are posted and relieved in accordance with the principles established for sending sentries to their post by direct order.

SECTION V

GUARD MOUNTING

	Par.	Page
General rules.....	5-29	190
Formal guard mounting.....	5-30	190
Informal guard mounting.....	5-31	290

5-29 GENERAL RULES.—*a.* Guard mounting may be formal or informal as the commanding officer directs.

b. The commanding officer prescribes the uniform, arms, and equipment for guard duty.

5-30 FORMAL GUARD MOUNTING.—

a. Prior to assembly, at the command of the chief petty officer, the men going on guard fall in by detail on their parade ground as prescribed for the squad with the petty officers on the right flank. The chief petty officer verifies the detail, inspects it, replaces those who do not present a creditable appearance, turns the detail over to the senior petty officer with the detail, and retires. If there is no petty officer with the detail, the chief petty officer turns the detail over to a petty officer previously designated for the duty of marching the detail on guard. At the sounding of assembly, the detail is reported to the senior petty officer of the guard at a previously designated place off the parade ground. The guard detail is assembled and formed into a platoon. The senior petty officers of the guard to be assigned posts in paragraphs *b* (3) below are formed as the rear rank in inverse order of rank from right to left. Remaining petty officers, if any, are formed on the left flank so as to equalize the number of men in each rank. After the platoon is formed, it is faced to the right. The band takes its place so that the left of its front rank is 12 paces to the right of the point where the right of the front rank of the guard is to be when formed. The adjutant signals to the band when *Adjutant's Call* is to be sounded.

(1) Immediately following *Adjutant's Call* the band plays march music; the adjutant, with the sergeant major on his left,

marches, at the first note of march music, to a position in front of the place where the center of the guard will be. The adjutant halts so as to take post 18 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard when formed. The sergeant major continues 18 paces, moves by the left flank, halts 12 paces to the left of the front rank of the band, and faces about. The guard, if armed with the rifle, is brought to the right shoulder at the first note of *Adjutant's Call* and marched in column in quick time to the parade ground by the senior petty officer. The post of the petty officer in command of the guard detail is 3 paces to the left and abreast of the center man of the left file. The guard is marched onto the parade ground from the left flank in column and sufficiently in rear of the line on which the guard is to form to permit the expeditious alinement of the guard. The guard detail is halted in rear of its position when the head of the column is abreast of the post of the sergeant major, and the band ceases to play. (See fig. 1.) The petty officer commanding the guard detail, remaining at right shoulder (if armed with the rifle), executes right face and commands: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS, 3. LEFT, 4. FACE. He then faces to the right in marching and proceeds to a position one pace to the left front of the left file of the front rank, executes **about face**, and places himself on line with the sergeant major and the front rank of the band. He then commands: 1. DRESS RIGHT, 2. DRESS. At the command DRESS, the right flank man of the front rank places the middle of his chest against the left arm of the sergeant major so as to cause the fronts of the two men to be perpendicular. The guard dresses on the line thus established. The guard alined, its commander commands: 1. READY, 2. FRONT, salutes, and reports to the sergeant major, "The guard is correct, or so many men absent."

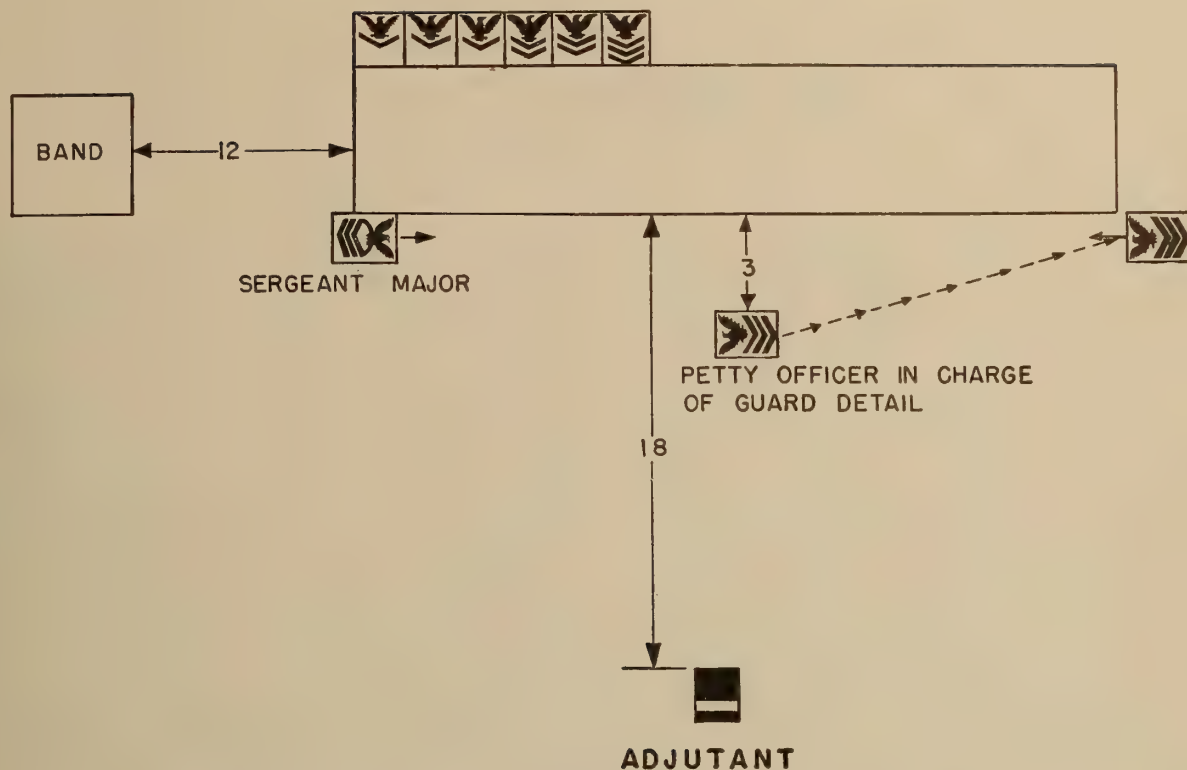


FIGURE 1.—The petty officer in charge of the guard moves to position to dress the guard on the sergeant major.

The sergeant major then returns the salute. The petty officer in charge then marches parallel to the front rank until two paces beyond the sergeant major, then marches by the right flank past the rear of the guard, then by the right flank to a point one pace beyond the left flank man of the rear rank, then by the right flank, and halts on line with the rear rank and, if armed with the rifle, executes **order arms**. (See fig. 2.)

b. (1) When the guard has been reported, the sergeant major faces to the right, steps two paces to the front, faces to the left, and commands: **COUNT OFF**. If there be more than 14 men per rank, he divides the guard into two platoons. For this purpose, he leaves his post, proceeds to and designates the dividing line between platoons, and from this position commands: 1. **SECOND PLATOON**, 2. **LEFT STEP**, 3. **MARCH**, 4. **PLATOON**, 5. **HALT**. The command **HALT** is given at the proper time to insure an interval of 5 paces between platoons. (See fig. 3). He then passes completely around the guard and takes his post 3 paces in front and 2 paces to the right of the front rank and facing the point

of rest. In passing around the guard, the sergeant major executes **by the left flank** at every necessary turn. (See fig. 4.) Upon taking his post, he commands: 1. **OPEN RANKS**, 2. **MARCH**, and proceeds as in (2) below.

(2) The sergeant major alines the guard, whether consisting of one or two platoons, in a manner similar to that employed by a platoon commander in alining a platoon. After giving the command **FRONT**, he moves parallel to the front rank until opposite the center, executes **by the right flank**, and halts 6 paces in front of the adjutant, salutes and reports, "Sir, the guard is correct," or "Sir, so many men are absent." The adjutant returns the salute and directs the sergeant major, "Take your post," and draws sword (if so armed). The sergeant major then faces about and moves by the right oblique directly to a point 3 paces beyond the left of the front rank, halts on the line of the front rank, and faces to the front. When the sergeant major leaves his post to report to the adjutant, the officer of the guard takes his post 6 paces in the rear of the right rear rank man of the guard. When there are

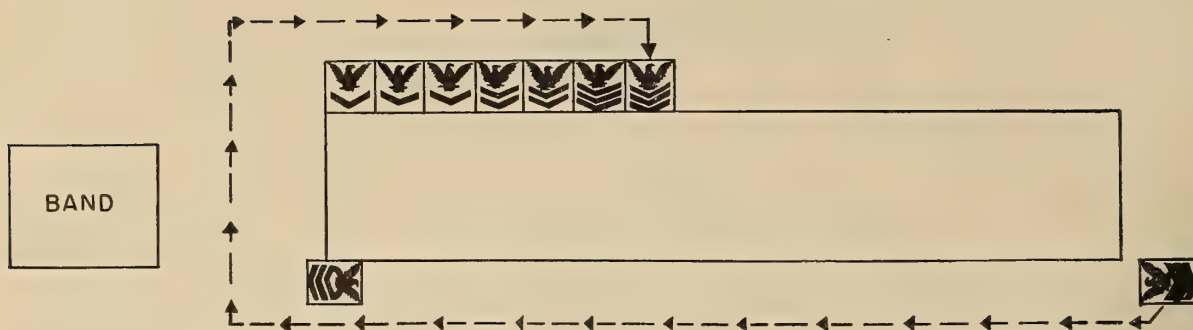


FIGURE 2.—The petty officer in charge of the guard moves to position in rear rank.

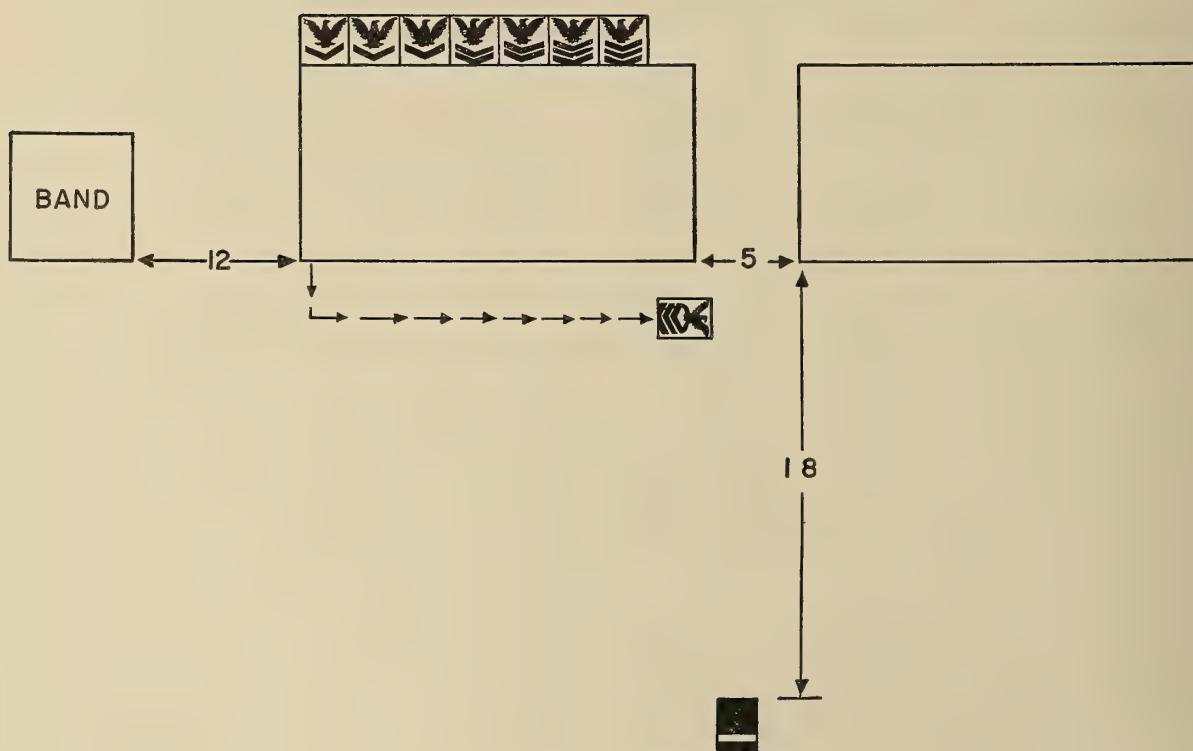


FIGURE 3.—The sergeant major divides the guard into two platoons.

junior officers of the guard, they take post on the left of the senior officer of the guard. (See fig. 5.) After the sergeant major has reported to the adjutant, the senior officer of the guard moves from the rear of the guard, passes around the right flank, and takes post facing to the front 12 paces in front of the center of the guard and draws sword. (See fig. 6.) If there be junior officers of the guard, they move with the senior officer of the guard and take post, facing to the front, 6 paces in front of the center of the first and second platoons respectively, and draw swords. If the guard has not been divided into platoons, the senior officer of the guard takes post, facing to the front, 6 paces in front of the center of the guard and draws sword, and the junior officer of the guard (if there is one) takes post facing to the front paces to the left of the senior and draws sword.

(3) The adjutant then commands: 1. OFFICER (or OFFICERS, if present), AND PETTY OFFICERS, 2. FRONT AND CENTER, 3. MARCH. At the command CENTER, the officer or officers execute **carry sword** and the petty officers face toward the right and execute **right shoulder arms** without further command. At the command MARCH, the officer or officers advance and halt, remaining at the carry, three paces from the adjutant. In moving to the front and center the junior officer of the guard (if there is one) marches forward

with and takes position to the left of the senior. The petty officers moving in column, pass beyond the right flank of the guard and execute two column left movements so as to form a column on a line parallel to the front three paces in rear of the officer or officers of the guard. They halt and face to the front on the command of the senior petty officer. They remain at **right shoulder**. (See fig. 7.) If there is no officer of the guard, the petty officers halt on a line and face to the front, six paces from the adjutant. When the officer or officers and petty officers have halted, the adjutant, remaining at **carry sword**, passes along the front of each rank from the right and assigns the officers and petty officers according to rank as follows: "Commander of the guard," "commander of the first platoon," "commander of second platoon," "guide of first platoon," "guide of second platoon," "right file rear rank first platoon," "right file second rank first platoon," "right file front rank first platoon," or if the guard is not divided into platoons, "commander of the guard," "junior officer of the guard" (if present), "guide," "right file rear rank," "right file second rank," "right file front rank." If the guard has been divided into platoons, the junior officer of the guard (if present) is assigned as "commander of first platoon."

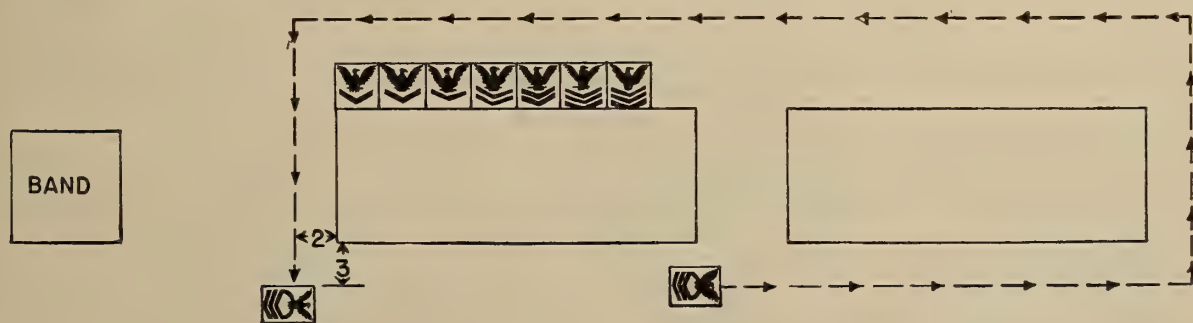


FIGURE 4.—The sergeant major passes around the guard and takes position preparatory to giving the command to open ranks.

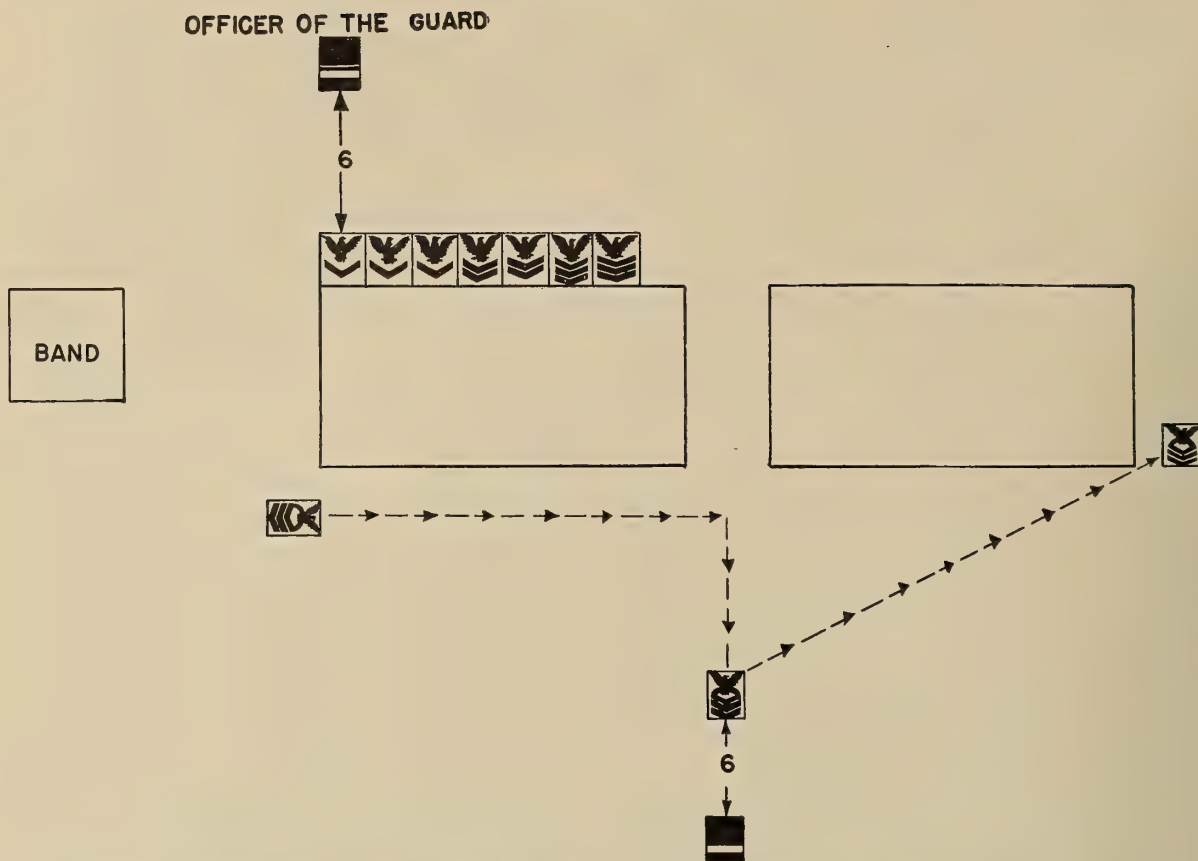


FIGURE 5.—After moving forward front and center and reporting to the adjutant, the sergeant major takes his post on the left flank. The officer of the guard takes position.

(4) The adjutant then resumes his position in front of the guard and commands: 1. **OFFICER (OR OFFICERS) AND PETTY OFFICERS**, 2. **POSTS**, 3. **MARCH**. They move by the most direct route and take the posts assigned them by the adjutant. The commander of the guard resumes his post 12 paces in front of the center of the guard. The petty officers will execute **order arms**, and **about face** on the command of the guide. (See fig. 8.) If the guard is not divided into platoons, the junior officer of the guard (if present) takes post abreast of the left flank man of the rear rank. A petty officer commanding the guard takes post as prescribed for an officer after he has been so designated by the adjutant. The adjutant then directs the commander of the guard "Inspect your guard, sir." The adjutant then executes **return sword**. The officer commanding the guard faces about, commands: **PREPARE FOR INSPECTION**, returns sword, and proceeds to inspect the guard. The commander of the guard may di-

rect the junior officer of the guard to assist in the inspection.

(5) During the inspection the band plays. The adjutant observes the general condition of the guard and causes to fall out and return to quarters any man who does not present a creditable appearance. Substitutes for the men fallen out report to the commander of the guard at the guardhouse. If there is no officer of the guard, the adjutant inspects the guard.

c. (1) The inspection ended, the adjutant places himself 36 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard and draws sword. The new officer of the day takes post in front of and facing the center of the guard about 36 paces in rear of the adjutant. The old officer of the day takes post 3 paces to the right and 1 pace in rear of the new officer of the day. The officers of the day, without drawing sword, remain at attention. The commander of the guard takes his post in front of the guard. If

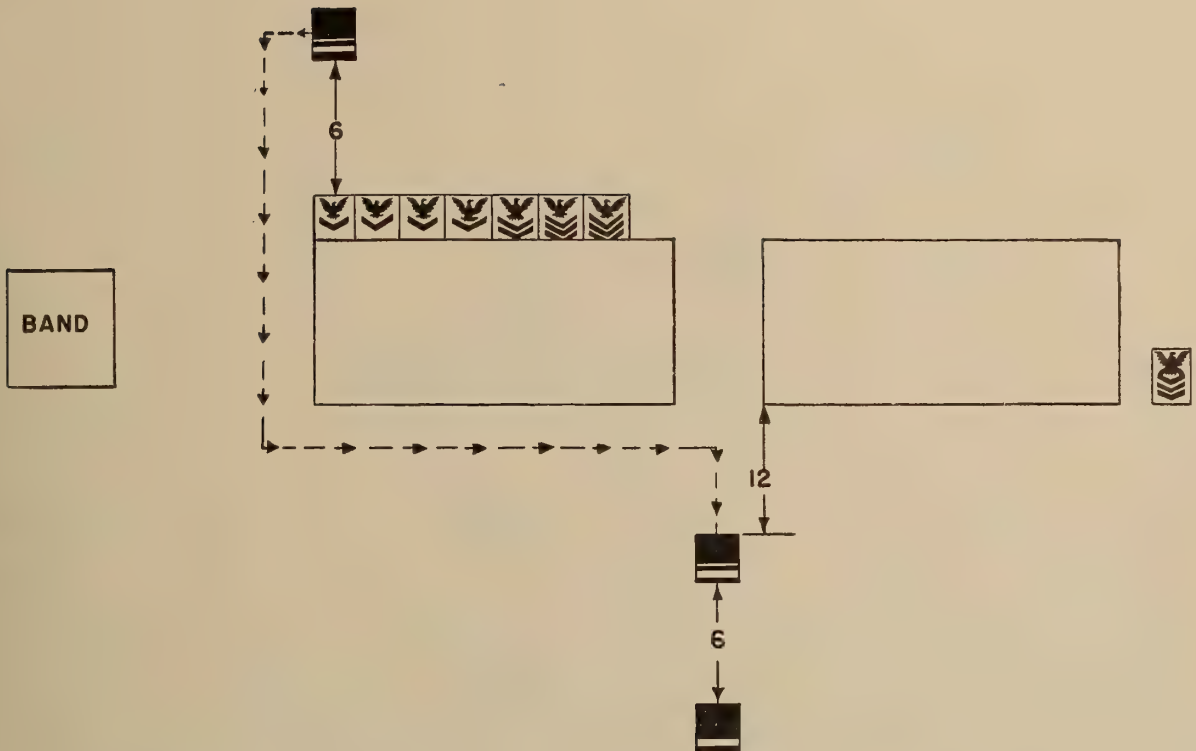


FIGURE 6.—The officer of the guard moves from the rear of the guard and takes post 12 paces front and center of the guard.

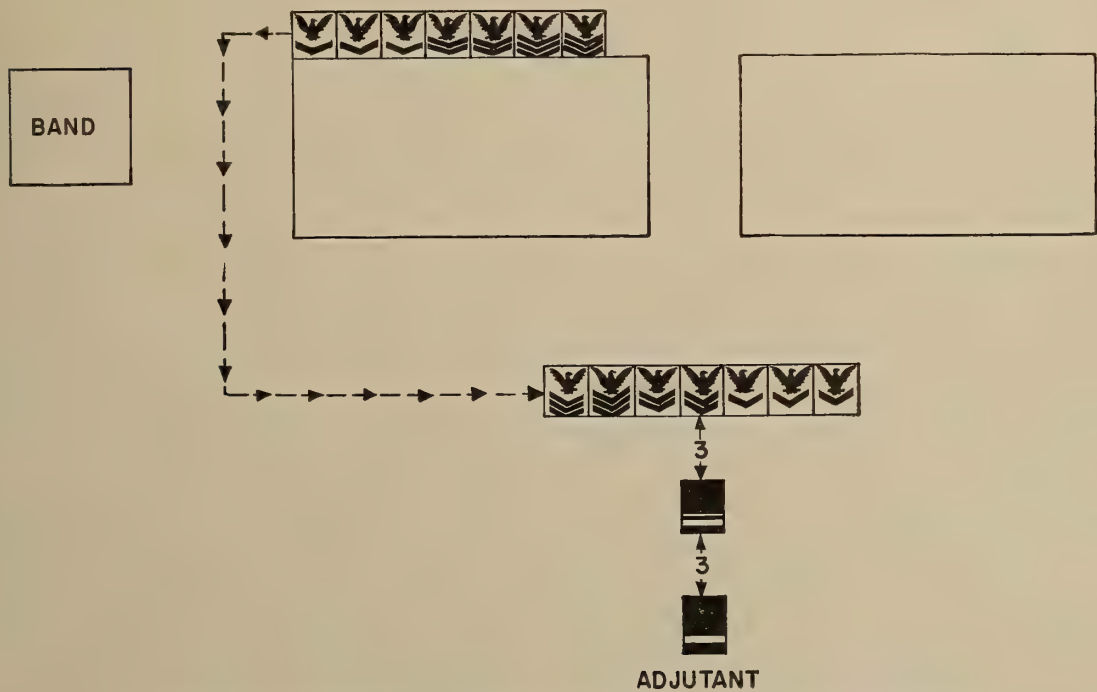


FIGURE 7.—Officer (or officers if present) and petty officers move front and center on command of the adjutant.

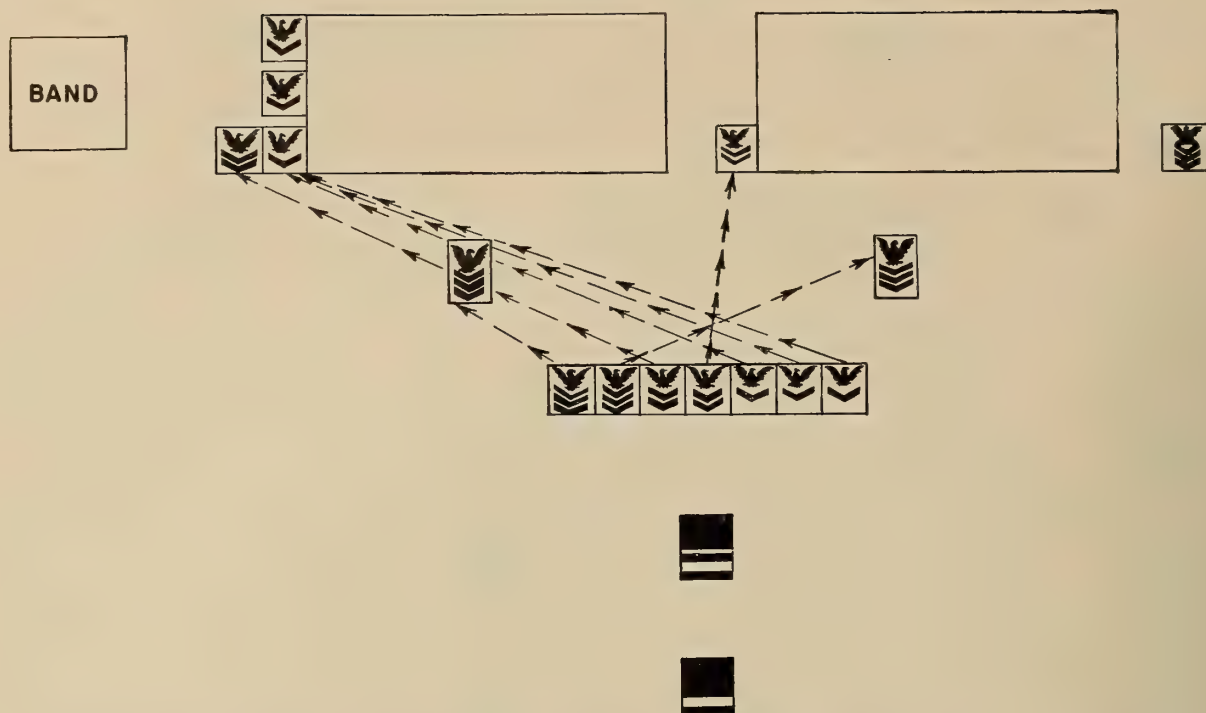


FIGURE 8.—At the adjutant's command "MARCH," the officers and petty officers of the guard move by the most direct route to their posts

so armed, he draws sword with the adjutant and executes **order sword**. (See fig. 9.)

(2) The adjutant then commands: 1. **PARADE**, 2. **REST**, 3. **SOUND OFF** and executes **parade rest**.

(3) At the command **SOUND OFF**, the band plays in place the sound off of three chords, giving two beats in quick time to each chord and at the conclusion of the third chord, moves forward playing in quick time, passes to the left of the line between the officers of the guard and the adjutant and back to its post on the right where it halts and ceases to play, the sound off again being played. (See fig. 10.)

(4) The adjutant then comes to attention, executes **carry sword**, and commands: 1. **GUARD**, 2. **ATTENTION**, 3. **CLOSE RANKS**, 4. **MARCH**.

(5) The ranks are closed without command from the platoon leaders.

(6) The adjutant then commands: 1. **PRESENT**, 2. **ARMS**, faces toward the new officer of the day, salutes and reports, "Sir, the guard is formed." The new officer of the day returns the salute with the band and directs the adjutant, "March the guard in review, Sir", or "March the guard to its post, Sir."

(7) The adjutant executes **carry sword**, faces

about, and brings the guard to the order. When directed to march the guard to its post the adjutant repeats the command and the commander of the guard marches the guard directly to the guardhouse in the most practicable manner. The band and field music are dismissed. Otherwise, the adjutant commands: 1. **PASS IN REVIEW**, 2. **RIGHT**, 3. **FACE**.

(8) At the command **FACE**, the guard executes the movement and the band turns to the right and places itself so that the rear rank of the band is approximately 24 paces in front of the leading platoon.

(9) The adjutant places himself three paces to the left of and on line with the commander of the guard. The sergeant major places himself three paces to the left of and on line with the rear man of the left file or files. (See fig. 11.)

(10) The adjutant then commands: 1. **RIGHT SHOULDER**, 2. **ARMS**, 3. **FORWARD**, 4. **MARCH**.

(11) The guard, with the band playing, marches at quick time past the officer of the day in accordance with the principles of review. After the command **MARCH** has been given the guide of the leading platoon will maintain the distance of 24 paces from the rear rank of the band. The adjutant and the commander

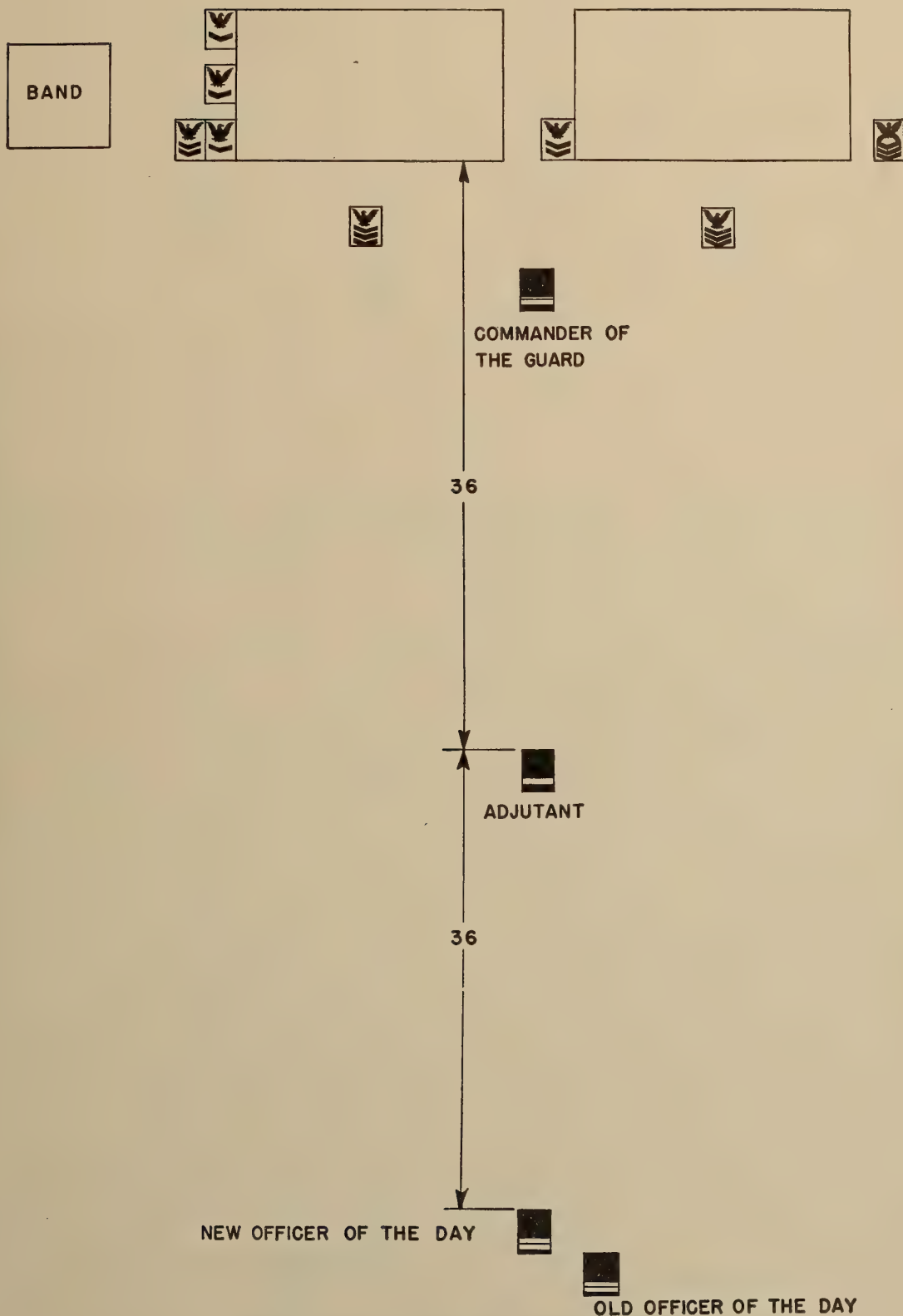


FIGURE 9.—Formation of the guard upon completion of inspection.

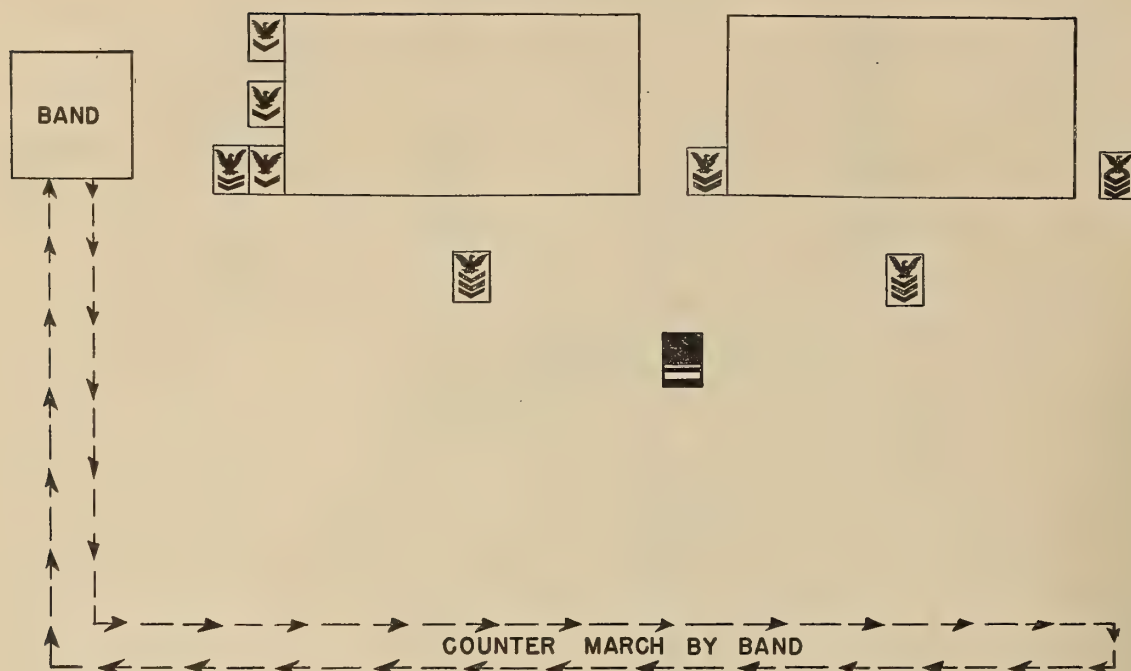


FIGURE 10.—Movement of the band.

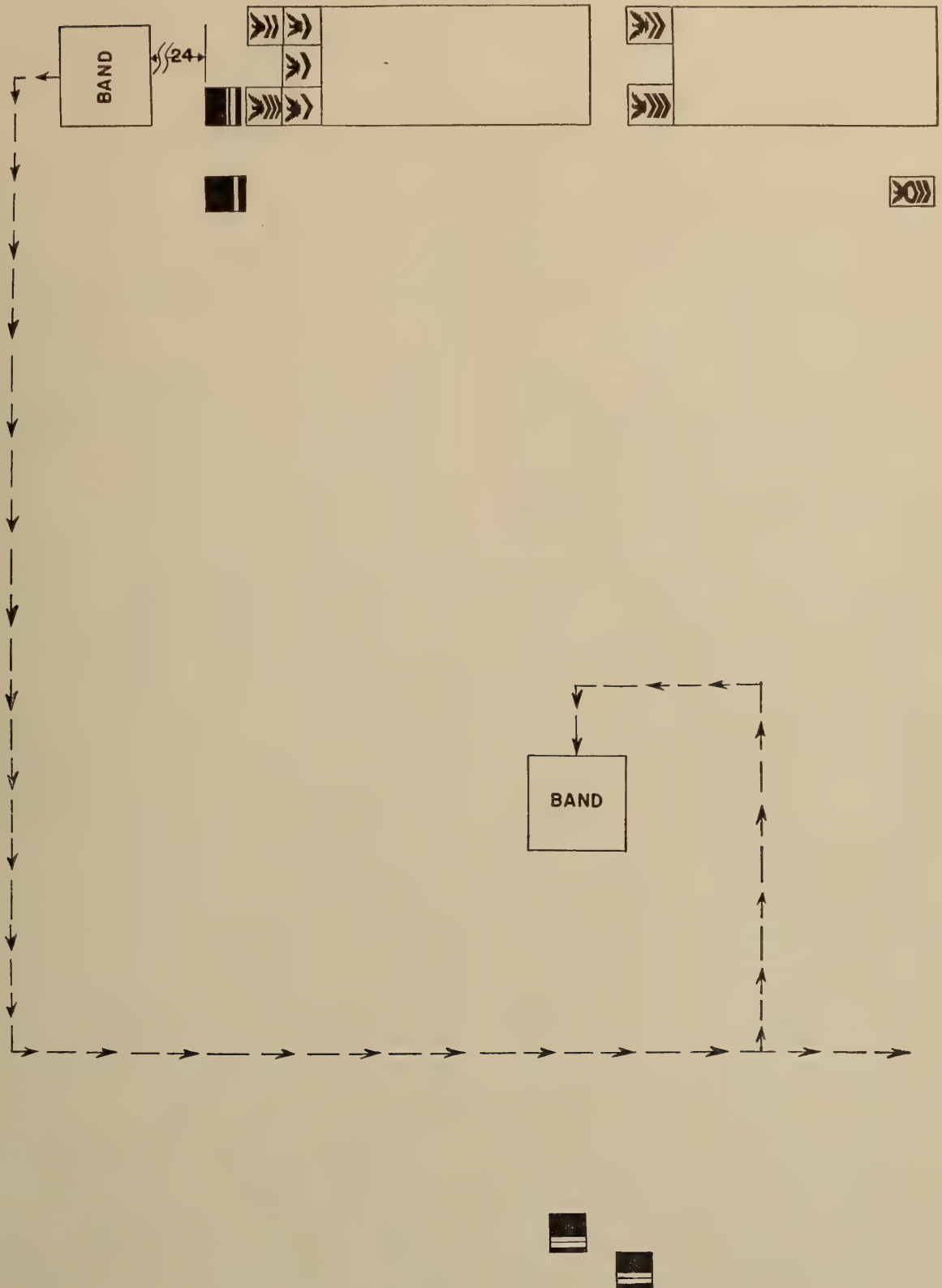


FIGURE 11.—Formation of the guard when passing in review.

of the guard salute together, commanders of platoons and the drum major salute with their units, and the battalion chief petty officer salutes with the unit by which he is marching.

(12) The band, having passed the officer of the day, turns to the left out of the column, places itself opposite and facing him at a distance of 18 paces from where the left flank of the guard passes, and continues to play until the guard leaves the parade ground. The field musics with the band, detach themselves from the band when the latter moves out of the column and remaining in front of the guard commence to play when the band ceases.

(13) Having passed 25 paces beyond the officer of the day, the adjutant halts, the sergeant major halts abreast of the adjutant and 1 pace to his left. The adjutant returns sword. The adjutant and sergeant major then face toward each other, salute and retire. The commander of the guard then marches the guard to its post.

(14) The officers of the day face each other and salute. The old officer of the day turns over the orders to the new officer of the day.

(15) While the band is sounding off and the guard is marching in review, the officers of the day stand at attention.

(16) The new officer of the day returns the salutes of the commander of the guard and the adjutant. He salutes only once as the adjutant and the commander of the guard salute together.

d. The new bugler (field music) of the guard forms and continues with the guard to the guardhouse. When the new guard is divided into reliefs, the new bugler (field music) relieves the old bugler (field music) and with him reports to the new officer of the day for inspection and instruction.

5-31 INFORMAL GUARD MOUNTING.—*a.* Informal guard mounting is held on the parade ground of the organization from which the guard is detailed, or, if the guard is detailed from more than one organization, at such place as the commanding officer may direct.

b. Prior to assembly, guard details are formed, inspected as prescribed in paragraph 5-30*a* and reported to the commander of the guard at the point designated for the assembly.

c. The commander of the guard causes the guard to form as one platoon irrespective of size

as prescribed in paragraph 5-30*a* above.

(1) He takes post 6 paces in front of the center of the guard, and faces to the front. The officer of the day takes his place 18 paces in front of and facing the center of the guard, **draws sword**, and commands: 1. OFFICERS AND PETTY OFFICERS, 2. FRONT AND CENTER, 3. MARCH. The officers and petty officers then take their positions, are assigned and sent to their posts as prescribed in formal guard mounting in paragraph 5-30*b* (3) and 5-30*b* (4) above. The officer of the day directs PREPARE FOR INSPECTION. The officer commanding the guard faces about and commands: 1. OPEN RANKS, 2. MARCH. He then proceeds to the right flank of the guard, verifies the alinement, commands: 1. READY, 2. FRONT, 3. PREPARE FOR INSPECTION, takes post three paces in front of the right guide facing to the front, and remains at **carry sword**.

(2) The officer of the day then inspects the guard and selects the necessary orderlies and color guards. Any men who do not present a creditable appearance are caused to fall out, return to quarters, and are replaced. This fact is reported by the officer of the day to the adjutant after guard mounting.

(3) When the inspection is completed, the officer of the day resumes his position and directs the commander of the guard to march the guard to its post. Ranks are closed and the guard marched without music in the most practicable manner.

(4) The new bugler (field music) of the guard forms abreast of the left flank man of the front rank at the formation of the guard detail and reports to the new officer of the day with the old bugler (field music) after guard mount for instructions.

(5) When a petty officer commands the guard, the officer of the day gives the commands for opening and closing ranks and verifies the alinement.

(6) When the guard is commanded by a petty officer, he takes post as prescribed for an officer except in marching to the front and center he takes post on the right of the line of petty officers in the most practicable manner. At the command of the officer of the day, he returns to the post prescribed for the officer, three paces in the front of the right flank.

SECTION VI

RELIEVING THE OLD GUARD

	Par.	Page
March of new guard to guardhouse-----	5-32	201
Presenting old and new guards-----	5-33	201
Presenting guard to officers of the day----	5-34	201
Dispositions of new guard-----	5-35	201
Relief by the new guard-----	5-36	201
Dismissing old guard-----	5-37	202
Salutes by guard-----	5-38	202

5-32 MARCH OF NEW GUARD TO GUARDHOUSE.—*a.* As the new guard approaches the guardhouse, the old guard is formed in line with its bugler (field music) three paces to its right and on the same line. When the bugler (field music) at the head of the new guard arrives opposite the old guard's left flank, the commander of the new guard commands: 1. EYES, 2. RIGHT, and the commander of the old guard commands: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS, commanders of both guards exchange salutes. The new guard marches in quick time past the front of the old guard.

b. When the commander of the new guard is opposite the bugler (field music) of the old guard, he commands: 1. READY, 2. FRONT. The commander of the old guard commands: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS, as soon as the new guard has cleared the front of the old guard.

c. The bugler (field music) having marched three paces beyond the bugler (field music) of the old guard, changes direction to the right and, followed by the guard, changes direction to the left when on line with the old guard. The changes of direction are without command. The commander of the new guard halts on the line established by the old guard, allows his guard to march past him, halts it three paces to the right of the bugler (field music) of the old guard, forms line and dresses his guard to the left. The bugler (field music) of the new guard halts three paces to the right of the new guard on the line of its front rank.

5-33 PRESENTING OLD AND NEW GUARDS.—*a.* After the new guard is dressed, the commander of each guard, in front of and

facing its center, commands: 1. PRESENT, 2. ARMS, resumes his front, salutes the other guard, carries sword, faces toward his guard, and commands: 1. ORDER, 2. ARMS.

b. If the guard is commanded by a petty officer, he takes post and executes the facings as prescribed for an officer and renders the proper salute.

5-34 PRESENTING GUARD TO OFFICERS OF THE DAY.—After the new guard has arrived at its post and the commanders of the guards have exchanged salutes, each guard is presented by its commander to its officer of the day. If there is but one officer of the day present, or if one officer acts in the capacity of the old and new officer of the day, each guard is presented to him by its commander.

5-35 DISPOSITIONS OF NEW GUARD.—*a.* After the salutes have been acknowledged by the officers of the day, each guard is brought to the order by its commander. The commander of the new guard then causes bayonets to be fixed if so ordered by the commanding officer. Bayonets are not thereafter unfixed during the tour except when especially directed by the commanding officer.

b. The commander of the new guard then orders members of the guard for detached posts to fall out, places them under charge of the proper petty officer, and divides the guard into three reliefs.

5-36 RELIEF BY THE NEW GUARD.—The sentries and detachments of the old guard are at once relieved by members of the new guard. The two guards stand at ease or at rest while these changes are being made. The commander of the old guard transmits to the commander of the new guard all his orders, instructions, and information concerning the guard and its duties. The commander of the new guard then takes possession of the guardhouse and verifies the articles charged to the guard.

5-37 DISMISSING OLD GUARD.—If considerable time is required to bring in that portion of the old guard still on post, the commanding officer may direct that, as soon as the orders and property are turned over to the new guard, the portion of the old guard at the guardhouse be marched off and dismissed. In such cases, the remaining detachment or detachments of the old guard when they reach the guardhouse are inspected by the commander of the new guard. The latter directs the senior

petty officer present to march these detachments off and dismiss them.

5-38 SALUTES BY GUARD.—*a.* If persons entitled to a salute approach while the old and new guard are in formation, each commander of the guard brings his own guard to attention, if not already at attention, and commands: 1. OLD OR NEW GUARD, 2. PRESENT, 3. ARMS.

b. After the salute has been acknowledged, each guard is brought to the order arms.

SECTION VII

GUARD ABOARD SHIP

	Par.	Page
General.....	5-39	203
Marine detachment guards.....	5-40	203
Troop units embarked aboard naval vessels.....	5-41	204

5-39 GENERAL.—*a.* The same general regulations and routine for performing guard duty ashore and guard mounting are carried out aboard naval vessels with such modifications as may be necessary to conform to service afloat.

b. Marines normally perform all guard duty on ships having permanent Marine detachments. In the event there is no permanent Marine detachment, guard duty, if required, is performed by such personnel as the commanding officer of the ship may direct.

c. The commanding officer of the ship operates in a manner similar to commandants or commanding officers of shore stations, with respect to the establishing and functioning of interior guard afloat.

d. The officer of the deck on a naval vessel performs duties with respect to the guard, which are similar to those of the officer of the day ashore. The ship's guard of the day functions under, and is responsible to, the officer of the deck for efficient performance of guard duty.

e. The commanding officer of the ship prescribes such sentry posts as he deems necessary to the safe operation of the ship, and approves permanent or standing orders for sentries prior to promulgation by the commanding officer of the Marine detachment.

f. The officer of the deck, when necessary, gives special orders to sentries and, when such orders are of an important nature, informs the executive officer and marine officer of the ship.

g. Sentries at the gangways salute all officers going on or coming off the ship, and all sentries salute when passing or being passed by officers close aboard in boats.

h. Challenging by sentries at gangways, or

on board ship, is dispensed with at the discretion of the commanding officer of the ship.

i. Guard mount follows, as closely as practicable, the ceremony for informal guard mount ashore, and reliefs are posted informally by direct order for the individual to take his assigned post.

5-40 MARINE DETACHMENT GUARDS.

a. Marine Detachments are assigned as a part of the complement aboard certain ships of war, in accordance with the policy of the Navy Department, for duty with the gunnery department, and such guard duty afloat as the commanding officer of the ship may direct.

b. There is no regularly detailed officer of the guard. The guard of the day functions directly under the officer of the deck. However, the commander of the marine detachment is responsible for the efficient supervision and performance of guard duty by all personnel of the marine guard detachments. The detachment marine officers visit sentries frequently to insure that each sentry thoroughly understands his orders and duties.

c. The detachment guard is used to render prescribed honors and ceremonies. Honors are rendered in accordance with U. S. Navy Regulations.

d. The "full guard" is comprised of the entire complement of marines with the exception of personnel assigned to other duties.

e. The guard of the day is prepared, at all times prescribed for rendering honors, to fall out with the appropriate dress and equipment. When practicable, the guard of the day renders the appropriate ceremony during morning and evening colors.

f. For further general information regarding marine guard detachments serving aboard ships of war, see U. S. Navy Regulations.

5-41 TROOP UNITS EMBARKED ABOARD NAVAL VESSELS.—a. General.—

(1) The senior commander of troop organizations embarked on the ship is designated by higher authority as "commanding officer of troops."

(2) The commanding officer of troops is responsible for the management, discipline, and efficiency of his command. He establishes guard details as necessary for the control of his men as the commanding officer of the ship may approve or direct.

(3) All orders to troop organizations embarked aboard ship are, insofar as practicable, given through the commanding officer of troops. (See U. S. Navy Regulations.)

b. The commanding officer of troops details an officer of the day as his direct representative for supervising the performance of the troop guard in carrying out pertinent interior guard regulations, ship's regulations, and special instructions and orders prescribed by the commanding officer of the ship or the commanding officer of troops. He may also detail an officer or officers of the guard when necessary.

SECTION VIII

THE COLORS

	Par.	Page
Raising and lowering of the flag.....	5-42	205

5-42 RAISING AND LOWERING THE FLAG.—*a. General.*—(1) The commander of the guard ashore will see that the proper flag is flown at the appropriate time, and under all weather conditions. For different types of flags see Figure 12.

(2) The flag will be hoisted at 0800 and lowered at sunset. (For honors see Sec. VII, Ch. 3.)

(3) The national flag will always be displayed at the time of firing salutes.

(4) The sentries at the guardhouse, or the sentries nearest the flagstaff will immediately report to the sergeant of the guard any hazard to the flag from any cause; such as loosened halyards, fouling, etc.

(5) In displaying the flag at the half-mast, it is first hoisted to the truck or peak of the mast and then lowered to the half-mast position. Before lowering it is first hoisted to the truck or peak and then lowered. Technically, a flag at any position other than at the top of the mast is half-masted. In practice, a flag at half-mast is flown, when possible, with the middle point of the hoist of the flag opposite the middle point of the mast. The middle point of a guyed mast is midway between the truck of the mast and the point of attachment of the guys; and of a mast with a yardarm, midway between the truck of the mast and the yardarm. Local conditions, such as the liability of fouling the flag, may require other positions.

b. Raising the flag.—A detail consisting, when practicable, of a petty officer and two nonrated men of the guard will hoist the flag. This detail will be armed with side arms if the special equipment of the guard includes sidearms; otherwise, with the belt only. The detail is formed in line at the guardhouse, with the petty officer carrying the flag, in the center. It is

then marched to the flagstaff, halted, and the flag attached to the halyards. The halyards are manned by the two nonrated men who take position facing the staff so as to enable them to hoist the flag without fouling. The petty officer continues to hold the flag until it is hoisted clear of his grasp, taking particular care that no portion of it touches the ground. When the flag is clear of his grasp, he comes to attention and executes the first motion of the hand salute. The flag is hoisted smartly at the first note of the national anthem, or, if no band be present, at the first note of *To the Colors*. As soon as the flag has been hoisted to the mast-head, the nonrated men hold it there, grasping the halyards with their left hands, and without moving from their positions, execute the first motion of the hand salute. On the last note of the music, all members of the detail execute the second motion of the hand salute. The halyards are then secured to the cleat of the mast or the flag (as required) is lowered to half-mast and the halyards secured. The detail is again formed, marched to the guardhouse, and dismissed.

c. Lowering the flag.—The personnel required for lowering the flag are the same as for raising

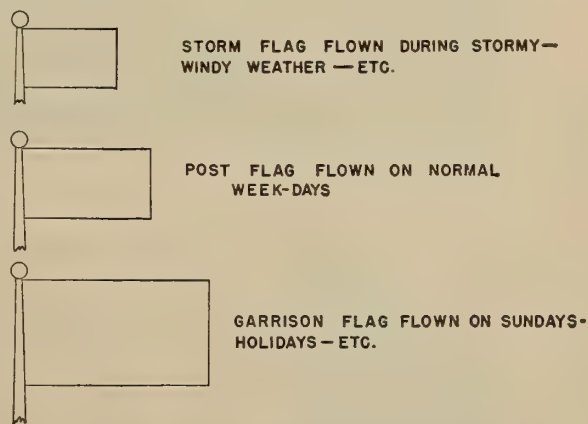


FIGURE 12.—Comparative size of different type flags.

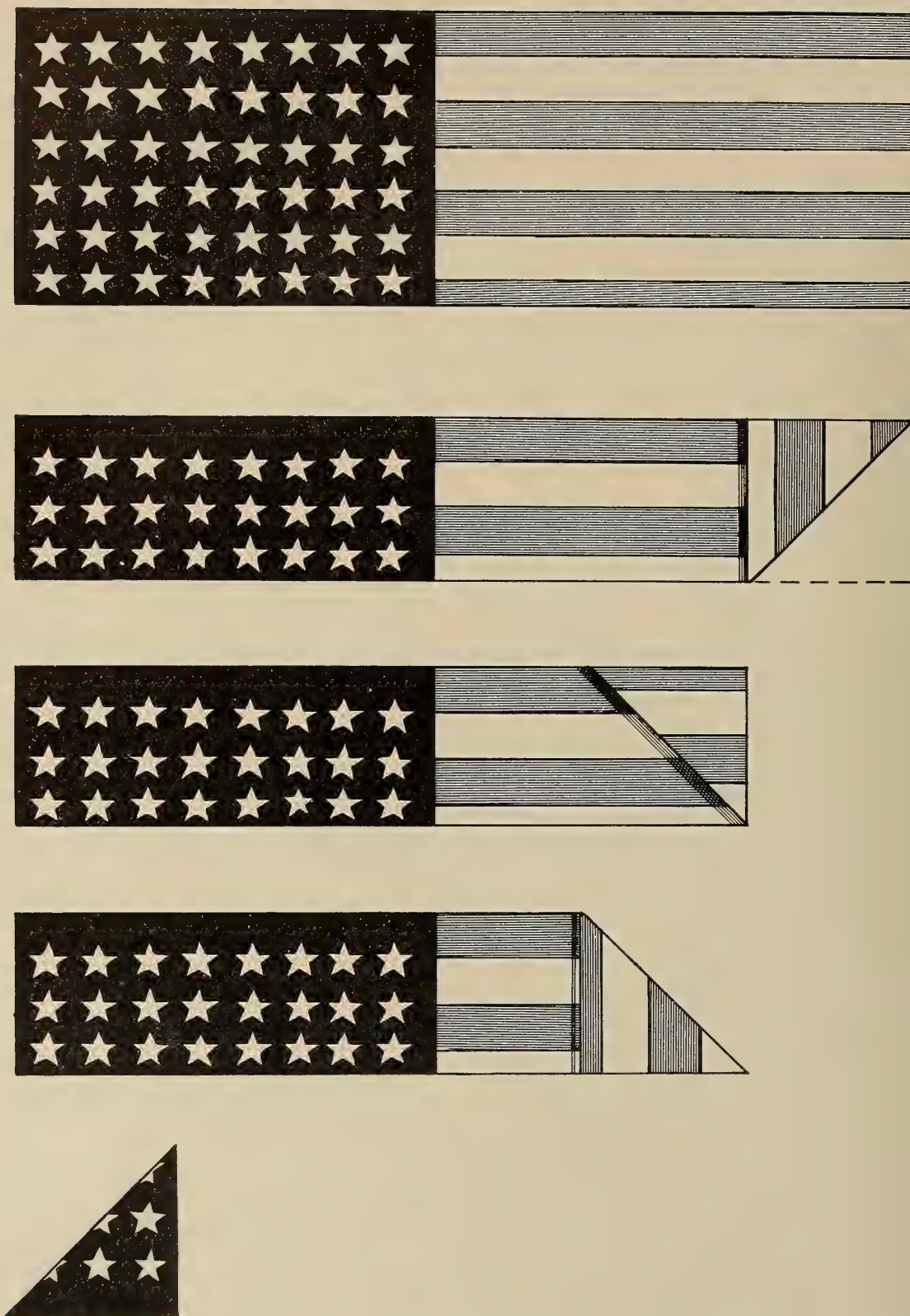


FIGURE 13.—Folding the flag.

it. The detail is formed at the guardhouse, marched to the flagstaff, and halyards are cast off and manned in the same manner. On the first note of the *National Anthem*, or if no band be present, on the first note of *To the Colors*, the flag is slowly lowered, or if at half-mast is hoisted smartly to truck and then slowly lowered, so that it will be caught by the petty officer at the last note of the music. The flag is detached from the halyards and folded into the shape of a cocked hat, with the blue field and stars outward. The halyards are secured to the mast, the detail is formed and marched to the guardhouse, and the flag turned over to the commander of the guard.

d. Folding the flag.—The procedure used in folding the flag is as follows: (See fig. 13.) The flag is folded in half the longway so the crease parallels the red and white stripes. It is folded in half again so the new crease parallels the red and white stripes. It is folded in half again so the new crease parallels the stripes, and the blue field is kept to the outside. The fly end (away from the blue field) is folded up to the top so the single edge lays perpendicularly across the stripes. By repeatedly folding the thick triangle thus formed about the inboard edge of the triangle, as an axis, the flag is folded into the shape of a cocked hat as indicated in the final illustration of figure 13.

SECTION IX

BRIG ADMINISTRATION AND PRISONER GUARD

	Par.	Page
General.....	5-43	208
Receiving prisoners.....	5-44	208
Keeping prisoner count.....	5-45	210
Release of prisoners.....	5-46	210
General rules for the guidance of officers and ship's company.....	5-47	210
Discipline.....	5-48	210
Certain practices prohibited.....	5-49	211
Segregation.....	5-50	211
Intoxicated men.....	5-51	211
Working details.....	5-52	211
Visiting privileges.....	5-53	211
Mail privileges.....	5-54	212
Messing.....	5-55	212
Daily sick call.....	5-56	212
Reports and records.....	5-57	212
Prisoner guards.....	5-58	212
Sentinels on prisoner guard.....	5-59	212

5-43 GENERAL.—a. Brigs are administered according to the rules set forth in the Manual for Naval Brigs, and U. S. Navy Regulations. The excerpts from the Manual for Naval Places of Confinement and other rules set forth in this section are promulgated for the purpose of providing a minimum of regulations and procedures for the uniform administration of brigs afloat and ashore. Brigs as referred to in this section are to be construed as being places of confinement for naval personnel who are awaiting trial or action of higher authority, or are serving sentences other than by general court martial. General court-martial prisoners authorized to serve their sentence in brigs will be administered in accordance with those sections of the Manual for Naval Brigs pertaining to such prisoners.

b. In general, the prison officer, if there be one, is responsible for the employment and management of prisoners; the commander of the guard for their safekeeping and the enforcement of discipline.

c. A prisoner, after his first day of confinement and until his sentence has been duly promulgated, is considered as held in confine-

ment by authority of the commanding officer. After promulgation of his sentence, the prisoner is held in confinement by authority of the officer who reviews the proceedings of the court awarding the sentence.

5-44 RECEIVING PRISONERS.—a. Where conditions permit, every naval place of confinement should have set apart a portion of its facilities to be designated as a receiving unit into which newly committed prisoners will be admitted to confinement. Whether or not such units exist, the following minimum procedures should govern the admission of every prisoner, whatever his status or manner of confinement.

(1) Prisoners will be accepted for confinement only on request of proper authority.

(2) The officer of the day or other designated officer shall be authorized by the commanding officer to receive prisoners. This officer shall:

(a) See that the prisoner is given a preliminary medical examination prior to admission to the brig.

(b) Make appropriate endorsement on the orders of the guard making delivery indicating that the prisoner and whatever effects accompanied him have been delivered. For sample confinement request from the officer of the day, to the provost marshal, via the medical officer of the day, see figure 14.

(c) Enter on the log in chronological order the commitment of every prisoner and detentioner. Each entry shall show the person's full name, rate or rank, service number, date and hour of commitment, and the reason and authority for commitment.

(d) Require the prisoner to turn over all money, valuables, identification cards, bags, clothing, and such other personal property as he may have in his possession. Proper custody of articles and money turned over by the prisoner is the responsibility of the brig commander.

OFFICE OF THE OFFICER OF THE DAY

----- BARRACKS, ----- NAVAL STATION

----- 19-----

From: The Officer of the Day.
 To: The Provost Marshal.
 Via: (1) The Medical Officer of the Day.
 (2) The Post Prison Officer.

Subject: ----- Rank -----

Organization

1. The subject-named man was placed under arrest by

 Office Time Date
 for the offense of -----

His case was investigated by -----
 Office Date

2. It is requested that he be examined for confinement by the Medical Officer of the Day, Post Sick Quarters

After examination, it is requested that he be confined in the Post Prison -----
 Status of man

Delivered by -----

----- USMC(R)
 Officer of the day

[First endorsement]

----- 19-----

From: The Medical Officer of the Day, Post Dispensary.
 To: The Post Prison Officer.

1. The above named man has been examined by me this date at -----, and in my opinion he is -----
 physically and mentally fit for confinement. He is free from lice and has no disease that will endanger the health
 of the occupants of the Post Prison if he is confined.

2. He is ----- under the influence of intoxicating liquor. His condition does not indicate indulgence in
 intoxicating liquor within a period of twenty-four (24) hours prior to the time of examination.

----- (MC) USN

[Second endorsement]

----- 19-----

From: The Post Prison Officer.
 To: The Provost Marshal.

1. The subject-named man was confined in the Post Prison at -----

Time-----
Date

----- USMC (R)
 Overseer of the watch

For: Post Prison Officer.

FIGURE 14.—Sample confinement request.

Every item shall be entered on a personal-property receipt form and the disposition of each item shown. This form shall be signed by the prisoner and the signature witnessed by the officer securing the property. No prisoner shall be allowed to retain in his possession any money, valuables, or other personal property except such family photographs and censored letters as the commanding officer may approve. Prisoner's money and valuables shall be turned over for safekeeping to the supply officer, or other officer designated, in accordance with U. S. Navy Regulations and article 1204, Manual for Naval Places of Confinement.

(e) Direct that the prisoner be immediately bathed under supervision, dressed in uniform designated to be worn by prisoner, issued the essential comfort items and assigned to temporary quarters.

(f) Keep the prisoners status up to date, by a prompt report of such changes in his status as may occur during his confinement.

5-45 KEEPING PRISONER COUNT.—

The officer of the day or other designated officer will be responsible for keeping an accurate daily check on the number and status of prisoners confined, and it is his responsibility to personally supervise the taking of each official count. The number and sequence of counts during each 24-hour period is discretionary with the commanding officer, but there should be not less than two in addition to such night and early morning bed checks as may be desired to correspond with changes of watch, etc.

5-46 RELEASE OF PRISONERS.—a.

Once confined, a prisoner will not be released for temporary periods for interview, office hours, etc., except by written authority of the commanding officer.

b. Reconfinement of the prisoner will be upon written request to the commanding officer.

(c) The following procedure will govern the permanent release of prisoners:

(1) Return to the prisoner all money, valuables, identification cards, bags, clothing, and such other personal property turned in by him upon confinement.

(2) Enter on the log in chronological order, the release of every prisoner or detentioner.

Each entry to show the person's full name, rate, service number, date and hour of release, the reason and authority for release.

(3) Where a prisoner has been delivered under guard, it is desirable but not mandatory that the prisoner be returned to his organization under escort.

5-47 GENERAL RULES FOR THE GUIDANCE OF OFFICERS AND SHIP'S COMPANY.—a.

Any information relative to the affairs of the naval place of confinement and individual prisoners shall be disseminated only in accordance with the current regulations governing publicity.

b. Officers and enlisted personnel shall not fraternize with prisoners. Profane, indecent, abusive, or insulting language toward a prisoner is prohibited.

c. Officers and enlisted personnel shall not give to or receive from any prisoner anything in the nature of gifts or promise of a gift.

d. No personal services shall be rendered by any prisoner for any officer or enlisted personnel except as may occur incident to the regular maintenance work of the activity.

e. Officers and enlisted personnel shall not grant special privileges or favors to prisoners or furnish them information except through official channels.

f. The greatest caution and conservative judgment shall control the use of firearms. Only upon the direct order of the commanding officer to meet the needs of a serious disturbance shall firearms be worn or carried within the compound of any naval place of confinement.

5-48 DISCIPLINE.—It is necessary that a quiet atmosphere of good orderliness prevail in every naval place of confinement. It is not required that such discipline be accomplished through the exercise of unusual methods of restraint. Such practices as the "lock step," the silent system, and standing or marching with arms folded across the chest are unbecoming to the ideals of the service. Controls of this type are not approved as punitive or disciplinary measures or as part of the regular policy of any naval place of confinement. Stringent enforcement of the accepted rules governing good order and discipline will normally suffice for the control of prisoners.

5-49 CERTAIN PRACTICES PROHIBITED.—*a.* No cruel or unusual treatment shall be permitted.

b. Shaved heads, special haircuts, or shaving of other parts of the body than the beard shall not be authorized as punishment or permitted for any purpose except when certified as a medical necessity by the senior medical officer.

c. No officer or enlisted duty personnel shall strike or lay hands on a prisoner unless it be in defense of himself, or to prevent serious injury to person or property, or to quell a disturbance. In such cases, only the amount of force necessary to accomplish the desired result is authorized.

d. Mechanical means of physical restraint shall be used only when necessary in transporting prisoners, or at the discretion of the commanding officer when necessary to prevent injury to the prisoner himself or others. Such means of restraint for punishment purposes is unauthorized (U. S. Navy Regulations).

5-50 SEGREGATION.—The segregation principle shall be applied to the prisoners of every naval place of confinement. The tractable prisoners shall be separated from the troublemakers; persons awaiting trial shall be kept apart from prisoners under sentence; homosexuals shall be quartered in single cells and assigned to whatever work will afford constant supervision, etc. These factors shall be considered also in determining whether a prisoner shall be recommended for transfer to another place of confinement.

5-51 INTOXICATED MEN.—Intoxicated men shall not be confined in any place or manner that may be dangerous to them in their condition (U. S. Navy Regulations).

5-52 WORKING DETAILS.—There should be a minimum of idleness of all persons in confinement. All personnel in confinement whether pursuant to a sentence or awaiting action, except those who are physically incapacitated or whose sentences preclude employment, shall perform some type of work contributing to the maintenance of the place of confinement, or to the post or activity where they are confined. The work done by prisoners will be such as will tend to benefit the activity, relieve critical manpower shortages, as well as to effect substantial savings in material and money. Under no circumstances shall a naval prisoner be authorized

or permitted to perform labor for any private individual, agency, or enterprise.

5-53 VISITING PRIVILEGES.—*a.* Persons in confinement for detention or serving sentences other than by general court martial shall be allowed visits from authorized persons under such conditions as the commanding officer may direct.

b. Persons authorized to visit.—(1) Members of the immediate family. Ordinarily there should be no question as to the propriety of allowing a prisoner's father, mother, wife, or children to visit him.

(2) Other relatives, including brothers, sisters, aunts, uncles, cousins, and in-laws may be approved as visitors when in the opinion of the commanding officer, or his authorized representative, such visits are justified.

(3) Nonrelatives may be allowed occasional visits, whenever it appears to the commanding officer or his authorized representative that the relationship between those persons and the prisoner is bona fide and such that the prisoner's rehabilitation will not be adversely effected by occasional or repeated visits. Except in unusual circumstances, visits with nonrelatives would not be permitted when members of the immediate family and other relatives are able to visit fairly regularly.

(4) Appropriate instructions regarding visiting regulations at the place of confinement shall be furnished each person authorized to visit.

c. Inspection of visitors.—All persons arriving at a naval place of confinement for the purpose of visiting shall be required to check all contraband articles before the visit is allowed. Visitors shall be subjected to search with their permission if it is deemed necessary by the commanding officer. If permission of such search is refused, the commanding officer may, at his discretion, prohibit the visit.

d. Supervision of visits.—All visits with prisoners shall be held under strict supervision for the purpose of insuring decency and propriety, and to prevent the passing of contraband.

e. Special visits.—Visits from attorneys of record and other bona fide representatives may be granted at the discretion of the commanding officer when it has been determined in advance that such visits are for legitimate purposes and

concern matters which cannot be handled readily by correspondence.

5-54 MAIL PRIVILEGES.—Persons who are in confinement for any reason other than service of an approved general court martial sentence shall be permitted to correspond under such conditions as the commanding officer may direct.

5-55 MESSING.—Where naval places of confinement such as ships' brigs, brigs in guardhouses ashore, etc., do not have their own messing facilities, prisoners will eat in the general mess of the ship or naval activity where the place of confinement is located. As a matter of convenience or for special reasons, prisoners may have food brought to their cell. Prisoners will at all times partake of their meal under the careful surveillance of prisoner guards, and a check will be made to see that all eating utensils are returned and accounted for after each meal.

5-56 DAILY SICK CALL.—The medical officer designated by the commanding officer will hold daily sick call for prisoners and furnish such medical service as may be necessary. For duties of medical officer assigned duty at any naval place of confinement, see article 106, Manual for Naval Places of Confinement.

5-57 REPORTS AND RECORDS.—Every naval place of confinement shall prepare and maintain such confinement records and reports of prisoners as directed by the Bureau of Naval Personnel. The following reports are required from places of confinement of Naval Personnel other than those serving sentences by general court martial.

a. Weekly Census Report of Persons Confined, NavPers—3003, to be submitted showing the count, commitments, and releases as of 2400 each Friday. This report must be prepared by every naval place of confinement located in the continental United States and forwarded immediately to the Bureau of Naval Personnel with information copy to the district commandant.

b. Such other reports as may be required by the commanding officer.

5-58 PRISONER GUARDS.—*a.* A guard over prisoners is detailed for the particular duty of guarding prisoners at work or otherwise outside of the prison or guardhouse. Members of the prisoner guard are normally detailed for

a period of time in the same manner as members of the main guard. The number of sentries detailed on prisoner guard will be kept at a minimum.

b. When no prisoner guard has been detailed, the commander of the guard is responsible for guarding the prisoners.

c. The commander of the guard is responsible for the security of prisoners not removed from the custody of the guard by proper authority.

d. The detail of a separate prisoner guard under a commander other than the commander of the main guard may be necessary when the number of prisoners is excessive, when prisoners are engaged on a work project at a considerable distance from the brig or guardhouse, or when prisoners are being transferred to another station or otherwise removed from the immediate control of the post guard. The prison officer, if there be one, may be placed in command of said separate guard.

e. When prisoners are turned over to a separate guard, such guard is responsible for their safekeeping under its commander, and all responsibility of the main guard ceases until the prisoners are returned to the main guard.

f. Before taking over prisoners, the prisoner guard will be inspected by the commander of the guard who will see that all of the members of the prisoner guard are properly armed and equipped, conversant with their orders, and in condition to perform their duties.

g. The Provost Sergeant is a petty officer detailed as assistant to the prison officer for the employment and management of prisoners. He also may be detailed as sergeant of the prisoner guard and as such receives his orders from the commander of the prisoner guard.

5-59 SENTRIES ON PRISONER GUARD.—*a.* A sentry on guard over prisoners is on post within the meaning of these regulations.

b. In the event of an outbreak, attempted escape, or any disorder, a sentry over prisoners will take immediate action, using enough force to restore order or prevent escape. The force used in any case will be strictly limited to that which a person charged with the custody of prisoners reasonably believes to be necessary for the enforcement of duly authorized regulations and for the proper control of prisoners.

c. If a prisoner attempts to escape, the sentry or any member of the prisoner guard, or the main guard who sees him will call "HALT!" If the prisoner fails to halt when the call has been once repeated, and if there is no other effective means for preventing his escape, the sentry or member of the guard will fire at the prisoner.

d. A sentry placed over prisoners will receive specific and explicit instructions governing the required work from the sergeant of the guard or provost sergeant. Sentries are responsible that prisoners under their charge work diligently at the assigned task, and properly and satisfactorily perform the designated work.

e. A sentry placed over prisoners will strictly enforce the rules and regulations prescribed for the conduct and control of prisoners.

f. Whenever he returns prisoners to the guardhouse, a sentry over prisoners will halt them and call "Number 1 (so many) prisoners." He will not allow them to cross the post of the sentry at the guardhouse until so directed by the corporal of the guard.

g. A prisoner under charge of a sentry does not salute.

h. A prisoner guard does not salute except when spoken to by an officer. If spoken to while marching prisoners, he will halt them and, under any conditions, take such precautions as are necessary to prevent their escape, before receiving instructions.

i. A sentry placed over prisoners will allow no one to walk between him and the prisoner.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 6

SHELTER

CHAPTER 6

SHELTER

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL.....	6- 1	219
II. SELECTION OF THE CAMP OR BIVOUAC SITE.....	6- 2	220
III. ESTABLISHING CAMP OR BIVOUAC.....	6- 4	221
IV. PITCHING AND STRIKING SHELTER TENTS.....	6- 6	224
V. PITCHING, STRIKING, AND FOLDING WALL AND PYRAMIDAL TENTS.....	6-11	226

SECTION I

GENERAL

General.....	Par. 6-1	Page 219
--------------	-------------	-------------

6-1 GENERAL.—a. Adequate shelter contributes greatly to the efficiency of troops in the field. It is of primary importance that officers select for their men the best available facilities for shelter, as far as is consistent with the tactical situation, and that they continually supervise subsequent improvements.

b. Depending on the tactical situation, troops are sheltered in bivouac, camps, or billets.

(1) Troops at rest are in bivouac when provided with shelter tents or other hastily improvised shelter. In view of sanitary considerations, bivouacs are used only when tactically necessary or when other facilities are unavailable. The principles of camouflage (LPM Ch. 10) must be observed because of the tactical nature of bivouacs.

(2) Troops are in camp when sheltered by tentage other than shelter tents or when quartered in cantonments; that is, huts or other

temporary structures especially constructed for military purposes.

(3) Troops are in billets when they occupy private or public buildings not especially designed for military purposes. Billets usually afford excellent shelter and a screen from air observation. They have the advantage of offering shelter in an immediately available form which does not require an expenditure of labor or time. Billets do not favor readiness for action, and therefore usually are not used when in close proximity to the enemy. The danger of the transmission of disease inherent in billeting requires careful inspection and strict enforcement of sanitary rules. Billeting in the United States and its possessions is limited by an amendment to the Constitution which provides that: "No soldier shall, in the time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in the time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law."

SECTION II

SELECTION OF THE CAMP OR BIVOUAC SITE

	Par.	Page
Selection of the camp site.....	6-2	220
Selection of the bivouac site.....	6-3	220

6-2 SELECTION OF THE CAMP SITE.—

When a camp is to be constructed by engineer and labor troops prior to the arrival of the occupying unit, the camp site is selected by a reconnaissance party in accordance with directions from higher authority. When a camp site must be selected by the occupying unit, it is selected in the same manner as a bivouac.

6-3 SELECTION OF THE BIVOUAC SITE.—*a.* Prior to the arrival of the troops, a quartering party selects the bivouac site. This party consists of a line officer, a medical officer, a supply officer, and a guide from each unit. The selection of the bivouac site is governed by both military and sanitary considerations; however, tactical requirements always have priority over other considerations. If the bivouac site has been previously designated by higher authority, a quartering party will precede the troops and prepare to establish the area for bivouac.

b. Tactical requirements:

- (1) Sufficient space for proper dispersal of the command.
- (2) Concealment from air observation.
- (3) Protection against bombing or strafing attack.

c. Desirable features for sanitation of the area and comfort of the troops:

- (1) Ample supply of water for drinking, bathing, and washing clothes.
- (2) Grass covered area of sandy, loam, or gravel soil.
- (3) Elevated site, well drained, but not a steep slope.
- (4) Shade trees in warm weather; hills as windbreaks in cold weather.
- (5) Accessibility to good roads.
- (6) Location removed from marshes, swamps, mosquito breeding areas, native habitations, or any other unsanitary areas.
- (7) A site not occupied by other units within the preceding 2 months.

SECTION III

ESTABLISHING CAMP OR BIVOUAC

	Par.	Page
Establishing camp-----	6-4	221
Establishing bivouac-----	6-5	221

6-4 ESTABLISHING CAMP.—Whenever possible a camp should be established by specially detailed engineer and labor troops prior to the arrival of the occupying unit. In the event the camp must be established by the unit which is to occupy it, the procedure is the same as for establishing a bivouac.

6-5 ESTABLISHING BIVOUAC.—When the bivouac site has been selected, the following provisions should be made:

a. Prior to the arrival of the troops.—(1) Select definite areas within the bivouac site for each unit (platoon or company). (See fig. 1.)

(2) Make a reconnaissance to determine the number of outguards necessary for security of the bivouac.

(3) Mark unit areas and post necessary guides.

(4) Select the galley sites near the road for ease of supply, but far enough from the road that dust will not be a hindrance to cleanliness, as near the water supply as possible, and with adequate drainage.

(5) Select the site for the head on the opposite side of the bivouac from the galley.

b. After the arrival of the troops.—(1) Establish the necessary outposts, outguards, and patrols (Landing Party Manual, Ch. 8). (See fig. 2.)

(2) Establish interior guard (Landing Party Manual, Ch. 5). Guard posts should be established immediately at the commissary dump, at the water supply, and in the unit areas. This is necessary in order to see that the water supply is correctly used, that food is not damaged or stolen, and that sanitary discipline is maintained.

(3) Details are assigned to:

(a) Dig the heads.

(b) Set up the galley.

(c) Dig the kitchen pits (one for dry garbage and trash that can be burned, and one for wet garbage which must be covered daily).

(d) Set up the sick bay and headquarters tents.

(e) Procure fuel, water, etc.

(4) Troops not assigned to the above details will pitch tents and trench them immediately.

c. Assigning the details.—Assignments for the above should be made prior to arrival of troops at the bivouac site. This will prevent delay and confusion once the site has been reached.

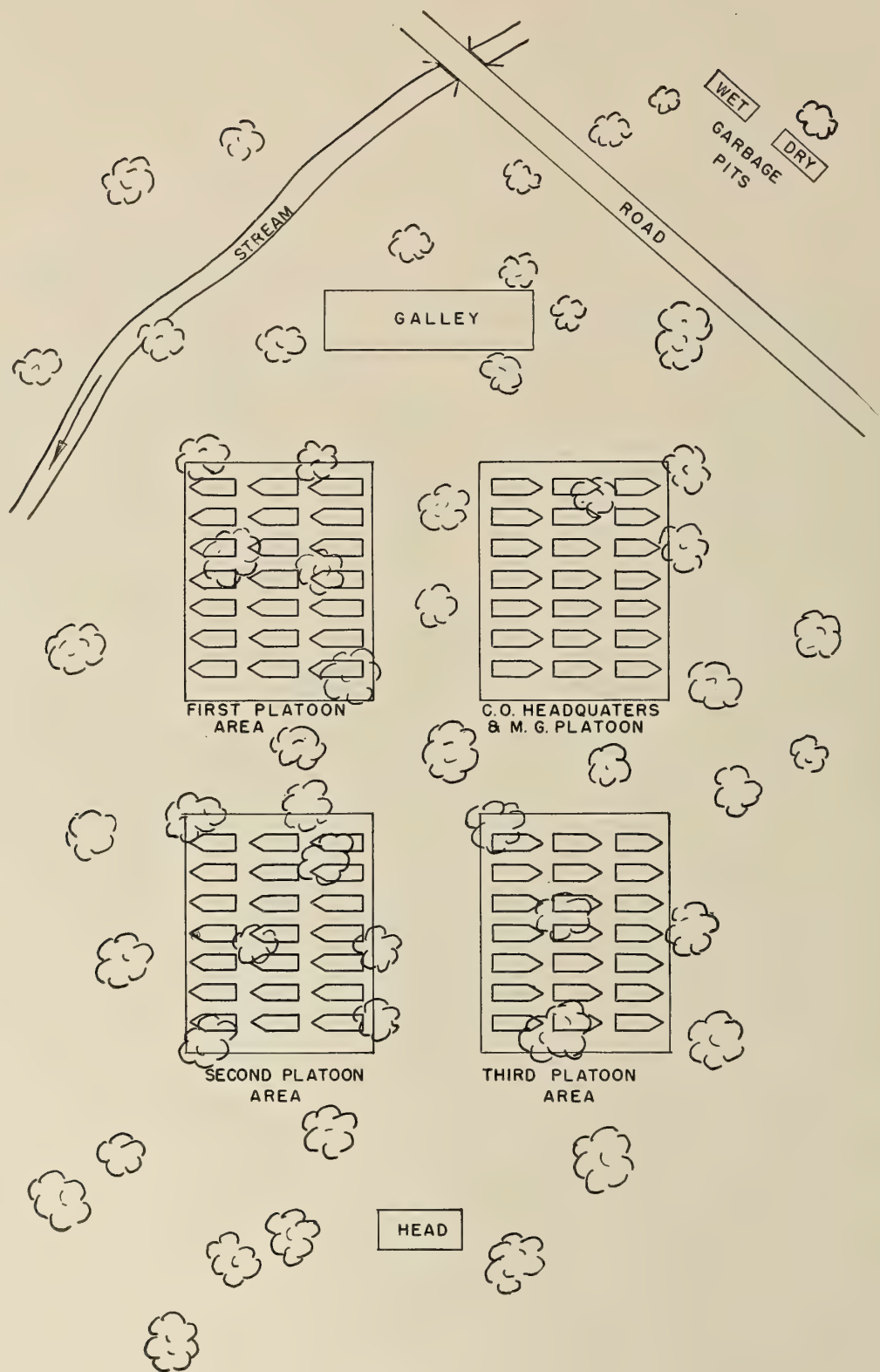


FIGURE 1.—Nontactical bivouac.



FIGURE 2—Tactical bivouac.

SECTION IV

PITCHING AND STRIKING SHELTER TENTS

	Par.	Page
Purpose.....	6-6	224
Formation.....	6-7	224
Commands.....	6-8	224
Execution.....	6-9	224
Striking.....	6-10	225

6-6 PURPOSE.—Instruction is given in the method of pitching shelter tents so that commanders may establish bivouacs quickly. When properly instructed, two men should be able to erect a shelter tent in five minutes.

6-7 FORMATION.—*a.* Shelter tents will be pitched in line and in formation only for purposes of instruction and for formal field inspections of equipment. In bivouac, full use will be made of available cover, and straight lines will be avoided. (See fig. 2.)

b. For formal field inspections requiring the pitching of shelter tents, platoons will form in line, and companies will form in column of platoons in line.

c. When men are armed with rifles they will sling arms prior to forming for shelter tents.

6-8 COMMANDS.—

FORM FOR SHELTER TENTS TO THE LEFT
(RIGHT), MARCH.

TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT (RIGHT),
MARCH.

COUNT OFF.

ODD NUMBERS MARK POSITIONS.
PITCH TENTS.

6-9 EXECUTION.—*a. Forming.*—At the commands given in paragraph 6-8, the movements are executed as prescribed in Chapter 2, Landing Party Manual.

b. Pairs of odd and even numbered men pitch tents together (1 and 2, 3 and 4, etc.).—At the command ODD NUMBERS MARK POSITION, each odd numbered man draws his bayonet and, with the ring to the front, thrusts it into the ground outside of and against his left heel near the instep. The bayonet marks the position for the front pole of the tent.

Men not armed with the bayonet mark the position with the left heel.

c. At the command PITCH TENTS, each man, not armed with a pistol takes one step obliquely to the right front and lays his weapon on the ground with the muzzle to the front, barrel to the left, and butt near the toe of his right foot. He then steps back into place. He immediately unslings his equipment and places his pack on the ground two paces in front of him. He then takes from his pack the shelter half, pole, and pins. Each man then spreads his shelter half on the spot that the tent is to occupy with the even-numbered man's half on the left. When using camouflaged shelter halves, the side which blends best with the surrounding background will be designated as the outside of the tent.

d. The shelter halves are then buttoned together. The odd-numbered man slips his pole into the eyelets in the front of the tent and holds the pole upright beside the bayonet. The even-numbered man pins down the front corners of the tent in line with the pole. He then pins down the front triangle of the tent and drives the guy pin two-and-a-half pin lengths in front of the front triangle. He places the loop of the guy over this pin, and runs the other end of the line through the loops of the shelter halves and

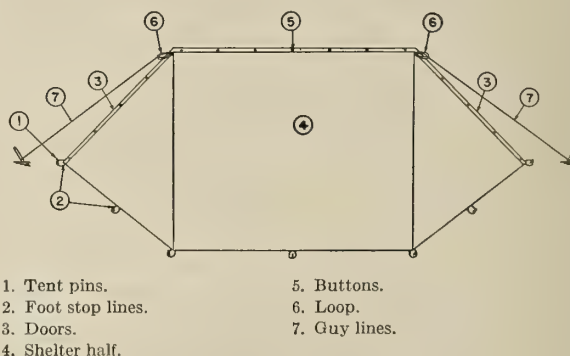


FIGURE 3.—Shelter tent (composed of two shelter halves).

ties it, making sure that the pole is in a vertical position when the line is taut. (See fig. 3.) He then adjusts the rear tent pole through the eyelets in the rear of the tent. The odd-numbered man pins down the rear corners of the tent, drives in the rear guy pin so that it is two-and-a-half tent pin lengths from the rear pin of the triangle, and then adjusts the guy line. The even-numbered man pins down the left side of

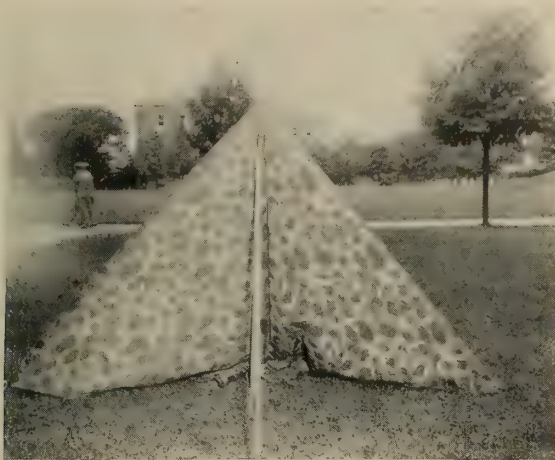


FIGURE 4.—Shelter tent, front corners, front pole, and front guy line in position.

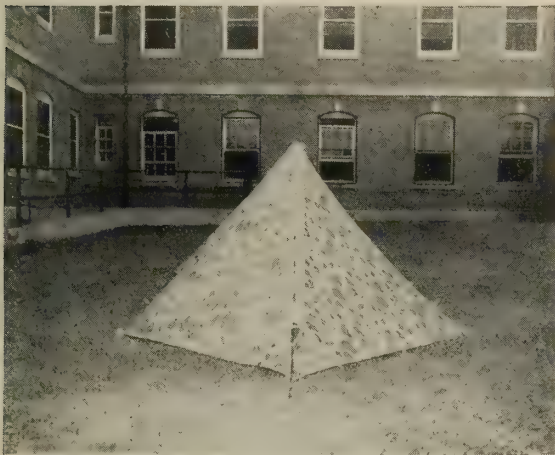


FIGURE 5.—Shelter tent, rear view.

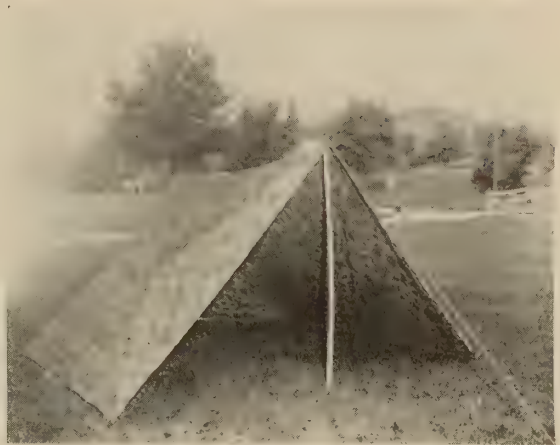


FIGURE 6.—Shelter tent, front view



FIGURE 7.—Shelter tent, rear oblique view.

the tent and the odd-numbered man the right side. (See figs. 4, 5, 6, and 7.)

6-10 STRIKING.—To strike shelter tents, the men first unbutton sufficient buttons so that each can grasp a tent pole and cause them to fall either to the left or to the right. When the tent is flat on the ground, they pull the pins, unbutton the shelter halves, and roll their packs.

SECTION V

PITCHING, STRIKING, AND FOLDING WALL AND PYRAMIDAL TENTS

	Par.	Page
Pitching wall tents.....	6-11	226
Striking wall tents.....	6-12	226
Folding wall tents.....	6-13	226
Pitching pyramidal tents.....	6-14	227
Striking pyramidal tents.....	6-15	228
Folding pyramidal tents.....	6-16	228

6-11 PITCHING WALL TENTS.—*a. Preliminary arrangements.*—The officer in charge selects suitable ground. He indicates the direction in which the tent is to face, the line on which the tent is to be placed, and the position of the door pin. It requires approximately 20 minutes for four men to pitch the large or small wall tent, and 30 minutes for eight men to erect the wall storage tent.

b. Procedure.—(1) Drive a pin to mark the center of the door.

(2) Spread the tent on the ground it is to occupy, placing the door foot stops over the door pin.

(3) Draw the front corners taut, aline, and pin down.

(4) Lace the rear door, if there is one.

(5) Draw the rear corners taut in both directions and pin down.

(6) Drive the four eave-line pins on each corner in prolongation of the diagonals of the tent and about two paces beyond the corner pins.

(7) Loosen the front door.

(8) Loosen the two corner foot stops from the corner pins on one side only.

(9) Insert the ridge pole between the ventilation strip and the tent ridge.

(10) Insert the spindles of the upright poles in the ridge pole and in the grommets of the tent.

(11) Raise the tent and hold it in position.

(12) Replace the two loosened corner foot

stops, and secure and tighten the guy lines to hold the poles vertical.

(13) Drive the wall pins through the foot stops as they hang, and drive intermediate eave-line pins in alinement with the eave-line pins already driven.

6-12 STRIKING WALL TENTS.—*a.* Remove all pins except those of the four eave-lines on the corners and the corner wall pins on the down wind side, and place them in a receptacle.

b. Unfasten the guy lines and hold them while the tent is being lowered.

c. Lower the tent down wind.

d. Remove the poles and remaining corner wall pins. Fasten the poles together and collect the remaining pins.

6-13 FOLDING WALL TENTS.—*a.* Spread the tent flat on the ground, folded at the ridge so that the bottoms of the side walls are even, the sod cloth folded under, and the ends of the tent forming triangles to the right and left.

b. Fold in the bottom of the wall approximately one foot.

c. Fold the triangular ends of the tent in toward the middle to form a rectangle.

d. Fold the top over about 9 inches.

e. Fold the tent again by carrying the top fold over to the foot, and again from the top to the foot.

f. Throw all the eave and guy lines onto the tent except the second eave-line from each end.

g. Fold the ends so as to cover about two-thirds of the width of the second panel.

h. Double the left fold over the number of times required to bring the resulting bundle into position 3 to 5 inches from the right fold.

i. Place the right fold in position on top, completing the bundle.

j. Tie the bundle with the two exposed eave lines.

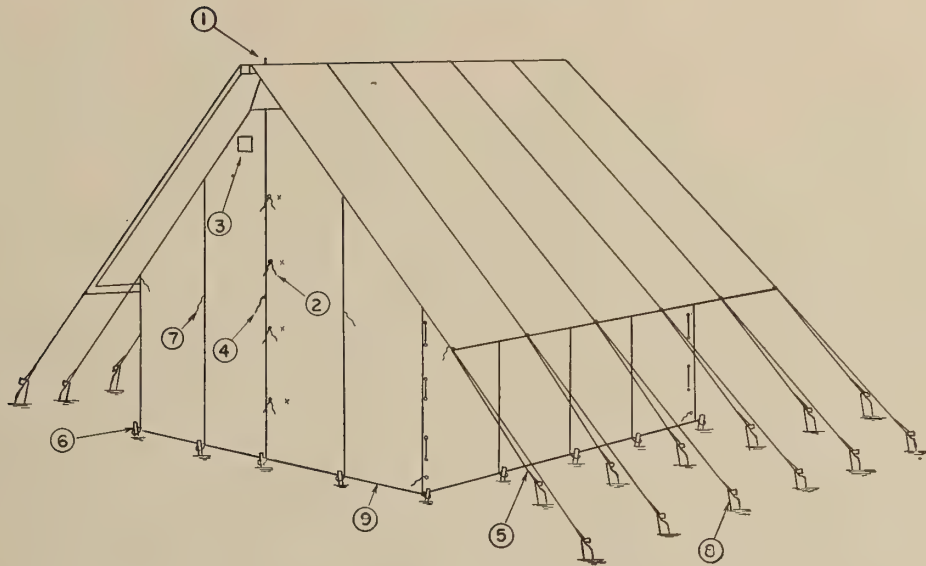


FIGURE 8.—Wall tent, small.

Parts

1. Spindle.
2. Door fastener lines.
3. Stovepipe openings.
4. Door wall line.
5. Eave line.
6. Foot stop line.
7. Wall lines.
8. Tent pins, 24-inch.
9. Sod cloth.

6-14 PITCHING PYRAMIDAL TENTS.—

a. Preliminary arrangements.—The commander designates the line on which the tents are to be erected. The line of tents is marked by driving a wall pin on the spot to be occupied by the right front corner of each tent. The interval between adjacent marking pins should be 30 feet. This leaves a space of about 2 feet between tents. Each tent is usually erected by the men who will occupy it. It takes seven men approximately 30 minutes to erect this tent.

b. Procedure—(1) Spread canvas.—Spread the tent on the ground which it is to occupy, door to the front. Lace the corners of the tent wall, tie the door fasteners, and place the right front corner foot stop over the corner pin already driven.

(2) *Drive left front corner wall pin.*—Carry the left front corner foot stop as far to the left as it will go, and drive a short pin through it in line with the right corner pin already driven.

(3) *Drive rear corner wall pins.*—Pull the rear corner foot stops to the rear and outward, so that the bottom of the rear wall of the tent will stretch to complete the square. Then drive the pins through these foot stops with each rear corner pin directly to the rear of its corresponding front corner pin, forming the square. Unless the canvas is wet, allow a small amount of slack before driving the corner pins.

(4) *Adjust center pole and hood.*—Three men crawl under the tent and fit the center pole into the plate of the chain and plate assembly. Adjust the hood.

(5) *Raise tent.*—With a man steadying each corner line, the men underneath the tent raise the tent.

(6) *Adjust corner lines.*—Place the four corner lines over the lower notches of the large pins, which are driven in prolongation of the diagonals at such distances as to hold the walls and ends of the tent vertical and smooth when the eave lines are drawn taut.

(7) *Insert side-wall upright poles.*—Place the four side-wall upright poles, one at each corner, in a vertical position with the spindle inserted through the grommet in the tent.

(8) *Drive remaining pins and adjust lines.*—Drive a small wall pin through each remaining foot stop and a large pin for each eave line, in line with the four corner-line pins already driven. Place the eave lines over the lower

notches of the large pins and draw all the lines taut.

6-15 STRIKING PYRAMIDAL TENTS.—

a. Remove all pins except those of the four corner lines and the two rear corner wall pins. File them, or place them in a container.

b. Remove the four side-wall upright poles.

c. With one man holding each corner line, slowly lower the tent to the rear. Fasten the poles together and collect the remaining pins.

6-16 FOLDING PYRAMIDAL TENTS.—

a. *Procedure*—(1) *Pull canvas smooth*.—Pull the back wall and top canvas out smooth. This is done by leaving the rear corner wall pins in the ground with the foot stops attached. One man at each corner line, and one or two men holding the chain and plate assembly perpendicular, pull the canvas to its limit away from the former front of the tent. This places the three remaining sides of the tent on top of the rear side, with the door side in the middle.

(2) *Straighten right side of tent*.—To straighten the right side wall and top canvas, carry the right front corner over and lay it on the left front corner. Pull the canvas smooth and the bottom edges even. Throw the eave lines toward the chain and plate assembly. Return the right front corner to the right in order to cover the right rear corner. This folds the right side of the tent on itself with a crease in the middle. This fold will now be under the front side of the tent.

(3) *Straighten left side of tent*.—To straighten the left side wall and top canvas, carry the left front corner to the right and rear in a similar fashion. This will leave the front and rear sides of the tent lying smooth and flat and the two side walls folded inward, each on itself.

(4) Make sure the sod cloth is folded under all around the tent.

(5) *Fold tent lengthwise*.—Fold in the bottom of the front wall lengthwise approximately 1 foot. Fold the chain and plate assembly

downward toward the bottom of the tent. Place the hood on the chain and plate assembly. The tent is then folded lengthwise with the chain and plate assembly as a core, all folds being placed down flat, smooth, and parallel to the bottom of the tent. If each fold is compactly made and the canvas is kept smooth, the last fold will exactly cover the lower edge of the canvas.

(6) *Arrange lines on tent*.—Lay all the exposed eave lines, except the two on the center panel, along the folded canvas. Pull these two out and away from the bottom edge to their extreme length so that they may be used later for the final tying of the bundle.

(7) *Complete folding of the bundle*.—Fold the bundle from one end toward the center at the first seam (the seam joining the first and second panels). Fold the bundle again toward the center so that the canvas already folded will come within about 3 inches of the middle panel. Fold the bundle once again to the far seam of the middle panel. Starting from the opposite end of the bundle, fold the first panel width in half. Fold this again. This will bring it about 4 or 5 inches from the part of the tent already folded from the first end. Throw this second fold completely over the part already folded.

(8) *Tie bundle*.—Draw the exposed eave lines taut toward and across one another so that they are at right angles. Turn the bundle over on the eave lines. Cross the lines again on the new top of the bundle. Turn the bundle over again on the crossed lines and tie the lines with a slipknot.

b. *Bundle*.—When properly tied and pressed together, the bundle will be about 11 by 23 by 34 inches. Identification marks, stenciled on the upper half of the middle width of canvas in the back wall, will appear on the exposed top of the bundle.

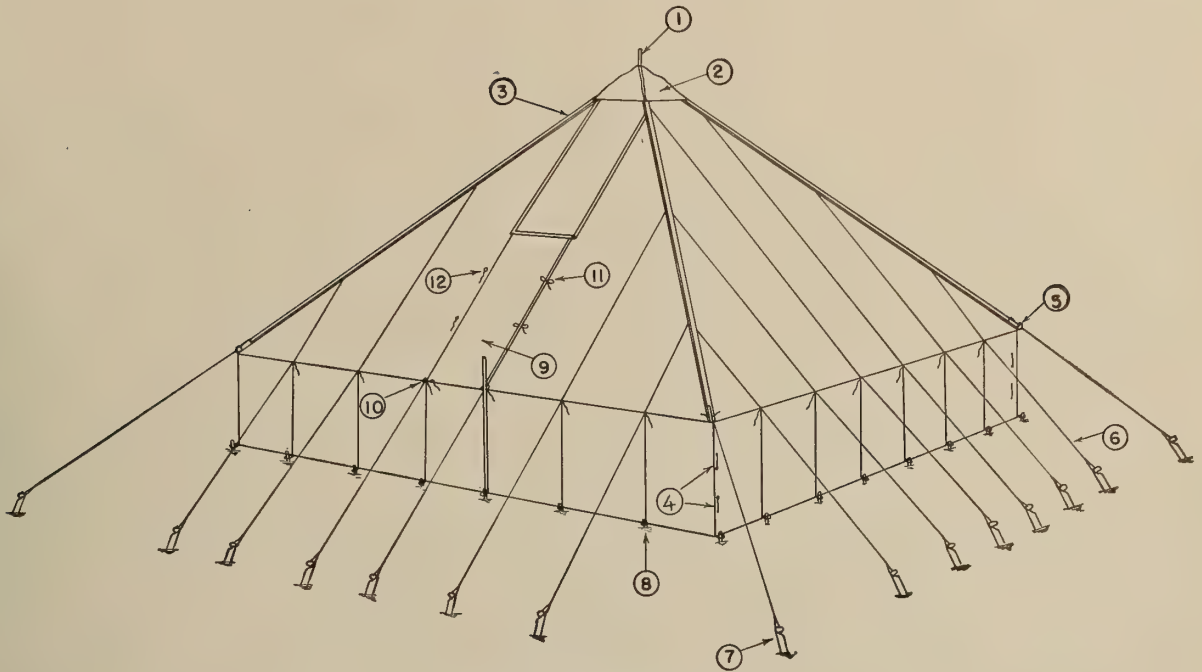


FIGURE 9.—Pyramidal tent, M-1934

Parts

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Spindle. | 7. Tent pines, 24-inch. |
| 2. Tent hood. | 8. Foot stops. |
| 3. Hood lines. | 9. Door flap. |
| 4. Lacing lines. | 10. Lug. |
| 5. Tent poles, upright. | 11. Door fastener lines. |
| 6. Eave lines. | 12. Door flap lines. |

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 7

FIELD SANITATION, PERSONAL HYGIENE, AND FIRST AID

CHAPTER 7

FIELD SANITATION, PERSONAL HYGIENE, AND FIRST AID

	Par.	Page
Section I. FIELD SANITATION-----	7-1	235
II. PERSONAL HYGIENE-----	7-20	246
III. FIRST AID-----	7-25	250

SECTION I

FIELD SANITATION

	Par.	Page
Washing mess gear in the field.....	7-1	235
Water supply.....	7-2	235
Ultimate disposal of waste.....	7-3	236
Camp refuse.....	7-4	236
Excreta.....	7-5	236
Urinal soakage pits.....	7-6	238
Soakage pits.....	7-7	239
Night urinals.....	7-8	239
Disposal of liquid wastes in Arctic regions..	7-9	239
Incineration.....	7-10	239
Ventilation.....	7-11	239
Insect control, general.....	7-12	240
Flies.....	7-13	240
Mosquitoes.....	7-14	241
Lice.....	7-15	243
Bedbugs.....	7-16	243
Cockroaches.....	7-17	244
Mites.....	7-18	244
Rodent control.....	7-19	244

7-1 WASHING MESS GEAR IN THE FIELD.—*a.* After meals all mess gear should be sterilized in boiling water. In a semipermanent camp, mess gear may be placed in wire racks and washed by immersion in boiling water for 5 minutes.

b. On the march and under conditions where the mess kits are in use, the following method is employed: Immediately before eating, men form a column and file past three cans of water placed over fires in a trench where mess gear is rinsed. The first can contains boiling soapy water; the second and third, boiling clear water. Immediately after eating the men file past a garbage can or pit where refuse, liquid and solid food is disposed of. After disposal each article of the mess kit is rinsed in three cans of boiling water as above. A few moments' immersion in each can is usually sufficient to cleanse the utensils. After immersion in the third can the mess gear dries almost immediately by its own heat; no wiping is necessary. Care should be taken that the water in each can is kept boiling. Supervision is mandatory for this purpose and to make sure that mess gear is washed.

7-2 WATER SUPPLY.—*a.* *Contamination.*—All water in the field should be regarded as contaminated until proven to be potable by bacteriological analysis. It may be contaminated during distribution and storage, as well as at its source.

b. If the supply for drinking and cooking, watering animals, bathing, and washing clothes is obtained from a stream, the watering places should be located in the order stated, beginning upstream, and marked by suitable signs.

c. The water furnished by small streams may be increased by building dams. Springs may be dug out and lined with stones, boxes, or barrels. Surface drainage is kept out by a curb of clay.

d. Water not known to be pure is chlorinated or boiled, then cooled and aerated.

e. Heat is one of the safest measures to sterilize water but it requires time and fuel. Water should be boiled for 20 minutes and allowed to cool.

f. Receptacles should be cleaned daily with boiling water or rinsed with a solution of potassium permanganate (one-third of a teaspoonful of potassium permanganate to 1 gallon of water). A solution of chlorinated lime is also very good for this purpose in the proportion of 1 to 1,000. These solutions are harmless and more certain in their action than the use of boiling water alone. Canteens when not in use should be emptied, dried, and cleansed with one of the above solutions. New cans and carts in which water is to be transported should be thoroughly steamed out before being filled with water in order to remove the lacquer on the new containers, otherwise the water cannot be used for drinking purposes.

g. The canvas water bag, stocked by the Supply Department, U. S. Marine Corps, provides an excellent means of chlorinating, cooling, aerating, and distributing water. It has a capacity of 36 gallons which is sufficient to fill

100 canteens. The water is distributed from faucets attached to the lower part of the bag. The bag may be supported by an improvised tripod or it may be suspended from the bough of a tree, etc. Calcium hypochlorite is a chemical used for water chlorination. It is supplied in small glass tubes, each of 15 grains (1 gram), by the Supply Department, United States Marine Corps. This amount is sufficient in size to purify 36 gallons of water.

(1) Break a tube and place the contents in a canteen cup containing enough water to form a paste.

(2) After making the paste, dissolve it by stirring well while adding water until the cup is nearly full.

(3) Empty the solution into the bag full of water.

(4) Wait 30 minutes before using.

h. As an emergency substitute for calcium hypochlorite or chlorinated lime, use 10 cc. (2½ teaspoonfuls) of the official tincture of iodine; then wait 30 minutes before using the water.

i. Two drops of tincture of iodine added to a canteen of water will sterilize the contents.

j. Potassium permanganate, one-half grain to the gallon, may also be used.

k. In very cold regions fresh water ice or snow may be melted to secure water. The water source should be protected to prevent contamination by man or animals. The water used for drinking purposes should be chlorinated as indicated in *g* above or boiled for 20 minutes.

7-3 ULTIMATE DISPOSAL OF WASTE.—

The ultimate disposal of waste products in the field is limited to—

(1) Burial; usually employed in temporary and semipermanent camps.

(2) Burning (incineration); usually employed in more permanent camps.

7-4 CAMP REFUSE.—The refuse which collects in company streets and environs should be collected and disposed of. Ration cans and the uneaten portion of foods thereof should be properly disposed of. Supervision in this regard is mandatory. Metal garbage cans, if obtainable, should be placed at intervals in the camp for waste paper, burnt matches,

cigarette stumps, fruit peelings, etc. Wooden or cardboard boxes may be so employed.

7.5 EXCRETA.—*a.* When a column halts, a sanitary detail should prepare temporary latrines. A few narrow trenches will suffice. If there is delay in preparing trenches as during the first day in combat, all “cat holes” should be covered with dirt.

b. Temporary camps.—(1) To prevent soiling the camp site, the digging of straddle-trenches should begin immediately. Men should be cautioned to contain themselves until these are ready for use. These trenches are usually called “one-two-three straddle trenches” indicating that they are 1 foot wide, 2 feet deep, and 3 feet long. These trenches are used for bivouacs and temporary camps. They should not be confused with the deep-pit latrines required in more permanent camps.

(2) Straddle-trenches, 1 for each 10 men, should be constructed on a line and be parallel to each other.

(3) The dirt that is removed should be piled at one end of the trench, leaving a firm foothold on each side. Put a can or shovel on each pile of dirt so that each man can cover his excrement and toilet paper as soon as he is through. If excrement is left exposed, flies crawl on it, and then flock around the galley, and contaminate the food, spreading disease throughout the command.

(4) An ample supply of toilet paper should be provided, and be protected by cans or canvas during the rainy season.

(5) Straddle-trenches are located on the leeward side of camp, well away from the galley, and 50 to 100 yards away from the bivouac area. They should be on fairly high ground, to avoid the danger of flooding during the rainy season, and so located that they will not drain into a stream or well and contaminate the water. In thickly inhabited localities they should be screened from vision with brush or fabric.

(6) Before breaking camp, latrines should be filled, mounded over, and marked with date of closing. Thoughtful men will carry a supply of toilet paper for use along the trail.

(7) The importance of the proper use of latrines cannot be overemphasized. There are few desirable camp sites, and a careless patrol may so contaminate one that it will be unfit for

further occupation for months. The line of march of today is the line of communication tomorrow.

c. Permanent camps.—(1) A flytight box of approved construction should be used over deep-pit latrines. It is essential to maintain flytight integrity, as otherwise the latrine will soon become a menace to the command. All cracks should be covered, preferably by strips of burlap or wire mesh. The bottom of the box should fit tightly against the ground.

(2) For details of construction and flyproofing latrine boxes see figure 1.

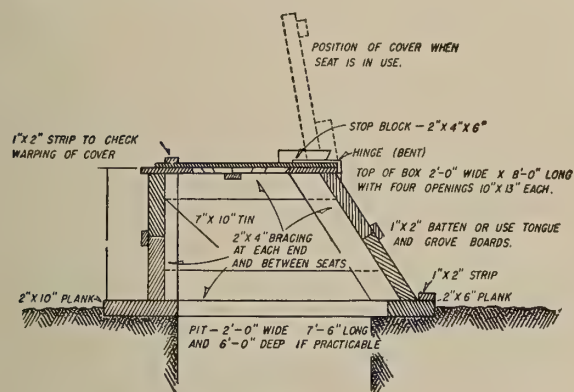


FIGURE 1.—Standard latrine box.

(3) In digging the pit make the length 8 feet or multiples of 8 feet, to correspond to the length of the box. Seats should be provided on the basis of 1 for each 12 men. One standard box is assumed to provide accommodation for 50 men.

(4) The width of the pit is always 2 feet. The depth depends on the time the latrine is to be used. A pit 4 feet deep should last 2 weeks. For longer periods, add 1-foot depth for each additional week.

(5) The latrine should be screened and a trench six inches deep should be dug around it to drain off water. The latrine should be covered, usually by a tent fly. An orderly should be assigned to keep the latrine in proper police. The pit should be sprayed daily. A spray pump filled with cresol or crude oil (or crankcase oil) is used for spraying the pit and inside of the box. Latrines should be burned out twice weekly with a mixture of half kerosene and crude or crankcase oil. Seats should be scrubbed daily with soap and water, and twice weekly with a solution of six ounces of com-

pound cresol solution in a pail of water. After using cresol, the seats must be thoroughly flushed with water and men prevented from using them until this has been done, as otherwise they may be severely burned. The cresol should be drawn as required from the police tent, and never be permitted to remain in the latrine area.

(6) Flyproofing the pit is mandatory, except when the pit is dug through rock. The fly deposits eggs on the excreta and the larvae work up through the ground around the pit, their escape from its mouth being prevented by the box. In flyproofing the pit, an area 4 feet wide and 6 inches deep is dug all around the pit. This excavation is covered with oil-soaked burlap, and the earth replaced and packed down. After a latrine has been in use for several weeks, the ground under the burlap will be found honeycombed and will disclose the remains of numerous fly larvae. If the pit becomes infested with flies, open a seat cover and place a fly trap over the hole.

(7) The inside of deep-trench latrines should be darkened with tar and paper or other black material. Flies avoid dark places.

(8) When deep latrines are filled with excreta to within 3 feet of the surface they should be filled in and abandoned. The location should be marked with date of closing to warn against future use of the site.

(9) The latrine should be lighted at night.

(10) A trough urinal, lined with tar paper or tin, or constructed of galvanized iron, is arranged to drain into each pit.

(11) Facilities for washing the hands should, if possible, be provided at each latrine.

(12) The double oil drum latrine is of use especially in loose sand where a pit might collapse. (See fig. 2.) All ends are removed from the drums, and the drums are so set that the top drum extends to a comfortable seat height—a flytight seat and cover may be made of plywood and cut to fit on a ledge cut in the end of the top drum. When the pit fills up, the top drum is removed, the hole covered, and a new bottom section put in a new hole. The former top section is then set in place on the new bottom section. One drum only may be used in soil too hard to prepare a hole deep enough for two drums.

For use in loose sand where a pit might collapse. One seat cut from the plywood top of preceding page fits well here.

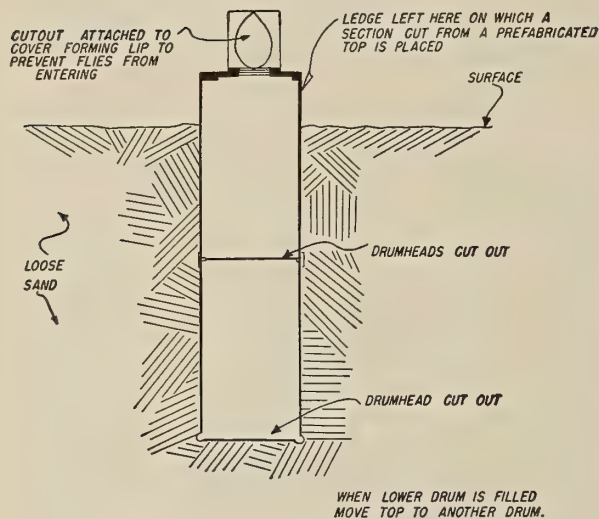


FIGURE 2.—Double oil drum latrine.

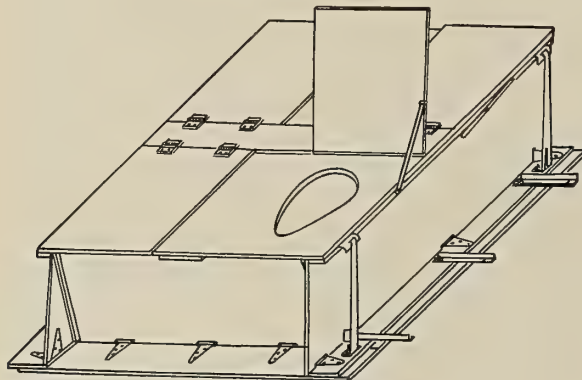


FIGURE 3.—Portable field latrine.

(13) The portable field latrine is often provided for semipermanent camps. (See fig. 3.) Excreta should be disposed of by dumping in sea ice, ocean, pits, or in rivers.

(14) In Arctic or Antarctic areas a heated indoor latrine is most desirable. A small room built onto a heated building and well insulated will suffice. The room may be heated by a small stove in the room or through the passageway from the main building. Two or three seats can be provided with receptacles improvised from 5-gallon oil drums with one end removed and wire handles attached. A small

quantity of cresol, "Roccal," or "phemerol" should be added to the receptacle.

7-6 URINAL SOAKAGE PITS.—(1) The urinal-soakage pit is constructed as follows: Dig a pit 4 feet square by 5 feet deep, fill to within 6 inches of the surface with large stones or empty perforated tin cans, and insert at each corner a piece of iron pipe $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet long. Spread oil-soaked burlap over the stones and cover it with 6 inches of earth. Tin funnels are fitted into the ends of the iron pipes. (See fig. 4.) In the absence of iron piping or funnels improvise them from empty kerosene cans, or use tar paper. In porous soil one soakage pit will dispose of the urine of from 100 to 200 men indefinitely.

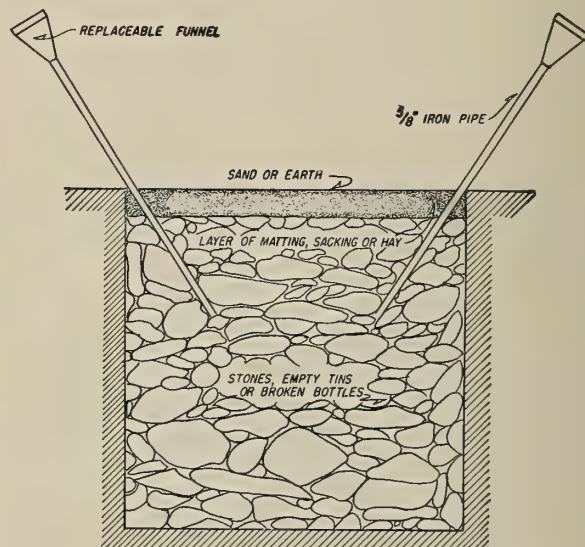


FIGURE 4.—Cross-section of urine soakage pit.

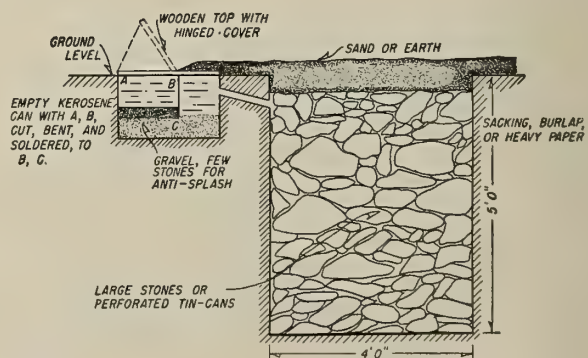


FIGURE 5.—Cross-section of soakage pit for waste water, with grease and soap trap.

(2) In semipermanent camps where latrines are at one end of the company streets urine-soakage pits should be constructed at the opposite end of the streets.

7-7 SOAKAGE PITS.—The dimensions and construction of this pit are the same as for the urinal-soakage pit, except that it is fitted with traps to remove the grease by running the water through a box of gravel. (See fig. 5.)

7-8 NIGHT URINALS.—Urinal cans should be placed in company streets at night, lighted by a lantern to mark their location. If placed at some distance from camp, men are tempted at night to urinate on the ground in the vicinity of the tents. Urinal cans should be cleaned and sunned daily.

7-9 DISPOSAL OF LIQUID WASTES IN ARCTIC REGIONS.—The customary methods of disposal of liquid wastes (laundry water, urine, kitchen-liquid waste) are not practical in Arctic regions. Due to permanent ground frost soakage pits are ineffective. A disposal area may be provided consisting of a ditch or gully which is downhill from the camp leading to the ocean, a river, or uninhabited territory. The disposal area should be marked with flags or similar devices. The liquids will freeze during the winter and there should be no odor. If the odor does become objectionable, it can be controlled by sprinkling chloride of lime on the area. The liquid will thaw in the spring and will be carried away to the ocean, river, or into the uninhabited territory. During the 2 to 3 months of above freezing temperature during the year it is possible to keep the area flushed with water from a stream.

7-10 INCINERATION.—*Hillside incinerator.*—(See fig. 6.) The hillside method of incineration first devised by Rear Adm. W. L. Mann (MC), USN, and described in the Journal of the American Medical Association, April 6, 1918, has proved simple and satisfactory. A trench about 2 feet wide, 3 feet deep and 6 feet or more long is excavated in a steep hillside or bank. At the foot of this trench a soakage pit is excavated and the bottom of trench and the soakage pit are filled with stone. The trench is covered with sheets of corrugated iron or other metal to assist in creating a draft when the wood or rubbish fire is built over the soakage pit. Garbage or other waste is dumped

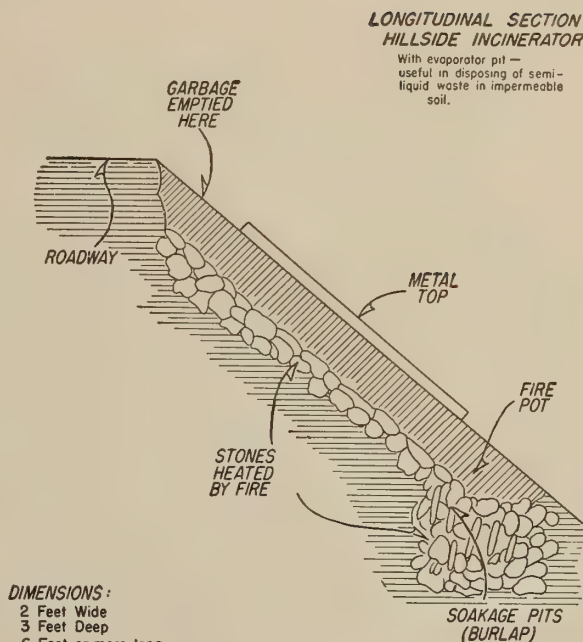


FIGURE 6.—Hillside incinerator.

at the top of the trench and is stoked gradually down the rock bottom of the trench. Liquids drain down into the rocks in the trench and pit where they soak into the ground or are evaporated. The hot rocks and combustible gases dry the garbage as it progresses downward into the fire. This mode of disposal has the following advantages:

(a) *Simplicity.*—One man can effectively and efficiently dispose of the excremental and garbage refuse of 5,000 persons.

(b) *Availability.*—Almost every terrain contains a sloping hillside or a small embankment that may be utilized.

(c) It requires a minimum amount of fuel.

(d) A large surface area of liquid is exposed to heat thus facilitating evaporation. The hillside incinerator will prove most useful where there is a large mass of wet garbage to dispose of and where night soil must be burned.

(e) Supervision is necessary to prevent the fire from going out and to stir up the garbage and refuse in order that the incinerator may function efficiently.

7-11 VENTILATION.—In cold climes there is a tendency for men to seal buildings tightly against the cold. This results in the hazard of carbon monoxide poisoning. Therefore, it is important that provision be made for the en-

trance of fresh air. The stove, flues, and pipes must be in good repair. The careless use of heaters has been the cause of most cases of carbon monoxide poisoning in Arctic regions.

7-12 INSECT CONTROL, GENERAL.—The human race is constantly at war with

hordes of insects which frequently carry myriads of disease germs and eggs of parasites. This is especially true in the field, and for a landing party successfully to avoid illness from this source detailed measures for insect control are necessary.

Common insects concerned in disease transmission

Common name	Genus	Common diseases transmitted	Breeding places	Life history	Range of flight
Flies.....	Musca (<i>M. domestica</i>).	Typhoid fever, cholera, dysentery, diarrhea, and other infections.	Manure, garbage, decaying organic matter.	Eggs hatch in about 36 hours to larvae. Larvae grow rapidly and in 7 to 10 days become pupae (resting stage). In 2 to 4 days mature into adults.	½ to 1 mile.
Mosquitoes.....	Anopheles.....	Malarial fever.....	Rural stagnant pools, swamps, and marshes.	Eggs deposited in mass of 100; in 2 to 4 days hatch into larvae, and in a week reach pupae or wingless resting stage. In 2 or 3 days develop wings and become adult mosquitoes.	1 to 2 miles.
Mosquitoes.....	Aedes (<i>A. Aegypti</i>)	Yellow fever and dengue	Domestic; develop in water in any container near a house or in gutters, cisterns, spouts, etc.	Lays about 70 eggs. Larvae hatch out in 2 days and develop into pupae in 1 week. Then in 2 or 3 days become mature adults.	Maximum of 75 yards.
Lice.....	Pediculus (<i>P. vestimenti</i>).	Typhus fever, relapsing fever.	Breed and spend their entire life on warm-blooded animals, including man.	Eggs cling to hair or clothing of host (man). They hatch out in 3 to 4 days and mature in 10 to 15 days.	Do not travel much; keep close to one host.

7-13 FLIES.—*a. Important kinds.*—The housefly, blowfly, and stablefly are usually found on naval reservations. The housefly breeds in excrement especially that of horses. Cattle, hog, chicken, and human feces are also used by flies for breeding as well as decomposing vegetable and animal matter. The eggs are laid in masses of 75 to 150, hatch in about 20 hours under summer conditions, and the legless maggot develops in about 5 days. The pupal stage requires about 4 days, making a total of about 10 days from egg to adult insect. From contact with excrement and other filth, disease organisms are carried on the feet of the fly to food and mess utensils. The fly takes only liquid foods and regurgitates to dissolve solids, causing further contamination. The blowfly sometimes breeds in animal and human excrement, but more often in fish and decaying meat. The adults are often found around latrines. The stablefly, or dogfly, breeds in wet straw, piled and rotting vegetation, and manure mixed with straw. It is a biting fly frequently mistaken for the housefly.

b. Measures undertaken to combat flies.—

(1) Prevent access of flies to:

- (a) Food, mess gear, kitchens and mess halls.
- (b) Living quarters.
- (c) Excreta.

In a permanent camp the kitchens, mess halls, garbage cans, and latrines should be screened. It should be a standing operation procedure that no hot food be served until the galley is screened. Screens should have a mesh of 18 wires to the inch which also keeps out mosquitoes. In a semipermanent camp screening may be impractical; consequently dependence must be placed upon cleanliness and insect-proof containers. In the absence of metal screening mosquito netting, target cloth, or similar material may be used to flyproof tents, galleys, shacks, etc. Leaking screens (especially cracks around the screen door) frequently convert a building into a flytrap; i. e., flies are able to enter the building but unable to make an exit. Screen doors should be made to open outward and should be in direct sunlight, when practicable. Fly breeding in human excreta is particularly dangerous, hence latrines, wherever possible, should be carefully flyproofed.

(2) *Destruction of the adult fly.*—(a) DDT should be applied to all screens on doors and

windows with a sprayer or paint brush. A 5-percent solution in kerosene or an emulsion should be used. The DDT remains as a deposit after the liquid has evaporated and acts as a residual contact insecticide killing flies for from 2 to 3 months. If the material is diluted to 2.5 percent in order to reduce the unsightly residue, it will be necessary to renew the treatment once or twice a month because of removal by rain. Five percent DDT in kerosene should be applied to interior surfaces of walls in latrines, mess halls, and other places where flies congregate. Application at the rate of 1 quart to 250 square feet will deposit about 200 milligrams of DDT per square foot. In applying DDT all exposed utensils and food should first be covered and men should wear respirators and other protective devices. DDT in oil should not be allowed to come in contact with the skin of the operator as it is readily absorbed and thus presents a hazard. DDT causes toxic manifestations by any route of administration. It is a nervous-system poison primarily of central origin, but can cause damage to other tissues and organs as well.

(b) Sweetened solutions of formaldehyde, 1 percent (corresponding to 2.5 percent of a 40-percent solution of formalin) or sodium salicylate, 1 percent, will kill flies. As flies usually drink in the early morning, it is well to prepare the above solutions the night before.

(c) Flypaper is rather efficient and may be prepared as follows: Heat powdered resin eight parts and castor oil five parts (by weight); stir well while heating; the mixture should not be brought to a boil. In hot weather the proportion of resin should be increased. Sugar or honey may be added, but is not essential. The fluid is spread while hot over glazed paper. The mixture may be painted upon iron hoops or wire strands. Wires so painted should be cleaned and recoated every 2 or 3 days.

(3) *Prevention of fly breeding.*—(a) *Treatment with DDT.*—Since manure constitutes one of the principal breeding places, proper disposal is of great importance. Manure can be sprayed with a DDT water emulsion in concentrations as low as 0.1 percent to kill any fly larvae which may develop. Fly breeding in human excreta is particularly dangerous, hence latrines, wherever possible, should be carefully flyproofed. In

temporary camps, enforcing the use of straddle trenches and the prompt covering of feces are extremely important. DDT residual spray should be applied at the rate of 1 quart of 5 percent per 250 square feet to the ground and enclosures around latrines, garbage racks, and any other places subject to fly breeding. Pit latrines should have spray applied to the walls inside and outside of the pit and box, and the walls and screens of the enclosure. Xylene-DDT emulsions (Standard Stock No. 51-I-157-475, 1-gallon cans or 51-I-147-500, 5-gallon cans) **must not** be used in pit latrines or in other closed spaces where explosive concentrations of xylene fumes may be built up. In such situations, the diluted high flash point emulsion (DDT Emulsion Concentrate, Standard Stock No. 51-I-156-50 for 1-gallon cans, or 51-I-156-55 for 5-gallon cans) Federal Specification No. 51-I-19 must be used, or 5-percent DDT in kerosene.

(b) *Other measures.*—Grease traps must be kept covered and surroundings kept clean and dry or larvae will develop. Garbage should be kept in covered containers to prevent fly breeding, and should be removed frequently, especially in warm weather. Garbage can be burned, buried, or disposed of at sea some distance off shore.

(4) *Repellents.*—The use of essential oils is unsatisfactory. Crude oil may be used around galleys and latrines to repel flies, and coating the interior of latrines with black material serves the same purpose.

7-14 MOSQUITOES.—(a) *Relation to man.*—Mosquitoes rank first among all insects that jeopardize the health of man. The three important genera concerned are *Anopheles*, *Aedes*, and *Culex*. The genus *Anopheles* contains the species that transmit Malaria. Dengue is transmitted only by the genus *Aedes*. The common yellow fever mosquito, *Aedes aegypti* transmit yellow fever. Yellow fever also occurs as an infection of certain animals of tropical forests, transmitted from animal to animal and incidentally to man, by various species of mosquitoes and, possibly by other arthropods. Several genera, including *Culex*, transmit filaria worms that produce filariasis. The causative agent of encephalomyelitis is transmitted by mosquitoes.

(b) *Medicinal prophylaxis.*—The routine administration of quinine or atebrine as a prophylactic against malaria will retard infection and conserve manpower. The treatment of native malarial carriers is an important factor in the protection of the landing force.

(c) *Personal protection.*—Insect repellent in 2-ounce bottles should be obtained on requisition to the nearest naval supply depot or storehouse in such quantities to provide an allowance of three 2-ounce bottles per man per month in malarious areas. To use the repellent properly, shake 12 to 15 drops into the palm of the hand, and after rubbing the hands together, make an even application on all exposed skin surfaces. Care should be taken to avoid mucous membranes. The repellency usually persists for about 3 or 4 hours, but the duration is shortened by such factors as rain and perspiration. Dimethyl phthalate, supplied in 1-gallon containers may be applied undiluted to clothing with a flit gun or other large droplet-type sprayer. Clothing may be treated while being worn if the wearer covers his eyes to protect them. Two ounces are sufficient to treat one uniform completely when treated after removal from the body. This treatment prevents mosquito bites through garments for a period of a few days. Long sleeves and trousers should be the required uniform after sundown in malarious areas. In addition, head nets, gloves, and leggings should be used. Bed nets must be used by all personnel in areas infested with disease-carrying mosquitoes. Living quarters in permanent or semipermanent camps may be screened by using wire having 18 meshes to the inch. In malarious areas, native environs should be restricted from sundown to sunup due to the fact that anopheline mosquitoes are mainly night biters. On the other hand many of the culicine vectors of dengue fever and filariasis are daytime biters, and native settlements in which these diseases are prevalent must be avoided at all hours of the day or night.

(d) *Adult mosquito control.*—Adult mosquitoes should be destroyed by spraying or painting screens and the interior of quarters as described in paragraph 7-13b (2). Adult mosquitoes in tents, huts, shelters, and buildings may be

killed through the use of the aerosol bomb. About 4 or 5 seconds' spraying is required for 1,000 cubic feet, if the room is not ventilated. The use of DDT solutions is an effective and rapid method of spray killing adult mosquitoes over large areas. The method is particularly useful during the early phases of occupation before organized spray-killing of adult mosquitoes or larvicidal operations on the ground can be initiated. A solution of 10 percent DDT in Diesel fuel oil using an auxiliary solvent generally gives good control of mosquitoes when applied at the rate of 1 to 2 quarts per acre. The distribution of DDT aerosols (insecticide smokes) from fast combat planes is also a promising method for rapid elimination of adult mosquitoes from large areas.

(e) *Control of immature stages of mosquitoes.*—Larvicides often must be relied upon not only during the early phases of a program before drainage and other permanent measures can be initiated, but also for periodic treatment of persistent breeding places. The most efficient larvicide is DDT in oil solution, emulsion, or a dust. One quart of Diesel fuel oil containing 5 percent DDT or 5 quarts of oil containing 1 percent DDT are sufficient to treat an acre of water surface. This rate provides 0.1 pound of DDT to the acre, and is adequate for from 6 to 9 days. The same amount of DDT per acre is required when the emulsion or dust is used. One to two quarts of 5-percent solution (smaller amounts of 10- to 20-percent solution) are required per acre for larval control by aircraft. CNO circular letter to all ships and stations, serial 47P55R dated 18 November 1946. (OpNav 46-2182) Navy Department bulletin dated 30 November 1946, entitled "Large-Scale Dispersal of Insecticides, Justification for" requires approval prior to the use of aircraft in insecticide dispersal operations (continental United States). Heavy doses of DDT will kill fish and other aquatic forms. Fog generators mounted on trucks or trailers have been used with considerable success in the control of mosquito larvae and adults where areas are accessible to motor vehicles. Diesel fuel oil or Grade F. S. No. 2 fuel oil without DDT may be used for larviciding where DDT is not available although 20 to 30 gallons of oil per acre are needed to form a thin continuous

film. The "Panama dripper" consists of an oil can with a faucet near the bottom which allows the oil to fall on the water, drop by drop (usually at the rate of about 30 drops per minute) and permits continuous oiling of a running stream. Drainage and filling are also efficient measures. Where the mosquito-breeding area is below sea level and cannot be drained, it may be flooded with salt water to prevent breeding. In other areas deep ditches may so reduce the water surface that it may be easily controlled by oiling. Small swamps, marshes, etc., may be filled in with dirt, ashes, or other material. Comparatively small amounts of stagnant water in pools, barrels, tin cans, or other man-made breeding places, furnish sufficient breeding surface to infest a camp with *Culex* and *Aedes* mosquitoes. In the selection of a camp site proximity to native habitations should be avoided.

7-15 LICE.—*a. Relation to man.*—The bite of the head and body louse coupled with scratching, produces scarring and bronzing of the skin referred to as "vagabonds" disease. Epidemic typhus is transmitted by scratching the infected crushed lice or their feces into the site of the bite or into the exocriated skin. The body louse transmits louse-borne relapsing fever. A third louse-borne disease, trench fever is usually of minor importance.

b. Control of lice.—Ten percent DDT powder is more highly effective and longer lasting than any previously known louse treatment. Insecticide powder for body crawling insects is available in 2-ounce cans for individual use. The powder is also available in 5- and 25-pound sizes. It will destroy crab lice as well as head and body lice. For the body louse the entire inner surface of the undergarment is dusted lightly giving special attention to the seams. The inner seams of the pants and shirt should be treated in a similar manner. The treated areas should be rubbed slightly by hand to spread the powder more evenly. The application is repeated at 1- or 2-week intervals, depending on the abundance of lice. For head lice the powder should be thoroughly dusted into the hair and rubbed in with the hands. It should also be dusted in the hat or other headwear. An additional treatment is suggested 1 week to 10 days later to kill the hatch-

ing young. For large-scale control of body lice in clothing, methyl bromide is a very satisfactory fumigant. A knock-down portable fumigation vault of 325 cubic feet capacity, equipped with circulation and exhaust systems, is used. The methyl bromide is introduced from the outside with patented applicators at the rate of three pounds per charge. Clothing and blankets are placed on trucks or on pole-shelves in the vault and fumigated for 45 minutes. Five minutes after the gas has been exhausted from the vault, the clothing may be removed and worn. Methyl bromide is also supplied in 2-ounce capsules to be used in fumigation of individual barracks bags. The methyl bromide capsules are placed in special, gastight bags with the clothing, and the capsules are broken by outside pressure. In 45 minutes the clothing is removed and aired. All operations are from the windward side taking care not to breathe the fumes which are **extremely toxic**. Underclothing properly impregnated with 2 percent aqueous DDT emulsion prevents louse infestation for about 2 months or until washed eight times. After soaking the clothing is moderately wrung out and allowed to dry completely.

7-16 BEDBUGS.—*Preventive and destructive measures*—(1) *Mechanical measures.*—(a) Frequent airing of bedding in the sun.

(b) Bedbugs and most other pests can be killed by a temperature of 140° F. This temperature must be maintained for 24 hours.

(c) On ships and stations where large sterilizers are available, turned-in mattresses and pillows should be run through the sterilizers before being placed in the storeroom. Where there is any indication of vermin in the quarters, all mattresses and pillows should be sterilized periodically.

(2) *Use of insecticides.*—The most effective insecticide for the control of bedbugs is DDT. It may be applied as a 5-percent dust, in an emulsion, or in kerosene. Care must be taken to apply the material to bedsteads, springs, mattresses, and to the floors and walls near the bed, especially all crevices in which the bugs may hide during the day. The DDT kerosene mixture or emulsion (if emulsion is used, ventilation should be quite free) should be applied in a spray in sufficient quantities to obtain a

heavy even deposit of DDT. About $3\frac{1}{2}$ gallons of spray is required to treat all beds and the side walls of an ordinary 70-man barracks. Barracks so treated have been found to remain free from bedbugs for as long as 4 months. Smoking should be prohibited for 12 hours and all fires put out.

7-17 COCKROACHES.—*a. Control.*—All roaches are killed by adequate doses of DDT. The German roach is more difficult to kill with DDT than are most insects. Other roaches are relatively easy to kill. Five-percent DDT in kerosene, oil, or emulsion kills roaches by residual action but heavy applications are usually needed. The material should be sprayed around pipes, on table legs, in cracks, and in other areas frequented by roaches. Ten percent DDT in talc, as supplied in bulk, should not be diluted. It should be generously applied to cracks and other points inhabited by roaches. The practice of spraying followed immediately by dusting while the surface is still wet usually gives the most satisfactory results.

7-18 MITES (CHIGGERS, BEDBUGS, BETES ROUGES).—(1) *General.*—Mite larvae are blood-sucking parasites whose hosts include man, small rodents, rabbits, and other animals. These larvae may cause noneffectives in forces operating in the field (especially Southwest Pacific and Southeast Asia) through their ability to transmit scrub-typhus, a severe and debilitating disease. The efficiency of personnel may be materially affected by the severe itching and secondary infection resulting from bites of these parasites.

(2) *Characteristics.*—Mites are usually found breeding a few inches beneath the ground surface. The hatched larvae climb on grass and bushes and await an opportunity to attach themselves to a warm-blooded host. The adult mite does not feed on humans, but does return to debris to lay eggs.

(3) *Protection of personnel.*—(a) Clothing and leggings provide some protection.

(b) Dimethylphthalate applied to the skin protects for a few hours. It should be applied as a $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch barrier inside the duffs, waist and fly of the trousers; and inside the collars, cuffs, and front of shirt. It may also be applied to clothing as a wetting spray. Care should be

taken to avoid contact with mucous membranes.

(c) Dimethylphthalate-emulsion impregnation of clothing is preferred. Composition: Water, 92 percent; D. M. P., 5 percent; soap, 3 percent. Treatment requires 1.5 quarts of emulsion per uniform (including socks). Allow to dry before wearing. To avoid scrotal irritation do not treat shorts. Garments thus treated will remain miteproof under ordinary wear until laundering is necessary.

(4) *Eradication of breeding.*—(a) Clear underbrush, vines, and bushes from the area inhabited by troops. Burn or remove all debris. Scrape off vegetation and surface dirt with bulldozers. Apply flowers of sulfur (325-mesh) to the vegetation and ground with rotary dusters at the rate of 1 pound or more per 1,000 square feet (45 pounds per acre). Repeat weekly or more often in event of rain.

(b) Benzene hexachloride has given good results in area control of mites, but this material has not been adequately investigated with reference to toxicity to humans, and it has an objectionable odor. It should be used with caution. The application rate of 2 pounds per acre on light vegetation or 4 pounds per acre on heavy vegetation has proven satisfactory.

7-19 RODENT CONTROL.—(1) *General.*—The rodent is an ever present menace to operations in the field. Such rodents as rats, mice, and ground squirrels are reservoirs for plague, endemic typhus, tularemia, and many other debilitating diseases. When operations become more stable and permanent and semipermanent camps are established, the additional hazard of destruction of material must be considered. The distribution of rodents may be considered universal; hence, the problem of their control is faced during operation in any geographical location.

(2) *Control.*—An effective rodent-control program requires a knowledge of the species involved and their habits. This being established specific control measures may be taken. Such measures consist of—

(a) Elimination of food and shelter: The proper handling of food and prompt disposal of trash and garbage is essential. The bivouac and storage areas should be surveyed and all burrows

and other harborage destroyed. Food supplies should be stock-piled on elevated platforms.

(b) Ratproofing: All food stores should be packaged in ratproofed containers. When buildings are utilized, all doors should be self-closing and tight-fitting. All other openings in excess of $\frac{1}{2}$ inch should be closed with a material resistant to gnawing rodents or screened with $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch mesh hardware cloth.

(c) Trapping: For the control of rodents within the camp and storage areas, trapping is the method of choice. Trapping efforts should be concentrated in areas such as commissary stores, galleys, messing facilities, and garbage collection.

(d) Poison baits: Poison baits are the most effective means of destroying rodents. However, they are extremely dangerous to use around personnel and domestic animals and will not be considered as standing operating procedure except where trained and experienced personnel are available. Rodent control officers will be made available upon request in case of a national disaster such as fires, floods, earth-

quakes, etc. At other times the nearest command employing such an officer or the District concerned should be contacted.

(e) Fumigation should not be considered except under the most unusual circumstances.

(2) *Precautions.*—(a) Personnel engaged in rodent control work must protect themselves from unnecessary exposure to disease from ectoparasites while handling rodents. The wearing of gloves should be considered mandatory and the wearing of DDT impregnated clothing is highly desirable.

(b) Before a rodent control program is undertaken, particularly if such program is contemplated in areas where buildings and structures are being utilized, the first step is to thoroughly apply 5-percent DDT residual effect spray or 10-percent DDT dust in and around rodent harborage and burrows and along runways. This procedure will kill many wandering ectoparasites as well as those which will migrate from rodents killed in the ensuing program, thus breaking the chain of communication of disease from rodents through ectoparasites to man.

SECTION II

PERSONAL HYGIENE

	Par.	Page
Introduction.....	7-20	246
Importance of early medical treatment..	7-21	246
Causes of disease.....	7-22	246
Rules for avoiding disease.....	7-23	246
Vermin.....	7-24	249

7-20 INTRODUCTION.—Hygiene is the science of the preservation of health. Personal hygiene deals with the efforts each individual must put forth to keep in good physical, mental, and moral condition and with the precautions he must take to protect himself from disease. The body may be compared to a machine, a car, or a rifle for example, which must be kept clean, in excellent condition, adjusted, and used in such a way that its service will be long, honorable, and faithful, without danger to self or neighbor.

7-21 IMPORTANCE OF EARLY MEDICAL TREATMENT.—Just as a machine sometimes breaks down in spite of the best of care, so too does illness overtake man. If at any time a man does not feel perfectly well or believes that he may have contracted a disease, he should report at once to the sick bay. Many illnesses can be shortened or arrested and complications avoided by early and correct treatment. Self-treatment should never be attempted since by so doing the individual may not only harm himself, by postponing the right treatment, but may even become a source of danger to his comrades. "A person who treats himself has a fool for a patient!"

7-22 CAUSES OF DISEASE.—Most diseases are caused by tiny plants and animals so small that they can usually be seen only with a microscope. These disease-producing agents are commonly called germs. The usual ways in which germs gain entrance to the body are as follows:

(1) In food or drinking water or other liquids.

(2) In droplets of moisture or on particles of dust floating in the air breathed.

(3) Through the skin; the germs having been injected into the body by the bites of mosquitoes, flies, lice, ticks, or fleas, or introduced through cuts, scratches, or abrasions.

(4) By bodily contact with diseased persons, or with articles which they have contaminated.

7-23 RULES FOR AVOIDING DISEASE.—

a. General.—One of the primary duties of every man is to keep himself physically fit for duty. Much sickness results from persons ignorant or careless of simple rules of hygiene. The development of good habits of personal hygiene is essential for the good health of the individual and for the protection of his comrades.

b. Food.—Do not eat to excess. Food should be well chewed; not eaten in haste. It should be of wholesome quality and of good variety, including fruits and vegetables. In many foreign lands sanitation is poor and food prepared by the natives is likely to carry disease-producing germs. To be safe in this situation eat only food prepared in your own messes or in establishments approved by the medical officer. As a rule hot, well cooked, freshly prepared food can be considered safe. In hot weather cream-filled pastries and puddings should be avoided since these foods are frequently contaminated. Do not eat a heavy meal, immediately before a long march, swimming, other strenuous exertions, or prolonged exposure to the sun in hot weather.

c. Drinking water.—Drink plenty of water at intervals during the day but do not drink a large amount at one time, especially when overheated by exertion. Do not drink water which has not been certified by a medical officer unless it has been boiled or purified in a water sterilizing bag (Lyster bag). Water from this bag should be taken from a faucet into a cup or canteen. Dipping into the bag or putting the

lips to the faucet is prohibited. Salt taken in tablet form or added to water or food when sweating is profuse and prolonged aids in preventing heat exhaustion and cramps.

d. Mess gear.—Be sure that the mess kit, knife, fork, and spoon are thoroughly washed in warm, soapy water and rinsed in boiling water before and after they are used. The cleaned mess gear should be protected between meals from contamination by flies, roaches, dust, or rodents. As an added precaution the gear should be immersed in boiling water immediately before using it again.

e. Never drink from a utensil used by others.—Do not exchange pipes, musical instruments played with the mouth, gas masks, handkerchiefs, towels, or shaving outfits.

f. Clothing.—Wear clean clothing of proper type and weight for the climate and nature of work. Clothing should not fit tightly. Change shirts and underwear at least twice weekly; wash them with soap and dry in the sun if possible. If water is not available, clothing should be crumpled up, shaken well, and exposed to the sun and air. Change wet clothing, particularly shoes and socks, as soon as opportunity permits. Avoid resting in drafts when perspiring or while clothing is damp. Do not sit or lie directly on damp ground. The headdress must also provide protection for the back of the neck from the hot sun.

g. Bathing.—Keep the body clean. Bathe the entire body at least three times each week. Where bathing facilities are not available, scrub the body frequently with a wet, soapy cloth, paying particular attention to washing and thoroughly drying the arm pits, crotch, and feet. Fungus infections at these sites can often be avoided by dusting with standard foot powder after the drying.

h. Exercise and rest.—Exercise and rest are equally essential. Physical exercise keeps the muscles in tone and increases endurance. Exertion to the point of mild fatigue is wholesome; carried to the point of exhaustion, it is harmful. Rest is essential for restoring muscular and nervous energy. Sleep should be regular, undisturbed, and of sufficient duration to result in a refreshed feeling and relief from fatigue. If sleep fails to relieve the feeling of physical and

mental fatigue several nights in a row, the medical officer should be consulted.

i. Feet.—Proper care of the feet, and of shoes and socks, will prevent uncomfortable or even crippling conditions, such as infected blisters and severe fungus infections. The important points to be remembered are:

- (1) Properly fitted shoes and socks.
- (2) Clean socks and changes of shoes.
- (3) Frequent (daily) washing of feet followed by thorough drying and dusting with foot powder, particularly about and between the toes.
- (4) Toe nails trimmed straight across and kept clean. Never tear a nail.
- (5) Use of wooden clogs in shower rooms while in barracks.

The care of the feet, being a primary factor in marching ability, is considered in Chapter 8, to which reference should be made.

j. Care of the teeth.—Brush the teeth at least twice each day, one of these brushings to occur before going to bed. In cleaning the teeth, brush the inside and outside surfaces away from the gums and toward the cutting surfaces. Promptly remove particles of food from between the teeth, preferably by use of dental floss. Have the teeth inspected twice a year by the dental officer, or immediately for bleeding gum and pain.

k. Hands and fingernails.—Always wash the hands with soap and water immediately before meals and after using the toilet. Keep the fingernails clean and trimmed short and smooth. Never bite or tear the nails.

l. Hair.—Keep the hair clean, cut short, and trimmed. This makes for easier cleansing of the scalp, and less chance of infection in case of scalp or head wounds.

m. Bowel elimination.—Acquire the habit of having the bowels move regularly once each day or two, and at as nearly the same time as possible. The habitual use of laxatives is to be condemned. The occurrence of any marked change in bowel habits or bleeding from the rectum should be reported to the medical officer. Any food handler who develops "loose bowels" or "cramps" should immediately report to the medical officer.

n. Camp sanitation.—Do not soil the ground with stools or urine. Always use the latrine or

night urine can. Never throw pieces of food, cartons, or other refuse around the camp site or shelter. Such debris draws flies, rats, and other vermin.

o. Preparation of beds.—Prepare the beds before dark. In temporary camps or bivouacs, raise the beds if suitable material, such as grass, leaves, or boughs, can be obtained. Raincoats or ponchos can be used for ground sheets. Where mosquitoes are prevalent put up the net, see that it is free of holes and well tucked in. Kill any mosquitoes found inside before darkness falls. Bedding should be aired in the sunlight as often as practicable.

p. Medical attention.—Report without delay to the medical officer in case of diarrhea, persistent constipation, indigestion, or sudden onset of pain in the stomach with nausea or vomiting; under no circumstances treat yourself with a laxative or other medicine.

q. Contact with diseased persons.—Avoid all close contact with strangers and persons who appear ill unless duty requires it; if duty requires it, the medical officer will instruct you in the precautions to be taken for your protection. Practice and advise others to cover nose and mouth when sneezing or coughing. Avoid crowds when many people are having "colds" and sore throats. Spitting is unnecessary and spreads disease.

r. Avoid venereal diseases.—The venereal diseases are almost always contracted by sexual intercourse with an infected person. Only a laboratory examination can determine which person is infected and which is not. The venereal diseases can be severe and result in ill health and unhappiness for years. The only sure way to avoid venereal diseases is to abstain from sexual relation, in other words, by exercising continence. The use of alcohol to the point of intoxication is closely related to venereal disease in that while under its influence a person's better judgment is impaired and the will power to avoid dangerous exposure is destroyed. If continence has failed, report as soon as possible (at least within 2 hours after exposure) for prophylaxis. This treatment must be carried out thoroughly and the directions followed exactly if its maximum protective value is to be obtained.

s. Mental hygiene.—The mental attitude has a close relationship to health. The rules, regulations, and recommendations set up by the medical and sanitation officers in regard to immunization, reporting for sick call, malaria prevention, use of water, disposal of wastes, etc., are for the protection of the health of members of the service and should be conscientiously followed by all. The individual in the Navy can improve his personality and strengthen his character by cultivating those habits and thoughts which enable him to make an adequate adjustment to service life. A few suggestions will suffice. The well-balanced man carefully complies with rules and regulations designed for the protection of himself and his mates. His emotions do not rule his behavior. The many annoying and irritating situations which are constantly arising, he pushes aside without worrying or brooding over them, for he has found that upon looking back, they were but trifles. He never gives up when faced with a difficult problem or assignment, for he is certain that with hard work and study, a solution will be found.

One of the attributes of a healthy mind is tolerance of the opinion of others. To keep the mind in the best of health, one must work and be active. Every person, however, no matter how much he may be absorbed in what he is doing, should have interests outside of his occupation. Recreation and hobbies serve as mental tonics.

Finally a sense of humor, combined with a cheerful and friendly disposition, dispels distressing thoughts, relieves tension, and keeps us from taking ourselves and life too seriously.

t. Alcohol.—The use of alcoholic beverages while off duty or ashore is a personal problem for service personnel. However, the abusive use of alcohol is greatly to be condemned for under alcohol the brain centers that control reasoning, judgment, self-control, etc., are no longer under restraint. The result is a failure of judgment, failure of moral restraints, a weakening of self-respect, and a false-confidence in physical and mental ability. In this condition an individual falls an easy prey to those wishing to take advantage of him and is not capable of conducting himself in such a manner as to command respect or of following the simple rules of

personal hygiene so essential to his well-being.

7-24 VERMIN.—Vermin such as body lice, which live in the clothing rather than on the body, “crabs” (pubic lice) and head lice, are the result of lack of personal cleanliness. They produce itching, discomfort, and disturbed rest in the persons whom they infest. The body louse can transmit serious diseases. Men hav-

ing a persistent itching on the body or head or who see a louse on themselves or clothing should consult a medical officer at once. It is comparatively simple now to destroy them with DDT powder supplied by the Medical Department. A clean body and frequent change to clean clothes will in most cases avoid this infestation.

SECTION III

FIRST AID

A. WOUNDS, HEMORRHAGE, SHOCK, SPRAINS, DISLOCATIONS, AND FRACTURES

	Par.	Page
General.....	7-25	250
Treatment of wounds.....	7-26	250
Hemorrhage.....	7-27	251
Control of hemorrhage.....	7-28	251
Wound dressing.....	7-29	253
Shock.....	7-30	253
Sprains.....	7-31	253
Dislocations.....	7-32	253
Fractures.....	7-33	254

B. TRANSPORTATION OF SICK AND WOUNDED

General.....	7-34	255
Service litter.....	7-35	255
Improvised litters.....	7-36	256
Without litter.....	7-37	256

C. TREATMENT IN COMMON EMERGENCIES

Removal of foreign bodies.....	7-38	258
Poisonous bites and stings.....	7-39	259
Poisoning.....	7-40	259
Ivy or sumac poisoning.....	7-41	260
Gas.....	7-42	260
Freezing.....	7-43	261
Sunstroke.....	7-44	261
Heat exhaustion.....	7-45	261
Burns and scalds.....	7-46	261
Extinguishing burning clothing.....	7-47	261
Electric shock.....	7-48	261
Fainting.....	7-49	262
Epileptic fits.....	7-50	262
Intracranial (brain) injury.....	7-51	262

D. RESUSCITATION

Artificial respiration.....	7-52	262
-----------------------------	------	-----

A. WOUNDS, HEMORRHAGE, SHOCK, SPRAINS, DISLOCATIONS, AND FRACTURES

7-25 GENERAL.—*a. Definition.*—First aid is prompt emergency treatment given an injured person while awaiting regular medical attendance, or to prepare him for transportation to a medical facility.

b. Knowledge of first aid.—It is the duty of everyone to familiarize himself with the details of first aid, so that he may be able to give efficient help to the wounded and, in case of his own injury, to direct or assist those who come to his help. Efficiency in first aid can be attained only by thorough instruction and drill. To save life, someone on the spot must be able to render assistance to the injured.

c. What to do.—(1) *If you do not know exactly what to do.*—Leave the injured man alone, send for medical assistance; however, protect him from exposure, further injuries, and the inexperienced efforts of others.

(2) *If you are familiar with first-aid procedure.*—Send for medical assistance; meanwhile administer first aid. Keep cool, act quickly, be gentle, and do not attempt too much.

d. Prevention of injury.—“An ounce of prevention is worth a pound of cure”; hence, be so well drilled in the performance of your duty and so familiar with the hazards involved that injury to yourself and others may be avoided. The average injury is due either to carelessness or ignorance; both are avoidable.

7-26 TREATMENT OF WOUNDS.—

a. General.—A wound is any injury in which the skin is pierced or broken. Wounds are divided into incised, contused, lacerated, punctured, gunshot (including shell wounds), and stab wounds. These may vary from a very small punctured wound, to one caused by a bursting shell in which large amounts of soft tissue are destroyed, and severe hemorrhage is present. The immediate dangers to life from severe wounds are hemorrhage and shock. Another great danger from all open wounds is infection which delays healing and endangers life. First-aid treatment is, therefore, directed toward the treatment of hemorrhage and shock, if present and the prevention of infection. The care and promptness of general first-aid treatment and

the application of the first-aid dressing are of the utmost importance in influencing the final outcome of the case. It is better to leave a wound undressed and attempt no first-aid treatment than to do it carelessly or ignorantly.

b. Application of first-aid treatment.—Application of first-aid treatment to the wounded includes such of the following steps as are indicated:

(1) Expose the wound for examination and treatment by unbuttoning, unlacing, ripping, or cutting the clothing, shoes, leggings, or boots, being careful to avoid touching the wound with the fingers, clothing, or other objects.

(2) Control bleeding.

(3) Prevent infection by the application of a sterile dressing, preferably that from a first-aid packet.

(4) Take every precaution to prevent shock but if it occurs, treat it.

7-27 HEMORRHAGE.—There are three varieties of hemorrhage (bleeding) as follows:

a. Arterial.—The blood spurts from the artery with each pulsation of the heart and is bright red in color. This variety is the most dangerous because of the great amount of blood which may escape in a short time.

b. Venous.—The blood flows from the vein in a steady stream and is dark red in color.

c. Capillary.—The blood oozes through the wound from very small blood vessels. It is the least dangerous variety.

7-28 CONTROL OF HEMORRHAGE.

Hemorrhage is controlled by natural or artificial means as follows:

a. Natural means.—A blood clot forms in the wound, preventing the further escape of blood. Capillary hemorrhage usually stops this way.

b. Artificial means.—Venous and arterial, depending on the severity, usually require one or more artificial means as follows:

(1) *Elevation.*—The use of this simple means usually stops capillary hemorrhage of the limbs and may suffice for the control of slight venous and arterial hemorrhage of the arms, hands, legs, and feet.

(2) *Pressure of the fingers.*—For quick control of arterial hemorrhage, press upon the blood vessel between the wound and the heart.

Examples of finger pressure for control of arterial hemorrhage are as follows:

(a) *Scalp.*—Apply pressure with the tips of the fingers in front of the ear just above where the lower jaw can be felt working in its socket. A branch of the temporal artery crosses the temple on a line between the upper border of the ear and the upper border of the eyebrow. (See figs. 7, 8, and 11A.)

(b) *Neck and head.*—Press the thumb and fingers deeply into the neck in front of the strongly marked muscle which reaches from behind the ear to the upper part of the breast bone. (See figs. 7, 8, and 11B.)

(c) *Shoulder and armpit.*—Press the thumb deeply into the hollow behind the middle of the collar bone. This compresses the large subclavian artery. (See figs. 7 and 8.)

(d) *Arm or hand.*—Press outward against the bone just behind the inner border of the large muscle (biceps) of the arm. This compresses the brachial artery. (See figs. 7, 9, and 11C.)

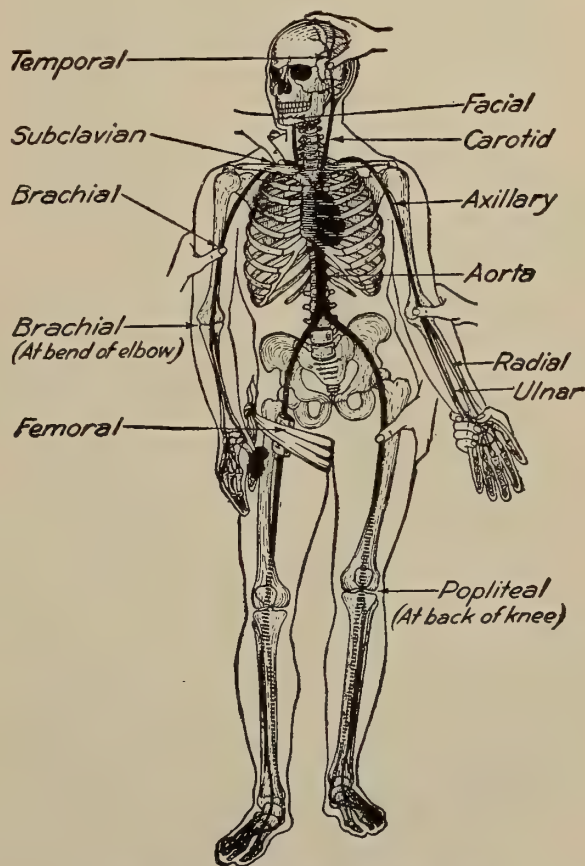


FIGURE 7.—Course of arteries and pressure points.

(e) *Thigh, leg, or foot.*—Press strongly with the thumbs at the upper part of the inside of the thigh where the large artery passes over the bone. This compresses the femoral artery. (See figs. 7, 10, and 11D).

(3) *Pressure bandage.*—The vast majority of hemorrhages are controllable by the proper application of the sterile dressing in the first-aid packet. The compress should be carefully applied being careful not to touch the wound or the inside of the packet with the fingers and it should be fairly tightly bound in place using the long ends of the dressing to tie it firmly. In the case of large wounds, a compress may be first packed into the wound and a second first-aid dressing used to secure it in position.

(4) *Tourniquet.*—If the hemorrhage is not controlled by the use of the pressure bandage, it will be necessary to apply a tourniquet. In the absence of the Navy standard elastic rubber tourniquet, a bandage, belt, handkerchief, cravat, or similar article may be used. In the extremities, the tourniquet is always applied above the elbow or knee (as the case may be). After tying the band loosely about the limb, a

stick or similar object is placed under the band and twisted until the desired degree of tightness is obtained and the hemorrhage is controlled.

(a) In the use of the tourniquet, the following precautions should be observed:

1. Never conceal the tourniquet with a bandage.

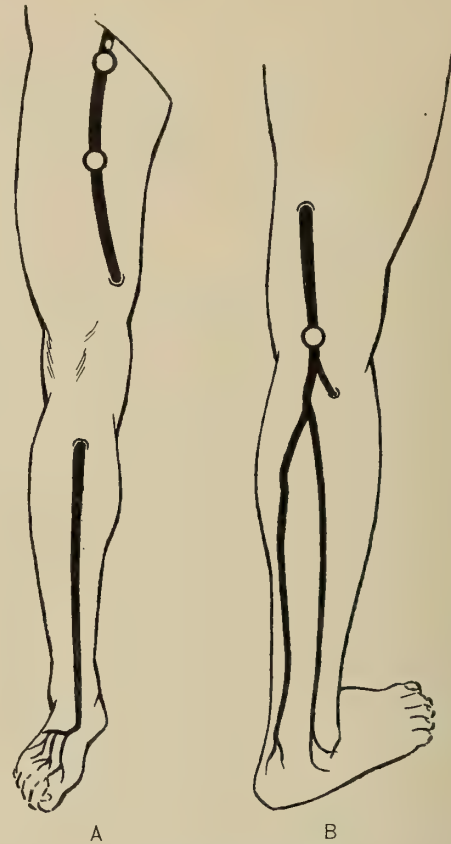


FIGURE 10.—Course of arteries and pressure points: Lower extremity; A, front view; B, back view.



FIGURE 8.—Course of arteries and pressure points: Head and neck.

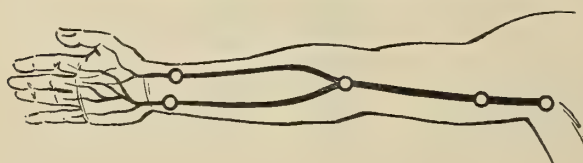


FIGURE 9.—Course of arteries and pressure points: Upper extremity.

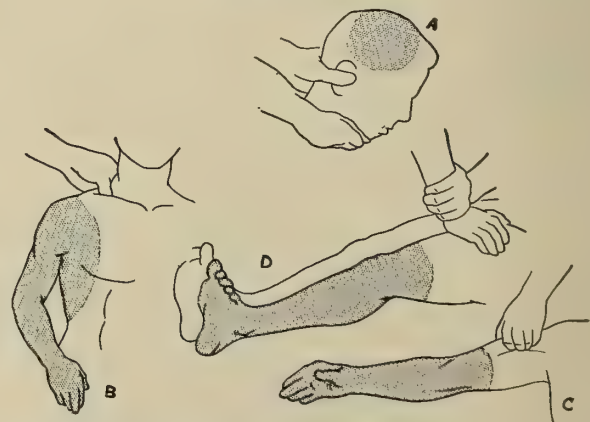


FIGURE 11.—Pressure points: A, temporal pressure point; B, carotid pressure point; C, brachial pressure point; D, femoral pressure point.

2. Attach a tag to the man if possible. Mark on this tag the hour and date when it was applied.

3. Loosen the tourniquet for a few minutes every half hour to allow restoration of the circulation in the affected limb.

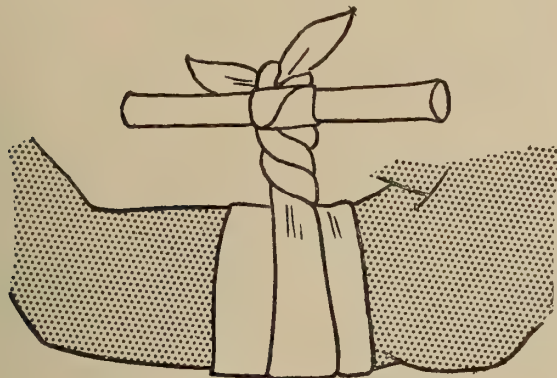


FIGURE 12.—Adjusting an improvised tourniquet.

7-29 WOUND DRESSING.—*a. Cleansing the wound.*—Cleansing of the wound except for the removal of gross objects which can be lifted out without touching the wound itself is inadvisable as is also the indiscriminate application of antiseptics such as idone, merthiolate, etc. Prevention of infection is of utmost importance and this is best accomplished by simply covering the wound with the sterile dressing. Proper cleansing will be accomplished under carefully controlled conditions after the patient has been removed to an area where surgical care is possible.

b. Application of the first-aid dressing.—Carefully remove the wrapper and without unfolding the compress or bandage, hold it by grasping the outside folds between the thumb and fingers. When ready to dress the wound, open the compress by pulling on the two rolls, being careful not to touch the inside of the compress with the fingers or anything else. Still holding one roll of the bandage in each hand, apply unpapered side of the compress to the wound, then wrap the bandage around the limb or part and tie the ends together or fasten with safety pins. The bandage may also be used as a sling if the arm is wounded; or it may be used to bind both legs together if one is injured.

7-30 SHOCK.—*a. General.*—Shock is a sudden, profound depression of the circulation

and nervous system which is aggravated and/or prolonged by pain or hemorrhage. The patient is pale, weak, and faint. The skin is cold and clammy, the pulse weak and rapid. The respiration is usually sighing.

b. Treatment.—The treatment of shock is threefold: (1) the control of hemorrhage, (2) the alleviation of pain (morphine, reduction of fractures, etc.), and (3) the administration of whole blood or blood substitutes (blood plasma, blood albumin, saline, and glucose, etc.). All three of these are of utmost importance although they may be augmented by lesser procedures such as keeping the patient warm and in a comfortable position, loosening of clothing, avoidance of unnecessary moving, etc. The administration of stimulants is ordinarily considered as second aid rather than first aid and is usually left to the judgment of the medical officer after the patient has been removed to an area where treatment other than first aid is possible.

Obtain the services of a medical officer as quickly as possible.

7-31 SPRAINS.—*a. General.*—A sprain is the straining or tearing, by a sudden twist or wrench, of the ligaments and capsule which surround a joint, resulting in the rupture of blood vessels with the escape of blood and serum (the liquid part of the blood) both around and into the joint.

b. Symptoms.—Pain, heat, and swelling at the seat of the injury, followed by discoloration of the skin. The ankle, wrist, knee, and elbow are most commonly sprained.

c. Treatment.—(1) Provide absolute rest of the part.

(2) *If treatment is begun immediately.*—Pack the joint in crushed ice until it is well chilled, then apply a pressure bandage. Repeat at intervals for 24 to 48 hours.

(3) *If treatment is begun after swelling has developed.*—Elevate the joint if possible and apply cold for a period of 24 to 48 hours.

(4) If necessary, a splint should be utilized to prevent the patient from using the joint. A sprained joint should be rested for a few days at least, often longer, depending upon the joint involved and the severity of the injury.

7-32 DISLOCATIONS.—*a. General.*—A dislocation is an injury to a joint, characterized by

a displacement of the head of the bone (a slipping out of its socket).

b. Symptoms.—First there is deformity; the joint has an unusual appearance. This is best seen by comparing the injured side with the well side. There is limited movement, pain, some shock, and usually swelling.

c. Treatment.—Send for a medical officer at once. The risk of doing injury by injudicious efforts to replace a dislocated bone is greater than that of delaying until the services of a medical officer can be obtained. Place the injured member in the position most comfortable for the person and cover the part with cold wet cloths while waiting for the medical officer.

7-33 FRACTURES.—*a. General.*—A fracture is a break in a bone. A *simple fracture* is one in which there is no wound extending from the broken bone through the skin. A *compound fracture* is one in which the wound extends from the broken bone through the skin and therefore is exposed to the dangers of infection from the outside. A *complicated fracture* is one where there is damage to adjoining large vessels, nerves, or muscles, which are contributing factors in causing shock. There are no injuries where the ultimate outcome is more influenced by the character of first-aid treatment than in fractures. Improper handling or immediate transportation may produce or aggravate shock and therefore deprive the patient of a chance of recovery. All fractures or suspected fracture cases should be handled gently. It is equally as important to know what not to do as to know what to do. In certain cases immediate movement or transportation is very detrimental and first-aid treatment should be administered and medical assistance brought to the patient rather than an attempt made to transport him to the medical officer. This is especially true of fractures of the head, chest, thigh, pelvis, or back, and where there is evidence of shock. In any event, depending on the severity and nature of the case, one or more of the general first-aid measures are usually indicated.

b. Symptoms.—These are pain, swelling, and deformity at the seat of injury. Unnatural mobility, loss of power, usually shortening of the limb, and “crepitus,” which is a sensation

of grating to be felt when the broken ends of the bones move against each other.

c. Treatment.—(1) *General.*—(*a*) *Simple fracture.*—Straighten the limb, if necessary, by gently but firmly pulling upon the end of the extremity. If the nature and severity of the fracture and the condition of the patient are such as to permit his walking or being immediately transported to medical assistance, fix or retain the limb in position by issue splints or other available material.

(*b*) *Compound fracture.*—The wounds or hemorrhage should be treated before the application of the splints. (See pars. 7-27, 7-28, and 7-29.)

(*c*) *Splints.*—Many common materials will do for immediate and temporary use as splints, such as shingles, sticks, pieces of boards, bayonet scabbards, chicken wire, a rain spout cut and fitted to the limb, or bunches of twigs. It is important that the splints be well padded on the side to be applied next to the skin and that they be securely bound by bandaging or by tying above and below the point of fracture, but not over it. (See fig. 13.) Pillows are excellent pads. The opposite leg can be used as a splint for the injured one. (See fig. 14.)



FIGURE 13.—Improvised splint of sticks and blanket.

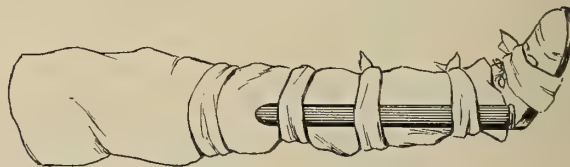


FIGURE 14.—Use of opposite leg and bayonet scabbard as splints.

(2) *Application of splints.*—(*a*) *Fracture of the forearm.*—With the forearm flexed to a right angle, thumb up, apply a splint to the inner surface, extending to the tips of the fingers, and another to the outer surface, extending to the wrist.

(*b*) *Fracture of the upper arm.*—Apply two splints, one in front, and the other behind, if the

lower part of the bone is broken; apply to the inner and outer sides if the fracture is in the middle or upper part; support the forearm by a sling.

(c) *Fracture of the collarbone.*—Flex forearm to a right angle in front of the body and use a sling.

(d) *Fracture of the leg or ankle.*—Apply two splints, one on the outside, the other on the inside of the limb, extending from just below the knee to beyond the foot.

(e) *Fracture of the thigh.*—Administer first-aid treatment to the injured person where he lies. Splinting should not be attempted by the inexperienced unless unusual circumstances make it necessary that the patient be moved some distance at once. Proper traction applied to the limb below the fracture is absolutely essential to provide effective first-aid treatment which will permit transportation without danger of producing further injury and shock. To do this requires a special splint applied by one experienced in its application. If the patient must be moved, carry gently as short a distance as possible, paying special attention to the support of the injured limb in the extended position.

(3) *Special fractures.*—(a) *Fracture of the skull.*—These injuries are very serious and should be treated by a medical officer as early as possible. Wound infection should be prevented by applying a first-aid dressing if necessary.

(b) *Fracture of the jaw.*—Tie a triangular bandage, or handkerchief, under the chin and over the top of the head.

(c) *Fracture of the ribs.*—Apply wide band of adhesive plaster or several narrow bands two-thirds around the chest while the arms are held over the head and the chest emptied of air; or snugly apply wide bandages.

(4) *Slings.*—Fractures of the upper extremities should be supported by a sling after splinting. Arm slings may be made of bandages, if available, or may be improvised from the ordinary clothing by using safety pins to fasten the coat sleeve to the front of the coat to support the arm. The coat flap may be used for the same purpose by pinning or by punching a hole through the lower edge of the flap and buttoning this to a coat button.

B. TRANSPORTATION OF SICK AND WOUNDED

7-34 GENERAL.—After the patient has been given first-aid treatment as prescribed in section III, it is imperative that certain precautions be observed in his removal or transportation, which can best be accomplished by use of the service litter or an improvised litter. If conditions or lack of personnel do not warrant the use of a litter, he may be transported without litter (carried).

7-35 SERVICE LITTER.—a. The transportation of patients for moderate distances is best done with the service litter.

b. *Placing a patient on a litter.*—The method of placing a wounded man on a litter is shown in figure 15. An overcoat, blanket, pack, or



FIGURE 15.—Placing a patient on a litter.

other suitable article may be used as a pillow. If the patient is faint, the head should be kept low. Difficulty in breathing due to wounds of the chest is sometimes relieved by judicious elevation of the shoulders. In wounds of the abdomen the best position is on the injured side, or on the back if the front of the abdomen is wounded, the legs being drawn up and supported. In injuries of an upper extremity the best position is on the back with the arm across the body or suitably placed by the side. In injuries of a lower extremity the patient should be on the back or inclined toward the wounded side. Patients should be handled carefully and as gently as possible to avoid jarring the injured part.

c. *Litter bearers.*—Bearers should not keep step. The handles of the litter should be carried at arm's length, and care should be taken

to keep the litter level, especially over uneven ground.

d. Direction of carry.—The patient should normally be carried feet first except in going up a steep incline; however, in case of fracture of the lower extremities, the feet should be first going up and the head first coming down to prevent the weight of the body from pressing on the injured part.

7-36 IMPROVISED LITTERS.—*a.* When the service litter is not available, an improvised litter may be fabricated. Many things can be used for this purpose, some of which are as follows:

(1) The usual improvisation is with blankets or shelter tents, and poles about 7 feet long. The blanket is spread on the ground. One pole is laid across the center of the blanket which is then folded over it. The second pole is placed across the center of the new fold and the blanket is folded over the second pole as over the first.

(2) Sacks, bags, or bedticks, by ripping the bottom or snipping off the corners, passing two poles through them and tying crosspieces to the poles to keep them apart.

(3) A shelter half, a blanket, piece of matting or carpet may be fastened to poles by tacks or twine.

(4) A litter may be prepared by turning two or three blouses inside out and buttoning them up, sleeves inside, then passing poles through the sleeves; the backs of the blouses form the bed. Jumpers may be similarly employed.

(5) Camp cots, window shutters, doors, benches, and ladders, properly padded.

(6) Rope, wire, or rawhide may be woven between poles and this network covered with a blanket.

(7) Hay, straw or leafy twigs, over a framework of poles and cross sticks.

b. An improvised litter should always be tested before placing a patient on it.

7-37 WITHOUT LITTER.—*a. The rifle seat.*—A good seat may be made by running the barrel of a rifle through each sleeve of an overcoat, turned inside out and buttoned up, sleeves inside, so that the coat lies back up, collar to the rear. The front bearer rolls the tail tightly around the barrels and takes his grasp over them; the rear bearer holds by the butts, trigger guards up.

b. Rifle-blanket seat.—A blanket being folded once from side to side, a rifle is laid transversely upon it across its center so that the butt and muzzle project beyond the edges; one end of the blanket is folded upon the other end and a second rifle laid upon the new center in the same manner as before. The free end of the blanket is folded upon the end containing the first rifle so as to project a couple of inches beyond the first rifle. The litter is raised from the ground with trigger guards up.

c. One bearer.—A single bearer may support a slightly injured man as shown in figure 16; lift and carry a patient in his arms as shown in figures 16 and 17; carry him pick-a-back as shown in figure 18; or across his shoulders. If the patient is helpless the last method is best. This is effected as follows:

(1) The bearer, turning patient on his face, steps astride his body, facing toward the patient's head and with hands under his armpits, lifts him to his knees; then clasping hands over abdomen, lifts him to his feet; next he seizes the right wrist of the patient with his left hand and draws the arm over the head and down



FIGURE 16.—Supporting a slightly injured man; also completion of first step, in arms carry.



FIGURE 17.—Final position, in arms carry.



FIGURE 18.—Pick-a-back carry.

upon his left shoulder as shown in figure 19; he now shifts himself in front, stoops, passes his right arm between the legs and grasps the patient's right wrist; with his left hand he grasps the patient's right hand and steadies it against his side as shown in figure 20; then he rises as shown in figure 21.

(2) In lowering the patient the motions are reversed. Should the patient be wounded in such a manner as to require these motions to be conducted from the right side instead of the left, the change is simply one of the hands, the motions proceed as directed substituting right for left and vice versa.

d. One bearer, tied-hands crawl or carry.—Enemy observation and resultant fire may render all of the above methods of carry im-

practicable, in which case the following methods should be used:

(1) Lay the man on his back and place yourself upon your back by his left side, your head in the same direction as his. Grasp his right arm above the elbow from its under side with your right hand. With your left hand grasp his same arm below the elbow, from the top side. (See fig. 22.) Then, keeping the right side of your body slightly upon the man's body and entwining your legs around his own, roll over to the left onto your stomach, pulling the man with you. The man is now lying face down on your back, with his left arm free and his right arm over your right shoulder. (See fig. 23.) After assuming this creeping or crawling position, draw the man's left arm under your left armpit. Secure both wrists of the man with any available material (cloth, bandage, neckerchief, handkerchief, etc.). You may then crawl with the man in this position (see fig. 24), or, when necessary, rise erect and climb ladders, or, if it is desired to carry him pick-a-back, reach behind and support his legs.

(2) This method may be varied by tying the man's wrists together first and then lying down on top of him and inserting your head and shoulders through the loop formed by the man's tied wrists. Should the man's right arm be injured, place yourself on your back by his right side and grasp his left arm instead of his right, substituting your right arm or hand where the left is indicated in the text, and vice versa.

e. Two bearers (see fig. 25).—The bearers take position, one man between the patient's



FIGURE 19.—Completion of first step, across-back carry.



FIGURE 20.—Completion of second step, across-back carry.



FIGURE 21.—Final position, across-back carry.



FIGURE 22.—Completion of first-step, tied-hands crawl.

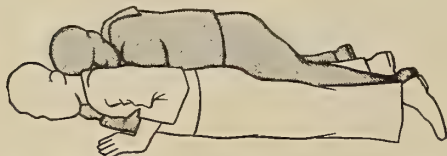


FIGURE 23.—Completion of second step, tied-hands crawl.



FIGURE 24.—Final position, tied-hands crawl.



FIGURE 25.—Two-bearer carry.

legs and one at his head, both facing toward his feet. The rear bearer, having raised the patient to a sitting posture, clasps him from behind around the body under the arms, the front bearer passes his hands from the outside under the flexed knees; both rise together. This method requires no effort on the part of the patient but is not applicable to severe injuries of the extremities, in which case a service or improvised litter should be used.

C. TREATMENT IN COMMON EMERGENCIES

7-38 REMOVAL OF FOREIGN BODIES.—

a. From the eye.—(1) Close the eye and allow the tears to accumulate. Do not rub the eye. After a few minutes open it again and the foreign body may be washed out by the tears. If the foreign body is under the lower lid, pull the lid down and have the patient roll the eye up and the foreign body may be easily brushed out by the corner of a clean handkerchief or a small swab made by wrapping a little cotton around the end of a match.

(2) If, as usual, the foreign body lies under the upper lid, grasp the eyelashes of the upper lid with the index finger and thumb of the left hand; place a match held in the right hand over the middle of the upper lid; then turn the lid over the match and the foreign body may be seen and removed.

(3) Where pieces of steel or emery have become embedded in the eyeball itself, they should be removed only by a surgeon.

(4) When acid is splashed into the eye, an alkaline preparation made from soda, magnesia, chalk, or lime should be used.

(5) When strong alkalies get into the eye weak acid solutions such as diluted vinegar or lemon juice are employed.

b. From the throat.—(1) *Symptoms.*—As the result of sudden interference with the breathing, the person clutches at his throat and gasps for air. There may be violent coughing or attempts to vomit; the face becomes blue.

(2) *Treatment.*—If another person is at hand, have him go or telephone for the nearest medical officer, notifying him of the nature of the accident. In the meantime attempt to dislodge the foreign body by slapping the back vigorously between the shoulder blades. If this is not successful, hold the patient by his feet with the head down and have someone slap his back between the shoulder blades.

(3) *When swallowed.*—When dangerous bodies have been swallowed, do not give an emetic or cathartic, for such treatment would only make matters worse. Make the patient eat freely of bread and potatoes in order that the foreign body may be surrounded by a mass of

soft material and in that way be carried safely through the bowels.

c. From the ear.—Foreign bodies in the ear, including insects, are best removed by gentle syringing with warm water (if a syringe is available) or by pouring water into the ear. Toothpicks, matches, etc., should not be used as serious injury to the ear may result. If the foreign body is not easily removed summon a doctor. Water should not be used to remove object which might swell in the ear.

7-39 POISONOUS BITES AND STINGS.—*a. Snake bites.*—(1) The rattlesnake, copperhead, and water moccasin are the most common poisonous snakes of North America. They may be readily identified by the following characteristics: Pit or depression between the eyes and nostrils; heart-shaped heads; thick bodies; teeth arranged in two rows; and two fangs, one on each side, outside of the teeth in the front part of the upper jaw. If the bite shows wounds from two rows of teeth and two fangs, it is that of a poisonous snake. (See fig. 26.) A single puncture usually means a fang prick. The teeth in the nonpoisonous snakes are arranged in four rows and the bite shows four punctures. (See fig. 27.)



FIGURE 26.—Imprint of poisonous snake.



FIGURE 27.—Imprint of nonpoisonous snake.

(2) *Symptoms.*—The bite of a poisonous snake causes great pain attended by rapid swelling, much depression and weakness, and followed quickly by death in some cases unless treatment is promptly given.

(3) *Treatment.*—(a) First-aid treatment of snake bites should be directed toward preventing the passage of the poison into the general blood circulation. Snake venom acts quickly, and, therefore, first-aid measures must be applied immediately. To prevent absorption of the venom, apply a tourniquet between the bite and the heart. Loosen tourniquet periodically as directed in paragraph 7-28 (4) (a). Make cross-cut incisions through the bite and also into the surrounding swollen tissue. Then get the poison out of the wounds by sucking blood from the cuts. This is the most important part of the treatment. Venom can be extracted by suction as late as 3 to 7 hours after a bite; therefore, suction should be continued. Alcohol, kerosene, permanganate of potash, and empirical remedies are useless. Cauterizing agents are harmful. Be sure to keep the patient quiet and take steps to prevent shock. If shock develops, treat as outlined in paragraph 7-30.

(b) *Insect bites and stings.*—Bites from scorpions and spiders and stings from bees, wasps, and similar insects are treated by applying locally a solution of ammonia or soda.

(c) *Animal bites.*—First-aid treatment for ordinary wounds may be administered, but medical advice should be sought as soon as possible as the bite might have been from an animal with or suspected of having rabies, in which case the wound should receive special treatment.

7-40 POISONING.—*a.* The following circumstances may indicate that poison has been taken:

(1) Sudden sickness after eating, drinking, or taking medicine.

(2) The person may have been sick, despondent, or has talked of suicide.

(3) The presence of a bottle or glass in which some poison remains.

(4) The person becomes frightened and tells that he has taken poison.

(5) Frequently the odor of poison can be detected on the person's breath.

b. In all cases of poisoning, send for medical assistance immediately and, during the interim, administer first-aid treatment as prescribed below.

c. Caustic (acid or alkaline).—The lips, tongue, or mouth show evidence of chemical burn. In case of carbolic acid poisoning, there is a strong carbolic odor. Do not attempt to produce vomiting, but administer the proper antidote, if known, or olive oil, cottonseed oil, castor oil, or milk.

d. Noncaustic.—If there is no evidence near the mouth of caustic injuries, first administer a tablespoonful of dry mustard or common salt in a cup of warm water to produce vomiting; after nausea has subsided, administer salts, castor oil, milk, beaten up raw eggs, or flour and water in moderate quantities; later, after the poison has been evacuated, administer strong coffee, tea, or aromatic spirits of ammonia as a stimulant. Keep the patient warm and rub the limbs toward the body to increase circulation.

e. Opium or morphine.—The pupils of the eyes are pin-point in size; breathing is shallow and slow; the person is very drowsy and, later, sleeps so soundly that it is almost impossible to arouse him. Keep him awake and on the move. Watch his respiration and, if it shows signs of failure or if it stops, administer artificial respiration. (See par. 7-52.)

f. Alcohol.—There is a strong odor of alcohol, the pupils of the eyes are dilated, eyeballs red but not insensitive to touch, and the face usually flushed. In severe cases administer a tablespoonful of dry mustard or common salt in a cup of warm water to produce vomiting. A teaspoonful of aromatic spirits of ammonia in a cup of water may help sober a drunken person. An ordinary case does not require any particular treatment. If unconscious, the condition may be due to brain injury and frequently the two conditions occur together. Examine for the odor of alcohol, and look for evidence of injury to head or body, inequality of pupils, and loss of use of arms or legs.

g. Wood Alcohol.—This poison may cause total blindness. Administer a tablespoonful of dry mustard or common salt in a cup of warm water to produce vomiting, and keep the patient warm.

7-41 IVY OR SUMAC POISONING.—

a. Symptoms.—This form of poisoning is quite common. It is a local irritation and inflammation of the skin caused by contact with the

leaves of the poisonous plant. Within a few hours there is a reddening and itching of the skin, which becomes inflamed and swollen, blisters and even pustules often developing.

b. Treatment.—First scrub the part coming into contact with the ivy or sumac with soap and water to remove the poison. If available, a three-percent solution of potassium permanganate in water is an excellent wash and should be applied to all exposed surfaces. A solution of ferrous sulphate in water is just as effective. After the skin inflammation has developed the parts should be washed each day with lime-water or boric-acid solution, and then zinc oxide ointment, carbolized vaseline, or a solution of Epsom salts applied.

7-42 GAS.—*a. Poisoning.*—If poisoned by gases such as illuminating, charcoal, motor exhaust, or mine, remove patient to the open air and apply artificial respiration (see par. 7-52) and warmth.

b. Tear gases.—Wash out the eyes with boric-acid solution, weak baking-soda solution, or limewater. **Do not bandage the eyes.**

c. Lung irritants.—Loosen the clothing and make the patient lie down and remain quiet. Use a litter or other means of transportation if necessary to move him.

d. Vesicants (blistering gases).—Give the patient a complete bath with liberal use of soap and a change of clothing as soon as circumstances permit. Contaminated clothing is a source of danger, and should be neutralized with an alkaline solution. Wash out the eyes with boric-acid solution and apply weak baking-soda to the affected parts; have the patient lie down and remain quiet; and apply warmth.

e. Rules for treatment of injuries from gases used in warfare.—(1) Wear mask and gloves, if possible, when handling a gassed man. If gloves are not worn, wash hands with soap and water following the handling of such cases; or better, rub them with dry lime.

(2) Remove the patient's equipment, but not his mask if the air is permeated with gas.

(3) If possible, gas casualties should be kept separated from other casualties. They should be removed from woods or low ground to knolls or hillsides. Do not carry them into dugouts or cellars; gas being heavier than air seeks the

lower levels. Do not allow badly gassed cases to walk.

(4) Do not bandage the eyes if they are affected.

(5) More detailed instructions, including the latest methods in handling gas casualties, will be furnished by the ship's gas officer and the medical officer.

7-43 FREEZING.—*a. Symptoms.*—The symptoms of frostbite are cold in the part, pain, then loss of sensation. The part affected becomes white or bluish white.

b. Treatment.—(1) The part affected should not be warmed before the fire but rubbed with snow or with a cloth dipped in cold water wrung dry. After the part has been rubbed well, dry it thoroughly and smear it with grease. If the symptoms continue, the part will become swollen and change color. If this occurs it is dangerous and medical attention is necessary.

(2) When a man becomes unconscious from cold, if possible carry him into a room without a fire, remove the clothing and rub vigorously with snow or with a wet cloth until signs of returning circulation are observed. When warmth and consciousness return, give him warm tea, cover him up warmly, and let him remain quiet.

7-44 SUNSTROKE.—*a. Symptoms.*—The face is flushed, skin hot and dry, breathing labored, pulse rapid, and the heat of body great. The patient may be unconscious.

b. Treatment.—Place him in the shade and if ice is available place a pack on the head. Strip clothing off patient, cover with a sheet, sprinkle water on sheet and fan sheet vigorously.

7-45 HEAT EXHAUSTION.—*a. Symptoms.*—This is a condition of great depression of the system due to excessive or prolonged exposure to heat. It often begins with dizziness, nausea, and vomiting. The skin is cool and moist, the pulse feeble and fluttering, perhaps imperceptible, and the patient greatly depressed though he may not be unconscious.

b. Treatment.—Apply heat to feet and abdomen or place in tub of water above body temperature. Salt should be added liberally to drinking water of men perspiring freely for prolonged periods to prevent heat exhaustion, cramps, and diarrhea.

7-46 BURNS AND SCALDS.—*a.* Burns are caused by dry heat such as flame, hot metal, and electric current. Scalds are caused by moist heat such as hot water or steam. Burns are also caused by acids or alkalis.

b. Treatment.—(1) *General.*—Remove the clothing by cutting or ripping. Do not pull it off. Do not break the blisters nor prick them even if large. Take steps to prevent shock or treat it if present. (See par. 7-30.).

(2) *Burns and scalds.*—Protect the burn or scald with a dry sterile dressing or a vaseline impregnated dressing if one is available.

(3) *Acids.*—Flush the parts with water; then apply baking or washing soda and water, limewater, or soapsuds; after the acid has been neutralized, treat the burn as in subparagraph (2) above. Burns from carbolic acid (phenol) should be washed with alcohol.

(4) *Alkalis.*—Wash the parts with water; then apply dilute vinegar or lemon juice; after the alkali has been neutralized, treat the burn as in subparagraph (2) above.

(5) *Sunburn.*—Treat in the same manner as other mild burns.

7-47 EXTINGUISHING BURNING CLOTHING.—*a.* If your own clothing catches fire, do not run, as this but fans the flames. Lie down and roll up tightly in a coat, blanket, or anything at hand that will smother the flames, leaving only the head out. If there is nothing at hand with which to wrap up, lie down and roll over slowly, beating out the fire with hands at the same time.

b. If another person's clothing catches fire, throw him to the ground and, standing at his head, smother the fire with a coat, blanket, etc., held down with the foot at one corner. Whatever is used should be thrown toward the feet of the person thus sweeping the flames away from yourself and the face of the victim.

c. The air close to the deck is comparatively free from smoke, hence when unable to breathe, a rescuer should crawl along the floor with head low, dragging anyone who has been rescued behind him. A wet handkerchief or cloth tied over the mouth and nostrils minimizes the danger of suffocation.

7-48 ELECTRIC SHOCK.—*a. Symptoms.*—Persons suffering from such injuries are usually unconscious; the pulse is feeble and irregular

and the breathing is slow and faint. The parts of the body that have come in contact with a live wire are burned and blistered.

b. Treatment.—(1) The most important thing to do is to remove the person from contact with the wire or electric machinery. This is always dangerous and should not be attempted until some means of insulation is available. The hands should be protected with rubber gloves, a rubber blanket, or several thicknesses of silk or dry clothing. The rescuer should be further insulated by standing on a rubber mat, pane of glass, or dry board.

(2) The treatment of electric shock is the same as for ordinary shock following an injury or accident. (See par. 7-30.) The heart and respiration should be stimulated, the body kept warm by the application of heat, and artificial respiration used if indicated. (See par. 7-52.) Patients who are likely to recover will show signs of life within 25 minutes; however, treatment should be continued for a longer period.

(3) The treatment of electric burns is the same as for ordinary burns. (See par. 7-46.)

7-49 FAINTING.—*a. Cause.*—This condition may result from injury, slight or severe bleeding, exhaustion, and emotional disturbance. It is directly caused by too little blood in the brain.

b. Treatment.—Place the patient upon his back with the head lowered and the feet elevated. Loosen the clothing. Fresh air should be provided by preventing crowding around the patient, by opening the doors and windows, or by taking the patient into the open. Apply cold water to the face and let him inhale smelling salts (ammonia).

7-50 EPILEPTIC FITS.—*a. Symptoms.*—During an epileptic fit the patient frequently utters a peculiar cry before falling, immediately becomes unconscious, falls, and has convulsions, jerking the arms, legs, and body. The face becomes deathly pale, the eyes roll and are turned upward. There may be foaming at the mouth and if the tongue is bitten the foam is bloody. Nothing can be done to stop the fit after it has begun.

b. Treatment.—Lay the person on his back and control movements which might cause injury. Place a folded towel or other convenient

wedge between the teeth so that the tongue will not be bitten. The convulsions usually last only a few minutes and the person falls into a deep sleep which should not be interrupted.

7-51 INTRACRANIAL (BRAIN) INJURY.—

a. Symptoms.—Blows on the head may cause concussion or compression of the brain. The patient becomes pale, feels weak and dizzy, has a headache, and frequently is nauseated and vomits. Unconsciousness may follow. If the blow is severe unconsciousness may occur immediately. If there is bleeding or fluid running from the nose or ears the skull has probably been fractured. Unconsciousness may occur, particularly in elderly persons, without any history or evidence of a blow on the head. This is due to a rupture of a diseased blood vessel of the brain and brain hemorrhage (apoplexy). These conditions need not be differentiated because the treatment is the same.

b. Treatment.—Keep patient quiet, protect from exposure, apply heat to feet and abdomen if patient is chilled. Keep head elevated and cool by applying cool cloths or an ice pack. Do not give stimulants.

D. RESUSCITATION

7-52 ARTIFICIAL RESPIRATION.—When respiration has ceased or has been inhibited from any cause, it will be necessary to administer artificial respiration. There are several accepted methods but the best and probably the least dangerous is the prone pressure or Schaefer's Method. No reliance should be placed upon any special mechanical apparatus, as it is frequently out of order and often not available when most needed. The prone pressure method of artificial respiration is as follows: Lay the patient face downward on a blanket or clothing spread out flat with the head turned to one side. The arm on the side toward which the face is turned is extended beyond the head, the other is bent at the elbow and the hand of the forearm placed beneath the head. The operator kneels astride of both or of one of the patient's thighs, facing toward the head and places the palms of his hands on the lower part of the thorax, the little fingers touching the lowest ribs and the ends of the fingers just out of sight. (If only one thigh

is straddled it should be the one on the side toward which the patient's face is turned so that his face can be easily observed.) Then, keeping the arms straight, the operator swings his body slowly forward causing the hands to press upward and inward. This compresses the abdomen and the lower part of the thorax, forces out the air in the lungs and produces an

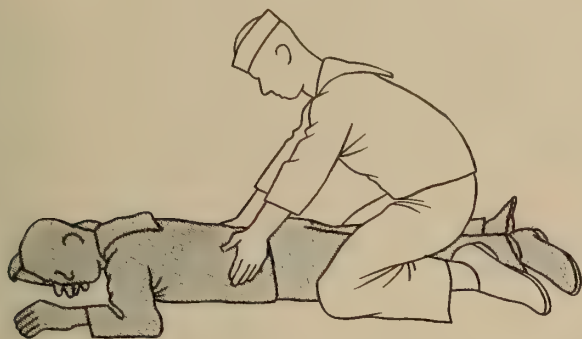


FIGURE 28.—Artificial respiration, ready to apply pressure.



FIGURE 29.—Artificial respiration, pressure applied.



FIGURE 30.—Artificial respiration, pressure released.

NOTE. Figures 28, 29, and 30, by courtesy of the American Red Cross.

expiration. At the end of the forward swing the operator's shoulders should be directly above the heels of his hands. Hold the pressure momentarily and then quickly remove it by swinging backward to the original position, which permits the thorax to expand and produces inspiration. After a wait of a couple of seconds swing forward again. The alternate compression and release movements together should take about 4 or 5 seconds and should be repeated rhythmically 12 to 15 times a minute. As an aid in timing the movements the operator may repeat the following words to himself: "Forward slow, hold it, swing back, wait a second."

In swinging backward the operator's hands should be removed from the patient, and he should adjust his position so that he can easily maintain his balance during the movements. The patient's mouth should be cleared of any obstruction such as chewing gum or tobacco, false teeth, or mucus so that there is no interference with the entrance and escape of air. To keep the patient warm during artificial respiration is most important and it may be necessary to cover him with blankets and work through them, as well as to apply hot-water bottles, hot bricks, etc.

Artificial respiration may be required in those persons apparently drowned; asphyxiated by gases, fumes, or noxious vapors, and anaesthetics; electric shock; shock or collapse; freezing or exposure to extremes of heat or cold; cases of poisoning, etc.; in other words, in all cases in which breathing is temporarily suspended. The symptoms by which the necessity for artificial respiration may be recognized are: Cyanosis (blueness of the skin and membranes); suspension of respiration; or shallow breathing in some cases of poisoning. Artificial respiration should be continued for at least 4 hours without interruption or until the patient is pronounced dead by a medical officer.

a. Treatment for a person apparently drowned.—Every minute and second counts, so waste no time. Have bystanders move away to give the victim all the air possible. Loosen clothing about neck, chest, and abdomen. With handkerchief or towel in hand, gently swab out the mouth and throat to remove mud

or mucus. Turn the patient over, face downward, place the hands under the abdomen, one on either side, and lift the patient, in an endeavor to drain the lungs and abdomen, and by making firm pressure upon the loins, continue the efforts to expel the water from the lungs and stomach. If the individual then does not breathe, proceed immediately with artificial respiration. It is well at the same time to try to stimulate respiration by having an assistant hold ammonia or smelling salts to the nostrils. Recovery from drowning has occurred where persons have been submerged

for some minutes; the statements of observers as to the length of time of immersion can never be accepted, as in emergencies of this sort minutes seem like hours. When breathing has been reestablished, remove wet clothing and treat the shock.

b. Treatment for a person asphyxiated by hanging or by strangulation.—Promptly remove any constriction from the neck and also clothing from around the chest. Attempt to excite breathing by dashing cold water on the face and body; if this fails, proceed with artificial respiration.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 8

MARCHES, SECURITY ON THE MARCH, AND OUTPOSTS

CHAPTER 8

MARCHES, SECURITY ON THE MARCH, AND OUTPOSTS

Sections II through V, inclusive, of this chapter are based on Field Service Regulations, Operations, United States Army, FM 100-5; Infantry Battalion, United States Army, FM 7-20; Rifle Company, Infantry Regiment, United States Army, FM 7-10; and the Marine Rifle Squad in Combat, Marine Corps Schools, MCS 3-26.

	Par.	Page
Section I. MARCHES.....	8-1	269
II. ADVANCE GUARDS.....	8-19	273
III. REAR GUARDS.....	8-31	277
IV. FLANK GUARDS.....	8-34	278
V. OUTPOSTS.....	8-37	279

SECTION I

MARCHES

	Par.	Page
General principles.....	8-1	269
To train troops to march.....	8-2	269
Preparations prior to the march.....	8-3	269
Distribution of troops.....	8-4	269
Medical personnel.....	8-5	269
March formation (route column).....	8-6	269
Forming the column.....	8-7	269
Start of the march.....	8-8	270
Length of the march.....	8-9	270
Rate of march.....	8-10	270
Halts.....	8-11	270
Conduct of march.....	8-12	270
Meals on the march.....	8-13	271
Water discipline.....	8-14	271
Care of feet.....	8-15	271
Care of troops.....	8-16	272
Obstacles, stream crossings, and causes of delay.....	8-17	272
Forced marches.....	8-18	272

8-1 GENERAL PRINCIPLES.—*a.* A successful march is one that places the troops at their destination at the proper moment and in the best possible condition.

b. The marching efficiency of a unit is judged by the amount of straggling and elongation, and the condition of the men at the end of the march.

8-2 TO TRAIN TROOPS TO MARCH.—To accustom men to the fatigue of bearing arms and equipment and to train them in march discipline, troops should be taken on training marches and given systematic exercises to develop their physiques.

8-3 PREPARATIONS PRIOR TO THE MARCH.—Each company and platoon commander inspects his unit before the march and assures himself that arms, clothing, and equipment are as prescribed, canteens filled, and packs properly made up.

8-4 DISTRIBUTION OF TROOPS.—*a.* Elements are distributed in accordance with the requirements of security (see secs. II, III, and IV) and their probable order of going into combat.

b. The position of units in column is ordinarily changed daily so that each, in turn, leads.

8-5 MEDICAL PERSONNEL.—A medical officer must march with a section of the medical detachment at the rear of the column to be able to examine and treat disabled men. The sick and injured should be tagged and treated, and the unit commander concerned informed of the action taken in each case.

8-6 MARCH FORMATION (ROUTE COLUMN).—*a.* The usual march formation is route column (column of twos or threes). In peaceful areas the commander and headquarters unit of each organization (platoon, company, etc.) march at the head of their organization.

b. The elements of the column cover in file and dress toward the side of the guide.

c. In hostile areas the commander and headquarters unit of each organization (platoon, company, etc.) usually march at the head of the main body of their organization preceded by such advance guard elements as are required by the situation. (See sec. II for advance guards.)

8-7 FORMING THE COLUMN.—*a.* To form the column for a march the commander issues the necessary orders (march order.)

b. The march order includes the following information:

- (1) The object and destination of the march.
- (2) The distribution of the troops and order of march of the main body.
- (3) Special security measures.
- (4) The initial or starting point (usually on the route of march).
- (5) The hour the head of the leading unit clears the initial point.

c. Ordinarily, a march column is formed by the arrival of component units at an initial point according to their prescribed order of march in the column.

d. When necessary, the movement of each unit is regulated by prescribing the hour at which its head reaches the initial point. Units arriving at the initial point before the time designated, halt until the prescribed hour for their passage.

8-8 START OF THE MARCH.—Canteens should be filled the night before the march. The sick and physically unfit should be eliminated at morning sick call. When men fall in, there should be no delay in starting; standing around is especially fatiguing. The sanitary officer and a police detail remain a few minutes after the camp is cleared to see that waste and litter is disposed of, fires put out, latrines filled, and that the camp site is left in a clean and sanitary condition.

8-9 LENGTH OF MARCH.—On marches of more than 1 day's duration, the first march of unseasoned foot troops should not exceed 6 or 8 miles. The distance is progressively increased 1 to 2 miles a day up to the normal march of seasoned troops, in order to accustom them to marching and carrying the pack. Under average conditions 10 to 12 miles constitutes a day's march for large forces, while smaller forces may march 12 to 15 miles in a day.

8-10 RATE OF MARCH.—The marching rate should be slow until the body is warm enough for muscular action to be most efficient. The average rate should not be more than 3 miles per hour, excluding halts, or $2\frac{1}{2}$ miles in 50 minutes. This is the most economical rate for experienced men; for unseasoned men and for long hikes the most economical rate is somewhat slower, due primarily to longer rest periods.

8-11 HALTS.—*a.* A halt of about 15 minutes should be made about 45 minutes after the start. This permits the men to adjust shoe-laces, rearrange packs, attend to the calls of nature and, in general, remedy any faults which might affect their marching ability. Succeeding halts of 10 minutes each are made every 50 minutes, except the noon halt for dinner which is for 1 hour.

b. During rest periods men should sit or lie down so as to take the weight of the equipment off the shoulders. Equipment is not removed unless directed, but belts may be loosened, if

necessary, and equipment readjusted so that packs and belts do not sag. Halts should be made in cool and shady places, protected from strong winds, convenient to places where men can attend to the calls of nature. Construction of shallow trenches will suffice for this purpose.

c. Units of a marching column execute the hourly halts and resume marching simultaneously, regulating the time by the watch. Units are not closed up nor is a change of gait permitted to gain or lose distance just prior to such halts.

d. When the column is halted for any reason other than the hourly halt, the commander halts the leading element. Other elements close to normal distance before halting.

e. Troops are informed of the length of each halt so that they can take full advantage of it.

f. The commander of each unit gives the preparatory signal for the resumption of the march shortly before the end of the rest period.

g. It is desirable to arrive at the end of the march as early in the day as practicable so that camp may be made during daylight, thus providing maximum rest for the troops; accordingly, long halts during the day are not made unless required by special conditions. On marches exceeding 15 miles, or when necessary to avoid excessive midday heat, halts of from 1 to 4 hours are justified.

h. Halts are not made in or near towns or villages except to procure water or supplies; men remain in column, details being sent for what is required.

8-12 CONDUCT OF THE MARCH.—

a. Strict march discipline must be maintained by units while on the march. March discipline is the observance and enforcement of the rules of good marching, especially as relates to the position of units in the column and the position and conduct of individuals.

b. On the march, troops keep to the right of the road as far as practicable, leaving the left side free. Even on narrow roads, space should be left for messengers to pass freely along the column. When roads are sandy, muddy, or very dusty, or when both sides of the road provide concealment from air observation, or when attack by hostile combat aviation is probable, it may be advisable to divide the column so that troops march along both sides

of the road, leaving the middle clear for other traffic.

c. Distances are maintained between units to minimize the effects of their varying march rates.

d. Men are not permitted to leave the immediate vicinity of their unit during halts without the specific authority of an officer of their unit. If the condition of the ground permits, they may be instructed to sit or lie down.

e. A petty officer marches at the rear of each platoon and is charged with keeping the unit closed up and with the prevention of straggling. An officer marches at the rear of each company and is charged with the same task.

f. Riflemen sling their rifles or carry them at the right or left shoulder, keeping the muzzles well elevated so as not to endanger or interfere with other men.

g. As a rule, troops on the march pay no compliments; individuals out of ranks salute when they address, or are addressed by, a superior officer. The march is habitually at route step, permitting men to accommodate their step to their physique. To combat monotony, it is advisable occasionally to march in step for short distances.

h. Tall men at the head of the column are apt to set a pace difficult for short men at the rear of the column. As marching at the head of the column is easier, the order of march should be reversed from time to time. If men ahead gain distance or slow up, each individual changes the length of his steps so as to gradually regain his position. Sudden increases in gait or sudden stops are avoided.

i. Troops may be permitted to talk or sing during the march, unless the tactical situation dictates otherwise.

8-13 MEALS ON THE MARCH.—Units should not be halted for the purpose of preparing the midday meal. Emergency field rations should be issued to the troops prior to the start of the march. Upon arrival in camp, kitchens are set up and a hot meal, the main meal of the day, is prepared and served.

8-14 WATER DISCIPLINE.—*a.* To replace the fluids lost by evaporation, a definite quantity of water must be consumed. Under aver-

age conditions a man will lose 1 pint of water each hour (including halts).

b. Trained men can lose 6 pints and untrained men 2 pints of water without serious discomfort. Consequently, men should not resort to their canteens until they have lost at least 2 pints by evaporation.

c. Under average conditions the first drink of water should be taken after about 2 hours of marching. The man should then sip slowly one half the contents of his canteen (1 pint) and, thereafter 1 pint each hour. On hilly or muddy roads and under tropical conditions this allowance should be materially increased.

d. In addition to what he drinks from his canteen, a man consumes a pint or more of water with each meal.

e. Experienced men instinctively determine the amount of water required; while the raw recruit is apt to "water log" his tissues, sweat profusely, and tire easily.

f. Smoking tends to increase thirst and should be limited to rest periods, or be prohibited during the march.

g. It is most important that only pure water be used for drinking. (See ch. 7.)

8-15 CARE OF FEET.—The most important factor in marching ability is the care of the feet, important considerations of which are as follows:

a. Properly fitted, well broken in, regulation shoes, in good state of repair, should be worn in the field. Other types of shoes are primarily responsible for callouses, corns, blisters, abrasions, tender and sore feet.

b. Neat's-foot oil or dubbin should be heavily applied and rubbed into the soles and welts to preserve and partially waterproof them; but lightly applied and well kneaded into the uppers to preserve and soften them. Too much oil on the uppers makes them impermeable and prevents the moisture of the foot from evaporating.

c. Wet shoes should not be placed too near a fire, as quick drying stiffens the leather and causes it to deteriorate quickly.

d. Shoe cavities should be examined for protruding nails and wrinkles. Broad laces should be used; the tongue should be smooth and lie evenly under the laces. Shoes should be laced sufficiently to hold the heel in place and prevent the foot from shifting forward in the shoe.

e. Woolen socks (heavy or light) should be worn for marching. Cotton socks should never be worn in the field unless specifically ordered by a medical officer.

f. Socks with darns or holes should never be worn on a march and should be large enough to permit free movement of the toes but not so loose as to permit wrinkling.

g. Change and wash the socks at the end of a day's march. If washing is impossible, change each sock to the opposite foot for the next day's march.

h. After a long march, and as soon as possible after reaching camp, the feet should be washed (not soaked) with soap and cool or tepid water. Avoid excessive use of soap and long immersion as this will soften the skin. Cold water hardens the skin, eases the sensation of burning after a march, and increases the tone of the foot. After washing, dry the feet thoroughly, paying special attention to the surfaces between the toes.

i. The troops' feet should be inspected before and after each day's march by an officer. Injuries should be attended to promptly to prevent disabling infections which cripple the efficiency of the command. Until feet are hardened, they should be dusted with foot powder at each inspection.

j. Toenails should be kept short and clean. They should be cut straight across to avoid ingrowing nails. Deformed, thick, or clubbed nails can be remedied by soaking in hot water and paring down with a knife.

k. A blister should be drained by a puncture at the lower edge with a sterilized needle. The blister (outer or false skin) should not be torn or removed as it forms the best natural dressing. The blister should be dried with gauze or absorbent cotton and covered with adhesive plaster firmly pressed down so that the raised outer skin will be forced into position. The plaster may be made to stick well by heating it with a match before applying it. Examine carefully for all areas which are red and tender and cover them with adhesive plaster.

Heel blisters should be given particular attention.

8-16 CARE OF TROOPS.—*a.* Detailed attention is given to adjustment of packs and equipment.

b. Use care to prevent men from obtaining unwholesome beverages and food, and from indulging in excessive eating and drinking.

c. Hot weather is one of the greatest sources of hardship on a march. Every precaution is taken to prevent suffering from this cause. Places for long halts are, when practicable, selected where there is shade and free circulation of air.

d. Men's packs are lightened when transportation is available.

e. Troops are not kept in column or under arms longer than necessary. Foresight, thoughtfulness, and good judgment do much toward mitigating the discomforts, annoyances, and hardships of marching.

f. During prolonged marches, at least 1 day in 7 should be a day of rest.

g. Upon arrival at the camp site, organization commanders should conduct an inspection of their organizations and arrange for the treatment of injuries or the correction of any other defects noted.

8-17 OBSTACLES, STREAM CROSSINGS, AND CAUSES OF DELAY.—*a.* When there is unavoidable delay, units in rear are notified as to the minimum time involved; they then conduct themselves as at regular halts.

b. Careful examination is made of fords, bridges, ice, etc., before attempting a stream crossing. Foot troops break their cadence when crossing bridges.

8-18 FORCED MARCHES.—*a.* Forced marches seriously impair the fighting power of even the best troops and are undertaken only in cases of urgent necessity.

b. With foot troops, forced marches are generally made by increasing the number of marching hours; halts and periods for cooking and sleep being arranged to afford maximum benefit. The rules prescribed for average marches are followed as closely as possible.

SECTION II

ADVANCE GUARDS

	Par.	Page
General.....	8-19	273
Tasks of advance guards.....	8-20	273
Specific duties of advance guards.....	8-21	273
Distribution of troops.....	8-22	273
Strength and composition.....	8-23	275
Formation and distances.....	8-24	275
The point.....	8-25	275
The advance party.....	8-26	275
The support.....	8-27	275
The reserve.....	8-28	276
Connecting elements.....	8-29	276
Patrolling.....	8-30	276

8-19 GENERAL.—*a.* An advance guard is a security detachment that precedes and protects the main body of a force marching toward the enemy, whatever its march formation, and covers its deployment for action when contact is made.

b. If a force advances in more than one column, each is covered by its own advance guard. Such elements as are not covered by the advance guard in their development for action likewise provide their own security detachments. This applies particularly to troops designated to envelop a hostile flank, or to make a wide turning movement.

c. This section provides for the security measures considered necessary for the protection of a column or columns advancing into hostile territory under conditions where contact with the enemy is possible.

8-20 TASKS OF ADVANCED GUARDS.—The principal tasks of the advance guard are:
a. To insure the uninterrupted advance of the main body.

b. To protect it against surprise and observation by hostile ground forces.

c. To cover the development of the main body when the enemy is encountered in such strength as to require the employment of the whole force.

8-21 SPECIFIC DUTIES OF ADVANCE GUARDS.—In accomplishing its mission, the advance guard is required to—

a. Remove obstacles and repair roads and bridges.

b. Reconnoiter to the front and flanks to guard against surprise and to secure information.

c. Drive back small bodies of the enemy, to prevent their observing, firing upon, or delaying the main body.

d. Secure such terrain features as will protect the main body from hostile fire and observation and which provide suitable positions for observing the fire of friendly supporting weapons.

e. When the advance is definitely stopped, seize suitable commanding positions to cover the development of the main body and determine the strength, disposition, and flanks of the enemy forces.

8-22 DISTRIBUTION OF TROOPS.—

a. An advance guard is generally subdivided from front to rear as follows:

- (1) Point (sent out by the advance party).
- (2) Advance party (sent out by the support).
- (3) Support (sent out by the reserve).
- (4) Reserve.

b. Patrols are sent out by the advance party and support to the flanks as prescribed in the initial order (see par. 8-30). Additional patrols are employed when necessary.

c. Contact between the elements of an advance guard is maintained from rear to front by connecting files or groups.

d. Figure 1 shows graphically a distribution for security of a battalion on the march with one company as advance guard. For a smaller unit on such duty, this distribution may be modified to conform to the table shown in paragraph 8-23.

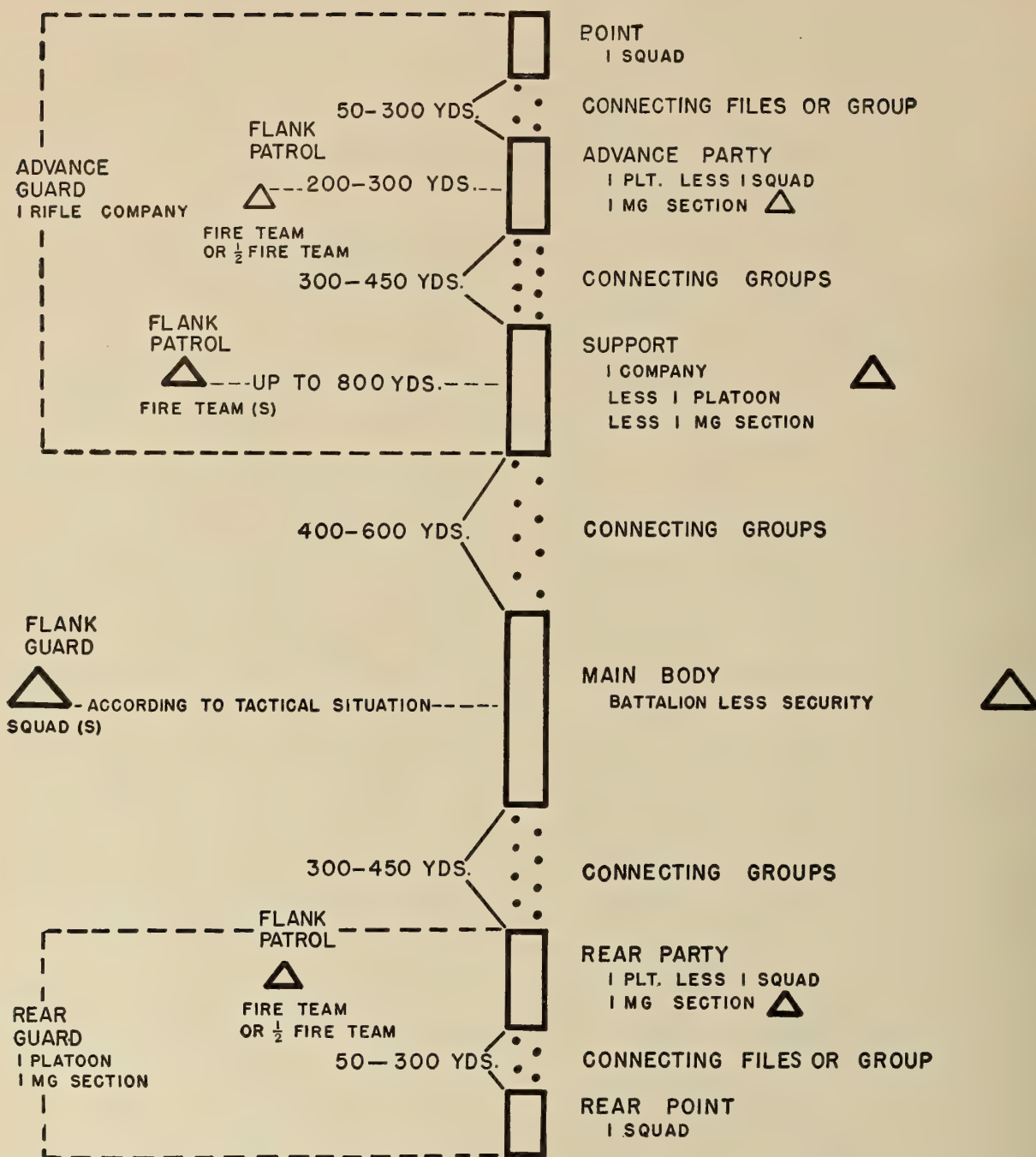


FIGURE 1... A DISTRIBUTION FOR SECURITY OF A BATTALION ON THE MARCH

NOTE: AN ADVANCE GUARD OF COMPANY SIZE HAS NO RESERVE

FIGURE 1.—A distribution for security of a battalion on the march.

NOTE.—An advance guard of company size or smaller has no reserve.

8-23 STRENGTH AND COMPOSITION.—

a. The larger the command the larger in proportion is the advance guard, because a large command takes relatively longer to prepare for action than a small one.

b. Units functioning as advance guards should have sufficient supporting weapons.

c. The following table will serve as a guide for the maximum size of advance guards and their elements for various organizations.

TABLE 1.—*Composition of advance guards*

Main body	Advance guard, total	Subdivisions of advance guard			
		Reserve	Support	Advance party	Point
Battalion (less 1 company)....	1 company.....	None.....	1 rifle company (less advance party).	1 platoon plus 1 section machine guns (less point).	1 squad.
Company (less 1 platoon)....	1 platoon plus 1 section machine guns.	do.....	None.....	do.....	Do.
Platoon (less 1 squad)....	1 squad.....	do.....	do.....	None.....	Do.

8-24 FORMATION AND DISTANCES.—

a. In order to give the elements of an advance guard and the main body time and space to carry out their missions it is necessary for them to advance with distances between them. These distances are in addition to the road spaces occupied by each element. None of these distances are set. They vary with the mission of the whole command, the size of the elements, the terrain, the proximity to and nature of the enemy, and visibility such as daylight, darkness, or fog. Distances should be less in rolling terrain where successive positions afford protection than in open, flat terrain. They should be less at night than in the day. They should be less when pursuing a beaten enemy than when approaching an unbeaten one.

b. Situations may occur where the best means of covering the head and flanks of the column will be by a line of skirmishers or small groups extending for several hundred yards to both sides of the road and deployed at intervals of from 10 to 50 yards. A column may thus protect itself when passing through terrain covered with high corn or similar vegetation.

8-25 THE POINT.—*a.* The point is a patrol sent forward by the advance party to give rear elements warning of the presence of hostile forces. It reconnoiters to the front and immediate flanks and sends to the rear all information obtained.

b. The point confines its activities to the axis of march and drives back all small hostile parties encountered. When large hostile bodies are observed, it pushes on until forced to halt by fire; when troops in rear are halted by fire,

it covers their deployment or, if such protection is unnecessary, acting as a patrol, it makes every effort to locate the enemy flanks and to determine the amount of the resistance. Different action may be required depending upon the mission of the command as a whole; e. g., should reconnaissance be paramount the point would be ordered to halt, conceal itself, observe, and send back information whenever hostile activities are encountered.

c. The point usually regulates its march on the advance party, one member being detailed to observe to the rear, to maintain distance, and to receive signals.

8-26 THE ADVANCE PARTY.—*a.* The advance party is sent forward by, and constitutes the reconnoitering element of, the support. It is made strong enough to guard the support against surprise by effective hostile rifle fire. To accomplish this it:

(1) Provides the point.

(2) Supports the action of the point.

(3) Furnishes patrols for reconnaissance and security to the flanks.

*b. Action of the advance party when resistance is met.—*The advance party drives back enemy patrols and takes care of minor resistance which the point is unable to overcome. It checks an enemy attack sufficiently to cover the deployment of the support.

*c. The advance party commander.—*The advance party commander is usually responsible for the route of march and for the regulation of the rate of march for the entire column.

8-27 THE SUPPORT.—*a. The support secures the march of the reserve.—*It provides

for its own security by sending an advance party forward and patrols to its flanks.

b. Action of the support when resistance is encountered.—The support reinforces the action of its advance party in dealing with minor resistance, or when the enemy is encountered in force it offers sufficient resistance to permit the reserve to prepare for action in accordance with a definite plan.

c. The support commander.—The support commander gives definite instructions as to what patrolling will be done by the advance party, and orders such patrolling by the support as cannot be accomplished by the advance party. He marches where he can quickly see and estimate the situation when his unit is fired upon; usually this position is with the advance party or between it and the support.

8-28 THE RESERVE.—*a.* The reserve constitutes the maneuvering and offensive element of the advance guard. It, therefore, comprises as large a part of the advance guard as is consistent with its own security and with the preservation of its maneuvering power.

b. It is employed by the advance guard commander in accordance with the principles of attack, defense, or delaying action, according to his mission.

c. Action of the reserve when resistance is encountered.—(1) Ordinarily, when the head of the column is stopped by the enemy, the reserve will be beyond the effective range of small-arms fire, permitting the adoption of a well-formulated plan based upon the tasks assigned to the force as a whole. The main body must be protected while making its dispositions, but against a strong enemy the reserve must not be committed to action which would later prevent the concerted action of the entire force against the enemy. Aggressive action is justified against an inferior force or to secure advantages which contribute to the tactical success or security of the main body.

(2) The reserve, when employed against the enemy, acts as a unit. It does not dissipate its strength by piecemeal reinforcement or by engaging in minor affairs.

8-29 CONNECTING ELEMENTS.—

a. Contact between elements of a column is maintained by two or more individuals or by

one or two fire teams placed in the space between the elements. The individuals so designated are referred to as connecting files and the fire teams as connecting groups. Contact is usually maintained from rear to front. Therefore, whatever measures that may be required are furnished by the element in rear to maintain contact with the element next in front. They are so spaced that each file or group can maintain constant visual contact with both the following and preceding file, group, or unit. When visibility is good, two or three connecting files may be sufficient; in darkness or on roads with poor visibility a larger number of files or groups are needed.

b. Connecting files or groups halt on orders or signals from the rear, or when the point halts, relaying the signal to the front or rear.

c. Members of connecting files or groups look alternately to the rear and to the front for signals and run, walk, or halt as is necessary to maintain contact both to the front and rear.

8-30 PATROLLING.—*a.* Patrols from units of the advance guard reconnoiter and provide such security to the flanks as may be required. Localities such as high ground and wooded areas that might conceal hostile reconnaissance groups or combat patrols are to be particularly well reconnoitered.

b. The formation of the patrol must provide for its own protection and permit at least one man (the get-away man) to return with information should the patrol become seriously engaged. Normally, the strength of a reconnaissance patrol is one or more fire teams.

c. Information of the enemy is immediately signaled or carried back by messenger to the column.

d. Flank security is provided by having the patrols operate in accordance with the instructions set forth for the conduct of flank guards. (See sec. IV.)

e. After completing its mission the patrol joins the most convenient element of the column rejoining its own element at the first opportunity.

f. When the strength of the advance party and support has been seriously reduced by absent patrols, reinforcements should be furnished from rear elements.

SECTION III

REAR GUARDS

	Par.	Page
General.....	8-31	277
Mission.....	8-32	277
Delaying action.....	8-33	277

8-31 GENERAL.—*a.* A rear guard is a security detachment that follows and protects the rear of a marching or retreating force.

b. The distribution, strength and composition, formations and distances, and conduct of the rear guard and its subdivisions are similar to that of the advance guard and its subdivisions except as follows:

(1) *Distribution of troops.*—The subdivisions are arranged in inverse order to those of an advance guard.

(2) *Strength and composition.*—A rear guard protecting a retreating force cannot depend upon reinforcements; therefore, it should be made large enough to fulfill its mission without support. A rear guard is usually reinforced by additional machine gun units because of their power to force deployment at long range and delay the hostile advance. (See fig. 1.)

8-32 MISSION.—*a.* The mission of a rear guard is:

(1) To relieve the main body from the necessity of engaging in battle.

(2) To enable the main body to regain freedom of action.

(3) To insure the uninterrupted retirement of the main body.

(4) To protect it against hostile attack and ground observation.

b. The rear guard accomplishes its mission by performing any or all of the following duties:

(1) Observing and maintaining contact with the enemy.

(2) Impeding the hostile pursuit by mechanical means, such as, the destruction of bridges and the use of obstacles.

(3) Selecting and occupying suitable delaying positions from which to check the hostile advance.

(4) Fighting delaying actions.

(5) Executing withdrawals without becoming seriously involved.

(6) Taking security measures during temporary halts.

(7) Reconnaissance.

(8) Sacrificing itself, if necessary, so the main body may get away safely.

8-33 DELAYING ACTION.—When an enemy forces the rear guard to fight, it protects the rear of the main body by a stubborn defense in one position or in successive positions, depending on the speed of movement of the main body, the number of positions suitable for defense, and the strength and aggressiveness of the enemy. Where the retirement progresses favorably and the terrain is suitable for defense, the rear guard fights delaying actions in successive positions, each so conducted as to force the enemy to deploy at long range and to launch an attack, and so timed that the rear guard can break off the engagement and withdraw before becoming decisively engaged. (For such type action, see Ch. 11, Sec. IV.)

SECTION IV

FLANK GUARDS

	Par.	Page
General.....	8-34	278
Mission.....	8-35	278
Contact with the main body.....	8-36	278

8-34 GENERAL.—*a.* A flank guard is a security detachment which covers and protects the flank of a body of troops on the march.

b. A flank guard takes a formation which provides for its own frontal and flank security and which, at the same time, conforms with its mission.

c. The flank guard must be highly mobile. Usually flank guards must cover greater distances than the main body in the same or in a shorter period of time.

d. Due to their mission and the greater distances that the flank guards have to cover, it is often necessary to relieve them. Relieving troops are sent from the head of the column making the relief. The troops relieved rejoin the column at any point and their own unit at the earliest practicable time.

8-35 MISSION.—*a.* The mission of a flank guard is to prevent the enemy from bringing effective flanking fire to bear on the main body of the marching column.

b. A flank guard accomplishes its mission by one or more of the following methods:

(1) Marching abreast of and in a direction generally parallel to the main column.

(2) Occupying a position covering the routes of hostile approach before the main body arrives abreast of that position, and until it has safely passed that position. (This method is employed when the locality from which an attack might be expected is well defined.)

(3) Occupying key positions successively, when several dangerous localities must be passed and when it is practicable for the flank guard to move from one position to the next without exposing the main body to attack.

8-36 CONTACT WITH THE MAIN BODY.—*a.* Effective communication must be maintained between the flank guard and the main body.

b. Such contact is normally maintained by connecting files or groups sent out from the main body, but, if not provided, the flank guard commander is not relieved from the responsibility of maintaining contact.

SECTION V

OUTPOSTS

	Par.	Page
General.....	8-37	279
Mission.....	8-38	279
Classification.....	8-39	279
Elements.....	8-40	279
Establishing an outpost.....	8-41	280
Relief.....	8-42	282

8-37 GENERAL.—*a.* An outpost is a security detachment to protect a resting command or a defensive position against annoyance, surprise, and observation by hostile ground forces.

b. Enemy capabilities, terrain, and the location of the main body determine the location and nature of the outpost.

c. The strength and composition of an outpost vary with the distance, mobility, armament, and attitude of the enemy; the terrain; the time of day; the size of command to be secured; the degree of resistance desired; and the special tasks assigned.

8-38 MISSION.—The primary mission of an outpost is security. This mission is accomplished by:

a. Reconnaissance.

b. Observing and reporting information relating to the activity of the enemy.

c. Preventing the enemy from gaining information.

d. Giving warning of a hostile attack.

e. Deceiving the enemy as to the location of the main body or the battle position.

f. Developing enemy dispositions and delaying the hostile attack in order that the commander of the whole force may effect suitable measures for combat.

8-39 CLASSIFICATION.—Outposts are of the following types:

a. General outposts.—A general outpost may be located 2,000 to 6,000 yards forward of the main line of resistance. It is usually established and controlled by a high echelon such as a division or corps. Even though troops may

be furnished by the lower units, the action of the general outpost is coordinated by a higher echelon.

b. Combat outposts.—A battalion occupying an area on the main line of resistance provides for its local security by posting a combat outpost 800 to 2,000 yards ahead of the main line of resistance. The general location of the combat outpost line is usually designated by higher authority. The reserve company, or elements thereof, may be assigned this mission. If a general outpost is in position, the combat outpost ordinarily consists of a series of observation groups placed to observe the approaches to the main position. When no general outpost is established, the combat outpost will be stronger. When the terrain affords good fields of fire and covered routes of withdrawal, battalion supporting weapons are attached to the combat outpost.

c. March outposts.—March outposts are established when a command is halted for a short period or while the bivouac outpost is being established. Those established during the periodic rest halts may consist of a few sentinels sent to points of vantage, while those established for a halt of longer duration are more highly organized and have greater resisting powers. March outpost missions are ordinarily assigned to advance, flank, and rear guards during halts.

d. Bivouac outposts.—Bivouac outposts are stronger and more elaborate in formation than march outposts. They are used to protect a force that occupies a bivouac or camp area, or a town near enough to the enemy to require security measures.

8-40 ELEMENTS.—*a.* The outpost of a large command is divided from rear to front into the reserve, supports, outguards, sentinels, and reconnaissance units when attached. When important points to be secured lie outside the sectors of the supports, detached posts are

established. The general mission of each outpost element is to give warning and gain time for forces behind it.

b. The reserve.—The missions of the reserve are to reinforce the troops in front, to counter-attack, or, if the outpost has been given a delaying mission, to take up a position covering the retirement of the supports. This body furnishes the detached posts and maintains contact between them and the supports. The reserve may vary in strength from one-fourth to two-thirds of the outpost command, depending upon the terrain and the mission assigned. It should be kept intact if possible, and located to fulfill any of its missions. A reserve is established in general outposts and occasionally in combat outposts which are established at a maximum distance from the main line of resistance.

c. Supports.—Supports constitute the principal echelon of resistance of the outpost. They provide their own security and the observation service of the outpost by establishing outguards and sending out patrols. They are placed at the more important points dominating or controlling the approaches into the outpost area. Each support is assigned a sector which is clearly defined by recognizable boundaries. Supports vary in strength from a platoon to a reinforced company, and are numbered consecutively from right to left. They are established in the general outpost, and in the combat and bivouac outposts when the outguards are at a maximum distance from the main battle position.

d. Outguards.—An outguard varies in strength from four men to a platoon, depending on its location and the number of sentinels it is to furnish. Posts at a short distance from the support may be held by weak outguards, while important posts at a considerable distance must be held more strongly. Outguards must be ready for action at all times; although their primary mission is observation, they will resist small, hostile reconnoitering groups and fire upon the enemy in case of surprise attack in order to give warning to the supports. Outguards are established by all types of outposts, and are numbered from right to left within each support sector.

e. Sentries.—Sentries to observe the fore-

ground of an outpost position are furnished by the outguards. These sentries have the mission of discovering hostile activity, giving the alarm in case of attack, and carrying out other orders specifically prescribed for their posts. Sentries are generally posted in pairs.

f. Patrols.—Outposts conduct reconnaissance within the limits required by their security mission. Patrols execute reconnaissance in advance of the line of sentinels and areas not covered by sentinels. Patrols also maintain contact between elements of the outposts. Patrolling in front of the line of observation is increased at night or during periods of low visibility. Night patrolling requires systematic organization, careful preparation, and the coordination of advanced outpost elements with the activity of the patrols.

g. Detached posts.—Detached posts are established at critical points located beyond the limits of any support sector. The size and composition of a detached post may vary between wide limits depending on terrain and the situation.

8-41 ESTABLISHING AN OUTPOST.—

a. Combat outpost.—If not established by higher authority, the combat outpost is established by the battalion commander. He will, in his orders for the establishment of the combat outpost, indicate the line designated to be held, the limits of the front to be covered by the outpost system, and what troops will constitute the outpost. The battalion commander will indicate what action the outpost is to take if it is attacked in force; outlines special reconnaissance to be executed; indicates the approaches which are to be especially guarded; regulates the signal communication to be established between adjacent outposts; and directs the establishment of detached posts when required.

b. March outpost.—Security will be provided for a unit on the march in the form of advance, flank, and rear guards. When the main body halts to rest, these units immediately establish security for the main body. If the main body is to rest for a much longer period of time than the normal break during a march, the commander of troops will provide for any additional security that is needed. He will reconnoiter the outguard position, assign areas to be

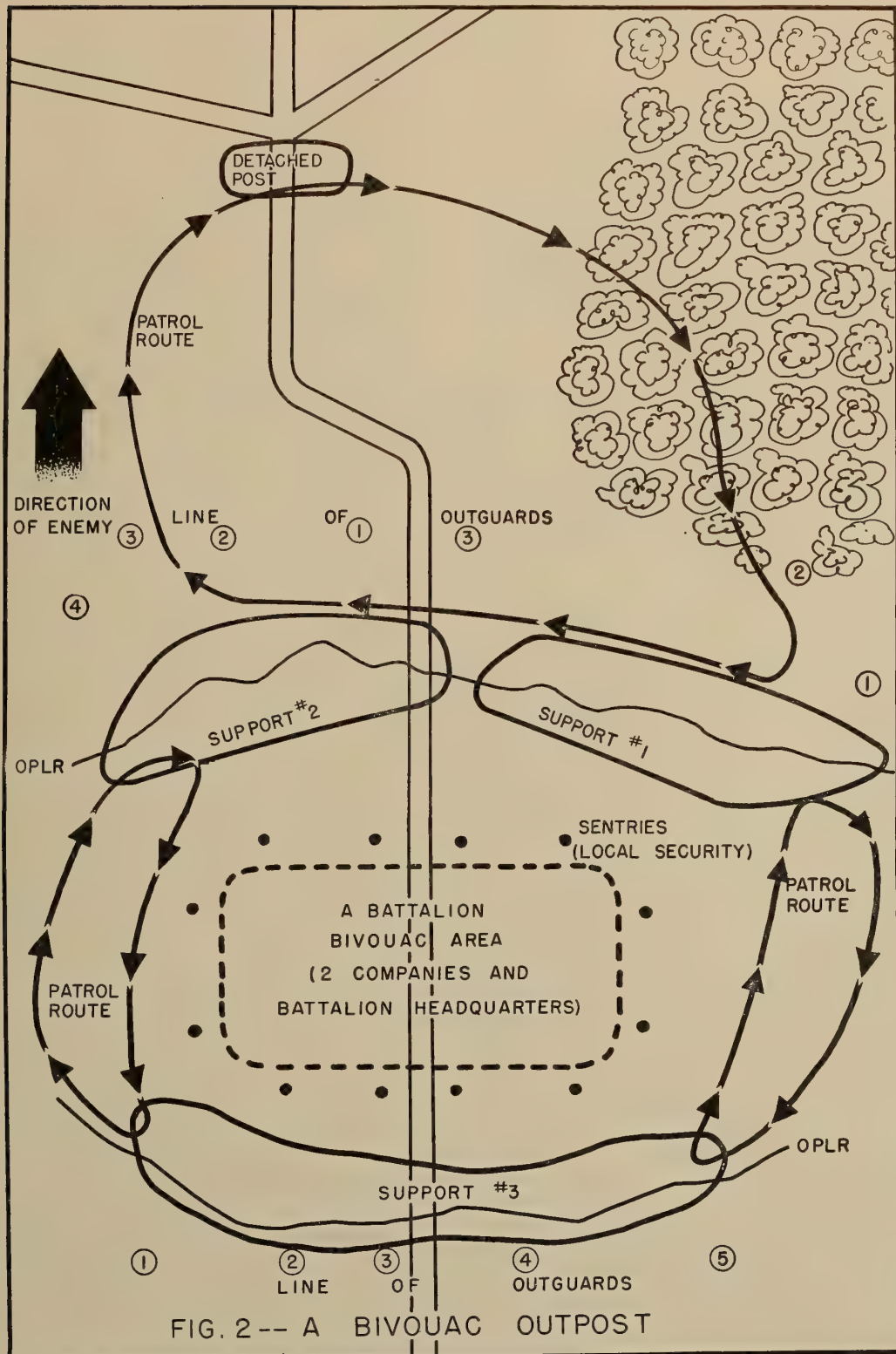


FIGURE 2.—A bivouac outpost.

especially guarded, designate a line of resistance and the action that the outposts are to take in case of attack.

c. Bivouac outpost.—The battalion commander details the bivouac outpost and interior guard; prescribes the necessary measures for antiaircraft security and antimechanized defense; provides for the local protection of the battalion command post and supplies; designates the size of the outpost, terrain features that must be covered, the location of the outpost line, the security troops and their action in case of attack. (See fig. 2.)

8-42 RELIEF.—*a.* The outpost of a small command is usually relieved daily. That of a large force may remain on duty for several days. An outpost should not be relieved when a hostile attack is probable as new troops may not have time to organize and become familiar with the terrain and the situation before being engaged.

b. Combat outpost.—A combat outpost will usually remain in position for several days, since it is drawn from the battalion reserve.

c. March outpost.—The commander of the force will make allowances prior to the march as to the relief of the point, flank, and rear guard. The type of terrain will determine the relief. Where terrain is heavily vegetated, mountainous, or swampy, reliefs will be made more frequently than in open terrain. When reliefs are to be made before continuing the march, the relieving unit will take its position as the march begins. The unit to be relieved will stay in positions assigned until their reliefs have passed through them, and will then rejoin the main body in an assigned position.

d. Bivouac outpost.—A company assigned to outpost a bivouac area will generally remain in position over several days, whereas a small unit sending out a few men will relieve these men daily.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 9

BASIC COMBAT TECHNIQUES

283

CHAPTER 9

BASIC COMBAT TECHNIQUES

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL-----	9-1	287
II. COMBAT FORMATIONS-----	9-2	288
III. COMBAT SIGNALS-----	9-6	301
IV. TECHNIQUE OF FIRE—MACHINE GUN AND RIFLE-----	9-12	308
V. USE OF GRENADES-----	9-25	326
VI. TACTICAL TRAINING OF THE INDIVIDUAL-----	9-28	335
VII. HAND TO HAND COMBAT-----	9-35	344
VIII. COMBAT ORDERS-----	9-40	360
IX. SUPPLY AND EVACUATION-----	9-45	364

SECTION I

GENERAL

	Par.	Page
Purpose.....	9-1	287

9-1 PURPOSE.—The purpose of this chapter is to acquaint the individual with the basic techniques of combat which are essential to the practical application of the principles of small unit tactics considered in Chapter 10.

SECTION II

COMBAT FORMATIONS

	Par.	Page
General.....	9-2	288
Positions of individuals.....	9-3	288
Formations.....	9-4	289
Higher units.....	9-5	289

9-2 GENERAL.—*a.* When the situation, terrain, or hostile activity does not permit close formation, the squad adopts an open formation; that is, it deploys. Deployment is executed on signals or commands given by the squad leader or fire team leader. Standard formations laid down for this deployment are:

(1) For the fire team—

- (a) Column.
- (b) Wedge.
- (c) Echelon.
- (d) As skirmishers.
- (See figs. 1-11.)

(2) For the squad—

- (a) Column.
- (b) Wedge.
- (c) V.
- (d) Echelon.
- (e) Line.
- (See figs. 12-19.)

b. Initial formations are usually ordered by the platoon commander for the squads, and by the squad leaders for the fire teams. Thereafter, each leader will determine the formation of his unit after giving consideration to the mission, the terrain, and the location and strength of the enemy.

c. All movement incident to changes of formation will be by the shortest practicable route. Full advantage will be taken of available cover and concealment. Backward and lateral movement will be avoided whenever possible. Sight contact must be maintained within the fire team and between fire team leaders and squad leaders.

d. Use of formations.—(1) The formations of the squad or fire team may be changed by the squad leader to reduce casualties from hostile

fire, to present a less vulnerable target, or to negotiate difficult or exposed terrain. Formation changes in varying or rough terrain will be frequent to enable the squads to pass over obstacles such as rivers, swamps, jungles, woods, and sharp ridges.

(2) The relative position of the fire teams within squad formations should be such that they will not mask one another's fire on the enemy. It is not important that exact distances and intervals be maintained between fire teams and individuals as long as control is not lost.

9-3 POSITIONS OF INDIVIDUALS.—*a.*

The squad leader.—The squad leader is not restricted to any given position. He places himself where he can best observe, control the squad, and maintain contact with the platoon commander.

b. The fire team leader.—The fire team leader places himself where he can best observe, control the fire team, and receive the orders of the squad leader. The fire team leader is normally in a position next to his automatic rifleman to enable him to exercise control of that weapon quickly and effectively.

c. The automatic rifleman.—Normally the automatic rifleman is near the fire team leader in a position where he can deliver effective fire immediately onto the enemy and still have protection of a rifleman.

d. The assistant automatic rifleman.—The assistant automatic rifleman normally should be placed adjacent to or in rear of the automatic rifleman so that he may function effectively in supplying ammunition and in assisting the automatic rifleman in maintaining maximum fire power. He replaces the automatic rifleman if the latter is a casualty. He coordinates both his position and movement with those of the automatic rifleman.

e. The rifleman.—The rifleman should be employed at that place in the fire team formation

which is most threatened by enemy action or probable enemy action. If the fire team is moving toward the enemy, he should be in the foremost position; if withdrawing, at the rear; if the fire team is on an exposed flank, he should be in position within the fire team on that flank. He is the fire team's security element.

9-4 FORMATIONS.—*MG section.*—*a.* Initial formations are ordered by the platoon commander. The section leader subsequently varies the formation of his squads, adapting them to the situation and terrain.

b. The formation of a machine-gun section should conform as nearly as practicable to the

formation being used at the time by the rifle units. A machine gun is a profitable target for enemy mortars and artillery. In view of this fact it is important that machine-gun unit leaders do not attract special attention of enemy observers by using formations differing radically from those of the rifle units.

9-5 HIGHER UNITS.—Combat formations of higher units, platoon, company, battalion, etc., are based on the combat formations of the squad as each unit has the same number of maneuver elements. The use of formations by the higher units, as with the squad, is dictated by the terrain and the situation.

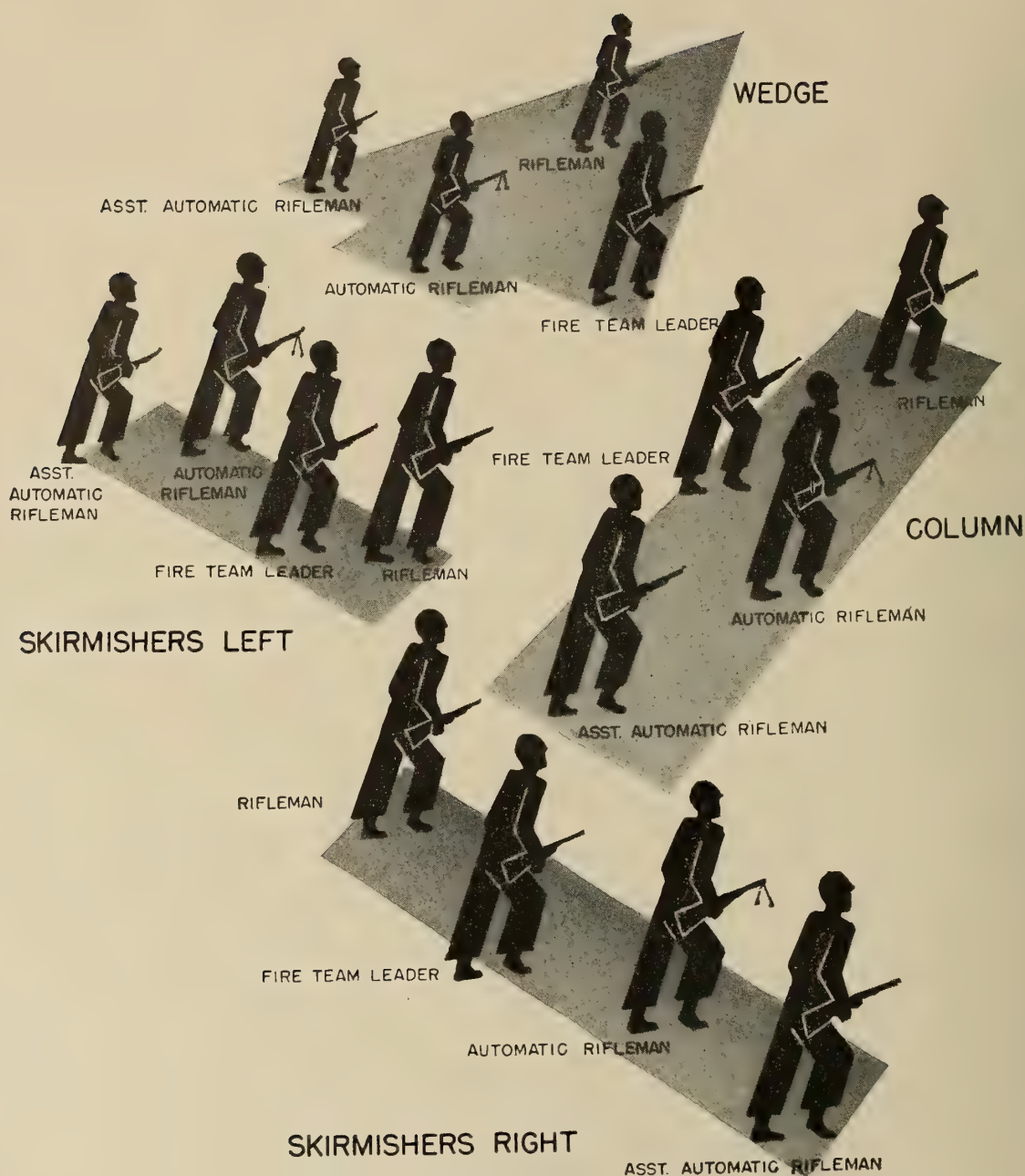
BASIC FORMATIONS

FIGURE 1.—Basic formations of the fire team.

FROM COLUMN TO WEDGE

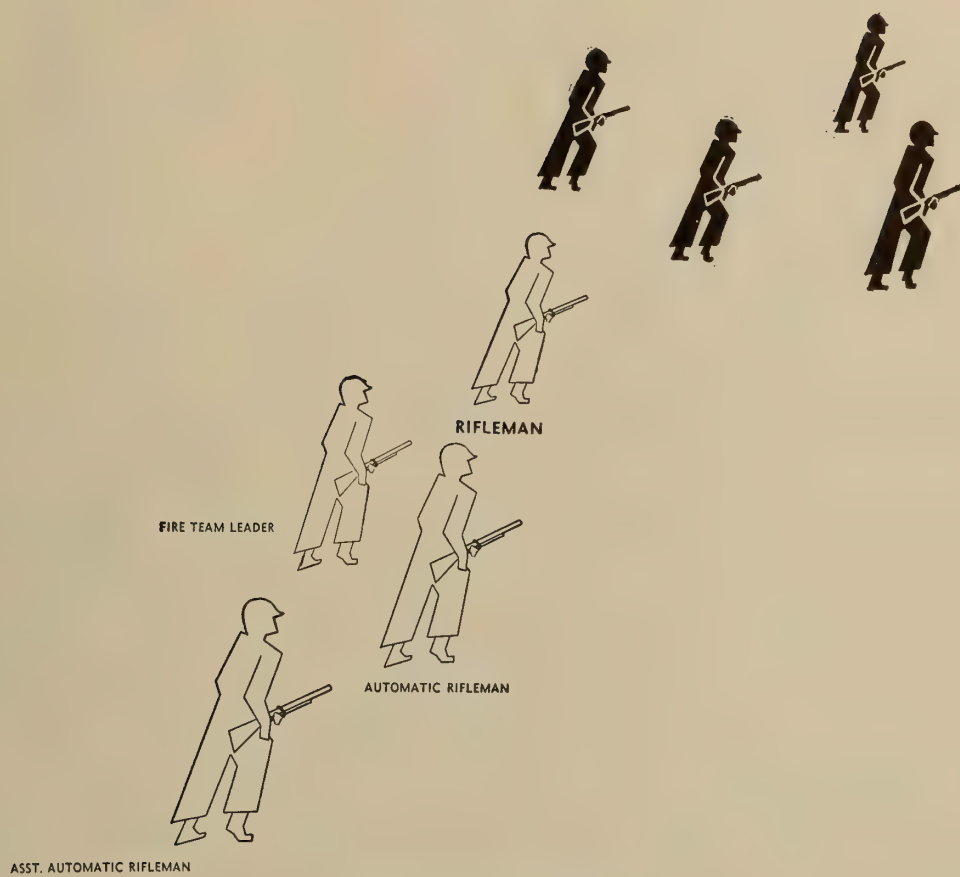


FIGURE 2.—From column to wedge.

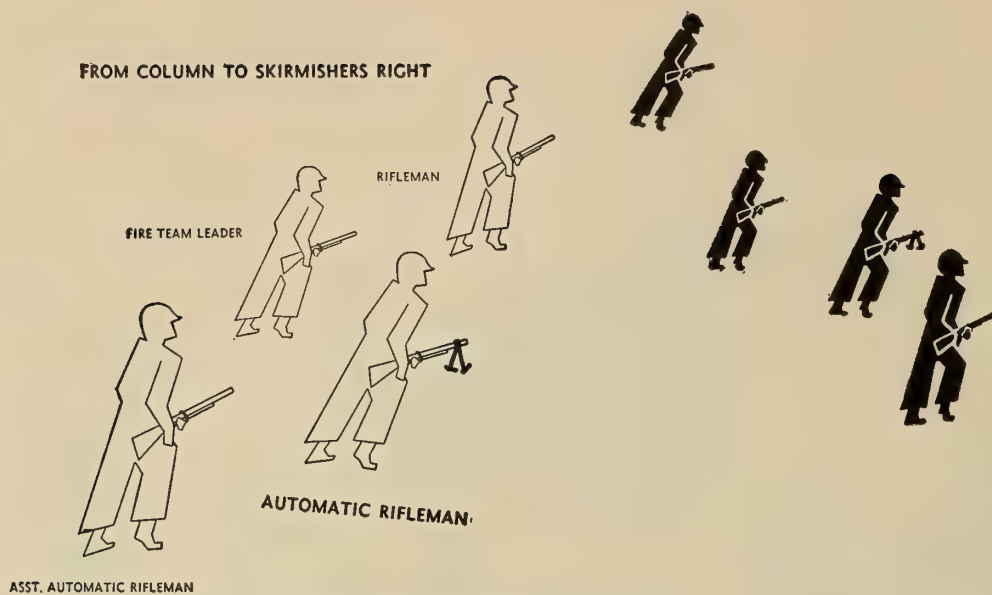


FIGURE 3.—From column to skirmishers right.

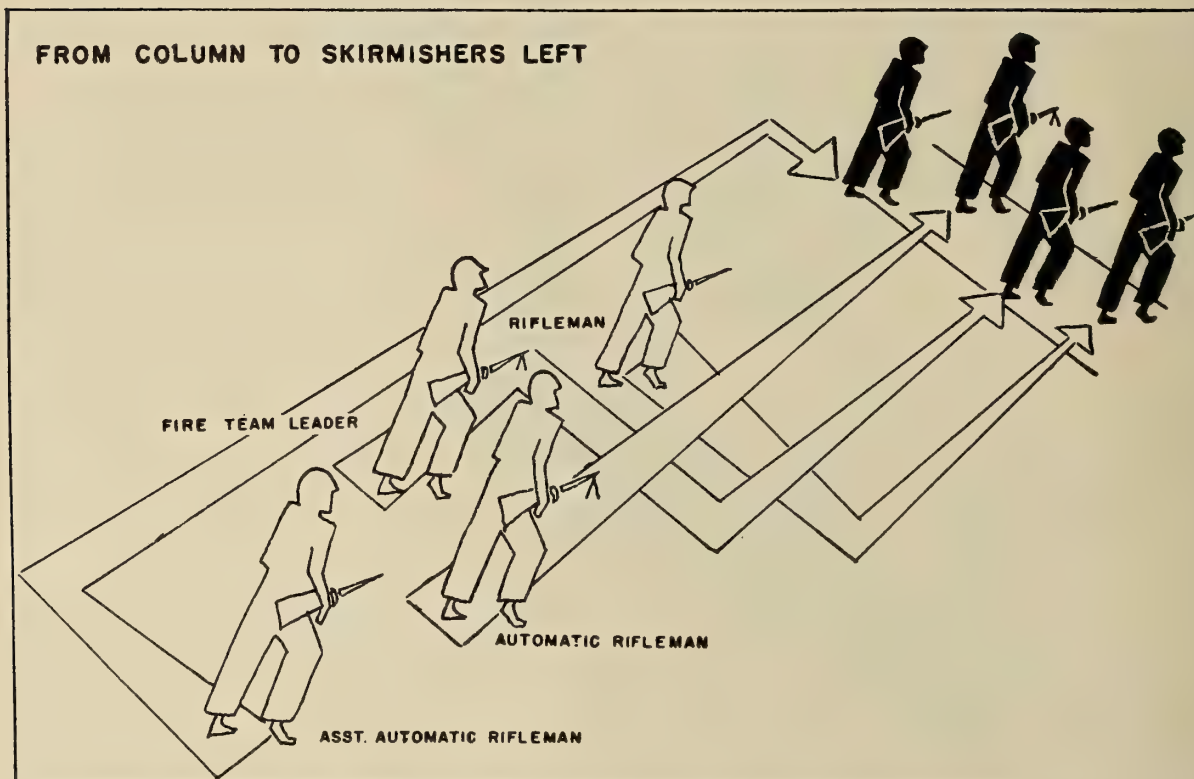


FIGURE 4.—From column to skirmishers left.

FROM WEDGE TO COLUMN

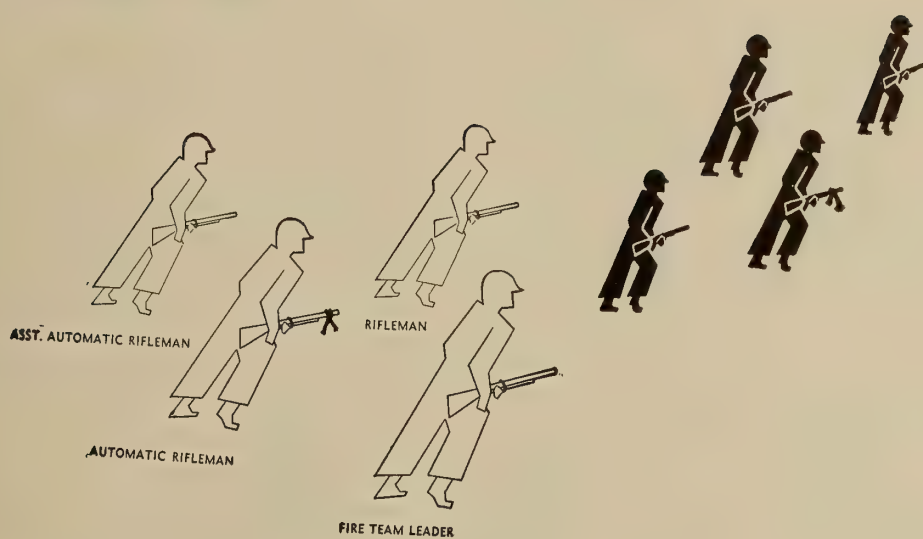


FIGURE 5.—From wedge to column.

FROM COLUMN TO ECHELON LEFT

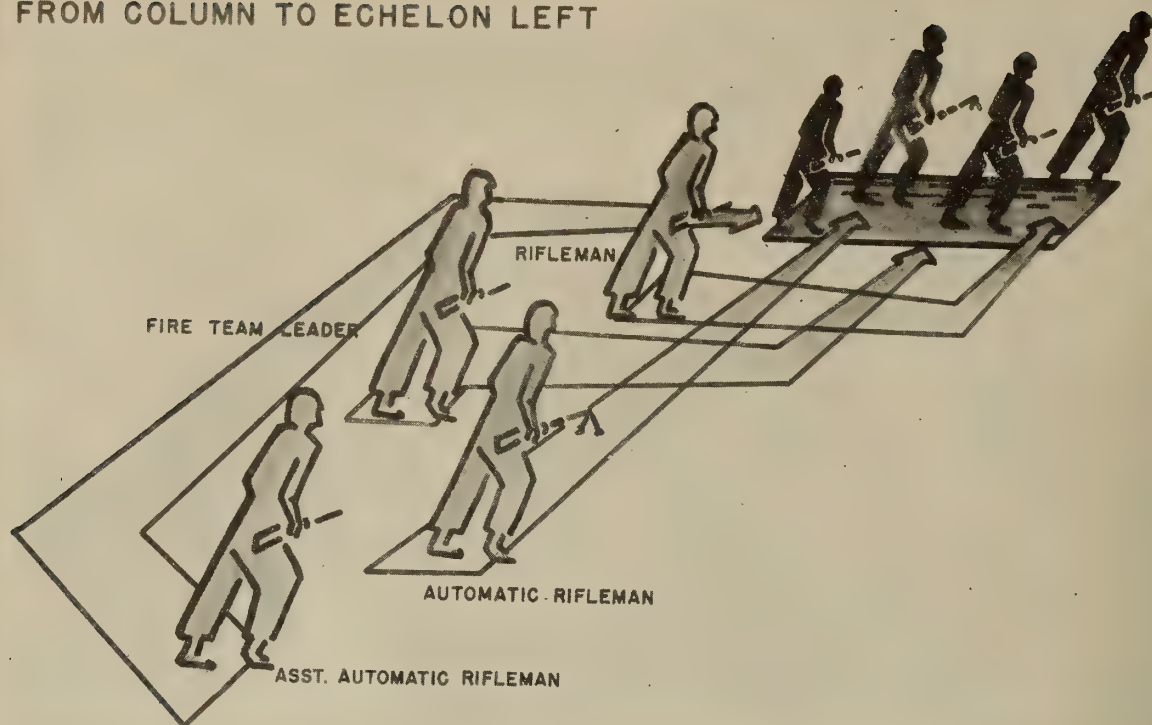


FIGURE 6.—From column to echelon right, left.

FROM WEDGE TO SKIRMISHERS RIGHT

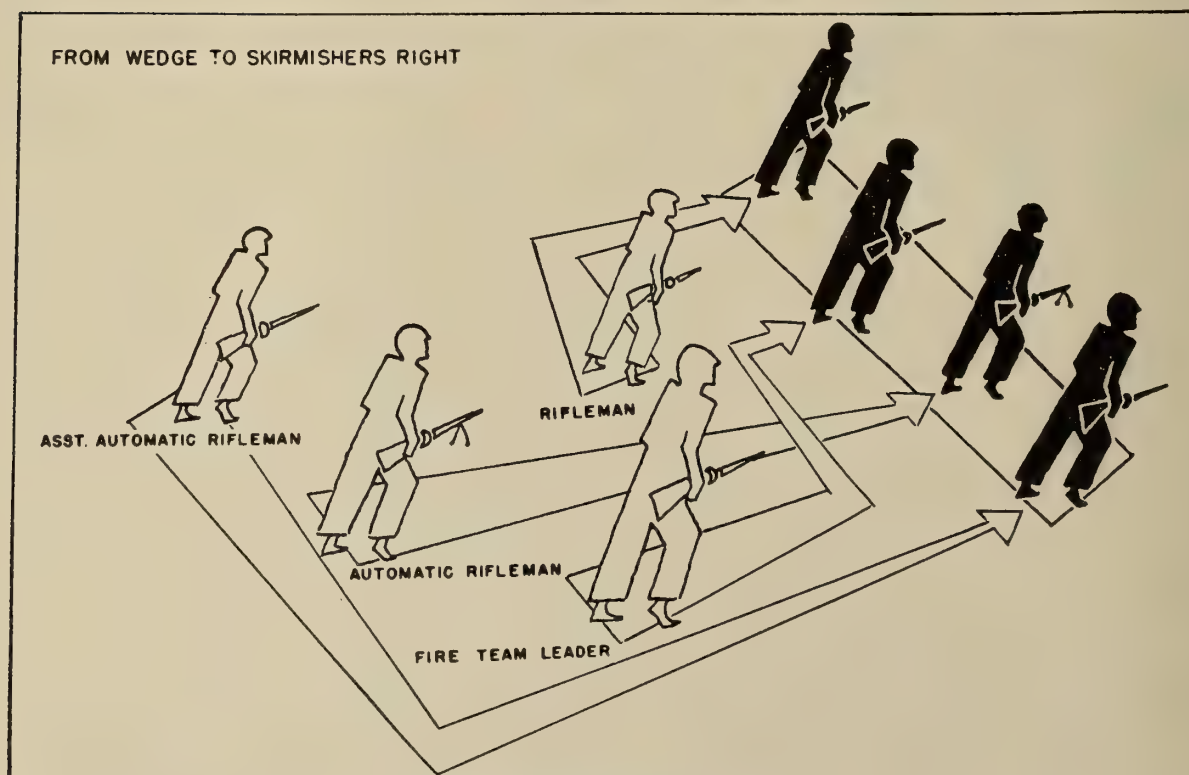


FIGURE 7.—From wedge to skirmishers right, left.

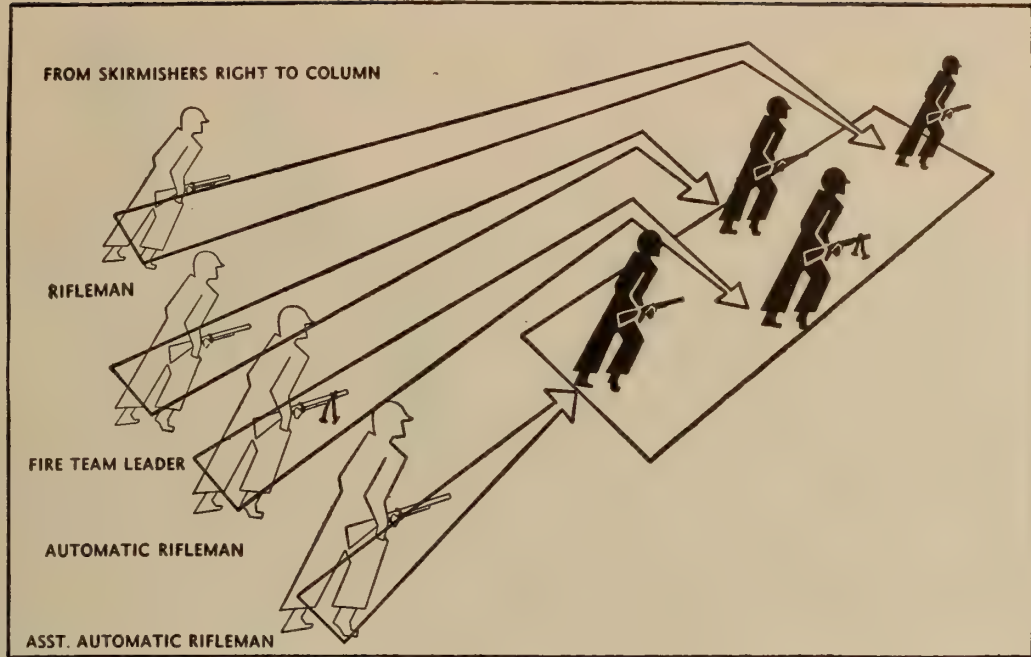


FIGURE 8.—From skirmishers right to column.

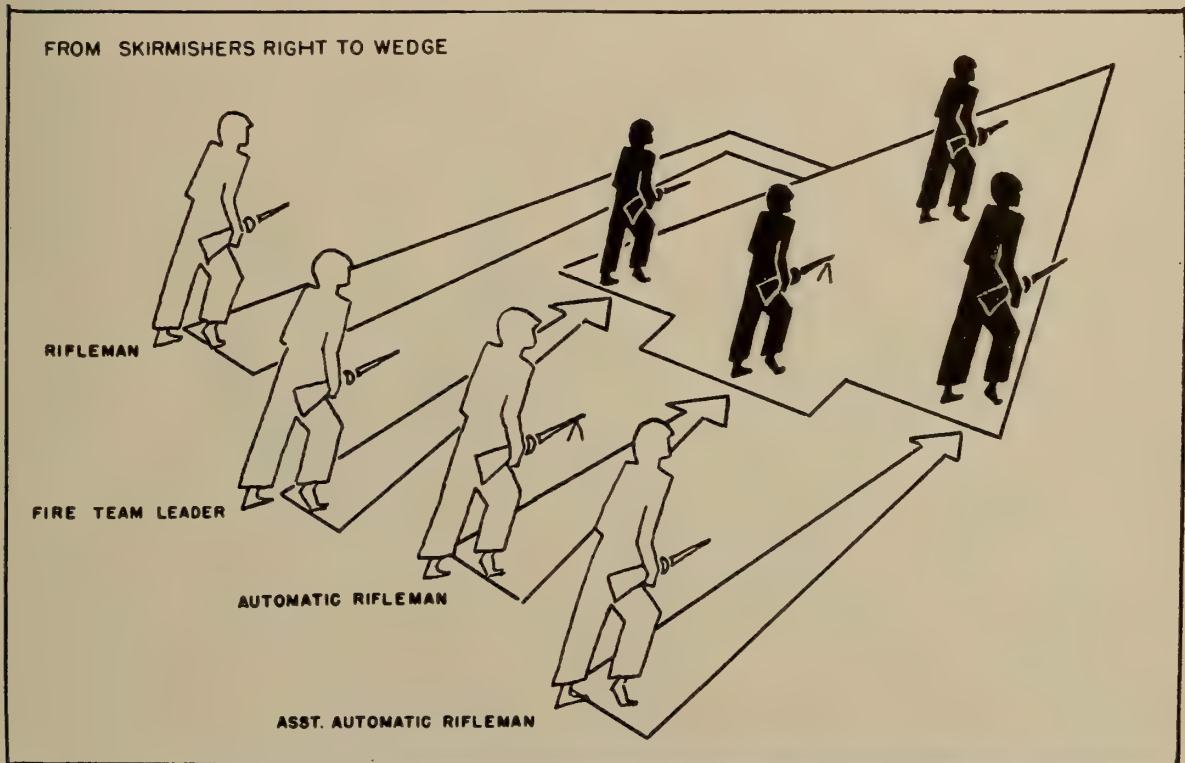


FIGURE 9.—From skirmishers right to wedge.

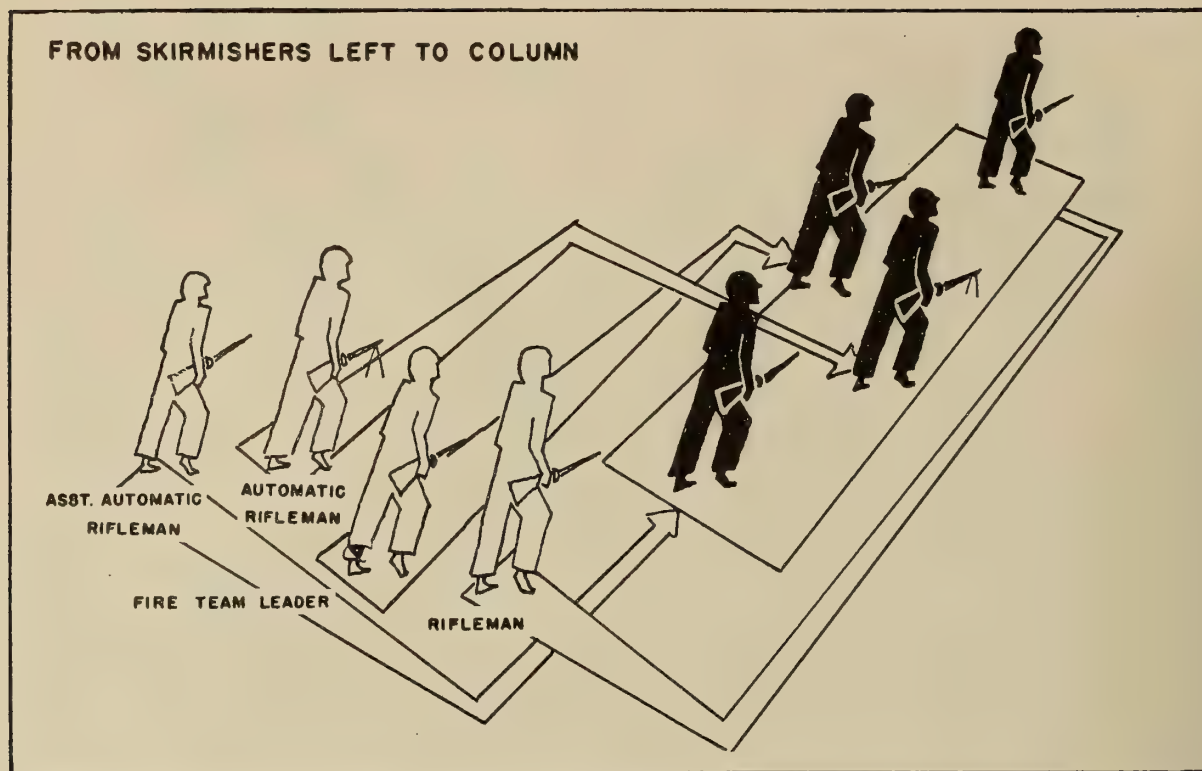


FIGURE 10.—From skirmishers left to column.

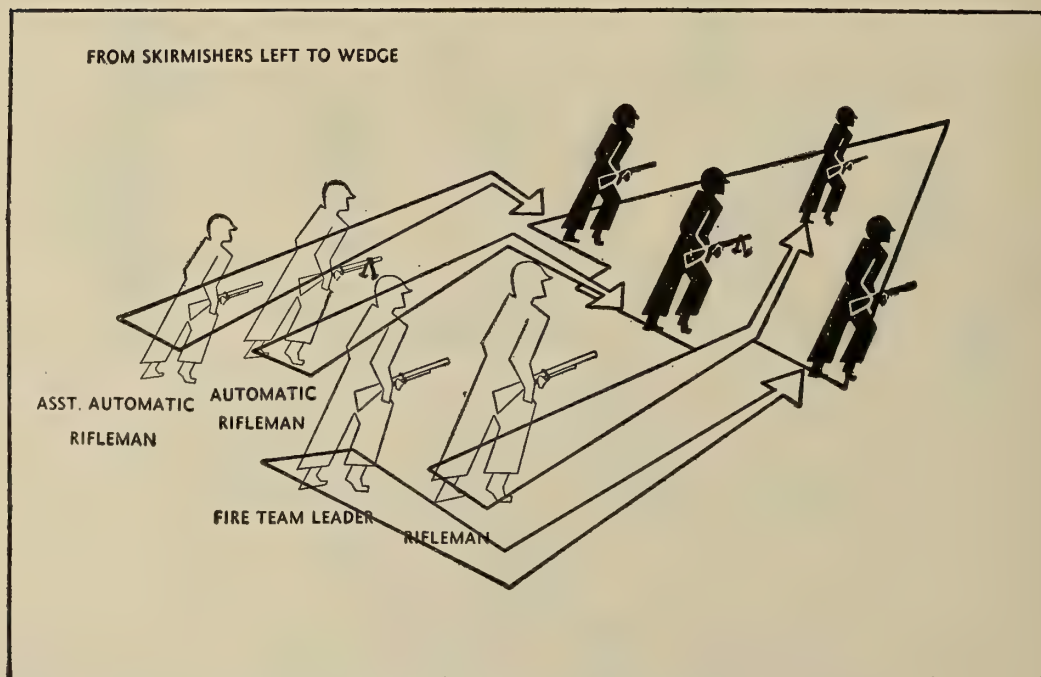


FIGURE 11.—From skirmishers left to wedge.

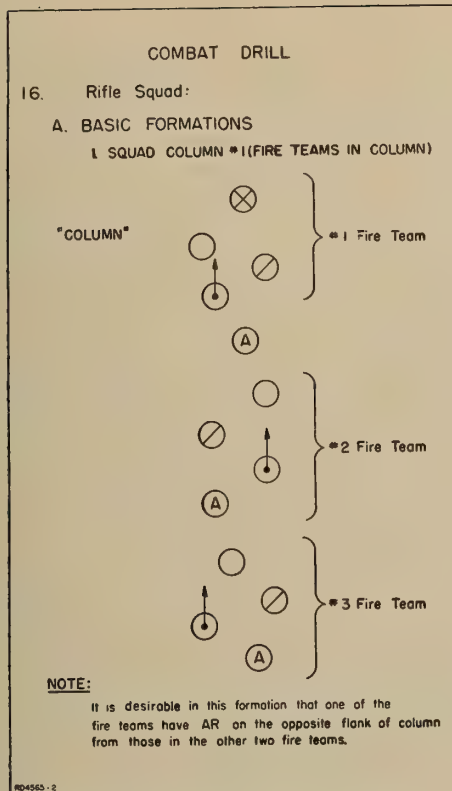


FIGURE 12.—Squad column (Fire teams to column).

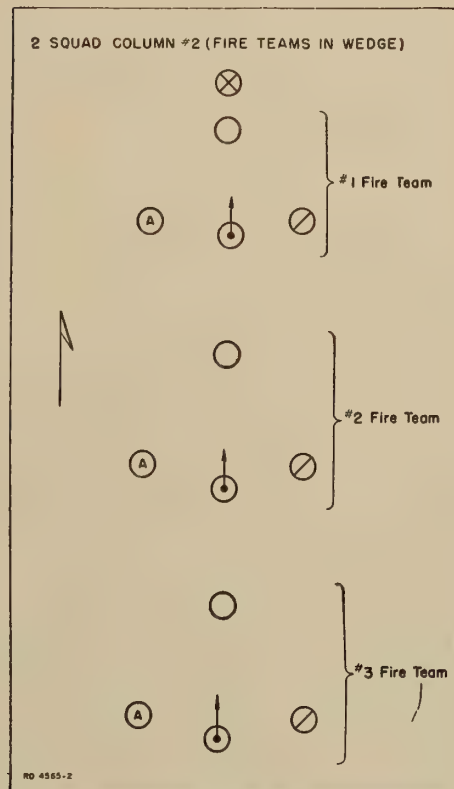


FIGURE 13.—Squad column (Fire teams in wedge).

Squad leader.....	⊗
Fire team leader.....	⊙
Automatic rifleman (AR).....	⊙
Assistant automatic rifleman.....	⊙
Rifleman.....	⊙



FIGURE 14.—Wedge.

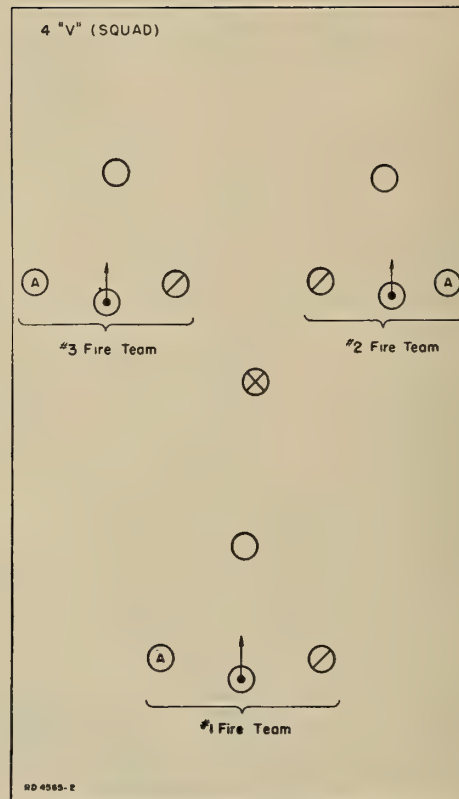


FIGURE 15.—"V" (Squad).

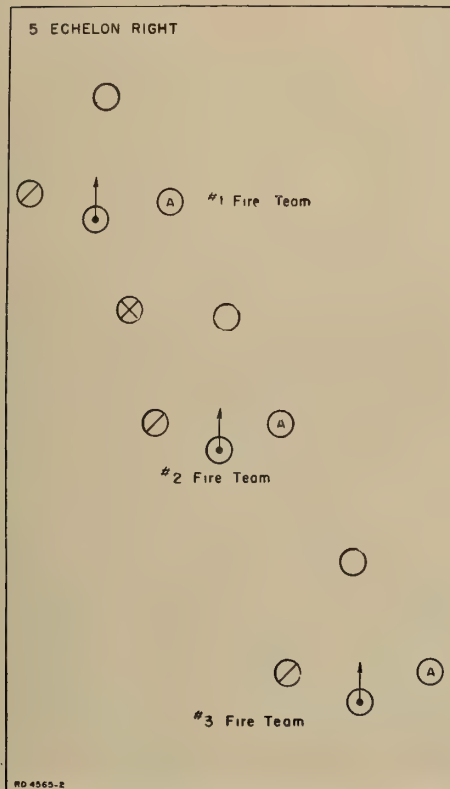


FIGURE 16.—Echelon right.

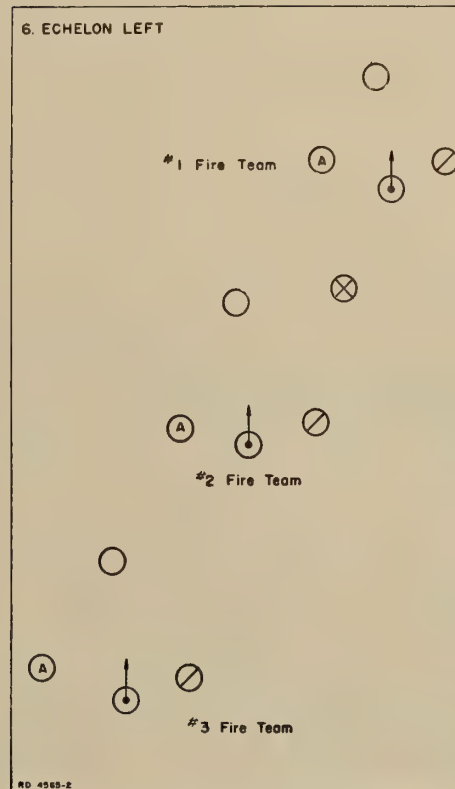


FIGURE 17.—Echelon left.

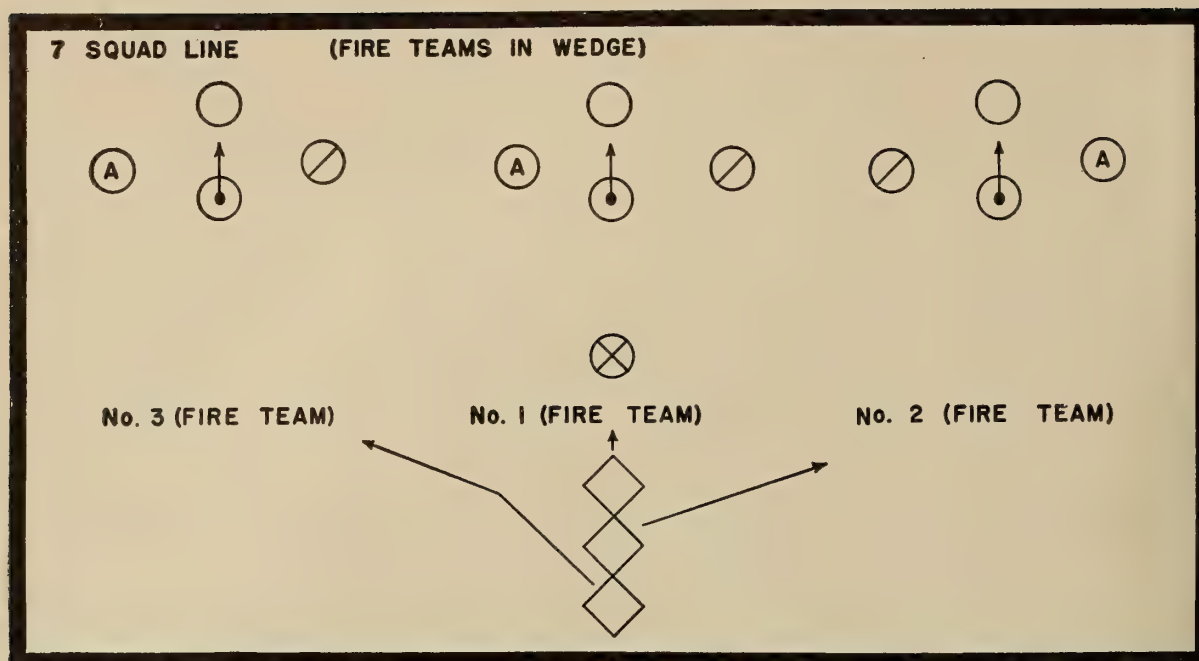


FIGURE 18.—Squad line (Fire teams in wedge).

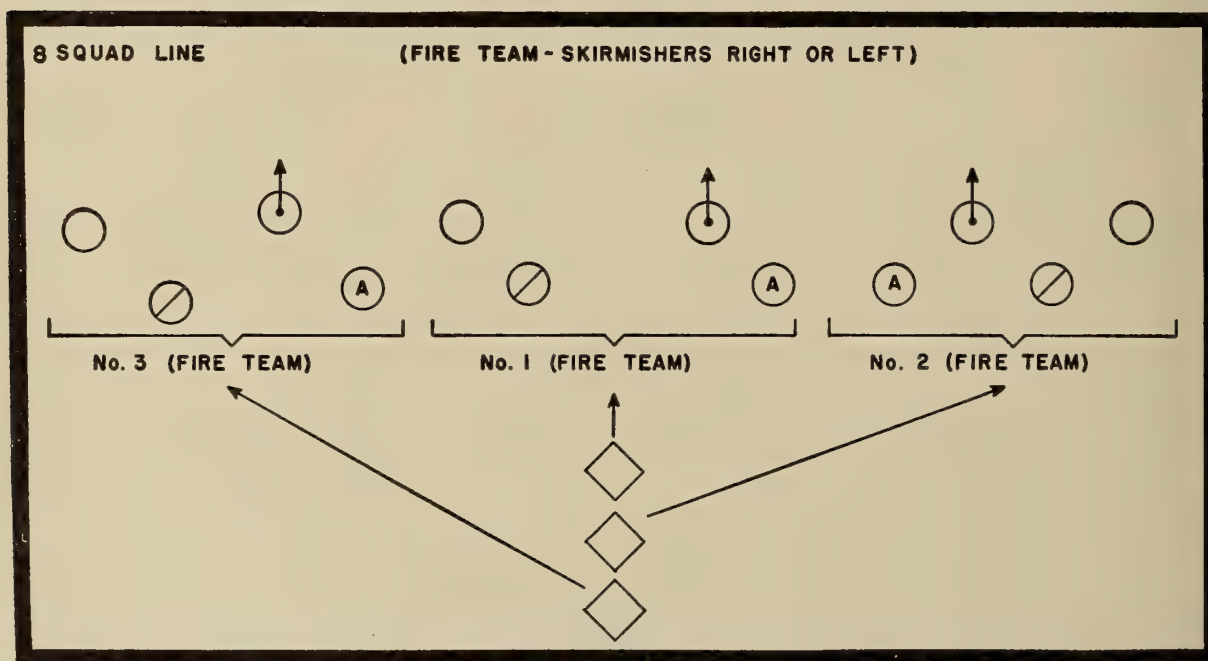


FIGURE 19.—Squad line (with fire teams-skirmishers right and left).

SECTION III

COMBAT SIGNALS

	Par.	Page
General.....	9-6	301
Whistle signals.....	9-7	301
Special signals.....	9-8	301
Arm-and-hand signals.....	9-9	301
Additional arm-and-hand signals for weapons units.....	9-10	306
General instruction for making arm-and-hand signals.....	9-11	307

9-6 GENERAL.—Signals are used to transmit commands or information when conditions are such that voice communication is difficult or impossible, or when silence must be maintained. Signals may be whistle, special, or arm-and-hand. Subordinate leaders repeat signals to their units whenever necessary to insure prompt reception.

9-7 WHISTLE SIGNALS.—*a. Attention to orders.*—(1) Sound a short blast of the whistle. This signal is used to fix the attention of troops, or of their commanders and leaders, preparatory to giving commands, orders, or signals.

(2) At the short blast of the whistle, squad leaders in charge of portions of the firing line will fix their attention upon their leader. If the signal was given by the commander of some other unit, or if no orders or commands are given by their own leader, they will at once return full attention to their own squad or group.

b. Cease firing.—Sound a long blast of the whistle. This signal will be verified at once by an arm-and-hand signal or by other means.

c. Air or tank warning.—Three long blasts, repeated several times.

9-8 SPECIAL SIGNALS.—Special signals cover all the special methods and devices used to transmit commands or information. Rifle shots or bursts from an automatic rifle may be used as signals, provided the entire command is acquainted with the signals to be used, and the sound is distinct enough to be easily heard

and understood. The squad leader operating at night, may find the use of raps on his helmet or rifle butt an effective way by which to signal "halt," "danger," "move forward," "assemble here," etc. These signals must be determined and rehearsed prior to the occasion for their use. Various pyrotechnic and smoke signals may be designated as signals to attack, withdraw, mark front lines, indicate targets, etc.

The following signals will be used by observers of all arms and services in transmitting warning of the approach or presence of hostile aircraft or mechanized vehicles:

Three long blasts of a whistle, vehicular horn, siren, or klaxon repeated several times; or three equally spaced shots with rifle or pistol; or three short bursts of fire from machine gun or sub-machine gun. In daylight, the individual giving the signal points in the direction of the impending danger; at night the alarm signal will be supplemented by voice warning to indicate the direction of danger. This enumeration does not exhaust the possibilities for special signals, but merely mentions a few. Various leaders may exercise their ingenuity to devise others.

9-9 ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS.—*a.* If a movement is to be executed by a particular unit or units of a command, a signal designating the unit or units will be given before the signal for the movement.

b. Explanations and diagrams of various arm-and-hand signals are contained in the following illustrations.

(1) *Forward.*—*To the right (left); to the rear—(used when starting from a halt).*—Face and move in the desired direction of march; at the same time extend the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, palm to the front, and lower the arm and hand in the direction of movement until horizontal. (See fig. 20.)



FIGURE 20.—Forward.

(2) *Halt*.—Carry the hand to the shoulder, palm to front; then thrust the hand upward vertically to the full extent of the arm and hold it in that position until the signal is understood. (See fig. 21.)



FIGURE 21.—Halt.

(3) *Down; or, take cover*.—Turn toward the unit or group and raise the hand(s), palm down, in front of the elbow, forearm horizontal; thrust the hand downward and back to this position. (See fig. 22.)



FIGURE 22.—Down.

(4) *Double time or rush*.—Carry the hand to the shoulder, fist closed; rapidly thrust the fist upward vertically to the full extent of the arm and back to the shoulder several times. (See fig. 23.)



FIGURE 23.—Double time.

(5) *Quick time (walk)*.—Raise the elbow to a position above and to the right (left) of the shoulder and extend the forearm to the left (right), hand above the head, palm to the front. (See fig. 24.)



FIGURE 24.—Quick time (walk).

(6) *Change direction (right or left)*.—Carry the hand that is on the side toward the new direction across the body to the opposite shoulder and, with the palm down and the forearm horizontal, swing the forearm in a horizontal plane, extending the arm and hand to point in the new direction. (See fig. 25.)



FIGURE 25.—Change direction.

(7) *Assemble*.—Raise the hand vertically to the full extent of the arm, fingers extended and joined, and describe large horizontal circles with the arm and hand. (See fig. 26.)



FIGURE 26.—Assemble.

(8) *Fix bayonets.*—Simulate the movement of the right hand in fixing a bayonet on rifle. (See fig. 27.)



FIGURE 27.—Fix bayonets.

(9) *As skirmishers.*—Raise both arms laterally until horizontal, arms and hands extended, palms down. If it is necessary to indicate direction of march, signal FORWARD, moving at the same time in the desired direction. (See fig. 28.)



FIGURE 28.—As skirmishers.

(10) *As skirmishers, right (left).*—Raise both arms laterally until horizontal, arms and hands extended, palms down; swing the arm and hand on the side toward which the deployment is to be made, upward until vertical and

back immediately to the horizontal position; repeat swinging movement several times, hold the other arm and hand steadily in the horizontal position until the signal is completed. (See fig. 29.)



FIGURE 29.—As skirmishers, right (left).

(11) *Fire team.*—Cross forearms above head. (See fig. 30.)



FIGURE 30.—Fire team.

(12) *Squad.*—Extend the hand and arm toward the squad leader, palm of the hand down; distinctly move the hand up and down several times from the wrist, holding the arm steady. (See fig. 31.)

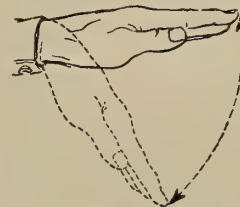


FIGURE 31.—Squad.

(13) *Platoon.*—Extend both arms forward, palms of the hands down, toward the leader(s) or unit(s) for whom the signal is intended and describe large vertical circles with the hands. (See fig. 32.)

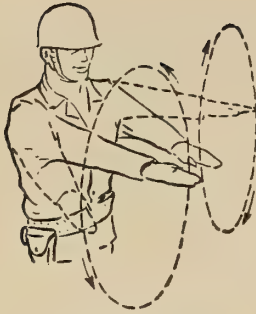


FIGURE 32.—Platoon.

(14) *Column*.—From a position of arm straight out toward the leader(s) or unit for whom the signal is intended, drop the arm and hand to the side and immediately swing them back up in a pendulum-line movement straight to the front, not higher than the shoulder and then drop them back again to the side. (See fig. 33.)



FIGURE 33.—Column.

(15) *V*.—Extend arms at an angle of 45° above the horizontal forming the letter V with arms and torso. (See fig. 34.)



FIGURE 34.—V

(16) *Echelon*.—Extend arms forward with fists closed. Draw the fist horizontally to-

ward the chest on the side toward which the echelonment is to be made. (See fig. 35.)



FIGURE 35.—Echelon.

(17) *Line* (same as “As skirmishers”). (See fig. 29.)

(18) *Wedge*.—Raise both arms vertically overhead, palms inward in contact with each other. (See fig. 36.)

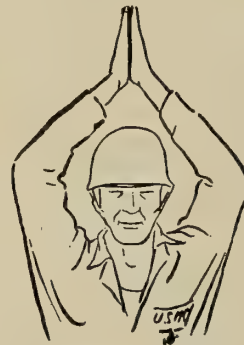


FIGURE 36.—Wedge.

(19) *Shift*.—Point to individuals or units concerned. Then beat on chest simultaneously with both fists. (See fig. 37.)



FIGURE 37.—Shift.

(20) *Enemy in sight*.—Hold the rifle horizontally above the head with the arm or arms extended as if guarding the head. (See fig. 38.)



FIGURE 38.—Enemy in sight.

(21) *Range or change elevation.*—Extend the arm fully toward the leader or men for whom the signal is intended with fist closed. This is the signal for battle sight. Open the fist, exposing one finger for each 100 yards of range. Change elevation by indicating the complete new range. (See fig. 39.)



FIGURE 39.—Range or change elevation.

(22) *Are you ready?*—Extend the arm toward the leader for whom the signal is intended, hand raised, fingers extended and joined, palm toward the leader. (See fig. 40.)



FIGURE 40.—Are you ready?

(23) *I am ready.*—Execute the signal ARE YOU READY. (See fig. 40.)

(24) *Commence firing.*—Extend the arm and hand horizontally in front of the body to their full extent, palm of the hand down; move them several times through a wide horizontal arc. (See fig. 41.)



FIGURE 41.—Commence firing.

(25) *Fire faster.*—Execute rapidly the signal COMMENCE FIRING. For machine guns, a change to the next higher rate of fire is required. (See fig. 41.)

(26) *Fire slower.*—Execute slowly the signal, COMMENCE FIRING. For machine guns, a change to the next lower rate of fire is required. (See fig. 41.)

(27) *Cease firing.*—Raise the hand in front of the forehead, palm to the front, and swing it up and down several times in front of the face. (See figure 42.)



FIGURE 42.—Cease firing.

(28) *Leaders join me.*—Extend an arm toward the leaders and beckon the leaders to you. (See fig. 43.)



FIGURE 43.—Leaders join me.

(29) *To move by the right (left) flank.*—Straighten the left (right) arm and swing it, palm up out to the side and overhead. As your arm comes overhead, execute precisely "by the right (left) flank" and at the same time swing

your arm down to the horizontal to the right (left). (See fig. 44.)

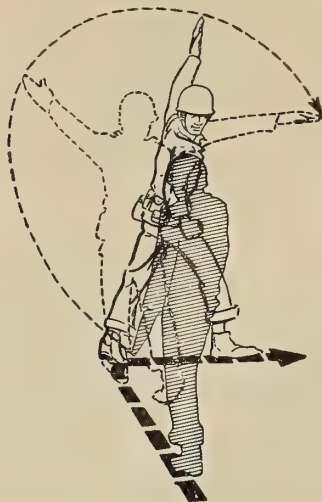


FIGURE 44.—To move by the right (left) flank.

9-10 ADDITIONAL ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS FOR WEAPONS UNITS.—a.

Many of the arm-and-hand signals presented in subparagraphs (1) to (29) above are applicable by all units. There are additional arm-and-hand signals that may be employed by weapons units.

b. Explanations and diagrams of additional arm-and-hand signals employed by weapons units are contained in the following subparagraphs.

(1) *Action*.—Thrust the fist several times in the direction of the position where action is desired. (See fig. 45.)



FIGURE 45.—Action.

(2) *Out of action*.—Strike the fist of one hand rapidly against the open palm of the other several times. (See fig. 46.)



FIGURE 46.—Out of action.

(3) *Elevate; depress*.—Extend one arm toward the gunner(s) concerned; move the hand in short upward (downward) movements by flexing the wrist; with the palm of the hand toward the gunner(s), expose one finger for each mil the gun is to be elevated (depressed). (See fig. 47.)



FIGURE 47.—Elevate; depress.

(4) *Traversing fire*.—Face the target, extend one arm fully to the front; move it upward and downward with a chopping motion; and at the same time swinging the arm to the right (left) in the direction it is desired to distribute the fire. (See fig. 48.)



FIGURE 48.—Traversing fire.

(5) *Section*.—Extend one arm toward the section leader, palm of the hand down and describe large vertical circles. (See fig. 49.)



FIGURE 49.—Section.

9-11 GENERAL INSTRUCTION FOR MAKING ARM-AND-HAND SIGNALS.—

a. When possible, signals will begin with the hand at the side and will be completed when it returns to that position.

(b) If any movement is to be executed by an element of a command, the first part of the signal designates the element and is followed by the signal for the movement.

c. Whenever practicable a second signal should not be given before the first one has been executed.

SECTION IV

TECHNIQUE OF FIRE—RIFLE AND MACHINE GUN

	Par.	Page
Definitions.....	9-12	308
Characteristics.....	9-13	308
Classes of fire.....	9-14	311
Overhead fire.....	9-15	313
Range estimation.....	9-16	314
Target designation.....	9-17	315
Fire discipline.....	9-18	318
Fire control.....	9-19	318
Fire distribution.....	9-20	319
Fire orders.....	9-21	322
Application of fire.....	9-22	323
Final protective lines.....	9-23	323
Range card.....	9-24	325

9-12 DEFINITIONS.—*a.* The technique of fire is the application and control of the combined fire of a fire unit.

b. A rifle fire unit is a group of riflemen under the immediate control of a leader.

c. A machine gun fire unit is a machine gun section (two guns) under the immediate control of a section leader.

9-13 CHARACTERISTICS.—The fire of rifles and machine guns has the following characteristics:

a. Trajectory.—The trajectory is the curved path of the bullet in its flight through the air. Trajectory is influenced by three forces: Velocity of the projectile, gravity, and air resistance. The farther the bullet travels, the greater becomes the curvature of this path. The highest point on this trajectory (maximum ordinate) is a point approximately two-thirds of the range from the weapon to the target. (See fig. 50.)

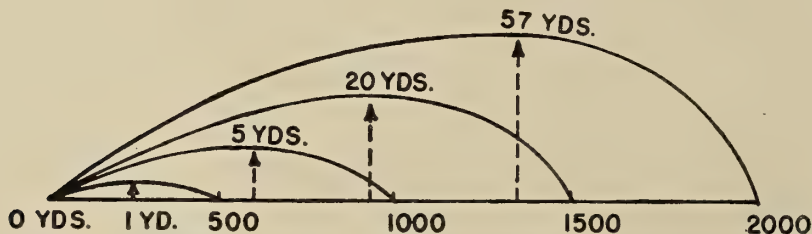


FIGURE 50.—Maximum ordinates for M2 ball ammunition. (Vertical scale is 10 times the horizontal.)

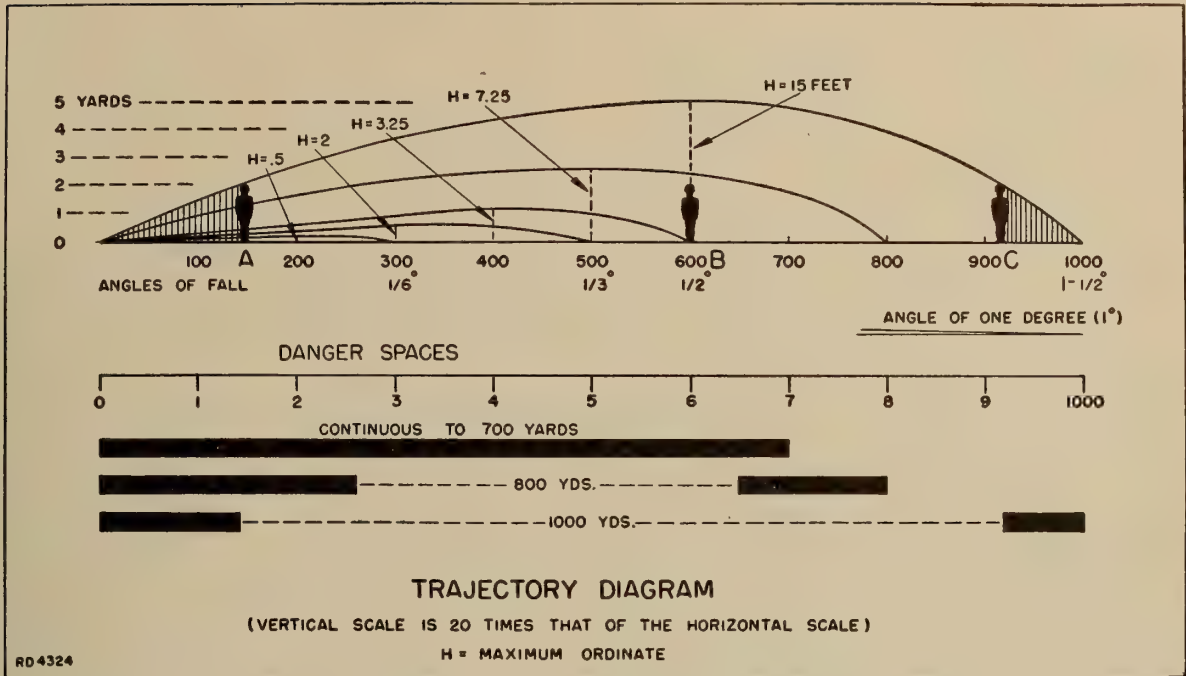


FIGURE 51.—Danger space at 1,000-yard range.

b. Danger space.—Danger space is the area between the weapon and the point of impact in which the bullet does not rise above a height

of 68 inches, which is assumed to be the height of an average man. At ranges up to seven hundred yards a cal. .30 M-2 bullet fired over

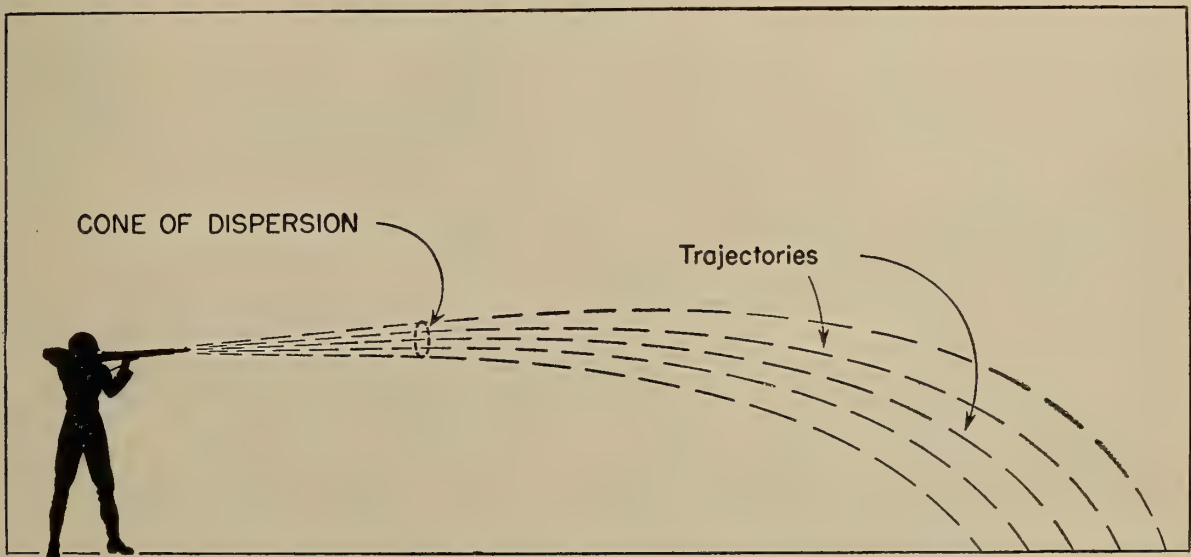


FIGURE 52.—Cone of dispersion or cone of fire.

level or uniformly sloping ground does not rise above this height and danger space is therefore continuous. At ranges greater than 700 yards a portion of the trajectory is above this height and danger space is not continuous, but exists for a variable distance in front of the muzzle and in front of the point of impact where the bullet has again come within 68 inches of the ground. The length of these two zones of danger space is dependent upon the range.

c. Burst of fire.—A number of shots fired automatically with a single pressure of the trigger. For machine guns the number of shots in a burst of fire depends upon several factors including the size and shape of the target, ground formation, and ammunition supply. For normal ground targets the number of rounds in each burst will vary from 6 to 10.

d. Dispersion.—When several bullets are fired from a rifle or a machine gun held in a fixed position there is a slight variation in the trajectories. This variation is due to differences in powder charge, weight of the bullet,

atmospheric and wind conditions, and variations caused by the vibration of the weapon. This effect is known as dispersion. The several trajectories form a cone in the air with its apex at the muzzle of the weapon. This imaginary cone is known as the cone of dispersion or cone of fire. (See fig. 52.)

e. Shot patterns.—When the cone of dispersion strikes a vertical target it makes a pattern known as the vertical shot pattern. This pattern is oval in shape. The pattern made on a horizontal target is known as the horizontal shot pattern. It is a long narrow ellipse. (See figs. 53 and 54.)

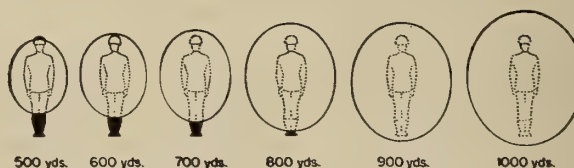


FIGURE 53.—Vertical shot pattern at various ranges.

RANGE IN YARDS

TABLE OF APPROXIMATE EFFECTIVE BEATEN ZONES ON LEVEL GROUND - M2 BULLET

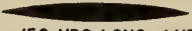
500	 150 YDS. LONG - 1 YD. WIDE
1000	 90 YDS. LONG - 2 YDS. WIDE
1500	 65 YDS. LONG - 3 YDS. WIDE
2000	 55 YDS. LONG - 4 YDS. WIDE

FIGURE 54.—Horizontal shot patterns at various ranges.

f. Beaten zone.—The beaten zone is the portion of the ground struck by the bullets. The size and shape of the beaten zone depend upon the range and the slope of the ground. (See fig. 55.)

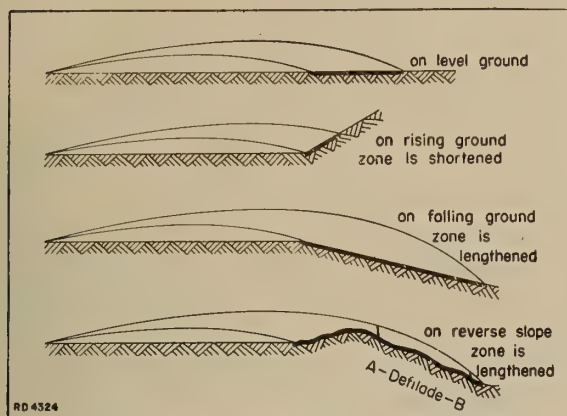


FIGURE 55.—Effect of ground slopes on beaten zone.

9-14 CLASSES OF FIRE.—Fire is classified with respect to the target, the ground, and the gun.

a. Fire with respect to the target may be:

(1) *Frontal.*—Fire delivered perpendicular to the enemy front. (See fig. 56.)

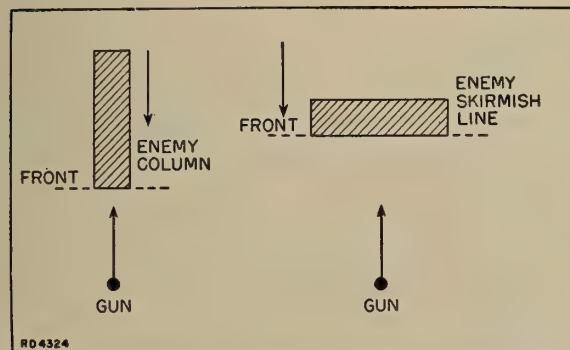


FIGURE 56.—Frontal fire against an enemy column (on the left) and an enemy skirmish line (on the right).

(2) *Flanking.*—Fire delivered perpendicular to the enemy flank. (See fig. 57.)

(3) *Enfilade.*—Fire delivered in such a manner that the long axis of the beaten zone corresponds with the long axis of the target. Enfilade fire may be either frontal or flanking dependent upon the formation of the target. Since enfilade fire makes maximum use of the beaten zone in relation to the shape of the tar-

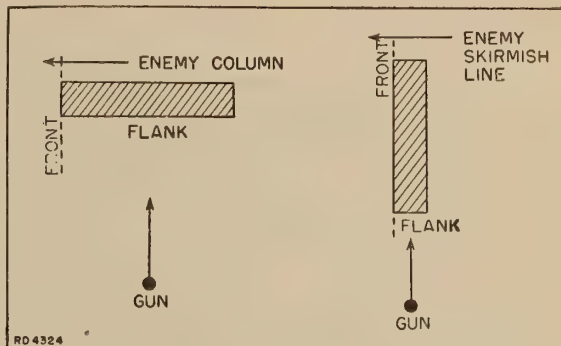


FIGURE 57.—Flanking fire against an enemy column (on the left) and an enemy skirmish line (on the right).

get it is the most effective fire. (See fig. 56 (on the left) and fig. 57 (on the right).)

(4) *Oblique.*—Fire delivered from a direction which is neither frontal nor flanking. (See fig. 58.)

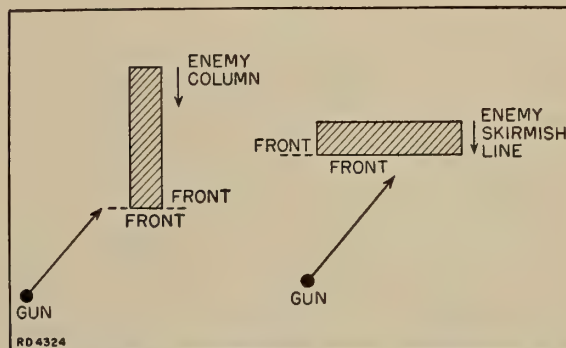


FIGURE 58.—Oblique fire against an enemy column (on the left) and an enemy skirmish line (on the right).

b. Fire with respect to the ground may be:

(1) *Grazing.*—Fire in which the trajectory is not higher than the height of a man standing. Grazing fire can exist for seven hundred yards over level or uniformly sloping ground. (See fig. 59.)

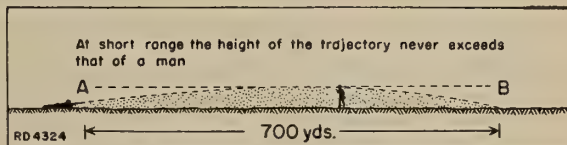


FIGURE 59.—Grazing fire.

(2) *Plunging.*—Fire which strikes the ground at a considerable angle. In plunging fire the danger space is practically limited to the beaten zone. (See fig. 60.)

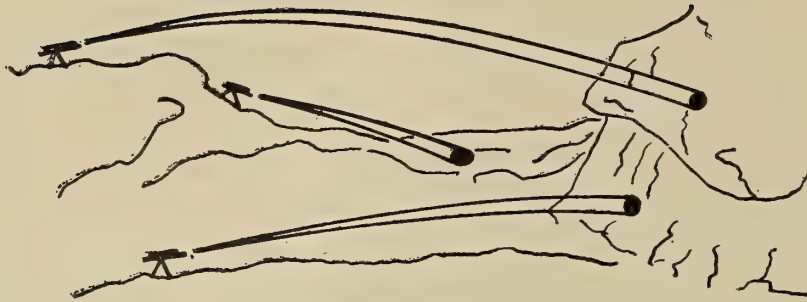


FIGURE 60.—Plunging fire.

(3) *Overhead*.—Overhead fire is fire delivered over the heads of friendly troops. (See par. 9–15.)

c. Fire with respect to the machine gun may be:

(1) *Fixed fire*.—Fixed fire is fire delivered on a point target. The depth of the beaten zone must be sufficient to include the target. Fire is continuous as long as any portion of the target remains in the zone of fire.

(2) *Searching fire*.—Searching fire is fire distributed in depth by successive changes of elevation of the gun. Searching fire is used against targets too deep to be included in the beaten zone of fixed fire. A burst of fire is delivered after each change of elevation. The amount of change depends upon the range and the conformation of the ground. On level ground, with the target at the same elevation as the gun, a change of 2 mils is usually employed because it causes the successive beaten zones to overlap.

(3) *Traversing fire*.—(a) *General*.—Traversing fire is fire distributed in width by successive changes in the direction of the gun. A burst

of fire is delivered after each change of direction. The exact amount of change in direction after each burst depends upon the range and density of the target. If dense fire is desired, a 2 mil change in direction will usually cause sufficient overlap of the beaten zones.

(b) *Swinging traverse*.—Swinging traverse is employed against moving targets when fairly rapid changes in direction, but not in elevation, and continuous fire control of the gun are desired. Targets may be dense targets of considerable width in relatively close formations moving slowly toward the gun, or vehicles or mounted troops moving across the front parallel or approximately parallel to the gun position. The traversing slide clamp is loosened only sufficiently to permit the gunner to swing the gun by exerting slight lateral force against the grip. The gun is laid on any portion of the target and traversed while being fired continuously.

(4) *Traversing and searching fire combined*.—Combined traversing and searching fire is fire distributed both in width and depth by changes in direction and elevation. It is employed

against targets whose longer axes are oblique to the direction of the fire, when the difference in range to the far and near ends is greater than the depth of the beaten zone. Changes in direction and elevation are made successively after each burst. The traverse will usually be 2 mils; the amount of search will depend on the obliquity of the target.

9-15 OVERHEAD FIRE.—*a. Definition.*—(See par. 9-14-*b* (3).)

b. Rifle.—Overhead fire with the rifle is safe when the ground affords protection to friendly troops or when the troops are a sufficient distance below the line of fire. There are no mathematical rules which determine the safety angles for overhead fire with the rifle in battle. Whether or not it should be used in any particular case is a matter of good judgment.

c. Machine gun.—A machine gun on a tripod is capable of delivering accurate overhead fire because of the small and uniform dispersion of the cone of fire. In the attack, the use of overhead fire permits the machine gun to support the advance of rifle units. To permit overhead fire on any target the cone of such fire must pass over the heads of friendly troops by a certain

distance. This distance is called minimum clearance. There are two rules by means of which the prescribed minimum clearance may be determined. These rules are known as the gunner's rule and the leader's rule.

(1) *Gunner's rule.*—The gunner's rule is used to determine the minimum clearance when the range to the target is 900 yards or less. The rule is as follows:

(a) Lay the gun on the target with the correct sight setting to hit the target.

(b) Without disturbing the lay of the gun set the rear sight at 1500 yards.

(c) Look through the sights and note the point where this new line of aim strikes the ground. If this point is beyond the feet of friendly troops, overhead fire can be delivered safely until the troops reach this point. It is not safe to fire when the troops pass this point. (See fig. 61.)

(2) *Leader's rule.*—The leader's rule is used by the platoon or section leader only in case the range to the target is greater than 900 yards. The rule is as follows:

(a) Select a point on the ground to which it

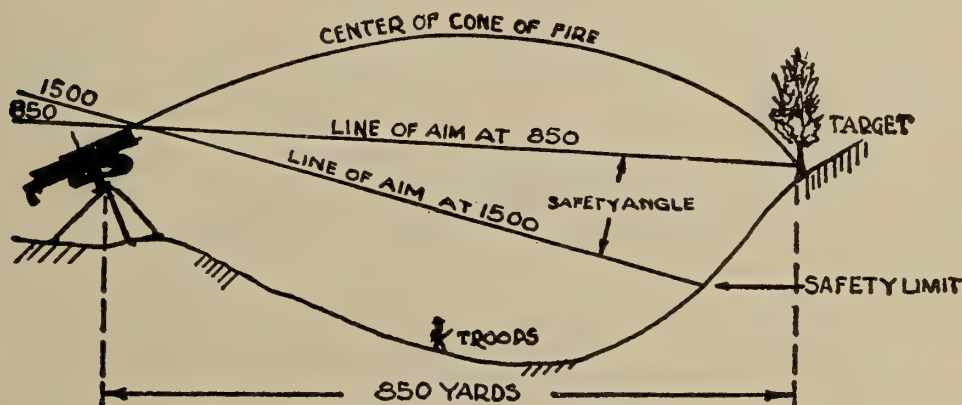


FIGURE 61.—Application of gunner's rule.

is believed friendly troops can advance with safety.

(b) Determine the range to this point by the most accurate means available.

(c) Lay the gun on the target with the correct sight setting to hit the target.

(d) Without disturbing the lay of the gun, set the rear sight at 1,500 yards or the range to the selected point plus 600 yards, whichever is greater. Under no condition should the sight setting be less than 1,500 yards.

(e) Note the point where the new line of aim strikes the ground.

(f) If it strikes at the selected point, that point marks the limit of safety.

(g) If it strikes short of the selected point, it is safe for troops to advance to the point where the line of aim strikes the ground, and to an unknown point beyond. If it is desired to fire after friendly troops advance farther than the point where the line of aim strikes the ground, this farther point must be determined by testing new points until the line of aim and the selected point coincide.

(h) If it clears the selected point, it is safe

for the troops to advance to the selected point, and to an unknown point beyond. If it is desired to have troops advance beyond the selected point, this further point must be determined by testing new selected points until the line of aim and the selected point coincide. This point marks the limit of safety. (See fig. 62.)

9-16 RANGE ESTIMATION.—*a. Importance.*—In battle, ranges are seldom known in advance. In order to bring effective fire to bear on the enemy it is essential that riflemen and machine gunners be trained to quickly and accurately estimate ranges.

b. Methods.—(1) Ranges are estimated by the following methods:

By eye.

By tracer bullets.

By observation of fire.

(2) *Estimation by eye.*—(a) This is the usual method of estimating range in combat. It is accomplished by mentally applying a unit of measure to the distance to the target. The unit of measure normally used is 100 yards. It is necessary to be familiar with the appearance of

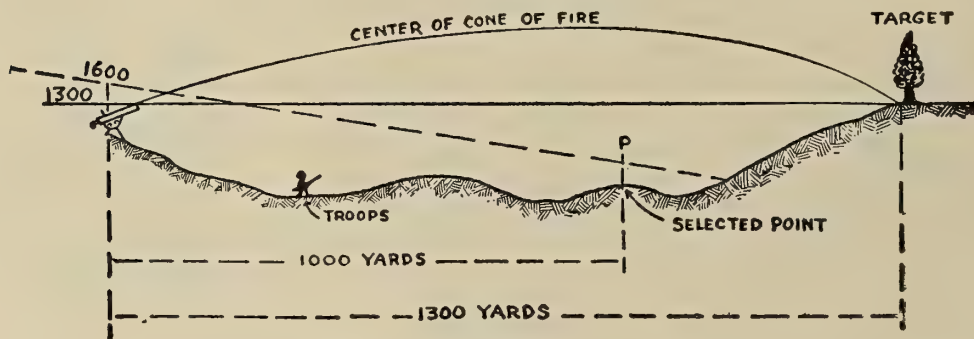


FIGURE 62.—Application of leader's rule.

this unit at various distances and over varying types of terrain in order to be able to use it effectively when estimating ranges by eye.

(b) This method is difficult to apply to distances over 500 yards. When the range exceeds 500 yards a point half way to the target is selected and the range to this halfway point estimated by applying the 100 yard unit. The result is then doubled.

(c) When much of the ground between the observer and the target is hidden, the mental unit cannot be applied. In some cases it may be possible to estimate the range by use of a mental arc. This method can be applied when the ground to one side or the other of the line to the target is suitable for use of the mental unit. In this case the observer moves his gaze in a mental arc to right or left of the target until a prominent object on this arc is located. The range to this object is then determined by use of the 100-yard unit and the result is taken as the range to the target.

(d) When neither of these methods is applicable the range may be estimated by the appearance of objects. Conditions of light, atmosphere, color, and terrain affect the apparent distance of objects. Objects appear nearer when they are in a bright light, when there is distinct color contrast with their background, when observing from a height downward, when the observer and object are at high altitudes, and when observing across a depression most of which is hidden. Objects appear more distant in dull, foggy weather, when only a small part of the object is seen, when observing from a depth upward, and when observing across a depression most of which is visible.

(e) Accurate estimation of ranges by eye requires considerable practice over all types of terrain and under all conditions of visibility. The use of known-distance ranges with markers every 100 yards is recommended for initial training and until facility in range estimation is acquired.

(3) *Estimation by tracer.*—Tracer bullets produce a red flame which is visible for about 950 yards of their flight. In estimating range by means of tracer the firer first estimates the range by eye to determine the initial sight setting. Thereafter, by watching the strike of

the tracer bullets he corrects his sight setting so as to hit the target. The sight setting thus determined is the range.

(4) *Estimation by observation of fire.*—Ranges can be determined by observing where the bullets strike the ground. In suitable terrain the puff of dust kicked up will appear slightly above the target and to one side or the other depending on the direction of the wind. The same procedure is used in setting the sights as when tracer bullets are used.

(5) *Range estimation for machine gun.*—Other means of range estimation used particularly by machine gun units are:

(a) Measuring the range from a map or aerial photograph.

(b) Securing data from other units.

(c) Range finding instruments.

9-17 TARGET DESIGNATION.—a. In battle, targets are generally indistinct and often invisible to the naked eye. They are discovered only by the keenest observation, frequently with the aid of field glasses. Because an enemy unnoticed and unmolested can bring damaging fire upon our troops, it is essential that concealed targets be discovered and properly pointed out so that they may be engaged. If a leader knows the location of a target but his designation of it is faulty his men cannot be expected to place their fire at the desired point. Although the principles of target designation are simple and easy to learn, conditions in the field often make their application extremely difficult. Satisfactory results can be obtained only by practice.

b. *Methods of target designation.*—(1) Targets are designated by the following methods:

By tracer.

By pointing.

By laying (the machine gun).

By oral description.

(2) *By tracer.*—(a) Tracer bullets are often the quickest, surest, and simplest means of designating a target. To designate a point target the firer announces the range and nature of the target then cautions, "Watch my tracers," and proceeds to fire tracers at the target. This method has the disadvantage of removing the element of surprise and revealing the firer's position.

(b) If the target has width its flanks are

indicated by tracers. As tracers are fired the flanks are indicated by the words "Enemy left flank" and "Enemy right flank." In the case of a target having depth the front and rear of the target are similarly indicated. In either case the observers know that the area between the places indicated by tracer contains the target.

(3) *By pointing.*—(a) Targets can be pointed out with the hand and arm if very obvious.

(b) A more accurate method of pointing, and one useful when the target is difficult to pick-up, is with the rifle. A rifleman knowing the location of the target, lines it in his rifle sights while in the prone position and with the rifle canted to the right. He then moves his head to the left without disturbing the lay of the sights and other members of the unit move to a position from which they can look through the sights. For greater steadiness the bayonet may be driven in the ground to form a rest for the forward part of the rifle.

(4) *By laying the gun.*—Laying the machine gun on a target is a quick, sure, and simple

method, and does not sacrifice surprise effect. To use this method, the leader announces the range and direction and then goes to each gun, lays it on the target, requires the gunner and observer at the gun to check the laying and completes the designation orally.

(5) *By oral description.*—(a) The elements of an oral description are:

Range.

Direction.

Reference point (for rifles); auxiliary aiming point (for machine guns).

Description of target.

(b) *Range.*—The range is given first so that the sights may be set before looking at the target. Thus once the target is located it is not necessary to lose sight of it. The only exception to this is when the target is expected to be visible for only a very short period of time. The range is followed immediately by windage corrections if necessary.

(c) *Direction.*—When the target is plainly visible simple direction is given, such as front, right front, right flank, etc. (See fig. 63.)

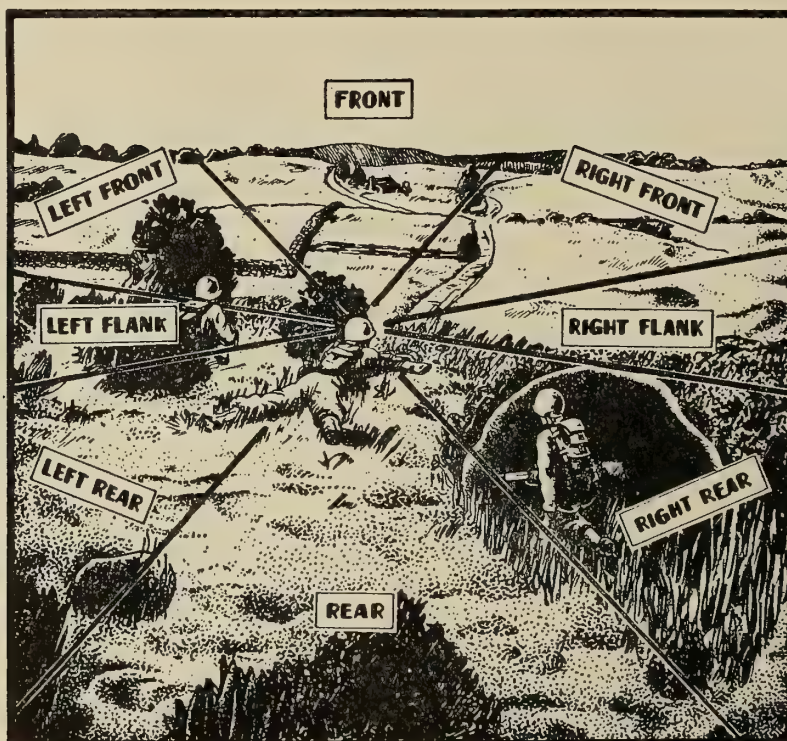


FIGURE 63.—Direction.

(d) *Reference point and auxiliary aiming point.*—1. *Reference point (for rifles).*—(a) When the target is not so readily seen a reference point may be used. This is some prominent terrain feature, either natural or works of man, in relation to which the target may be more easily located. The reference point should be well defined and easily recognized. If possible it should be on line with and beyond the target, for in this position it is more accurate for a number of men firing from positions some distance apart. A reference point on line with, but between the target and the fire unit will diminish in accuracy as it approaches the firing position, and will generally be accurate only for those men who view it from approximately the same position as the one designating the target.

(b) For brevity in fire orders a reference point is called simply "reference." It must be clearly stated which is the reference and which the target. The range is always given to the target and not to the reference point, which is merely referred to as being at a greater or lesser distance than the target.

(c) For reference points not on a line with the target "finger measurements" are used. This consists in measuring the angle between the

reference and the target in terms of finger widths. In order to have a standard unit of measure it is necessary that all men calibrate their fingers. This is done by the individual man determining the distance from his eye he must hold his hand so that one finger covers 50 mils, two fingers 100 mils, etc. When this can be done finger calibration has been established and members of a fire unit may accurately use finger measurements regardless of individual variations in finger width. (See fig. 64.)

(d) When there is no easily discernible reference within four fingers of the target, successive reference points may be used. After the initial reference has been located a second reference, which might not by itself be readily pointed out, is located in relation to the first reference. The target is then designated in terms of finger widths from this second reference.

(e) Finger measurements are used in five orders as indicated in the following examples.

"Range, 500."

"Reference, church spire, left one finger."

"Target, group running." (See fig. 64. target K.)

"Range, 600."

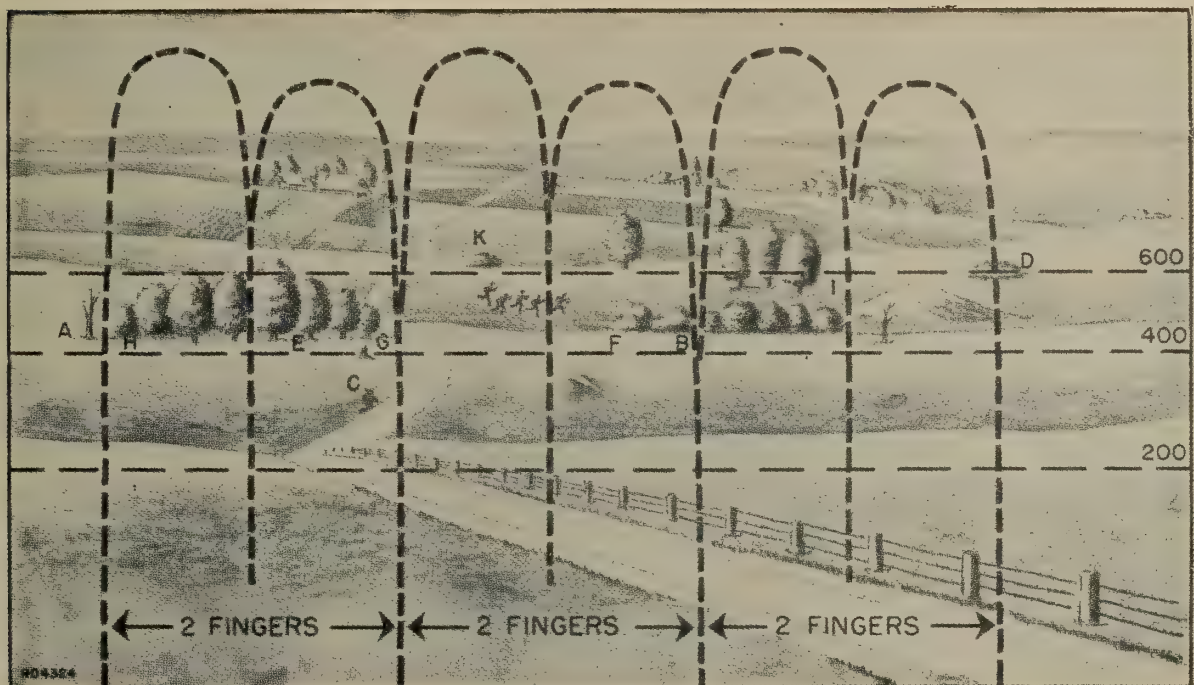


FIGURE 64.—Direction, using reference points.

"Reference, church spire, right two fingers."

"Target, group in shell hole near crest."
(See fig. 64, target D.)

2. *Auxiliary aiming point (for machine guns).—*

When the target is invisible to the gunner or is exceptionally difficult to see, fire may be directed by use of an auxiliary aiming point, securing data by the method given below.

(a) *Gun method.*—Data for auxiliary aiming points may be determined by means of the rear sight slide and windage scale on the gun. The gun is first laid on the target with correct sight setting to hit the target, and when the tactical situation permits, the initial laying is verified by firing. Then, without disturbing the laying of the gun, the rear sight is manipulated so that the line of aim is directed at some clearly defined object (stump, bush, aiming stake) which the gunner will always be able to see, no matter what the conditions of visibility may be. The setting on the rear sight and the windage gauge are recorded. When fire is to be placed on the target, the leader announces these settings in his fire order and directs the gunner to lay on the auxiliary aiming point. Example command: RANGE 1,350; SIGHT RIGHT 10; FRONT AT A DISTANCE OF 300 YARDS, DEAD STUMP; AIMING POINT; FIXED. (See fig. 65.)

(e) *Description of target.*—The target is described in the simplest possible terms; for example: "Machine gun," "Skirmish line," "Sniper." It is not necessary to precede this

with the word "Enemy." An exception to this is when designating flanks of any enemy line. In this case the terms "Enemy right flank" and "Enemy left flank" should be used to avoid confusion with the firing unit's own flanks.

9-18 FIRE DISCIPLINE.—*a.* Fire discipline is the state of order, coolness, efficiency, and obedience existing among troops engaged in a fire fight. It implies the careful observance of instructions relative to the use of the machine gun and rifle in combat and exact execution of the orders of the leader. Fire discipline is necessary for proper control by leaders, and upon this control depends the effectiveness of collective fire. Alertness, the habit of obedience, and other soldierly qualities are essential to fire discipline.

b. Fire discipline is maintained by leaders chiefly by their example of coolness and courage. The responsibility for fire discipline in the platoon rests with the platoon commander who is assisted by his subordinates.

c. Fire discipline in the squad is maintained by the squad leader. There is a tendency for untrained machine gunners and riflemen to open fire at night noises and other nonprofitable targets. Opening fire in such a manner serves only to give away the position and to waste ammunition. The squad leader is responsible for correcting such conditions in the squad.

9-19 FIRE CONTROL.—*a.* Fire control includes all operations connected with the preparation and actual application of fire to a target. It implies the ability of the leader to have his

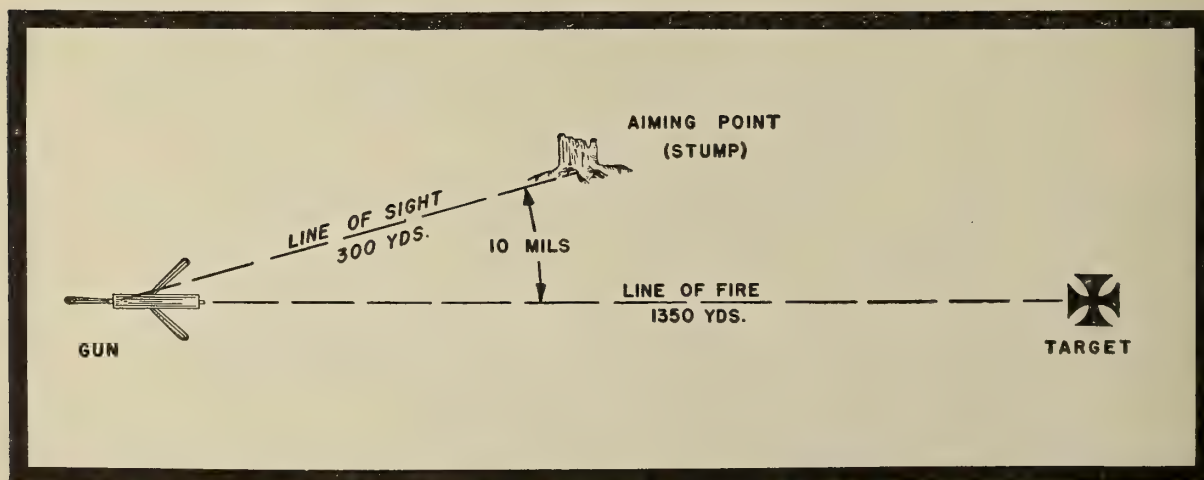


FIGURE 65.—Use of auxiliary aiming point.

unit open fire at the instant he desires, adjusts the fire of his weapons upon the target, shift the fire from one target to another, regulate its rate, and cease firing at will. Lack of proper fire control results in loss of surprise effect, premature disclosure of position, misapplication of fire on unimportant targets, and waste of ammunition. Discipline and correct technical training are fundamental in assuring fire control.

b. The platoon commander's order to his section or squad leaders assigns a mission to each section or squad, or gives the firing position area each will occupy and the targets it will engage, or the sector of fire it will cover. In addition, it frequently prescribes the technique to be employed in engaging targets.

c. The section or squad leader's order prescribes the location for each weapon, the targets to be engaged or sector of fire to be covered, and the technique to be employed.

d. In the absence of orders from the next higher commander, fire is opened, lifted, or shifted, and its rate is regulated by platoon, section, or squad leaders.

9-20 FIRE DISTRIBUTION.—*a.* Fire, to be effective, must be distributed over the entire

target. Improper distribution results in gaps between beaten zones and allows a part of the enemy to escape or to use his weapons without effective opposition.

b. Fire distribution, rifle.—The fire of a rifle unit is either concentrated or distributed. The nature of the target, as given in the fire order, will determine in each rifleman's mind which type of fire to apply.

(1) *Concentrated fire.*—Concentrated fire is directed at a single point. Enemy machine guns and automatic rifles are examples of suitable targets for concentrated fire.

(2) *Distributed fire.*—(*a*) This is fire distributed in width for the purpose of keeping all parts of the target under effective fire. Each rifleman fires his first shot at that portion of the target corresponding generally to his position in the squad. He then distributes his remaining shots over that part of the target extending a few yards right and left of his first shot. The amount of the target which he will cover will be that upon which he can deliver accurate fire without having to change his position. (See fig. 66.)

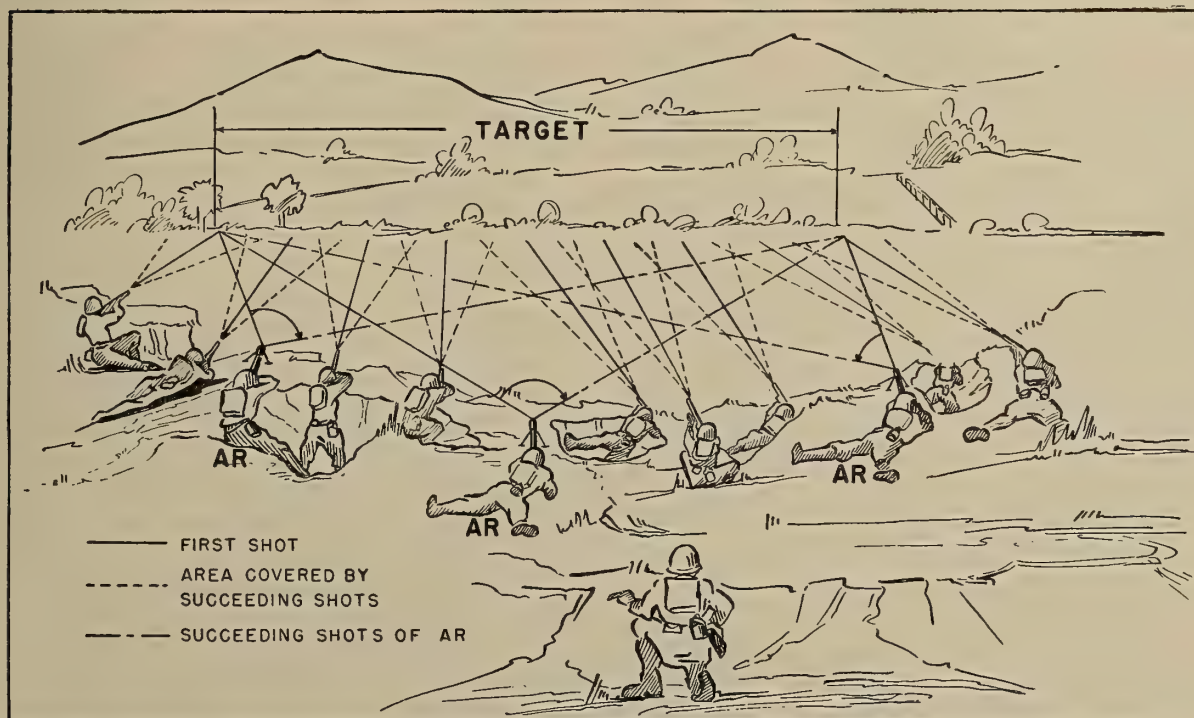


FIGURE 66.—Fire distribution by individuals of the rifle squad.

(b) Unless otherwise instructed the automatic riflemen cover the entire squad target. The automatic riflemen will normally fire in short bursts, and both they and the riflemen will search out and fire upon positions most likely to contain enemy as well as upon more obvious targets. This method enables leaders to distribute the fire of their units on the target area in such a manner that the enemy, whether visible or not, is kept under fire.

(c) This method of fire distribution is employed without command.

(d) When it becomes necessary to engage other targets the leader shifts the fire of such weapons as may be necessary.

(3) *Platoon firing.*—(a) In platoon firing, unless otherwise announced, each squad habitually covers in its entirety the target designated for the platoon. This enables the leader to shift part of his fire to a new target or to remove a squad from the line without leaving a portion of the target no longer under fire.

(b) If it is not desired that each squad cover the entire platoon target it should be announced by the platoon leader and definite sectors of fire assigned to each squad.

(4) *Determining extent of target.*—(a) In combat it will be extremely difficult if not impossible to pick out visually each individual enemy in a dug in and camouflaged position. A few of the individual positions may be located by muzzle blast, but many will be too well camouflaged to be seen. It is, however, imperative that the whole target be engaged if decisive casualties are to be inflicted and the enemy fire neutralized. It does little good to pin down only the obvious positions and allow the remaining enemy to fire unmolested.

(b) Under these circumstances, to effectively apply the fire distribution described above the unit leader must first determine the enemy flanks. This may be done by the following three means:

1. The flanks may be obvious and easily seen.
2. They may be limited by terrain features such as woods, a cliff, a gully.
3. They may be generally located by the direction and sound of the enemy firing.

(c) Having determined the flanks, the squad leader must designate that portion of the target, whether in part or in its entirety, which he

wishes his squad to engage. This can best be done by the use of tracers fired on either flank. The squad then opens fire using the normal fire distribution described above.

c. *Fire distribution, machine guns.*—(1) No fixed rule as to the maximum width of a target that may profitably be engaged by a single gun can be given, although it is preferable that targets be less than 50 mils in width when using light machine guns. The section is the machine gun fire unit. Whenever practicable, at least two guns should be assigned the same mission, although occasions may arise when single guns may profitably be employed. The assignment of a section to a single mission insures continuous fire should either gun be put out of action, provides a greater volume of fire on the target, and reduces the time required to cover the target.

(2) *Method of engaging point targets.*—Targets having a width or depth no greater than the beaten zone for the ground on which they are located are considered as point targets, and should be engaged by fixed fire. The command for this type of fire is: **FIXED**. Gun crews are trained to follow any movement or change in formation made by the enemy after the initial burst of fire.

(3) *Method of engaging wide targets.*—(a) When sections engage frontal targets which are less than 50 mils in width and are less than the length of the beaten zone in depth, the normal traversing method is used. Each gun is laid just outside its corresponding flank of the target and traversed across to a point just outside the other flank and back, each gun covering the entire target. (See fig. 67.) The command for this type of fire is: **TRAVERSE**.

(b) When the target measures 50 mils or more in width, and is less than the length of the beaten zone in depth, the leader assigns half (or any other portion) of the target to one gun, and the remaining half (portion) to the other gun. The assigned half (portion) may or may not correspond to the position of the gun in the section, and one portion may be much less than the other for purposes of increasing the density of fire on the smaller portion. In either case the gun lays on the outside flank of its assigned portion of the target and covers its portion as described in (3) above, and shown in figure 67.

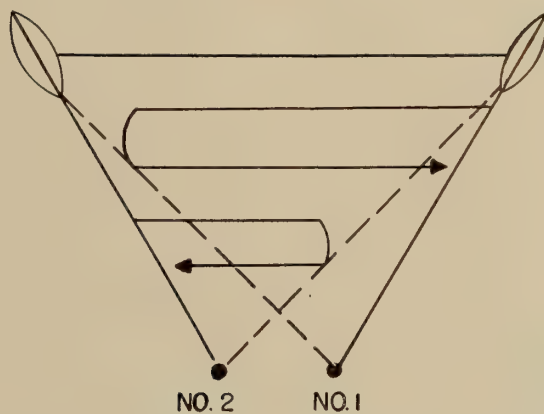


FIGURE 67.—Traversing method by section. Both flanks visible to gunners. Target less than 50 miles in width.

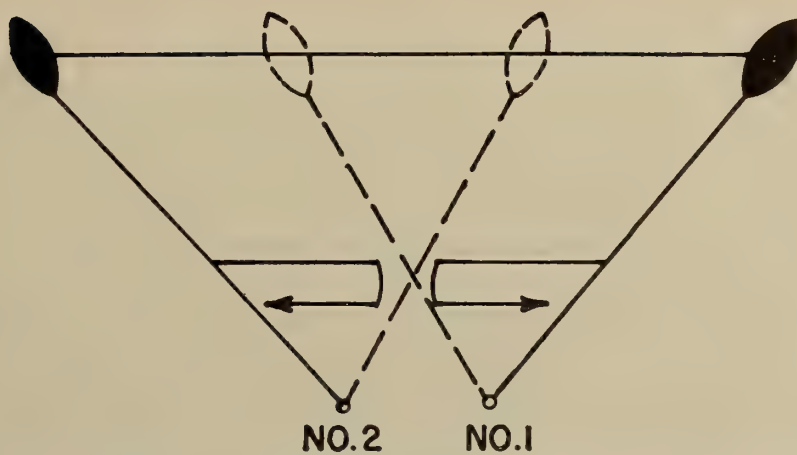


FIGURE 68.—Traversing method by section. Targets 50 miles or more in width. (Each gun assigned a portion of the target.)

The command would be, for example: No. 1, RIGHT HALF; No. 2, LEFT HALF; TRAVERSE. (See fig. 68.)

(4) *Engaging wide targets, flanks of which cannot be seen by gunner.*—If the flanks of the target are invisible to the gunner, the target may be designated as extending so many mils from a point between the flanks which is visible to the gunner. (See fig. 69.) The number of mils designated should be such as to cause the gun to traverse just beyond the flanks. Each gun is then laid on this visible point, called the reference point, and traversed the number of mils designated in one direction and then back the number of mils designated in the other direction.

(5) *Method of engaging deep targets.*—Searching fire is used to cover targets possessing a greater depth than the length of the beaten zone. If the target is stationary, has limited mobility, or is moving slowly, and the ends are visible to the gunner, No. 1 gun is laid on the near end and searched up and No. 2 gun is laid on the far end and searched down. If the depth of the target is estimated to be 200 yards

or less, the range announced for both guns is that to the middle of the target. If the depth of the target is estimated to be more than 200 yards, the range to the near end is announced for No. 1 gun, and that to the far end for No. 2 gun. Under the above conditions, the target is covered by giving the command: SEARCH.

(6) *Target moving toward or away from gun position.*—If the target is moving rapidly toward the guns, both guns are laid on the near end with the range to that point and search up. If the target is moving rapidly away from the guns, both guns are laid on the far end and search down. The distribution element of the command for covering a rapidly approaching or receding target is: ALL GUNS, NEAR (FAR) END, SEARCH.

9-21 FIRE ORDERS.—a. The leader of the fire unit, having made a decision to fire on a target, must give instructions as to how the target is to be engaged. These instructions are given in the form of a fire order. A fire order contains three basic elements. Only such elements or parts thereof as are essential

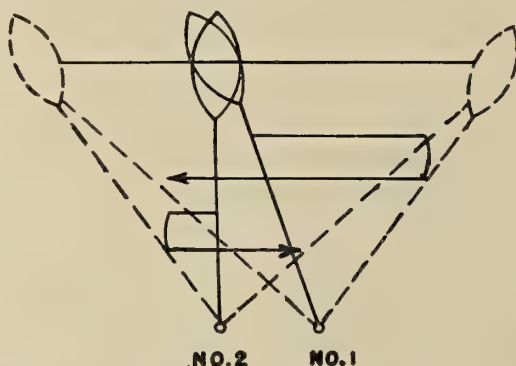


FIGURE 69.—Traversing method by section. Both flanks invisible to gunner.

will be included. These elements are:

Target designation element.

Fire distribution element.

Fire control element.

b. Target designation element.—(See par. 9-17.)

c. Fire distribution element.—(1) This element gives the necessary data to insure delivery of effective fire over the entire target. It specifies the manner by which the firing unit concerned engages point targets, wide targets, deep targets, oblique targets, area targets, and indistinct targets. The fire distribution element includes the subdivision of the target and type of distribution.

(2) When the target is the same for the entire unit except that designated parts of the unit cover only a portion of it, the target designation element will be given first and then the fire distribution element.

d. Fire control element.—(1) This normally consists of the order to commence firing and to cease firing. It may also include the number of rounds or rate of fire.

(2) When it is desired to bring immediate fire to bear on a target the command is COMMENCE FIRING, or merely FIRE. When

a large volume of surprise fire is desired this should be preceded by the preparatory command UPON MY COMMAND. The leader then waits until all riflemen or machine gunners have located the target and aimed before completing the order.

(3) The fire control element includes adjustment correction for machine guns.

e. Example: RANGE 600 YARDS, SKIRMISH LINE ALONG FENCE LINE FROM THE RUINED HOUSE (B) (POINTING) LEFT TO THAT TREE (A) (POINTING), COMMENCE FIRING. (See fig. 70.)

9-22 APPLICATION OF FIRE.—Application of fire consists of placing the fire of a unit on the desired target at the proper time, and the control of the fire thereafter. Accurately controlled fire on the enemy has a physical (casualty producing) and moral effect.

9-23 FINAL PROTECTIVE LINES.—

a. General.—(1) A final protective line is a predetermined line along which, in order to stop enemy assaults, is placed continuous bands of grazing fire, fixed as to elevation and direction, and capable of being delivered under any condition of visibility.

(2) When fixed fire is incapable of producing



FIGURE 70.—Reference points and target.

the maximum effective grazing fire, because of irregularities in the terrain, the fire of rifles may be employed, in order to insure that all of the final protective lines will be covered.

(3) Prior to firing under conditions of poor visibility, the gun is laid on the final protective line during a period of good visibility, and necessary data obtained and recorded. (See Range card, par. 9-24.)

b. Method of laying on final protective lines.—

(1) *Direction.*—The gunner centers the traversing handwheel mechanism and zeros the traversing micrometer. Upon determining along which limit of the sector the final protective line is to lie, the gunner sets the traversing slide toward that end of the traversing bar which is opposite to the direction of the final protective line. (By so doing he obtains the maximum angle of traverse away from the final protective line in the direction of the targets in his sector.) He then shifts the rear legs of the tripod until the sights are aligned on the aiming point. Now the gunner notes the reading on the traversing bar scale. During periods of poor visibility

he may lay for direction by replacing this same reading on the traversing bar scale. (For all readings of the traversing bar scale, the left edge of the traversing slide is used as an index.)

(2) *Elevation.*—The gunner, using a sight setting of 750, lays the gun on an aiming point. (See fig. 71.) He notes the first graduation visible above the elevating handwheel on the elevating screw scale; then he obtains the number on the elevating micrometer dial toward which the indicator is pointing. A combination of these numbers when replaced on the gun will allow the gun to be laid for the same elevation.

c. Rates of fire on final protective line.—(1) *Good visibility.*—Fire on the final protective line during periods of good visibility is aimed and adjusted fire. Under such conditions, the section leader will generally determine the rate of fire and may also give the order to cease firing.

(2) *Poor visibility.*—Under conditions of poor visibility, the battalion order may prescribe the rates of fire. In the absence of instructions,

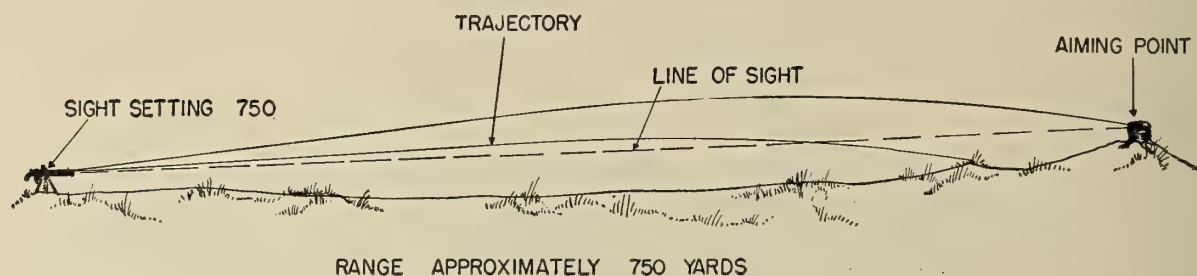


FIGURE 71.—Method of laying when the ground is level or uniformly sloping.

the usual rate of fire for a section on a final protective line is the rapid rate (one box of ammunition per minute) for the first 2 minutes and the medium rate (one-half box of ammunition per minute) until ordered to cease firing. The section rate of fire may be maintained by one gun, or by both guns firing alternating bursts.

d. Habitual laying on final protective line.—Except when other targets are being engaged the gun is habitually laid on the final protective line.

9-24 RANGE CARD.—*a.* By means of data prepared in daylight the machine gun can deliver accurate fire at night or at other times of low visibility. A range card is made on which to record this data.

b. The range card is a diagrammatic sketch of the gun's sector of fire, showing the location

of the gun and probable targets, direction of the final protective line, and the direction and ranges to or elevations necessary to hit those targets. Figure 72 shows a complete range card.

c. The form on which the range card is prepared may be drawn by hand at the time it is needed, or it may be previously prepared, with concentric semicircular lines (arcs) representing hundreds of yards from the gun position.

d. The gun position and its map coordinates are indicated at the center of these semicircles.

e. The data for the range cards is obtained by firing the gun along the final protective line and at the various targets, the recordings being determined from the sight settings, traversing bar and micrometer scale readings, and elevating screw and micrometer scale readings.

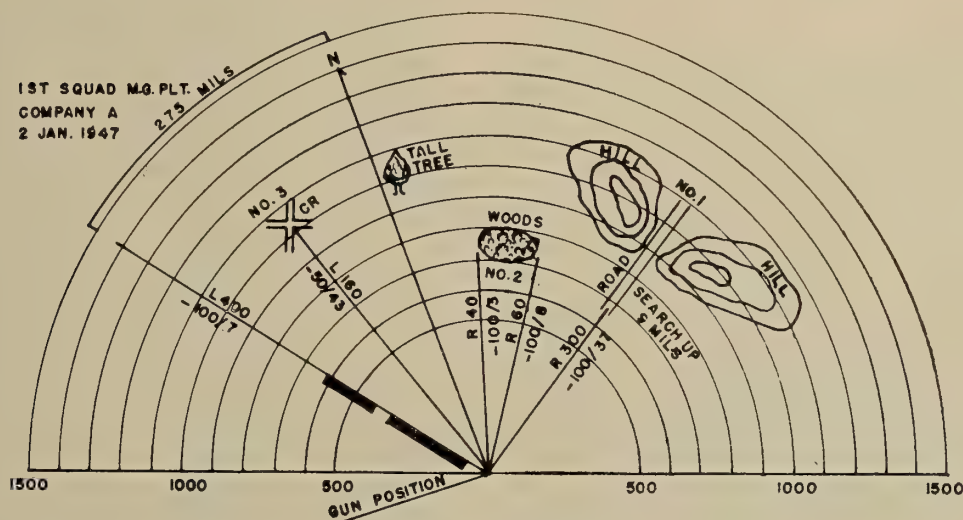


FIGURE 72.—Range card.

SECTION V

USE OF GRENADES

General.....	Par. 9-25	Page 326
Hand grenades.....	9-26	327
Rifle grenades.....	9-27	330

9-25 GENERAL.—*a.* There are two general classes of grenades:

- (1) Hand grenades.
- (2) Rifle grenades.

b. The two classes of grenades are issued in the following types:

(1) *Hand grenades.*—(a) *Fragmentation grenades.*—A fragmentation grenade contains an explosive charge in the grenade body that shatters into casualty producing fragments when the explosive charge is detonated. (See figs. 73 and 74.)

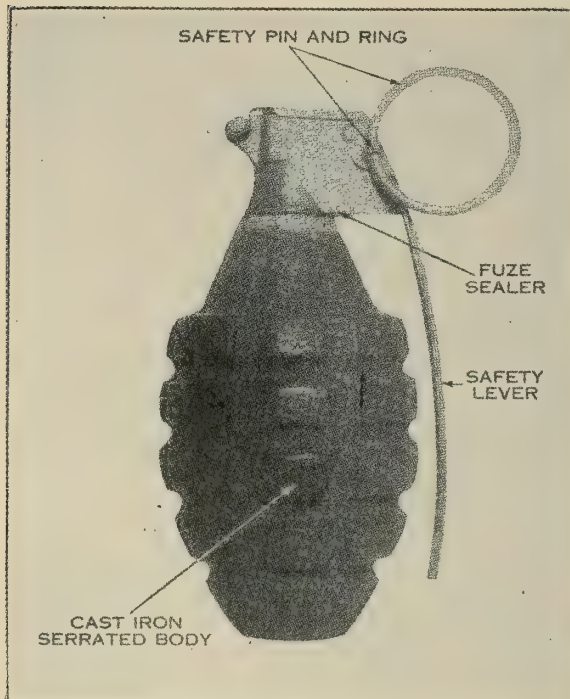


FIGURE 73.—Fragmentation grenade.

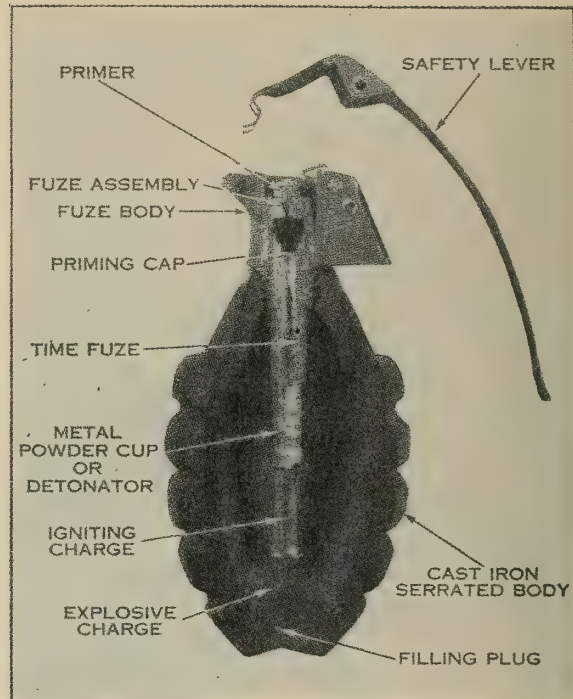


FIGURE 74.—Cross section of fragmentation grenade.

(c) *Chemical grenades.*—A chemical grenade contains a chemical agent having a poisonous or irritating effect on personnel. Chemical grenades may also furnish a screening or signal smoke, illumination, incendiary action, or a combination of the above. (See figs. 75 and 76.)

(d) *Practice grenades.*—A practice grenade contains a reduced charge and is used for training purposes.

(e) *Training grenades.*—Training grenades are used for training purposes and contain no explosive or chemical filler.

(2) *Rifle grenades.*—(a) *Antitank grenades.*—Used for defense against armored attacks.

(b) *Fragmentation grenade.*—Similar to the hand fragmentation grenade and is fired from a rifle with the aid of an adapter. (See par. 9-27b.)

(b) *Offensive grenades.*—An offensive grenade contains a high explosive charge and is designed for concussion effect.

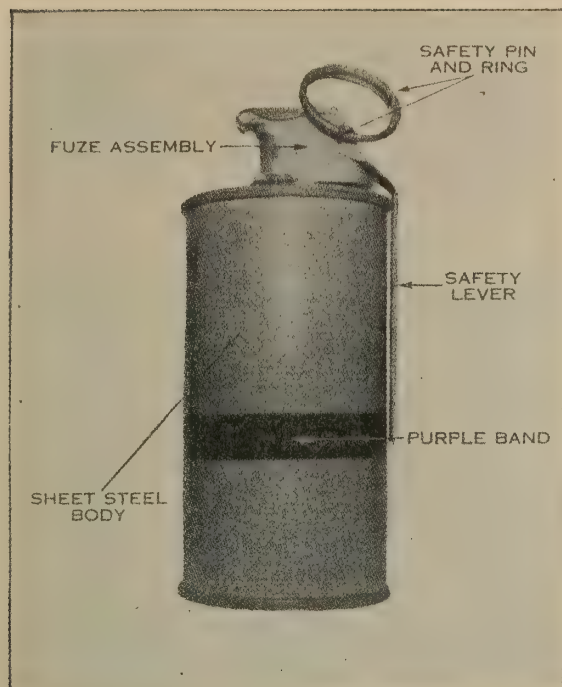


FIGURE 75.—Incendiary grenade.

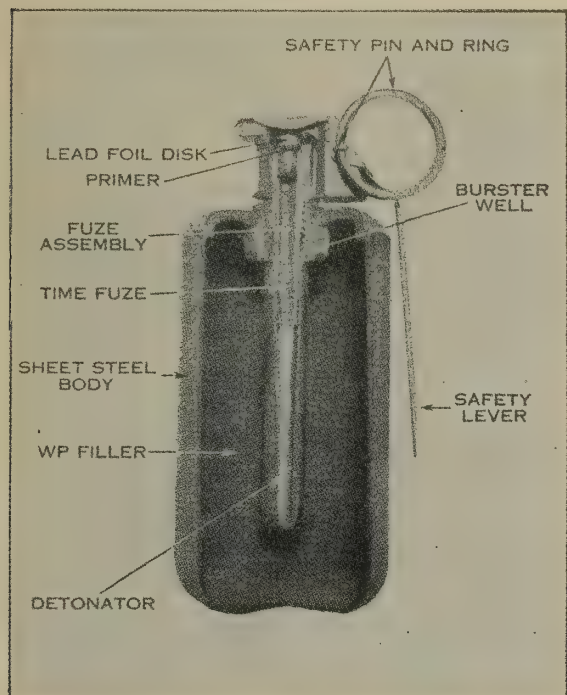


FIGURE 76.—Smoke hand grenade.

9-26 HAND GRENADES.—*a. Parts of the grenade.*—There are three principal parts to a hand grenade: the body, the filler, and the fuze assembly.

(1) *The body.*—The body of a grenade is the outer case. Its composition may be iron, tin-plate, or steel, depending on the type of grenade. In a fragmentation grenade, body fragments are casualty agents.

(2) *The filler.*—The filler of grenade varies according to the type of grenade. When the filler is ignited by a spark from the fuze, the grenade is exploded. The fillers most commonly used in grenades are EC blank fire smokeless powder, thermite, white phosphorus, HC smoke mixture, and colored smoke.

(3) *The fuze assembly.*—The fuze assembly is the mechanism that fires the grenade. All hand grenades fuzes are time and automatic. Time means that the grenade is fired after a certain lapse of time and not on percussion. Automatic means that the fuze begins to function automatically as it leaves the hand, providing the safety pin is removed.

b. How to hold.—Figure 77 shows how to hold a grenade:

(1) The grenade should be held in the right hand with the safety lever firmly pressed by the palm. The forefinger of the left hand is inserted through the safety pin ring. (A left-handed man may hold the grenade in his left hand.) In this position, the safety pin can be removed without altering the grip to throw the grenade.



FIGURE 77.—How to hold a hand grenade.

(2) Do not release the grip on the lever after the safety pin has been withdrawn until the grenade is thrown.

(3) When preparing to throw the fragmentation hand grenade the thumb and forefinger of the right hand should be around the upper horizontal serrations of the body. Hold the palm slightly higher on the grenade to insure downward pressure on the lever. Otherwise, the lever may be released before throwing, or the fuze head may be caught by the fingers when the grenade is thrown.

c. How to throw.—Figures 78, 79, and 80 show how a grenade is thrown from various positions. The general rules for throwing are

as follows:

(1) The grenade should be thrown as a forward pass in football. The biceps muscles of the throwing arm should be contracted just before throwing.

(2) The grenade is released just before the arm is fully extended. The grenade is given a spinning motion by being released over the tips of the fingers as it leaves the hand so that it will rotate around its longer axis, fuze to the rear, during its flight to the target.

(3) The maximum range is obtained when the grenade leaves the hand traveling at an upward angle of 45 degrees.

(4) The hand being at the shoulder, to



FIGURE 78.—Throwing grenade from standing position.



FIGURE 79.—Throwing grenade from kneeling position.

execute the throw carry the right hand forward and upward without twisting the wrist. The left arm counterbalances the movement of the right arm.

(5) If the grenades are striking to the right or left of the target, the entire body should be shifted to the left or right accordingly.

(6) For the first practice, no more than five grenades should be thrown, nor should the throwing distance exceed 20 yards. The number of grenades thrown and the distance is increased as training progresses. Thirty-five yards is considered a good range after training; fifty yards is above average. A

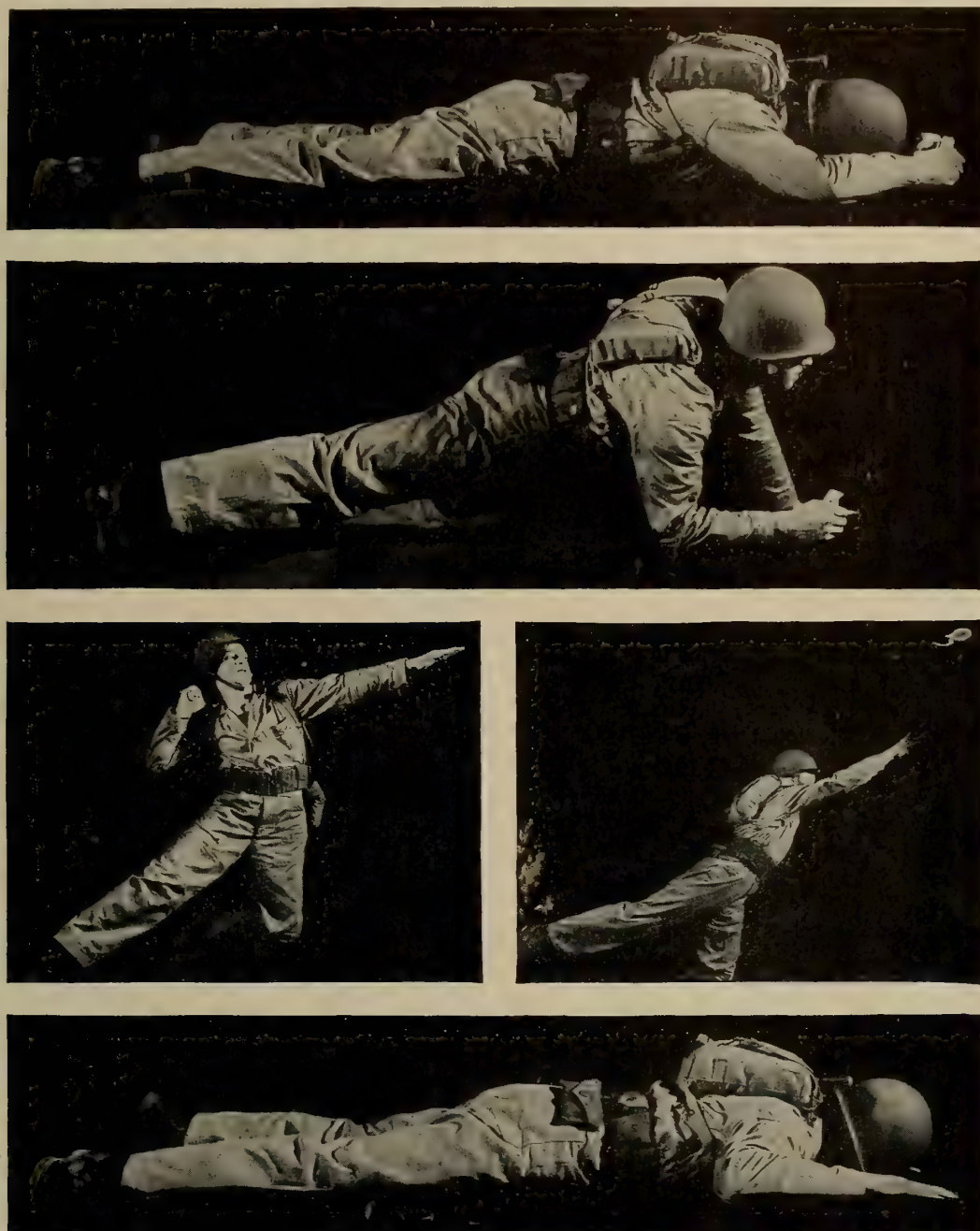


FIGURE 80.—Throwing grenade from prone position.

great deal of practice should be devoted to throwing from the prone position, as it is from that position grenades are generally thrown.

(7) If right-handed, practice in throwing left handed and vice versa is necessary. Many times it is necessary to hit a cave, an embrasure, or a window which can only be reached with the nonpitching arm.

d. Safety precautions.—When throwing or handling live hand grenades the following safety precautions will be observed:

(1) A fuze containing a detonator should be handled with extreme care at all times. The detonator contains a charge of mercury fulminate composition, and this explosive is very sensitive to heat, shock, or friction.

(2) It is not necessary to touch the detonator of the fuze assembly. The detonator is powerful enough to blow the fingers off the hand or to cause other serious injury.

(3) Do not pull out the safety pin until ready to throw.

(4) Do not release the safety lever before throwing.

(5) Do not recover or tamper with a live grenade that fails to fire. Duds can be recovered and destroyed only as prescribed by existing regulations. (See applicable Bureau of Ordnance pamphlet.)

(6) Do not take any grenade apart unless ordered to do so.

(7) In throwing grenades in built-up areas, woods, or jungles, use care to avoid hitting intervening obstacles such as walls, trees, and vines.

(8) When live fragmentation grenades are thrown, take the following precautions:

(a) All personnel within a radius of 250 yards must wear steel helmets.

(b) Fragmentation grenades must be thrown to obtain ground bursts.

(9) Except where incendiary action is desired, incendiary type grenades should not be ignited within five feet of dry grass or other inflammable material. They also should not be fired closer than 30 feet from personnel. The thrower, or friendly troops, should not be directly downwind unless they are protected by gas masks.

9-27 RIFLE GRENADES.—*a. Types, nomenclature.*—(1) *Types.*—(See par. 9-25 b.)

(2) *Nomenclature.*—The names of the parts

of one type of rifle grenade—the antitank M9A1—are shown in figure 81. This is the most commonly used grenade and is similar in many respects to other types.

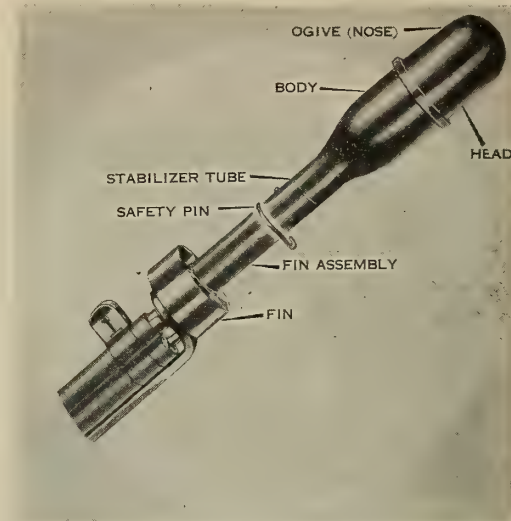


FIGURE 81.—Antitank grenade M9A1.

b. Accessories. When a rifle grenade is fired with the M1 rifle, four accessories are used. These are: special cartridge, launcher, M15 sight, and valve screw. When fired with the carbine the accessories used are: the special cartridge, the launcher, and the M15 sight.

(1) *Special cartridges.*—There are two different kinds of cartridges:

(a) The rifle grenade cartridge, caliber .30, M3, which is used in rifles M1, M1903, M1903A1, M1930A3, and M1917.

(b) Carbine grenade cartridge, caliber .30, M6. This cartridge is used in the carbine M1, M1A1, M1A3.

(2) *Grenade launchers.*—The grenade launcher is an extension to the barrel of the rifle or carbine. It is attached to the muzzle of the weapon by a special device. Ball cartridges can be fired through an attached launcher, but a ball cartridge must never be fired when a grenade is on the launcher. There are two types of rifle grenade launchers. The M7 is used on the rifle, caliber .30, M1. The M8 is used on the carbine, caliber .30, M1 and M2.

(a) The M7 launcher and valve screw shown in figure 82. To attach the launcher to the M1 rifle: First remove the clip and ammunition

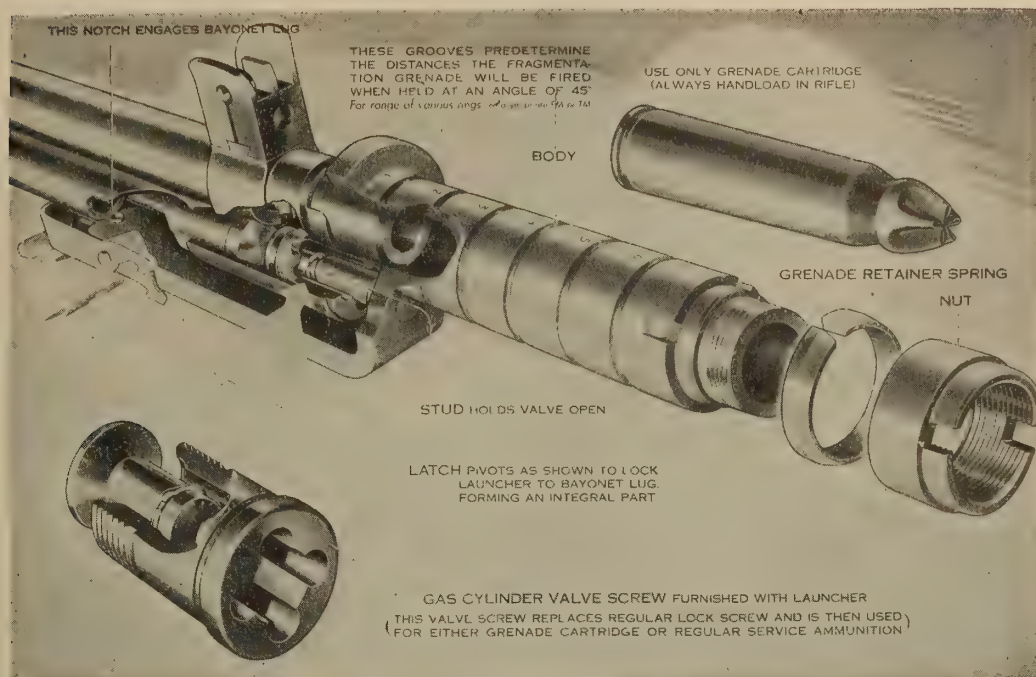


FIGURE 82.—Rifle grenade launcher M7.

from the rifle and clear the chamber. Second, replace the gas cylinder lock screw with a valve screw. Third, slip the launcher over the rifle muzzle so that the stud in the launcher enters the hole in the valve screw. Fourth, push the launcher down until it hits the bayonet lug on the underside of the gas cylinder. Fifth, push the latch toward the receiver and up until it snaps into position.

(b) The launcher M8 is used only with the carbine, caliber .30, M1, M1A1, and M1A3. The device which attaches the launcher M8 to the carbine consists of a hinged clamp and wing nut. After the clamp is fastened by tightening the wing nut, it must be checked frequently. The launcher might slip forward during firing and droop.

(3) *The M15 sight.*—The grenade launcher sight M15 is shown in figure 83. It can be put on the stock of the caliber .30 rifle M1 and the caliber .30 carbine by screwing the two special wood screws through the mounting plate into the stock, then snap the sight bar assembly on the mounting plate. The mounting plate is marked off in 5° intervals from 0° to 45°. It also has a mark for 60° elevation. The sight bar has an open sight and a leveling bubble for use in a low-angle and high-angle fire respec-

tively. The proper angles of elevation for given ranges are shown in the firing tables issued with all M9A1 grenades. Paragraph 9-27*d* explains the sighting procedure used in firing the M9A1 grenade.

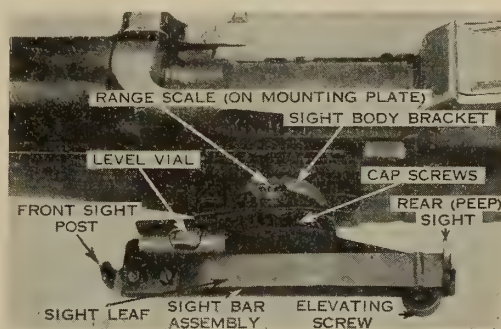


FIGURE 83.—Grenade launcher sight M15.

c. Sequence of operations.—The same sequence is used in loading and firing grenades from both the rifle and the carbine.

- (1) Open the bolt and clear the rifle.
- (2) Push the safety to the safe position (locked).
- (3) Insert the cartridge in the chamber.
- (4) Close the bolt.
- (5) Place the grenade on the launcher in the position which will give you the desired range.

(6) Withdraw the safety pin from the grenade.

(7) Push the safety to the firing position (unlocked).

(8) Aline the weapon on the target. If high-angle fire is used aline the weapon first with the muzzle lowered. Then raise the weapon to the proper angle of elevation before firing it.

(9) Fire the weapon.

d. Firing positions.—The antitank rifle grenade may be fired from any position from which the rifle can be fired except the sitting position. There are some additional rules, however, owing to the power and peculiarities of the rifle grenade.

(1) When fired from the shoulder, be careful to seat the butt of the rifle firmly against the shoulder.

(2) Do not fire from the shoulder when in a prone position. Do not fire from the shoulder in any position where the body cannot move backwards at least 12 inches with the recoil of the rifle. If necessary to fire from a prone position, use a rest for the butt of the rifle or carbine.

(3) The cheek cannot be pressed firmly against the stock, owing to the height of the sight. Consequently, the head must be held well away from the rifle in order to prevent injury to the cheek from the recoil.

(4) When firing from any position, hold the left hand several inches back from the sling swivel. This eliminates the possibility of pinching hand or fingers. Do not use the sling in flat trajectory firing.

(5) When firing from a standing position, as shown in figure 84, the body should be faced at an angle 60° to 70° from the line of fire. The feet are spread about two feet apart. Lean the body forward, into the piece, with the left knee slightly bent and the right leg straight.

(6) Figure 85 shows the proper way to fire while kneeling. Kneel on the right knee, half faced to the right. The left knee is bent so that the lower part of the leg is vertical when seen from the front. Left arm is held well under the rifle and free from the left knee. The right elbow is above or at the height of the right shoulder. Hold the body well forward so that



FIGURE 84.—Firing rifle grenade offhand.

the weight of the body does not rest on the right heel.



FIGURE 85.—Firing rifle grenade while kneeling.

(7) Figure 86 shows how to fire from a prone position, using a butt rest. This rest may be a stump, vehicle rut, or anything else near at hand. Place the right forearm over the top of the rifle butt to hold it in position.

(8) Firing from a foxhole is shown in figure 87. Troops should fire from a standing type one-man foxhole in field firing. If the nature of the target permits, use the backwall of the foxhole as a butt rest.

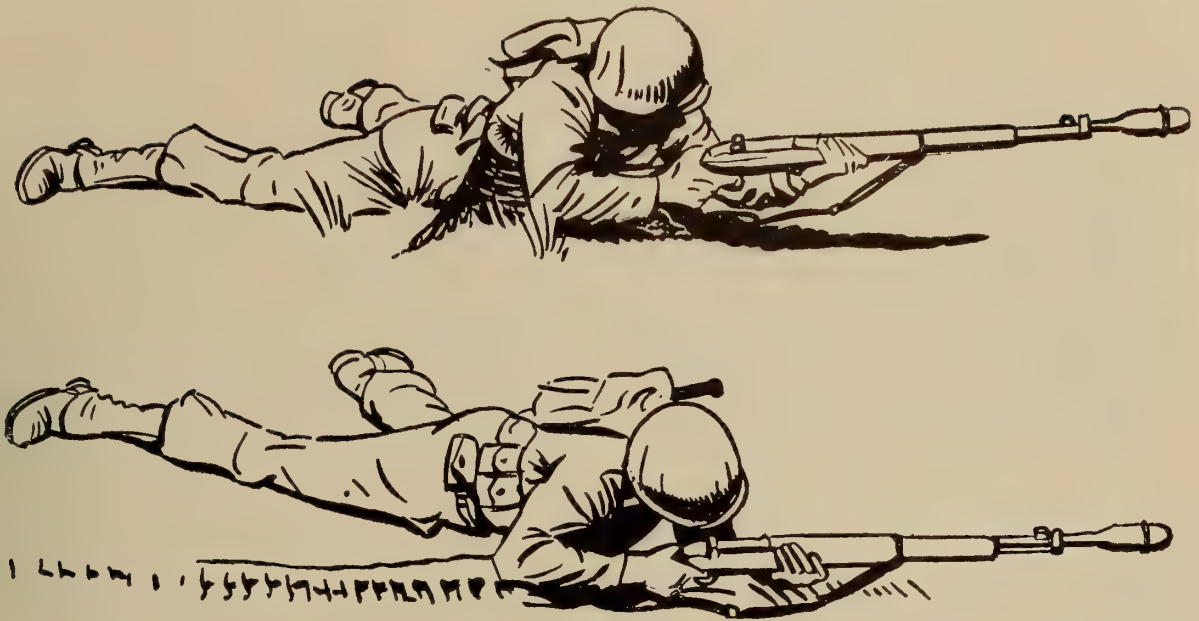


FIGURE 86.—Firing rifle grenade from the prone position.

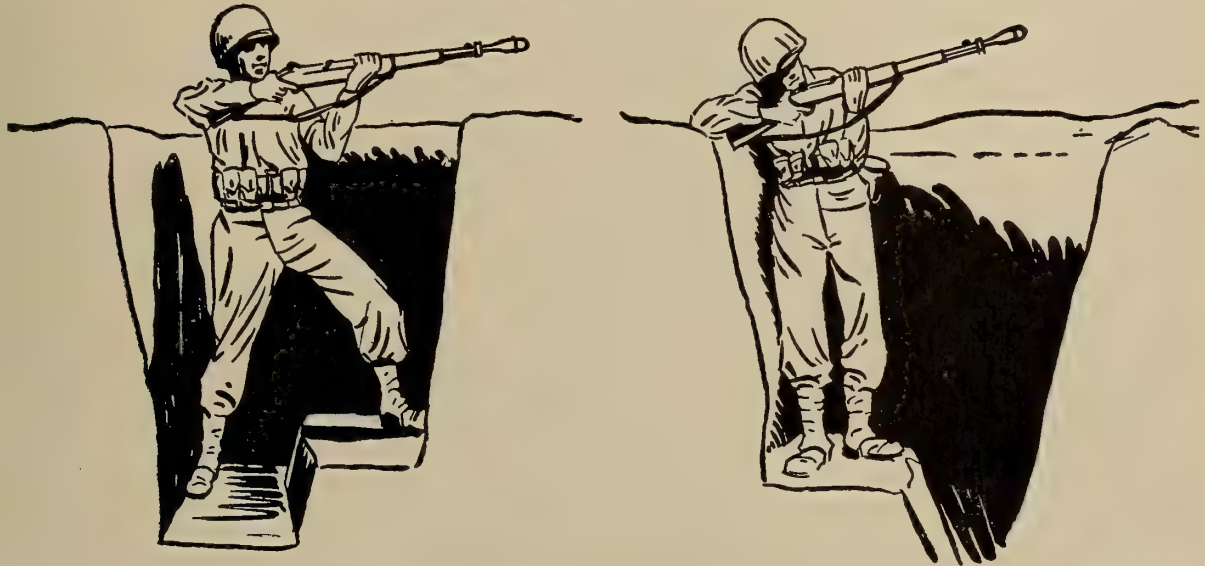


FIGURE 87.—Firing rifle grenade from a foxhole.

e. Safety precautions.—Following is a summary of the safety rules which must be observed when using, handling, and firing rifle grenades.

(1) *General precautions.*—General rules to be followed at all times with all grenades are as follows:

(a) Keep the grenade clean and dry, particularly on the inside of the stabilizer tube.

(b) See that there are no burrs on the rings of the grenade launcher and that the rings are free of grit.

(c) When using the M7 launcher, inspect the wing nut on the clamp frequently to make sure it is tight.

(d) Never place a grenade on the launcher unless it is intended to be fired immediately.

(e) Never fire service or standard blank ammunition when a grenade is on the launcher.

(f) When firing the rifle grenade, the helmet should be worn. During the time the grenade is in flight, lie prone with face down or use cover such as a foxhole.

(g) If a rifle grenade is being fired in the vicinity of troops, men should not approach within 125 yards of the target. If M9A1 grenades are being fired, men should not get within an angle of 30° on either side of their line of flight.

(2) *Precautions with time fuze.*—Special rules for handling grenades with a time fuze are:

(a) If the grenade is accidentally armed after the safety pin is removed, unlock the rifle or carbine and fire it immediately. The grenade will explode in from 4 to 5 seconds. There will be no time to waste.

(b) Take care not to strike the lever after

the safety pin is removed. Such action may cause the lever to spring from the grenade and allow the fuze to function.

(3) *Precautions with impact fuze.*—Rules for handling grenades with impact type fuzes are the same as the rules applying to firearms in general, with these additions:

(a) Do not drop a grenade after the safety pin has been removed.

(b) If the grenade cartridges M3 or M6 do not fire and there are no additional cartridges available, lock the weapon, replace the grenade safety pin, and remove grenade.

SECTION VI

TACTICAL TRAINING OF THE INDIVIDUAL

General.....	Par. 9-28	Page 335
Cover and concealment.....	9-29	335
Scouting.....	9-30	339
The compass.....	9-31	339
Terrain appreciation.....	9-32	341
Observing and reporting.....	9-33	341
Instructions to the individual in case of capture.....	9-34	343

9-28 GENERAL.—The tactical training of the individual is aimed at making him an efficient member of a tactical unit and to prepare him for the tactical training of that unit. The individual must be so trained that he will instinctively do the right thing in moments of extreme excitement or fear.

9-29 COVER AND CONCEALMENT.—*a. Definitions.*—Cover is any protection against

the fire of hostile weapons such as a reverse slope, a foxhole, trench, buildings or any natural or man-made obstruction to enemy fire. Concealment is protection from hostile ground or air observation but not from hostile fire. Anything that hides an object from the enemy but will not stop hostile fire is concealment.

b. The principles of individual concealment are:

- (1) Use all available concealment.
- (2) Improvise concealment (camouflage). (See Ch. 10.)
- (3) Expose nothing which glitters.
- (4) Blend with background.
- (5) Stay in shade.
- (6) Remain as motionless as possible while observing.
- (7) Observe from a prone position.

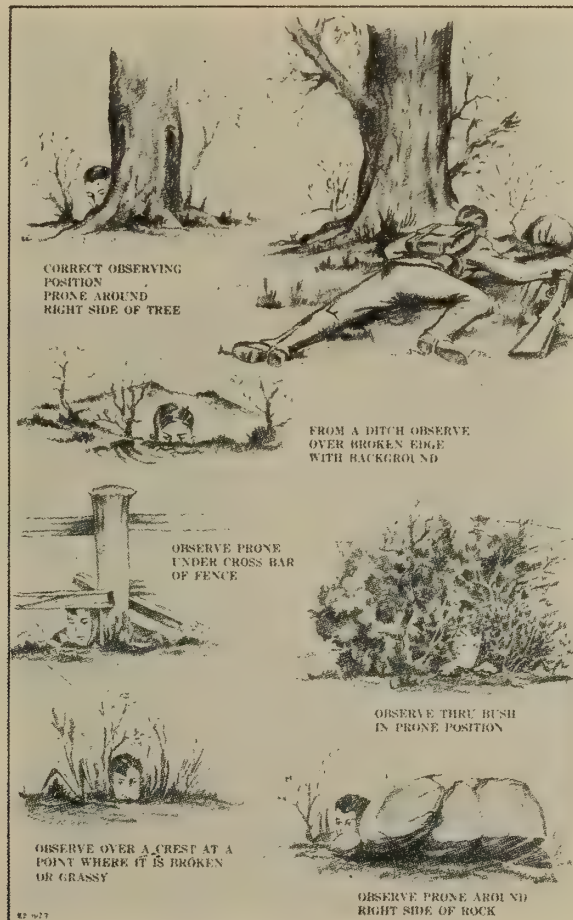


FIGURE 88.—Correct methods of observing.

(8) Observe from broken outline of objects.

c. The principles of individual cover are:

(1) Successive cover must be in the direction of the advance.

(2) Use all available cover.

(3) Be able to fire and observe from cover.

(4) Study the terrain from the enemy's point of view.

d. Movement.—The principles of movement are:

(1) When observing, move exposed parts of

the body slowly.

(2) When changing positions move as rapidly as possible to a previously selected position and drop quickly. (See fig. 89-90.)

(3) Make use of all available cover and concealment when moving by creeping and crawling. (See figs. 91-92.)

(4) Do not run at night except in an emergency.

(5) Take advantage of sounds at night to cover up own movements.



(1) Keep all parts of the body flat on ground.



(2) Raise head slowly to select new position.



(3) Lower head slowly, draw arms in, cock right leg forward, preparing to rush.



(4) Raise body with one motion by straightening arms.



(5) Spring to feet, stepping off with left foot.



(6) Run in a zigzag line toward new position selected. Crouch low with left hand near the balance of the rifle and right hand at small of stock.

FIGURE 89.—Rushing from a prone position.



(1) Stop rush and plant both feet in position.



(2) Drop quickly to knees, slide hand to heel of the rifle.



(3) Fall forward, breaking fall with butt of the rifle.



(4) Heels down, knees and stomach flat on ground, get head down if not intending to fire.



(5) Ready to fire.

FIGURE 90.—Dropping to prone position.



(1) Body and cheek are flat against the ground, rifle is dragged along on toe of the butt with finger over muzzle to keep out dirt.



(2) To move forward, push arms forward and cock left leg forward.



(3) Pull yourself forward with arms, push with the left leg.



(4) You can move faster by alternating legs, but this makes silhouette higher and the rifle gets in the way of the right leg.

FIGURE 91.—How to crawl.



(1) Body is kept free of ground with weight resting on forearms and lower legs, rifle is cradled in arms to keep muzzle out of dirt.



(2) Move forward by alternately advancing the elbows and knees, knees always kept in position well behind the buttocks.



(3) Notice that when creeping the body presents a higher silhouette than when crawling. Creeping permits faster movement.

FIGURE 92.—How to creep.

(6) At night avoid densely wooded areas and depend on darkness for concealment.

(7) At night move stealthily and quietly; stop and listen frequently.

e. Passing obstacles.—All movement near man-made or natural obstacles in the presence of the enemy should be made cautiously because they will almost always be covered with fire. The danger of booby traps and mines on and near obstacles is always present.

f. Passing wire.—(1) *Over wire.*—Low wire can be walked over by using the hands to hold the wire and carefully placing the feet on cleared spots on the ground. (See fig. 93.) The rifle butt and one hand are used in the event the rifle is carried ready for instant use.

(2) *Under wire.*—To cross under wire the individual moves on his back. He feels above and behind for strands of wire and “inches” himself along holding the wire clear of his body. He is careful not to tug or jerk the wire thus causing noise and the possibility of setting off booby traps or mines. He may carry his rifle on his stomach or by holding it between his body and arm with the bayonet resting on his shoulder. (See fig. 94.)

(3) *Cutting wire.*—When cutting wire alone, the cut should be made near a picket, holding the wire with one hand and cutting between the picket and the holding hand. This prevents the loose ends from flying back. (See fig. 95.)

When two men are working together one man holds the wire with both hands and the other cuts the wire between the holding hands. (See fig. 95.)



FIGURE 93.—Passing over wire.

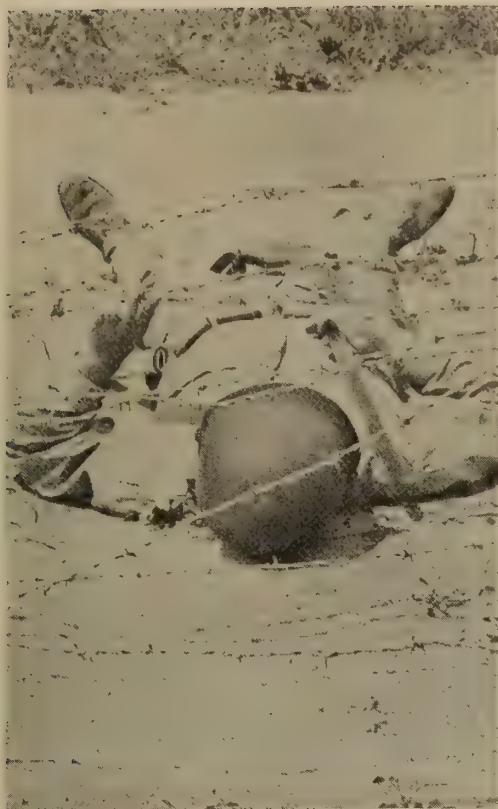


FIGURE 94.—Passing under wire.

9-30 SCOUTING.—Every man should be thoroughly trained in scouting. In order to accomplish this state of training he must have a working knowledge of:

- a. Map reading and field sketching. (See FM 21-25.)
- b. Use of the compass.
- c. Terrain appreciation.
- d. Observing and reporting.

9-31 THE COMPASS.—*a. Method of using.*—(1) Hold with thumb through ring, supported by the first two fingers. (See fig. 97.)

(2) Adjust eyepiece until figures on dial can be read.

(3) The arrow at rest points to magnetic north. The angle any line makes with the north line measured clockwise from the north point is the magnetic azimuth of that line.

(4) Hold the compass as directed in (1) and (2) above. Stand so that the arrow is under the stationary index, the line of sight is now magnetic north.

(5) Turn the body either to the right or left. The number now under the stationary index is the magnetic azimuth of the new line of sight. (See fig. 98.)



FIGURE 95.—Cutting wire.

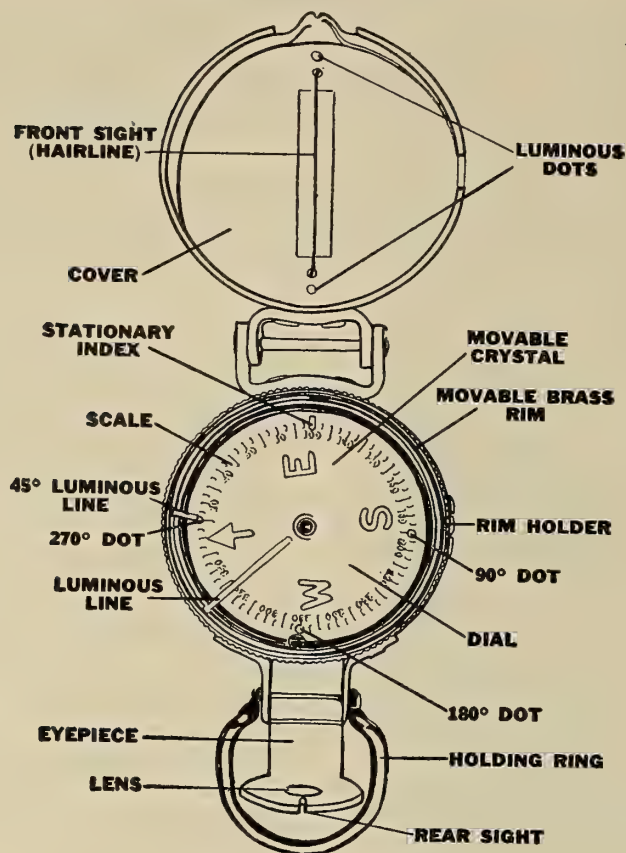


FIGURE 96.—Nomenclature of compass.

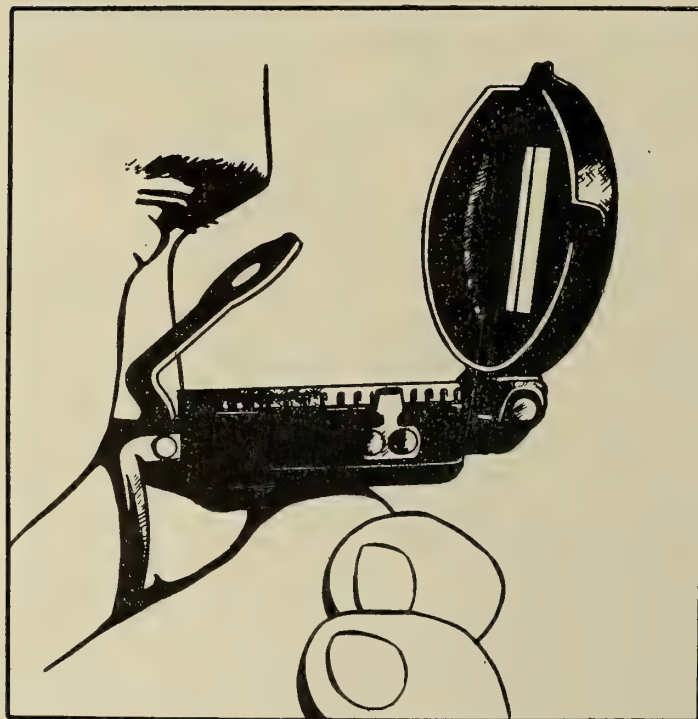


FIGURE 97.—A method of holding the compass.

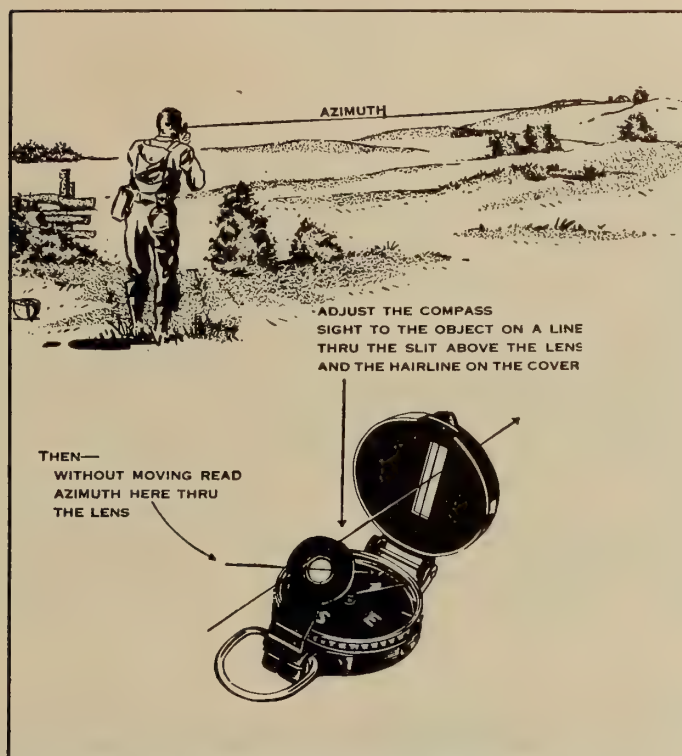


FIGURE 98.—Method of determining azimuth of a visible object.

b. Cautions in the use of the compass.—The compass is effected by iron and electrical fields. The rifle, helmet and other metal equipment should be put aside when the compass is being used. High tension lines, telegraph lines and even barbed wire will effect the compass and care should be taken to stay well away from them when using it.

9-32 TERRAIN APPRECIATION.—*a.* Military terminology for terrain features is of great importance as its use avoids confusion in reports and explanations. (See fig. 99.)

b. Terrain can always be evaluated in terms of the following five factors.

(1) *Observation.*—Protects against surprise, permits an evaluation of the terrain and allows the delivery of effective fire.

(2) *Fields of fire.*—Necessary for the effective employment of all weapons. The best fields of fire are over level or uniformly sloping open terrain.

(3) Concealment and cover. (See par. 9-29.)

(4) Obstacles.

(5) Routes of communication allowing the movement of troops and supplies.

9-33 OBSERVING AND REPORTING.—

a. The individual must be impressed with the importance of carefully observing and of reporting all information no matter how seemingly unimportant. Bits of unimportant information when viewed together have many times given the answers to important questions. Good observation is an important factor in the art of self-preservation not only for the individual but for his unit. Avoiding ambushes, selecting targets, directing fire, and many other things depend on good observing.

b. The selection of observation posts is an important factor in good observing. They must not be obvious to the enemy but still must have a commanding view of the terrain. Camouflage discipline must be maintained while in the observation post and also when entering and leaving it. When the observation post has been selected and occupied, the most dangerous ground is searched first, that nearest it. The ground is searched in narrow strips 50 yards in depth, going from side to side parallel to the observer's front. Then search a similar strip farther away but overlapping the first and

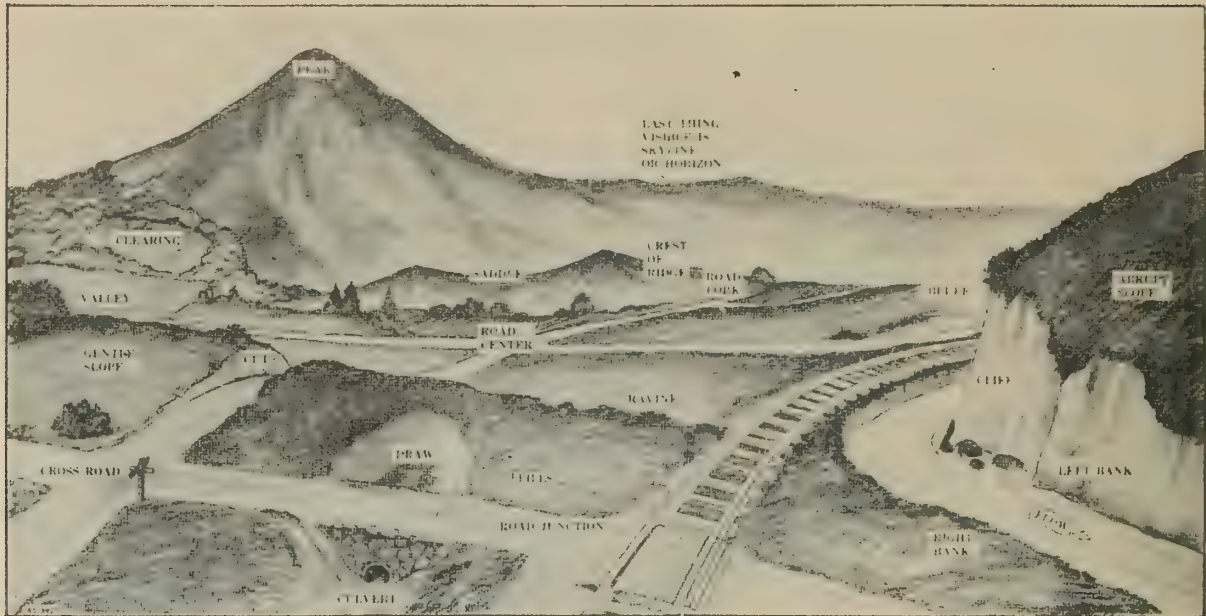


FIGURE 99.—Terrain features.

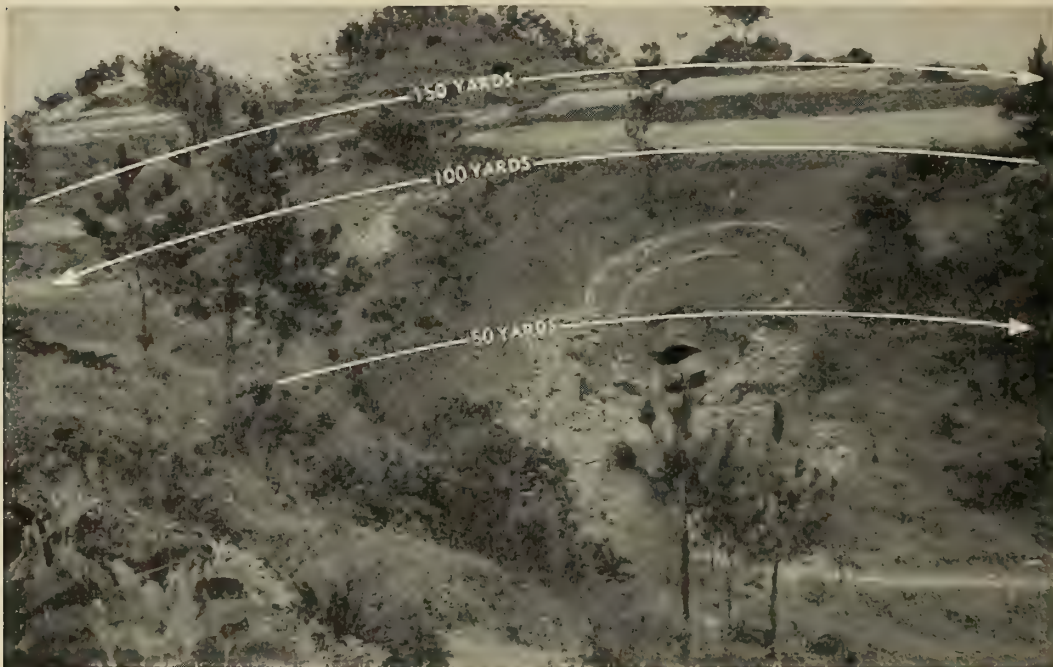


FIGURE 100.—How to search terrain.

continue in this manner until the entire field of view is covered. (See fig. 100.)

c. Reporting is not confined to oral or written reports of what was observed but also includes the turning over to proper authorities any diaries, maps, reports, unfamiliar weapons and any other enemy material that may have intelligence value. Nothing of this nature should be kept by the individual as souvenirs.

9-34 INSTRUCTIONS TO THE INDIVIDUAL

INDIVIDUAL IN CASE OF CAPTURE.—If the individual is taken prisoner he should remember that by the international rules of warfare he is required to give only his name, grade, and serial number. He should answer no other questions and should not allow himself to be frightened by threats into giving any information. He should not give false answers but merely refuse to answer.

SECTION VII

HAND TO HAND COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	9-35	344
Purpose.....	9-36	344
The bayonet.....	9-37	345
The knife.....	9-38	350
Judo.....	9-39	352

9-35 GENERAL.—*a.* Hand-to-hand combat is the oldest form of combat and the most primitive. It involves combat with a club, knife, bayonet, or completely unarmed.

b. Close combat is involved in assaults on enemy positions, disposing of sentinels quickly and quietly, the capture of prisoners by raiding parties and other situations where it becomes necessary to close bodily with the enemy.

c. In the defense, hand-to-hand combat becomes necessary when the enemy enters the defensive position and friend and foe are so

intermingled that firing is dangerous to the defending force.

d. At night when the enemy enters the defensive positions and the defenders do not wish to disclose their positions by firing, hand-to-hand combat with bayonet, knife, club, or judo becomes necessary. Weapons can be devised such as blackjacks and garrotes. An example is wire or rope for choking the enemy. (See figs. 101 and 102.)

9-36 PURPOSE.—Hand-to-hand combat, or close combat, is taught to the individual fighting man to give him confidence in himself in any combat situation involving physical contact, to enable him to destroy his enemy in close combat, and to improve his skill in the use of his basic weapons, through speeded reflexes.



R.D. 4443

FIGURE 101.—Garrote—taking down a sentry.



R.D. 4443

FIGURE 102.—Garrote—taking down a sentry.

9-37 THE BAYONET.—*a.* The will to meet and destroy the enemy in hand-to-hand combat is the spirit of the bayonet. A determined enemy cannot be driven from his position by fire alone. He will often remain in his position until sealed in or driven out in hand-to-hand combat, therefore the bayonet or the threat of it is a factor in every assault. The bayonet is an offensive weapon and aggressiveness is absolutely necessary for success. There is no fencing or preliminary maneuvering, nothing but a driving attack will win. The use of the bayonet in the defense is aggressive. The defender must turn attacker and drive the enemy from the position. The bayonet fighter must move forward or die.

b. The bayonet fighter's positions are guard, short guard, and high port.



FIGURE 103.—Position of Guard

(1) *Guard.*—(*a*) To assume position of guard face the opponent. Leading with the left foot, take a short step and space the feet laterally as well as in depth, toes pointing toward the opponent. Bending the knees slightly, incline the body slightly forward, hips level. (See fig. 103.) At the same time throw the rifle forward, point of the bayonet moving straight toward the opponent, and catch the rifle with both hands. This movement must be swift and sure. Grasp the rifle with the left hand, palm against the left side of the rifle at the most convenient point forward of the balance, usually just in front of the lower band, with the left arm slightly bent. With the right hand, palm to the left, grasp the small of the stock. To prevent bruising the right forefinger, hold the small of the stock so that the finger is not touching the trigger guard. Hold the under and inside portion of the forearm against the comb of the stock, with the base of the butt snugly against the side of the hip. Hold the rifle firmly but not rigidly with both hands, without canting it. Point the bayonet at the base of the opponent's throat. Balance the weight of the body on both legs, ready for instant movement in any direction. Keep the eyes on the opponent's bayonet and body.

(*b*) *Short guard.*—To assume the position of short guard from guard, bring the rifle back so that the right hand is at the right hip. This is a convenient carrying position when moving through dense woods, brush, trenches, around

buildings, or when the enemy may be encountered suddenly at very close quarters.

(*c*) *Common errors.*—1. Feet not separated in a well-balanced stance.

2. Hips not facing straight forward.

3. Body too erect.

4. Right forearm not firmly pressing comb of stock against the body.

5. Left arm straight, or bent too much.

6. Rifle gripped tensely, restraining freedom of movement.

7. Point of bayonet too high.

(2) *High port.*—(*a*) To assume position of high port.—From the position of guard, without changing the position of the feet or the grasp of the hands on the rifle, carry the piece diagonally across the body, sling to the front, until the left wrist is level with and in front of the left shoulder. (See fig. 104.)

(*b*) Employment in jumping trenches and hurdling obstacles.

1. To jump holding the rifle at high port, throw the piece sharply upward and forward from the high port on taking off, and bring it back on landing. This jumping will also be practiced with the position of the piece approximately maintained with the left hand alone, leaving the right hand free to assist in clearing the obstacles.



FIGURE 104.—Position of high port.

2. To jump holding the rifle in the guard position, snap it up quickly on taking off, maintaining the grasp of the hands, and start the piece down when the highest point in the jump is reached. The piece will be snapped down to guard position as the jumper alights.

c. The bayonet fighter executes the following whirl and thrust movements: Whirl, long thrust, short thrust, withdrawal. The beginner learns these movements as separate actions. By training, however, he learns to execute them in varying combinations as swift, continuous actions.

(1) *Whirl*.—To execute the whirl from the position of guard bring the piece to high port, whirl to the left about by pivoting on the ball of the left (leading) foot, and resume the position of guard.

(2) *Long thrust and withdrawal*—(a) *Execution*.—1. To execute the long thrust from the guard position, advance the rear foot and lunge forward, extending the entire body. (See fig. 105.)

2. Complete the extension of the body as the

rear foot strikes the ground. During this movement drive the rifle, gripped firmly by both hands and guided by the left, forcefully in a straight line at the opponent's throat or other opening on his body. Quickly extend the left arm to its full length so that the bayonet darts toward the target. At the instant of full extension, hold the butt of the rifle inside of and pressed against the right forearm, bend the leading knee, incline the body well forward, and straighten the rear leg.



FIGURE 105.—Long thrust from position of guard.

3. Keep the eyes on the point of attack during the entire movement.

4. If the thrust is evaded, move in swiftly with another thrust or butt stroke. Retraction and recovery after the thrust will be instantaneous. There must never be any lingering in the extended position.

5. The power of the long thrust comes from the arms, shoulders, back, legs, and weight of the body. The distance from which the long thrust is launched depends on the reach and speed of advance of the attacker. The maxi-

mum distance for each individual is determined by trial at the thrusting dummies. It is imperative for each man to know his reach and be able to judge his attack distance accurately so that his thrust will reach the target. By increasing the number of steps, the individual will be trained to execute the thrust with either foot forward.

(b) *Common Errors*.—1. "Telegraphing" the thrust by drawing the rifle back just before delivering the thrust.

2. Thrust made with the arms alone not with the power of the legs and body.

3. Thrust accompanied by a slight slash, preventing straight forward position.

4. Point of bayonet carried too high, or at a lateral angle to target.

5. Butt not braced against inside of the right forearm.

6. Body not inclined far enough forward.

7. Loss of balance, caused by taking too long a step.

8. Leading knee not sufficiently bent.

9. Eyes not on the point of attack.

(c) To withdraw from the long thrust, advance the left foot and jerk your rifle back along the line of penetration with the force and weight of the entire body. Carry the body to the rear by straightening the forward leg. If necessary, maintain balance by shifting the right foot to the rear. (See fig. 106.) If the enemy is down, place one foot on him and withdraw. In any event withdraw instantly, prepared to execute the short thrust or a butt stroke or to assume the position of guard or short guard. Do not linger in the extended positions.

(3) *Short thrust and withdrawal*.—(a) *Execution*.—Being in the guard or short guard position, or on withdrawal from a long thrust, execute the short thrust in the same manner as the long thrust, except that the leading foot is advanced in lunging forward. (See fig. 107.) The short thrust is used when an opponent is encountered suddenly or at a range too close for the long thrust. Practice will include executing the short thrust with either the right or left foot forward.

(b) *Withdrawal*.—Withdraw from a short thrust in the same manner as from a long thrust. Upon completion of the withdrawal, recover to



FIGURE 106.—Withdrawal from long thrust.

the guard position, or execute another thrust or butt stroke.

d. *Parries*.—(1) *Purpose*.—The parry is an offensive blow to create an opening by beating the opponent's bayonet out of the way. It is made by a forward and lateral movement of great force and speed. The lateral movement of the blade is limited to the extent necessary to beat the opponent's weapon clear of your body. The momentum of the parry is continued into a thrust or butt stroke. The position of the opponent's weapon will determine the direction of the parry. The parry invariably will be made in the direction that will best create an opening for instant execution of a thrust or butt stroke.

(2) *Execution*.—(a) *Parry right*.—To parry right from the position of guard, lunge forward as in a long thrust. (See fig. 108.) At the same time, thrust the piece diagonally forward and to the right by straightening the left arm in the direction of the parry, moving the butt to the right and keeping the piece parallel to the guard position. Keep the comb of the stock pressed



FIGURE 107.—Short thrust.

firmly against the under and inner surface of the right forearm. Limit the diagonal forward movement to beat the opponent's blade just clear of the body. Continue the parry into a long thrust during the same forward step. As the bayonet strikes the opponent's blade, beating it clear of the body, and at the instant the bayonet glances off of the opponent's weapon, drive it into him in the same continuous movement.

(b) To parry right preceding a short thrust, execute the movement as described above, making the parry just prior to the forward lunge with the forward foot.

(c) *Parry left.*—To parry left, lunge forward as in the parry right, thrust the rifle forward and to the left so that the butt is approximately in front of the left groin, deflecting the opponent's bayonet clear of the body. (See fig. 109.)

(d) The parry left is followed by a thrust, or by a butt stroke in case the point of the bayonet is not on a line toward the opponent.

(e) *Common errors.*—1. Failure to use sufficient force and speed caused by using the arms alone without the weight and momentum of the body.

2. Making a wide sweeping movement, without any forward movement of the piece.

3. Eyes not on the opponent's weapon.



FIGURE 108.—Straight parry, right.

e. *Butt strokes and slashes.*—(1) *General.*—The bayonet fighter does not use butt strokes and slashes in combat when it is possible to use a thrust. But he can use them advantageously in many situations, particularly in close-in fighting when there is not enough room to deliver a thrust or immediately after a thrust that has been evaded. When using a butt stroke he can often knee his opponent in the groin, trip him, or kick him in the legs. Butt strokes and slashes lend themselves especially to fighting in trenches, woods, and brush, or



FIGURE 109.—Straight parry, left.



FIGURE 110.—Vertical butt stroke.



in a general melee when lateral movements are restricted.

(2) *Execution.*—(a) *Vertical butt stroke series.* To make the vertical butt stroke from the guard position, step in with the rear foot, and, at the same time, drive the butt forward and upward in the vertical arc to the groin, solar plexus, or chin. Put the force of the whole body into the blow. (See fig. 110.) The vertical butt stroke may also be started from a crouched position so as to hit low points on the opponent's body while offering him a small difficult target.

(b) *Smash.*—If the opponent moves backward and the vertical butt stroke misses, step forward swiftly with the left foot and drive the butt at his head, extending the arms fully forward, and advancing the right foot to retain balance. (See fig. 111.)

(c) *Slash.*—If the opponent again retreats out of butt range or falls, continue the advance, slashing diagonally downward with the bayonet. Guide the slash toward the junction of the

neck and shoulder, hitting either this point or the head, throat, or arms. If the slash misses (note that a miss being the movement close to the position of guard), continue the attack vigorously. (See fig. 112.)

(d) *Horizontal butt stroke series.*—In this series the plane of the rifle and bayonet is horizontal instead of vertical.

1. *Horizontal butt stroke.*—To make the horizontal butt stroke from the guard position (see fig. 113) drive in vigorously, advancing the rear foot, and swing the butt diagonally upward through an arc to the opponent's head or body.

2. *Smash.*—If the horizontal butt stroke misses because the opponent has moved backward, deliver a smash, maintaining the butt in the same horizontal position.

3. *Slash.*—If the smash misses, continue the attack with a slash, executing the movement as directed in the vertical butt stroke series.

(e) *Common errors.*—1. Failure to reach out at the opponent.

2. The force of the arm and body not in the



FIGURE 111.—The smash following vertical butt stroke.



FIGURE 112.—The slash following smash.

movement, occurring when the plane of the bent right arm is not in the plane of the rifle and bayonet.

3. Insufficient speed.



FIGURE 113.—The horizontal butt stroke.

9-38 THE KNIFE.—*a. General.*—(1) The knife is used primarily when stealth and quiet are required, such as silencing a sentry or disposing of outposts in a night attack.

(2) A knife attack is made, if possible, from the rear in order that the attack may strike the enemy before being seen. The knife is a “last resort” weapon.

b. Grip.—(1) To grasp a knife for fighting purposes lay the grip of the knife diagonally across the palm and close the fingers around it firmly but not too tensely. Notice that the second, third, and fourth fingers will each be wrapped around the grip more than the index finger. The thumb should press straight along the handle and should point towards the blade. Thumb and index finger will be just inside the guard. If the blade is single-edged, the blade can face either inboard or outboard. (See fig. 114.)

(2) The diagonal grip will give maximum

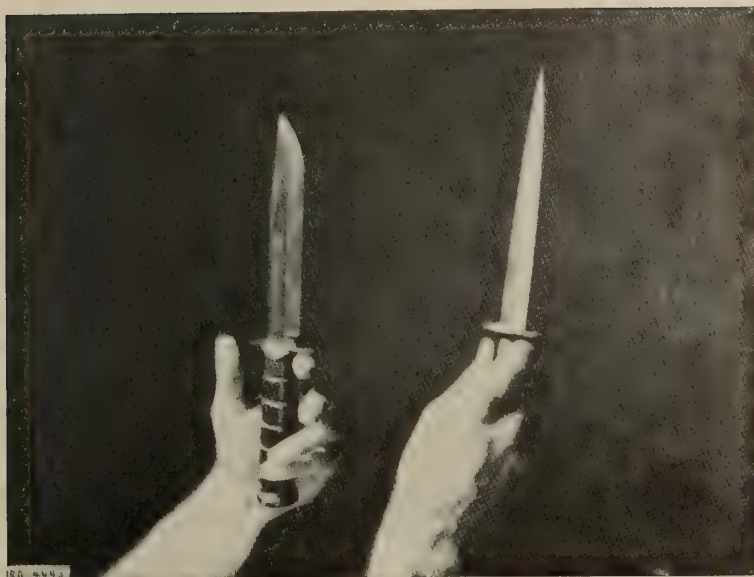


FIGURE 114.—Grip on knife.

control and effectiveness with the knife. Avoid an overhand or underhand grip as they are too limited in their usefulness.

c. Stance.—The recommended stance for knife fighting is that similar to a boxer's (with one foot advanced) or to a wrestler's (with the feet more or less in line), whichever is best for the individual. In any event the feet are comfortably apart, weight distributed evenly on the balls of both feet, knees flexed and body bent somewhat forward from the waist, poised and ready to react swiftly in any direction. The eyes are always on your enemy. The knife is held about waist high and close to the body, the blade pointing at the enemy's torso. The other hand is extended in front of the body as bait, also to ward off any advances that the enemy might make, or to grab him somewhere and work into an opening for quick thrust or slash. (See fig. 115.)

d. Where to strike.—(1) The parts of the body most vulnerable to thrusts are the abdomen, the throat (especially near the base) and the kidneys. The thorax is of course a vital spot because of the heart and lungs within. However, it is not quite as vulnerable to a thrust as the aforementioned spots because of the possibility of the knife being deflected or stopped by a rib. For any of the spots mentioned, a penetration of three inches is sufficient to cause a fatal wound.



R.D. 4443

FIGURE 115.—Stance for knife fighting.

(2) *Slashes.*—The primary target for slashes is the throat. It must be remembered that cutting the windpipe is often not enough, but that the jugular vein(s) or the thyroid gland must be severed as well. A good slash in this region is, of course, fatal. Other exposed areas

where slashing is very effective though perhaps not fatal are: the hands, especially if the enemy has a knife or club; the thighs near the knee joint where a good slash will hamstring an enemy; the armpits and chest and back muscles in the immediate vicinity, where a good cut may immobilize an arm; the face, especially the eyes and forehead where running blood from a slash will help blind an enemy; the crotch, which is a vital area; and to a lesser extent the insides of the wrists which are not too well exposed but where a slash may incapacitate a hand and incidentally will eventually cause death through arterial hemorrhage. These then are the spots that are most easily exposed for slashing. If in the course of the melee there is a chance to slash anywhere—arm, chest, back or anywhere else—it is natural to strike instinctively. The cuts all add up to weaken the enemy, but it is necessary to get a vital spot as soon as possible.

e. Knife thrust.—Keep the wrist rigid and let the knife be just an extension of the arm. Execute the thrust to the exposed vital spot by shooting the arm out and driving the knife from its initial position in the vicinity of the waist straight to its mark. Such a thrust might be delivered to the abdomen or throat or to the kidney if the enemy's side is exposed. In withdrawing from a thrust, do not simply pull the blade straight out but twist it sharply as the withdrawal is made so that the wound is enlarged appreciably. An alternative is to slash vigorously as the withdrawal is made.

f. Knife slashes.—Slashes can be made with either the tip end of the blade or with a cutting edge. The best type of slash to use depends upon the knife, its weight and its cutting edges.

g. Taking down a sentry from behind.—On infiltration missions it may be necessary to take down a sentry quietly and dispose of him. A knife can be used for this purpose very effectively. Crawl up to sentry from behind getting within 6 feet of him if possible. Come up quietly off the ground and spring to him quickly but silently, clapping the left hand over his mouth, pinching his nostrils between the left thumb and forefinger and pull slashing straight across his windpipe with the knife. Have a knee in his back, and get him down before he drops his rifle or anything else he might have in his hands. (See fig. 116.) If taken by sur-

prise the sentry will be unable to emit an outcry (because of hand over mouth and nose and because of severed windpipe), nor should he be able to struggle.



FIGURE 116.—Taking down a sentry.

9-39 JUDO.—*a. General.*—Judo is of Chinese origin and was adopted by the Japanese as their own, late in the twelfth century. They called it “Jiu Jitsu.” The Jiu means “gentle” and Jitsu means “art.” Late in the nineteenth century the Japanese combined all of the better systems of Jiu Jitsu and called the combined systems Judo meaning “the way” or “principle.” The American Judo Club improved on the Japanese system and far outstripped it in effectiveness of method. Actually the Judo system amounts to little more than scientific dirty fighting. There is no place for so-called sportsmanship in Judo.

b. The vital spots of the human body.—There are a few simple exposed spots of the human body which if hit hard will kill a man.

(1) *The throat* (see fig. 117).—A blow here with the edge of the hands, fist, or elbow will stun a man; if the blow is hard enough, it will kill him by collapsing his windpipe.



FIGURE 117.—Throat blow.



FIGURE 118.—Crotch blow.

(2) *Crotch* (see fig. 118).—This is one of the most vital areas to work on and should always be first in mind. Even a light blow to the testicles will cause great pain. A hard blow to the crotch may cause fatal injuries and is sure to take the fight out of a man in a hurry. Never forget the crotch, hit there automatically.

(3) There are many other parts of the body that are vulnerable to hitting, kicking, biting, and gouging. The eyes, nose, ears, mouth, kneecaps, shins, instep, back of the neck, and many others. (See fig. 119.) In hand-to-hand combat nothing is banned and the more vicious the attack the more successful it will be.



FIGURE 119.—Back of neck.

c. Take-downs.—There are a variety of ways to throw an enemy to the ground. Each has its advantages and disadvantages. Openings must be made and advantage taken of them.

(1) *Hip throw.*—(a) Grab opponent's left side with the right hand, pushing his side away. Grab his right arm underneath the elbow with the left hand, pulling it toward the thrower.

(b) Secure his right hand under the left elbow and armpit pressing hard against his elbow (arm straight) and obtaining a lever-like action which will help twist his right shoulder toward the thrower. Simultaneously, push his left side (with the right hand) away. (See fig. 120.)

(c) With the right foot step quickly across the left and behind the opponent's right (still keeping the feet well under the thrower and maintaining balance), bend the knees and get the right hip under the opponent's right hip. Push his weight onto the hip.

(d) Straighten up the legs sharply and at the same time bend the trunk forward pulling back on the opponent's right elbow and pushing forward and down on his torso with the right arm. This will spin the opponent off the ground and onto the hip. (See fig. 121.)

(e) When he is highest in the air suddenly pull out the hip from beneath him and fall hard on top of him. He will land on his back, head, or shoulder blades; land with the right shoulder on his chest and right forearm in ribs, stomach, or crotch.

(f) Follow through instantly with hard blows by knee, fist, or edge of hand to the immediately accessible vital spots.

(2) *Rear leg trip*.—A very quick, simple, and effective take-down.

(a) Grab the enemy by the clothing, preferably his left side with the right hand and his right elbow with the left.

(b) Swing the right leg across the left and behind his right leg (note how this movement protects the crotch).

(c) Swing the right leg and heel back sharply, kicking his right leg (at the knee or just below) out from under him, at the same time pressing him back and down. (See fig. 122.)

(d) The opponent will go down hard on his back. Stay with him landing hard on top of him, and drawing back the right fist.

(e) Swing the right fist up hard into his crotch.

(3) *Drop kick*.—Good if worked fast before the opponent closes in too much.

(a) Reach forward with both hands and grab hold of enemy's coat by the lapels, collar, or breast and at the same time raise up the right (left if preferred) foot and plant it hard in his crotch. (In practice place foot gently in

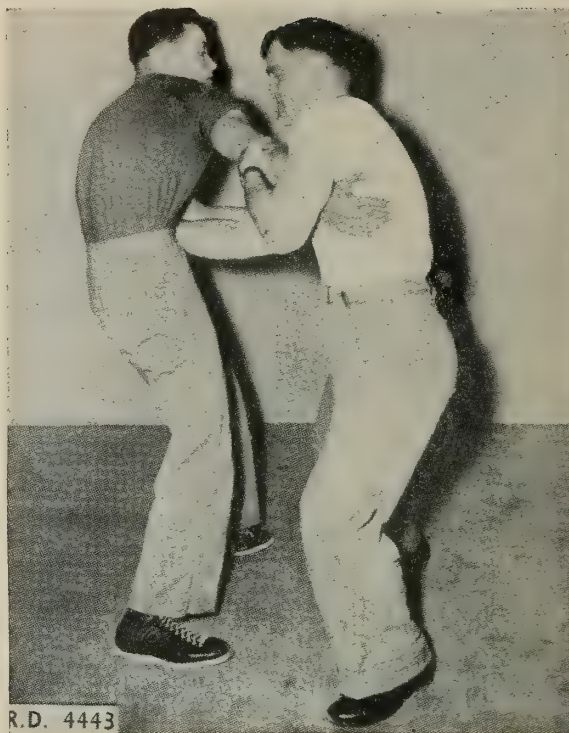


FIGURE 120.—Hip throw—part 1.



FIGURE 121.—Hip throw—part 2.

stomach.) The wrists can be crossed (optional) when the lapels are grabbed—for some people it is easier this way and a more effective strangle can be worked from it. (See fig. 124.)

(b) Throw back the head, pull the opponent forward and sit down fast, not bending the right leg too much. This will start to throw the opponent over the head. The thrower will be rolling on his back on the deck. (See figs. 124 and 125.)



FIGURE 122.—Rear leg trip.

(4) *Belt pull*.—A very effective take-down should leave the man beaten by the time he hits the deck.

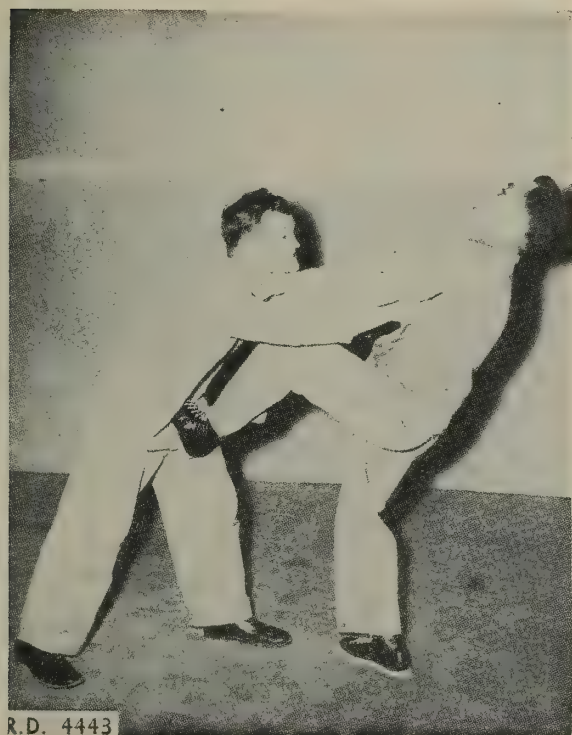


FIGURE 123.—Drop kick—part 1.



FIGURE 124.—Drop kick—part 2.



FIGURE 125.—Drop kick—part 3.

(a) With right fist punch adversary hard in the stomach.

(b) With right hand grab hold of his belt or if none, his clothing and pull him forward.

(c) At the same time bring the heel of the left hand up hard under his chin bending his head way back and gouging his eyes with the fingers and simultaneously knee him hard in the crotch with the right knee. (See fig. 126.) The combination of the belt pull, blow on jaw, bent-back neck, and knee in crotch will drop the man. Go down with him.

(d) When going down on top of him turn the right side into the opponent (thus protecting the throwers crotch) and land with all the weight on the knee in his crotch.

d. Come-alongs.—The use of Judo is not confined to actual combat but is widely used in peacetime police work and is an important



FIGURE 126.—Belt pull.

part of the training of Shore Patrol and Military Police. The most useful part of Judo in this work are the come-alongs.

(1) *Thumb-catch come-along.*—Position—facing opponent.

(a) Move the left hand forward palm up. Catch the opponent's right thumb between the thumbs and forefinger. (See fig. 127.)

(b) At the same time catch his right sleeve at the elbow with the right hand and pull it forward, force his right hand up toward his armpit, bending his arm and bending his wrist back (palm of hand to wrist). (See fig. 128.)

(c) Secure the crook of his right elbow well within the crook of the left elbow and bear down hard with the left hand on the back of his right hand, completing the come-along. (See fig. 129.)

(2) *Handshake come-along.*—Position facing opponent.

(a) Grasp his right hand as in a handshake.

(b) Suddenly pull him forward and at the same time step to his right with the left foot. (See fig. 130.)

(c) Reach under his arm and come down sharply with the cutting edge of the left hand on the inside of his right elbow. At the same



FIGURE 127.—Thumb catch—come-along—part 1.

time bend the back of his hand toward his wrist helping to bend the arm also. (See fig. 131.)

(d) Secure the crook of his right elbow well



FIGURE 128.—Thumb catch—come-along—part 2.

within the crook of the left elbow and bear down hard with the left hand on the palm of his hand,

thus securing the come-along. (See fig. 132.)
(3) *Club come-alongs.*—(a) *Under arm meth-*



FIGURE 129.—Thumb catch—come-along—part 3.



FIGURE 131.—Handshake—come-along—part 2.



FIGURE 130.—Handshake—come-along—part 1.



FIGURE 132.—Handshake—come-along—part 3.

od.—1. Approach opponent from left rear with the club held horizontally under the right armpit with about 1½ feet protruding forward. Have your left hand ready to grasp his left hand and the right hand down and slightly forward. (See fig. 133.)

2. Draw his left hand out with the left hand and slip the club inside of his left arm. Bring his left forearm back toward his body and forward and up so that he incloses the club within his left elbow. At the same time bring the right hand up from below and grasp the club near the front end, trapping his left wrist, maintain the grip on the club with the right armpit. (See fig. 134.)

3. Bear up and to the left, hard with the right wrist thus forcing the bony part of wrist and forearm into the club. At the same time raise up on the entire club by using the body. (See fig. 135.) The only persons upon whom this come-along is ineffective are those with very muscular forearms and wrists.

(b) *Side of arm come-along*.—1. Same as in under arm method.

2. Place the club along opponent's left elbow



FIGURE 134.—Club come-along—under arm—part 2.



FIGURE 135.—Club come-along—under arm—part 3.

from the outside, catch his left hand and reach inside of his left arm with the right arm. (See fig. 136.)



FIGURE 136.—Club come-along—side arm—part 1.

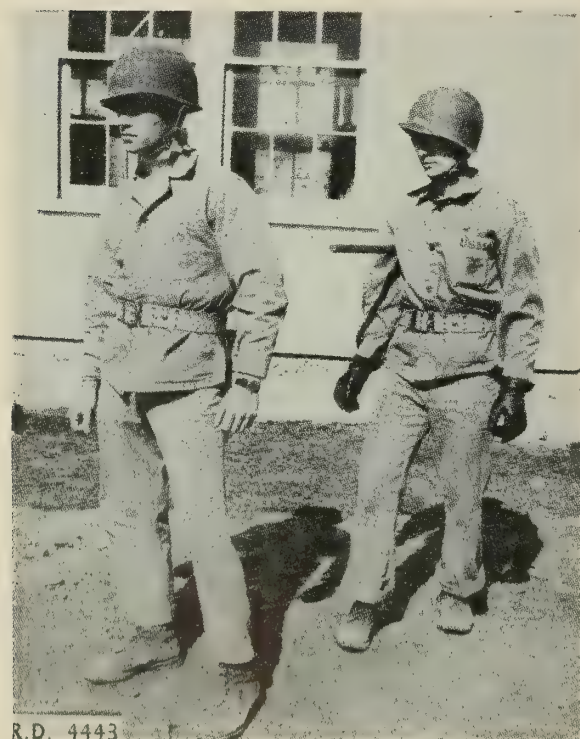


FIGURE 133.—Club come-along—under arm—part 1.

3. Catch the front end of the club with the right hand (palm down), and at the same time bring his left hand up and back past his shoulder, bearing down on the club with the right hand and armpit as you do. (See fig. 137.)



FIGURE 137.—Club come-along—side arm—part 2.

(c) *Crotch come-along*.—1. Grasp the club in the center with the right hand.

2. Slip the club between the opponent's legs from the rear and lift up hard so that the club between the opponent's legs is horizontal and is binding the front of his thighs. At the same

time grab the scruff of his collar or his left arm.

3. Walk the opponent away by keeping the club raised high. He will be off balance and unable to run or maneuver. (See fig. 138.)



R.D. 4443

FIGURE 138.—Club come-along—crotch.

SECTION VIII

OPERATION ORDERS

	Par.	Page
General.....	9-40	360
Scope of operation orders.....	9-41	360
Form of operation orders.....	9-42	361
Annexes to operation orders.....	9-43	361
Technique of preparing operation orders.....	9-44	362

9-40 GENERAL.—Combat orders are those pertaining to operations in field. They are classified as operation orders, administrative orders, and letters of instruction.

a. Operation orders.—An operation order is the order of a commander to subordinate commanders to effect the coordinated execution of an operation in the field.

b. Administrative orders.—An administrative order covers supply, evacuation, and other administrative details of operations. They are issued under circumstances where the instructions regarding these matters are too voluminous to be embodied in the operations order.

c. Letters of instruction.—A letter of instruction deals with the strategical phases of operations of large units and regulates operations over a large area for a considerable period of time.

9-41 SCOPE OF OPERATION ORDERS.—

a. Purpose.—Operation orders may:

(1) *Direct operations.*

(2) *Warn of impending operations—warning orders.*—Warning orders contain advance information so that subordinate units can prepare to carry out future operations.

b. Methods of issuance.—(1) Operation orders may be oral, dictated, or in written form. The most important factor influencing the form and method of issuing an operation order is the time available for its preparation and distribution. An order should reach its destination in sufficient time to obviate halting the troops while waiting for instructions. Time should also be sufficient to permit the lowest subordinate commander concerned in its execution an opportunity to reconnoiter, place his troops in position, make other necessary

arrangements, and issue his orders prior to the hour set for the beginning of the action.

(2) Oral and dictated orders are similar in that both are spoken orders. When oral orders are issued, notes are made by the recipients. Dictated orders are recorded verbatim by the receiver and a complete copy of the order or notes is kept by the staff of the issuing commander.

(3) Written orders may be in message or other convenient form. The use of accompanying maps, photomaps, overlays, and tables saves time and words and minimizes errors. In many cases an entire operation order can be placed on a map or overlay.

c. Type.—Operation orders may be either complete or fragmentary.

(1) An order is complete when it covers all essential aspects and phases of the operation. Complete orders include missions to all subordinate units charged with the execution of tactical operations in carrying out the commander's plan.

(2) Fragmentary orders are used when speed in delivery and execution is imperative. Fragmentary orders are issued successively as the situation develops and decisions are made, and consist of separate instructions to one or more subordinate units prescribing the part each is to play in the operation or in the separate phases thereof. They may be issued direct to subordinate commanders, or to their representatives; or they may be transmitted by means of signal communication or by special messengers. When transmitted orally, the instructions should be followed, if practicable, by a written confirmation. When conditions permit, special messengers are used for the delivery of oral or fragmentary field orders. Fragmentary orders may be either oral or written; they may be accompanied by maps, sketches, or overlays, or they may consist of maps, sketches, or over-

lays with written instructions thereon. They are concise but not at the expense of clarity or omission of essential information. Instructions issued in fragmentary orders may be repeated in a complete operation order or in an annex if considered desirable.

9-42 FORM OF OPERATION ORDERS.—

a. Heading.—The heading contains the designation of the issuing unit, place of issue, hour and date of issue, file notation, classification, serial number of the order, and reference(s) to the map(s) used.

b. Body.—The body of the operation order contains all necessary information and instructions for the accomplishment of the assigned mission. The body is divided into five paragraphs as follows:

(1) *Information.*—Includes appropriate information covering:

(a) *Enemy.*—Composition, disposition, location, movements, strength, identification, capabilities. Refers to intelligence annex when issued.

(b) *Friendly forces.*—Missions or operations, and locations of next higher and adjacent units; same for covering forces; support to be provided by other forces.

(2) *Mission.*—(a) *Mission.*—(What, when, how, where, who, why).

(b) *Details of coordination applicable to the command as a whole.*—Formation, boundaries, lines of departure, time and direction of attack, zones of action, refer to debarkation and approach schedules, limiting points, etc.

(3) *Tactical missions for subordinate units.*—

(a) Paragraph 3 assigns definite missions to each of the several elements of the command charged with execution of the tactical details for carrying out the decision of the commander or the assigned mission. These missions for subordinate units are given under as many lettered subparagraphs (a, b, c, etc.) as may be necessary to assign one subparagraph to each tactical unit or task force to which instructions are given.

(b) Except as indicated below, all instructions to any unit of the command having a tactical mission should appear in the subparagraph of paragraph 3 pertaining to that unit.

(c) A final subparagraph of paragraph 3, always lettered "x" contains instructions appli-

cable to two or more elements of the command, which are not found in any other paragraph or subparagraph. Many of these instructions are coordinating details which apply to subordinate units. Paragraph 3 (x) also contains instructions relative to desired essential elements of information. These are sometimes listed in the intelligence annex rather than 3 (x).

(4) *Administrative matters.*—Instructions to tactical units concerning supply, evacuation, and traffic details which are required for the operation. If an administrative order has been issued, reference is made to that order.

(5) *Signal communication.*—(a) Orders for employment of means of signal communication; restrictions on use of communication facilities, and special pyrotechnic signals.

(b) *Command posts and axes of signal communication.*—Initial locations for unit and next subordinate unit; time of opening, tentative subsequent locations when appropriate.

(c) *Location and time of opening.*—Advance command post, march control points or other places to which messages may be sent.

c. Ending.—The ending contains the signature, the list of annexes, if any, distribution, and the authentication. The authentication need not appear on the original copy.

9-43 ANNEXES TO OPERATION ORDERS.—

a. General.—Annexes include:

(1) Those accompanying an order for purposes of brevity, clarity, and simplicity, for example, maps and overlays.

(2) Those used to amplify an order when the volume is too great for inclusion in the order itself.

b. To whom issued.—Annexes are issued to all units whose actions or movements are affected by the information and instructions contained therein.

c. Form.—(1) Written annexes usually follow the form prescribed for the complete operation order, except that information and instructions already given in the order need not be repeated in an annex thereto.

(2) *Maps, sketches, charts, or overlays.*—Maps of the following types are frequently used as annexes: situation maps, operation maps, administrative maps, circulation maps.

(3) Annexes dealing with embarkations, debarkations, entraining, entrucking, march

tables, and other technical data are shown in tabular form.

d. Preparation.—Annexes are prepared by the appropriate staff officers and submitted to the commander for approval and signature prior to issue. They are authenticated by the appropriate staff officer.

e. How lettered.—The staff section responsible for the preparation of operation orders will assign letters to the Annexes which are to accompany it.

9-44 TECHNIQUE OF PREPARING OPERATION ORDERS.—*a. General.*—The purpose of a uniform technique in the writing of orders is to promote clarity and prevent misunderstanding. General technique to be observed as follows:

(1) Orders must be clear, concise, and direct. Those giving missions for subordinate units should prescribe only such details or methods of execution as are necessary to insure that the actions of the subordinate unit concerned will conform to the plan of operations for the force as a whole. The abbreviated form of order with map or overlay is often used.

(2) Paragraphs 1 and 2 of an operation order are usually written in the present tense. In the interests of simplicity and clarity, the affirmative form of expression is used throughout the order.

(3) When the date and hour are undetermined, D-day and H-hour may be used, and the selected date and hour communicated later to those concerned.

(4) When the hour is expressed, it will be in the 24-hour-clock system.

(5) Whenever orders apply to units in different time zones, Greenwich Civil Time or the time zone specified by higher headquarters will be used. The zone suffix letter will immediately follow the last digit of the group. For example, 0225Z will indicate 2:25 A. M., Greenwich Civil Time.

(6) Dates include the day, month, and year, thus: 6 Aug. 46. In stating a night, both dates should be included, thus: night 4-5 Aug. 46.

(7) Boundaries limit zones of action or movement and areas of responsibility. These are designated by easily distinguishable terrain features in the sequence in which they occur on the ground. This sequence is given, in the

usual case, in the direction of the enemy, but in the case of a retrograde movement, in the reverse direction.

(8) Geographical names are written or printed in capital letters. This minimizes the chance of error and makes the places mentioned stand out prominently in the order. The spelling in the order must be the same as that on the map referred to in the heading of the order.

(9) Compass points are preferable to the terms "right" and "left". Should right or left be necessary, the user is assumed to be facing the enemy or facing downstream if used with reference to a river.

(10) When places or features are difficult to find on a map, or when ambiguity may arise with names of similar spelling, they should be identified by coordinates, or by stating locations in relation to some easily distinguishable feature or place on the map.

(11) Roads are identified by name or by a sequence of points on the road, named in the direction of movement and when there is no movement, from right to left or rear to front, assuming that the person designating the road is facing the enemy. All other lines are designated in the same manner.

(12) Areas are designated by naming, counterclockwise, a suitable number of limiting points. The first point so named, regardless of whether the area pertains to friendly troops or to the enemy, is one on the right front from the viewpoint of our own troops.

(13) *(a) Expressions similar to the following are avoided:* "attack vigorously," which is not only meaningless and verbose, but weakens the force of subsequent orders in which the expression does not appear; "holding attack," "secondary attack," and "main attack," which qualify the vigor of the operation; and "try to hold" and "far as possible," which lessen responsibility.

(b) Avoidance of highly technical language.—In operation orders it is essential that there be no opportunity for misunderstanding by any subordinate of the exact intended meaning of all terms used. With partially trained troops and staffs the use of technical military language may afford opportunity for such misunderstandings. Therefore, the use in combat orders

of technical expressions should be avoided if there is any danger of misunderstanding. In such cases, words of common understanding should be substituted, even at the sacrifice of brevity. Clarity is the first essential, technique is secondary.

b. Example of written operation order:

00990-46 2d Naval Landing Party Bn
 SECRET Mahout Group
 In the Field
 0900, 3 October 1946.

Operation Order No. 16-46

Map: Special Map, Mahout, 1st Engineer
 Topographical Battalion; Scale
 1:10,000.

1. (a) One enemy infantry company defends hill 660. (See operation map.)

(b) The 3d Naval Landing Party Bn will conduct a demonstration near Fonsot village at 1000, 3 October, 1946. An airstrike will be delivered on hill 660 by fleet aircraft at 1030, 3 October, 1946.

2. Battalion attacks, 1100, 3 October, capture hill 660, envelops hostile left (east) flank, secures crossing over POLYNESIAN CREEK. Companies E and F, abreast, Company F on the right. Line of departure: present line held by advance guard on hill 440. Boundary between companies: UPSET CREEK. (See operation map.)

3. (a) Company E—seize hill 212, assist Company F in capture of hill 660. (See operation map.)

(b) Company F—attack through woods east of hill 212, envelop enemy left flank and capture hill 660. (See operation map.)

(c) Company G—Battalion reserve, protect right and left flanks of Battalion. (See operation map.)

(x) (1) Contact from left to right.

(2) Determine if enemy will withdraw.

4. Administrative order No. 14-46.

5. (a) Pyrotechnic Code:

Red Star Cluster—Objective taken.

Green Star Cluster—Mark front line.

(b) Normal radio traffic will be maintained.

(c) Command Posts: Battalion—trail junction (48.20-66.05). Companies report location when established.

(d) Time zone-10 (King) time will be used in all messages.

BY ORDER OF COMMANDER A
 B
 Lieutenant Commander, USN
 Executive Officer.

Annex A: Operation Map.

Distribution: Company E

Company F

Company G

Headquarters Company

Com Bat Div 10

Journal

OFFICIAL

C

Lieutenant, USN

S-3

SECTION IX

SUPPLY AND EVACUATION

	Par.	Page
General.....	9-45	364
Planning.....	9-46	364
Source of supply.....	9-47	364
Transportation.....	9-48	364
Duties of personnel.....	9-49	364

9-45 GENERAL.—*a.* Supply and evacuation is a command responsibility. A commander may delegate certain functions but the responsibility of proper supply and evacuation is that of the commander. The commander is also responsible for the supply and evacuation of attached units.

b. The impetus of supply is from rear to the point of consumption. However, it is each commander's responsibility to make known his requirements to higher authority.

9-46 PLANNING.—*a.* The plan of supply and evacuation must support the tactical plan. It must be simple and provide continuity.

b. There must be a detailed evacuation plan for any operation, whether it be actual operations against hostile forces or maneuvers against own forces, as there will be nonbattle casualties on any operations. Medical sections are an organic part of a landing party and will administer first aid to casualties. However, some plan must provide for the evacuation of casualties to the ships or to a hospital after initial treatment in the field.

c. The medical plan must provide for the establishment of aid stations and collecting points through which casualties are evacuated.

9-47 SOURCE OF SUPPLY.—*a.* If the landing party is operating in the vicinity of the point of landing, the source of supply will be the ships from which debarked.

b. In the event the fleet must move away from the point of landing, supply dumps

must be established ashore and means provided for their protection.

c. Operations inland away from the landing area will require the establishment of successive dumps and adequate means of transportation and guarding.

d. Supplies from ships may be augmented by purchases or requisitions from civilian sources.

9-48 TRANSPORTATION.—Transportation of supplies and casualties on operations can be accomplished by several means depending upon the situation. Evacuation of casualties can be effected in return trips of transportation that brings up supplies.

a. By boat.—When the point of consumption is on or near a beach or navigable river the easiest method of transportation is usually by boat.

b. By carrying parties.—Carrying parties may be organized to transport supplies and evacuate casualties when the terrain is such that other means are impractical or when other transportation is not available. Local labor should be utilized when obtainable.

c. Confiscated, requisitioned, or hired civilian transportation.—Civilian vehicles may be used when obtainable and when required by the situation.

d. Air.—The transportation of supplies by air provides a rapid means of transportation to points inaccessible by other means. The evacuation of casualties by air, however, necessitates a landing area for the aircraft.

9-49 DUTIES OF PERSONNEL.—For duties and responsibilities of various personnel of a landing party connected with supply and evacuation see chapter 1, Organization.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 10

COMBAT PRINCIPLES

CHAPTER 10

COMBAT PRINCIPLES

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL-----	10-1	369
II. OFFENSIVE COMBAT, GENERAL-----	10-2	370
III. THE RIFLE SQUAD IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-8	378
IV. THE RIFLE PLATOON IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-15	393
V. THE MACHINE GUN PLATOON IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-22	401
VI. THE RIFLE COMPANY IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-29	406
VII. THE NAVAL LANDING PARTY BATTALION IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-36	417
VIII. DEFENSIVE COMBAT, GENERAL-----	10-42	420
IX. FIELD FORTIFICATIONS AND CAMOUFLAGE-----	10-50	424
X. THE RIFLE SQUAD IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-56	431
XI. THE RIFLE PLATOON IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-60	434
XII. THE MACHINE GUN PLATOON IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-65	442
XIII. THE RIFLE COMPANY IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-70	448
XIV. THE NAVAL LANDING PARTY BATTALION IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT-----	10-74	456
XV. NAVAL GUNFIRE SUPPORT-----	10-77	463
XVI. AVIATION-----	10-80	464

SECTION I
GENERAL

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-1	369

10-1 GENERAL.—The combat principles contained in this chapter are applicable to a naval landing party or naval emergency ground defense force organized and equipped in accordance with the provisions of Chapter 1.

SECTION II

OFFENSIVE COMBAT, GENERAL

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-2	370
Distribution of forces.....	10-3	371
Forms of attack.....	10-4	372
Types of offensive situations.....	10-5	373
Successive phases of the offensive.....	10-6	373
Plan of attack.....	10-7	375

10-2 GENERAL.—*a. Definition.*—Offensive combat is the exercise of the means at hand to accomplish destruction of the enemy armed forces.

b. Advantages and disadvantages.—(1) *Advantages.*—Offensive action allows the commander:

- (a) To exercise his initiative.
- (b) To preserve his freedom of action.
- (c) To impose his will upon the enemy.

(2) *Disadvantages.*—Offensive action does not always allow the commander to pick the ground on which he wishes to fight.

c. Objective.—(1) To accomplish the purpose of offensive combat, the commander must select a physical objective.

(2) This physical objective normally takes one or more of the following forms:

- (a) A body of troops.
- (b) Dominating terrain.
- (c) A center of lines of communication.
- (d) Vital areas in the hostile rear.

(3) There are certain characteristics which the objective must satisfy:

- (a) Its capture must be possible within the time and space limitations imposed by the mission.
- (b) Its capture should assure the destruction of the enemy in his position, or the threat of its capture should compel the enemy to evacuate his position.
- (c) It should produce a convergence of effort.

(d) It must be easily identified.

(e) Its capture should facilitate contemplated future operations.

(4) The objective having been selected, all elements are directed in coordinated effort towards its attainment.

d. Surprise.—Surprise is an essential element of a successful attack. Its effects should be striven for in all operations. Surprise is effected by:

- (1) Concealment of the time and place of the attack.
- (2) Screening of dispositions.
- (3) Rapidity of maneuver.
- (4) Deception.
- (5) Avoidance of stereotyped procedures.

e. Reconnaissance.—(1) *Definition.*—Reconnaissance is the directed effort in the field to gather information of the enemy and terrain.

(2) *Purpose.*—The purpose of reconnaissance is to gain information upon which the commander may base tactical operations.

(3) *Enemy information.*—This may include his location, dispositions, strength, organization, composition, movements, attitude, equipment, supply, and morale.

(4) *Terrain information.*—This may include battle positions, character of roads, streams, cover, concealment, and bivouac areas.

(5) *Sources of information.*—These include actual observation of terrain or physical objects, ground and air reconnaissance, and the examination and identification of inhabitants, prisoners, spies, documents, and air photographs.

(6) *Responsibility.*—Reconnaissance is a responsibility of all units.

(7) All subordinate commanders are responsible that their immediate commander is promptly and fully informed of the results of all reconnaissance missions.

f. Security.—See Chapter 8, Marches, Security on the march, and Outposts.

g. Reserves.—The naval landing party battalion holds out a reserve. The corresponding element held out by a company or platoon is

called a support. The following principles apply to both reserves and supports.

(1) The primary mission of the reserve is to enter the action offensively at the proper place and time to assure victory.

(2) The initial strength and location of the reserve will vary with its contemplated missions, type of maneuver, possible hostile reaction, and clarity of the situation. After the attack is launched, the reserve and the fires of supporting weapons are the principal means available to the commander for shaping the course of action and for enforcing a favorable decision.

(3) Initially and until committed to action a reserve may be assigned missions to:

(a) Protect the flanks and/or rear.

(b) Maintain contact with adjacent units.

(c) Assist the attacking units by fire of its supporting weapons.

(4) During the attack a reserve may be assigned missions to:

(a) Exploit a success of the attacking echelon.

(b) Exploit any hostile weakness developed by the attacking echelon.

(c) Protect a flank exposed by the advance of the attacking echelon.

(d) Envelop or outflank resistance that is holding up the attack.

(e) Continue the action of the attacking echelon when it becomes disorganized, depleted, or exhausted.

(f) Meet hostile counterattacks.

(5) Certain missions such as advance or flank guards require a relatively weak reserve. Main attacks are generally characterized by strong reserves. When the plan of attack calls for an envelopment, reserves should be strong and disposed in the direction of the envelopment. When the plan of attack calls for a penetration, reserves should be strong enough to exploit the rupture by envelopment of the hostile flanks. When the situation is clear, reserves may be smaller; when the situation is uncertain, larger reserves are indicated.

(6) Reserves will occupy covered positions when possible, will be capable of rapid movement, and will take every precaution for security against attack.

(7) Reserves of a unit will be committed only

at the express orders of the unit commander.

h. Frontages and depth.—(1) *Frontages.*—(a) As a general guide the frontage assigned a naval landing party battalion is seldom less than 500 yards or more than 1,000 yards measured on the front of the hostile position. In the development or in a secondary attack, frontages up to 2,000 yards may be assigned.

(b) The lateral distribution of troops in attack is governed principally by the scheme of maneuver. It is influenced also by the relative advantages offered by different sections of the terrain. When the situation requires an unusually wide extension of the command, the increase is effected by widening the gaps between units.

(2) *Depth.*—Units are distributed in depth to provide flexibility of maneuver, continuity in the attack, and security. Depth of formation for combat rather than a wide extension of front is necessary in the initial deployment since the progress of battle will call for maneuvers that cannot be clearly foreseen. This condition can be met only by initial distribution in depth.

10-3 DISTRIBUTION OF FORCES.—It is a basic principle of offensive combat that forces are so distributed for attack that there is a main or decisive attack in which is concentrated the maximum possible force, and a secondary or holding attack with a mission so designed as to render maximum assistance to the main attack.

a. Main attacks.—(1) Main attacks are characterized by narrow zones of action, strong support by available supporting weapons, and deep echelonment of reserves.

(2) Main attacks are designed to secure the objective and to destroy the hostile force.

b. Secondary attacks.—(1) Secondary attacks are characterized by lack of depth, reduction of reserves to the minimum, maximum fire power in the attacking echelon, and wide zones of action. Initially, limited objectives will be assigned the attacking units.

(2) Secondary attacks are designed to hold the enemy in position, to force him to commit his reserves prematurely and at an indecisive location, and to prevent him from reinforcing the front of the main attack.

c. Direction of the main attack.—(1) Terrain

plays a vital part in the selection of the direction of the main attack. Terrain which favors the employment of available supporting arms is best adapted for the main attack.

(2) Selection of the direction of the main attack is influenced also by the time available for movement before the attack must be launched.

10-4 FORMS OF ATTACK.—There are two basic forms of maneuver, envelopment and penetration. These two forms of maneuver characterize the effective direction of the main effort. In an envelopment, the main attack is directed against the flank or rear of the enemy's main force and toward an objective in rear of the enemy's front lines. In the penetration, the main effort is designed to pass through the area occupied by the hostile force.

a. Envelopment.—(1) *General.*—(a) The enveloping force seeks to get in rear of those enemy forces which are in front of its objective.

(b) It must be assisted by a secondary attack directed against the enemy front. (See fig. 1.)

(c) Surprise must be an element of the plan for envelopment. The enveloping force must maneuver so as to avoid observation by the enemy.

(d) It is desirable that the directions of attack of the envelopment and the secondary attack converge.

(e) Even simple envelopments require careful planning, coordination, and supervision to insure success.

(2) *Double envelopment.*—A further extension of the enveloping maneuver is the double envelopment. This maneuver involves three tactical groups—two enveloping forces and a secondary attack force. (See fig. 2.) This maneuver is sometimes undertaken as a result of a successful envelopment. A commander upon observing the success of an envelopment may commit his reserve around the opposite flank to complete the destruction of the enemy forces. The enemy normally attempts to counter an envelopment by employment of his reserve. In reconstituting his reserve he may dangerously weaken or overextend his initial front and thus open the possibility for a successful penetration by the secondary attack.

b. Penetration.—(1) When the situation does not favor an envelopment, the main attack is

directed to penetrate the hostile front. Conditions which demand a penetration are:

(a) Enemy flanks that are unassailable.

(b) Lack of time to make an enveloping maneuver.

(2) Conditions which favor a penetration are:

(a) Overextension of the enemy.

(b) Favorable terrain and observation.

(3) In a penetration, the main attack passes through some portion of the area occupied by the enemy's main forces and is directed toward an objective in his rear. (See fig. 3.)

(4) The penetration is characterized by:

(a) The complete rupture of the enemy dispositions.

(b) The seizure of the objective by operations through the gap.

(c) The envelopment of one or both flanks created by the break-through.

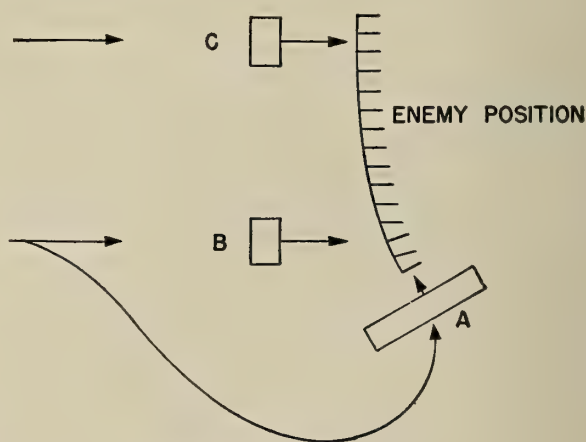


FIGURE 1.—An envelopment.

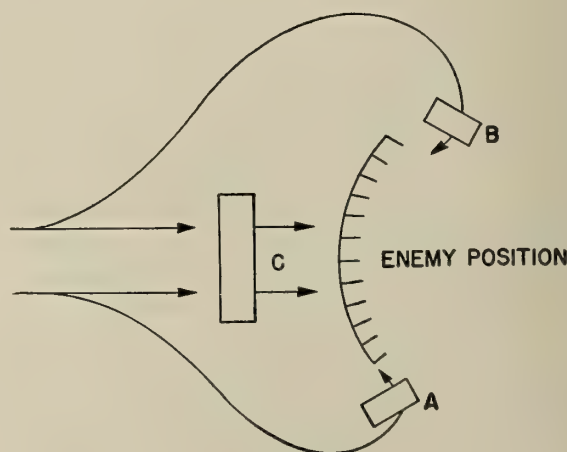


FIGURE 2.—A double envelopment.

Unit A is attacking toward the enemy's flank. Units B and C are carrying out a holding attack. Units A and B attack the enemy's flank and rear. Unit C is engaged in a holding attack.

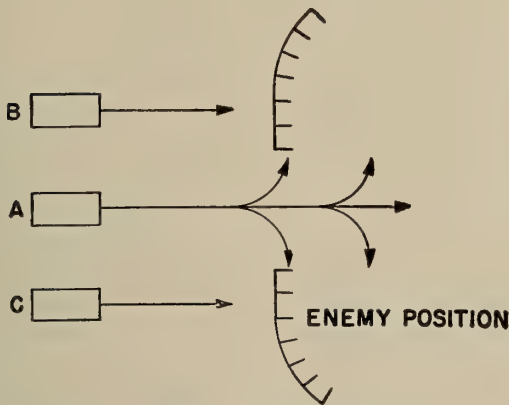


FIGURE 3.—A penetration.

Unit A breaks through the weak center of the enemy line and widens the gap by envelopment of the hostile interior flanks and rapid seizure of the objective. Units B and C engage in secondary attacks against the strong flanks of the enemy.

10-5 TYPES OF OFFENSIVE SITUATIONS.—*a. Meeting engagement.*—(1) A meeting engagement is a collision of two forces, neither of which is fully deployed for combat. The possibility of a meeting engagement between two forces, neither of which is aware of the other's presence, is considerably remote, although such encounters do occur. The term, "meeting engagement," is broad enough to apply to any encounter between two forces when neither has yet determined upon a specific course of action with regard to the other.

(2) Development occurs so rapidly in a meeting engagement that delay in forming a plan and putting it into effect is liable to be the cause of failure in the ensuing battle. Therefore, the decision of the commander must be prompt and favor future action.

(3) Employment of the advance guard is the commander's first problem and is the basis for the subsequent employment of the remainder of his force. (See Ch. 8, Marches, Security on the March, and Outposts.)

b. Attack against discontinuous resistance.—

Hostile security elements may occupy positions for discontinuous resistance. The extent, strength, and flanks of these positions are difficult to determine. Such discontinuous resistance may be encountered by advance guard units, by leading units in an approach march, or by units engaged in pursuit. Maneuver by the leading elements rather than the organization of a strong attack is used to reduce such resistance. Infiltration of small groups along covered approaches and the continued advance of elements which encountered no resistance will outflank isolated detachments and usually bring about their withdrawal. Hostile elements continuing to resist are reduced by envelopment or by combined frontal and flanking action.

c. Attack against organized position.—(1) An organized position is one occupied by a force which has assumed a hasty or deliberate defense.

(2) The enemy seeks to conceal the location and disposition of his defensive installations. Therefore, the attacking unit must apply every available means of reconnaissance to determine the location, depth, and flanks of the hostile position.

(3) The commander should give special attention to his supporting fires to insure the success of his main effort.

10-6 SUCCESSIVE PHASES OF THE OFFENSIVE.—*a. General.*—Offensive combat, in general, progresses through the following four phases:

- (1) The approach phase.
- (2) The attack phase.
- (3) The consolidation phase.
- (4) The exploitation phase.

It is not essential that all elements of a command pass through the various phases simultaneously nor do units necessarily complete one phase before taking up the next. The line of demarcation between certain phases may be vague, units may pass from one to another without marked changes in disposition.

b. The approach phase.—This phase includes the following: the route march, the approach march, and the assembly area.

(1) *Route march.*—(a) Except in an amphibious assault, an infantry unit usually begins an offensive by advancing toward the enemy in

column, preceded by such security and reconnaissance elements (advance guard, flank guards, etc.) as are required by the situation.

(b) The main body is kept in column, usually in column of twos or threes, as long as it is safe to do so, since such a formation facilitates control by leaders. Large units are broken up into several parallel columns which keep in touch with each other and which execute necessary reconnaissance and security measures; i. e., battalions break into companies and companies into platoons, each remaining in route march until it becomes necessary for platoons to deploy and take the formations described in Chapter 9, Basic Combat Techniques. The procedure of deploying from the route column is known as the development.

(c) A unit will remain in route column as long as it can advance with a minimum of casualties from enemy long-range fire or until the unit's security is seriously threatened by long-range fire.

(2) *Approach march.*—(a) The approach march begins when a unit is forced off the route of march by long-range enemy fire or is threatened by long-range fire; the approach march ends when the leading echelon crosses the line of departure or comes under effective small arms fire.

(b) After entering the zone of long-range fire, infantry ordinarily advances a long distance before it is justified in opening fire. The naval landing party will not normally encounter strong enemy artillery or air forces. The naval landing party will usually not reply to enemy long-range fire except to direct naval gunfire or supporting aviation on the hostile batteries. By taking full advantage of cover and concealment and by the use of formations which will insure a minimum of casualties, the infantry continues to advance rapidly until within effective range of enemy small arms fire.

(c) When the deployment from route column to approach march is completed, the leading platoons are deployed to the extent that enemy fire may be returned quickly.

(3) *Assembly area.*—(a) When practicable, a unit interrupts its approach march to occupy an assembly area preliminary to deployment for attack. In the assembly area the attack is organized; equipment not essential to combat

is discarded; necessary supplies and equipment are issued. Reconnaissance and plans for the attack are completed and attack orders issued while the troops are in their assembly areas.

(b) Normally the assembly area should be the most forward locality in rear of the line of departure which affords cover from small arms fire and concealment from hostile air and ground observation. It should be sufficiently large to permit dispersing all elements of the unit. Terrain is desirable which possesses all-around observation on or near the perimeter of the area and natural protection against mechanized attack.

c. *The attack phase.*—This phase includes the following: the advance by fire and maneuver, the assault, the advance through the hostile position, and the pursuit by fire.

(1) *Advance by fire and maneuver.*—(a) The attack is characterized by the positive action of fire and maneuver, combined and controlled to create a preponderance of force in the decisive direction. This requires that the units within the attacking echelon support one another by fire as they move toward the objective and that they constantly maneuver so as to increase the effectiveness of this fire.

(b) While the attacking echelon is in its assembly areas, while it is moving up to the line of departure, and while it is in covered positions waiting to cross the line of departure, supporting arms and weapons fire on enemy positions. This preparatory fire may be carried out by any one or several of the following: Aircraft, naval gunfire, rockets, and machine guns.

(c) At a designated time, the leading units cross the line of departure and advance toward the first objective. The fire of the supporting weapons continue until masked by the attacking echelon at which time such fire either ceases or lifts to new targets located deeper within the enemy positions.

(2) *Assault.*—(a) The primary object in advancing the attack by fire and maneuver is to get in position to assault the enemy.

(b) The assault is the final phase of the attack. It is the rush to close combat with the enemy, to destroy him or drive him out in hand-to-hand combat, with extensive use of the bayonet and grenades.

(c) Supporting fires are lifted at a specific time or on prearranged signal just as the assault is launched.

(3) *Advance through the hostile position.*—After the assault of an organized position, the attack often breaks up into a series of separate combats which are continued throughout the depth of the hostile position. These combats are directed by subordinate commanders within their zones of action and are supported by all means at their disposal.

(4) *Pursuit by fire.*—After units have overrun the final objective by assault they will continue to fire at any enemy that may be withdrawing (pursuit by fire). Physical pursuit is not commenced until ordered by the landing party commander. There are two reasons for this:

(a) Units may be disorganized, necessitating reorganization. Physical pursuit under these circumstances would not allow the landing party commander to regain control of his units, and control is imperative.

(b) Disorganized units could be enveloped and isolated by the enemy.

d. The consolidation phase.—This phase includes the following: the immediate defense, and the reorganization.

(1) *Immediate defense.*—After a unit has overrun the enemy position and pursued him by fire, it must prepare to defend what it has won. Enemy reaction may be immediate and vigorous. (See Sec. VIII.)

(2) *Reorganization.*—After establishing an immediate defense, unit leaders reorganize their units as quickly as possible. This reorganization should be executed in covered and concealed positions, if possible. Throughout the reorganization period, the unit leaders use every opportunity afforded them to make a visual reconnaissance in preparation for continuing the attack.

e. The exploitation phase.—This phase includes the following: The continuation of the attack or the pursuit or the mopping-up.

(1) *Continuation of the attack.*—When the objective is captured and reorganization has been completed, the retreating enemy is followed and kept engaged for the purpose of destroying his combat power. When the attack is continued the sequence of steps in the attack is again followed.

(2) *Pursuit.*—The order for pursuit is given by the naval landing party commander when the enemy is no longer able to maintain his position and endeavors to escape by retreat. The object of pursuit is the annihilation of the hostile forces. Once begun, it must be characterized by boldness and rapidity and must be pushed to the limit of human endurance.

(3) *Mopping-up.*—Bypassed or isolated enemy elements are normally sought out and destroyed by support or reserve elements.

10-7 PLAN OF ATTACK.—*a. Formulation of plan.*—Based on all available information, the unit commander decides how best to employ the elements of his unit in order to accomplish his mission promptly and with the fewest casualties. His final plan of attack must insure maximum teamwork between the attacking rifle elements and between the rifle elements and any supporting aircraft and/or naval gunfire. It consists of two main parts, the plan of maneuver and the plan of supporting fires. In addition, it covers the administrative details of supply and evacuation, and the establishment of the signal communication system necessary for control.

b. Plan of maneuver.—(1) *General.*—The plan of maneuver is the unit commander's plan for employing his rifle units to accomplish his mission. It includes determination of objectives; where and in what direction the main and secondary attacks are to be made; the line of departure; zones of action of the attacking units; formation of his unit as a whole; composition, location, and employment of reserves; security measures initially necessary; and the time of attack. Tentative plans for the defense of the objective, when taken, should also be made.

(2) *Objectives.*—(a) Suitable objectives for the main attack are those terrain features whose capture will make untenable nearby portions of the enemy position or which will facilitate flanking or enveloping action against them.

(b) Suitable objectives for the secondary attack are hostile positions which prevent or impede the advance of the main attack, or terrain features on which such hostile positions could be established.

(c) Objectives should—

1. Be easy to recognize on the ground.
2. Be visible from the line of departure or previous objective whenever practicable. Suitable objectives for the unit making the main attack may, however, lie beyond and be masked by terrain occupied by hostile forward groups. Also an objective may not be visible because of intervening woods used as a covered approach by an attacking unit.

3. Be such that their attainment will promote the accomplishment of the mission of the unit and facilitate probable future action.

4. Afford good observation and suitable terrain for fire support of a further advance.

5. Whenever practicable be within effective range of supporting weapons located on or in rear of the line of departure (or last previous objective).

(3) *Location of main and secondary attack.*—

(a) *Main attack.*—Prior to the attack, knowledge of the hostile dispositions and strength will usually be incomplete since the enemy will seldom disclose his exact strength or disposition until forced to do so. The unit, therefore, primarily attacks terrain. The unit commander directs his main attack at the weakest part of the hostile position in his zone; that is, in terrain where the defender cannot use his weapons or obstacles to advantage, where covered approaches permit an advance close to his positions, or where his defensive works are exposed to observation and fire by the attacker. The possibilities which the terrain offers for effective employment of the attacker's supporting arms is also taken into consideration in the location of the main attack.

(b) *Secondary attack.*—Where the zone of action is narrow, the unit making the secondary attack may be given all of the zone not allocated to the main attack, in order to permit maneuver of its elements. In a wide zone a gap may be left between units making the main and secondary attacks; in such a case, the unit making the secondary attack is directed to attack in a zone of action which contains the best remaining cover and concealment.

(4) *Direction of attack.*—The unit commander designates the direction of attack by magnetic azimuth and, when practicable, by successive landmarks. When the main attack and secondary attack initially are convergent (for example,

when the main attack is directed to outflank hostile resistance on the initial unit objective while the secondary attack is made frontally), separate directions of attack should be prescribed for each. Otherwise, only a single direction of attack indicating the general direction of advance of the unit as a whole is ordinarily prescribed.

(5) *Line of departure.*—A line of departure is the line from which the attack is launched by the leading elements at the prescribed hour. Its purpose is to coordinate the advance of the attack echelon so that its elements will strike the enemy in the order and at the time desired. This line should be recognized easily on the ground and should be approximately perpendicular to the direction of attack.

(6) *Zones of action.*—The battalion is usually the smallest unit assigned a zone of action which is designated by boundaries. Subordinate units are usually assigned a zone of action in the following manner:

(a) By assignment of a particular section of the line of departure or by assignment of an area or point from which to start the attack.

(b) By assignment of a frontage prescribed in yards.

(c) By assignment of a direction of attack.

(d) By assignment of a definite objective or series of objectives to be captured.

(7) *Reserves.*—(a) Initially, a portion of the rifle strength must be held in reserve for exploiting a hostile weakness developed by the attacking echelon, striking the final blow necessary to capture an objective, replacing an exhausted or disorganized part of the attacking echelon, or for repelling counterattacks.

(b) The reserve is placed initially in a locality where it is afforded protection against hostile observation, flat-trajectory fire, and air or mechanized attack. It should be able to move rapidly to points of possible employment, particularly to further the main attack.

(8) *Formation.*—The formation of the unit is governed by the mission, terrain, known enemy dispositions, troops available, supporting weapons, and formation ordered by higher commanders. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(9) *Security.*—(a) *Flank.*—Flank security patrol(s) should be detailed for any exterior flank(s), or for an interior flank when the loca-

tion of the adjacent unit, or the nature of the intervening gap, would permit a hostile counter-attack to strike the flank of the unit without coming under effective fire from the adjacent unit. The size of the security elements depends upon the terrain, distance to adjacent units, and probable number of messages to be sent back; for an interior flank the size will seldom exceed one rifle squad. All connecting groups and flank security patrols may be furnished by the reserve, or they may be furnished for one flank by the unit making the secondary attack.

(b) *Antiaircraft*.—The unit commander insures that sufficient air-antitank guards are detailed.

(c) *Command post*.—The unit commander must insure that the command post is provided with adequate local security against attack by hostile patrols and bypassed enemy groups.

(10) *Time of attack*.—The time of attack is the hour at which the attack is to be launched. If a line of departure is prescribed, it is the hour at which the line is to be crossed by the leading elements of the attack. It is governed by the time interval required for reconnaissance, preparation of plans, issuing of orders, and movement of troops into position.

c. *Plan of supporting fires*.—The plan of supporting fires must be designed to support the plan of maneuver and give maximum assistance to the advance of the main attack. Therefore, the major portion of all available fire support is directed initially against the targets most likely to endanger the main attack, whether they are in its zone of action or in adjacent zones. The plan includes determination of position areas and initial missions or targets for the machine guns and the fire support ships.

SECTION III

THE RIFLE SQUAD IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10- 8	378
Control.....	10- 9	378
Approach phase.....	10-10	378
Attack phase.....	10-11	384
Consolidation phase.....	10-12	390
Exploitation phase.....	10-13	390
Support squad.....	10-14	391

10-8 GENERAL.—When the squad undertakes offensive action, it will go through all or most of the four phases of offensive combat. (See par. 10-6.)

10-9 CONTROL.—The squad leader controls the action of his squad by oral orders and arm and hand signals.

10-10 APPROACH PHASE.—*a. Route march.*—(1) Except in an amphibious assault, the first step of offensive action of the squad is usually movement toward the enemy in route march. When in this formation, the squad may march in the advance, rear or flank guards, or the main body. While marching as a part of any of these four elements, the squad may be assigned security missions such as a flank patrol or a connecting group. When the column halts, the squad may be ordered to serve as one of the elements of the march outposts. (See Ch. 8, Marches, Security on the March, and Outposts.)

(2) *Squad as a part of main body.*—When the squad marches as a part of the main body or as a part of a large unit in the advance, rear, or flank guard, the squad leader's primary duties are concerned with the supervision of march discipline within the squad. The squad leader must insist on the maintenance of proper intervals within the squad. As a general rule, five paces between individuals is the correct distance in route march. He must prevent his men from "bunching up" during a halt. He requires all men to move off the road or trail and face outboard during a halt. The squad leader sees that information passed along the column goes through his squad accurately.

b. Approach march.—(1) *Formations.*—(a)

When the platoon leaves the route march (see fig. 4) to take up the approach march, the squad takes a position in the platoon formation as ordered by the platoon commander. The platoon formations are column, line, wedge, V, or echelon. The squad formations are exactly the same—column, wedge, and line being the most common. Fire team formations are column, skirmishers, wedge, and echelon; echelon is the least used.

(b) The column formation for both squad and fire team is vulnerable to fire from the front and requires a change in disposition to employ the weapons toward the front; however, this formation is easily controlled and maneuvered. It is especially suitable for narrow, covered routes of advance, for maneuvering through gaps between areas receiving hostile long-range fires, for moving through woods, and in fog, smoke, or darkness. The depth of a squad column is normally 60 to 100 yards.

(c) The squad on line, with fire teams as skirmishers or in wedge, enables the squad leader to develop the maximum fire power to the front in the shortest time. This formation is more difficult to control and lacks maneuverability, but it is less vulnerable to fire from the front. It is suitable for rapidly crossing an area exposed to hostile long-range fires which cannot be avoided. The width of a squad line is normally 60 to 100 yards.

(d) The squad wedge, with fire teams in wedge or column, is a formation which provides security to both front and flanks, favors maneuver and control, and also provides flexibility in meeting new tactical situations.

(e) The squad V, with fire teams in wedge or as skirmishers, is a formation usually adopted near the end of the approach march, when contact with the enemy is imminent. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(f) A formation with fire teams echeloned to

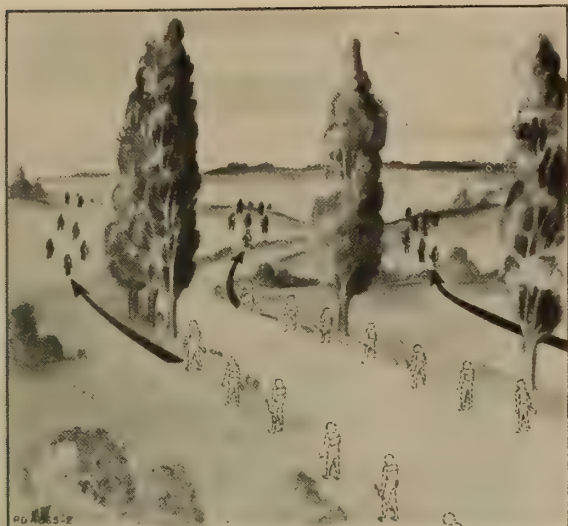


FIGURE 4.—A platoon passing from route march into the approach march.

the right or left rear may be used to protect an exposed flank. This formation permits maximum fire to be delivered promptly toward the flank.

(2) Upon assuming an approach march formation, the platoon commander usually prescribes the initial squad formations. As the march progresses, however, the squad leaders order formation changes in accordance with the terrain, the frontage assigned, and the likelihood of coming under hostile observation and fire. In the same manner, the squad leader prescribes the initial fire team formations; thereafter, the team leaders are responsible for changing their respective formations.

(3) When a platoon is advancing in approach march formation, the platoon commander will often designate a base squad within the platoon. The platoon commander indicates to the leader of the base squad the direction of advance by pointing out a route, assigning an azimuth, or designating a terrain feature on which to guide. The platoon commander will indicate by signal or order when the squad is to advance. When the base squad advances, the other squads guide on it, thereby maintaining direction and proper position within the platoon formation. When the base squad is ordered to stop or has arrived at its assigned objective, it halts and awaits further orders. Guiding on the base squad, other squads of the platoon halt also. Usually the approach march then becomes a

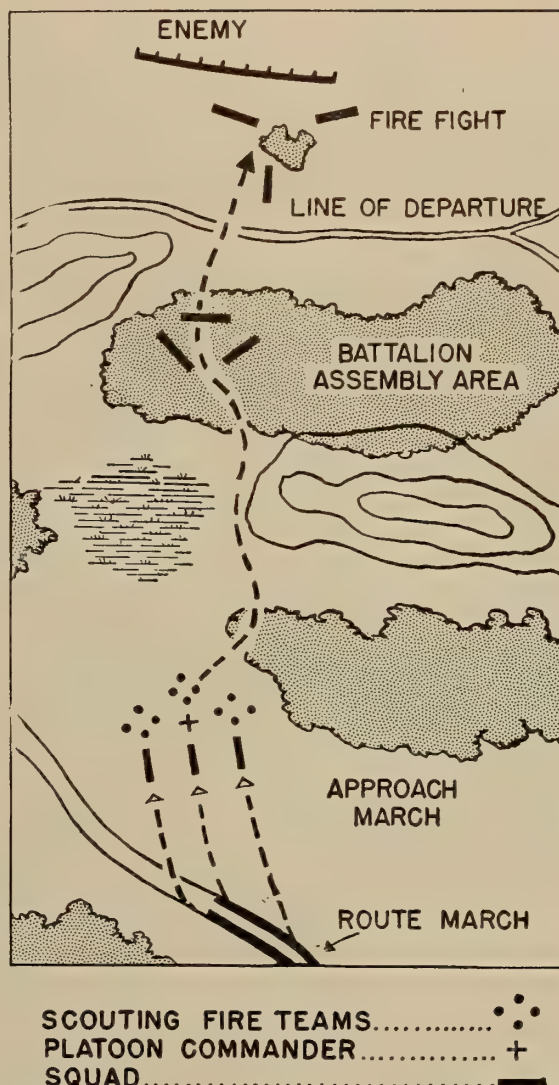


FIGURE 5.—A rifle platoon passing from route march into the approach march, into the attack.

series of bounds along terrain features (i. e., objectives) pointed out by the platoon commander.

(4) During the approach march the squad or fire team must take every advantage of cover and concealment provided along its route by folds in the ground, brush, ravines, reverse slopes, woods, and similar terrain features. In order to take advantage of available cover and concealment, the squad leader may make minor deviations of a few yards from his assigned route of advance. If exposed areas lacking cover and concealment must be crossed, the squad leader usually orders one



FIGURE 6.—Use of cover and concealment.

fire team at a time to rush across the open area to a predesignated location where the squad will re-form to continue the advance. While making the crossing in one rush, the fire team uses skirmishers formation and advances on the double. If the area is being interdicted by long-range enemy fires, the fire team will cross by individual infiltration. Using this method, the fire-team leader orders each man to move rapidly across the area to a predesignated point for re-forming.

(5) Except for squad leaders of leading squads who are engaged in scouting missions, the squad leader moves at the head of his squad. The squad leader regulates his advance on the base squad or, being in command of the base squad, advances as directed by the platoon commander.

(6) *Scouting fire teams.*—(a) *General.*—When a rifle platoon in the approach march is not preceded by friendly troops within view, it sends out its own scouting elements. Scouting elements are usually one or two fire teams; sometimes an entire squad is used. They are generally referred to as scouting or leading fire teams. The scouting fire team or teams oper-

ate under control of the platoon commander. Their squad leader may assist the platoon commander in his control over them when they are employed for this purpose.



FIGURE 7.—Rushing across exposed areas that cannot be avoided.

(b) The scouting fire team(s) moves out aggressively to cover the front of the advancing platoon. It will usually adopt either a wedge or skirmishers formation. The fire team leader watches constantly for signals from the platoon commander. The scouting fire team takes advantage of available cover and concealment without delaying its advance. Its distance in front of the platoon is governed by the orders of the platoon commander and varies with the terrain and the probable position of the enemy. At one time, it may be 300 yards ahead; at another it may be 10 yards. At all times, the movement of the scouting fire team is covered. Cover is provided by elements of the platoon, or by two members of a team covering the movement of the other two if the platoon is unable to cover them.

(c) In open terrain the platoon commander will usually direct that scouting fire teams move



FIGURE 8.—Scouting fire team(s) covering advance of a rifle platoon.

by bounds along a succession of objectives. Conditions of limited visibility, however, will preclude to a great degree this movement by bounds. Conditions of limited visibility are presented by woods, thick undergrowth, darkness, fog, or smoke. Under these conditions of limited visibility, the leader of the scouting fire team must maintain sight contact with the platoon commander.

(d) When a scouting fire team is directed to advance over open ground to an edge of woods, the fire team does not stop at the edge. Two members of the team, preferably the rifleman, and the assistant automatic rifleman, reconnoiter within the woods for 50 to 60 yards, while the fire team leader and automatic riflemen cover them. As soon as it is determined

that the area near the edge of woods is clear, the fire team leader sends a member of the team to the edge of the woods to signal "forward" to the platoon commander. The scouting fire team holds a line 50 to 75 yards within the woods, maintaining observation towards the enemy until the platoon comes up. Before moving out farther through the woods, the fire team awaits orders from the platoon commander. The scouting fire team halts at the far edge of the woods until the platoon commander arrives; he then gives them further orders.

(e) When the scouting teams are fired on, the individuals immediately seek cover. They must then locate targets and return the fire. The scouting fire team leader then must ac-



FIGURE 9.—Platoon commander contacting leader of scouting fire team for information.

completing one of the most important parts of his job. He must determine as many of the following items as possible:

1. Location of enemy (range and reference points).
2. Extent of position (flanks).
3. Nature of position (foxholes, bunkers, pillboxes, obstacles, etc.).
4. Estimated strength (how many).
5. Enemy weapons (machine guns, mortars, tanks, etc.).
6. Terrain between friendly position and the enemy (routes of approach, trails, roads, streams, woods, etc.).

As soon as possible after the firing has started, the platoon commander will contact the leader of the scouting fire team to receive as much of this information as has been gained at that time. After getting the information of the enemy from the scouting fire team leader, the platoon commander will usually return the scouting fire team to the control of its squad leader. In most situations this squad leader will then bring forward the remaining fire team(s) (if all are not employed as scouting fire teams) to the vicinity of the scouting fire team(s) and commit his whole squad to the fight.

c. Assembly area.—(1) Unless the squad has already become engaged with the enemy, it is usually directed by the platoon commander to halt briefly in a covered and concealed position prior to launching an attack. This position is known as a squad assembly area and is usually part of a platoon, company, or landing party battalion assembly area.

(2) Immediately upon the arrival of the squad in the assembly area, the squad leader disperses his men in the area allotted by the platoon commander. Whenever possible, the squad leader sees that his men take advantage of existing holes, furrows, rocks, trees, etc., to protect them from air and ground observation and fire. In the absence of adequate natural

cover, the squad leader may require his men to dig foxholes.

(3) After disposing his men in the area, the squad leader makes a check of equipment. If time permits, he will do this himself. If not, he will direct the fire team leaders to make the check. In this way, the squad leader is assured that all weapons are in working order and that all men have the required amount of ammunition. Additional ammunition is normally issued in the assembly area.

(4) The squad may be required to furnish one or more fire teams to provide security for the assembly area, security against enemy ground forces, and antiair and antimechanized guards.



FIGURE 10.—Platoon moving into an assembly area.



FIGURE 11.—Squad in the assembly area.

(5) While the squad is in the assembly area the platoon commander will send for the squad leaders to give them the attack order. Before the squad leader moves out to meet the platoon commander he must do one important thing. He must turn over command of the squad to the senior fire team leader. On the arrival of the squad leaders, the platoon commander orients them on the map and ground. He then issues his order which will, in most cases, be very brief.

10-11 ATTACK PHASE.—*a. Preparations for the attack.*—(1) *General.*—In the attack the squad assists in accomplishing the platoon mission. When the squad is committed in the attack it will, in general, provide a base of fire

for the platoon or be assigned an objective to seize within the platoon zone of action.

(2) *Troop leading steps prior to attack.*—(a) If time and the situation permit, the squad leader makes a physical reconnaissance of the ground over which his squad is to move in the attack; regardless of the time available, some type of visual reconnaissance will be made. While the squad leader is making his reconnaissance, he must be considering how he is to employ his fire teams in accomplishing his mission.

(b) The squad leader must give his attack order before the squad crosses the line of departure. The squad leader will give his order

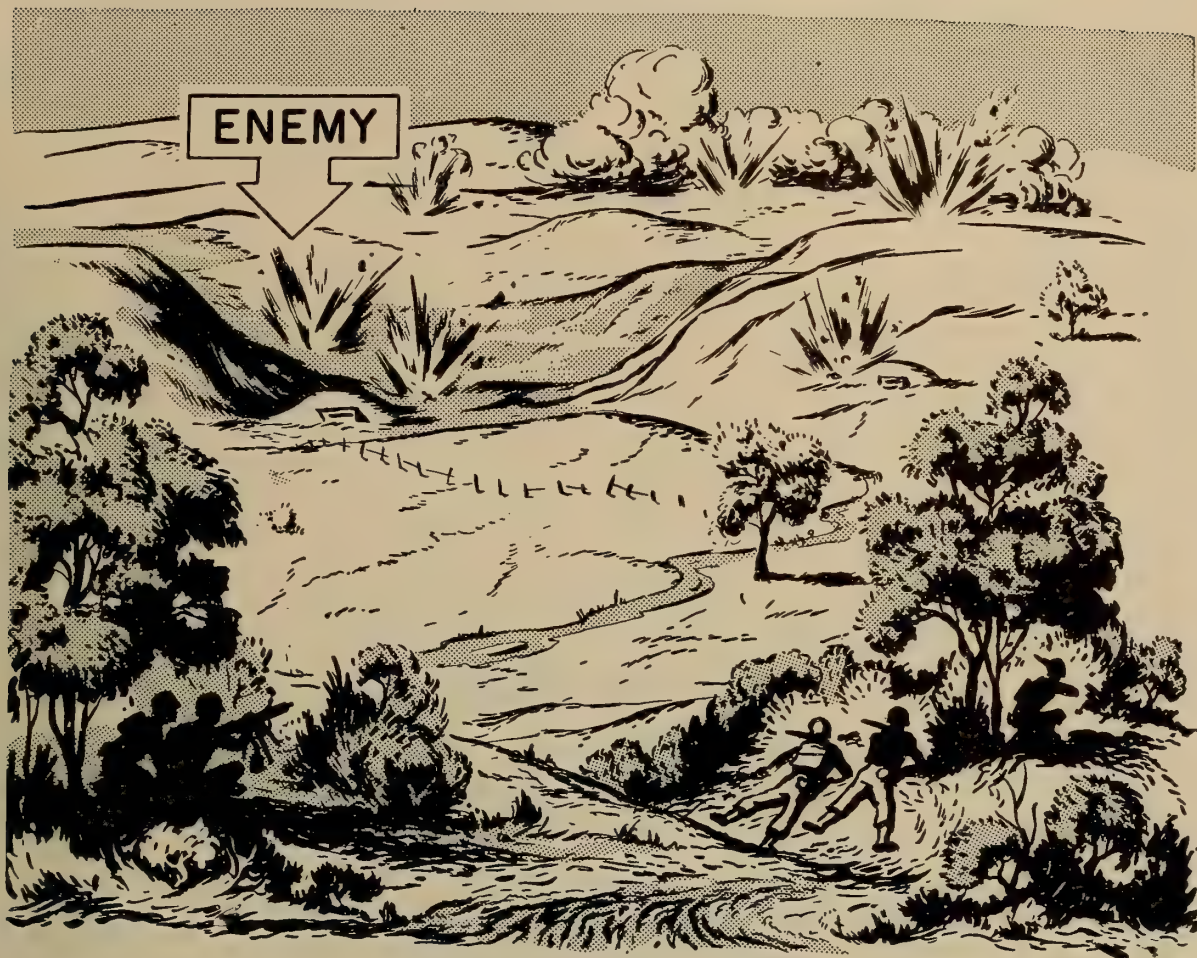


FIGURE 12.—Supporting fires falling on an enemy position.

at a vantage point, if possible. This point may be on the line of departure if the squad is engaged in a fire fight, or may be in rear of the line of departure if the squad is in the assembly area.

(c) If the situation permits, the squad leader assembles the entire squad at the vantage point and issues the order. In case the squad is in contact with the enemy, it may be necessary to issue the order to the fire team leaders individually; otherwise it may be practical to call the fire team leaders together at the vantage point and issue the order to them as a group. In most attack situations, the order will be of fragmentary nature.

(d) Whether his order is complete or fragmentary, the squad leader preceeds his order with an orientation, pointing out the direction of attack and the terrain features that will be

mentioned in the order. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(e) Whenever possible the squad leader should give a complete order using natural aids to assure understanding of the order. As he talks, he may scratch a rough sketch on the ground or use twigs and rocks to represent units.

(3) *Supporting fires.*—(a) While the rifle squads are in assembly areas, while they are moving up to the line of departure, and while they are in covered positions waiting to cross the line of departure, supporting arms and weapons fire on the enemy positions.

(b) At a designated time, the leading rifle squads then cross the line of departure and advance toward the first objective. This advance is closely supported by the fires of machine guns and other rifle units serving as a base

of fire. During this phase, the squad adopts formations that insure the best control and offer the greatest degree of protection against enemy fire. If the ground is open, the squad may deploy fully. If there is a fair amount of cover, the squad leader may adopt a wedge formation. If the advance is through thick woods, the squad may be in column.

(c) The squad leader must move his squad as close as possible to the enemy with a minimum of casualties. He will be able to do this by taking full advantage of supporting fires and utilizing the best available routes of approach. The best routes of approach are those offering the most cover and concealment. In order to take advantage of supporting fires, the squad leader must lead his men as closely as possible

behind the fires laid down by friendly supporting weapons. Unless the squad follows supporting fires closely and closes immediately with the enemy when the fires have lifted, the surviving enemy will be able to man their weapons with greater effect against the advancing troops.

b. Advance by fire and maneuver.—(1) The squad leader should work his fire teams forward as far as possible without firing. Fire must be withheld as long as effective enemy fire is counteracted by friendly supporting fires and use of covered approaches. When the squad reaches a point where it can no longer advance without sustaining excessive casualties, the squad leader orders one or more fire teams to fire on the enemy positions. Upon opening fire, the squad seeks to gain fire superiority

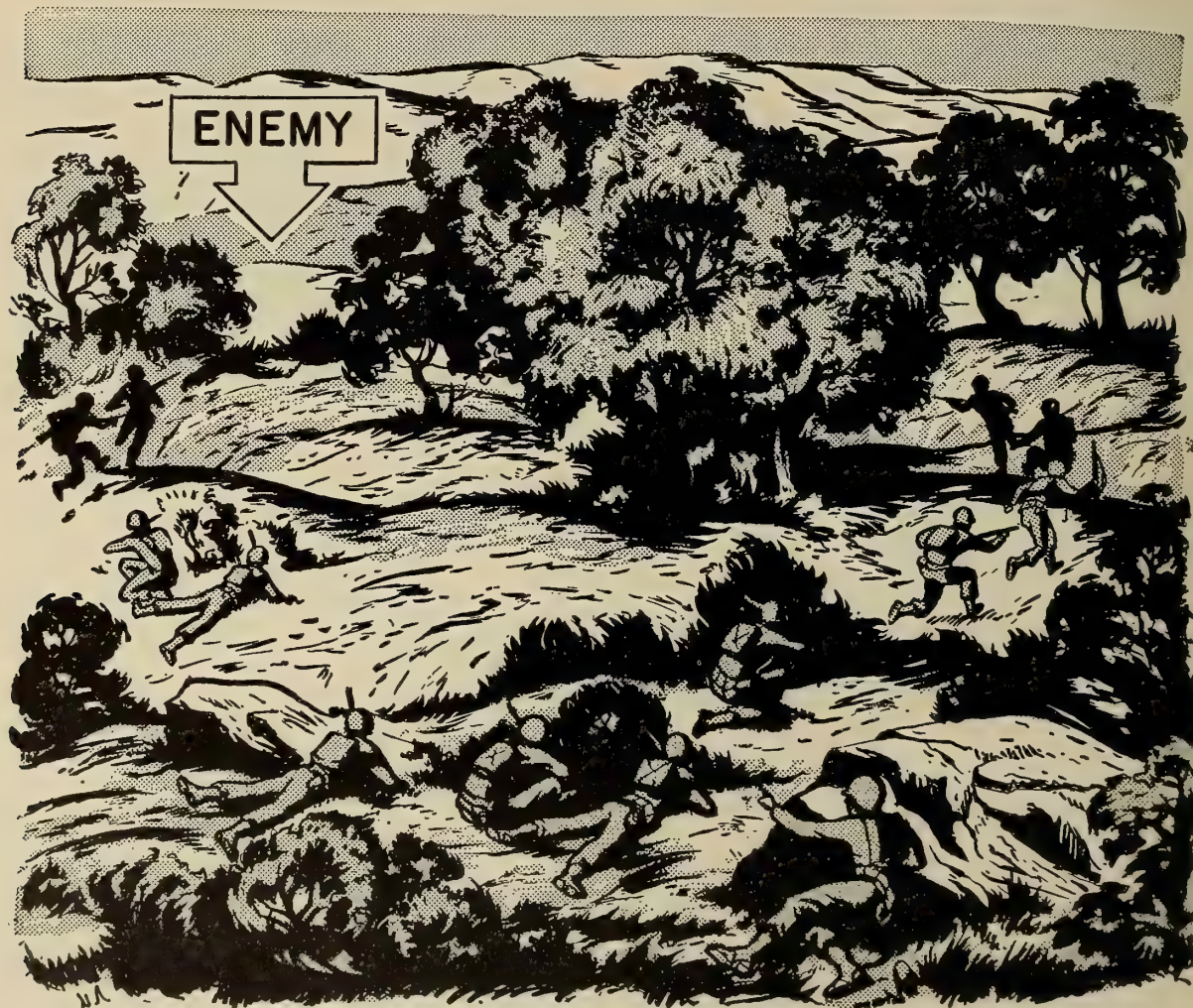


FIGURE 13.—A squad advancing by fire and maneuver.

over the enemy to its front. Fire superiority is gained by subjecting the enemy to fire of such accuracy and intensity that his fire becomes ineffective.

(2) The automatic rifle's capacity for delivering a large volume of fire makes it especially useful for gaining fire superiority. The fire-team leader normally controls the automatic rifle in the attack. He points out the fire position and target for the automatic rifle. He may designate the rate of fire to be used and will usually initiate the movement of the automatic rifle to a new position. Whenever possible, fire-team leaders should select positions that will permit the delivery of enfilade or oblique fire by the automatic rifle on the target. Whenever possible, the squad leader employs surprise fire. He does this by giving a fire order to his fire team. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.) After receiving the fire order, the fire teams move into the firing position undetected. The squad leader orders, "Fire," and all men commence firing simultaneously. This large volume of accurate fire delivered unexpectedly has a very demoralizing effect and causes casualties and disorganization among the enemy.

(3) Once fire superiority has been gained, the squad is ready to continue its advance toward the enemy. Fire superiority must be maintained throughout the attack in order to insure the success of any movement. Therefore, the squad leader must assure himself, before he advances any part of his squad, that there is sufficient fire on the enemy to render his return fire ineffective.

(4) (a) The element of speed is highly necessary in an advance by fire and maneuver. Once the squad leader has made a decision to maneuver part or all of his squad under cover of his fire superiority, he must put that decision into effect immediately. Due to the limited amount of ammunition, riflemen cannot engage in a fire fight over a long period of time. Success in the attack depends not only on a sound plan but also on the speed of execution.

(b) In some situations, the entire squad may advance as a unit by a series of squad rushes. This will be possible only if complete fire superiority is being maintained by numerous close-support weapons firing directly on the

enemy opposing the squad, and/or if the squad has a covered route of advance. Using this method, the squad leader orders, "Follow me"; the squad then rushes a few yards and each man drops to the ground behind cover. It repeats the process until it can advance no further by this means.

(5) (a) Fire and maneuver within the squad take place when the squad leader orders one or more fire teams to advance under cover of the fire of the remaining fire team or teams. The part of the squad delivering covering fire (base of fire) must increase its rate of fire if there is any indication that fire superiority may be lost. The maneuvering fire teams advance as rapidly as possible to new positions, using the cover and concealment available. Oftentimes, this maneuvering element must advance by creeping and crawling. When new firing positions have been reached, the maneuvering element opens fire by surprise, if possible. The fire team or teams which were providing the base of fire, cease firing when the maneuvering group commences firing. Under cover of this newly established base of fire, the fire teams acting as initial base of fire move toward the enemy, using available cover and concealment. This process of fire and maneuver is continued until part or all of the squad is in position to assault the enemy successfully.

(b) The squad leader must decide how many fire teams to employ in the base of fire to cover his maneuvering element. He must decide whether the fire of one team is sufficient to cover the advance of the other two or whether to maneuver one, covered by the fire of two. This decision is based on his estimate of how effective the enemy fire is and the availability of cover and concealment.

(c) 1. When the fire team leader is ordered by his squad leader to advance during the fire fight, he is faced with the same problems as the squad leader only on a smaller scale. He must also consider:

a. Can the enemy fire effectively on my fire team as it moves to the new position?

b. Is the rest of the squad in position to maintain fire superiority over the enemy while I advance?

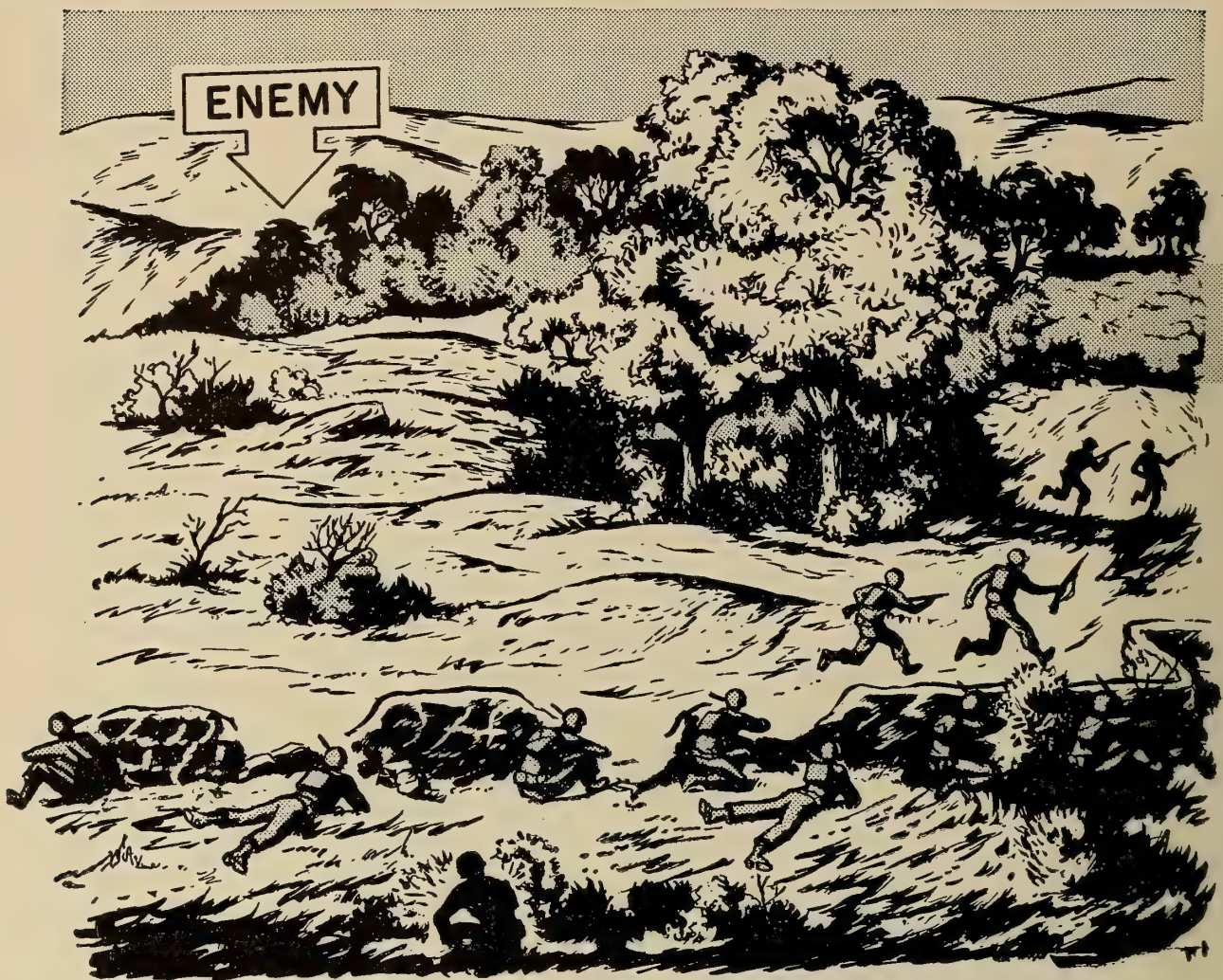


FIGURE 14.—Fire teams employed as a base of fire.

c. Is there a good covered and concealed route to the new position?

2. Upon consideration of these points, he decides whether he can advance all of his fire team in one rush, or whether he must advance by individual infiltration.

a. If the team advances by fire and maneuver, using the method of individual infiltration, the team leader designates which individual is to move. The individual picks out his next firing position before he moves. The distance to the new position should be short. He locks and loads his rifle, moves rapidly to the new position, using cover and concealment, or zig-zagging in the absence of it, drops to the ground, rolls over to the right or left several feet from the initial

falling point, picks up the target, and commences firing. The team leader then designates the next individual to move. This man picks out a position in the vicinity of the first man and moves to it. This process is continued until the entire fire team has moved forward. When moving in this manner, at least two members of the fire team should be in position to act as a base of fire so as to deliver covering fire for the individual moving forward.

b. In a situation where the fire team leader is certain that the enemy cannot fire effectively on his team as it moves to its new position, he may order it to advance as a unit by a series of short rushes.

(6) *Positions and duties of leaders.*—(a) In

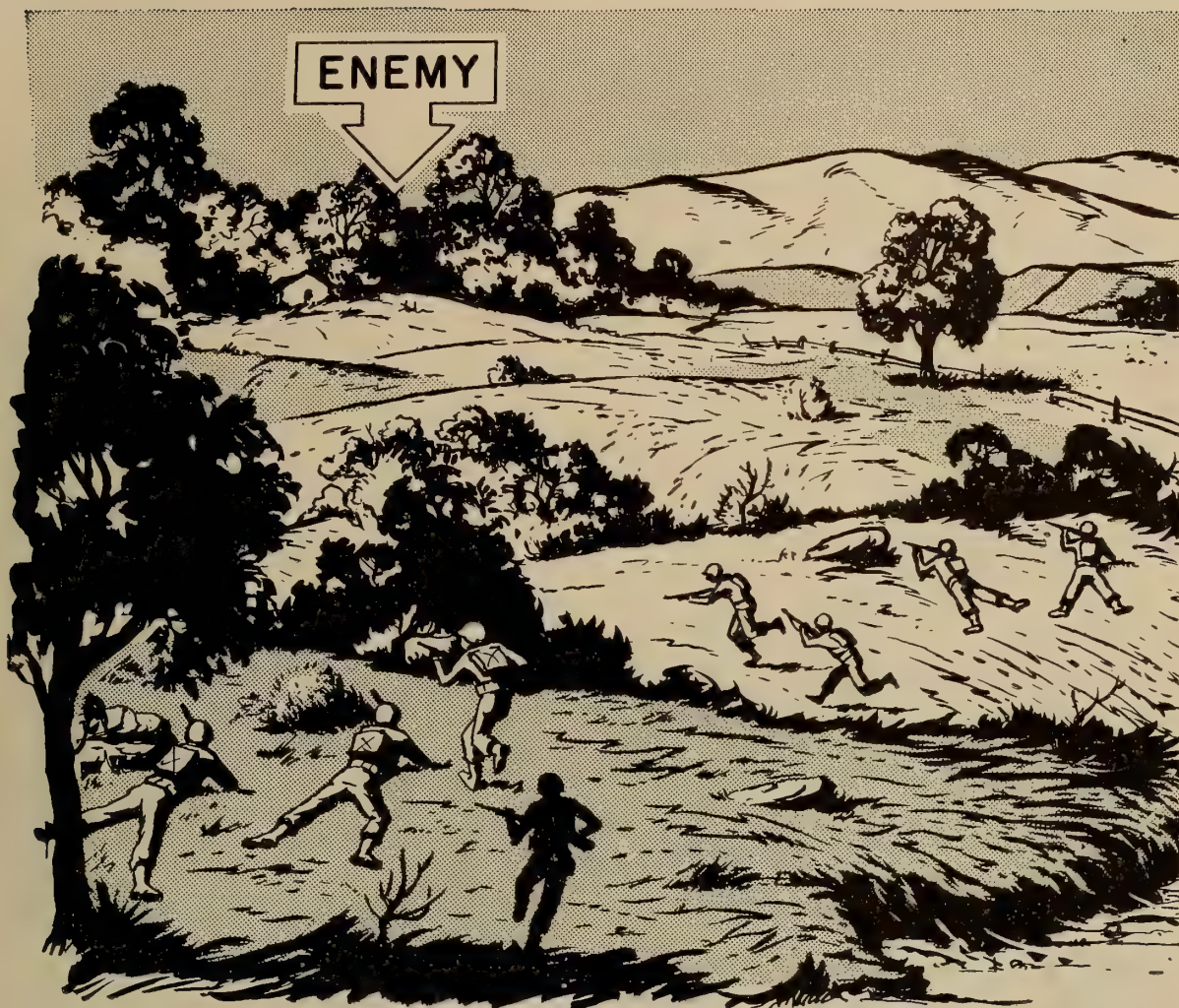


FIGURE 15.—Fire teams advancing by fire and maneuver.

the fire fight, the squad leader will move from one position to another as necessary to control the efforts of his fire teams. He usually positions himself where he can control the bulk of his squad.

(b) Squad and fire team leaders enforce fire discipline.

(c) They are on the alert to advance their units closer to the enemy and therefore, constantly look ahead for squad and fire team positions which their units can use as the platoon advances.

(d) Fire team and squad leaders select automatic-rifle positions, and are especially watchful for ones suitable for the delivery of enfilade or oblique fire on the enemy.

(e) The squad leader is responsible for maintaining contact with the platoon commander; the fire team leader with the squad leader.

(f) In the absence of instructions from the platoon commander, particularly during the last stages of the fire fight, the squad leader may often have to use his own judgment and attack important or surprise targets without orders.

c. Assault.—(1) The primary object in advancing the attack by fire and maneuver is to get part or all of the squad in position to assault the enemy.

(2) The assault is started on order or signal of the platoon commander, or on the initiative of a squad or fire team leader. It is delivered at the earliest moment that promises success and

without regard to the progress of adjacent squads.

(3) When the assaulting squad is subject to enemy fire, it is sometimes necessary to use a part of the squad as the base of fire to deliver covering fire for the assaulting force. The primary purpose of this covering fire is to pin down the enemy, since he might be in a position to inflict heavy casualties on the assaulting fire teams.

(4) In launching the assault the squad may employ assault fire to keep the enemy down. Assault fire is the fire delivered by a unit during its assault on a hostile position. Automatic riflemen and riflemen with bayonets fixed, all taking full advantage of existing cover such as boulders, trees, walls, and mounds, advance rapidly toward the enemy. They fire, as they advance, at areas known or believed to be occupied by the enemy. Riflemen will usually fire from the hip or shoulder at a rapid rate. The automatic rifleman will utilize any firing position that is convenient; often he will fire from the hip in short bursts at a rapid rate.

(5) In the final stage of the assault, the enemy position is overrun. Its defenders are killed by point-blank small-arms fire, grenades, and the bayonet.

(6) An important point to remember is that the assault is never characterized by a mass bayonet charge. The best way to prevent the squad from "bunching up" or massing during the assault is for the squad leader to assign each fire team a definite objective to seize. This assignment of locations also assists greatly in control, for the squad leader will know exactly where to find his fire teams.

d. Pursuit by fire.—After the squad has overrun its objective by assault, it continues to fire at any enemy that may be withdrawing (pursuit by fire). Physical pursuit (actually moving out after the fleeing enemy) will be undertaken only on orders from the platoon commander.

10-12 CONSOLIDATION PHASE.—*a. Immediate defense.*—(1) After the squad has overrun the enemy position and pursued him by fire, it must be prepared to defend what it has won. Immediate and vigorous enemy counterattacks must be anticipated. The enemy may

be expected to bring down accurate mortar and artillery fire on positions from which he has recently been driven.

(2) In order to consolidate his newly won objective, the squad leader must make a quick visual reconnaissance and order his fire teams into defensive positions while awaiting further orders from the platoon commander. (See Sec. X.)

b. Reorganization.—(1) After establishing an immediate defense, the squad leader, assisted by the fire team leaders, reorganizes the squad as quickly as possible. This reorganization should be executed in a covered and concealed position, if possible. In many cases, however, the reorganization must be carried out while the squad is deployed and in position to meet a counterattack. Throughout this reorganization period, the squad leader uses every opportunity afforded him to make a visual reconnaissance in preparation for continuing the attack.

(2) In reorganizing, the following steps must be accomplished by the squad leader:

(a) He reallocates squad personnel, in view of casualties, in order to maintain the basic squad organization of three fire teams with one automatic rifle per fire team. If the squad strength is less than nine, he reorganizes into two teams with two automatic rifles in one team and one in the other. He designates new fire team leaders if necessary.

(b) He redistributes ammunition.

(c) He moves casualties to covered positions.

(d) He informs the platoon commander, either personally or by runner, of the situation, his position, casualties, and ammunition supply.

(e) He disarms prisoners and sends them back to the platoon command post. He searches the clothing of prisoners and enemy dead for any papers, documents, and identification. Anything of this nature that is found is sent back immediately to the platoon command post.

10-13 EXPLOITATION PHASE.—*a. Continuation of the attack.*—One of the objects of reorganization is to prepare the squad to continue the attack to the next objective. That is one of the reasons why reorganization must be accomplished quickly. The squad leader must expect orders from the platoon commander at any time to continue the attack. When the

attack is continued, the squad repeats the steps of the attack phase.

b. Pursuit.—Upon orders, the squad takes up the physical pursuit of a withdrawing enemy. This can be accomplished by means of aggressive, fast-moving combat patrols that follow, keep contact with, and harass the enemy. Approach-march formations may be taken up and the advance is continued to new objectives, pressing the enemy in such a manner as to deny him opportunity to reorganize and prepare new defensive positions.

c. Mopping up.—(1) If the physical pursuit is not to be taken up, the squad may be employed to “mop up” remnants of enemy forces remaining in the objective area.

(2) Mopping up includes the examination of all enemy emplacements, dead, wounded, and prisoners. Emplacements or positions still offering resistance are attacked and destroyed. Emplacements that the enemy may attempt to retake are demolished. Precautions are taken against enemy mines and booby traps. Unit control and security are maintained. Souvenir hunting and sightseeing are not permitted. The squad is kept in a constant state of readiness for new combat missions.

10-14 SUPPORT SQUAD.—*a.* Before the attack, the squad leader of a squad in support informs his men of the situation and the plan of attack. He advances his squad in accordance with the orders or signals of the platoon

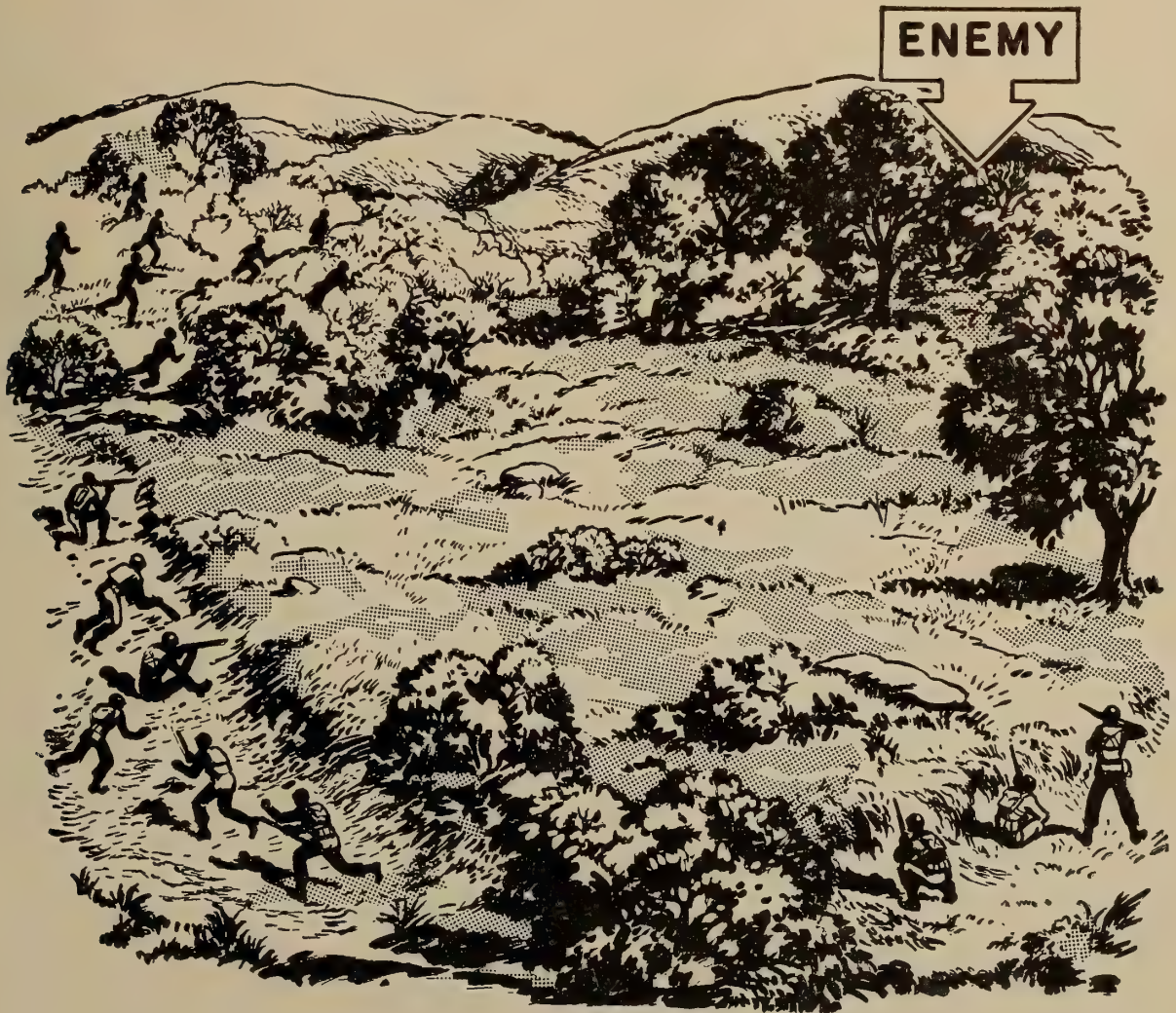


FIGURE 16.—Support squad attacking enemy flank while other two squads act as a base of fire.

commander, keeping it under cover as far as practicable and preventing it from merging with the attacking squads. The mission which may be assigned to a support squad includes one or more of the following:

- (1) To envelop points of resistance holding up the attacking squads.
- (2) To reinforce the attacking squads.
- (3) To furnish flank and rear security.
- (4) To assist the progress of adjacent squads by fire and maneuver.
- (5) To furnish protection against counter-attack during the reorganization of the attacking squads.
- (6) To relieve a squad of the attacking echelon.

(7) To mop up a position overrun or bypassed by the attacking squads.

b. When directed to reinforce the attacking squads, the squad leader points out the positions of the enemy and of the attacking squads. He indicates the part of the line to be reinforced and prepares the squad to move forward rapidly.

c. If ordered to attack a definitely located hostile resistance from a flank, the squad leader locates a departure position for the attack and the best-covered route of approach thereto. He then moves the squad, preceded when necessary by scouts, to the position selected and endeavors to overwhelm the enemy by opening surprise fire and delivering the assault from an unexpected direction.

SECTION IV

THE RIFLE PLATOON IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-15	393
Control.....	10-16	393
Approach phase.....	10-17	393
Attack phase.....	10-18	394
Consolidation phase.....	10-19	398
Exploitation phase.....	10-20	399
Support platoon.....	10-21	399

10-15 GENERAL.—When the platoon as part of a larger force, or acting independently, undertakes offensive action, it will go through all or most of the four phases of offensive combat. (See par. 10-6.)

10-16 CONTROL.—The platoon commander controls the action of the platoon by oral orders or by arm and hand signals. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.) Communication with company headquarters is usually by messenger or visual signals.

10-17 APPROACH PHASE.—*a. Route march.*—Except in an amphibious assault, the first step of offensive action is usually movement toward the enemy in route march. During the advance in route march, the platoon marches in the column as directed by the company commander. The platoon commander prescribes the order of march of the squads.

b. Approach march.—(1) When the platoon leaves the route march to take up the approach march, the squads take position in the platoon formation as ordered by the platoon commander. The platoon formations are column, line, wedge, V, or echelon. The initial formations will be prescribed by the platoon commander. Thereafter, the squad leaders order formation changes within their squads in accordance with the terrain, the frontage assigned, and the likelihood of coming under hostile observation and fire. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(2) *Direction and rate of advance.*—The company commander usually designates a base platoon. He may direct it to guide on a specified element of another company. The platoon

commander of the base platoon is responsible for the direction and rate of advance. The platoon commander makes minor deviations from his assigned zone of advance to avoid prominent points on which hostile weapons may have registered or other dangerous areas and obstacles.

(3) *Contact.*—Contact is maintained by connecting groups whenever intervening terrain makes visual contact difficult.

(4) *Movement to successive objectives.*—In the approach march, the platoon is assigned an initial march objective by the company commander. If there are key terrain features between the platoon and its objective, the platoon commander may designate an intermediate objective(s). He takes full advantage of cover and concealment in moving his platoon forward.

(5) *Zone of reconnaissance.*—In the approach march, the company commander assigns each leading rifle platoon a zone of reconnaissance. This zone may be 300 yards or more in width. The zone is covered by using scouting fire teams or patrols. The platoon commander regulates the movement of scouting fire teams and patrols so as to insure security of the platoon against hostile fire from points within mid-range (400-600 yards).

(6) *Duties of scouting fire teams.*—(See par. 10-10b.)

(7) *Position of platoon commander.*—In the approach march, the platoon commander usually places himself between the leading scouting fire teams and the remainder of the platoon.

c. Assembly area.—Unless the platoon has already become engaged with the enemy, it usually is directed to halt briefly in a covered and concealed position prior to launching an attack. This position is known as an assembly area and is designated by the company commander. Here, while the platoon commander and higher commanders make their recon-

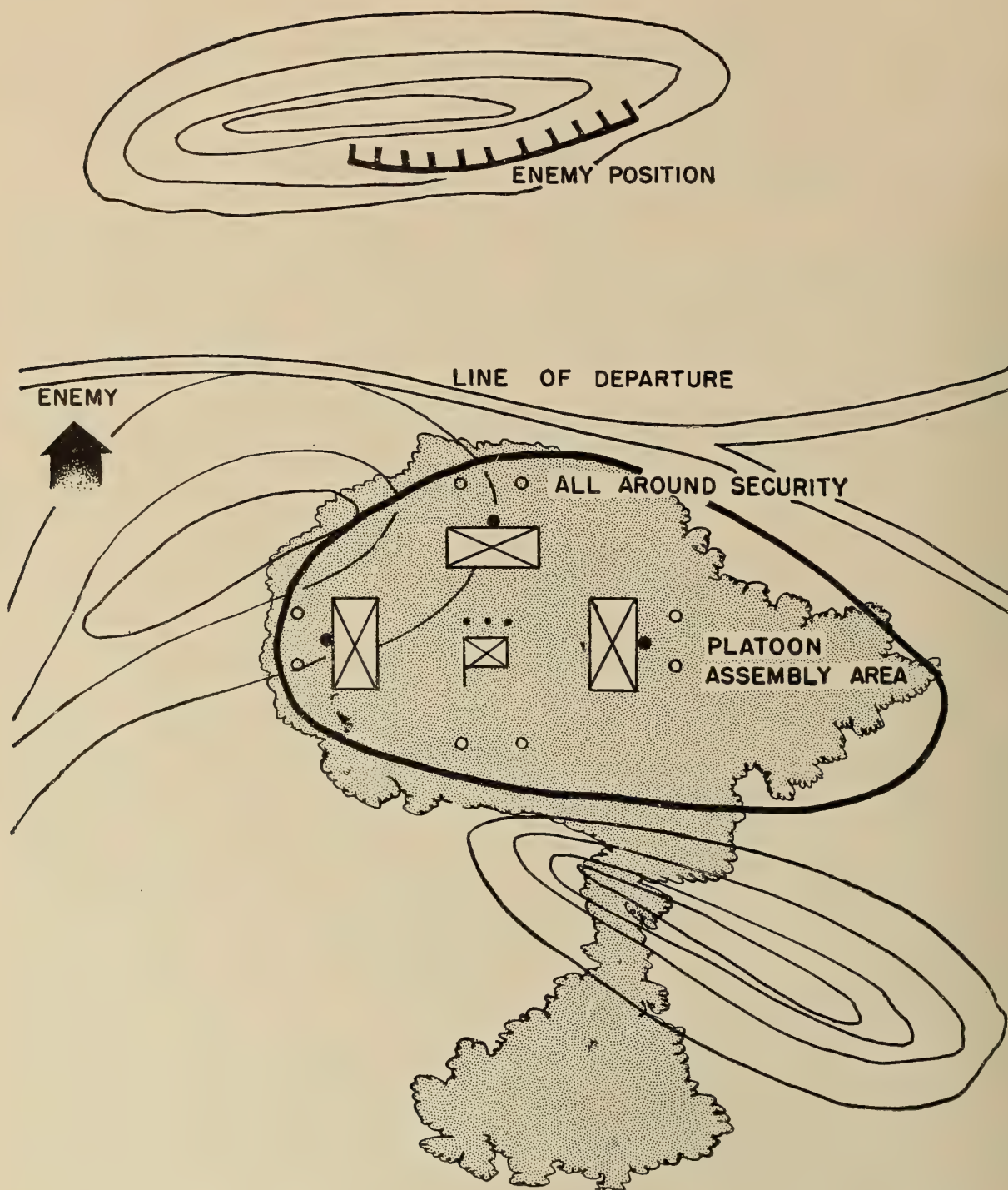


FIGURE 17.—Platoon in the assembly area.

naissance and issue orders, last-minute preparations are made for the attack. Extra ammunition is passed out, equipment is checked, and each man's physical fitness is ascertained.

10-18 ATTACK PHASE.—*a. Preparations*

for the attack.—(1) *General.*—(a) When the platoon is committed in the attack, it will in general, be assigned an objective to seize within the company zone of action or provide a base of fire for the company.

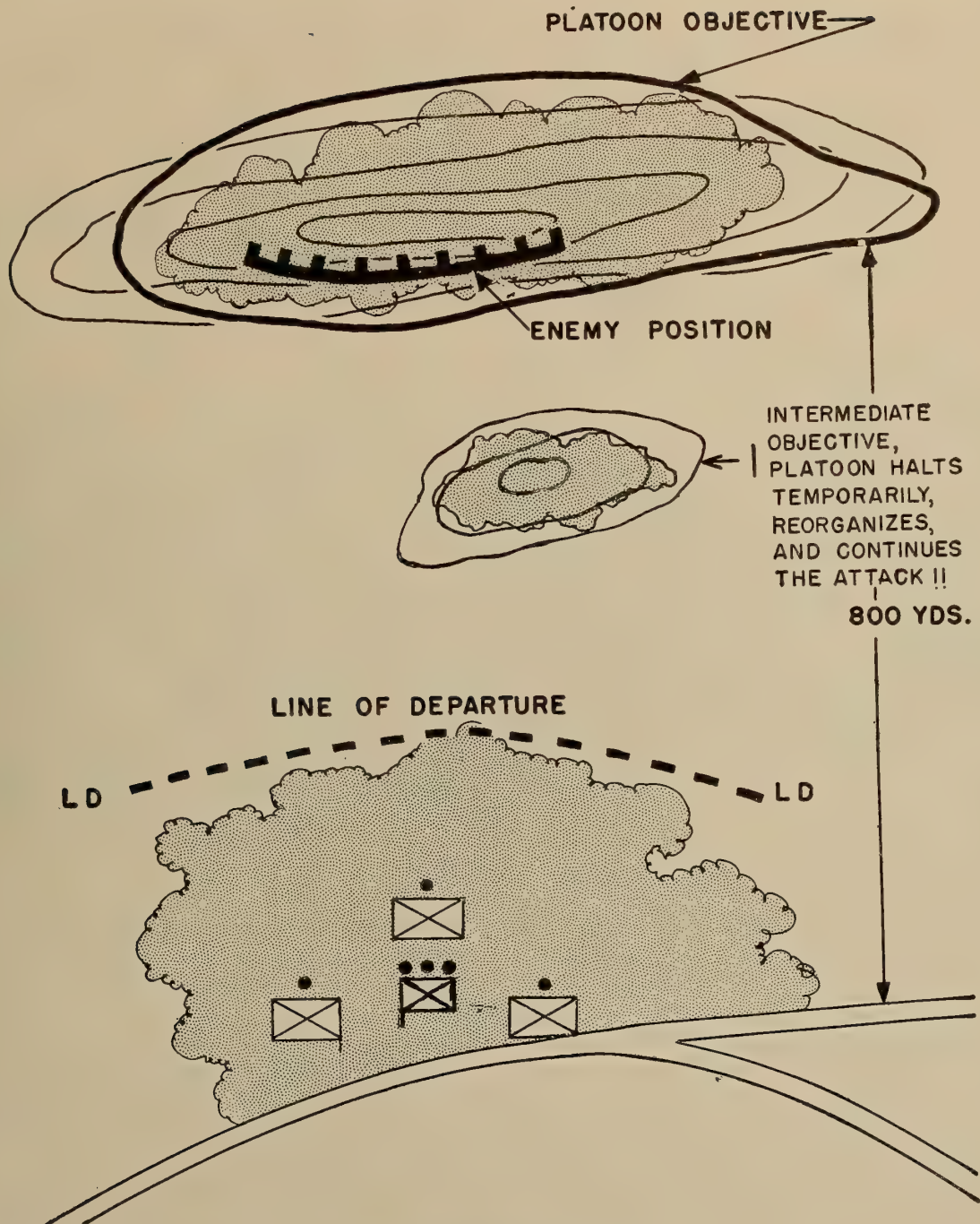


FIGURE 18.—Intermediate objective.

(b) When the distance from the line of departure to the initial objective of the platoon is so great or observation is so limited by the terrain that the platoon commander fears he will lose control of his unit, he assigns an inter-

mediate objective(s). He designates intervening terrain features on which the platoon temporarily halts for reorganization before continuing the attack. This enables the platoon commander to regain control of his unit and insures a

coordinated attack which is most essential to the success of the assault.

(2) *Company commander's order to the platoon commander.*—While troops are making last minute preparations for the attack, the company commander will assemble his platoon commanders at a vantage point and issue the attack order. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(3) *Troop leading steps prior to attack.*—Upon receipt of the company attack order, the commander of an attacking platoon makes the necessary preparations to have his platoon ready to attack in conformity with the company order. His reconnaissance is so arranged as to permit him and his subordinate leaders to reconnoiter the terrain prior to the attack. This may frequently require the forward movement of the platoon while the platoon commander is on his reconnaissance. During his reconnaissance, he selects a vantage point from which he can issue his order and formulates a plan of attack. From a picture of the situation as it exists on the ground over which the platoon must attack, the platoon commander considers possible methods of attack and formulates a plan by determining how he can use his weapons and men to the best advantage in order that he may accomplish his assigned mission with the least practicable delay and with the fewest casualties.

(4) *Methods of attack.*—(a) Unless the platoon zone of action and the strength of the enemy immediately in its front are so great that all the platoon's fire power is required at the start of the attack, the platoon leader should initially hold one rifle squad in support as a maneuvering element. When the attack is over open and level ground, or when the maximum fire power is desired initially, the platoon may attack straight to the front in line of squads.

(b) Frequently the most effective method of attack is to have a small group work close to the target under cover while the remainder of the platoon's attacking echelon attacks straight to the front. A few riflemen can often work close to any enemy position, without being seen, over ground which affords insufficient cover for a larger group. An automatic rifleman may be included in the group.

(c) In other situations, the ground and character of the resistance may favor an attack straight to the front with either two squads or

a single squad, while the other(s) maneuver to a suitable position on the flank. From this flank position, the maneuvering squad(s) may assist by fire the advance of the other squad(s) or may close with the enemy.

(d) When the terrain and situation will permit, it is often desirable to attack against a flank of the enemy with the entire attacking echelon of the platoon.

(5) *Platoon attack order.*—(a) Having decided on his plan of attack, the platoon commander issues his order at the previously selected vantage point. He orients his subordinates by pointing out important terrain features within the area of attack. He informs them of the company objective, mission of adjacent units, missions of supporting weapons, the platoon objective, and the hour of attack. He outlines his scheme of maneuver including platoon objectives. He assigns the line of departure for each squad, its mission and security measures. He informs the squads of the location of the aid station and of his own position and expected movements. He makes certain that all squad leaders understand his order.

(b) The squad leaders return to their squads and issue their own orders and the platoon moves to the attack at the appointed hour or on prearranged signal.

(c) *Platoon objective.*—The company order will always prescribe the company objective and platoon objective. Very often, when terrain features intervene between the line of departure and the platoon objective, the platoon commander assigns intermediate objectives.

(6) *Supporting fires.*—(See par. 10-7c.)

(7) *Attached weapons.*—When a machine gun section is attached to a rifle platoon, the platoon commander employs it to reinforce the fires of the platoon. (See Sec. V.)

(8) *Movement across line of departure (LD).*—The movement of the platoon from the assembly area across the line of departure should be conducted so as to preserve secrecy for the attack. Before arriving at the line of departure the platoon takes up its attack formation. The squads, however, do not deploy until they come under enemy small arms fire. Scouts from the leading squads precede the platoon to protect its advance.

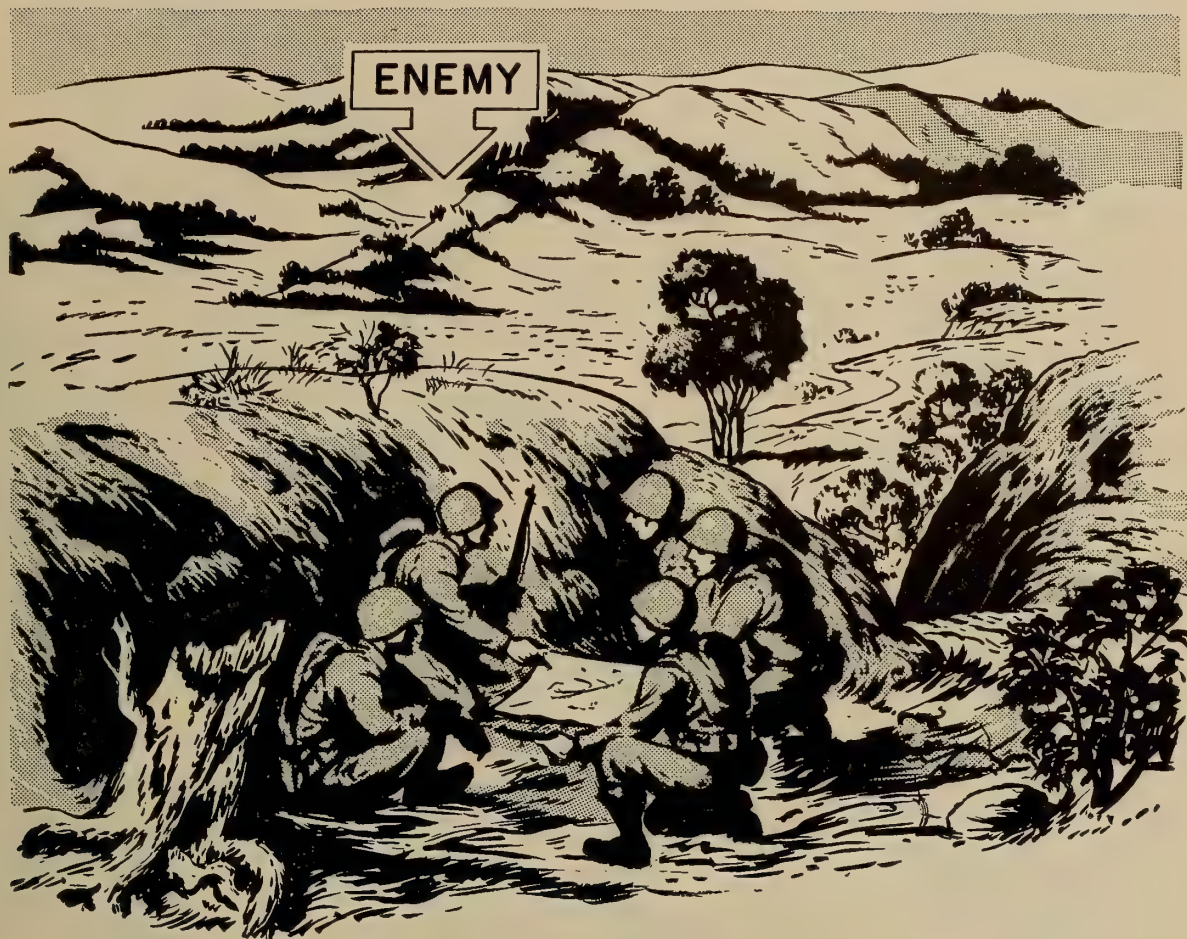


FIGURE 19.—Platoon commander issuing orders to subordinate leaders.

b. Advance by fire and maneuver.—(1) *General.*—(a) When the platoon comes under effective small arms fire, further advance is usually by fire and maneuver. The enemy is pinned to the ground by fire, under cover of which other elements of the platoon maneuver forward. The platoon commander hits weak spots in the enemy position by having his support attack against the point of least resistance, or by maneuvering his support to strike the enemy flank.

(b) When fire from other hostile positions situated to the flank or rear makes it impossible to launch a flanking attack, an assaulting force is built up by irregular or successive movements of individuals or fire teams close to the hostile resistance.

(c) When opposed by weak resistance, the platoon drives rapidly ahead until the company

objective is captured regardless of the lack of progress on its flanks.

(2) *Location of platoon commander.*—The platoon commander follows his attacking echelon closely. He goes wherever he can best observe developments and control the action of his platoon.

c. Assault.—(1) The primary objective in advancing the attack by fire and maneuver is to get part or all of the platoon in a position to assault the enemy.

(2) The assault may take place either on the orders of the platoon commander or as a part of a general assault ordered by the company or battalion commander. Frequently in the heat of battle, the assault is started on the initiative of a squad or even of a few individuals.

(3) When the assault is launched, assault fire may be employed on the defenders' position

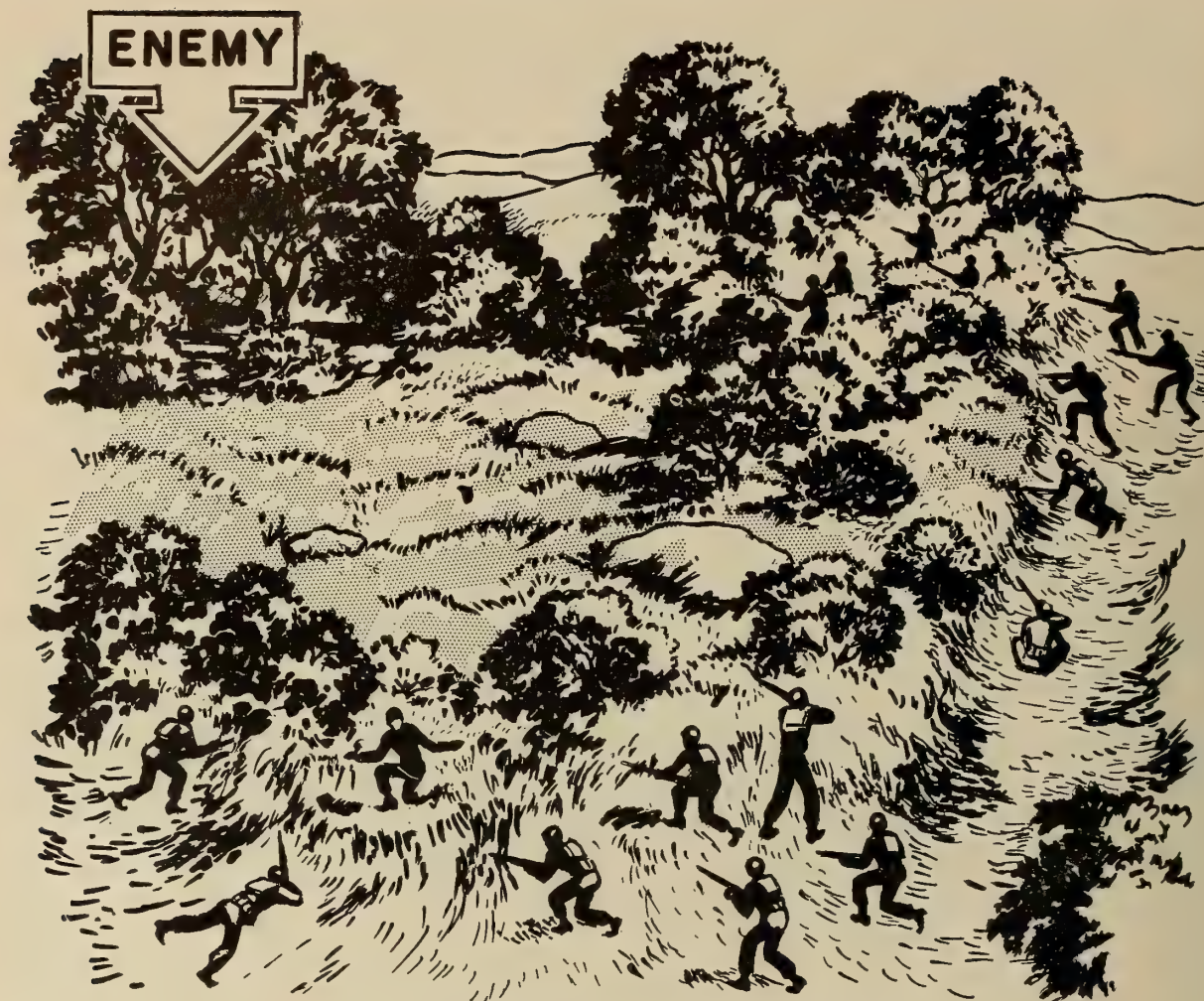


FIGURE 20.—Platoon support moving to attack enemy left flank.

in order to keep it under fire and prevent the enemy from moving his defense. A platoon in the assault does not delay to clean up isolated points of resistance.

d. Pursuit by fire.—After the platoon has overrun its objective it continues firing at any enemy that may be withdrawing. Physical pursuit will be undertaken only on orders from the company commander.

10-19 CONSOLIDATION PHASE.—*a. Immediate defense.*—After the platoon has overrun the enemy position it must be prepared to hold what it has won. Immediate and vigorous enemy counterattacks must be anticipated. In order to consolidate his newly won objective, the platoon commander must make a quick visual reconnaissance and order his squads into defensive positions. (See Sec. XI.)

b. Reorganization.—After establishing an immediate defense, the platoon commander effects reorganization. In reorganizing, the following steps must be accomplished by the platoon commander:

(1) Personnel are reallocated, in view of casualties, in order to maintain the basic platoon organization.

(2) Ammunition is redistributed.

(3) Casualties are moved to covered positions.

(4) Company commander is informed either personally or by runner, of the situation, the platoon's position, casualties, and ammunition supply.

(5) Prisoners are disarmed and sent to the rear. Papers, documents, etc., are removed from prisoners and enemy dead, and sent back immediately to the company command post.

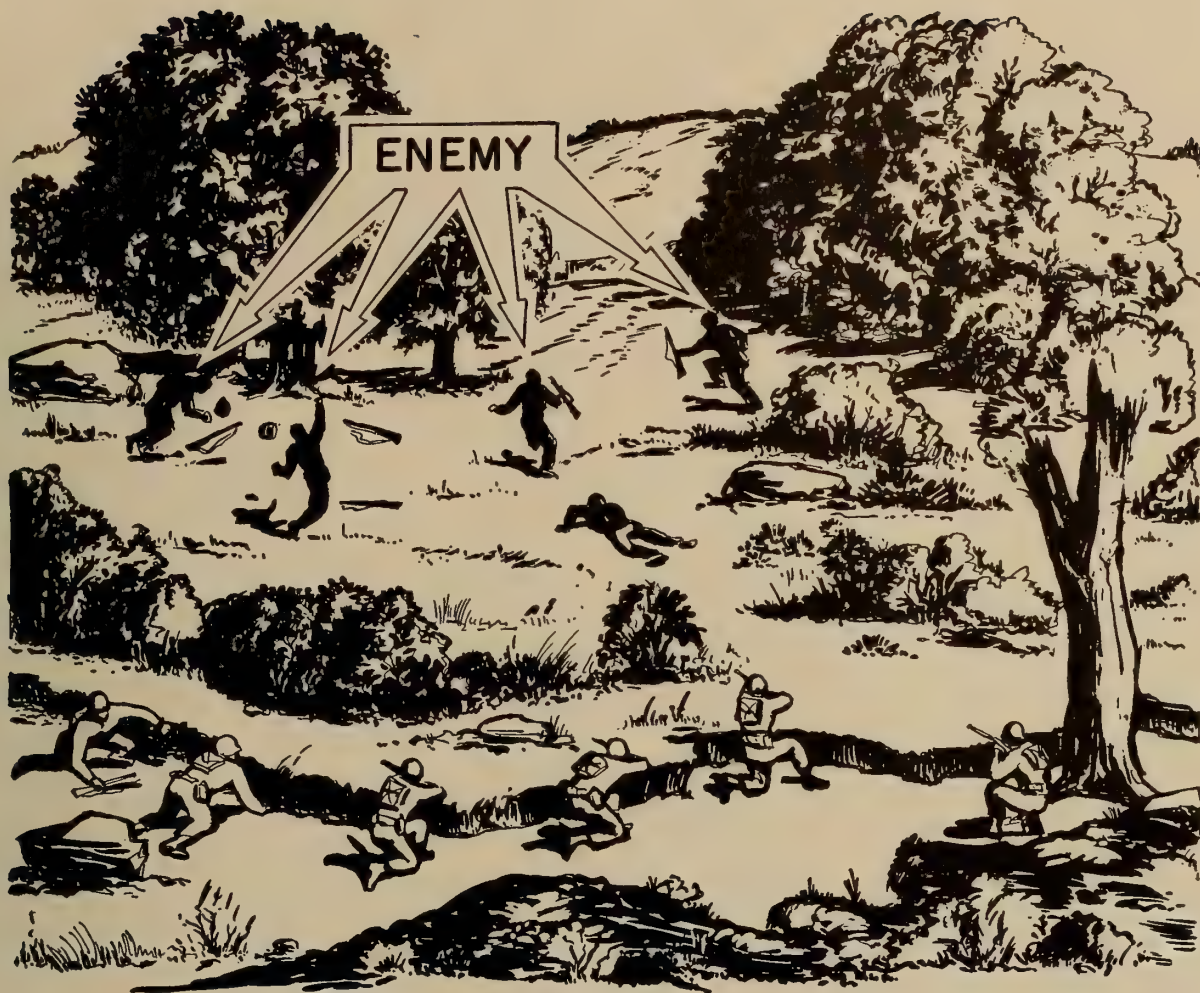


FIGURE 21.—Pursuit by fire.

10-20 EXPLOITATION PHASE.—*a. Continuation of the attack.*—One of the objects of reorganization is to prepare the platoon for continuing the attack. To insure this, the reorganization must be accomplished quickly. The platoon commander makes a brief personal reconnaissance, after giving orders for reorganization, to observe the area over which the platoon may be ordered to advance in order to select the best available routes for moving his squads forward. Continuation of the attack is made only on orders from the company commander.

b. Pursuit.—Pursuit is taken up only on orders of the company commander. The actions of the platoon during the pursuit resemble its action during the approach march and the attack phase. Formations are changed as

necessary to facilitate control and rapid advance, and to develop maximum fire power when the enemy resistance stiffens. Light machine guns frequently are attached to rifle platoons for the pursuit.

c. Mopping up.—(See par. 10-13c.)

10-21 SUPPORT PLATOON.—*a.* In the early phase of an attack the company commander usually retains one or two platoons in support. This is the company's maneuvering element. The mission assigned to a support platoon may be one or more of the following:

(1) To envelope points of resistance holding up the attacking echelon.

(2) To reinforce the attacking echelon by fire.

(3) To furnish security to the flanks (connecting groups or flank combat patrols).

(4) To assist the progress of adjacent units by fire and maneuver.

(5) To furnish protection against counterattacks during the reorganization of the attacking echelon.

(6) To relieve a platoon of the attacking echelon.

(7) To mop up a position overrun and passed by the attacking echelon.

b. The support platoon advances by bounds in accordance with instructions of the company commander. It employs approach march formations until committed to action. The platoon commander prevents it from becoming merged with the attacking echelon. The support platoon commander constantly observes the situation and tentatively plans for the employment of the platoon.

SECTION V

THE MACHINE GUN PLATOON IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-22	401
Missions.....	10-23	401
Control.....	10-24	401
Approach phase.....	10-25	401
Attack phase.....	10-26	402
Consolidation phase.....	10-27	404
Exploitation phase.....	10-28	404

10-22 GENERAL.—The machine gun platoon is capable of little or no independent action. It cannot take objectives, and it cannot hold ground indefinitely without the aid of riflemen. The platoon is capable of and is characterized by the delivery of heavy fire concentrations. This characteristic is the basis for the employment of the machine gun as a supporting weapon.

10-23 MISSIONS.—The machine gun platoon can effectively accomplish two missions in an offensive situation:

a. Close fire support of infantry.—By careful selection of firing positions and by the assignment of targets that, according to the company commander's estimate of the situation, will most seriously impede the progress of the assault platoons, the machine gun platoon is invaluable as a source of close fire support. Machine gun fire will not destroy hostile targets if the latter are well entrenched, but will neutralize them to an extent that the effectiveness of hostile aimed fire will be kept at a minimum.

b. Protection against counterattack during reorganization.—The assault rifle platoons, due to confusion and disorganization resulting from casualties, are particularly vulnerable to counterattacks at the time an objective is taken. One of the principal means of protection against such counterattacks is the quickly developed fire power of machine guns. Machine guns, therefore, must be employed promptly to give the greatest possible assistance in holding the captured position.

10-24 CONTROL.—Decisions as to the tactical use of the platoon rest with the company commander, who directs the employment of the platoon to best promote the company plan of action.

a. Centralized control.—With good observation over the company zone of action and the opportunity to make timely decisions relative to the employment of all sections of the machine gun platoon, the company commander will retain centralized control by leaving all sections under direct control of the machine gun platoon commander. Whether or not the company commander will have the opportunity to make timely decisions may be evaluated by analyzing factors, such as: time available to reconnoiter and issue orders; observation; ability to contact platoon; speed and intensity of the action.

b. Attachments.—Conditions justifying centralized control will often not prevail, resulting in the necessity of attaching (partially decentralized control) a section(s) to a rifle platoon(s). A section attached to a rifle platoon is subject to the orders of the rifle platoon commander.

c. Conclusion.—Centralized control has the inherent advantages of flexibility and better coordination of fires and a corresponding increase in timely fire effects. Attachments, however, are justified when an assault platoon can have machine gun support by no other means.

10-25 APPROACH PHASE.—*a. Route march.*—(1) In route march, the machine gun platoon marches in the company column as directed by the company commander.

(2) When the company has a security mission, such as advance guard, a section of machine guns should generally be attached to the advance party (rifle platoon), the remaining sections, under company control, moving with the support.

(3) If the company has no security mission, the machine gun platoon marches as a unit in the company column.

b. Approach march.—(1) In an approach march that is protected by friendly forces, the machine gun platoon moves as a unit in a place in the company formation as prescribed by the company commander. The machine gun platoon's position in the formation in relation to the leading platoons and the technique of movement is generally the same as for the support rifle platoon. (See Sec. IV.)

(2) In an approach march that is not protected by friendly forces, elements of the machine gun platoon must be kept well forward in a state of complete readiness for action. Usually a section of guns should be attached to each of the leading rifle platoons; the remaining section(s), under company control, is held in the vicinity of the support rifle platoon.

(3) Approach march formations used by machine gun units should be approximately the same as those used at the time by the rifle units. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

c. Assembly area.—The employment of the machine gun platoon depends on the mission assigned to the company.

(1) The machine gun platoon of a company occupying a portion of the battalion assembly area may be assigned the mission of fire support for local security elements.

(2) The machine gun platoon of a company assigned a covering force or outpost mission is employed to provide fire support to the company. In the event only a portion of a company is used on these missions, elements of the machine gun platoon may be attached.

10-26 ATTACK PHASE.—*a. Preparations for the attack.*—(1) *Methods of supporting attack.*—(a) *Company base of fire.*—1. Whenever possible, the company commander retains centralized control and employs the machine gun platoon as a company base of fire. The machine gun fire plan must be designed to support the company plan of maneuver and give maximum assistance to the advance; the major portion of the machine gun fire is directed against those targets (hostile grouped personnel, machine guns, antitank guns, and lightly armored vehicles that are within range) whose destruction or neutralization will most effectively sup-

port the attack. The company commander is responsible for the coordination of machine gun fire with any other supporting fires available.

2. The company commander, in furtherance of a decision to employ the machine gun platoon as a company base of fire, must select general position areas and targets for the platoon. He must, in addition, arrange for the necessary details of coordination between machine gun and rifle units; i. e., time of opening fire, signal for ceasing fire in the event observation by the machine gun platoon commander is inadequate to determine when the fire is masked.

(b) *Attachments.*—Elements (usually a section) of the machine gun platoon may be attached to an assault rifle platoon, and pass completely from the control of the machine gun platoon commander. Such attachments are normal when there is no adequate way of giving needed support with all sections of the machine gun platoon employed in the company base of fire. Such conditions might arise, for example, when an assault rifle platoon is operating over extremely difficult terrain which limits observation and communication to such an extent that machine gun fire in support of the rifle platoon cannot be effectively controlled.

(c) *Company base of fire and attachments.*—Frequently, the plan for employing the machine gun platoon in support of an attack will be a combination of company base of fire and attachments. Such conditions arise, for example, when one assault platoon can and one cannot be effectively supported from a company base of fire. In such a situation two machine gun sections will be employed in a company base of fire, and the remaining section, for reasons discussed above, will be attached to the rifle platoon that cannot receive support from the base of fire. Attachment of more than one section to a rifle platoon is exceptional.

(2) *Reconnaissance of machine gun platoon commander.*—The platoon commander receives his orders for supporting the attack from the company attack order. After receiving the order, the platoon commander must make a personal reconnaissance and prepare detailed plans for the employment of his platoon. On this reconnaissance he must:

(a) Select, within the area assigned by the company commander, a primary and alternate firing position for each section.

(b) Determine, if necessary, routes to the firing position.

(c) Select specific target(s), in accordance with the company attack order, for each section.

(d) Determine a signal for opening fire with all guns simultaneously.

(e) Determine whether overhead or lateral safety limit is applicable, in the event the company commander establishes no signal for supporting fires to cease. If the lateral safety limit is applicable, he must determine what it shall be. (See par. 10-26b(2).)

(3) *Selection of section firing positions.*—(a) Machine gun positions are selected to permit direct fire and, preferably, enfilade fire on the targets assigned. The targets must be, and the assault troops should be, visible from the firing positions. Whenever practicable, cover in rear of the firing positions should be available to facilitate the supply of ammunition and to provide shelter for gun crews when not firing. From the primary position, there should be a covered route to any alternate position selected. When possible, the firing position should afford protection against hostile observation and fire from all directions other than that in which the gun is to fire. Positions in partial defilade, if practicable, give some protection from fire from the front. Complete use must be made of natural concealment, but concealment must not obstruct observation to a degree that fire cannot be controlled. Gun positions should be separated by 35 to 50 yards to reduce the effectiveness of enemy fire; however, the positions should permit the section leader to control the fire by voice or hand and arm signal.

(b) Surprise may be achieved by concealment in the selection and occupation of firing positions and opening fire with all guns simultaneously. Surprise machine gun fire is particularly effective.

(4) *Platoon order.*—(a) During the reconnaissance, the platoon commander should send a runner to notify his section leaders to assemble at a vantage point, leaving the platoon in charge of the second in command. Upon the completion of the reconnaissance, the platoon

commander will issue the platoon order to the section leaders at the vantage point.

(b) Depending upon the time available (allowance must be made for section leaders' reconnaissance and order), the platoon commander's order may be complete or fragmentary. Though fragmentary, it must include:

1. Designation of primary and alternate section firing positions.

2. Routes to the firing positions, if necessary.

3. Designation of a target for each section.

4. Time or signal for opening fire.

5. Rate of fire.

6. Safety limit or signal for ceasing fire.

(c) Upon completion of the order, the section leaders move their sections into position. They open fire at the appropriate time or on the appropriate signal. The platoon commander then completely orients the second in command and assigns him duties in a supervisory capacity.

b. *Advance by fire and maneuver.*—(1) *General.*—During the attack the company commander directs the shifting of supporting machine gun fire in accordance with developments in the situation. The platoon commander exercises utmost energy and initiative in searching for and engaging targets whose destruction or neutralization will most effectively assist the advance.

(2) *Safety limits.*—(a) At some point in the attack, supporting machine gun fire will be masked by the advance of the assault troops. The machine gun platoon may, if observation is adequate, determine to what point the rifle troops may advance with safety by application of overhead safety limit (if firing over the heads of assault troops) or lateral safety limit (if firing through a gap in the line). (For establishment of overhead safety limit, see *Gunners and Leaders rule*, Ch. 9, *Basic Combat Techniques*.) The lateral safety limit is established by maintaining a prescribed angle of safety between the line of fire and the near flank of any unit or individual. This angle of safety must be sufficiently large to prevent casualties among friendly troops, but small enough to insure effective close support fires. The platoon commander must establish this angle when it is applicable.

(b) In the event observation of assault troops is not adequate for establishing safety limits, a

signal must be arranged by the company commander for supporting machine gun fires to cease; the signal to be given by the assault platoons.

(3) *Displacement.*—(a) When the mission assigned can no longer be effectively accomplished from the initial firing position (base of fire), the platoon commander should so notify the company commander, who will thereupon order the platoon to displace. The displacement must be regulated so as to cause as little interruption as possible in the continuity of fire support. To this end, the platoon will generally displace by section echelon. The company commander should, by order, initiate the displacement and designate the general area which the platoon will subsequently occupy. The platoon commander, upon receipt of this information, must decide which section(s) will cover the displacement and must select the route of displacement and a covered position forward into which the sections will move prior to occupation of subsequent firing positions; he must in addition make arrangements for a signal on which the covering section(s) will displace. When the plan of displacement is formulated the platoon commander issues a displacement order. This order must include the following elements of information to his subordinates:

1. *Method.*—The section(s) that will displace first and the section(s) that will cover the displacement.

2. Time of displacement of displacing echelon.

3. Route of displacement of displacing echelon.

4. Covered position to which these sections will displace.

(b) Upon completion of this order, the platoon commander will move forward to meet the company commander to gain additional information relative to enemy situation, friendly troop dispositions, and likely targets. The platoon commander now must proceed as previously discussed under reconnaissance, platoon order, and selection of positions.

(4) *Rate of fire.*—In the interest of gaining fire superiority quickly, the machine guns should be ordered to open fire at the rapid rate. The rate must subsequently be reduced to medium to prevent overheating the gun.

(5) *Ammunition supply.*—The ammunition

man, pursuant to orders issued by the platoon commander, is responsible for establishing and maintaining a supply of ammunition to the guns.

c. *Assault.*—(1) During the assault, overhead fire will usually be impossible due to the short distance between assault troops and the objective.

(2) The machine gun platoon will take advantage of any gaps between assaulting units to maintain fire on the hostile position. If no gaps exist, machine gun fire may be shifted to profitable targets deeper in the hostile position or on the flanks.

d. *Pursuit by fire.*—The employment of the machine gun platoon for protection during reorganization has priority over its employment for pursuit by fire. Machine guns may pursue by fire in the event the positions occupied for protection during reorganization make such pursuit practical.

10-27 CONSOLIDATION PHASE.—a. *Immediate defense.*—(1) At times, it is necessary for the attacking echelon to halt and reorganize before continuing the advance. The machine guns of the company are the chief source of protection during this time when the company is particularly vulnerable to hostile counterattack.

(2) When protection of rifle units, during reorganization, cannot be provided from positions occupied by the machine guns prior to reorganization, prompt forward displacement is necessary. Machine guns can most effectively cover a reorganization from positions on or near the objective, from which interlocking bands of grazing fire can be placed across the company front and from which each section has a field of fire to the front and flanks.

b. *Reorganization.*—Reorganization within the ranks of the machine gun platoon must be effected in a manner that least affects the prompt employment of the platoon for protection against counterattack.

10-28 EXPLOITATION PHASE.—a. *Continuation of the attack.*—In the event the attack continues, the machine gun platoon is employed in accordance with those principles given in par. 10-26.

b. *Pursuit.*—The employment of the machine gun platoon of a company ordered to physically pursue the enemy is generally the same as the

employment during an uncovered approach march.

c. Mopping up.—The machine gun platoon will not normally take part in the mop-

ping up. Rather than aid in mopping up operations, the machine guns will normally be providing protection against counter-attack.

SECTION VI

THE RIFLE COMPANY IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-29	406
Control.....	10-30	406
Approach phase.....	10-31	406
Attack phase.....	10-32	408
Consolidation phase.....	10-33	414
Exploitation phase.....	10-34	414
Reserve company.....	10-35	415

10-29 GENERAL.—When the company as part of a larger force or acting independently undertakes offensive action, it will generally go through all or most of the four phases of offensive combat.

10-30 CONTROL.—The company commander controls the action of his company by direct orders, by oral or written orders sent by messengers, or by visual signals. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

10-31 APPROACH PHASE.—*a. Route march.*—(1) *General.*—The rifle company normally moves as an element of the battalion in route march until the battalion is deployed for combat. The command group is usually formed as a squad and marches at the head of the company. The machine gun platoon normally marches in rear of the last rifle platoon.

(2) *Daylight march.*—During a daylight march, unless otherwise directed, the company marches in a column of twos, one file on each side of the road. The company commander continuously studies the terrain so that he can deploy his company in a suitable formation quickly. He requires his officers and noncommissioned officers to enforce march discipline and to prevent straggling. The leading company commander maintains the rate of march prescribed by the battalion commander; other company commanders regulate the rate of march so as to retain their proper position in the column. Ordinarily, the company com-

mander is at the head of his company; however, he goes wherever his duties require.

(3) *Night march.*—At night, the company commander takes special measures to insure march discipline, maintenance of contact, and provision for security. Special attention is given to the avoidance of lights and noise. Units are kept well closed up and distances are greatly reduced. If illuminated by flares, the company halts and all individuals keep their heads down and remain motionless until the light dies out. Hostile aircraft are not fired at unless the column is actually attacked and then only on command or prearranged signal by the unit leader.

(4) The advance of the company in route march terminates:

(a) When the battalion deploys for the approach march on order from the battalion commander.

(b) In the event of a sudden emergency, when the company commander deploys on his own initiative to avoid undue losses.

b. Approach march.—(1) *General.*—The approach march is conducted to bring the company close to the enemy in readiness for action and with minimum losses.

(a) Approach march formations vary according to the terrain and the strength of friendly covering forces.

(b) The battalion commander's development order prescribes the company's position in the battalion formation, assigns a zone and direction of advance, and directs regulation of the march on a base company. Successive march objectives may be assigned. The disposition of the company is left to the company commander.

(2) *Company commander's order for the approach march.*—(a) Having received the battalion development order, the company com-

mander issues his own order. The company commander is careful to prescribe a direction of march and normally makes one platoon responsible for the rate and direction of march. However, due to the terrain this responsibility may be split between two platoons.

(b) In addition, in order to maintain control, the company commander usually prescribes intermediate march objectives for the leading platoons between those prescribed by the battalion commander. These are usually selected by either a map or aerial photo reconnaissance, rarely by a visual reconnaissance.

(c) The company commander is responsible for the close-in protection of his company from the instant it leaves the battalion column. He sends out scouts and patrols to provide security for his company.

(3) *Position and duties of company commander in the approach march.*—During the approach

march, the chief duties of the company commander consist of coordinating the advance of his units. He must, in all cases, provide for the security of his company and be constantly evaluating the terrain and estimating the situation, changing his formation if he deems it necessary. The advance is usually executed by bounds. Each successive objective should be secured by the leading elements before the rear elements of the company leave the cover of the previous position.

(4) *Formation in the approach march.*—(a) In the approach march, formations are adopted which provide protection against enemy long-range fires and attack by air and ground forces, and which enable the company commander to control his company. Platoons may be separated laterally, in depth, or both. In open terrain, platoons may be separated by as much as 300 yards. In woods, distance must be

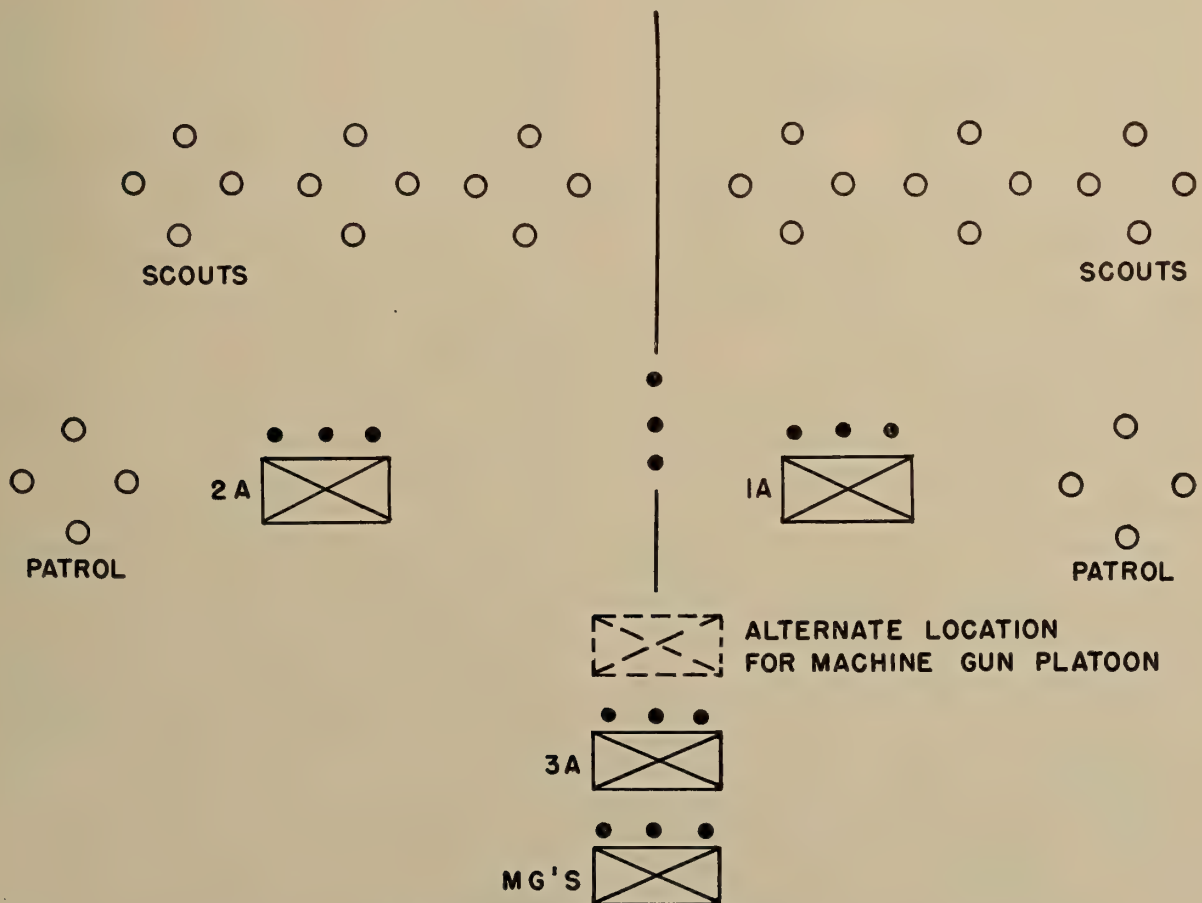


FIGURE 22.—Leading company in approach march.

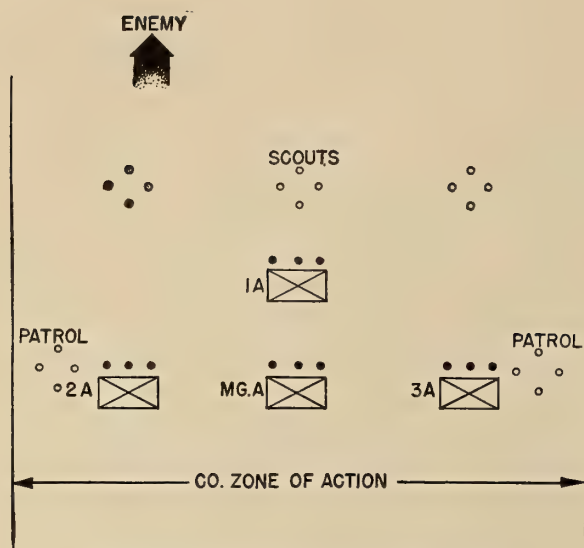


FIGURE 23.—Leading company in approach march.

decreased until adjacent units are visible. If the woods are dense, connecting groups must be used between platoons. The company commander does not usually prescribe the formation to be taken within platoons but promptly corrects any erroneous formations taken by them.

(b) The company commander, assisted by members of the command group, conducts continuous personal reconnaissance to locate the best covered routes of advance. Changes in the company formation are made based on the results of reconnaissance.

(5) *Rifle company in the rear echelon of the battalion in the approach march.*—(a) *Contact.*—Connecting files are sent from the rear echelon company to the leading companies to maintain contact.

(b) *Formations.*—If there is little threat of a hostile attack from a flank, a column of platoons (with at least 50 yards between platoons) facilitates control and enables the entire company to use the route which provides maximum concealment and protection. If attack from one or both flanks is possible, the rifle platoon(s) should be echeloned toward the exposed flanks.

c. *Assembly area.*—(1) Unless the company has already become engaged with the enemy, it usually is directed to halt briefly in a covered and concealed position prior to launching an attack. This position is known as an assembly

area and is designated by the battalion commander.

(2) In the assembly area, the company commander is responsible for the following:

- (a) The dispersal of the troops.
- (b) The proper use of cover and concealment.
- (c) The proper use of all obstacles to tank movement, such as streams, closely spaced stumps, boulders, or large trees.
- (d) The construction of individual foxholes.
- (e) The establishment of a guard to enforce orders relative to camouflage and dispersion.
- (f) The establishment of local security.
- (g) The establishment of air and antitank guards.

(h) The stowage and concealment of all equipment not essential to combat.

(i) The checking of the physical condition and equipment of each individual by his immediate superior, if time permits.

(j) The provision that the men are given all possible rest.

10-32 ATTACK PHASE.—a. *Preparations for the attack.*—(1) An attack will usually be started under one of the following conditions:

(a) A meeting engagement, when the enemy's positions are not known beforehand and the company begins the attack from the approach march.

(b) An attack of one or more objectives when the company is in contact with the enemy. This method of attack is made against continuous enemy resistance.

(c) An attack against known enemy positions when the company approaches the enemy lines from a relatively long distance in the approach march, goes into an assembly area, makes preparations for the attack, and then makes a well-coordinated attack. In this method, the company will go through all the successive phases of offensive combat.

(2) *Troop leading steps prior to attack.*—Having received his order from the battalion commander, the company commander will have definite tasks to perform before issuing his order. The most important of these are as follows:

- (a) Contact adjacent and supporting unit leaders.
- (b) Pick vantage point for issuance of order.
- (c) Send runner for subordinates.

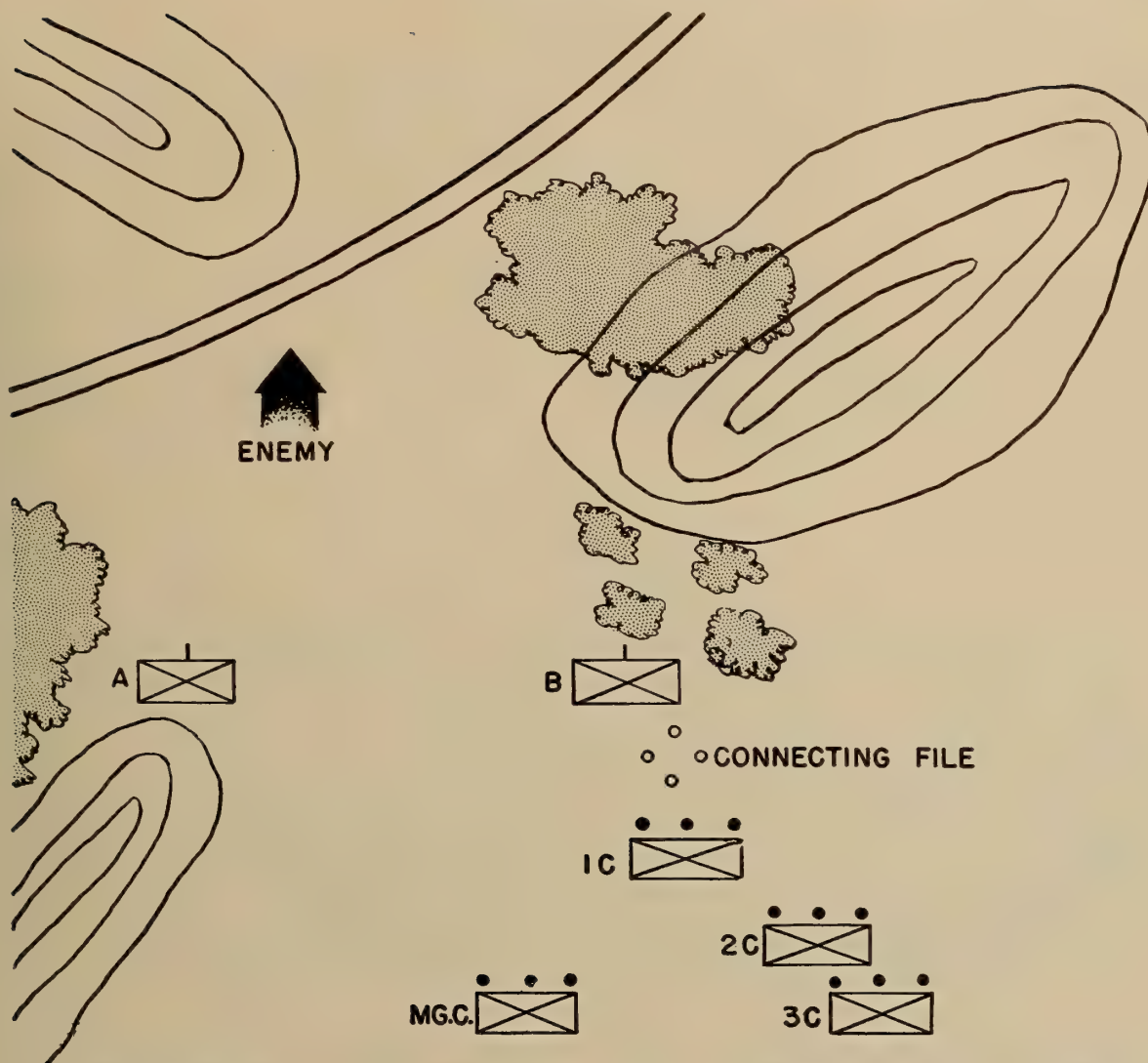


FIGURE 24.—Rear echelon company with platoons echeloned to protect right flank against possible attack. Contact with leading company maintained by connecting file.

- (d) Plan reconnaissance.
- (e) Make reconnaissance.
- (f) Orient subordinates.
- (g) Issue order.
- (h) Supervise the execution of the order.

(3) *Arriving at a plan of attack.*—(a) The mission of an attacking rifle company is to capture a locality, or localities, held by the enemy. To do this it must close with the enemy by a combination of fire and maneuver, taking advantage of every feature of the terrain for concealment and protection. Movement of units in the attack must be protected by fire delivered by part of the company, especially

the machine gun platoon. These fires are so placed that they neutralize that part of the enemy's infantry which could otherwise effectively fire on individuals or elements that are moving.

(b) During his reconnaissance, the company commander seeks to determine the location and possible location of enemy weapons and troops. He then looks for avenues of approach to the hostile position. His last consideration will be to coordinate all elements so as to obtain maximum teamwork between the attacking platoons and supporting weapons.

(4) *Formations for the attack.*—The company

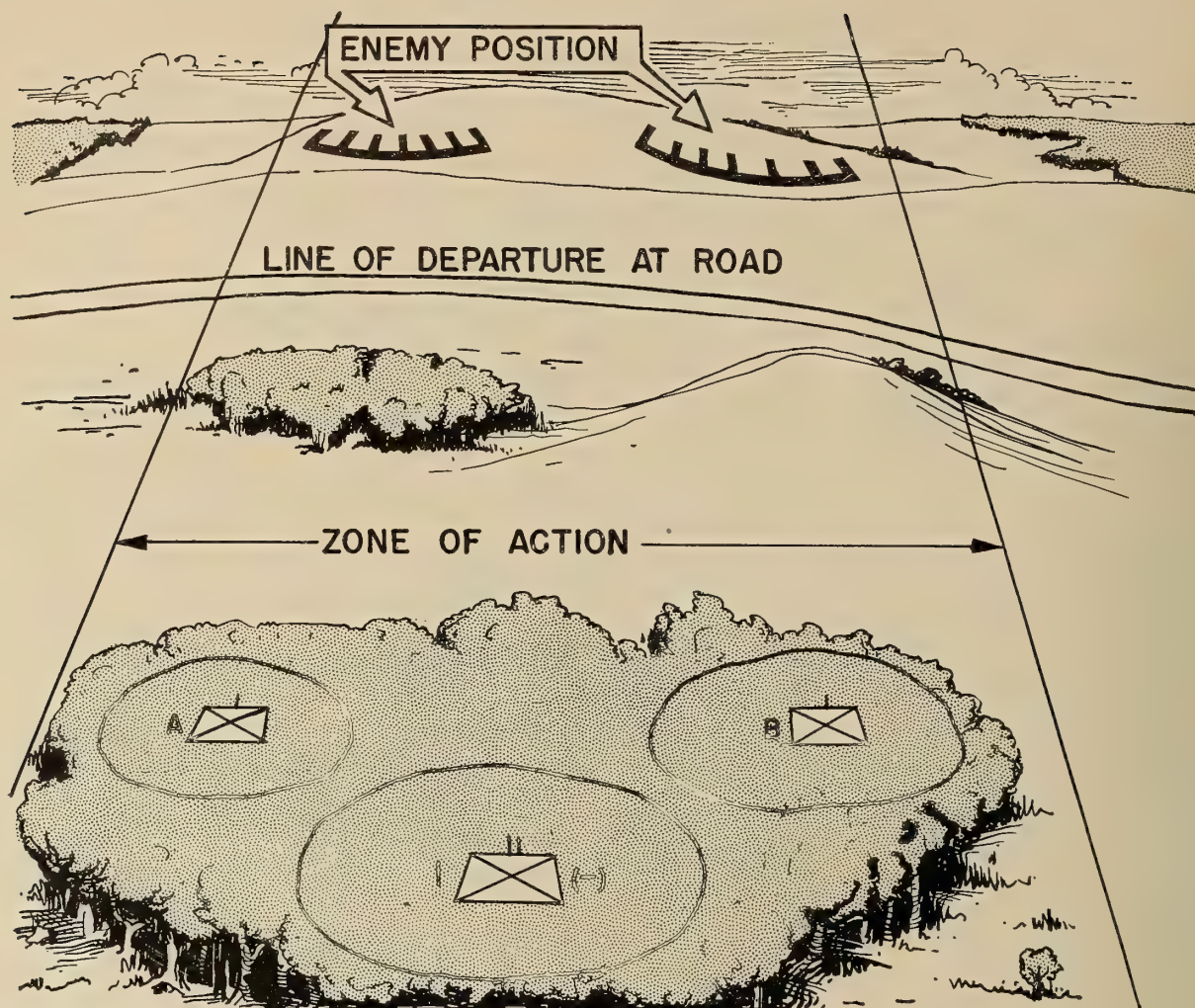


FIGURE 25.—Battalion assembly area.

commander has three basic formations from which to choose:

(a) A formation with two platoons in the

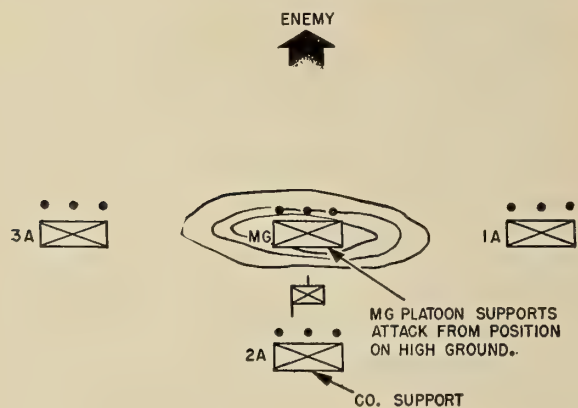


FIGURE 26.—A company formation for a strong initial attack.

attacking echelon and one in support; this enables a company to make a strong initial attack while retaining a strong support to influence future action. This formation is most frequently used.

(b) A formation with one platoon in the attacking echelon and two in support is frequently used when the company has a very narrow zone of action, when it is operating on an exposed flank, or when the enemy situation is obscure. Platoons in the rear echelon should be echeloned in column toward the exposed flanks.

(c) A formation with three platoons abreast is exceptional; it is usually appropriate only when the company is assigned an extremely broad zone of action and the initial use of all

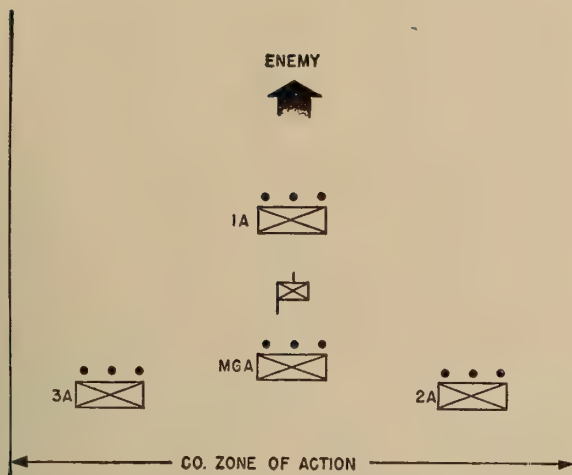


FIGURE 27.—A company formation for an attack on a narrow front.

weapons is essential to establish fire superiority.

(5) *Time of attack.*—The battalion order designates the time of attack. In some instances the attack may be started as soon as a particular attacking company is ready. In this case, the company commander will notify the battalion commander that he is ready and is going to start the attack.

(6) *Scheme of maneuver.*—(a) An interior company will ordinarily be assigned a zone of action from 200 to 500 yards in width. The cover and concealment in its zone will seldom be uniform. Therefore, the company commander must plan to concentrate his efforts on advancing a **portion** of his attacking echelon through that part of the company zone which

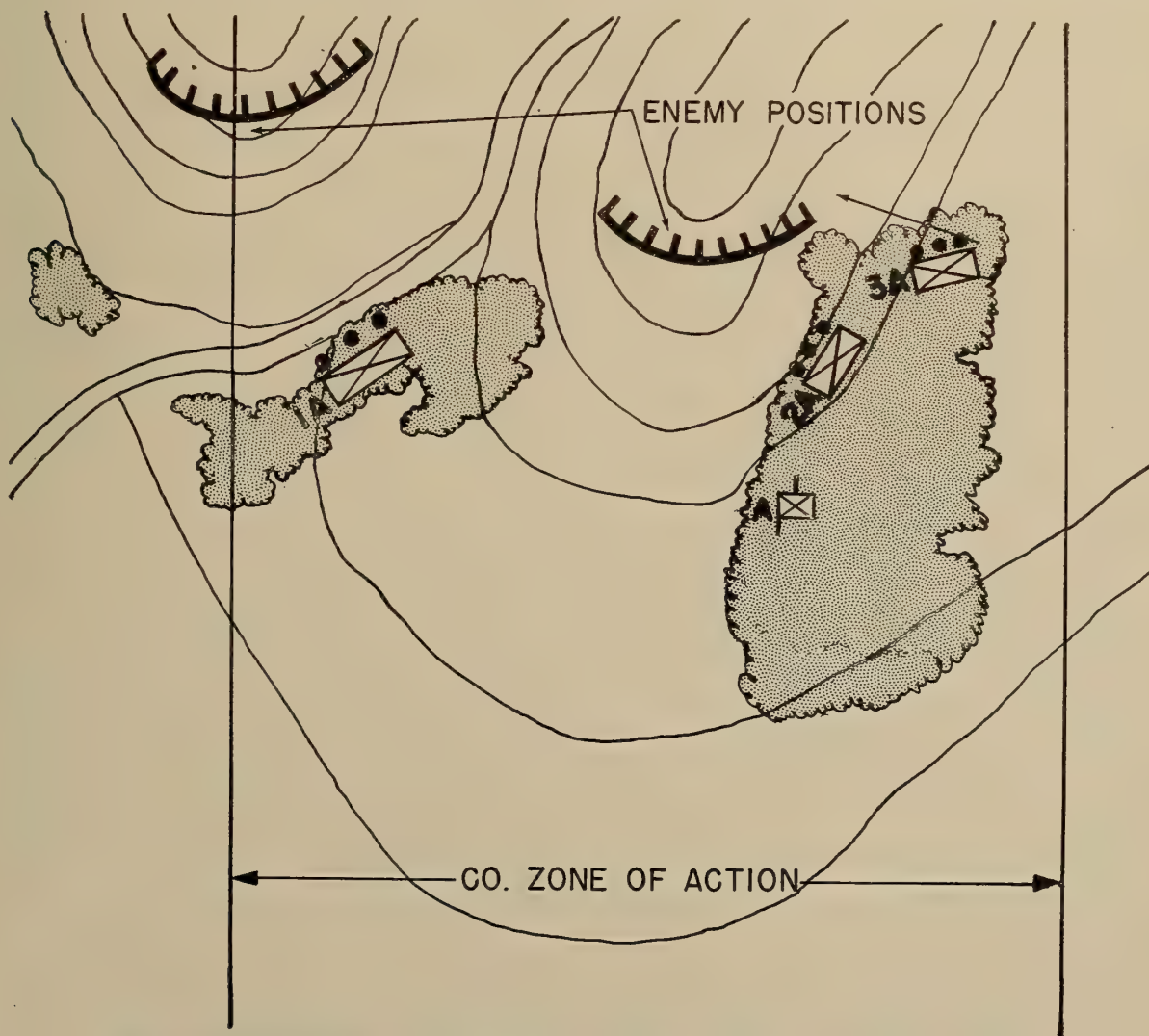


FIGURE 28.—Platoon of a company attacking enemy flanks and rear, using a covered and concealed avenue of approach.

offers the best cover and concealment and which strikes the enemy position at a weak spot.

Any attack which disregards the terrain and the actual or likely hostile dispositions by attempting to advance in equal strength all along the front has little chance of success.

(b) The remainder of the attacking echelon should be directed to attack by fire and maneuver through that portion of the company zone offering the best remaining cover and concealment, in order to force the enemy to disperse his efforts so that he cannot use his full defensive strength against one portion of the attacking echelon.

(7) *Zones of action and objective.*—(a) Each rifle platoon in the attacking echelon should be assigned a definite zone of action. The zone of action is defined by assigning the platoon a particular section of the line of departure or an area or point from which to start its attack, a direction of attack, and a definite terrain objective to be captured. If desired, the width of the zone may be indicated by directing that the platoon attack on a frontage prescribed in yards. Normally the frontage should be not less than 100 yards or more than 200 yards.

(b) Objectives are assigned to each platoon in order to effectively coordinate the efforts of the company. Each platoon should be assigned, as its initial objective, the nearest important terrain feature or hostile position within its zone of action. There may be several platoon objectives, depending on the terrain, before the company objective is reached. The company commander may order the platoons to take their initial objectives and be prepared to continue the attack, or he may direct the platoons to continue the attack after the capture of the initial objective until the company objective has been seized.

(8) *Support.*—At the start of the attack the company commander should hold out a support for later use in accomplishing one or more of the following:

(a) To envelop points of resistance holding up the attacking echelon.

(b) To reinforce the attacking echelon by fire.

(c) To assist the progress of adjacent units by fire and maneuver.

(d) To furnish protection to flanks and

against counterattack during reorganization of attacking echelon.

(e) To relieve a platoon of the attacking echelon.

(f) To mop up a position overrun or bypassed by the attacking echelon.

(9) *Use of machine-gun platoon.*—(See Sec. V.)

(10) *Security.*—Irrespective of any flank protective measures that may be taken by higher commanders, the company commander is responsible for the close-in protection of his flanks throughout the attack. Connecting groups and flank patrols are used to maintain contact with adjacent units. Ordinarily security groups are detailed from the support.

(11) *Company attack order.*—The company commander issues orders for the attack to his platoon commanders and the second-in-command. In addition, when conditions permit, the chief petty officer, the infantry chief, the storekeeper, and the platoon chiefs of the rifle platoons and of the machine gun platoon may be assembled to hear the issuance of the order. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(12) *Command post in attack.*—The command post of an attacking rifle company should not be located over 400 yards behind the front line. It is moved forward as the company advances. The new locations are reported to the battalion command post. All locations selected should provide concealment from hostile ground observation, defilade against hostile fire, and, if possible, concealment from air observation.

(13) *Movement to line of departure.*—The movement to the line of departure is a continuation of the approach march. Security during the movement is provided by scouts, patrols, and observers.

b. Advance by fire and maneuver.—(1) The approach march formation is maintained by the leading platoons until they come under the fire of enemy small arms. Ordinarily, fire is opened on order of the platoon commanders; the company commander may reserve to himself this authority for opening fire in order to gain surprise. At the first firing position, each attacking platoon seeks to gain fire superiority over the enemy, subjecting him to such accurate and intense fire that the hostile fire is inaccurate or diminished in volume. Support weapons

assist the attacking echelon by delivering fire on hostile forward positions unless masked by the attacking echelon.

(2) After having neutralized the hostile fire to some degree, the troops are maneuvered forward by fire and maneuver. The movement of advancing elements is covered by the fire of those remaining in position. Every lull in hostile fire is utilized to push groups forward and occupy the natural strong points of terrain from which fire can be delivered.

(3) Because of unequal resistance by the enemy, due to such factors as terrain and effectiveness of supporting fires, some units will be able to advance while others are held up. A platoon or company not held up by enemy resistance pushes on to capture its next objective. By doing this, the unit that advances beyond its adjacent units may assist these latter units by flanking fire. It also enables the company support to be moved into the gap to outflank the resistance that is holding up the adjacent units.

(4) *Control.*—Once the fire fight has commenced, the company commander's influence on the fight is greatly reduced. His main concerns are:

- (a) Employment of support platoon.
- (b) Employment of supporting fires.
- (c) To plan ahead.
- (d) To keep constantly informed of the situation.

(5) The company commander posts himself where he can best direct and control the actions of his company. Whenever practicable, he occupies an observation post from which he can see all, or at least the vital part, of the company zone of action. He must be easily accessible and must be able to readily communicate with the company command post and the support. The company commander must keep the battalion commander informed of the situation at all times.

(6) *Coordination.*—Throughout the attack the company commander seeks to bring about the closest possible coordination between the movements of his rifle platoons and the fires of his machine guns.

(7) *Employment of machine-gun platoon.*—(See Sec. V.)

(8) *Employment of support.*—(a) The support

must be close enough to the attacking echelon to permit prompt employment against hostile counterattack. If the support has been directed to follow the attacking echelon by bounds, the company commander must insure that it remains in supporting distance but does not merge with the attacking echelon.

(b) The support should normally be used only after the attacking platoons have committed their support. The support **should not be used piecemeal**. It is used to strike a decisive blow or to renew the impetus of a stalled attack. In either case, it should be employed, preferably for flank attack or envelopment, where the attack has progressed against enemy weakness rather than against his strong resistance. It can be employed in an adjacent zone only when such employment does not interfere with the action of the unit in that zone and when the adjacent unit commander is fully informed and agrees to the action being taken.

(c) The company commander seeks to reconstitute another support, as soon as possible, whenever the support is committed.

(9) *Assistance to adjacent units.*—(a) The company assists adjacent units:

- 1. When such assistance will facilitate its own advance.
- 2. When directed to do so by the battalion commander.
- 3. When, without orders, the company commander estimates that such assistance will facilitate the accomplishment of the battalion mission.

(b) Assistance to an adjacent unit should be coordinated with the commander of that unit.

(c) Assistance which enables a rearward adjacent unit to advance abreast is generally an effective means of insuring the security of the company's own flank.

(d) Assistance by fire and maneuver is usually more effective than assistance by fire only. Such maneuver, however, must be strongly supported by the fire of all available weapons, including those of the unit being assisted. Also, the maneuver must not result in depriving the company, for an extended period, of the services of elements essential to its own further progress.

c. *Assault.*—(1) When the attacking echelon has progressed as close to the hostile position as

it can get without masking its supporting fires, these fires lift and the assault is launched. If necessary, the company commander causes the lifting of supporting fires by giving a prearranged signal or estimates when the attacking units will be ready to assault and arranges for these fires to lift at that time. When supporting fires are lifted, assault fire may be employed to prevent the enemy from manning his defenses. Supporting weapons cover the assault by directing their fire at those adjacent and rearward hostile elements which are able to fire on the assaulting troops either during the assault or after the position is captured.

(2) The company commander is responsible that the assault is delivered at the proper time. When the attacking echelon has reached assaulting distance, the assault usually is launched by subordinate leaders; otherwise, the company commander orders it by a signal or command, which is repeated by all officers and noncommissioned officers.

(3) Following a successful assault, the company commander moves his support platoon and machine-gun platoon forward to secure advantageous positions from which to support continuation of the attack, and, if necessary, to protect reorganization.

d. Pursuit by fire.—After the objective has been taken, troops immediately take up firing positions and fire on any of the enemy that may be withdrawing. Physical pursuit is not commenced until ordered by the battalion commander.

10-33 CONSOLIDATION PHASE.—*a. Immediate defense.*—After the enemy position has been overrun, the company commander or subordinate unit commanders order an immediate defense set-up. This is to insure protection against an immediate counterattack by the enemy and to protect reorganization. (See Sec. XIII.)

b. Reorganization.—(1) If it is possible, complete reorganization is postponed until the final objective of the company is taken. However, the company must effect complete reorganization whenever disorganization prevents its further effective employment. If hostile fire permits, the rifle platoons move to defiladed positions to reorganize. Security elements must be posted before such a move is made. If the

units are unable to reorganize in defilade, partial reorganization must be effected in position. The company commander must protect the reorganization of the company by:

(a) Prompt and simultaneous movement of the entire machine-gun platoon to cover the front and exposed flanks.

(b) Sending out patrols to cover the front and maintain contact with the enemy. If the platoon commander of the machine-gun platoon is given the mission to cover the reorganization of the company, the patrols function under his direction.

(c) Employing a support element to furnish protection, preferably by keeping the bulk of this element available for prompt action in the event the enemy attempts to counterattack.

(2) The company commander obtains reports from platoon commanders regarding effective strength and status of ammunition. He promptly sends a message to the battalion commander giving the situation and the approximate effective strength of the company. Prisoners are sent under guard to designated collecting points.

10-34 EXPLOITATION PHASE.—*a. Continuation of the attack.*—When the objective has been captured the company commander reorganizes preparatory to continuing the attack. Usually there is a temporary halt in order to accomplish reorganization. Maximum advantage must be taken of such a halt to reorganize platoons, replenish ammunition supply, and make preparation for continuing the attack. When the attack is continued, the sequence of steps in the attack phase is repeated.

b. Pursuit.—(1) After the company captures its final objective, pursuit, except by fire, is not commenced until ordered by the battalion commander. Once begun it must be characterized by boldness and rapidity of movement.

(2) When the company has been ordered to pursue, its formation and actions are very similar to those of the support of an advance guard when contact is imminent. Usually one platoon moves rapidly ahead, covering the entire company front.

(3) If the company support is still intact at the time the pursuit is ordered, it may effect a passage of lines and take the mission of the assault echelon in the pursuit.

c. Mopping up.—Small remnants of enemy forces that were bypassed during the advance must be sought out and destroyed. Units from the support platoon are usually assigned this task.

10-35 RESERVE COMPANY.—*a. Movement to initial position.*—(1) The battalion order, designating a rifle company as battalion reserve, initially prescribes the location of the company and may give instructions as to later movements, flank protection, preparations of plans to meet various contingencies, and maintenance of contact with adjacent units.

(2) When the battalion order has been issued, the company commander of the reserve company considers likely avenues of advance from the assembly area to the initial reserve position. The actual selection of this route is made only **after** a reconnaissance has been made, preferably by the company commander. Special care should be taken in choosing a route that does not disclose to the enemy the location or movement of the reserve. The company commander sends a representative or liaison personnel to the following:

(a) Battalion commander.

(b) Attacking rifle companies.

(3) Having completed his reconnaissance of the initial reserve position and the routes thereto, the company commander issues his order. In his order he emphasized the following points:

(a) Necessary information of the enemy and friendly troops.

(b) The **battalion** plan of attack.

(c) Instruction for movement to initial reserve position, including security enroute, its occupation, and protection and connecting groups.

(4) If practicable, the company commander personally leads his company to the initial reserve position, arranging the movement so as not to interfere with other units moving to their attack positions. In moving to and while occupying the reserve positions, the company takes advantage of all cover and concealment so as not to disclose the battalion plan of maneuver and to avoid losses. The company commander places platoons so as to facilitate probable employment. Local security is posted against hostile ground attack, and advantage is

taken of the terrain to provide **passive** anti-mechanized and antiaircraft protection. Fox-holes are dug for individual protection. The company is ordinarily moved forward by bounds on order from battalion. If the company at any time should be located so far to the rear of the attack companies that it cannot effectively support them in case of hostile counterattacks, the company commander reports the situation to the battalion commander and requests instructions. He should recommend a suitable new position.

b. Planning possible missions.—(1) It is the duty of the reserve company commander to attempt to visualize or predict how and approximately when conditions requiring employment of his company may occur and prepare to meet all probable missions of a reserve company. Plans should be clear and detailed as practicable and should be completed prior to the time the situation they are designed to meet can reasonably occur. They should be approved by the battalion commander, if time permits. His subordinate leaders should be informed of the details of these plans. Estimates are made as to the time necessary to put each plan into effect. The reserve company may be ordered to carry out one or more of the following missions:

(a) To envelop points of resistance located by the attacking echelon, frequently by maneuver through the zone of adjacent units.

(b) To protect the flanks of leading companies.

(c) To repel counterattacks.

(d) To assist the progress of adjacent units.

(e) To take over the role of all or part of the attacking echelon (relieve or reinforce).

(f) To provide contact with adjacent units.

(2) When the reserve company is assigned the mission of maintaining contact with adjacent units, the company commander must dispose his platoons on the left and right boundaries of the battalion zone of attack. The platoons on the flanks send out connecting groups to gain contact with the adjacent units. Their strength should be appropriate to the terrain in which they must work. Connecting groups should be sent out early enough so that contact with adjacent units is made before the attack starts. The connecting

groups make their reports as to the whereabouts of the adjacent units directly to the battalion command post. All personnel should be informed of the location of the initial and probable future locations of the battalion command post.

c. Reconnaissance and liaison.—It is imperative that the company commander of the reserve company be prepared to execute promptly any of the previously mentioned missions. In order to do this, he must keep himself constantly abreast of the situation. This may be done by the following means:

(1) By personal reconnaissance and obser-

vation from advantageous points of terrain.

(2) By means of observation posts manned by personnel of the company.

(3) By observers accompanying leading companies.

(4) By remaining with the battalion commander or at the battalion command post, or detailing other officers to do so.

(5) By means of messenger communication with the battalion command post.

d. Action when committed.—When the reserve company is committed to action by the battalion commander, it operates as a rifle company in the attack.

SECTION VII

THE NAVAL LANDING PARTY BATTALION IN OFFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-36	417
Control.....	10-37	417
Approach phase.....	10-38	417
Attack phase.....	10-39	417
Consolidation phase.....	10-40	419
Exploitation phase.....	10-41	419

10-36 GENERAL.—When the battalion undertakes offensive action, it will normally go through all or most of the four phases in offensive combat.

10-37 CONTROL.—The battalion commander controls the action of his company by direct orders, by oral or written orders sent by messengers, or by visual signals. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

10-38. APPROACH PHASE.—*a. Route march.*—The movement of the battalion toward the enemy in route march, in general, is similar to that of the company. (See Sec. VI.)

b. Approach march.—(1) The battalion partially deploys into small columns of platoons or companies in the approach march. The columns are distributed in depth and on a broad front. The approach march begins when the battalion is forced off the roads by distant hostile fires or the threat of such fires. The battalion commander ordinarily initiates the approach march upon receipt of orders from higher authority when the battalion is acting as part of a larger force. However, when necessary to reduce losses from hostile long-range fire, the battalion commander promptly initiates the development of his battalion.

(2) The battalion is usually given a zone of advance by higher authority. The companies are assigned march objectives; their formations and frontages vary depending on the terrain. Distance between companies varies from 200 to 500 yards.

(3) The battalion commander is responsible for the security of the battalion at all times.

c. Assembly area.—When time and the tactical situation permit, the battalion commander

will interrupt the transition from the approach march to the attack, by occupying an assembly area. In the assembly area, the necessary preparations are made to ready the battalion for the attack; reconnaissance is executed, plans and decisions are formulated, orders are prepared and issued, and ammunition and rations are distributed.

10-39 ATTACK PHASE.—*a. Preparations for the attack.*—(1) *Methods of attack.*—(a) *Main attack.*—The battalion commander's plan of attack must provide for a concentration of effort for the purpose of advancing a portion of the attacking echelon, usually one or two assault companies, toward objectives whose capture will facilitate the advance of the remainder of the battalion. This constitutes the main attack. It is usually made through the weakest part of the hostile dispositions; i. e., in terrain where the defender cannot use his weapons or obstacles to advantage, where covered approaches permit an advance close to his position, or where his defensive works are exposed to observation and fire by the attacker. To increase the power of the main attack, the battalion commander concentrates the bulk of his supporting fires on those targets whose destruction or neutralization will most effectively assist its advance. The power of the main attack may also be increased by assigning to the assault company or companies involved a narrower zone of action than that assigned to the secondary attack.

(b) *Secondary attack.*—The secondary attack is designed to hold the enemy in position, to deceive him as to where the main attack is being made, to prevent him from reinforcing the element opposing the main attack, and to cause him to commit his reserve prematurely and at an indecisive location. Since these purposes can best be accomplished by a vigorous

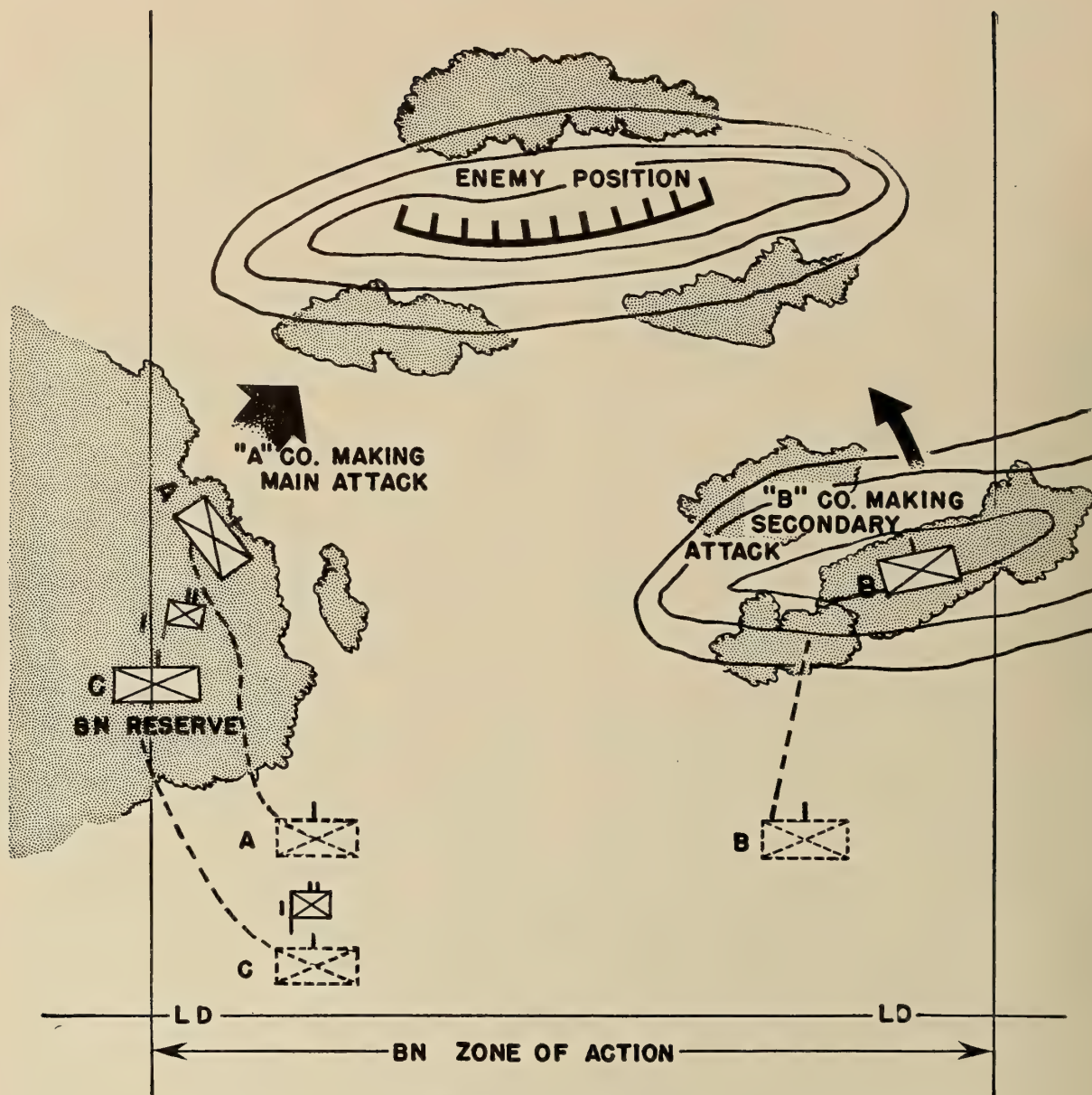


FIGURE 29.—Battalion in the attack.

attack, the company making the secondary attack is assigned a terrain objective and attacks this objective with all the means at its disposal. Exceptionally, it may be given the mission of supporting the main attack by fire alone. In attack orders, the battalion commander does not distinguish between nor use the terms "main attack" and "secondary attack."

(2) *Forms of attack maneuver.*—The two forms of attack maneuver are envelopment and

penetration. Best results are usually obtained by envelopment. It can be easily employed when the battalion is acting independently or when one flank is exposed. If the battalion has no open flanks, it is seldom possible for the main attack of the battalion to be directed against the hostile flank(s) or rear. When the battalion flanks are covered it usually makes what is essentially a frontal assault which combines flanking with frontal action by effecting a penetration. The penetration secures

positions from which small arms and machine guns can place fire on the newly created flanks of hostile elements still resisting.

(3) *Plan of attack.*—The attack plan consists of two main parts: the plan of maneuver and the plan of supporting fires. Maximum coordination of the two must be effected if success is to be achieved.

(4) *Formation.*—Most frequently the battalion commander will place one rifle company in the main attack, one in the secondary attack, and one in reserve. If the zone is narrow, one rifle company may be assigned the main and secondary attack with two companies in reserve. Rarely, will all three companies be placed in the attacking echelon.

b. Advance by fire and maneuver.—(1) The principles governing conduct of the battalion are the same as for the rifle company. (See Sec. VI.)

(2) *Security.*—Security measures planned on the initiation of the attack are continued in force or modified according to the progress of the attack.

c. Assault.—If the entire battalion is held up in front of a hostile position, the battalion commander arranges for a prepared and coordinated assault by his attacking echelon, utilizing the support fires of his machine guns. Usually, however, hostile resistance is reduced by a series of local assaults delivered by the squads and platoons.

10-40 CONSOLIDATION PHASE.—*a. Immediate defense.*—When the battalion has taken its final objective, the battalion commander orders an immediate defense set up. Contact with the enemy is maintained by pushing small patrols forward. An immediate defense insures protection against counterattacks by the enemy and protects reorganization. (See Sec. XIV.)

b. Reorganization.—Upon reaching the final objective following an attack, the battalion

commander quickly reorganizes his units. At this time, speed is essential. A reconnaissance is made, orders are issued, and weapons are moved forward within supporting distance. If the battalion is part of a larger force, the next higher commander is notified that the objective has been reached. In the absence of orders, the battalion commander consolidates his position and prepares to defend the ground already won or to continue the attack.

10-41 EXPLOITATION PHASE.—*a. Continuation of the attack.*—When the battalion is ordered to continue the attack, it repeats the sequence of steps in the attack phase.

b. Pursuit.—(1) When the battalion is ordered to pursue by direct pressure, it takes up the advance in deployed formation. Its action is similar to that of a leading battalion in the approach march. Company commanders are allowed maximum initiative. The battalion commander's orders, usually brief and fragmentary, give missions, departure positions, directions of advance, and objectives. Objectives are usually much more distant than in the attack. All supporting ships and aircraft are promptly notified and the advance is expedited by all practicable means.

(2) When the battalion reserve is intact at the time the final objective is captured, it may be used to begin the pursuit immediately. A new reserve is then constituted. During the pursuit, the reserve is committed promptly whenever necessary to prevent the enemy from making a stand.

(3) Pursuit is pushed to the limit of endurance. No opportunity is given the enemy to reorganize his forces or reconstitute his defense, even at night.

c. Mopping up.—During the rapid advance of the attacking echelons remnants of enemy are by-passed and isolated. These enemy elements are sought out and destroyed. Units from the reserve company are assigned this task.

SECTION VIII

DEFENSIVE COMBAT, GENERAL

	Par.	Page
Purpose.....	10-42	420
Advantages and disadvantages.....	10-43	420
Defensive tactics.....	10-44	420
Types of defense.....	10-45	420
Types of positions.....	10-46	421
Selection of positions.....	10-47	422
Organization of the defense.....	10-48	422
Conduct of the defense.....	10-49	423

10-42 PURPOSE.—The defensive is adopted for the following reasons:

a. To gain time for the preparation of an attack at a more opportune moment.

b. To economize forces on one front to permit an attack with strong decisive forces on another front.

c. To deny territory to the enemy that has tactical, strategic, or political importance.

10-43 ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES.—*a. Advantages.*—The defending force usually possesses or can gain the following advantages:

(1) Terrain favorable for defense.

(2) Better control and coordination of effort.

(3) Careful organization of the defense. This gives the defender the advantage of the maximum effective use of the fire power of his weapons.

(4) The defender can add to the advantage of favorable terrain by the construction of field fortifications.

(5) By exploiting the advantages listed above, the defender can usually inflict heavier losses upon the attacker than will be suffered by the defense.

b. Disadvantages.—The disadvantages of the defense often counterbalance the advantages.

(1) The defender loses the initiative, and the attacker conversely gains the initiative and can decide when, where, and how the attack will be launched.

(2) As a result of the loss of initiative, the

defender must spread his forces to defend all avenues of possible enemy attack, whereas the attacker can mass his forces at one decisive point.

10-44 DEFENSIVE TACTICS.—*a. Definition.*—Defensive tactics is the art of handling units in defensive combat.

b. Basic outline.—The basic outline of defensive tactics is the organization of a main battle position to be held at all costs, the use of reserves to limit penetrations of the main battle position and to counterattack, and the use of covering forces (security) to gain information of the enemy, to delay, to disorganize the enemy, and to deceive him as to the true location of the battalion position.

10-45 TYPES OF DEFENSE.—*a. General.*—(1) The defense is classified according to the time available for reconnaissance, planning, issuance of complete orders, occupation of the position, and organization of the ground.

(2) The organization of defensive positions, accordingly, may be classified into two categories, the hastily occupied defensive position (hasty) and the more strongly fortified position (deliberate).

(3) The terms “hasty” and “deliberate” are relative only because it is difficult to indicate a definite line of demarkation between the two. The tactical principles involved in both types of defense are basically the same.

(4) In general, it can be assumed that a hasty defense is one in which the position is organized in about eight hours or less with organic equipment and materials, and a deliberate defense is one which is developed and completed over a longer period of time. This generality as to time can be considered only as a guide. In many defensive situations, the variable factors attendant thereto such as the mission, character of the terrain, and the number of troops available, will prevent the

application of the aforementioned time factor.

b. Hasty defense.—(1) The hasty defense is established while in contact with the enemy or when contact with the enemy is imminent. Reconnaissance of the position, planning, the issuance of orders and organization of the ground is as detailed as the time factor permits, but will usually be curtailed. The organization of the ground consists of hasty rather than permanent field fortifications.

(2) The first considerations, in the assumption of the hasty defense, are to have the troops on the position, to provide local security, and to start digging in.

(3) *Immediate defense.*—A form of hasty defense is the immediate defense. The immediate defense is the defense established by a unit in order to hold an objective immediately after taking it. It is usually assumed while in contact with the enemy and when little or no time is available for detailed planning and reconnaissance.

(a) The immediate defense is usually organized by platoon and company commander immediately after taking an objective in order to withstand an enemy counterattack. The order for the immediate defense is usually given by company and platoon commanders prior to the attack, defensive positions on the objective being assigned to each subordinate unit.

(b) The immediate defense is an improvised and incomplete form of defense.

c. Deliberate defense.—(1) A battle position established under conditions permitting an adequate organization of the ground appropriate to the assigned mission, usually while out of contact with the enemy, is classified as a deliberate defense. There is reasonable assurance that the defender will have a definite period of time in which to select and organize his defensive position. This allows time for an adequate reconnaissance of the position to be defended, coordination of the fire of all weapons, and the organization of the ground in a manner appropriate to the mission.

(2) The deliberate defense may vary in degrees of strength and composition. The degree of strength and composition will depend upon the assigned mission, the character of the terrain, and the time and facilities available for

the organization of the ground prior to the enemy attack.

(3) The deliberate defense may consist of a thorough organization of the ground utilizing, initially, hasty field fortifications with a gradual development of the latter into increasingly stronger and more permanent installations. It may also consist, partially or entirely, of steel and concrete pillboxes, casemates, blockhouses, barriers, and other heavy construction requiring months or years to build.

10-46 TYPES OF POSITIONS.—*a. Positions classified according to the mission.*—

(1) Primary (firing) position is the firing position assigned to a unit or weapon as the best available position from which the most important mission can be accomplished.

(2) Alternate (firing) position is the firing position assigned to a unit or weapon for firing on primary targets when the primary (firing) position becomes unsuitable for carrying out an assigned fire mission.

(3) Supplementary (firing) position is the firing position assigned to a unit or weapon for firing on targets that cannot be reached from the primary (firing) position or the alternate (firing) position.

b. Positions classified with regard to the ground.—(1) *Forward slope.*—Defensive positions located on the forward slope (toward the enemy) of elevations usually, but not always, possess the best observation and fields of fire. Forward slope positions are located either on the military crest of the elevation or on the low ground forward of the elevation, depending on the fields of fire available.

(2) *Reverse slope.*—(a) Defensive positions on the reverse slope (away from the enemy) of elevations usually possess the best cover and concealment. Reverse slope positions are located within 500 yards (maximum effective range of rifle fire) of the topographical crest but no closer than 100 yards.

(b) A defensive position closely related to the reverse slope position is the counterslope position located on the forward slope of the elevation immediately behind a reverse slope. The reverse slope and counterslope positions are used together in the same defense. (See Sec. XIII.)

10-47 SELECTION OF POSITIONS.—

a. Terrain factors.—(1) The defending commander in selecting his defensive position seeks terrain with natural defensive strength. He selects a defensive position giving to the defenders the advantages of as many as possible of the following terrain factors:

- (a) Observation.
- (b) Fields of fire.
- (c) Cover and concealment.
- (d) Natural obstacles to impede the enemy's advance.
- (e) Good routes of communication and supply.

(2) The most desirable terrain factors are usually observation and fields of fire.

b. Limitations.—The position chosen, however, must:

- (1) Allow the defender to carry out his mission.
- (2) Conform to the dispositions and activity of both friendly and enemy forces.
- (3) Be appropriate in size to the number of the defending forces.

10-48 ORGANIZATION OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. General.—After selecting his defensive position, the defending commander organizes his defense tactically, organizes the fire of his weapons, and organizes the ground.

b. Tactical organization.—(1) The tactical organization of the defense is based upon the principles of depth, mutual support, coordination, and security.

(2) The defense is usually organized into three echelons: the main battle position, reserves, and covering forces or security.

(3) (a) The main battle position is the strongest part of the defense and the position on which the defender concentrates his main effort. It is composed of a number of subordinate positions, each organized for all-around defense and placed in width and depth throughout the main battle position in such a manner as to be mutually supporting.

(b) The imaginary line joining the forward edges of the most advanced subordinate positions of the main battle position is called the main line of resistance (MLR). Only portions of the main line of resistance are occupied by troops and weapons, but the enemy is prevented

by fire from penetrating any portion of the main line of resistance.

(c) The mission of units defending the main battle position is to stop the enemy by fire forward of the main line of resistance and to repel him by close combat if he succeeds in reaching it.

(4) Reserve units organize defensive positions in depth behind the main battle position, from which they can limit penetrations of the main line of resistance. Reserve units may also be held mobile in covered, concealed assembly areas ready to counterattack or to occupy prepared positions.

(5) Covering forces and security for the landing force battalion usually consist of the following:

(a) Local security sent out from the companies on the main line of resistance and located within 400 yards of that line.

(b) A combat outpost located from 400 to 2,000 yards forward of the main line of resistance and manned by troops from the reserve company. (See Ch. 8, Marches, Security on the March, and Outposts.)

(c) The mission of covering forces and security is to gain information of the enemy; prevent surprise of the main battle position; delay and disorganize the enemy; deceive the enemy as to the true location of the main battle position; and to inflict losses on the enemy. However, covering and security forces withdraw to the main battle position before the enemy can assault the outpost position.

c. Organization of fire.—(1) The organization of defensive fires is based upon the principles of coordination, depth, and mutual support.

(2) Weapons are located and fire missions assigned so as to accomplish the following missions:

(a) Fires are planned to support the withdrawal of the covering forces.

(b) Weapons are assigned the mission of firing on targets of opportunity as the enemy approaches the main line of resistance and comes within effective range of small arms fire.

(c) The strongest fires of the defense are planned to fall immediately forward of the main line of resistance so as to prevent the enemy from penetrating any portion of the

main line of resistance. These prearranged fires are called final protective fires.

(d) Fires from positions in depth are planned to limit penetrations of the main line of resistance.

(e) Fires are planned to support the counter-attack in case of enemy penetration of the main battle position.

d. Organization of the ground.—(1) The natural defensive strength of the position is increased by the construction of field fortifications and the use of camouflage.

(2) The priority of ground organization is given in the naval landing party commander's defense order. This priority usually is:

(a) Clearing fields of fire.

(b) Digging foxholes and emplacements.

(c) Constructing obstacles.

(3) Camouflage measures begin upon arrival on the defensive position and cease only when the position is vacated. (See Sec. IX.)

e. Unlimited visibility.—In daylight, key terrain features such as hills and woods are occupied by defending troops and weapons, while the open ground between the key terrain features is covered by observation and fire only.

f. Limited visibility.—(1) *Darkness.*—At night, small troop units or patrols are placed in gaps between key defensive terrain features which

are covered by observation and fire only during daylight hours. (See Sec. XIII.)

(2) *Heavy woods.*—In heavy woods, troops on the main battle position are given relatively narrow fronts. They tie in physically with adjacent units.

10-49 CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. In conducting the defense the commander follows the principles of aggressiveness, mobility, and surprise. The integrity of the main battle position must be maintained.

b. Patrols and covering forces harass, delay, and disorganize the advancing enemy and deceive him as to the true location of the main battle position and reserves. As the enemy advances toward the main battle position, he is brought under an increasing volume of fire until in front of the main line of resistance, he encounters the strongest, most carefully coordinated fires of the defense. If the enemy succeeds in advancing through the final protective fires, he is met by hand to hand fighting and then by the fire of support and/or reserve units. Finally, his penetration is contained and he is forced to withdraw by fire, or be thrown out of the main battle position by a counterattack. The defense of the main battle position is a combination of fighting in place and counter-attacking.

SECTION IX

FIELD FORTIFICATIONS AND CAMOUFLAGE

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-50	424
Fortification technique.....	10-51	424
Entrenchments.....	10-52	425
Emplacements.....	10-53	427
Obstacles.....	10-54	429
Camouflage.....	10-55	430

10-50 GENERAL.—*a. Field Fortifications.*—

(1) *Definition.*—Field fortifications are entrenchments, emplacements, and obstacles constructed in the field to increase the natural defensive strength of the terrain.

(2) *Classes.*—(a) *Hasty field fortifications.*—Hasty field fortifications are those constructed quickly, when in contact with the enemy or when contact is imminent. They consist generally of light clearing of fields of fire, foxholes for personnel, open weapon emplacements, hasty antitank and antipersonnel mine fields, barbed wire entanglements, strengthening of natural obstacles, observation posts, and camouflage.

(b) *Deliberate field fortifications.*—Deliberate field fortifications are those constructed out of contact with the enemy, or developed gradually from hasty fortifications. They include deliberate entrenchments, antitank and antipersonnel mine fields, antitank obstacles, covered weapon emplacements, barbed-wire entanglements, troop shelters which are proof against artillery fire and weather, extensive signal communication systems, gasproof inclosures of command posts and aid stations, and elaborate camouflage. Some deliberate field fortifications are constructed over a period of months or years and include such permanent installations as casemates, blockhouses, etc. Deliberate fortifications are not discussed further in this manual.

b. *Camouflage.*—(1) *Definition.*—Camouflage is the disguising of a place, thing, or person to mislead or deceive the enemy.

(2) *Camouflage discipline.*—Camouflage discipline is the maintenance in good condition of all disguises set up to conceal military equipment and personnel.

10-51 FORTIFICATION TECHNIQUE.—

a. *Clearing fields of fire.*—Suitable fields of fire are required in front of each entrenchment or emplacement. In clearing them, the following principles must be observed:

(1) Do not disclose position by excessive or careless clearing.

(2) In areas organized for close defense, start clearing near main line of resistance and work forward at least 100 yards.

(3) In all cases, leave a thin natural screen to hide defense positions.

(4) In sparsely wooded areas, remove the lower branches of scattered, large trees.

(5) In heavy woods, complete clearing of the field of fire is neither possible nor desirable. Restrict work to thinning undergrowth and removing lower branches of large trees. In addition, clear narrow lanes for fire of automatic weapons.

(6) Remove or thin thick brush. It is never a suitable obstacle and obstructs the field of fire.

(7) Demolish other obstructions to fire, such as buildings and walls, only when resulting debris provides less enemy protection.

(8) Drag away cut brush to points where it will not furnish concealment to the enemy or disclose the position.

(9) Before clearing fields of fire make a careful estimate as to how much clearing can be done in the time available.

b. *Camouflage.*—See paragraph 10-55.

c. *Drainage.*—Lack of proper drainage increases the maintenance work and the hardships of the troops occupying the fortifications. If possible, low points and drainage lines are

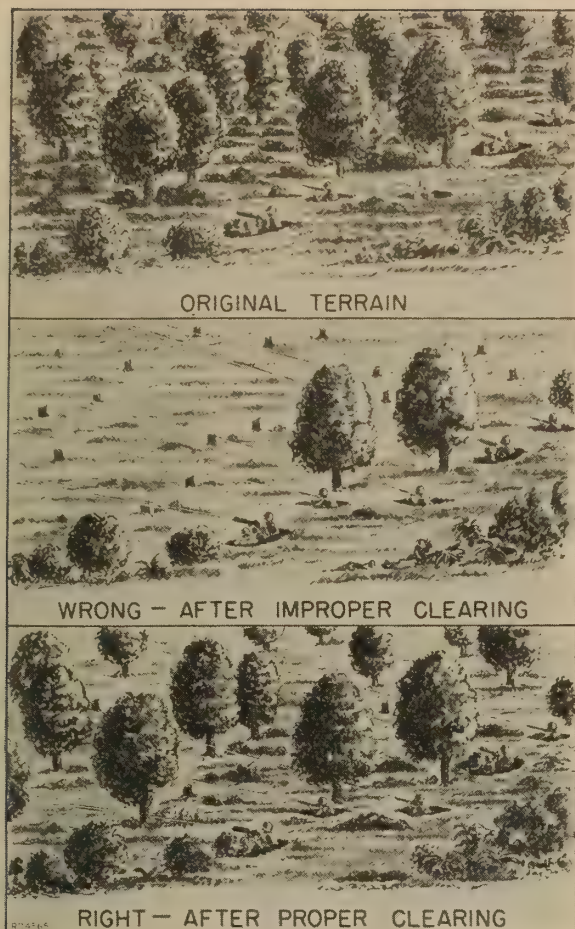


FIGURE 30.—Clearing fields of fire.

avoided, when locating the fortifications. Surface and rain water can be largely excluded by deflecting it through the use of small ridges into ditches passed around the fortifications. Subsurface water can be removed by bailing.

d. Revetments.—A revetment is a retaining wall, or facing, for maintaining an earth slope at an angle steeper than its natural angle of repose. In all but the hardest ground, when the position is to be occupied for more than a few days, some measures must be taken to prevent crumbling of walls. Most revetment is done with natural material such as brush and cut timber. Sand bags, if available, may be used.

10-52 ENTRENCHMENTS.—*a. General.*—

Entrenchments are located to cover a selected area with fire and, at the same time, provide concealment from aerial and ground observation and protection from enemy fire. These requirements are met when the troops are located in one-man or two-man foxholes as hereinafter described. To confuse the enemy, judicious use must be made of decoys or dummy positions.

b. Foxholes.—(1) *General.*—Foxholes are entrenchments normally dug for individual protection when contact with the enemy is imminent or in progress. They provide protection against small arms fire, artillery shell fragments

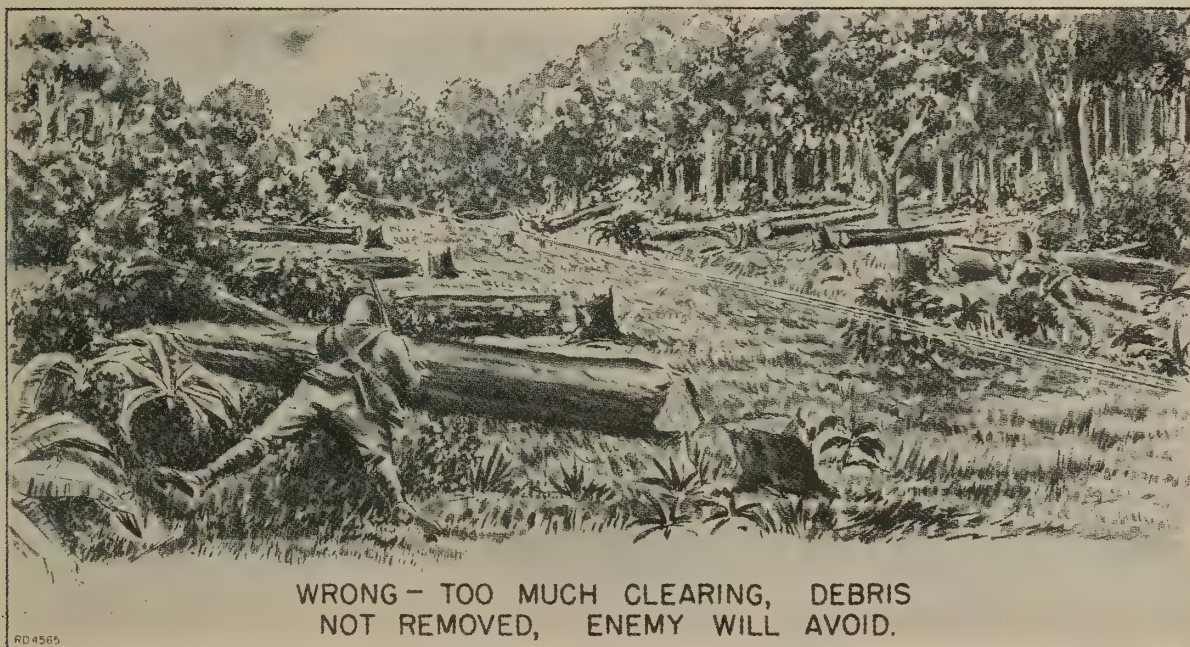


FIGURE 31.—Incorrect method of clearing fire lanes.

bombing, and the crushing action of tanks. The one-man and two-man foxholes are basic types. The two-man foxhole is used when men must work in pairs or when, for psychological reasons, battlefield comradeship is desirable.

(2) *One-man foxhole.*—(a) *Dimensions.*—The size and shape of the foxhole are affected by the following:

1. It is as small as practicable, to present the minimum target to enemy fire.

2. It is wide enough to accommodate the shoulders of a man sitting on the fire step.

3. It is long enough to permit the use of large-size entrenching tools.

4. It is at least 4 feet deep to the firestep, from which the standing occupant should be able to fire.

5. A sump is dug in one end for bailing out water and for the feet of the seated occupant.

(b) *Details of construction.*—In most types of soil the foxhole gives positive protection against the crushing action of tanks, provided the occupant crouches at least 2 feet below the

ground surface. In very sandy or soft soils, it will normally be necessary to revet the sides. The spoil is piled around the hole as a parapet, 3 feet thick and approximately 6 inches high, leaving a berm or shelf wide enough for the occupant to rest his elbows upon while firing.

(c) *Foxhole with camouflaged cover.*—It may be practicable to remove the spoil to an inconspicuous place and to improvise a camouflaged cover. This technique is especially effective against enemy air observation.

(3) *Two-man foxhole.*—The two-man foxhole consists essentially of two adjacent one-man foxholes. Since it is longer than the one-man type, it offers less protection against tanks crossing the long axis, as well as against strafing, bombing, and shelling.

c. *Trenches.*—When time allows, communication or connecting trenches are dug between observation posts, command posts, emplace-

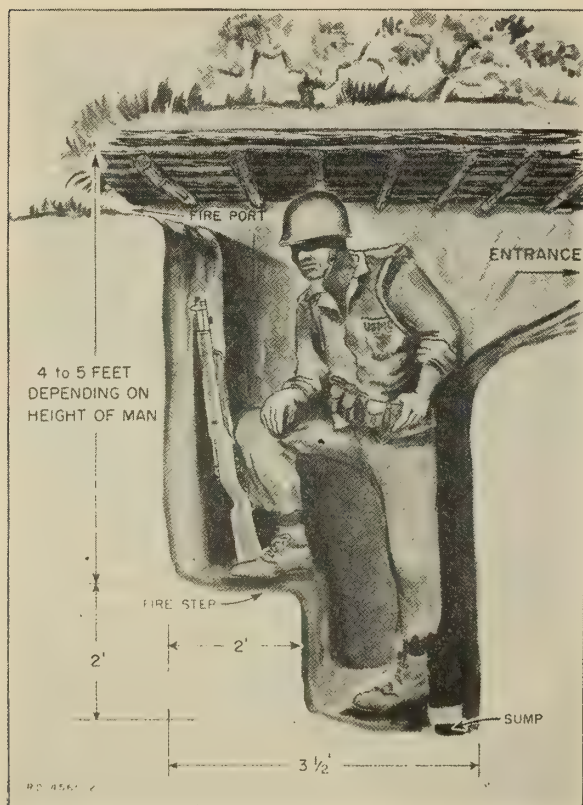


FIGURE 32.—One-man foxhole with camouflaged cover.

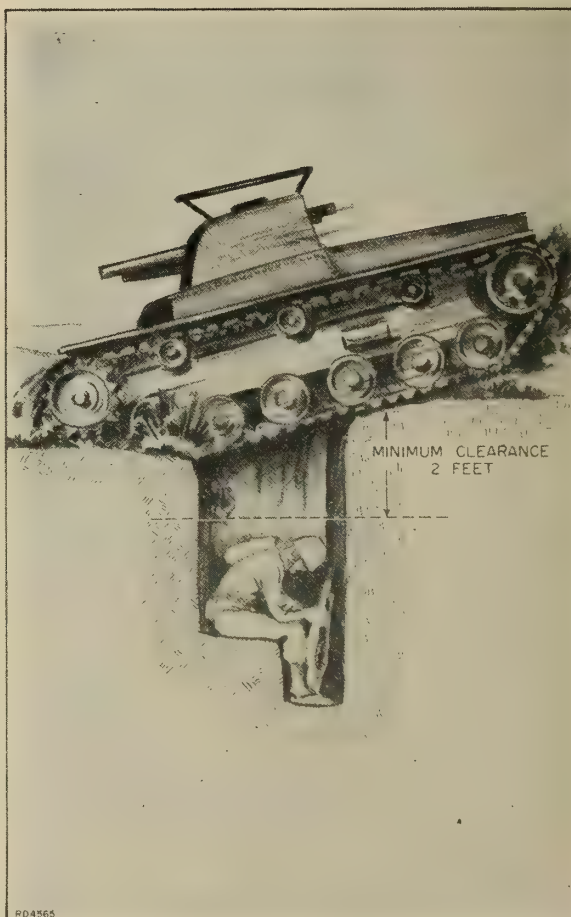


FIGURE 33.—One-man foxhole protection against crushing action of tanks.



FIGURE 34.—Concealing spoil.

ments, and foxholes. Continuous trenches are not dug as a normal procedure since their construction consumes much time and effort and they would unduly reveal the defensive dispositions to air and ground observers. Normally, a few short trenches are dug to permit necessary daylight movement across exposed areas.

d. Observation posts.—Both the one-man foxhole and the two-man foxhole with camouflaged cover are suitable for use as observation posts.

10-53 EMPLACEMENTS.—*a. General.*—An emplacement is a prepared position from which one or more heavy guns are fired or from which a unit executes its fire mission.

b. Emplacements for the machine gun, M1919A4.—(1) *Horseshoe type.*—(a) The gun is placed in firing position ready for immediate action. Lying down, if exposed to fire, the crew first excavate about one-half foot beneath the gun and then a similar depth for themselves, thus making an open shallow pit.

(b) The emplacement is completed by digging out a horseshoe-shaped trench, about 2 feet wide, along the rear and sides of the pit, leaving a chest-high shelf to the center and front to serve as a gun platform. The spoil is piled around the emplacement to form a parapet at least 3 feet thick and low enough to permit all-around fire.

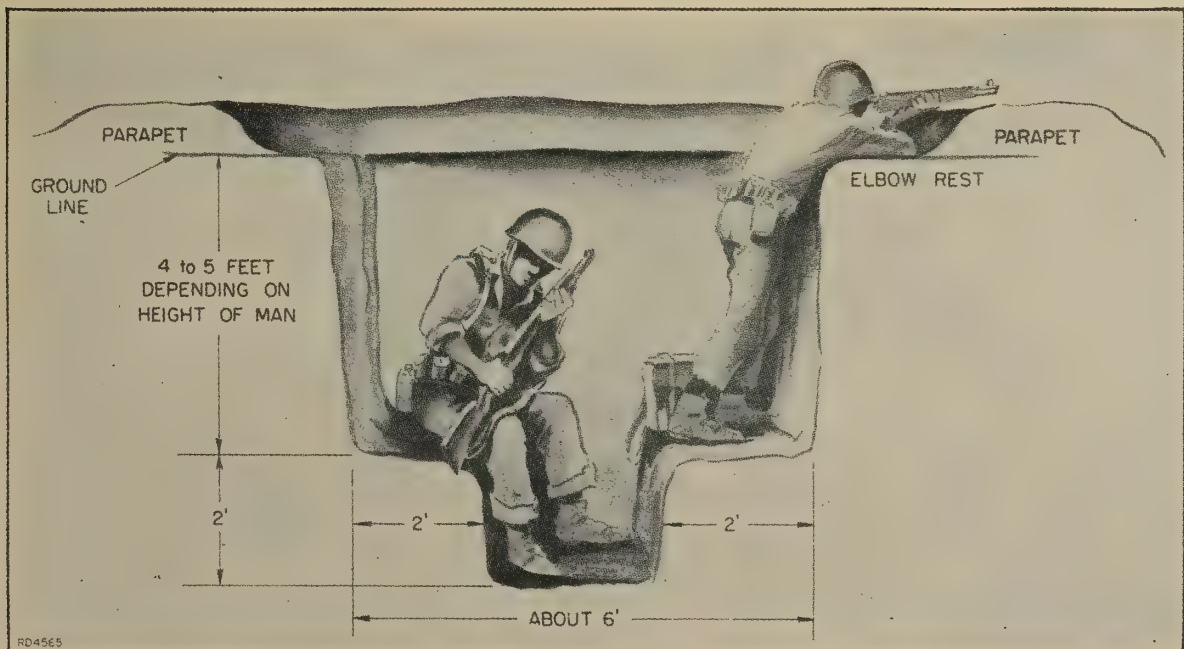


FIGURE 35.—Two-man foxhole.

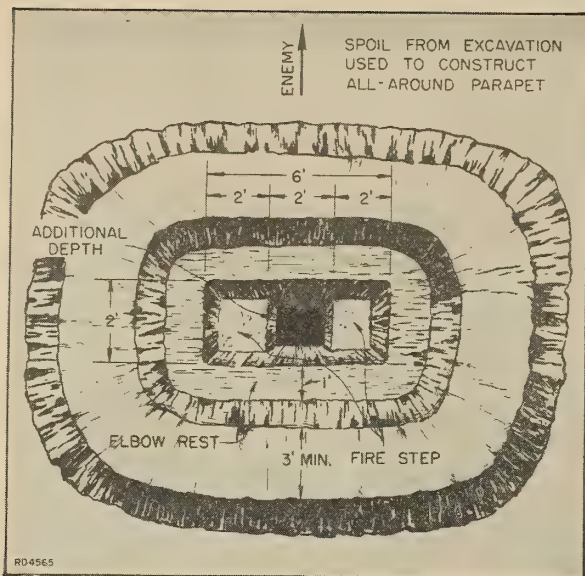


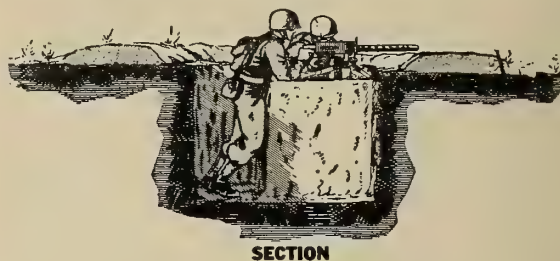
FIGURE 36.—Two-man foxhole (top view).

(c) This emplacement furnishes protection against small-arms fire and shell or bomb fragments. In firm soil, this emplacement offers protection against the crushing action of tanks; in loose soil, it will be necessary torevet the sides.

(2) *Two-foxhole type*.—This emplacement consists of two one-man foxholes close to the gun position. To lay it out a short mark is scratched on the ground in the principal direction of fire. On the right of this mark a foxhole is dug for the gunner. On the left of the mark and two feet to the front, another foxhole is dug for the assistant gunner. The spoil is piled all around the position to form a parapet, care being taken to pile it so as to permit all-around fire of the weapon. In firm

soil this type of emplacement provides protection against the crushing action of tanks; in loose soil it will be necessary torevet the sides. The weapon is protected against the crushing action of tanks by putting the gun in one hole and the tripod in the other.

c. Emplacements for heavy weapons, other than the machine gun, M1919A4, are not discussed in this manual.



SECTION

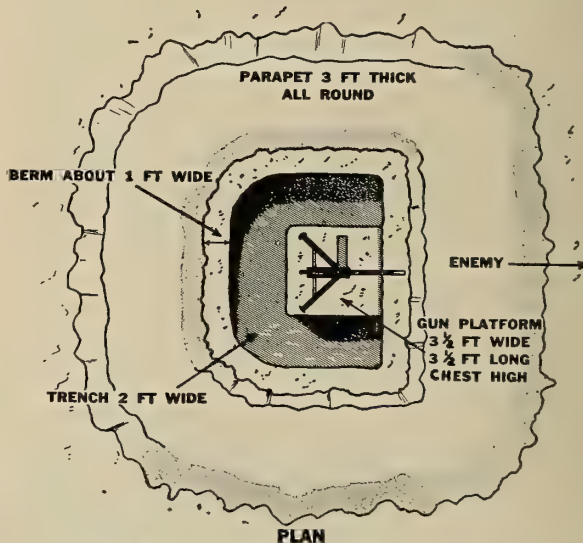


FIGURE 37.—Horseshoe-type emplacement for the machine gun, M1919A4.

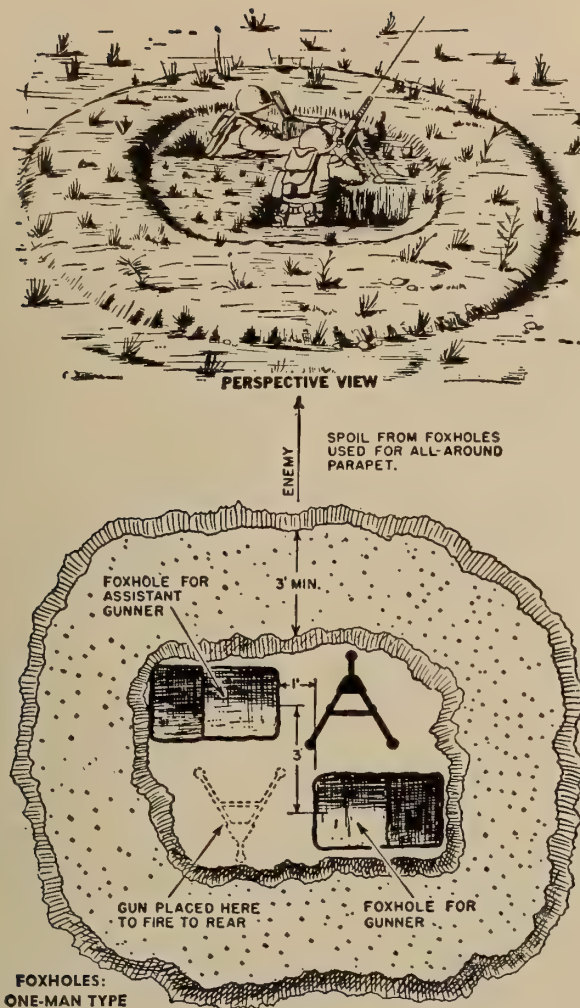


FIGURE 38.—Two-foxhole type emplacement for the machine gun, M1919A4.

10-54 OBSTACLES.—*a. General.*—An obstacle is any barrier that stops or slows down an enemy advance.

b. Types.—Obstacles are classified into two general types:

(1) *Natural obstacles.*—(*a*) Natural obstacles are deserts, mountains, cliffs, thick forests, rivers, lakes, swamps, canals, etc. In selecting

positions for foxholes and emplacements full advantage is taken of the protection afforded by natural obstacles. Such protection is desirable not only for the front of a defensive position but also for the flanks and rear.

(*b*) Natural obstacles can be improved by the labor of defending troops, streams can be widened and deepened by digging, river banks can be steepened, etc.

(2) *Artificial obstacles.*—(*a*) Artificial obstacles include barbed wire, log and brush barriers, steel or concrete tank barriers, land mines, etc.

(*b*) Artificial obstacles are constructed in the absence of and to supplement natural obstacles. Artificial obstacles which the naval landing force may use are:

1. *Abatis.*—Trees and brush cut and piled so as to form a barrier to enemy infantry advance. Trees are felled with branches facing the enemy and the ends of the branches are sharpened.

2. *Log antitank barriers.*—Strong logs emplaced vertically in the ground so as to overturn or stop enemy tanks.

3. Antipersonnel and antitank ditches with sharpened sticks and logs emplaced vertically in the bottom.

4. Barbed wire, when available, used as:

a. Protective wire.—Four strand fence or concertina running completely around the defensive position just out of hand grenade range.

b. Tactical wire.—Double-apron fence, four strand fence, or concertina running in a zigzag along the inside of the final protective lines of the machine guns.

c. Reinforcement for abatis.—Barbed wire entwined among the brush and trees of abatis.

5. *Antipersonnel mines.*—Hand grenades, high explosive charges, and regulation antipersonnel mines placed in likely avenues of enemy infantry approach, camouflaged, and fused to explode when stepped on by an enemy soldier.

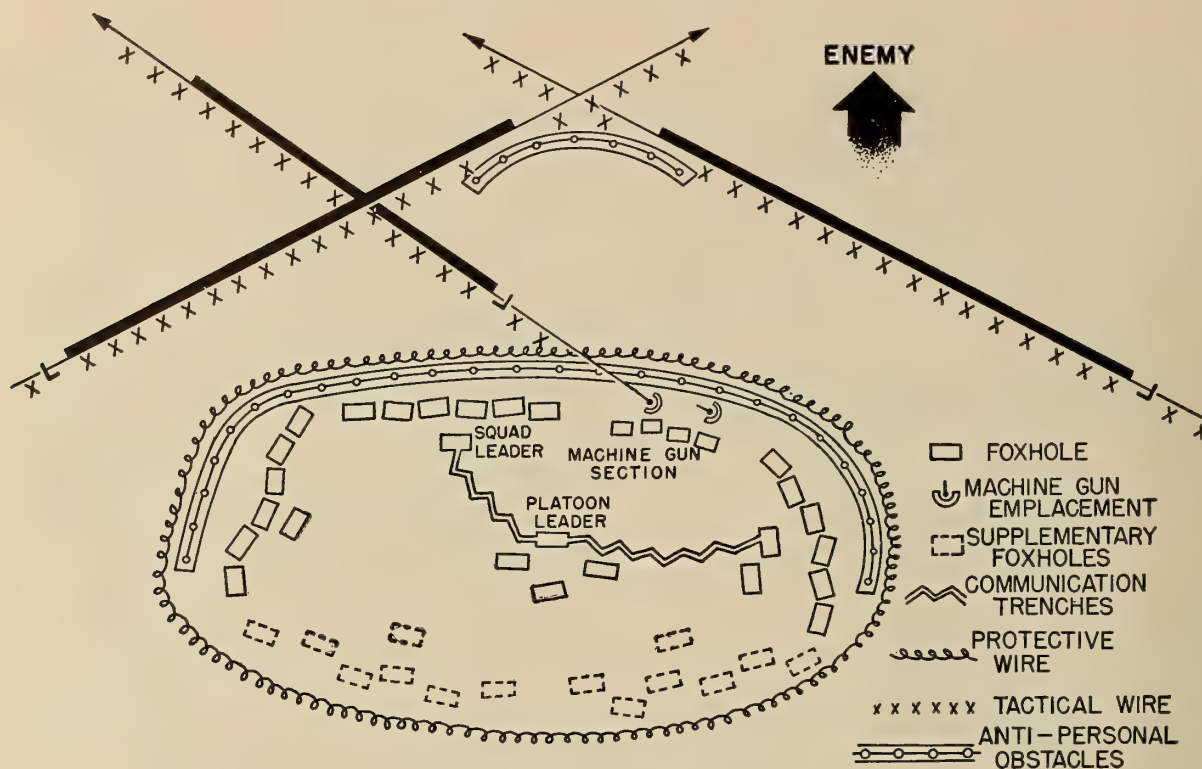


FIGURE 39.—Rifle platoon position with field fortifications.

c. Protection of obstacles.—All obstacles must be covered by fire from nearby foxholes and/or emplacements to be effective. Natural obstacles, no matter how formidable, can be traversed by enemy infantry when there is no protecting defensive fire. However, rivers, cliffs, swamps, etc., when covered by fire present difficult, if not impossible, obstacles to enemy infantry. Artificial obstacles will be destroyed or removed by the enemy, unless defensive fires are planned to cover the obstacles at all times.

10-55 CAMOUFLAGE.—*a. Methods of camouflaging.*—Camouflage can be accomplished by any one or more of the following methods:

(1) *Hiding.*—Completely concealing an object by constructing overhead cover or lateral screening.

(2) *Blending.*—Making an object indistinguishable from its surroundings by breaking up its form and shadow.

(3) *Deceiving.*—Making an object appear to be something else or using dummies to mislead the enemy as to troop dispositions and gun emplacements, and to draw his attention away from actual positions.

b. Requirements for successful camouflage.—The requirements for successful camouflage,

listed in order of importance, are:

(1) Proper choice of position to take advantage of natural concealment and natural camouflage material.

(2) Good camouflage discipline.

(3) Proper erection of camouflage material.

(4) Proper choice of camouflage material.

c. Camouflage materials.—Camouflage materials used should match the surrounding terrain in color and texture and should be easy to maintain throughout the length of time the position will be occupied. Camouflage materials are of two classes:

(1) *Natural materials.*—Natural materials include vegetation and debris natural to shell-torn villages, battlefields, etc.

(2) *Artificial materials.*—Artificial materials include fish nets, garnished chicken wire, garlands, etc.

d. Erection of camouflage material.—Camouflage material should be erected so that—

(1) It has an irregular form, and casts neither a regular nor a well-defined shadow.

(2) It conceals the form and shadow of the object camouflaged.

(3) It hides the tracks of constructing personnel.

SECTION X

THE RIFLE SQUAD IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-56	431
Troop leading steps.....	10-57	431
Organization of the defense.....	10-58	431
Conduct of the defense.....	10-59	432

10-56 GENERAL.—*a.* The rifle squad defends as part of the rifle platoon or as an independent unit and usually acts as an outpost. In both situations, the squad organizes and conducts its defense in basically the same manner.

b. Squad position and sector of fire.—(1) When the squad defends as part of the rifle platoon, the platoon commander assigns the squad a defensive position and sector of fire.

(2) The size of the squad position is usually 50 to 100 yards in width and up to 50 yards in depth. The squad may tie-in physically with adjacent squads or gaps may exist between squad positions, depending on the terrain, the size of the platoon defense area, etc.

(3) The platoon commander assigns a sector of fire to the squad which overlaps the sectors of fire of adjacent squads.

10-57 TROOP LEADING STEPS.—After receiving the platoon commander's order for the defense, the squad leader:

a. Makes a thorough physical reconnaissance of his squad position (when time allows), during which he formulates his plan for the defense.

b. Contacts adjacent squad leaders to coordinate his fire with theirs, and contacts the squad leaders of any machine guns located in or near the rifle squad position to determine their fire missions and the measures necessary to protect the machine guns.

c. Issues his order to his squad, or to his fire-team leaders only, if circumstances so require; first orienting his men by pointing out the expected direction of enemy attack, the location of adjacent squads, the location of any

machine guns in the squad area, the general position and sector of fire assigned the squad.

d. Finally, the squad leader supervises the execution of his order.

10-58 ORGANIZATION OF THE DEFENSE.—*a. Tactical organization.*—(1) The formation of the squad is three fire teams generally abreast but with the squad flanks drawn back (when the terrain allows). The squad leader chooses a position for each fire team and for each automatic rifle that possesses the greatest natural defensive strength, at the same time allowing the fire teams to carry out their fire mission.

(2) The squad leader provides security for the squad by:

(*a*) Locating an outpost of one or two men forward of the squad position (within 200 yards) after obtaining permission from the platoon commander.

(*b*) Assigning one man to observe the enemy from the squad position during daylight in open terrain.

(*c*) Ordering one man in each fire team to observe and listen for the enemy during darkness and in heavy woods (day and night).

(*d*) Relieving men on security watches at intervals of two hours or less.

(3) The squad leader's position (foxhole), when possible, allows observation of the entire squad position and of the area over which the enemy is expected to attack.

(4) When the platoon commander designates supplementary and/or alternate positions to be occupied by the squad, the squad leader determines the locations of his fire teams (including his automatic riflemen) on the alternate and/or supplementary positions and instructs his fire-team leaders to that effect.

b. Squad fire plan.—(1) The squad leader assigns overlapping sectors of fire to his fire teams in such a manner that the entire frontage

of the squad is covered by fire. The fire-team leaders in turn assign overlapping sectors of fire to each rifleman in the fire team, including themselves.

(2) The squad leader ascertains that the fire of his squad intersects the fire of adjacent squads. He assigns some rifles and/or automatic rifles to fire across the front of adjacent squads (when the terrain allows).

(3) The squad leader assigns primary fire missions and sectors of fire to his automatic rifles in such a manner that:

(a) Dangerous avenues of approach into the squad position (gullies, wooded draws, brush lines, etc.) are covered by automatic rifle fire.

(b) Sectors of fire for automatic rifles overlap across the squad front.

(4) The squad leader assigns certain riflemen and automatic riflemen the mission of protecting by fire any machine gun in or near the squad position.

c. *Organization of the ground.*—As soon as each member of the squad has been assigned his primary position, the squad leader orders his men to clear fields of fire, dig foxholes, and to camouflage their positions. Supplementary and

alternate positions are prepared when time allows.

10-59 CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. Success in the conduct of the defense depends on each squad, fire team, and individual holding their position and repulsing or killing the enemy. Under no circumstances will a squad abandon its defensive position unless ordered to do so by the platoon or higher commander.

b. During the enemy firing that often precedes a hostile attack, the squad leader designates one man in addition to himself to observe for the hostile approach; the other members of the squad take cover in their prepared positions. As soon as the enemy fire lifts, all members of the squad take firing positions to meet the attack.

c. The enemy is not engaged by rifles or other weapons emplaced on the main line of resistance until he comes within effective range of rifle fire. At this time, all squad weapons open accurate, aimed fire to stop the enemy before he reaches the battle position. When fire is to be opened on order or signal, members of the squad hold their fire, even though the enemy may be within

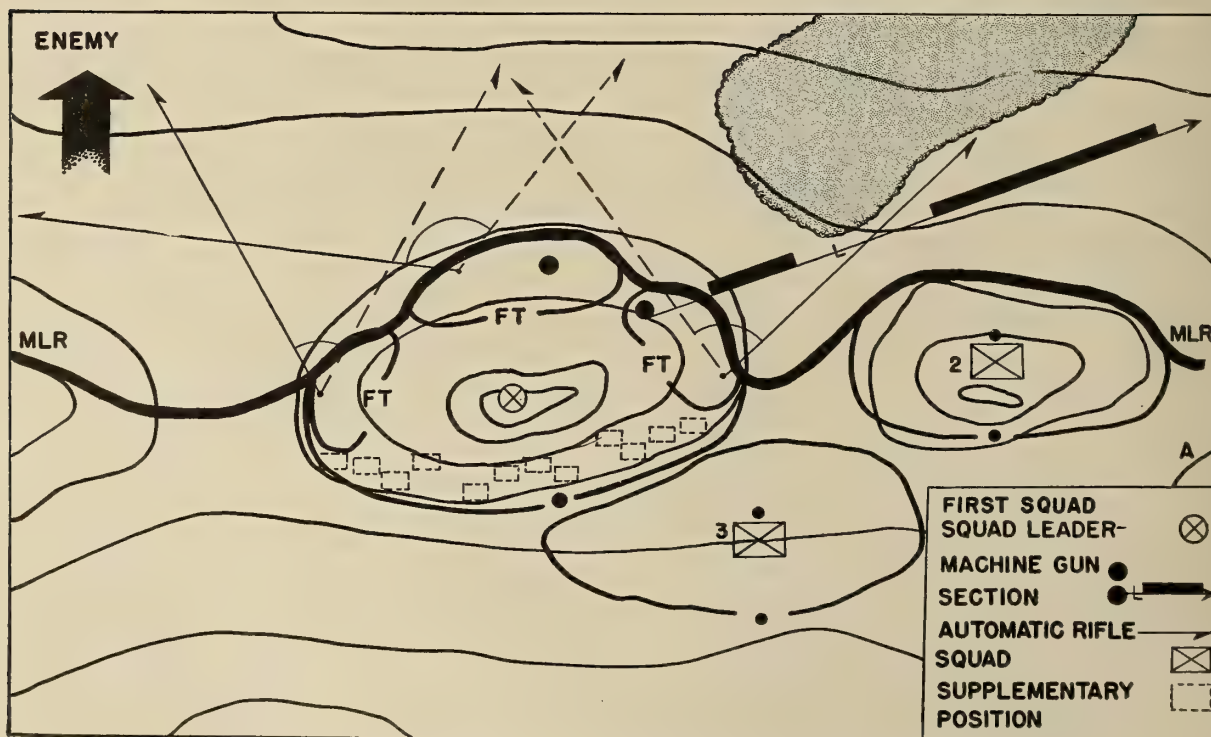


FIGURE 40.—Squad in defense of the main line of resistance (light machine-gun section in squad position).

effective range, until the order or signal to commence fire is given. Thus, the full effect of surprise fire is realized.

d. Automatic weapons that fire repeatedly from the same position may be located by the enemy. When fire is received that threatens to make a primary fire position untenable, that position should be vacated and the alternate position occupied. This move is ordered by the squad leader.

e. In the event that enemy tanks precede or accompany infantry, the tanks are engaged by antitank weapons. The primary mission of the rifle squad is to take under fire the infantrymen who accompany or follow the tanks. If there is no accompanying infantry, some members of the squad fire at the vision slits, bogey wheels, and periscopes of the tanks to cause them to "button up" and reduce their maneuverability and control. Men equipped with antitank grenades fire on the tanks when they come within effective range. Men immediately in the path of oncoming tanks protect themselves against crushing action by sitting on the fire step and bending low in their foxhole. After the tanks have passed, they are attacked from the rear by antitank grenadiers.

f. If the enemy reaches the area covered by prearranged, close-in defensive fires, riflemen and automatic riflemen increase their rates of fire and cover their assigned sectors of fire. If the enemy assaults, he is met successively by point-blank fire, grenades, and hand-to-hand combat.

g. When an adjacent squad position is penetrated or overrun, the squad leader will shift a portion of his fire to that area to prevent the enemy from widening the breach and enveloping his own squad.

h. Should the squad position be threatened by envelopment or attack from the rear, the squad leader orders the occupation of supplementary positions as necessary to meet this threat.

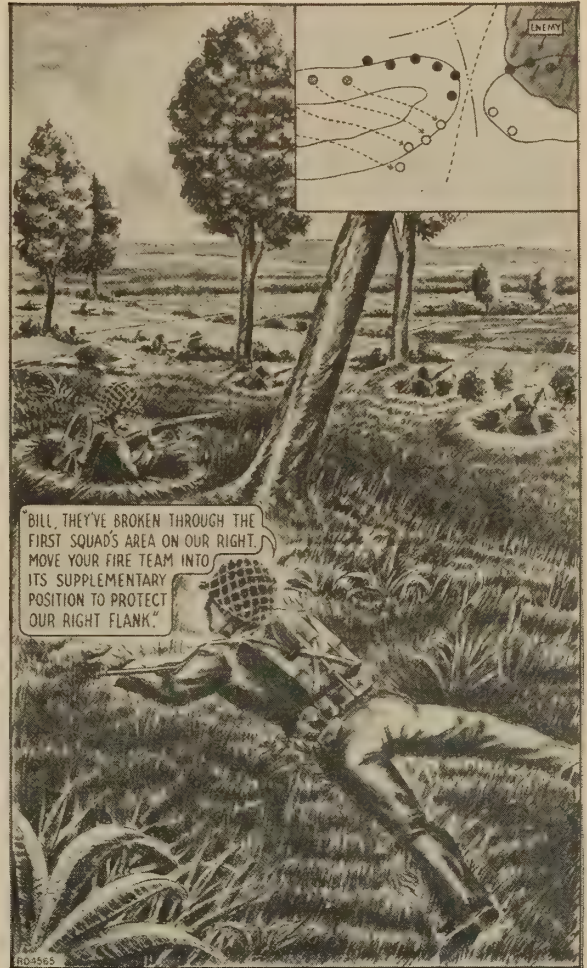


FIGURE 41.—Squad leader's action if adjacent squad is overrun.

SECTION XI

THE RIFLE PLATOON IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-60	434
Troop leading steps.....	10-61	434
Organization of the defense.....	10-62	436
Conduct of the defense.....	10-63	439
Support platoon.....	10-64	439

10-60 GENERAL.—*a. Platoon defense area.*—(1) The battalion commander assigns defense areas to his forward rifle companies. The forward rifle company commander in turn assigns defense areas to his forward platoons.

(2) *Frontages.*—The maximum frontage assigned a rifle platoon on the main line of resistance in open terrain with good fields of fire is 500 yards. In wooded or brush covered terrain with poor fields of fire the maximum frontage assigned a forward rifle platoon should not exceed 250 yards. The frontage physically occupied by a rifle platoon will not usually exceed 300 yards. Area will normally include a definite terrain feature or features and is so located to definitely include or exclude avenues of approach into the company position such as ravines, draws, etc.

(3) *Depth.*—The depth of the platoon defense area may extend to 300 yards; however, 150 yards can be considered the normal depth. Obviously the platoon cannot occupy physically the entire defense area. Therefore, only certain portions of the defense area are physically occupied by the rifle squads, the remainder of the area being defended by fire.

b. Machine guns.—Usually one or more sections of machine guns will be located in the platoon defense area. Those machine guns, carrying out missions assigned by the battalion commander, will influence to some degree the rifle platoon's defensive organization.

c. Selection of positions.—(1) *By the company commander.*—The company commander will indicate the general positions to be occupied by the forward rifle platoons. These positions

will include a portion of the main line of resistance which has been designated by battalion. For instance, the company commander might order the forward platoon commander to occupy the forward slope of a hill within the platoon defense area and across which runs the main line of resistance.

(2) *By the platoon commander.*—The platoon commander selects the positions to be occupied by his squads. As the position has been outlined by the company commander, the platoon commander is left only a limited choice of squad positions. For instance, if the company commander indicated a position on the forward slope of a certain hill, the platoon commander could not place his squads on the reverse slope. In selecting his squad positions, the platoon commander will be primarily concerned with his mission—to prevent the enemy from penetrating any portion of the main line of resistance. The enemy situation, the situation of friendly forces, and the nature of the terrain have been considered by the battalion and company commanders in assigning the platoon its defense area and general position. However, the platoon commander must evaluate the five terrain factors—observation, fields of fire, cover and concealment, obstacles, and communications, and select the strongest position for his squads which allow them to carry out the platoon's mission.

10-61 TROOP LEADING STEPS.—*a. General.*—The situation may dictate that the troop leading steps as outlined herein be curtailed in the assumption of the hasty defense. (See Sec. VIII.) Usually, the platoon commander will receive the order for the defense at the company vantage point along with the other subordinate company officers.

b. Troop leading steps.—(1) *Select a vantage point.*—After receiving the company order,

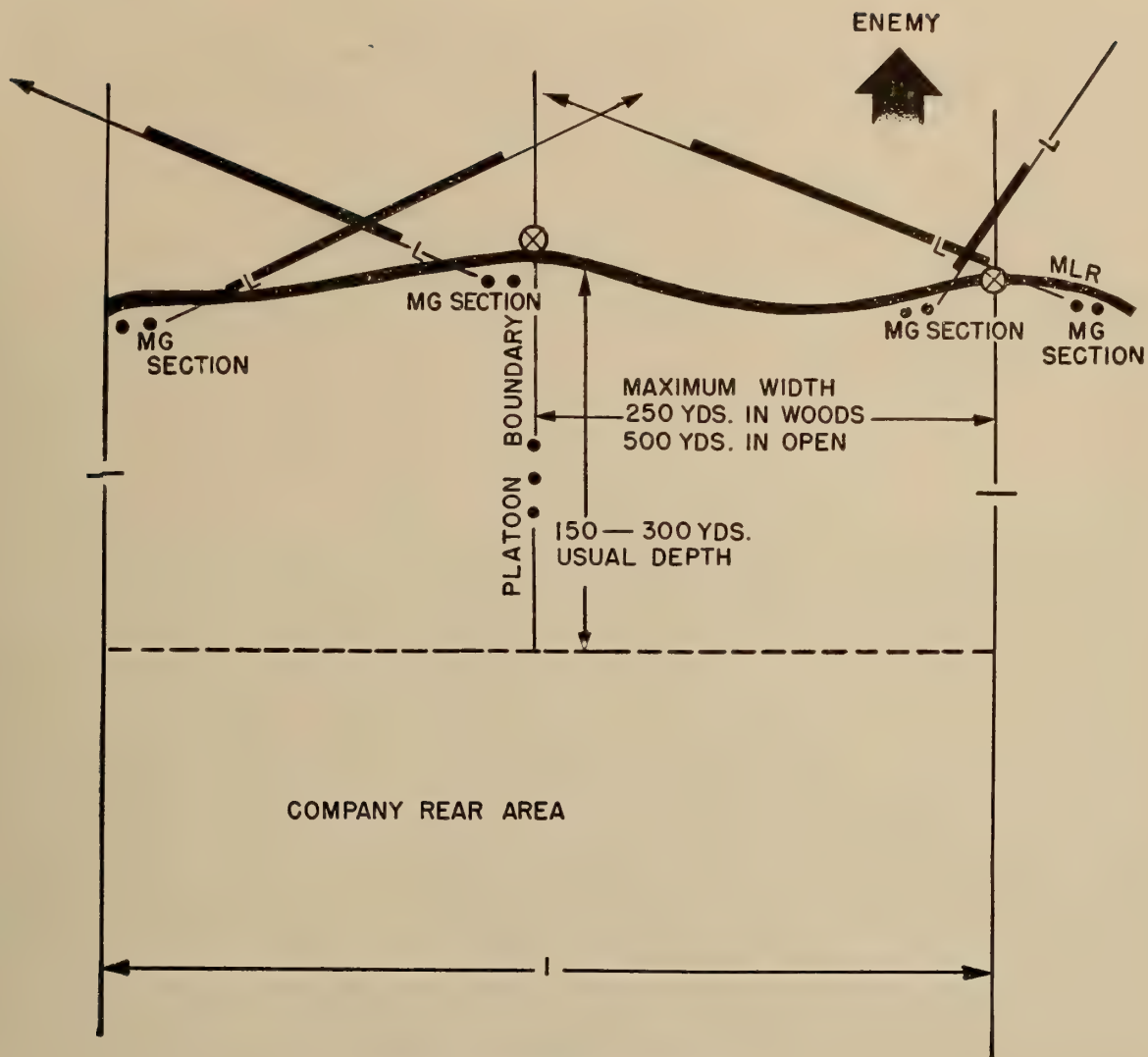


FIGURE 42.—Forward rifle platoon defense areas.

the platoon commander, accompanied by the platoon guide and runners, moves to his defense area and selects a vantage point from which he can view as much as possible of the platoon defense area and the area forward of the main line of resistance.

(2) *Arrange to meet subordinate leaders and have platoon move forward.*—Assuming that the platoon has remained in a company assembly area while the company defense order was given, the platoon commander sends a runner to the rear to bring the squad leaders to the vantage point and to tell the platoon chief to move the platoon to the platoon defense area. The platoon commander would designate a platoon

assembly area to which the platoon chief, guided by runners, would move the platoon.

(3) *Plan and make a reconnaissance.*—While the platoon and the squad leaders are moving up, the platoon commander plans and makes his reconnaissance. If the enemy situation allows, he will begin his reconnaissance forward of the main line of resistance and will walk across his platoon front viewing the platoon position and its approaches from the enemy's point of view. He then walks along the main line of resistance and finally examines the rear sector of the platoon defense area. During his reconnaissance he selects positions for his squads and the platoon command post. He

decides upon the tactical organization of the platoon, the platoon fire plan, and how the platoon will organize the ground.

(4) *Contact adjacent and supporting unit commanders.*—The platoon commander contacts adjacent and supporting platoon commanders in order to properly coordinate his fire with theirs and to provide for mutual fire support. The platoon commander can arrange to meet the other platoon commanders of his own company during the meeting at the company vantage point at which time preliminary arrangements are made, and will meet them near the platoon boundary after his reconnaissance to make final arrangements. Although the company commander will arrange for coordinated fire between companies, the flank platoon commander on the main line of resistance checks with the adjacent platoon commander of the adjacent company to make certain their fires are tied-in. The platoon commander checks with the section leaders of any machine guns emplaced in his area to ascertain their locations, fire missions, etc.

(5) *Orient subordinate leaders.*—After completing his reconnaissance, the platoon commander returns to his vantage point and orients his squad leaders. The platoon guide may be left at the vantage point to orient the squad leaders or may accompany the platoon commander on his reconnaissance. In any event, the squad leaders are shown the expected direction of enemy attack, the platoon boundaries, location of adjacent and supporting platoons, locations and missions of machine guns in the platoon area, and the general position to be occupied by the platoon.

(6) *Issue the defense order.*—The platoon commander is now ready to issue his defense order. The order should be as complete as is practical. The more his men know of the situation the better the platoon's chances of success. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.)

(7) *Supervise the execution of the order.*—After giving the order the platoon commander must supervise the execution of his order. He must point out on the ground to each squad leader the squad position and sector of fire. He must ascertain that his fire plan is being properly prepared, avenues of approach not covered by the grazing fire of machine guns are well

covered by automatic rifle fire, etc. He must enforce proper camouflage discipline. His duty of supervision never ceases, for the defense, particularly the ground organization, must be continually improved as long as the position is occupied.

10-62 ORGANIZATION OF THE DEFENSE.

a. Tactical organization.—(1) *Distribution of squads.*—The formation of the platoon is usually three squads forward but with the platoon flanks drawn back. Protection is thus afforded to the flanks, and the intervals between adjacent platoons are covered by fire. When the platoon is defending a narrow front, the three squads may be placed more or less abreast and physically tied-in with adjacent platoons. Also, when the terrain is such that two squads can cover by fire the platoon frontage forward of the main line of resistance, and a suitable depth position exists within the platoon defense area, one squad may be placed in a depth position. However, this depth position must allow the depth squad to bring its fire to bear forward of the main line of resistance.

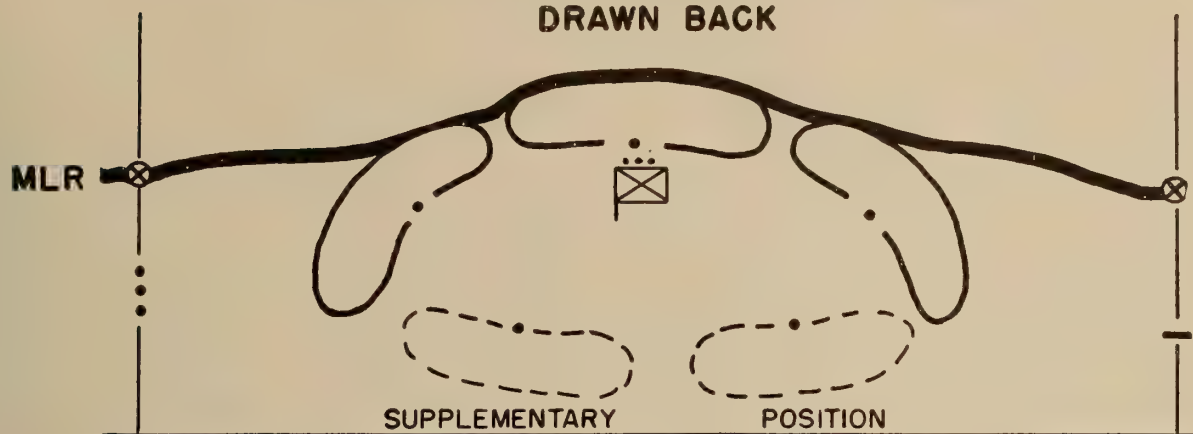
(2) *Supplementary positions.*—In order to afford protection to the rear of the platoon position, supplementary positions are prepared facing to the rear and to the flanks which the platoon commander may order occupied in case of enemy penetration in adjacent or rear areas.

(3) *Platoon command post.*—(a) The platoon commander conducts the defense of his platoon area from a command post located near the main line of resistance from which he can observe as much as possible of his platoon position and of the terrain forward of the main line of resistance over which the enemy must advance. The command post is carefully dug in and camouflaged. A covered and concealed route of approach from the rear is highly desirable. Often, when the platoon commander cannot observe and control his entire platoon from the command post position, the platoon chief will be given command of a sector of the platoon position and will establish a supplementary command post.

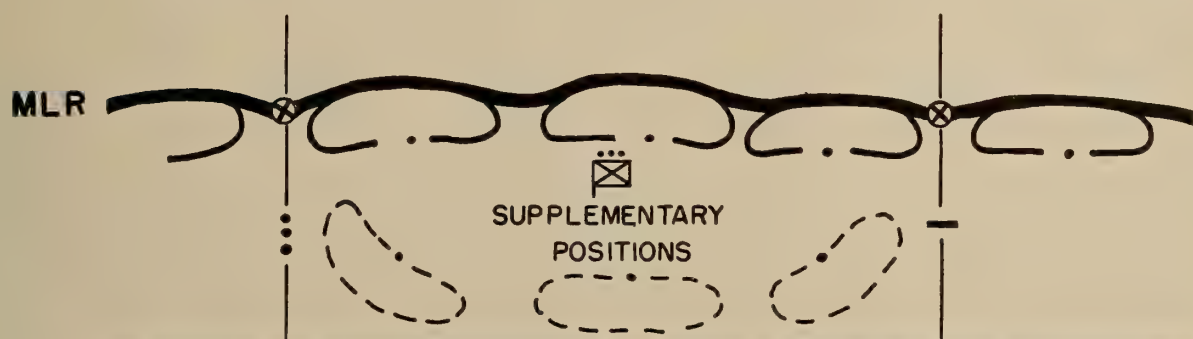
(b) In addition to the command post, the platoon commander will select, if necessary, a concealed, covered position for a supply point

DISTRIBUTION OF SQUADS

THREE SQUADS FORWARD WITH FLANKS DRAWN BACK



THREE SQUADS ABREAST PHYSICALLY TIED IN WITH ADJACENT PLATOONS—NARROW FRONT—



TWO(2) SQUADS FORWARD—ONE (1) SQUAD IN SUPPORT SUPPORT SQUAD MUST BE ABLE TO FIRE FORWARD OF MLR

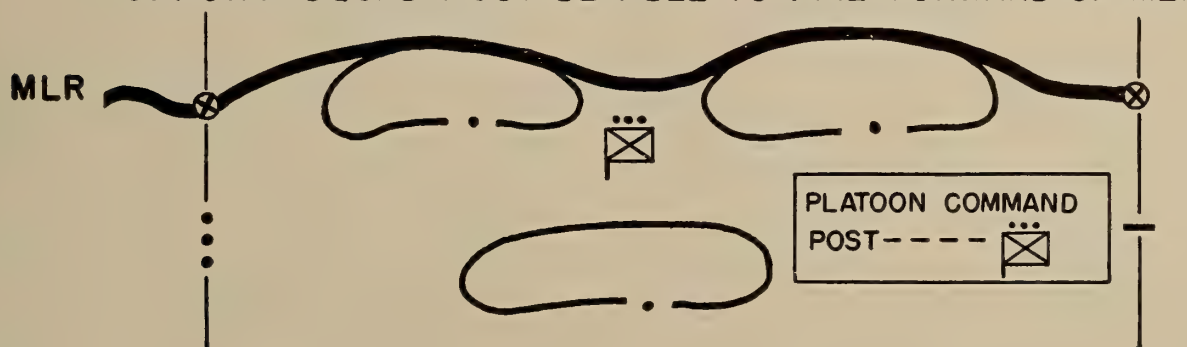


FIGURE 43.—Platoon defensive formations.

to which supplies can be brought and casualties evacuated. The platoon guide is charged with the duties of supply and evacuation.

(4) *Security*.—The platoon commander provides local security for his position. Normally, the company commander will direct that certain outguards be established forward of the main line of resistance. If no company security is provided, the platoon commander must establish one or more outguards of his own, usually, of fire-team strength or less. At any event, certain individuals within the platoon are designated to keep a constant and careful watch for both enemy ground and air activity. Local security from companies or platoons is usually placed within 400 yards of the main line of resistance.

b. *Platoon fire plan*.—(1) *Squad sectors of fire*.—The platoon commander develops a fire

plan for his platoon. He is primarily concerned with covering by fire the entire area in his platoon's sector immediately forward of the main line of resistance. By assigning overlapping sectors of fire to his squads, the platoon commander assures that this coverage is obtained. The flank squads' sectors of fire must include the interval, if any, between the platoon's flanks and the flanks of adjacent units.

(2) *Mutual support*.—In addition to covering the platoon front, the platoon's fire should, if possible, cover to some degree the front of adjacent platoons, thus providing for mutual support. The platoon commander ascertains that his fire intersects that of adjacent platoons forward of both platoon flanks.

(3) *Avenues of approach*.—The platoon commander ascertains that avenues of approach

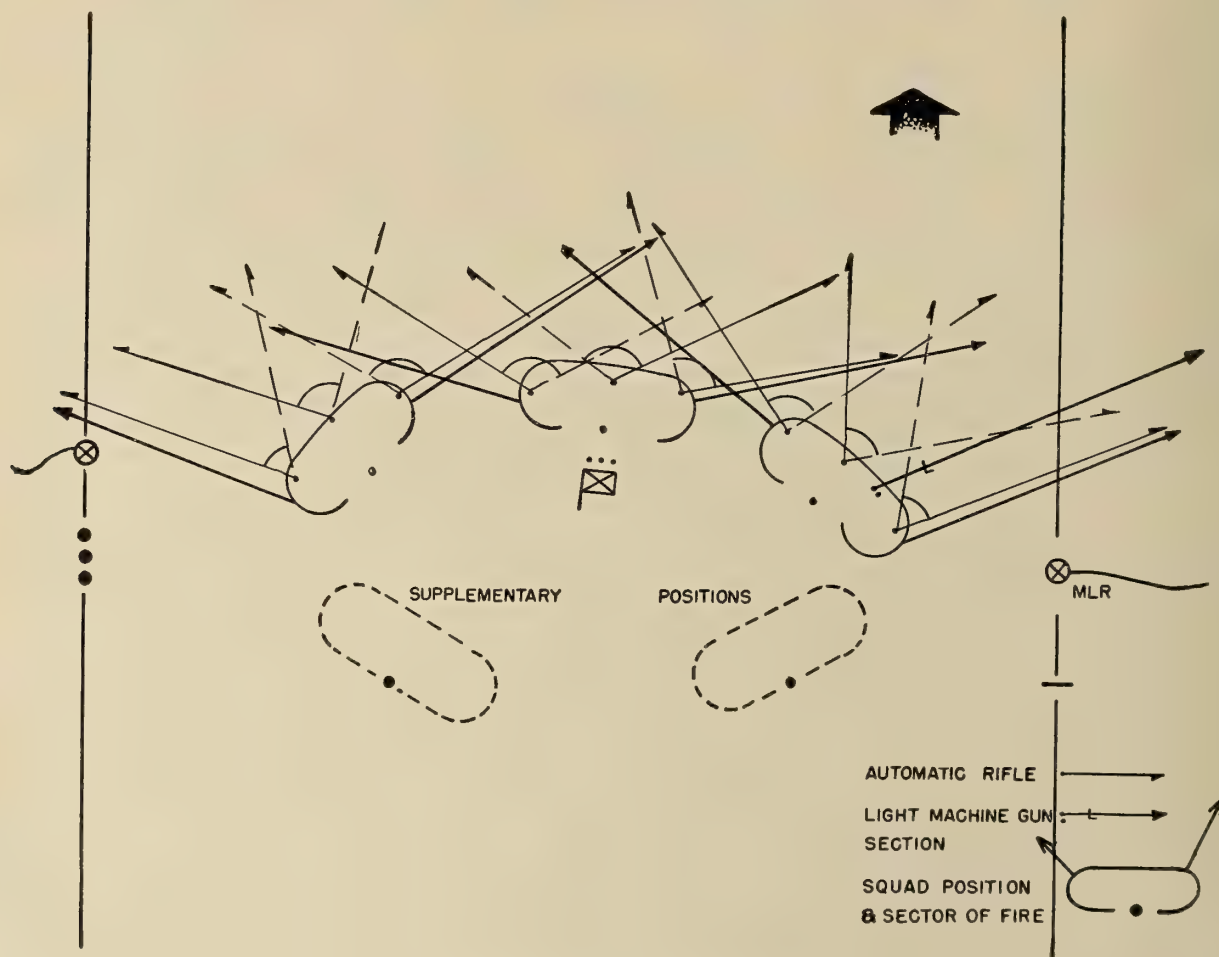


FIGURE 44.—Platoon defensive fire plan.

into his position for enemy infantry are covered by fire, preferably automatic fire, particularly those avenues of approach not covered by grazing fire of machine guns. Ditches, gulleys, wooded draws, etc., leading into the platoon position must be covered by fire.

(4) *Machine guns*.—In organizing his fire, the platoon commander insures that machine guns in his area are protected by the fire of riflemen and automatic riflemen.

c. Organization of the ground.—(1) *Platoon tasks*.—The platoon will organize the ground according to the priority assigned by company. The normal platoon tasks are digging foxholes, clearing fields of fire, constructing protective wire around the platoon position, and camouflaging the entire position. When time permits, the platoon may dig connecting trenches between foxholes, the platoon observation post, etc.

(2) *Additional tasks*.—The platoon may be given the additional tasks by company of constructing tactical wire, in placing antipersonnel mines, and of constructing obstacles to the enemy's advance.

10-63 CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. Initial contact.—The first direct contact between the platoon on the main line of resistance and the enemy ground forces occurs when the attacking enemy appears within 500 yards of the platoon position. The platoon will normally have received warning of the enemy's approach from the outpost positions and is prepared to withstand the attack. The platoon commander notifies the company commander of the presence of the enemy, their direction of advance, armament, numbers, etc.

b. Final protective fires.—As the enemy advances into the zone of the final protective fires, the company commander (or battalion commander) will order the final protective fires brought down. The platoon commander keeps the company commander informed of the development of the enemy attack, thus aiding the company commander in making his decision as to the final protective fires. When the order (usually a signal flare) is given to bring down the final protective fires, the platoon commander ascertains that his squads are covering their assigned sectors of fire, that automatic rifles are carrying out their missions of covering avenues

of approach and gaps in the final protective lines, and that the platoon fire plan in general is being carried out.

c. Close combat.—If the enemy succeeds in advancing through the final protective line, and reaches the platoon position, every man remains in his position and engages the enemy in close combat with hand grenades, point-blank fire, and bayonets. Enemy tanks advancing into the platoon position are met with antitank rifle grenades. The main battle position is held at all costs.

d. Penetrations in adjacent areas.—Due to the heavy volume of enemy fire falling on the platoon position during an attack, movement within the platoon position is often impracticable. However, if the enemy penetrates the areas of adjacent or supporting platoons, the platoon commander moves some of his men to the previously prepared supplementary positions in order to protect the exposed flanks or rear.

e. Information to company commander.—The platoon commander takes full advantage of the help available from company and battalion by constant communication with the company commander as to the progress of the enemy attack.

10-64 SUPPORT PLATOON.—*a. General*.—

Usually the company commander places two rifle platoons on the main line of resistance and the third rifle platoon in depth behind the main line of resistance. This platoon located in depth is called the support platoon of the company.

b. Selection of positions.—The support platoon position is selected by the company commander in more specific detail than the position of the forward rifle platoons. The position selected is at least 150 yards from the rearmost elements of the forward rifle platoons but no more than 500 yards from the main line of resistance, thus keeping the support platoon out of the zone of enemy fire falling on the main line of resistance but within effective small-arms range of the main line of resistance. The support platoon is responsible for all the company defense area not included in the forward platoon defense areas. The position selected may be a key terrain feature within the company defense area from which the

support platoon can carry out its missions; or the support platoon may be split with each squad defending a particular terrain feature or blocking a particular avenue of approach. Usually the support platoon will defend physically a wider frontage than either of the forward rifle platoons.

c. Organization of the defense.—(1) The defense of the support platoon is organized generally in the same manner as that of the forward rifle platoons.

(2) Three squads are usually placed abreast. Supplementary positions are prepared protecting the flanks and rear.

(3) The support platoon fire plan is generally the same as that of the forward platoons: overlapping sectors of fire for the rifle squads, dangerous avenues of approach into the company rear area covered by automatic rifle fire, and machine guns near the platoon position protected by rifle and automatic rifle fires. However, it is usually impossible or impractical to tie in the fire of the support platoon with that of support platoons of adjacent companies. Instead the support platoon's fire is coordinated with the fire of the forward rifle platoons to give depth and all-around defense to the company defense area.

(4) The support platoon digs in and organizes the ground in a similar manner to that of the forward rifle platoons.

(5) The platoon commander of the support platoon often remains at the company observation post rather than at his platoon command post in order to more expeditiously carry out the company commander's orders.

(6) The platoon commander of the support platoon carries out the same troop leading steps in preparing his defense as the forward rifle platoon commanders.

d. Missions.—The missions of the support platoon are:

(1) To assist the front-line rifle platoons by fire in defense of the main line of resistance, accomplished by firing past the flanks of the forward platoons, through gaps between the positions on the main line of resistance, and by overhead fire.

(2) To limit penetrations of the main line of resistance by covering avenues of approach into the company rear area by fire.

(3) To protect the flanks and rear of the company by fire from the original position of the support platoon or by occupying previously prepared supplementary positions.

(4) To counterattack in order to restore the main line of resistance in case of a limited enemy penetration. This counterattack by a unit as small as a platoon would usually be ordered only when the penetration is small, when light enemy fire is falling in the area, and when a concealed and covered route of approach to the line of departure of the counterattack exists. The counterattack by the support platoon is in the form of a mopping-up operation rather than a strong countereffort against the enemy. Usually the support platoon is much more effective as a depth unit limiting penetrations of the main line of resistance from prepared positions. The reserve of a higher echelon is committed if a strong counterattack is necessary.

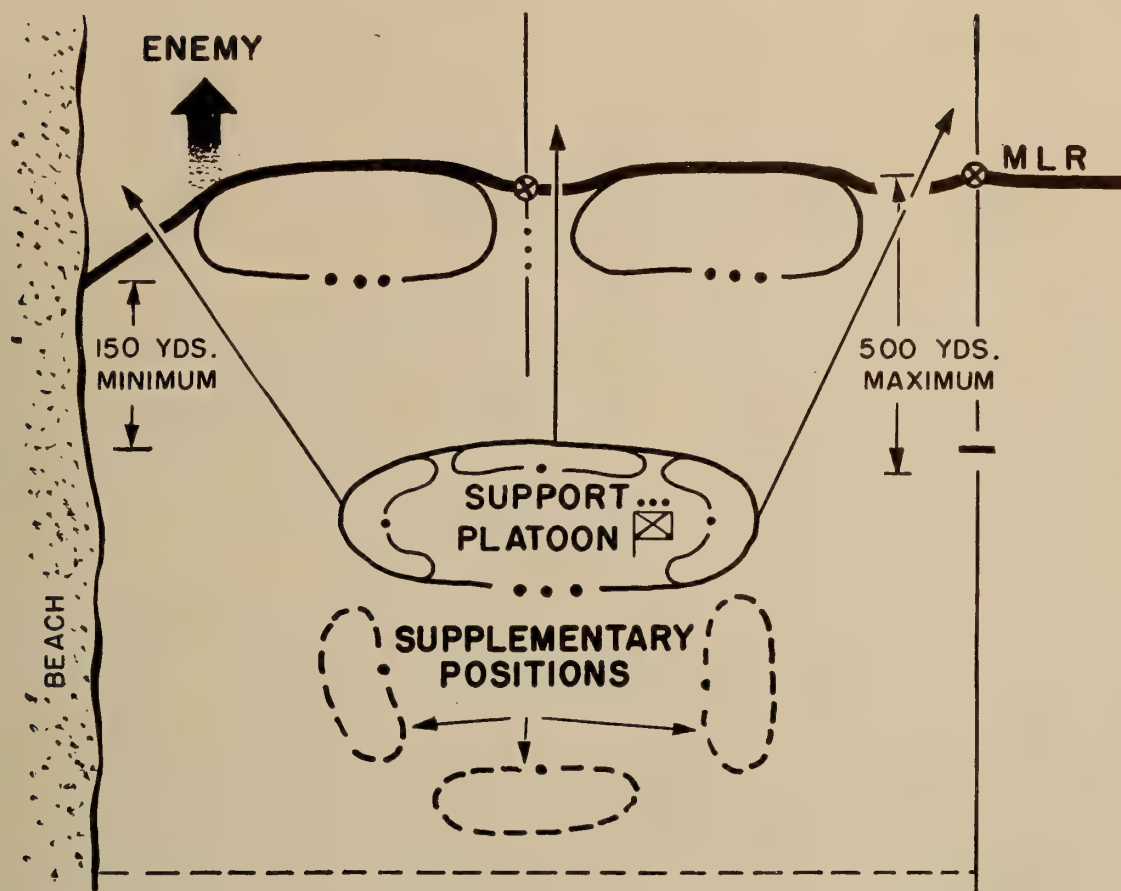


FIGURE 45.—Support platoon in defense.

SECTION XII

THE MACHINE GUN PLATOON IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-65	442
Missions.....	10-66	442
Selection of positions.....	10-67	443
Conduct of the defense.....	10-68	443
Fire control.....	10-69	446

10-65 GENERAL.—*a.* Machine guns are the backbone of the defense and their fire, combined and coordinated with that of other weapons, is employed to stop the enemy regardless of the direction of his attack. The following unique characteristics of the machine gun are the basis of its value as the most effective defensive weapon in the hands of the infantry:

(1) Large volume of fire, which can be readily applied.

(2) The suitability of its long narrow beaten zone for enfilade fire. (See Ch. 9, pars. 9-13f and 9-14a (4).)

(3) The ease with which the gun is concealed.

(4) A fixed mount which enables it to fire effectively at night and during any condition of visibility.

b. The machine-gun section is the fire unit. (See Ch. 9, Basic Combat Techniques.) Regardless of the nature of the mission, two guns (one section) are usually assigned the same mission.

10-66 MISSIONS.—Machine guns are employed throughout the defensive position. Various missions may be assigned to the machine-gun platoon:

a. Final protective line.—(1) As nearly as practicable, the machine guns of the front-line companies will be sited to fire interlocking bands of grazing fire across the front of the company. These guns provide the major portion of the final protective fires.

(2) Those guns assigned a final protective line mission may, in addition, be assigned a sector of fire, if the location of the firing position makes the assignment of a sector practicable.

b. Close support of the main line of resistance.—(1) When practical, a portion of the machine guns of a front-line company are placed in rear of the main line of resistance within the company defensive area and assigned the mission of providing close support. This close support mission is accomplished by siting guns to cover probable avenues of enemy approach into the position. In no event will final protective line missions be placed in jeopardy by the assignment of close support missions to too many machine guns of a front-line company.

(2) The principal source of guns in close support of the main line of resistance is the machine gun platoon of the reserve company. The employment of the reserve company guns on close support missions is generally the same as described in (1) above.

(3) Machine guns in close support of the main line of resistance may be assigned supplementary positions from which to check penetrations of the main line of resistance.

c. Provide depth to the defensive position.—Those machine guns of the reserve company that are not employed as close support to the main line of resistance are placed in depth within the battalion defensive area. These guns are sited to check deep penetrations.

d. Protect the flanks and rear.—Protection of the flanks and rear is a particularly important mission for machine guns when there is an open flank. Machine guns in close support of the main line of resistance and machine guns placed in depth to check deep penetrations will normally be assigned supplementary positions from which this mission can be accomplished.

e. Support counterattacks.—If a penetration is effected, the reserve company may be committed to counterattack. In this event, the machine gun platoon of the reserve company will constitute the principal source of close support. The principles for employing ma-

chine guns to support a counterattack are the same as those discussed in Section V, Machine Gun Platoon in Offensive Combat.

10-67 SELECTION OF POSITIONS.—

a. Accomplishment of the section mission is the primary consideration in selecting firing positions, but other factors must also be considered. Cover and concealment of the gun and its crew are essential if the gun is to remain in action, for the enemy will do everything possible to reduce machine guns early in the attack. The emplacements dug for the machine guns will provide for cover and concealment if properly prepared, but by intelligent use of natural terrain irregularities the labor and time necessary for this construction can be considerably reduced.

b. Consideration should be given to routes of ammunition supply to the gun positions. In a defensive situation, an initial supply will seldom present a problem. However, the initial supply may be consumed and resupply will necessitate covered routes of approach to the position.

c. Often fields of fire will have to be cleared. Care must be exercised that only enough is cleared to permit an unobstructed field of fire. The clearing of all foliage will reveal the position to the enemy. (See fig. 30.)

d. The two guns of a section should be at least 30 yards apart in order to reduce the effectiveness of hostile mortar and artillery fire.

10-68 CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. Immediate defense.—(1) The rifle company commander, upon capture of an objective, must

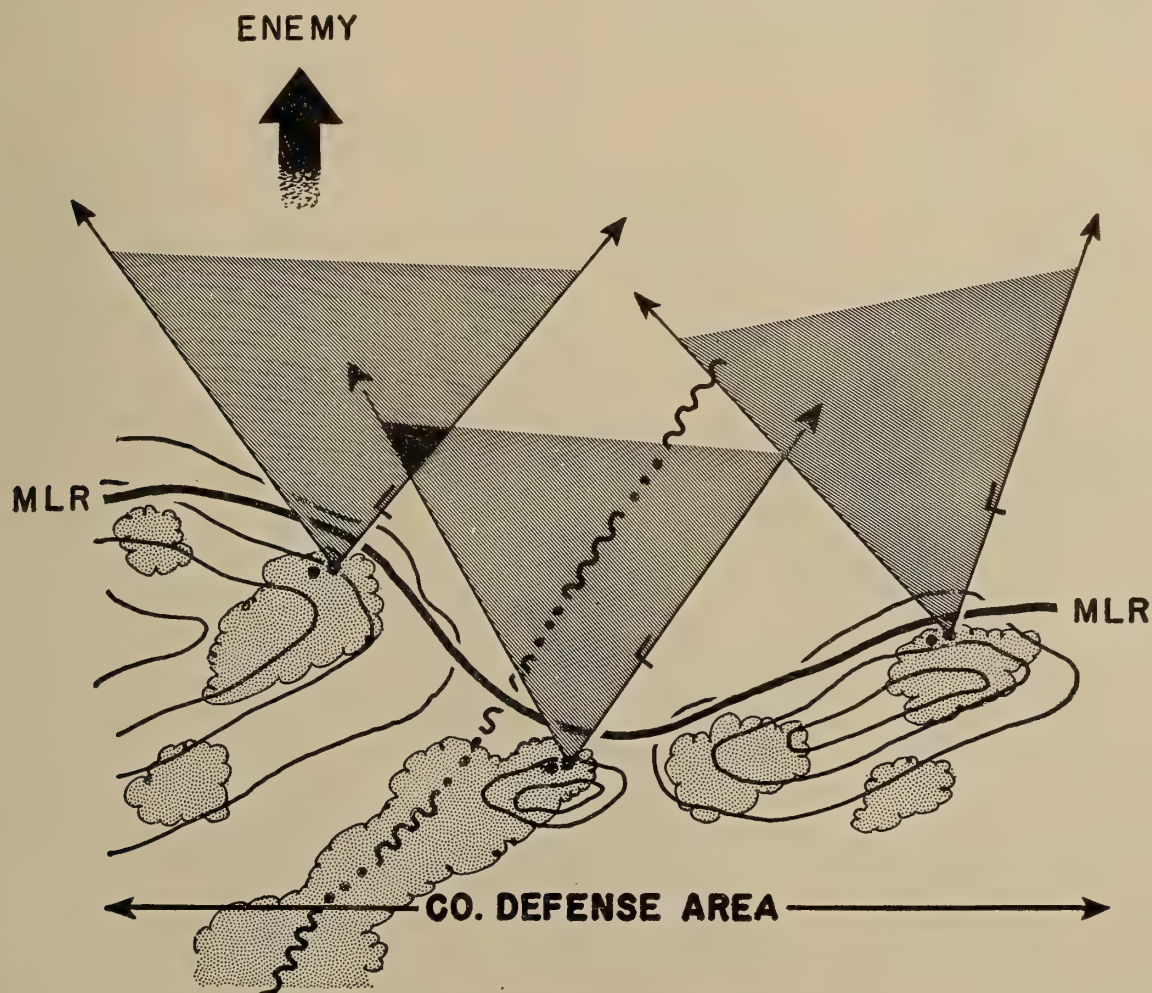


FIGURE 46.—First location of company machine guns—immediate defense.

promptly make and execute a plan of immediate defense for holding the position. The principal means for holding the captured position is the quickly developed fire power of machine guns.

(2) When an objective is taken, the company commander must immediately have the machine guns displace to a firing position on or near the objective. From these firing positions, the entire company front and flanks are covered by machine gun fire by the assignment of overlapping sectors of fire to each section. The firing positions are selected and missions assigned by the platoon commander in accord-

ance with the company commander's instructions.

(3) The result of the disposition of the machine guns, as shown in figure 46, is the ability of at least one section to engage any enemy counterattack. As quickly as practicable, however, the company commander improves the machine-gun fire plan by selecting new firing positions, if necessary, and by the assignment of final protective lines so that the entire company front is covered by interlocking bands of grazing fire.

(4) Figures 46 and 47 illustrate sound and

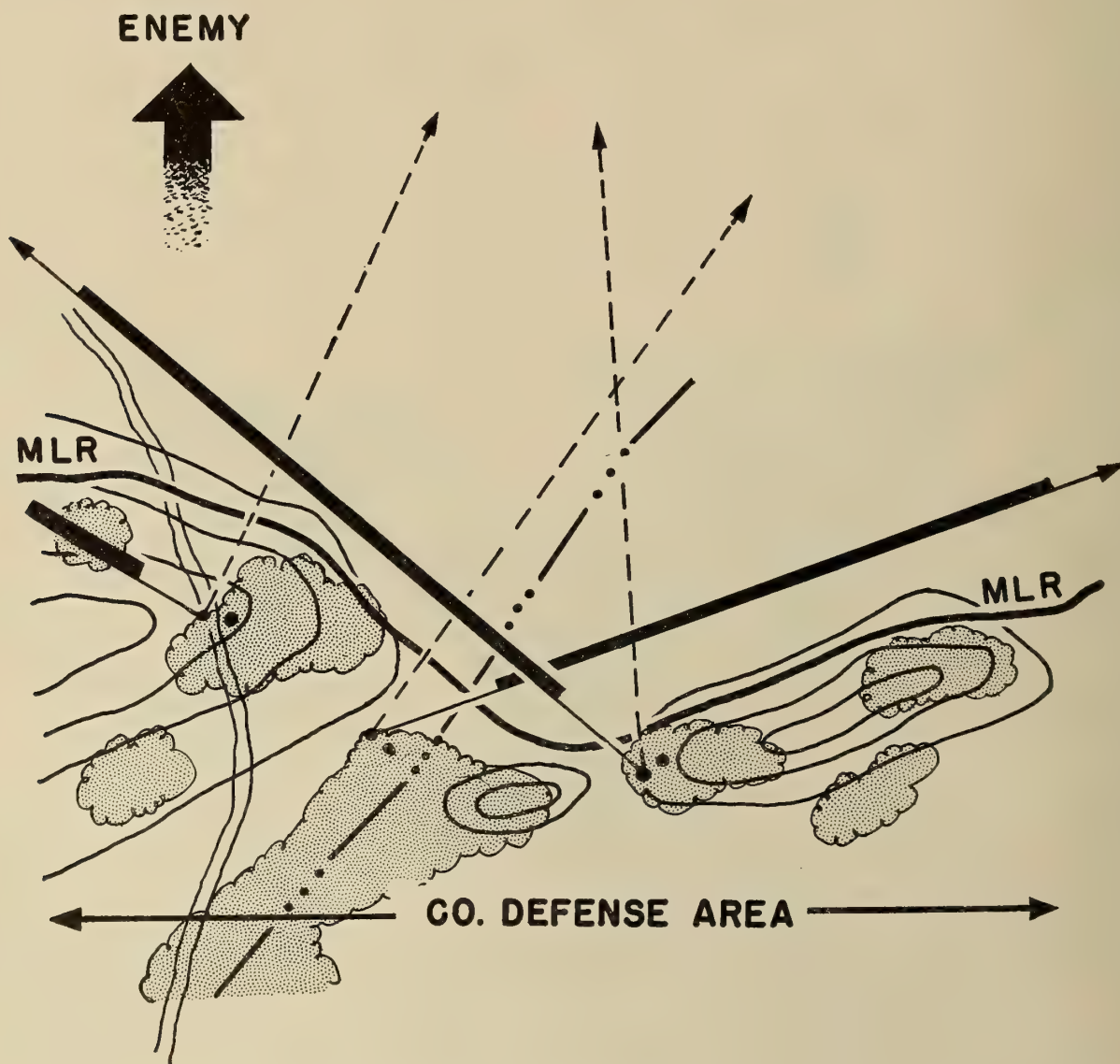


FIGURE 47.—Coordinated machine-gun fire plan covering company front with interlocking bands of grazing fire.

effective principles for employing the machine-gun platoon in an immediate defense. The result of coordination of machine-gun fire plans within a single company may, however, result in weak points at the company boundaries. This possible defect in the fire plan may be remedied by coordination of fire within battalions rather than companies.

(5) The machine-gun platoon of the reserve company in an immediate defense is employed in a manner consistent with the anticipated employment of the company. (See Sec. XIII.)

b. Strengthening of the position.—(1) If the captured position is to be held for an extended period, the immediate defense must, as soon as practicable, be developed into a more formidable type of hasty defense. The primary factors which will enable the position to be strengthened are:

(a) Time may be available for a reconnaissance by all commanders.

(b) The battalion commander may be able to assume control of all machine guns. The result of this control is a well-coordinated battalion fire plan. Fire is interchanged across boundaries, thereby eliminating any possibility of weak points in the defense at boundaries.

(c) Time may be available and the enemy situation may be such as to allow a more complete "digging in" and camouflaging of the position.

(d) Time may be available to formulate plans for reserve and/or support installations.

(2) The battalion fire plan, illustrated by Figure 48 is characterized by a system of interlocking bands of grazing fire and a mutual exchange of fires across boundaries. Figure 48 shows a portion of the guns of the front line

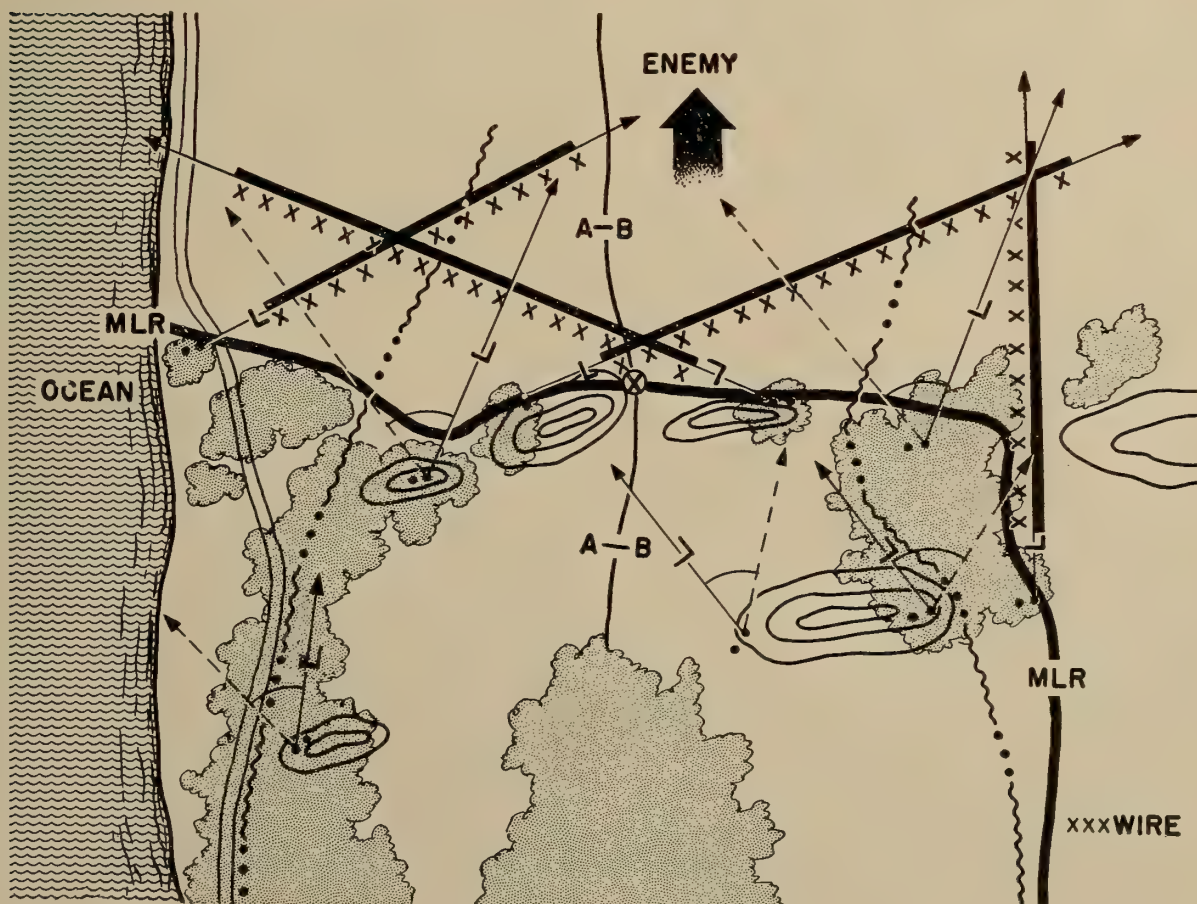


FIGURE 48.—Battalion machine gun fire plan.

companies in support of the main line of resistance, covering possible avenues of enemy approach into the position. The machine guns of the reserve company are placed in depth within the battalion defensive area, prepared to check deep penetrations. Guns in close support of the main line of resistance and the reserve company guns should have prepared supplementary positions from which to protect the flanks and rear. Tactical wire (entanglements) is placed inside of the final protective lines.

(3) The responsibility for selecting general firing positions and the assignment of missions is that of the battalion commander. This information is communicated to the companies in a battalion defense order. The company commanders in turn make a reconnaissance and coordinate the disposition of rifle platoons with that of the machine guns. This information is communicated to the machine gun platoon commander in a company defense order. The platoon commander makes a detailed reconnaissance after which he issues the platoon defense order. This order must include the following information to his subordinates:

(a) Primary firing positions.

(b) Direction of the final protective lines.

(c) Sectors of fire.

(d) Elements of fire control.

(e) Organization of the ground, to include clearing fields of fire, construction of emplacements, cover for personnel, and priority of work.

(4) As soon as practicable, the machine gun platoon commander should prepare an overlay of his fire plan for submission to the company commander. This overlay should show firing positions, final protective lines to include any gaps or dead spaces, and sectors of fire.

(5) *Tactical and protective wire.*—(a) If available, tactical wire is placed on the inside of the final protective lines. (See fig. 48.) This wire is usually strung by the rifle units, but the machine gun platoon commander must check its direction to insure that it is generally parallel to the final protective lines.

(b) Protective wire may be placed around the gun position to prevent the enemy's approach to hand grenade range.

10-69 FIRE CONTROL.—a. Fire control of machine guns includes all operations connected with preparation and actual application

of fire on a target. It implies the ability of the leader to open fire at the instant he desires, adjust the fire of his gun upon the target, regulate the rate of fire, shift fire from one target to another, and cease firing.

b. The ability of a leader to exercise proper fire control depends primarily on the discipline and correct technical training of the gun crews. Failure to exercise proper fire control results in danger to friendly troops, loss of surprise effect, premature disclosure of position, misapplication of fire on unimportant targets, loss of time in securing adjustment, and waste of ammunition.

c. The machine gun platoon commander must coordinate with the rifle platoon commanders to insure that the fire of the machine guns will not be masked by rifle units and vice versa. Arrangements must likewise be made to provide rifle protection for the machine gun sections.

d. The distance between the sections in a defensive situation requires that detailed fire control instructions be issued to the sections before the defensive battle commences. Once the battle begins, subsequent control by the leader is limited to the use of arm and hand signals, personal contact with subordinates using the existing system of connecting trenches, and prearranged signals (pyrotechnics for example).

e. A machine gun section whose primary mission is firing a final protective line, may engage targets of opportunity in an assigned sector of fire on the initiative of the section leader. The section leader must be ordered, or standard operating procedure be established to the effect that no target will be engaged at ranges in excess of 500 yards. Since the final protective line mission is so important to a successful defense, final protective line guns will not open fire on targets of opportunity in their sector of fire, if the guns may thereby be spotted and hence destroyed by enemy fire.

f. (1) Final protective line fires are usually called for by the company commanders. The battalion commander will designate the signal (usually a pyrotechnic signal) for each company on which machine guns commence firing on final protective lines. Only those guns open

fire whose final protective fires protect the rifle unit calling for such fire.

(2) During periods of good visibility the section leader determines the rate and duration of fire. During periods of reduced visibility the company commander or battalion commander specifies the rate and duration of fire. The usual rate of section fire on final protective lines is rapid for two minutes (125 rounds per minute) followed by medium (75 rounds per minute) until ordered to cease firing. The section rate of fire is usually maintained by both guns, each firing at a slower rate of fire and firing alternating bursts.

(3) Dead spaces and gaps will exist in final protective lines unless the defensive position is on perfectly flat terrain. These gaps and dead spaces must be covered by the fire of other weapons organic to or available on call to the company or battalion.

(4) *Use of tracer.*—Tracer ammunition should not be used for firing final protective lines. The use of tracer on this mission serves no purpose. Its use has the disadvantage of disclosing the firing position to enemy observers.

g. Guns in close support of the main line of resistance open fire on targets of opportunity on the initiative of section leaders. The maxi-

mum range at which a target will be engaged is 500 yards. These guns will open fire on all targets of opportunity and will depend upon cover, concealment, and frequent movement to alternate positions to keep the guns from being destroyed or neutralized by enemy fire.

h. Movement of guns to supplementary positions will be made on direct orders from the platoon commander who may get instructions from the company or battalion commander. Exceptionally, the section leader may, in an emergency such as a flank attack, move to a supplementary position in the event the platoon commander cannot be contacted immediately.

i. Movement of guns to alternate positions will usually be made on the initiative of the section leader, since he can most accurately judge when such a movement is necessary to avoid destruction.

j. Disabled guns are replaced from rear to front; i. e., final protective line guns are replaced by guns in close support of the main line of resistance, and close support guns are replaced by reserve guns.

k. For conduct of section fire, see Chapter 9, Basic Combat Techniques.

l. For range cards, see Chapter 9, Basic Combat Techniques.

SECTION XIII

THE RIFLE COMPANY IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-70	448
Organization of the defense.....	10-71	448
Conduct of the defense.....	10-72	453
Reserve company.....	10-73	454

10-70 GENERAL.—*a. Company as part of a battalion.*—The rifle company usually defends as part of the naval landing party battalion. The battalion assigns a defense area to the company either on the main line of resistance (front line rifle company) or in depth behind the forward company defense areas (reserve rifle company).

b. Company as an independent unit.—A company operating as an independent unit organizes a defense similar to that of a front line rifle company of the battalion.

c. Front line company defense areas.—(1) *Frontage on the main line of resistance.*—The main line of resistance is located by the battalion commander usually on the forward or reverse slopes of hills, ridges, etc., or on a combination of both. A frontage on the main line of resistance is assigned each forward rifle company. In open terrain with good fields of fire the maximum frontage given to the company does not exceed 1,000 yards. The maximum frontage given to the company in wooded or brush-covered terrain with poor fields of fire does not exceed 500 yards.

(2) *Boundaries and limiting points.*—(a) The width of the front line company defense area is defined by boundaries dividing the company defense area from those of adjacent units. The boundary lines are established to include tactical localities such as hills, woods, etc., in one company's defense area. Also, boundaries definitely include or exclude avenues of approach into the battalion main line of resistance such as valleys, draws, etc., thus assigning the responsibility for the defense of such

avenues of approach to a specific front line company.

(b) The intersections of the company boundaries with the main line of resistance are called limiting points, forward of which the company commander must coordinate the fire of his company with that of adjacent units.

(3) *Depth.*—The depth of the company defense area will usually not exceed 500 yards (maximum effective range of rifle fire). The front line company depth often depends on the location of the reserve company position.

d. Actions of the company commander.—(1) *General.*—In a hasty defense, the company commander usually receives the battalion order for the defense at a central point in the battalion defense area. His company, however, may be waiting in an assembly area to the rear, may be moving up, or may be already in the company defense area.

(2) *Troop leading steps.*—The troop leading steps of the company commander are the same as those of the platoon commander in defense. (See Sec. XI.)

10-71 ORGANIZATION OF THE DEFENSE.—*a. Tactical organization.*—(1) *Distribution of platoons.*—(a) The company commander usually distributes his platoons, two forward on the main line of resistance and one in support behind the forward platoons. However, when the company is defending an unusually wide front, three rifle platoons may be placed on the main line of resistance with none in support.

(b) When one of the company's flanks is open (unprotected), the company commander distributes his platoons so as to protect the open flank. (See fig. 50.)

(2) *Front line platoons.*—(a) In the normal situation of two platoons forward and one in support, the company commander divides the

company front between the two front line platoons and assigns a defensive area to each platoon. The width of each front line platoon frontage will depend largely on the fields of fire available forward of the platoon defensive position. A platoon defending in the woods, for instance, would be assigned a relatively narrow front whereas a platoon defending in open, gently sloping terrain, would be assigned a relatively wide frontage. The maximum frontage assigned a rifle platoon does not exceed 500 yards under the most ideal conditions. In each platoon defensive area the company commander includes definite tactical localities such as small hills, ridges, woods, etc. Any avenues of approach into the front of the company position are definitely assigned to a specific front line platoon.

(b) The company commander designates the general positions to be occupied along the main line of resistance by the front line rifle platoons. Otherwise, the platoon commanders organize the defense of their respective platoon areas.

(c) The depth of a front line platoon defensive area is usually limited by the location of the support platoon. 150 to 300 yards is the normal depth of a platoon area.

(d) The front line platoons do **not** attempt to physically occupy all of their defensive areas. Gaps between platoons and between elements of one platoon are covered by fire.

(e) The forward rifle platoon on an open flank has its flank drawn back so as to protect the main line of resistance. (See fig. 50.)

(3) *Support platoon.*—(a) The company commander selects a position for the support platoon from which it can limit enemy penetrations of the main line of resistance. The support platoon is so located that it covers, by fire, dangerous avenues of approach leading into the company rear area from the main line of resistance.

(b) Whenever possible, the support platoon assists, by fire, the front line platoons in the defense of the main line of resistance. To accomplish this mission the support platoon brings fire to bear forward of the main line of resistance by firing through gaps between or on the flanks of the front line platoons, or by delivering overhead fire. Therefore, a position

within 500 yards of the main line of resistance is selected.

(c) The support platoon, however, is located no closer than 150 yards to the rearmost elements of the front line platoons to avoid enemy fire directed at the main line of resistance and to give depth to the company position.

(d) 1. Another important mission of the support platoon is to protect the rear and flanks of the company. Whenever possible, this mission is accomplished from the original defensive position. However, if the terrain makes this impossible, the support platoon prepares supplementary positions protecting the flanks and rear of the company area.

2. In order to protect an open flank the support platoon is so placed that it may cover the open flank by fire and at the same time limit penetrations of the forward platoon defense areas. Supplementary positions are constructed to further protect the open flank.

(e) A counterattack by a force smaller than a company is **not** attempted under normal circumstances. However, the support platoon may be used under unusual conditions to counterattack, such as a limited penetration by small numbers of the enemy.

(f) The support platoon is kept intact defending the most important tactical locality in the company rear area (a large hill or woods, for instance), or the support platoon is separated, each squad defending a particular avenue of approach or small tactical locality.

(g) The support platoon prepares defensive positions similar to those of the front line platoons. However, the area covered by troops of the support platoon will generally be larger than the corresponding areas of the front line rifle platoons.

(4) *Security.*—(a) The company commander provides local security for his company at all times. He establishes outguards and patrols no more than 400 yards forward of the main line of resistance to give warning of enemy approach. Depending on the terrain forward of the main line of resistance and particularly the observation available, two or more outguards are established of fire-team strength or less and placed at intervals across the company front.

(b) When necessary, patrols operate between the outguards particularly in open ground at

night and in heavy woods or brush in daylight.

(c) The location of the combat outpost or other security sent out by battalion is given by the battalion commander, thus enabling the company commander to properly place his local security and to warn his men of the presence of friendly troops to the front.

(d) In order to protect an open flank, the company commander posts local security elements covering that flank and the rear. Thus timely warning will be given of any hostile envelopment attempt. (See fig. 50.)

(5) *Company observation and command posts.*—(a) The company commander selects a position for his company observation post in the vicinity of the main line of resistance. From the observation post the company commander is able to see as much as possible of his company front, as the observation post is

the location from which he will conduct his defense. In the well dug-in and concealed observation post, the company commander has all available means of communications for contact with the rifle platoons and the battalion commander. Although good observation is the prime factor in the selection of the position, concealment and covered routes of communication are extremely desirable.

(b) The company commander selects a position for the company command post. This position possesses cover, concealment, and covered routes of communication. It is located no closer than 150 yards to positions on the main line of resistance in order to avoid enemy fire. By locating the company command post behind or within the support platoon position, advantage is taken of rifle protection. The command post is the center of the company communica-

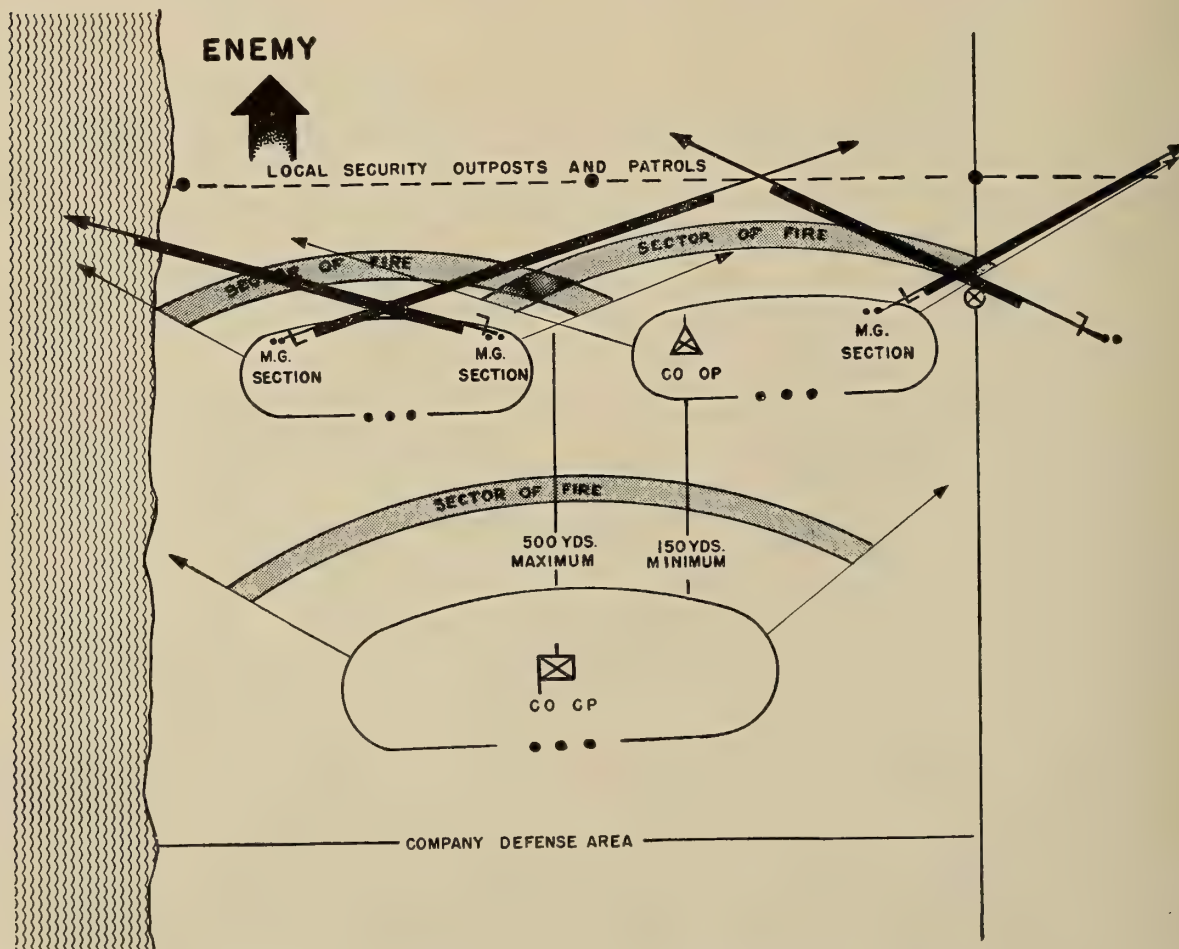


FIGURE 49.—Distribution of platoons and platoon sectors of fire, when company's flanks are protected.

tion, supply, evacuation, and administration and is usually controlled by the company executive officer during combat.

b. Company fire plan.—(1) *General.*—The company commander decides upon a company fire plan. This fire plan includes the fires of all three rifle platoons. In a hasty defense the mission and locations of the machine guns are assigned by the battalion commander. The fire plan is built around and integrated with the fires of the machine guns in the company area both on the main line of resistance and in depth.

(2) *Front line platoons.*—The fire plan for the two front line platoons must provide for the coordination of fire with units on the company's flanks, for the covering by fire of the boundary between platoons (platoons' sectors of fire overlap), for the covering by fire of all avenues of enemy approach into the company position on the main line of resistance, for the covering of any dead space or gaps in the final protective lines of the machine guns on the

main line of resistance, and for the close protection of the machine guns on the main line of resistance. Especially in situations where gaps exist between platoon defensive positions and/or between the company's flanks and the flanks of adjacent units, care must be exercised by the company commander that all such gaps are well covered by fire. Also fire must be planned to cover an open flank.

(3) *Support platoon.*—(a) The support platoon must be able to cover by fire dangerous avenues of approach leading into the company rear area from the main line of resistance. When possible, the support platoon assists the front line platoons in the defense of the main line of resistance. To accomplish this mission the support platoon brings fire to bear forward of the main line of resistance by firing through gaps between or on the flanks of the front line platoons, or by delivering overhead fire.

(b) The support platoon covers by fire an open flank, tying in its fire with that of the

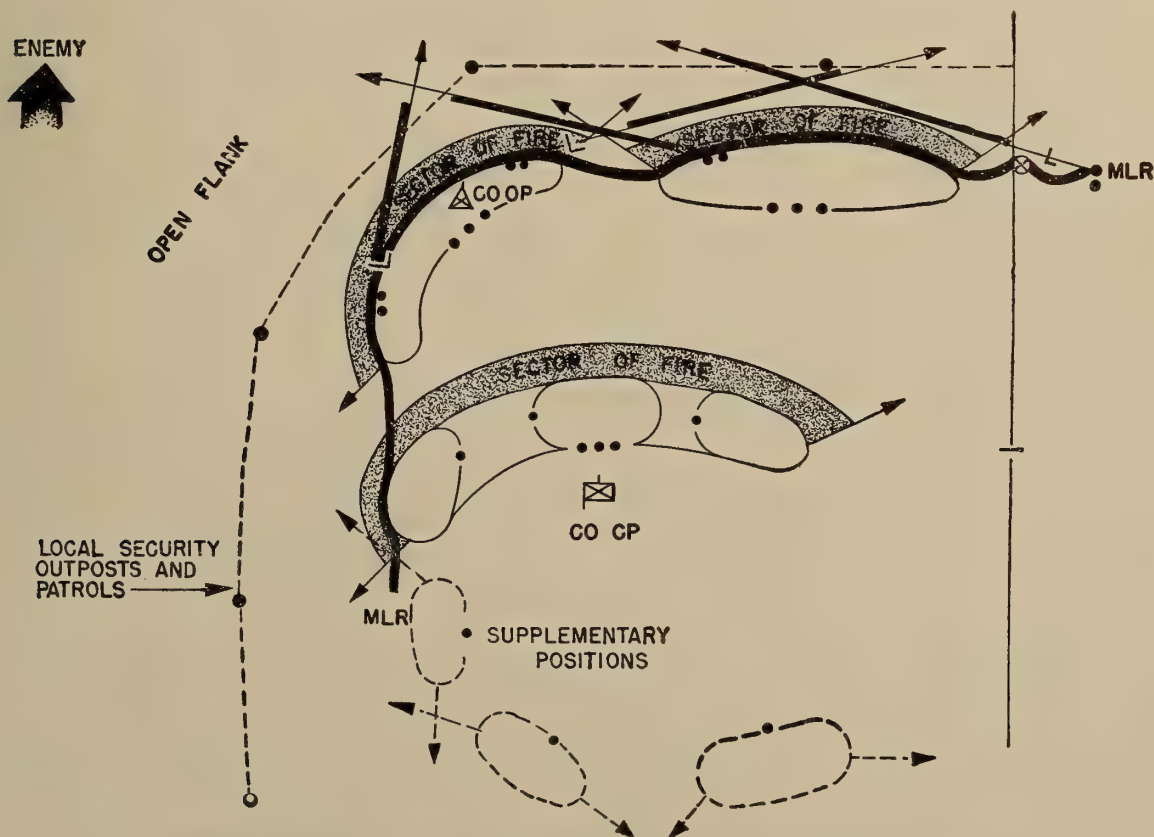


FIGURE 50.—Distribution of platoons and platoon sectors of fire, when one of the company's flanks is open.

forward platoon on the open flank.

(4) *Machine guns.*—(See Sec. XII.)

c. Ground organization.—(1) *Priority.*—The company commander decides on the priority of ground organization, if not already specified by the battalion commander. The usual priority is:

(a) Clearing fields of fire.

(b) Digging foxholes and emplacements.

(c) Constructing obstacles.

(d) Constructing company command post and observation post.

(e) The digging of communication trenches if required.

(2) Camouflage measures begin on arrival at the position and continue as long as the position is occupied.

(3) *Details.*—(See Sec. IX.)

d. Reverse slope defense.—When the main line of resistance runs across the reverse slopes of hills, ridges, etc., the company organizes its defense in the same basic manner as when the forward slope is occupied. Certain special considerations must be borne in mind, however.

(1) *Importance of crest of high ground.*—The crest of the high ground forward of the reverse slope position must be controlled by the fire of the defending forces; for if the enemy can gain a foothold on the crest, the reverse slope position might become untenable.

(2) *Forward combat groups.*—(a) To protect the crest against all but a strong enemy attack and to give warning of the enemy's approach, strong local security, called forward combat groups, is sent forward by the company commander to occupy the forward slope of the high ground. Four or more of these combat

groups, each of fire-team strength, are placed on the forward slope at intervals across the company front and are reinforced by two or more machine guns. The mission of the forward combat groups is to delay and disorganize the enemy and, if possible, prevent him from occupying the crest, but to withdraw to the main line of resistance on the reverse slope before the enemy can assault their positions. The forward combat groups are usually taken from the support platoon.

(3) *Front line platoons.*—(a) The front line platoons organize their position on the reverse slope in the same manner as on the forward slope. The front line platoon positions are no closer than 100 yards to the crest and not further than 500 yards from the crest.

(b) The fire of the front line platoons covers the crest and the ground between the main line of resistance and the crest.

(4) *Support platoon.*—The support platoon occupies, when possible, the forward slope of the next elevation to the rear. Wherever the support platoon is located, however, it should assist the forward platoons by firing on the crest forward of the main line of resistance.

e. Night defense.—Specific measures taken by the company to strengthen the defense at night are:

(1) Place small units from the support platoon in gaps between defensive positions on the main line of resistance normally covered by observation and fire only, or patrol these gaps.

(2) Draw in local security closer to the main line of resistance, and increase the number of outguards and patrols comprising the local security.

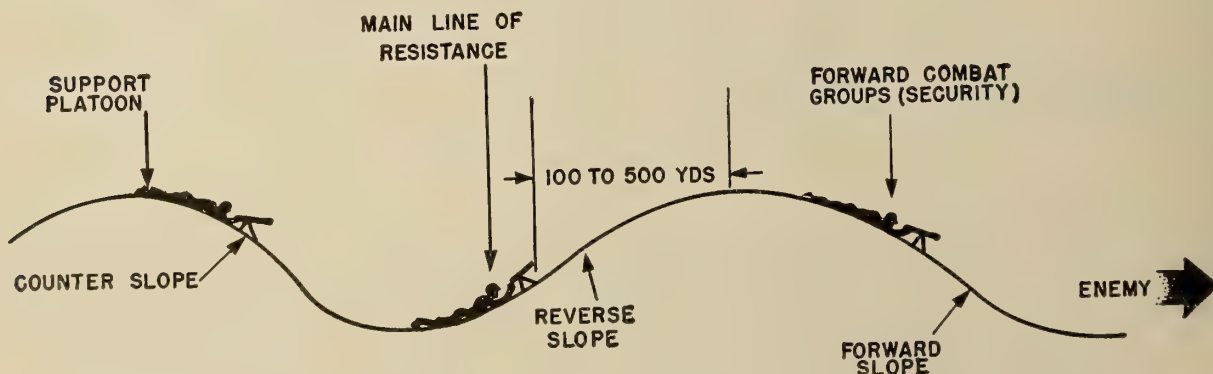


FIGURE 51.—Defense of a reverse slope (cross section).

(3) In selecting defensive positions at night, consider the danger of silhouette against the skyline and the advantage gained by thus silhouetting the attacking enemy (especially applicable to defending patrols and outposts).

(4) Use trip wires, tin cans, etc., to give warning of enemy approach.

(5) Use illuminating grenades, and naval gunfire flares in case of enemy attack; exercise care, however, to illuminate the enemy rather than the friendly defensive positions; also, use illumination sparingly unless actually under enemy attack.

10-72 CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. General.—In order to conduct the defense successfully, the company commander first prepares and organizes his defensive position as thoroughly as possible in the time available.

b. Warning of enemy attack.—The company will be warned of the enemy attack by the combat outpost and/or local security, which withdraws to the main line of resistance when the enemy attacks in force. As soon as the advancing enemy is sighted to the company front, or open flank, the company commander notifies battalion immediately of the location, size, and direction of advance of the enemy force.

c. Communications in defense.—Communications are vital to a successful conduct of the defense and all available are used fully by the company commander. Runners are used to carry messages and visual signalling may be used.

d. Once the enemy has advanced within 500 yards of the main line of resistance, the company commander insures that the riflemen and automatic riflemen on the main line of resistance and from the support platoon, where possible, open fire at profitable targets. The depth machine guns in the company area and certain specified machine guns in close support of the main line of resistance also open fire when suitable enemy targets appear.

e. Close-in defensive fires.—If, in spite of defensive fires, the enemy continues to advance in force towards the main line of resistance, the company commander calls for final protective fires. Normally, the signal for final protective fires will be given by the company commander as the enemy enters the zone of the final pro-

TECTIVE line fires of the machine guns on the main line of resistance. The surprise fire of the final protective line machine guns should have a deterring effect on the advancing enemy. Also, the riflemen and automatic riflemen on the main line of resistance cover their assigned sectors of fire. Depth machine guns, riflemen, and automatic riflemen from the support platoon fire wherever possible to assist the units on the main line of resistance. The company commander must check to ascertain that all weapons are firing that should be firing and that the proper target areas are being covered. He must take prompt action to correct any major faults in the firing by communicating directly with the weapon or unit concerned. As soon as the enemy attack has been repulsed, the company commander orders the final protective fires to cease. Other company weapons will continue to fire on targets of opportunity but at a reduced rate of fire.

f. Enemy penetrations.—If, in spite of the heavy final protective fires, the enemy continues to advance and penetrates a portion of the company main line of resistance, the company commander uses his initiative to the utmost. He shifts fires into the penetrated area, but without undue weakening of that portion of the main line of resistance still occupied by his troops and still under enemy attack. The fires of the support platoon are concentrated on the penetrated area. Fires of depth machine guns are also shifted if necessary. The company commander insures that every unit in the company holds its position. The penetration is contained and not allowed to increase in size. Therefore, no withdrawal by units of a front line rifle company is permissible without orders from battalion. The company commander makes every effort to drive the enemy from his lines by fire, and keeps battalion informed of the situation.

g. Support of counterattack.—If the enemy is contained, but cannot be driven back by fire alone, the battalion commander may decide to counterattack with his reserve company. Supporting fires of the front line company will greatly assist the reserve in its counterattack. The company commander orders that supporting fires be given to the counterattacking unit in accordance with the battalion counterattack plan.

h. Penetration in adjacent areas.—(1) If the enemy penetrates the defense area of an adjacent unit and threatens the company's flank, the company commander shifts his fires to protect his threatened flank. If possible, he receives permission from battalion or the adjacent company commander before firing into an adjacent company area. It may be necessary to move the support platoon to previously prepared supplementary positions protecting the company flanks. The company commander makes and executes this decision in time to prevent the enemy from overrunning the company flank and rear.

(2) If the enemy advances past the flank of the forward rifle platoon on the company's open flank, the company commander orders elements of the support platoon to occupy supplementary positions protecting the flank and rear. Such an order is given in time to allow the support platoon to reach and occupy the new position before the enemy can attack in force.

i. Supply.—Added to the tactical handling of his troops and weapons, the front-line company commander has the problem of supply and evacuation during the enemy attack. By ascertaining that large amounts of all types of ammunition are available on the company position prior to the enemy attack, the company commander can save himself much trouble and possible disaster.

10-73 RESERVE COMPANY.—*a. Mission of increasing depth of battalion area.*—Just as the support platoon organizes positions extending the depth of the rifle company, so the reserve company organizes positions extending the depth of the battalion. The reserve company is given an area to defend plus additional missions. Frequently, the key terrain feature of the battalion defensive area will be located in the rear of the battalion area, in which case the position organized by the reserve company will provide for defense of that key terrain feature. Platoon defense areas of the reserve company are located within supporting distance (500 yards) of the rearward limits of the front-line rifle companies. These areas should be sufficiently far to the rear (150 yards) so that they will not be included in the dispersion of fire directed at friendly units to their front. When disposed in

this manner, the reserve company, within its own area, organizes a defense similar to that of the front-line companies, with the exception that all three platoons may organize abreast with no support platoon in depth. Similarly, fires are coordinated with the machine guns from the reserve company located by the battalion commander within the reserve company area, by which means penetrations into the battalion rear area are checked or prevented. Such coordination also assures protection of the machine guns within the company area by riflemen of the reserve company.

b. Mission of protecting flanks of battalion.—The reserve company is also called upon to protect the flanks of the battalion, just as the support platoon protects the flanks of the forward companies. It is desirable that the reserve company accomplish this mission from its original defensive position in depth. When there are no adjacent friendly units on the battalion flanks, the reserve company takes particular measures to organize and protect those exposed areas. Where the terrain necessitates both prepared positions in depth and supplementary flank positions, the reserve company may remain mobile, prepared to assume either position, depending on which is threatened first by the enemy. Such a mobile status, however, would have, as a prerequisite, a covered, concealed assembly area, with covered routes of approach to both of the prepared positions. Enemy fire may make movement of the reserve company dangerous and extremely difficult.

c. Mission of counterattacking.—(1) The reserve company may be employed in counterattack to restore a portion of the battalion defensive position or to eject the enemy from a certain area. The battalion order for the defense should state the assumed penetrations, in order of priority, which are indicated by the dangerous approaches into the area. Against these assumed penetrations, counterattack plans are made. The preparation of these counterattack plans for the battalion is the function of the reserve company commander.

(2) The reserve company should have covered routes of approach to the line of departure for each counterattack plan. In executing a counterattack, the reserve company will usually be confined to action within the battalion area.

However, should the use of routes of approach through an adjacent battalion area be necessary, coordination with that battalion commander during the planning stage and at the time of execution of the counterattack must be made.

(3) Except on orders of higher authority, the objective of a counterattack by the reserve company rarely extends beyond the battalion defense area. The enemy is usually not pursued, except by fire, beyond the main line of resistance.

(4) The reserve company commander should include fire missions for the machine guns in his counterattack plans, and consultation with machine gun officers for this purpose will be necessary. The object of such fires is the checking of the penetration by concentrating fire at the base of the penetration. Firing in this area serves the double purpose of interfering with enemy reinforcement of the area penetrated and of offering less possibility of endangering friendly troops. The aim of the counterattack is to strike the enemy on the flank or shoulder as he enters the position, thus hitting him in his most vulnerable area at the same time when his own disorganization is at a maximum. Upon completion of his plans for the counterattack, the reserve company commander submits his plans, together with an overlay or sketch showing the contemplated use of the supporting weapons, to the battalion commander for approval. When the plans are approved, the forward companies are given the details of the plans, and if time permits, a rehearsal is carried out.

(5) The following information is included in the counterattack plan:

- (a) Location of assembly area for company prior to moving to the line of departure.
- (b) Route to the line of departure.
- (c) Location of the line of departure.
- (d) Formation from assembly area to line of departure.
- (e) Objective of counterattack.
- (f) Scheme of maneuver.
- (g) Preparatory fires of supporting weapons.
- (h) Signal to lift preparatory fires.
- (i) Subsequent supporting fires.

(6) If more than one counterattack is planned, they are given appropriate distinguishing designations, such as Plan Able or Plan Baker, and put into execution upon order of the battalion commander. The battalion commander does not ordinarily commit his reserve company until efforts at reducing the penetration by fire from the remaining weapons surrounding the penetration have been unsuccessful, and until it becomes obvious that a counterattack is required. Once the order is given, however, the counterattack is conducted without further hesitation. Speed, energy, and determination are essential. A sudden and vigorous assault from the flank, delivered at just the right moment (when the enemy is reorganizing) will often succeed where a slower, more ponderous movement would prove more costly or fail entirely. Promptness and vigor of execution, detailed planning, and familiarity with those plans, are important elements in the counterattack.

d. Mission of establishing combat outpost.—The reserve company, or a portion thereof, is frequently assigned the mission of establishing the battalion combat outpost. For details of the combat outpost see Chapter 8.

SECTION XIV

THE NAVAL LANDING PARTY BATTALION IN DEFENSIVE COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-74	456
Organization of the defense.....	10-75	456
Conduct of the defense.....	10-76	458

10-74 GENERAL.—a. Battalion defense area.—(1) The size and location of the defense area depend upon the mission of the battalion, the terrain, the situation of enemy forces, and the situation of friendly forces. Only portions of the defense are physically occupied by troops and weapons, although the entire area must be defended by the battalion. The unoccupied portions of the defense area are defended by the fire and/or maneuver of the troops and weapons occupying defensive positions within the area.

(2) In open terrain with good fields of fire, the maximum width of a battalion defense area does not exceed 2,000 yards. The maximum width of a battalion defense area in wooded or brush-covered terrain with poor fields of fire does not exceed 1,000 yards. The depth of the battalion defense area does not usually exceed 1,400 yards.

b. Battalion commander's reconnaissance.—Whenever time permits, the battalion commander, accompanied by certain members of his staff, makes a personal reconnaissance of the battalion defense area. When time is limited, a map study may supplement or take the place of a reconnaissance.

10-75 ORGANIZATION OF THE DEFENSE.—a. Tactical organization.—(1) *Selection of the main line of resistance.*—(a) The basis of the battalion defensive position is the main line of resistance, immediately forward of which are concentrated the strongest fires of the battalion and through which the enemy will not be allowed to penetrate. As the main line of resistance is a line joining the forward edges of the most advanced defensive positions, the battalion commander, in effect, chooses the most

advanced positions to be occupied by his rifle companies. The main line of resistance, in general, and the most advanced positions, in particular, are selected to take advantage of natural defensive strength.

(b) The main line of resistance should be an irregular rather than a straight line to facilitate the development of flanking fires and to conceal its trace. However, deep salients or reentrants should be avoided.

(c) Depending on the battalion commander's evaluation of the terrain, the main line of resistance may run along the forward slope of hills, ridges, etc., along the reverse slope, or along both.

(d) 1. When the battalion is operating alone with no friendly units on its flanks, the main line of resistance includes the primary positions protecting the battalion flanks as well as the forward primary positions facing the front.

2. When the enemy situation is unknown, the battalion commander may extend the main line of resistance completely around the battalion defense area with primary positions defending against attack from all directions. (See figs. 52, 53, 54, and 55.)

(2) *Distribution of companies.*—(a) The tactical organization of a front-line battalion in defense usually consists of three company defense areas, two forward bordering on the main line of resistance and one in depth. All three are mutually supporting.

(b) When the enemy situation is unknown, a battalion operating alone may distribute its companies so as to form a perimeter or all-around defense. Each company organizes a defense area on the main line of resistance defending against enemy attack from a particular direction. (See fig. 55.)

(3) *Forward company defense areas.*—(a) *Frontage and depth.*—The battalion commander assigns a defense area to each front line com-

pany, dividing the main line of resistance and the forward portion of the battalion defense area between the two companies. The frontage assigned each company on the main line of resistance is dictated largely by the fields of fire existing forward of the company position. The maximum frontage assigned a forward rifle company under the most ideal conditions does not exceed 1,000 yards. The depth of the front line company positions normally does not exceed 500 yards, the maximum effective range of rifle fire.

(b) *Boundary.*—The boundary line between companies is fixed so as to avoid, as far as practicable, the division of responsibility for the defense of key terrain features and critical avenues of approach. Company boundary lines are extended forward of the main line of resistance for at least 500 yards and to the rear to the limit of the company defense area. The organization of the forward company defense area is covered in Section XIII.

(4) *Reserve company position.*—(a) The battalion commander selects the position to be occupied by the reserve company. Normally, the position selected possesses the maximum natural defensive strength, at the same time allowing the reserve company to limit penetrations of the main line of resistance and to support the forward company defense areas by fire. The key terrain feature in the battalion area will often be occupied and defended by the reserve company. The reserve company position, if possible, is within the maximum effective range of rifle fire (500 yards) of the support echelons of the forward rifle companies. It should be no less than 150 yards to the supporting elements of the forward rifle companies, thus giving the reserve protection from enemy fire falling on the forward areas and giving depth to the defense.

(b) When one or both of the battalion flanks is open, some elements of the reserve company are assigned positions protecting the open flank or flanks. In addition, supplementary positions are chosen for the remaining elements of the reserve company (elements which have primary positions supporting the forward rifle companies) further protecting the exposed flank or flanks. (See figs. 53 and 54.)

(c) When the battalion adopts an all-around

defense with all three companies on the main line of resistance, there is, in effect, no reserve company. However, when the enemy does attack, the unengaged company or companies is considered the reserve.

(5) *Battalion installations.*—The battalion commander selects the battalion observation posts, command post, aid stations, and dump.

(a) *Observation posts.*—1. *Location.*—The battalion commander selects observation posts from which he will supervise the conduct of the defense. Normally, one observation post is selected on or near the main line of resistance from which as much of the battalion front as possible can be observed. Supplementary observation posts are selected when visibility of the battalion front is limited. A rear or secondary observation post is usually selected to be occupied in case of enemy penetration of the main line of resistance. The observation post position is usually located on high ground and is carefully concealed by camouflage or natural concealment. Covered routes of approach into the observation post from the rear are highly desirable.

2. *Use.*—The battalion commander occupies the observation post when enemy attack is imminent. Communication facilities are installed at the observation post, through which the battalion commander can communicate with his subordinate units. From the observation post the battalion commander controls the fire and maneuver of his troops and weapons during the enemy attack.

(b) *Battalion command post.*—The battalion command post, whenever possible, is located in a covered and concealed position. Concealment and covered routes of communication into the command post are highly desirable. The command post is usually located behind or within the reserve company position. The command post is the center of the battalion administration, communications, operations, and supply.

(c) *Battalion aid station.*—The battalion aid station is usually located in the battalion rear area in a covered and concealed position, which is convenient for the rapid evacuation of casualties from the forward companies.

(d) *Battalion dump.*—The battalion dump is located in a covered, concealed position with

good communication to the rear and accessible to carrying parties from the forward companies.

(e) When the battalion adopts on all-around defense, the battalion command post, aid station, and dump are located in the approximate center of the perimeter.

(6) *Security.*—(a) *Combat outpost.*—In the tactical organization of the defense, the battalion commander is concerned with the location of the battalion security. The battalion commander will normally designate a general location for the battalion combat outpost and will assign the mission of manning the combat outpost to the reserve company. The combat outpost is located from 400 to 2,000 yards forward of the main line of resistance. (See Ch. 8, *Marches, Security on the March, and Outposts.*)

(b) *Local security.*—In addition, the battalion commander will usually direct certain security measures to be taken by the forward rifle companies. The forward companies will be directed to establish outguards immediately forward of the main line of resistance. These outguards are known as local security. Exposed flanks of the battalion are always protected by local security (either from the forward or reserve rifle companies), and when a perimeter defense is used local security encompasses the entire battalion position. (See figs. 52, 53, 54, and 55.)

b. *The battalion fire plan.*—(1) *Object of battalion fire plan.*—The basis of the organization of fire by the battalion commander is the battalion fire plan. The object of the battalion fire plan is to take the enemy under fire from the time he enters the zone of surveillance of the combat outpost, hold him under an increasingly heavy volume of fire as he approaches the main battle position, stop his assault by a dense band of closely coordinated fire immediately in front of the battle position, limit any penetration of the position by prepared interior or depth fires, and eject him from the position by a combination of prearranged fire and counterattack.

(2) *Details of fire plan.*—The battalion fire plan can be divided into the following parts:

(a) Fires of the combat outpost and fires in support of the combat outpost.

(b) Fires on targets of opportunity as the enemy approaches the main line of resistance.

(c) The final protective fires to fall immediately forward of the main line of resistance.

(d) Mutual fire support of adjacent units.

(e) Fires from positions in depth to limit penetrations of the main line of resistance.

(f) Fires in support of counterattacks.

(3) *Machine guns.*—(a) *On the main line of resistance.*—The machine guns located on the main line of resistance (usually two or more sections from each forward rifle company) are so placed by the battalion commander that, if possible, their final protective fires form interlocking bands of grazing fire forward of the battalion main line of resistance.

(b) *Support.*—Support machine guns are placed in depth behind the main line of resistance so as to limit penetrations of the main line of resistance and if possible to assist by fire in the defense of the main line of resistance. In addition, these guns may protect the flanks and rear of the battalion and the forward company defense areas. The principal source of support guns is the machine gun platoon of the reserve rifle company. (See fig. 48.)

(4) *Naval gunfire.*—In certain instances, naval gunfire may be used to support the battalion in defense. (See Sec. XV.)

c. *Organization of the ground.*—(1) *Priority.*—In the organization of the ground, the battalion commander assigns a priority which covers the tasks involved. Usually the priority is clearing fields of fire, digging foxholes and emplacements, and the construction of obstacles.

(2) *Details.*—(See Sec. IX.)

d. *Battalion defense order.*—See Chapter 9, *Basic Combat Techniques.*

10-76 CONDUCT OF THE DEFENSE.—

a. *Action of the combat outpost.*—A defensive force first makes direct contact with an attacking enemy forward of the combat outpost. The combat outpost opens fire at long range. When practicable it is supported by naval gunfire. The combat outpost withdraws along predetermined routes to the main line of resistance before the enemy can assault the outpost position.

b. *Enemy approaches the main line of resistance.*—As the enemy comes within 500 yards of the main line of resistance, rifles, automatic rifles, and selected machine guns open fire at targets of opportunity. Naval gunfire, if

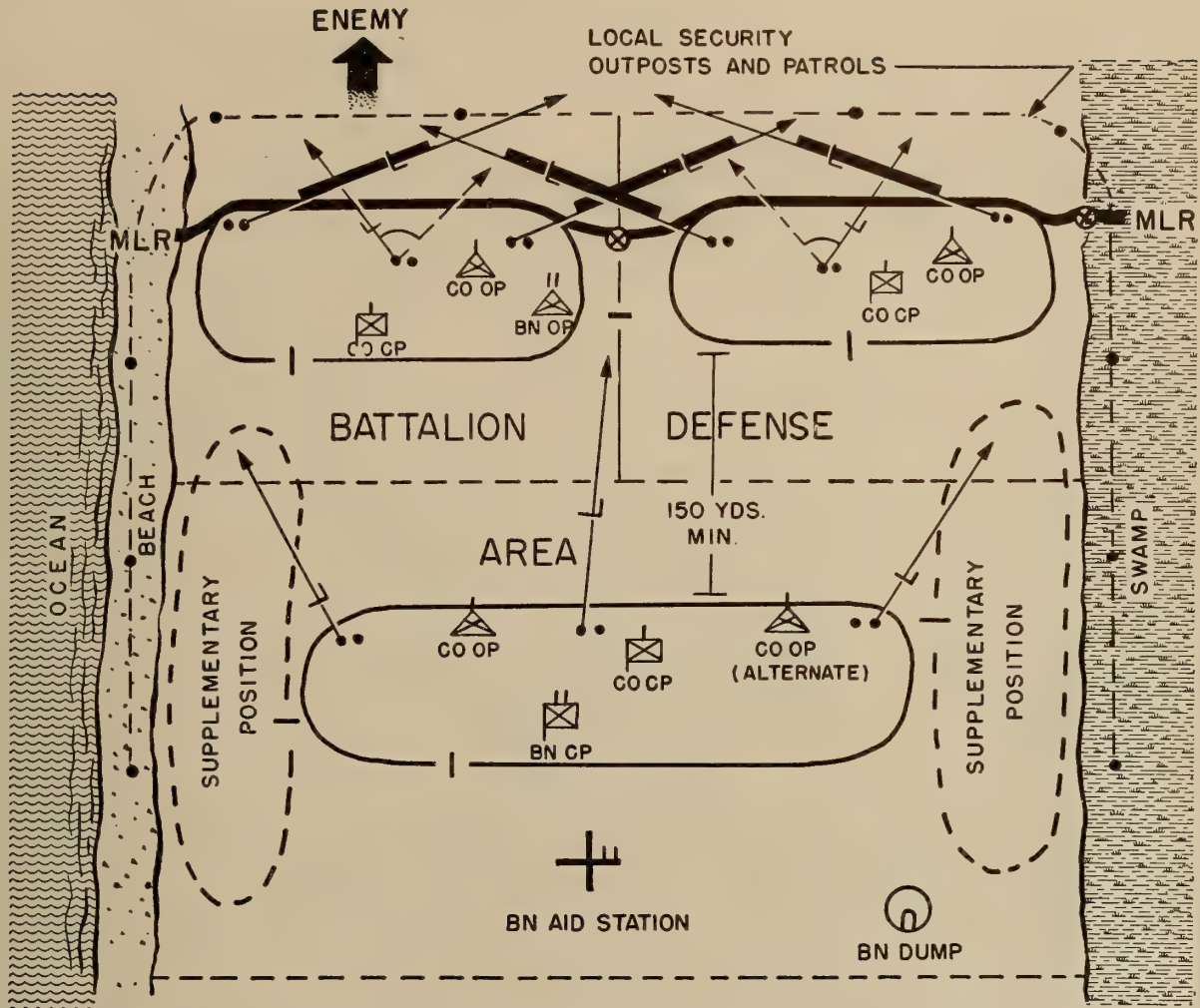


FIGURE 52.—Distribution of companies when battalion flanks are protected.

available, may continue to fire, controlled from observation posts on the main line of resistance.

c. Final protective fires.—As the enemy comes within the zone of the final protective fires of the machine guns on the main line of resistance, the final protective fires of all weapons are called down, usually by the company commander of the forward rifle company under attack or by the battalion commander. The machine guns on the main line of resistance open with surprise fire. Riflemen and automatic riflemen cover their assigned sectors of fire. Machine guns and rifle units from positions in depth fire where possible in support of the main line of resistance.

d. Penetration.—If, in spite of the intense

final protective fires, the enemy continues to advance, he is engaged in close combat by the troops on the main line of resistance. No withdrawal from the main line of resistance is allowed without orders from battalion. When a penetration of the main line of resistance has occurred, the reserve company and reserve machine guns open intensive fire on the enemy. Naval gunfire, if available, may be brought to bear on the base of the penetration to block off further reinforcement. The penetration is contained.

e. Counterattack.—If the penetration cannot be driven back by fire alone, the battalion commander may order a counterattack by his reserve company. However, if heavy enemy

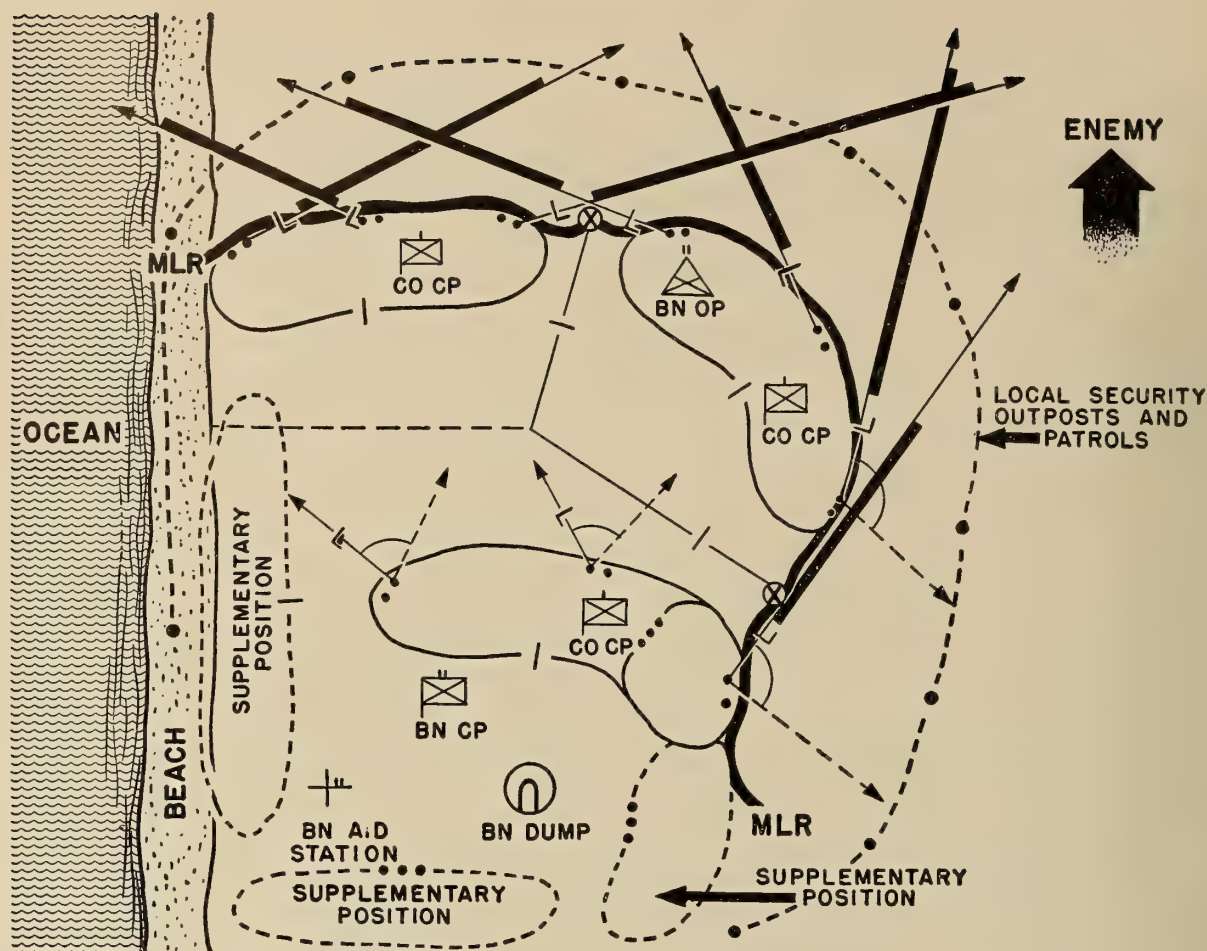


FIGURE 53.—Distribution of companies when one battalion flank is open.

fire is falling in the area over which the reserve company must pass in order to counterattack, the reserve may be left in its defensive position to simply limit the penetration. When the counterattack is ordered, it is executed quickly and vigorously and is supported by prearranged fires of the battalion as a whole.

f. Enemy threatens open flanks.—When the enemy advances so as to threaten the open flank or flanks of the battalion, elements of the forward and reserve companies protecting the open flanks from primary positions conduct the defense as do all units on the main line of resistance. However, if the enemy continues his flanking maneuver so as to threaten envelopment of the open flank or flanks, the battalion commander moves elements of the reserve company to supplementary positions in time to counter the enemy's move. Warning of the

enemy's maneuver will come from local security posted to protect the flanks and rear. The battalion commander, however, exercises caution in prematurely committing all of his reserve to supplementary positions, as the enemy flanking maneuver may be a feint or secondary attack designed to cover a main attack against the main line of resistance.

g. Conduct of perimeter defense.—When the battalion has adopted a perimeter defense with all three companies on the circular main line of resistance, the defense is conducted as outlined above except that no battalion reserve exists initially. However, once the enemy attack is launched against certain portions of the perimeter, elements of the rifle companies not under attack (or under attack only from weak enemy forces) are used as the battalion reserve.

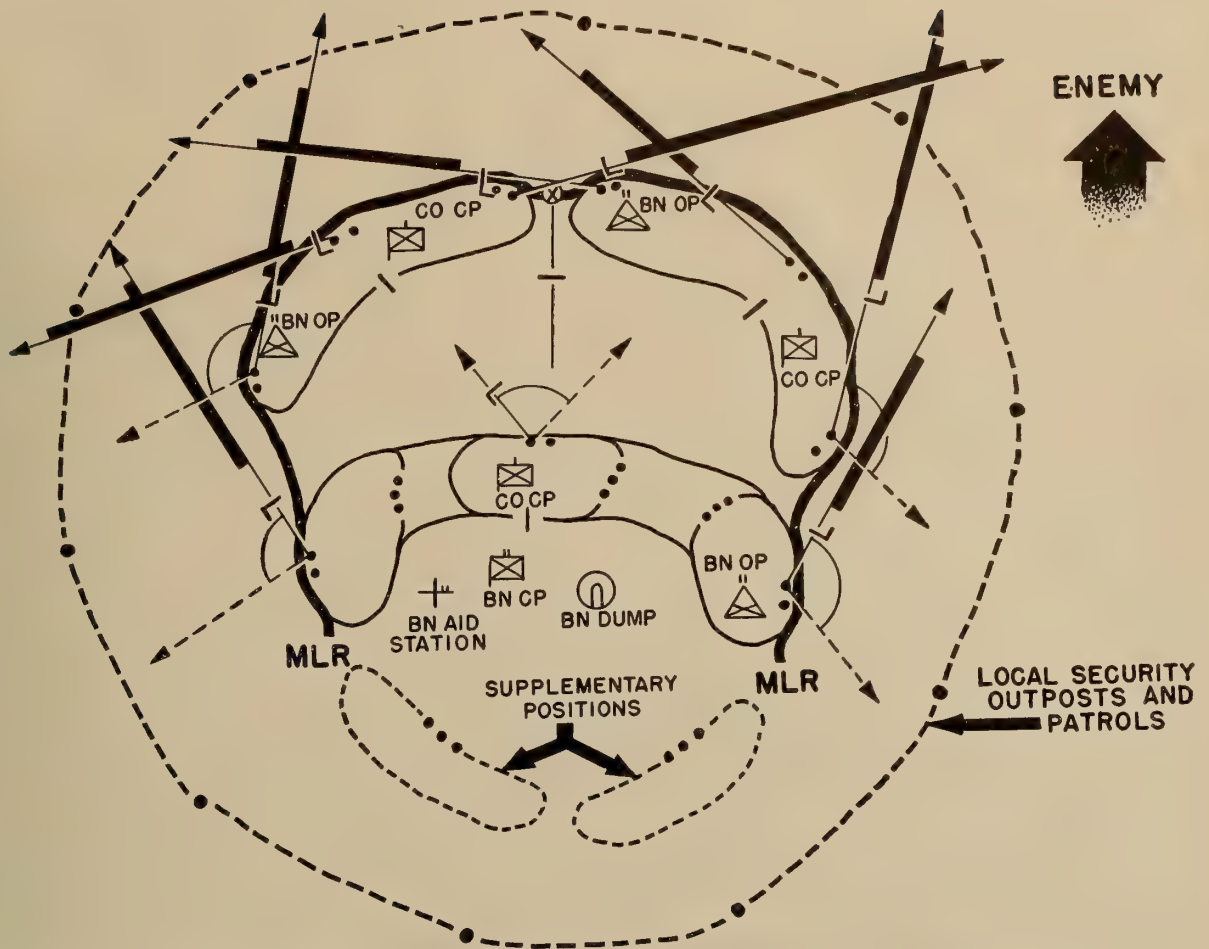


FIGURE 54.—Distribution of companies when both battalion flanks are open and the location of the enemy is known.

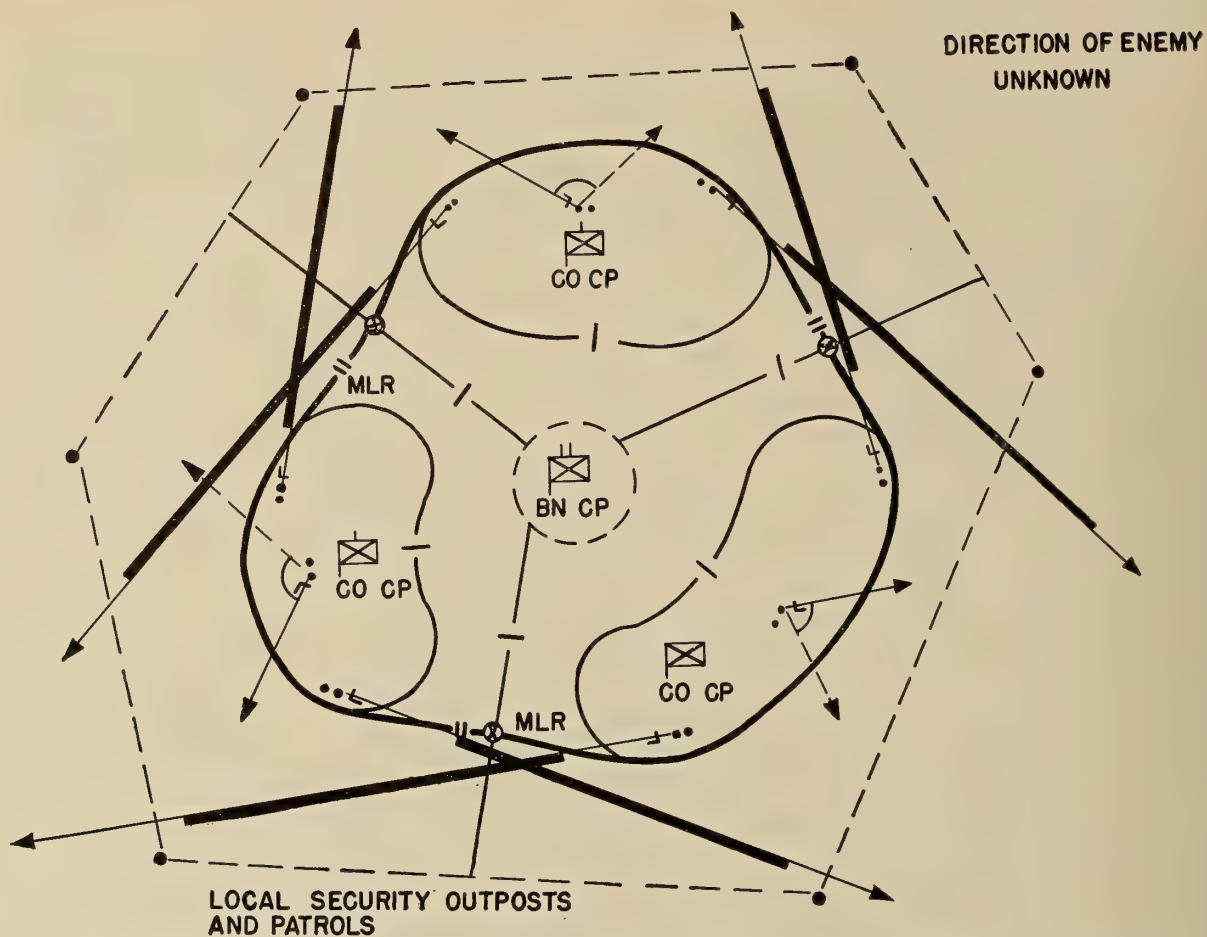


FIGURE 55.—Distribution of companies when both battalion flanks are open and the enemy situation is unknown (perimeter defense).

SECTION XV

NAVAL GUNFIRE SUPPORT

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-77	463
Control.....	10-78	463
Naval gunfire support requests.....	10-79	463

10-77 GENERAL.—Naval gunfire support of a naval landing party operation consists of:

a. Neutralization or destruction of enemy forces and installations prior to contact.

b. Denying the enemy reinforcements in the objective area.

c. Support after contact has been made with the enemy by executing fires requested by the naval landing party commander and/or subordinate commanders.

10-78 CONTROL.—*a.* The control of naval gunfire support is organized as follows:

(1) *Fire support group commander.*—When only one ship is furnishing naval gunfire support the commanding officer of the ship functions as fire support commander.

(2) A shore fire control party is attached to the naval landing party battalion and to smaller echelons if operating separately. If a regularly organized shore fire control party is not available for assignment to the naval landing party, one must be improvised to insure effective naval gunfire support.

b. The naval landing party commander may request preliminary missions to be executed prior to contact either through the shore fire control party or through personal liaison with the fire support group commander.

c. The control procedure for naval gunfire support is as follows:

(1) The fire support group commander in communication with the support ships and with the shore fire control party ashore controls and directs naval gunfire support missions in accordance with naval landing party requirements as requested by the shore fire control party.

(2) Shore fire control parties give advice to ground unit commanders to which attached and prepare and submit ground unit commander's requests for naval gunfire support. They also spot and adjust the naval gunfire.

d. Control of ships executing an approved mission may be exercised by the fire support group commander, but is normally delegated to the shore fire control party originating the request.

10-79 NAVAL GUNFIRE SUPPORT REQUESTS.—A naval gunfire support request must contain the following basic information and is transmitted in the sequence indicated:

- a.* Warning order.
- b.* Location of target.
- c.* Nature of target.
- d.* Classification of fire.
- e.* Method of fire.
- f.* Ammunition.
- g.* Fuze.
- h.* Control.

SECTION XVI

AVIATION

	Par.	Page
General.....	10-80	464
Control.....	10-81	464
Air support requests.....	10-82	464

10-80 GENERAL.—Aviation may be used in support of naval landing party operations to:

- a. Obtain intelligence information needed for initial planning and conduct of operations.
- b. Gain and maintain air superiority.
- c. Isolate the battle area.
- d. Reduce hostile defenses prior to contact.
- e. Attack ground targets throughout the battle area.
- f. Provide air support to include troop carrying, delivery of supplies, the evacuation of casualties, and tactical and gunnery observation.

10-81 CONTROL.—*a.* The control of air support is organized as follows:

- (1) An air control agency at the highest echelon of command.
- (2) Tactical air control party with the naval landing party battalion and to smaller units if operating independently. Personnel for the tactical air control party are not provided in the organization of the naval landing party indicated in Chapter 1, but must be made available in the event air support is to be utilized.

b. The control procedure for air support is as follows:

- (1) Air control agency, in radio communication with supporting aircraft and with tactical air control parties ashore, controls and directs air support missions in accordance with naval

landing party requirements as requested by the tactical air control parties.

(2) Tactical air control parties, trained in air support procedure, furnish advice to ground unit commanders to which attached and prepare and submit ground commanders' requests for air support to the air control agency.

c. Control of aircraft executing an approved mission may be exercised by the air control agency or may be delegated by that agency to the tactical air control party originating the request.

10-82 AIR SUPPORT REQUESTS.—*a.* An air support request for an attack mission must contain the following basic information:

- (1) Priority of target.
- (2) Nature of target.
- (3) Location of target.
- (4) Desired time limits for the attack.
- (5) Types of attack desired.
- (6) Location of nearest friendly front lines.
- (7) Target can or cannot be marked.
- (8) Tactical air control party can or cannot observe.

b. Prior to requesting an attack mission from the control agency, some means of marking positions of friendly troops must be devised. Whatever is used must be easily discernable from the air. Some of the most common markers used are as follows:

- (1) Colored panels.
- (2) Smoke pots or smoke grenades.
- (3) Prominent terrain features such as rivers, roads, railroad tracks, etc.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 11

SPECIAL OPERATIONS

CHAPTER 11

SPECIAL OPERATIONS

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL.....	11-1	469
II. NIGHT COMBAT.....	11-2	470
III. PATROLLING.....	11-18	477
IV. RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS.....	11-28	481
V. RAIDS.....	11-33	484
VI. COMBAT IN BUILT-UP AREAS.....	11-37	487
VII. POLICE FUNCTIONS.....	11-64	499
VIII. RIOT DUTY.....	11-78	504
IX. NATIONAL DISASTERS.....	11-88	508

SECTION I

GENERAL

General.....	Par. 11-1	Page 469
--------------	--------------	-------------

11-1 GENERAL.—Special operations, in contrast to normal operations, require certain special tactics and techniques. Principles such as fire and maneuver, surprise, maintenance of security, control, and direction, all apply to special operations, in general, as they do to normal combat tactics. However, such operations as patrolling, raids, street fighting, and

riot duty require special planning and organization, special training and indoctrination in individual conduct, and much more preparation and skill on the part of unit leaders. This chapter will cover night combat, patrolling, retrograde movements, raids, street fighting, military police functions, riot duty, and national disasters. All of these special operations require the highest type of leadership, discipline, and training on the part of units concerned.

SECTION II

NIGHT COMBAT

	Par.	Page
General.....	11-2	470
Offense at night.....	11-3	470
Company order.....	11-4	470
Reconnaissance and other preparatory actions.....	11-5	471
Plan of the attack, general.....	11-6	472
Direction and control.....	11-7	472
Time of attack.....	11-8	472
Rate of advance.....	11-9	473
Formations.....	11-10	473
Secrecy.....	11-11	474
Identification.....	11-12	474
Maneuver.....	11-13	474
Signal communications.....	11-14	474
Conduct of night attack.....	11-15	474
Defense at night.....	11-16	475
Night marches.....	11-17	476

11-2 GENERAL.—*a.* All types of military operations may be conducted at night. Under certain conditions the protective covering of darkness will facilitate night attacks, night patrols, night raids, night marches, and night withdrawals. In spite of the inherent difficulties of night operations, they may be employed by forces especially trained to overcome the difficulties and to exploit the advantages. Night operations are carried out to complete or exploit a success, to gain important terrain for further operations, to avoid heavy losses which would be incurred by movements in daylight over open terrain, or to attract hostile reserves. Darkness also presents special problems to the unit in defense.

b. Night combat is characterized by a decrease in the effectiveness of aimed fire and by a corresponding increase in the importance of close combat and the fire of fixed weapons laid on definite targets or areas by day. It is further characterized by the following difficulties: Movement, troop leading, maintenance of direction, contact, and signal communication; and by a more highly sensitive morale of the troops.

c. Decrease in the effectiveness of enemy fire

permits the use of closer formations without exposure to excessive losses. Difficulty in the maintenance of control and direction necessitates limited objectives which may be approached by well-defined routes. The more sensitive morale of the troops increases the effect of surprise obtained by the offense and the importance of security measures on the part of the defense.

d. As a rule, night combat can be conducted successfully only when there is time for the preparation and distribution of a well-conceived plan and for thorough reconnaissance by all leaders during daylight. Simplicity of plan, careful preparation, secrecy, surprise, direction, control, and cohesion in execution are prerequisites to a successful night attack.

e. In night combat, the influence of unit commanders on their troops is greatly diminished. Tactical operations and troop leading are surrounded with greater difficulties, and the uncertainties of combat exercise a greater influence than in daylight operations.

f. Surprise is the most essential feature of a night operation. All preparations must avoid betraying the locations or intentions of the troops.

g. The difficulties of night operations increase with the size of the command. They, therefore, are undertaken only on a limited scale and with limited objectives.

11-3 OFFENSE AT NIGHT.—In spite of the inherent difficulties of the operation, night attack has assumed major importance as employed by troops especially trained to overcome the difficulties of the operation and to exploit its advantages.

11-4 COMPANY ORDER.—*a.* The company order for a night attack goes into much greater detail than a similar order for an attack by day. Provision is made for every eventuality that can be foreseen.

b. The following outline indicates the matter to be included in paragraphs two and three of a company order for a night attack.

RIFLE COMPANY ORDER FOR A NIGHT ATTACK

(Oral orders are habitually used)

2. Mission of the company.

Objective.

Formation.

*Base unit. (For use of asterisk, see *c* below).

Direction of attack.

Boundaries—zone of action.

Assembly area, and route forward.

*Platoon release point.

Line of departure.

Time of attack.

(Use a separate lettered subparagraph for each platoon)

3a. Specific mission for each platoon and any special instructions pertaining to each platoon to include, when applicable:

*Point or area of departure.

*Direction of attack.

*Objective.

Limit of advance.

Reorganization on the objective.

*Platoon mission on capture of the objective and at daylight.

*Security measures applicable to individual platoons.

x. Tactical instructions applicable to all units if not covered elsewhere in paragraph 3 of the order, to include:

Means of identification.

Means to maintain secrecy.

Security measures.

Method of advance.

Rate of advance if applicable.

*Special measures for control and coordination.

Action when hostile security measures are encountered.

When to deploy as skirmishers or line of squad columns.

When to load rifles.

Reorganization on the objective.

c. When the rifle company is part of a battalion which is making a night attack, the battalion commander will usually prescribe all details except those marked with an asterisk in the preceding outline. He will also direct and restrict the reconnaissance of subordinate leaders and give specific orders for night patrolling prior to the attack and after the capture of the objective.

d. When a rifle company constitutes the principal attacking element of a night attacking force, the battalion commander may prescribe all of the details listed in *b* above. In any situation, he states the objective, the mission

of the company after capturing the objective, and the time of attack. Unless prescribed by higher authority, he decides whether the attack is to be made by stealth or with preparatory fires; if the latter, he arranges for the fires. In either case, he prescribes the protective fires to be provided by the machine guns and the naval gunfire usually after considering the recommendations of the rifle company commander.

11-5 RECONNAISSANCE AND OTHER PREPARATORY ACTIONS.—*a.*

Irrespective of the details prescribed by the battalion commander, daylight reconnaissance by the company commander and his subordinates is essential and is supplemented by additional reconnaissance at dusk and during the hours of darkness. During daylight, reconnaissance of terrain not held by friendly troops is usually impracticable except by observation from points in rear of our front lines. The company commander places such restrictions on reconnaissance as are necessary to preserve secrecy.

b. The daylight preparation by the company commander includes the following:

(1) Procurement and study of aerial photographs.

(2) Prompt issuance of a warning order giving all available information, including place and hour for assembly of leaders.

(3) Checking equipment and physical condition of troops.

(4) Location of exact limits of the company objective.

(5) Selection of the point where platoons are to be released and the point or area of departure for each platoon. Points of departure should be on a line perpendicular to the direction of attack.

(6) Reconnaissance and marking of the route from the assembly area to the point where platoons are to be released.

(7) Reconnaissance and marking of the exact point at which each platoon is to cross the line of departure.

(8) Designation and reconnaissance of the route of advance for each platoon beyond the line of departure. Reconnaissance is performed by platoon leaders, and includes employment of night patrols prior to the attack. (See *a* above.)

(9) Determination of compass bearings for the advance of the platoons beyond the line of

departure. (When the battalion commander prescribes the direction of attack, such direction is usually from the center of the area of departure to the center of the objective, and will not necessarily be the same for individual companies or platoons.)

(10) Selection by observation, if practicable, of line of probable deployment.

(11) Location of ridges, roads, hedges, telephone lines, or any other landmarks that may be used at night to assist in maintaining direction and control.

(12) The issuance of the company order in time to permit subordinate leaders to make their reconnaissances before dark. Final details of the attack order are usually issued after reconnaissances are completed.

(13) Arrangements for serving a hot meal prior to the attack and obtaining maximum possible rest for the troops.

11-6 PLAN OF ATTACK.—*General.*—The plan for a night attack is characterized by simplicity and minuteness of detail. Careful preparation is essential. No set method can be followed. The difficulties of maintaining direction, control, and contact vary directly with the degree of visibility existing at the time of the attack, and the methods used must be varied accordingly. To plan the attack, the company commander's information of hostile forces (size, composition, and night dispositions), the contemplated action of friendly troops, and the terrain to be traversed, must be as complete and detailed as possible.

a. The company commander obtains information of hostile dispositions:

- (1) From the battalion commander.
- (2) By contact with front line elements.
- (3) By establishment of observation posts, when sufficient daylight remains to justify it.
- (4) By personal reconnaissance and that of his subordinates.
- (5) By study of available aerial photographs.
- (6) By night patrolling. (This is frequently the only means of obtaining detailed information of hostile outguards and listening posts.)

b. Information of friendly troops is obtained from the battalion commander, and by contact of the company commander or his representative with the units involved.

c. Detailed information of the terrain can often be augmented by night patrolling.

11-7 DIRECTION AND CONTROL.—The company commander takes advantage of every possible means of maintaining direction and control. Such means are:

a. Employment of a frontal attack only; never a maneuver of envelopment.

b. Attack only one objective.

c. Selection of open terrain favoring the advance.

d. Employment of guides for movements in rear of, and forward of, the line of departure. Competent guides frequently can be selected from patrols that have been over the area.

e. Designation of boundaries along unmistakable terrain features, if such exist.

f. Designation of compass directions for each element of the company.

g. Employment of connecting files or groups, both laterally and in depth. The need for such elements will be determined by the visibility.

h. Designation as base platoon of the platoon having the most easily identified route to follow.

i. Regulation of the rate of advance.

j. Advance by bounds. Bounds are made from one recognizable terrain feature to another, if possible. Where no such terrain features exist, columns may be directed to halt after moving a given distance, after moving a prescribed number of steps, or at stated time intervals.

k. Halts platoons briefly at their respective points of departure to aid coordination.

l. Retention of the company formation in platoon columns as long as practicable. If practicable, deployment as skirmishers should be delayed until within 100 or 200 yards of the objective. However, deployment should be completed before coming within view of hostile sentries located on or in close proximity to the objective.

m. Description in the attack order of the detailed mission to be accomplished by each platoon after capturing the objective. (Platoon leaders assign squad objectives, definitely indicating the flanks.)

11-8 TIME OF ATTACK.—The time of attack is usually prescribed by the battalion commander in order to secure necessary coor-

dination. However, the company commander may be called upon to submit recommendation for the time of attack when the rifle company constitutes the principal attacking force. In successive night attacks within an area of operations or on a given front, the time of attack should be varied to effect surprise.

a. An attack launched during the first hours of darkness frequently strikes the enemy before he has had time to organize his position or his artillery support. It may also anticipate possible night operations on the part of the enemy.

b. An attack during the last hours of darkness may be advantageous as a preliminary operation to a general attack at daybreak because it gives the defender no time to reorganize. The attack should begin in time to complete the capture of the objective at least $\frac{1}{2}$ -hour before dawn in order to allow time for reorganization of the attacking troops, as well as for preparations to meet counterattacks before dawn. The time of attack should provide sufficient leeway to compensate for reasonable delays, such as may be caused by waiting for hostile illumination to die down.

11-9 RATE OF ADVANCE.—Normally, the rate of advance to the assembly area, if made across country, will be about 1 mile per hour. Beyond this area, the rate usually will be limited to 100 yards in from 6 to 10 minutes, depending upon the visibility. If prescribed by the battalion commander, a rate should be included in the company order. When advancing by bounds, a rate is not prescribed. If practicable, the company commander should regulate the rate himself and not leave it to the leader of the base platoon.

11-10 FORMATIONS.—*a.* Line of platoon columns is the usual formation for crossing the line of departure. If the ground in front of the objective is level or slopes evenly for some distance and if visibility is sufficient to permit control to be maintained, it may be desirable to change into line of squad columns before reaching the locality where deployment as skirmishers is to be made. If the distance from the line of departure to the objective is only a few hundred yards, it may be desirable to cross the line of departure in line of squad columns. Whether in line of platoon columns or line of

squad columns, squads may be formed in column of twos. This facilitates deployment as skirmishers. Intervals between columns are such that skirmish lines may be formed with not over two-pace intervals between men; when visibility permits, these intervals may be increased. Since, ordinarily, only men armed with the rifle and bayonet are useful in the assault, a deployed rifle squad can usually cover about 20 yards. All men not armed with the bayonet are placed at the rear of their squads or columns. They do not deploy as skirmishers, but follow closely during the assault.

b. The machine gun platoons must be available shortly after the capture of the objective, but should not be so close to the rifle platoons during the advance that it can become involved in the assault. It may follow the attacking echelon by bounds as directed from time to time by the company commander; in this case, a liaison detail from the machine gun platoon should be with the company commander to act as guides. When visibility is good (moonlight), the platoon may be directed to follow an element of the attacking echelon, with a connecting group following the prescribed element at the limit of visibility and the platoon following the connecting group at the same distance.

c. Frequently, the width (frontage) of the objective will require that all rifle platoons be used in the attacking echelon. However, a support should be held out to meet an expected counterattack if the attack is not to be resumed at daylight. The support ordinarily moves with the machine gun platoon if this platoon follows the attacking echelon. Otherwise, it follows closely the attacking echelon, but at such distance as to prevent intermingling of the two elements. The support may be assigned the mission of mopping up when it reaches the objective. If no support has been held out, one is constituted from the most easily available personnel after the objective has been captured.

d. The supporting weapons furnishing protective fires to the attacking force may be placed in position for flank protection of the initial assault. When the terrain is favorable for overhead fire, they may be emplaced in a rearward position to support the attack on signal.

e. Usually a small patrol, moving at the limit of visibility abreast of each flank platoon, will provide adequate flank protection during the advance.

11-11 SECRECY.—*a.* Keep the exact hour of attack secret until the last possible moment.

b. Restrict the size and activities of parties engaged in reconnaissance and other preparations for the attack.

c. Prohibit smoking, use of light, talking (except to transmit orders or instructions and then in a whisper), and the use of shiny or noisy equipment.

d. Instruct assault riflemen that only the bayonet will be used during the advance and assault and insure that bayonets are fixed before leaving the line of departure. (Battlefield experience indicates the desirability, at times, of firing rifles and flares, and employing noise during the assault to increase the confusion and demoralization of the enemy.)

e. Darken faces and hands with dirt or other available substance.

f. Hold down the rate of advance from the line of departure to that at which the entire company can move in silence. This rate will depend upon the terrain and visibility.

g. Employ patrols to knock out enemy listening posts and outguards just before the attacking force will reach their location.

11-12 IDENTIFICATION.—*a.* Means of identification for all personnel must be prescribed. These may be in the battalion commander's instructions. If not prescribed in the battalion order, all identifying measures must be communicated to the battalion commander, so that any personnel moving to the objective before daylight can be properly identified. Unless special identifying means are issued, the means prescribed must be readily available to all men. They should not be conspicuous, but must be easily recognized at a few yards distance. (A white cloth arm band around each upper arm is a suitable means of visual recognition.) Words or noises, such as a challenge, password, and reply, given in a low clear tone are valuable as means of identification.

b. Distinctive marks for officers also must be prescribed. When practicable, special dis-

tinctive marks for noncommissioned officers are desirable.

c. The battalion commander prescribes the countersign and the identifying marks to be worn by subordinate commanders, security elements, and messengers. The term *countersign*, includes the challenge (when secret), the password, and the reply. The *challenge*, is a word or distinctive sound used to cause an unidentified person or party to halt for identification. The challenge may or may not be secret. The word "halt," is the challenge unless a secret word or sound is ordered. The "password," is a word or distinctive sound used as an answer to the challenge and which identifies the person or party desiring the pass. The "reply," is a word or distinctive sound used by the challenger in identifying himself to a challenged person or party after receiving the password. The password and reply are always secret.

11-13 MANEUVER.—Platoons advance and attack straight to the front, although detours of a few yards to avoid obstacles are permitted. Any attempt to combine a frontal attack with an envelopment usually results in an uncoordinated assault and conflict between the two friendly forces.

11-14 SIGNAL COMMUNICATIONS.—

a. The company commander must insure that he knows the method or methods of calling for or lifting supporting fires.

b. The following signals, in particular, should be well understood: objective taken; put down protective fires around objective; and lift protective fires. Patrols and security groups should be given calls, sounds, and noises, and practice their use for signaling. Night sounds peculiar to the locality may be used. All ranks should be trained in the recognition of night sounds that might be used by the enemy.

11-15 CONDUCT OF NIGHT ATTACK.—

a. Advance.—(1) The advance is made in compact columns until close to the enemy. A silent stealthy advance is essential to secrecy.

(2) The leader of each column marches at its head. The company commander marches where he can best control and regulate the advance. A noncommissioned officer marches at the rear of each column to prevent straggling and enforcing instruction for maintaining

secrecy. Column leaders and the company commander constantly check on maintenance of direction and contact.

(3) Each column leader is preceded at the limit of visibility by scouts or a small patrol. It is desirable that men who speak the enemy language march with the leading scouts or patrols or with the column leader. At the end of each bound, the scouts or patrols reconnoiter for the next advance while leaders verify or reestablish contact, intervals, and direction. Contact is made by designated personnel moving from flank columns to the center column or vice versa. The advance is resumed on the company commander's order, transmitted by messengers or by special signals. If a hostile sentry challenges, the scouts or members of the leading patrol close in with the bayonet. It may be possible to answer the challenge in the enemy's language thereby diverting the sentry's attention. Designated men at the head of the column may assist the scouts or patrols while the remainder of the troops lie down until the outguard is disposed of. The company commander must prevent a premature assault from being launched as a result of enemy fire.

(4) Action of hostile patrols or outguards may force all or part of the company to deploy as skirmishers prior to the time planned. Elements forced to deploy reform in column after the resistance has been reduced. The remaining elements of the company are halted during such periods or continue movement to the next planned halt and await orders.

(5) Units which lose contact with adjacent units seek to regain contact while continuing to press forward to their own objectives.

b. Assault.—Deployment may be forced by the enemy opening fire at close range; it may be executed upon arrival at a prescribed terrain feature or on the order of the company commander. Platoon leaders acknowledge receipt of such orders. The deployment must be completed rapidly; any prolonged halt at this stage of the attack increases the chances of detection. The advance is then continued at a walk unless unusual visibility enables a more rapid pace to be assumed. Every effort must be made to maintain the skirmish line to prevent it from breaking up into isolated groups. When resistance is encountered, the attacking personnel

launch the final assault. Aggressive leadership by officers and noncommissioned officers is essential.

c. Action after capture of objective.—As soon as the objective is captured, immediate defense positions are taken up, and then the reorganization begins. All leaders, during darkness, will gather together those men nearest them and place them in position. At dawn (just prior to daylight) men still separated from their units must join their leaders; all troops and weapons are redispersed as necessary, to get better fields of fire. Patrols should be pushed out far enough to prevent the enemy from reforming for counterattack within assaulting distance of the captured position. An adequate support must be available by daylight to repel counterattacks. Supporting weapons are brought up, men dig in, and all other possible preparations are made to defend the position against hostile counterattacks at daylight. When the attack is to be continued after daylight, immediate preparations are made to continue the attack. During darkness, leaders of elements of the machine gun platoon can select only approximate positions and observation posts. At dawn they select and occupy better locations.

11-16 DEFENSE AT NIGHT.—*a.* A unit in defense must be prepared at night or under other conditions of reduced visibility to repel a hostile attack or to prevent small groups from infiltrating into the position. Consideration should be given to moving machine guns and automatic rifles whose positions have been disclosed by daylight firing, to alternate or supplementary night positions when this can be done without disrupting the system of close defensive fires.

b. Defense at night depends upon prearranged fires aided by artificial illumination from ships' searchlights and star shells, prepared obstacles, and hand to hand combat. Early information of hostile movement is essential. Listening posts are established to cover trails or other avenues of approach to the defense area from all directions. Patrols move stealthily, cover the front and the intervals between units. Where necessary, readjustments are made in the forward areas to fill gaps that may be covered by fire during day-

light. Elements of support platoons may be used to fill such gaps, or front line platoons may be extended to the flanks. If practicable, supplementary positions are dug and camouflaged. Elements of the battalion reserve may be placed to protect an exposed flank. When, during daylight, the main line of resistance is located on the reverse slope in order to escape effect of enemy fire, the strength of the force occupying forward slope positions is increased at night.

c. An attacking force that succeeds in gaining a foothold within the position during the night can best be ejected by a counterattack launched by the reserve during the half-light of early dawn and before the hostile force has had an opportunity to observe its areas and surroundings and plan its defense. Patrols locate the hostile position during the night. As soon as it is sufficiently light to see, patrols search possible hide-outs to mop up hostile groups which may have been overlooked during the counterattack.

d. Fog and smoke create conditions similar to night. The battalion commander decides to what extent night dispositions will be adopted.

11-17 NIGHT MARCHES.—*a.* To insure maintenance of direction during a night march, the battalion commander provides guides and route markers when these are not provided by higher authority; he designates an officer to lead the columns and employs his staff to supervise the march.

b. The strength of an advance guard for the battalion during the night march may vary from a rifle platoon to a rifle company. Flank and rear security detachments are usually smaller than for day marches.

c. At night, units and individuals close up and usually march in single file or column of two files. All means to maintain control, direction, and silence are employed.

For night patrols, night withdrawals, and night raids see Sections III, IV, and V.

SECTION III

PATROLLING

	Par.	Page
General.....	11-18	477
Reconnaissance patrols.....	11-19	477
Combat patrols.....	11-20	477
Importance of patrolling.....	11-21	477
Factors influencing the size of patrols....	11-22	478
Requirements of a patrol formation....	11-23	478
Factors influencing patrol formations..	11-24	478
Control.....	11-25	478
Security.....	11-26	479
Movements.....	11-27	480

11-18 GENERAL.—A patrol is a detachment of troops sent out from a larger body on a mission of combat, reconnaissance, or security. There are two general classes of patrols—reconnaissance and combat—either of which might have a mission of security. The classification is derived from the mission assigned a patrol.

11-19 RECONNAISSANCE PATROLS.—*a.* Reconnaissance patrols are sent out to gain information about the enemy or the terrain. Such patrols engage in combat only when it becomes necessary to accomplish their mission or in order to protect themselves. In general, they avoid combat and accomplish their mission by stealth.

b. Reconnaissance patrols have a great variety of missions, but their primary mission is to obtain and report information in time for it to be of value to the commander who desires it.

c. A reconnaissance patrol might be dispatched:

- (1) To locate and observe the characteristics of a hostile position or installation.
- (2) To reconnoiter a route of march for a larger force.
- (3) To reconnoiter a safe and fordable stream crossing for an advancing unit.
- (4) To reconnoiter a certain terrain feature or the general nature of the terrain in a given locality.

(5) To maintain contact with a rapidly withdrawing enemy force. The missions mentioned are by no means all-inclusive but are given merely as examples.

11-20 COMBAT PATROLS.—*a.* Combat patrols are assigned missions which usually require them to engage actively in combat. They are fighting patrols. Combat patrols should always be large enough to accomplish their assigned mission.

b. Every combat patrol, no matter what its specific mission, has a secondary mission—that of gaining information about the enemy and the terrain.

c. A combat patrol might be dispatched with the mission of:

- (1) Capturing prisoners.
- (2) Destroying an enemy installation.
- (3) Protecting the exposed flank of an advancing unit.
- (4) Seizing and holding commanding ground to prevent enemy occupation of the terrain feature.
- (5) Clearing isolated groups of the enemy from an area controlled by friendly troops.
- (6) Ambushing the enemy.
- (7) Performing other duties involving probable combat.

11-21 IMPORTANCE OF PATROLLING.—*a.* Both combat and reconnaissance patrols are used by the infantry commander to gain much of the information he needs about the enemy and the terrain. This information is used by the commander to enable him to carry out his assigned mission more efficiently and effectively.

b. Information is the framework upon which tactical plans are built and patrols are one of the most effective information-gathering agencies.

11-22 FACTORS INFLUENCING SIZE OF PATROLS.—*a. Size of Patrols.*—A patrol

may consist of 2 men, a fire team, or a larger tactical unit. The size of a combat or reconnaissance patrol depends on several influencing factors which must be considered before the patrol is dispatched on a mission. In some cases, a small patrol may best be able to execute the mission; on other occasions, a strong combat patrol may be necessary in order to accomplish the mission. In general, a patrol should be made up of the least number of men needed to accomplish a given mission, with consideration given to safety, available time, and message requirements.

b. The size of a patrol depends upon the following influencing factors:

- (1) Mission.
- (2) Terrain and visibility.
- (3) Distance from friendly troops.
- (4) Time it will be out.
- (5) Number of messages it may have to send back.
- (6) Whether prisoners are to be captured and sent back.

c. Patrols with missions requiring combat or strong likelihood of combat are usually stronger than patrols on reconnaissance missions. Also, if a patrol intends to be gone for some time and is going to operate at considerable distance from friendly troops, it must be stronger because there is greater danger from attacks and more need for food and equipment.

d. A reconnaissance patrol should be kept to the minimum number of men required to execute the mission. Such patrols rarely exceed a squad in size. Units larger than a squad are noisy in their movements, are more difficult to control, move slower, and have greater difficulty in approaching close to the enemy without being detected. The fire team is an ideal unit for short range reconnaissance patrol.

11-23 PATROL FORMATIONS.—*a.* Any particular patrol formation should provide for all-around security and good control and should insure that only a minimum number of men within the patrol will be pinned down at only one time by surprise fire.

b. Patrol formations must be fluid and flexible and changed to meet varying conditions of terrain and visibility. The patrol leader designates the original patrol formation, and the individual members maintain their assigned positions depending on their ability to see each other and at the same time make full use of cover and concealment.

c. The basic formation used by patrols are those prescribed for the appropriate size unit in Chapter 9. For small patrols in open terrain the wedge is a suitable formation (see figure 1). For larger patrols or when visibility becomes restricted by woods or broken terrain, the column formation is used with the necessary security elements required for the marching column. (See Ch. 8.)

d. When contact with the enemy is imminent or has already been made, more deployed formations will be adopted by the patrol leaders.

11-24 FACTORS INFLUENCING PATROL FORMATIONS.—*a.* In general, the following factors will influence and change a patrol formation:

- (1) Mission.
- (2) Terrain.
- (3) Visibility.
- (4) Security.
- (5) Enemy situation.
- (6) Control.
- (7) Size of patrol.
- (8) Required speed of movement.

b. The formations taken by a patrol will always be influenced by the need for maintaining security and control, and the mission and route of the patrol.

11-25 CONTROL.—*a.* The patrol leader places himself in the patrol formation where he can best maintain control. Normally, this is at or near the head of a patrol, but his position will depend somewhat upon the route the patrol will follow. If the patrol is following a clearly defined route, then the patrol leader should move anywhere within the patrol where his signals can be seen by the patrol members. If, however, the route is ill-defined, as in dense woods, jungle, or at night, the patrol leader must be in or with the leading group.

b. The patrol leader is assisted in controlling the patrol by the second in command. In patrols of a squad or less, the second in command should move in the rear of the formation. In larger patrols, he should be nearer the leader or leading the main body.

c. Patrols are controlled in the daytime by arm and hand signals and oral orders. (See Chapter 9, Sections III and IX). Each member of a patrol must be thoroughly familiar with the standard arm and hand signals. Before contact with the enemy has been made, it will be necessary for the patrol leader to issue his oral orders in a soft voice. This will depend on the nearness of the enemy at the time the orders are issued. However, once the patrol has contacted the enemy, the element of surprise has been lost and stealth and silent movements are no longer necessary. The factor of control by the patrol leader and his subordinate leaders is then paramount. To obtain control in such a situation, to pass information from the scouts to the patrol leader, and to pass necessary orders to subordinate leaders and to individual men, the patrol leader and members of the patrol may shout back and forth until the decision and plan of the patrol leader is known to all members of the patrol. At this time runners also may be used to carry orders.

d. At night the patrol depends mainly upon touch signals for communication. Particularly on dark nights the scout or scouts may be controlled by pull signals on a rope tied to their belts. Muffled sound signals previously worked out, or whispers, may also be used when necessity demands. If the signal is audible, it must blend in with the usual night noises.

11-26 SECURITY.—*a.* All-around security must be maintained at all times. This is accomplished within a patrol by employing formations that afford protection to the front, flanks, and rear. These elements are the eyes, ears, and fingers of the patrol leader. They move according to his signals and maintain contact with him all the time, except when a bush or small terrain feature momentarily obscures their vision. In order for these elements to maintain contact with the patrol leader, it will be necessary for them to glance in his direction every few steps.

b. Point and scouts.—(1) Small patrols will employ from one man to a fire team as the point, depending on the enemy situation, terrain, and route being followed by the patrol as it advances. Normally, a patrol of squad size will use two riflemen as scouts. However, should the patrol come to a dangerous area or be in close prox-

imity to the enemy, the patrol leader might strengthen the point and use an entire fire team to cover the advance of the patrol.

(2) In such a case, the BAR man will move slightly behind the rest of the fire team in a position from which he can cover the movements of the scouting element. The size of the point will increase in relation to the size of the patrol.

(3) The point is responsible for investigating the route of advance immediately to the front of the patrol. When visibility is good they may precede the main body of the patrol by as much as 100 yards, but always maintain visual contact with the patrol leader.

c. Flanks.—(1) Flank security for a patrol the size of a squad or less may be provided by using one man on either side who moves as directed by the patrol leader. In special instances two-man groups may be necessary. Such a group operates by having the inside man place himself where he can keep the patrol leader in view at all times. However, the patrol leader or flanker remains within a maximum distance of 100 yards. The man farther out remains in sight of the inside man but normally does not move more than 20 to 25 yards away from him.

(2) In open terrain the flankers should investigate any cover within 100 yards of the general route of march of the patrol. In moving through dense woods or jungle, the use of flankers may become impracticable because of reduced visibility. In such cases the men normally assigned to flank protection move with the patrol itself, but maintain close observation to their assigned flank.

d. Rear point.—(1) A small patrol normally will have only one rifleman assigned as rear point who will maintain an interval between himself and the last man of the patrol of the limit of visibility up to about 50 yards. This rifleman maintains rear security for the patrol by constantly observing to the rear. He is also get-away man in case the patrol is ambushed. He stays out of the fire fight, and if the patrol is completely annihilated or if it becomes obvious that it will not be able to extricate itself, he returns to friendly lines to report the situation.

(2) The rear point will vary in size according to the enemy situation and the size of the patrol. Usually it is only necessary to keep a sharp

lookout to the rear to prevent a surprise enemy attack from that direction.

11-27 MOVEMENTS.—*a.* Prior to leaving friendly lines, the patrol leader must select a route to his final destination. This may be done on a map, on an aerial photograph, or on the actual ground to be covered. Intermediate objectives should be selected along that route, and the progress of the patrol governed by the attainment of these successive objectives.

b. A patrol should always have one or more assembly points designated where it can assemble in case it is dispersed, ambushed, or surprised by enemy attack. Normally, an intermediate objective becomes the assembly point as the patrol

moves beyond it. In this way the patrol leader can be absolutely sure that each individual member of the patrol is thoroughly familiar with the location of the assembly point.

c. Members of a dispersed patrol try to reach the designated assembly point with all possible speed in order to facilitate resumption of the mission. If the patrol leader does not show up within a reasonable period of time, the second in command reorganizes the patrol and carries out the mission.

PATROL FORMATIONS



FIRE TEAM PATROL WEDGE FORMATION

FIGURE 1.—“Fire team patrol, wedge formation.”

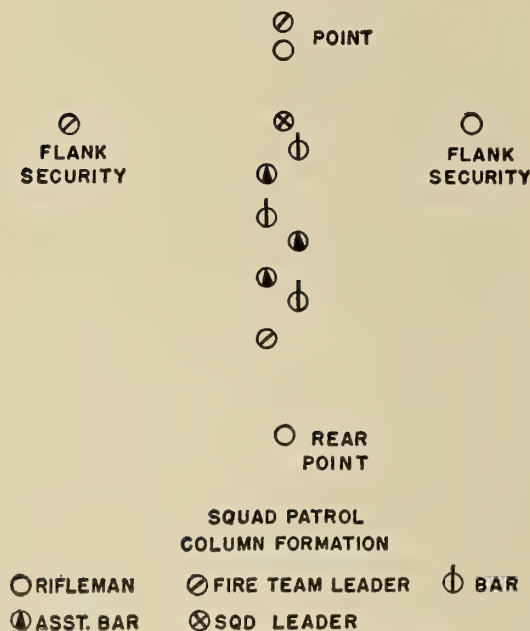


FIGURE 2.—“Squad patrol, column formation.”

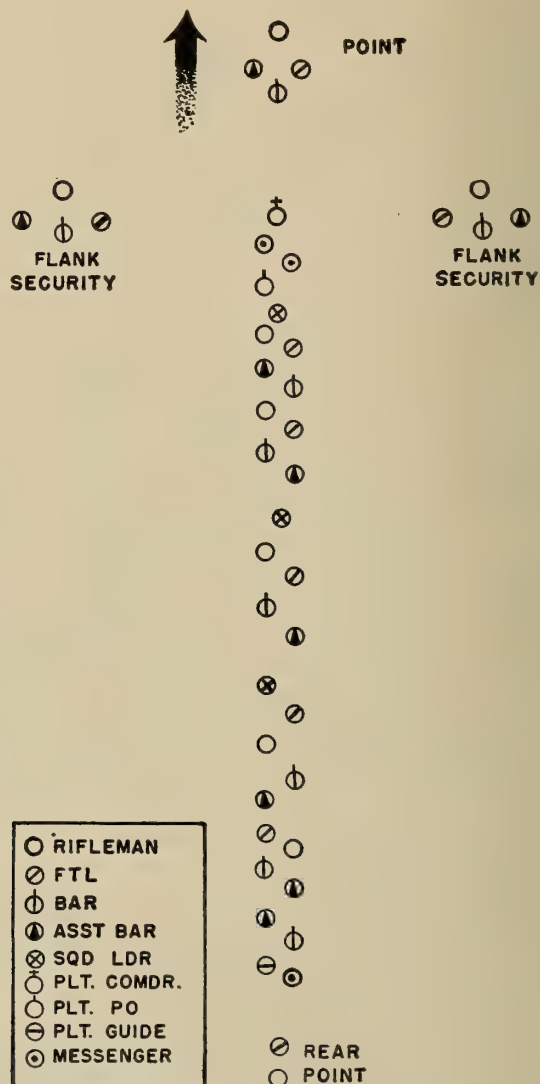


FIGURE 3.—“Platoon patrol, column formation.”

SECTION IV

RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS

	Par.	Page
General.....	11-28	481
Types of retrograde movements.....	11-29	481
Withdrawals.....	11-30	481
Delaying actions.....	11-31	483
Retirement.....	11-32	483

11-28 GENERAL.—A retrograde movement is any movement of a command to the rear, or away from the enemy. It may be forced by the enemy or made voluntarily.

11-29 TYPES OF RETROGRADE MOVEMENTS.—*a.* Types of retrograde movements are as follows:

- (1) Withdrawals.
- (2) Delaying actions.
- (3) Retirements.

b. Reasons for conducting retrograde movements are as follows:

- (1) To disengage from battle.
- (2) To avoid battle in a disadvantageous position.
- (3) To draw the enemy into positions unfavorable to him.
- (4) To conform to the movements of the other troops.
- (5) To gain time without fighting a decisive engagement.
- (6) To permit a portion of the command to be employed elsewhere.

11-30 WITHDRAWALS.—*a.* A withdrawal from action is that operation of breaking off combat with a hostile force. The general purpose of the operation is to regain or preserve freedom of action of our main forces.

b. A daylight withdrawal under enemy observation and fire usually results in heavy losses and serious disorganization of the command. A strong and alert enemy may seize this opportunity to attack the withdrawing force when it had left its defensive position and is disorganized. A night withdrawal, behind a strong covering force, enables the withdrawing force to leave its defensive position unobserved and

move to the rear to assembly areas or to new positions before daylight.

c. Night withdrawals.—(1) Characteristics of a night withdrawal are:

(*a*) Small units withdraw as a whole and simultaneously, leaving approximately one-third of the entire command as a covering force.

(*b*) The most heavily engaged units are withdrawn last to prevent a hostile breakthrough.

(*c*) Secrecy and coordination must be exercised if the withdrawal is to be successful.

(2) *Technique of the withdrawal.*—Upon receipt of the warning order for a withdrawal, the company commander will:

(*a*) Make a **reconnaissance**. He determines the route the company will use in going back to the battalion assembly area. He then chooses an assembly area for the company and the routes the forward platoons will use in moving to the company assembly area.

(*b*) He formulates his plan based upon (1) information included in the warning order, (2) his reconnaissance, and (3) special considerations attendant upon the situation. To avoid unnecessary movement and to maintain secrecy, the company commander will not ordinarily assemble his subordinates to receive the order, but will either go himself or send his executive officer to issue the order, individually, to platoon leaders.

(3) *The withdrawal order.*—This order will include:

- (*a*) Platoon and company assembly areas.
- (*b*) Routes of withdrawal to assembly areas.
- (*c*) The sequence of withdrawal.
- (*d*) The time or signal for the withdrawal.
- (*e*) The size of the covering force.

(4) *Action of the platoon leader.*—Upon receipt of the company withdrawal order, platoon commanders will execute a reconnaissance to

determine squad assembly areas and routes thereto. Then, having formulated their plans, platoon commanders will issue the order to squad leaders at the latter's positions. Individual men withdraw straight to the rear to the squad assembly area. The BAR man is usually the last man of the fire team to withdraw. After the squad has reached its assembly area, it will withdraw as a unit (minus the covering force) to the platoon assembly area over the routes already designated. The squad leader will withdraw with his last fire team. When all squads have reached the platoon assembly area, the platoon commander moves the platoon to the company assembly area. He accompanies the last squad.

d. Daylight withdrawals.—(1) *Characteristics.*—(a) Daylight withdrawals are difficult to execute since all movements must be screened from the enemy. Front line platoons withdraw by thinning out their lines while protecting themselves by the fire of automatic weapons left in position. Forward units withdraw under the covering fire of supporting units to their rear, and by employing smoke screens and using covered terrain.

(b) Each platoon is assigned a zone of action and successive covered positions in the withdrawal, to assure control and to avoid confusion.

(c) As in night withdrawals, platoon and company assembly areas are prescribed.

(d) The larger the withdrawing unit, the more difficult, hazardous, and time-consuming the execution.

(2) *Technique of daylight withdrawal.*—(a) As in a night withdrawal, the company commander makes a reconnaissance for routes and assembly areas. He formulates a plan and issues orders. He prevents unnecessary movement and maintains secrecy. As in night withdrawals, the least heavily engaged unit is withdrawn first. This is done to prevent a hostile break-through, which would jeopardize the entire command.

(b) In movements to the rear, machine guns displace one gun at a time. The first gun moved should be in a position to fire before the second gun is displaced.

e. The covering force.—(1) A covering force is a body of troops which provides security for a larger force by observation, attack, defense, or a combination of these. For a company, the

covering force commander is usually the executive officer. He assumes command just prior to the execution of the withdrawal.

(2) *Employment.*—(a) One squad will normally be left to cover the area formerly occupied by a rifle platoon. One machine gun with a skeleton crew of 2 or 3 men is left in place of a machine gun section. The machine guns are attached to the covering force. They come under the direct control of the covering force commander and he is responsible for their protection.

(b) In preparation for a night withdrawal, the covering force commander redistributes his force in order to cover as much of the company front as possible. If there must be gaps in the line, they should fall between squads and not between individuals within the squads. Men should always be placed in pairs to keep them from becoming panicky.

(c) One squad is left in the position formerly occupied by the support platoon. Its mission is to patrol the company rear areas, destroying any enemy patrols which may have penetrated the company area.

(d) At night, the covering force deceives the enemy by simulating normal activity along the company front and covers the withdrawal of the main body to its objective. To do this, the mortars, machine guns, and BAR's fire at a very high rate of fire to compensate for their lack of numbers. Men must also move to various positions along the front and fire from them. This is designed to make the enemy think the whole front is still physically occupied.

(e) When the covering force has completed its mission, it too will fall back to rejoin its unit. If the covering force can fall back without having to fight, it will use the designated routes and assembly areas and move to them as quickly as possible. On the contrary, if the enemy forces the covering force to fight all the way back, it will employ a delaying action along successive positions until it rejoins its unit. Under all circumstances, the covering force is responsible for providing its own security.

(f) The mission of the covering force in daytime is similar to that of the covering force at night. It diverts, stops, or restricts the enemy so that the forward platoons may disengage from the enemy, assemble, and continue to the

rear. Therefore, the covering force must be in position before the forward platoons start withdrawing. The covering force usually takes positions to the rear, then the withdrawing force will pass through the covering force. The covering force will then engage the enemy with long-range fires and continues covering the withdrawing platoons by a series of delaying actions.

(g) The covering force for a company is usually the support platoon. It occupies positions which allow it to cover the routes of withdrawal of the forward platoon and also the assembly areas.

11-31 DELAYING ACTIONS.—*a.* A delaying action is a form of defensive action employed to slow up the enemy's advance and gain time without fighting a decisive engagement. Delaying positions are those positions from which this mission can be accomplished.

b. Technique of executing a delaying action.—(1) In delaying positions, units locate their defenses on the topographical, rather than the military crests. This is done to facilitate long-range fire and observation.

(2) Automatic weapons, as well as riflemen, commence firing at the extreme ranges of 800 to 1,200 yards. By so doing, the enemy is forced to deploy early and make the time-consuming preparation for launching an attack.

(3) The withdrawal of a delaying force starts before the troops are pinned down by fire and before the enemy is close enough to launch an assault.

(4) The withdrawal of the delaying force may be brought about by withdrawing one unit at a time or all units simultaneously. When all units withdraw simultaneously, it becomes the responsibility of each unit commander to cover his own rearward movement.

11-32 RETIREMENT.—*a.* A retirement is a retrograde movement in which a force seeks to regain freedom of action, the movement being part of a well-defined plan which has for its purpose the refusal of decisive combat under the existing situation.

b. A retirement may be made in one stage or in several stages, depending upon the distance involved.

c. When a withdrawal from action precedes the retirement, actual retirement begins when march columns are formed.

d. Without competent orders to do so, a decision to retire is justified only when all possibilities of accomplishing the assigned mission have been exhausted and a continuation of the battle will lead either to excessive losses or to a decisive defeat.

e. No commander is authorized to order a retirement on his own initiative simply because of local misfortune or reverses suffered by an adjacent unit.

f. In retirements following a withdrawal, the most important considerations for a commander are to place distance, obstacles, and security forces between his main body and the enemy and to regain his freedom of action.

g. As fast as troop units arrive in assembly areas, they are formed into small columns and set in motion to the rear.

h. Road march formations usually are taken up when the zone of effective hostile light artillery fire is passed. Formations are modified to meet existing conditions of terrain, visibility, intensity of enemy fire, activity of enemy combat aviation, and tactical requirements for control and rapidity of movement.

i. As the distance from the enemy increases, small columns are consolidated into larger columns.

j. During the march to the rear, constant effort is made to increase the distance from the enemy. This will necessitate forced marches, night and day, while still providing effective security measures to protect the rear and the flanks, and to delay the enemy.

k. A retirement generally offers opportunities for the use of chemicals of all kinds. Smoke may assist security detachments in concealing their movements during successive withdrawals.

l. The mission of the rear guard is to protect the main body from surprise, harassment, and attack. By the successful execution of this mission, a rear guard covering a retirement enables the main body to avoid accepting battle, and regains for the commander of the force his freedom of action. The strength and composition of a rear guard are such as to permit the execution of its mission without the intervention of the main body. When necessary for the security of the main body, the rear guard sacrifices itself in the execution of its mission.

SECTION V

RAIDS

	Par.	Page
General.....	11-33	484
Supported raids.....	11-34	485
Unsupported raids.....	11-35	485
Duties of raiding party commanders.....	11-36	485

11-33 GENERAL.—*a. Purpose.*—Raids are made to capture prisoners; to capture or destroy material; to obtain information of hostile dispositions, strength, works, intentions, or methods of defense; and to inspire confidence and aggressiveness in the raiding troops and harass the enemy. The scope and extent of raiding done by a ship's landing party is limited by the size of the landing party, its state of training, and its armament.

b. Characteristics.—A raid is an attack followed by an instant withdrawal upon accomplishment of the mission. Unless carefully planned and executed, the withdrawal is the most difficult and costly part of the operation. Flank security is of vital importance, since both flanks of the raiding forces are exposed.

c. Initiation.—Raids are usually ordered by the naval landing party commander. He issues instructions covering their purpose and the fire support to be furnished. He will also prescribe the area to be raided, the size of the force to be employed, and the date and hour of the raid.

d. Selection of area to be raided.—The area to be raided should be one which is lightly defended, or one which is difficult for the enemy to defend because of restricted fields of fire. In daylight raids, covered routes of approach and withdrawal are desirable. The selection of an area close to friendly front lines and the absence of serious obstacles or difficult ground to traverse speed up the raid and facilitate the withdrawal. If the raid is to be supported, the area should be so located that it can be isolated by placing fires to neutralize adjacent and rearward hostile positions without endangering the raiding force.

e. Size of the raiding force.—The size of the

raiding party should be kept to the minimum which can reasonably be expected to accomplish the purpose of the raid. As the size of the raiding force increases, so do the difficulties of achieving surprise, control, and speed of execution.

f. Types of raids.—Raids are classified as supported and unsupported, and can be conducted either by day or at night.

g. Daylight raids.—Daylight raids will usually be supported. There will usually be preparation fires by supporting weapons, and smoke will ordinarily be used to protect the raiding forces.

(1) In daylight raids, covered routes of approach and withdrawal should be utilized and the raid launched from the last covered position. Whenever practicable, the withdrawal is made by route(s) other than those used in the advance. Similarly, road intersections or other prominent landmarks are avoided.

(2) *Conduct.*—(a) A raid conducted in daylight differs from any other daylight attack principally in the rapidity with which it is carried to a conclusion. The withdrawal of the assault parties is covered by the advance and flank security parties.

(b) The principal duties of the battalion commander during the raid will be to decide when to call for, shift, or lift supporting fires, to be constantly on the alert for unexpected hostile reactions, to take prompt and adequate measures to meet any unforeseen emergency, and to decide when to order the withdrawal.

h. Night raids.—Night raids are conducted in a similar manner to a night attack, followed by withdrawal as soon as the mission is accomplished.

(1) *Routes.*—Unlike the daylight raid, the routes for a night raid should be selected in open terrain when possible and with good terrain features to guide on. Routes should skirt the edge of woods, as men walking through heavy

brush or through a wooded area cannot approach the enemy position with the stealth required for surprise. Flank and advance security parties precede the raiding force in ample time to clear hostile patrols from the area and prevent premature discovery of the raid.

(2) Whenever practicable, the routes for the withdrawal should be a different route than that used in the approach to the enemy position.

11-34 SUPPORTED RAIDS.—*a.* When the mission requires the use of a large force, or that the raiding force remain in the hostile position for any length of time, the fires of supporting weapons will usually be required for adequate protection, particularly during the withdrawal. Units as large as a company or a battalion engage only in supported raids.

b. Supporting fires.—(1) Supporting fires should neutralize all hostile positions within effective radius of the area to be raided and box in the area so as to isolate the defending troops. These fires must be precisely prearranged as to targets and signals to be used. Supporting fires may begin either at a specific time or upon call of the raid commander. Signals are also used for shifting or lifting fires.

(2) Since the prescribed fires must be accurately placed under any condition of visibility, they should be registered in advance. In order to preserve secrecy, registration should cover a considerable number of points in addition to those for which data are desired and, if possible, should be spread out over a period of more than one day.

(3) Naval gunfire and aviation may be employed to box in the objective by fire on adjacent and rearward hostile positions and on avenues of enemy approach, both during the raid and withdrawal. Supporting fires prior to the raid may sacrifice secrecy and surprise; however, the strength of the position may require that a short preparation be placed on the area to be raided.

(4) Machine guns place bands of fire near the flanks of the area; they may also be employed to supplement the naval gun fire preparation.

(5) If certain weapons are to fire on more than one target during the raid, specific instructions as to when their fire is to be shifted are included in the order.

11-35 UNSUPPORTED RAIDS.—*a.* Un-

supported raids are conducted without the fires of supporting weapons and depend primarily on surprise and on darkness, fog, or smoke, for protection. When the mission requires the capture of a few prisoners followed by an immediate withdrawal, an unsupported raid by a small force is preferable.

b. Unsupported daylight raids.—Generally unsupported daylight raids will not be made unless the terrain will afford a covered avenue of approach and withdrawal, whereby the raiding force can achieve surprise. The raid would be executed against small isolated enemy positions. Smoke may be used to cover the withdrawal.

c. Unsupported night raids.—A platoon or smaller unit may be employed in an unsupported night raid. The success of the raid depends on careful reconnaissance, planning, and training.

(1) The routes for an unsupported night raid would be chosen with the same view in mind as those for a supported raid. Choose routes that stay in the open terrain and along low ground.

(2) *Conduct.*—The raid must be carried out with surprise, stealth, and speed.

11-36 DUTIES OF RAIDING PARTY COMMANDER.—*a. Reconnaissance.*—The reconnaissance necessary for a raid can best be made during the daytime. Subordinate commanders should make at least one night reconnaissance in addition to that made in daylight, if the raid is to be made at night. The reconnaissance must be thorough and just as detailed as time permits. Guides or patrols which have been out over the area may assist in the reconnaissance by giving information of specific areas, but unit leaders must make a physical reconnaissance if at all possible. The object of this detailed reconnaissance will be to determine:

(1) Prominent terrain features which will assist in guiding the unit to its objective; (2) routes of approach which may be employed; (3) enemy dispositions and habits. The result of a thorough reconnaissance is the detailed information which is necessary for the formulation of a plan.

b. Plan.—(1) A simple plan thoroughly understood by all raiding troops is essential. Each plan must be devised to fit the existing

terrain and situation. In drawing up a plan, the following points should be kept in mind.

(a) The objective should be limited. It should be limited as to terrain accessibility, distance from friendly front lines, and limited as to the number of enemy troops defending or capable of defending the area. In drawing up plans, the objective, the terrain and how it will affect any probable actions of the raiding force or the enemy and what advantages or disadvantages it offers, all must be considered.

(b) The visibility and wind direction must be considered in evolving a plan. If the moon is bright, visibility may be such that the enemy will have no difficulty detecting the raiding forces prematurely.

(c) Vital to achieving surprise is the maintenance of secrecy. The exact hour of the raid should be kept secret until the last possible moment. A password must be decided upon and all hands properly instructed as to its use.

(d) Another security measure to be considered in the planning stage is the use of patrols. They may be employed to destroy known or indicated enemy listening posts or outguards. Flank security patrols must be kept to the minimum number required to accomplish the mission.

(e) Intricate maneuvers are not employed in night raids. Maneuvers are kept simple, with most movements straight to the front.

(f) Included in the plan are details to assist in control of movements and supporting fire.

(2) After the plan is evolved, the order is issued. It will follow the usual five-paragraph combat order in form, but should be in greater detail. It should be preceded by a warning

order so that subordinate unit commanders can make their necessary preparations.

c. Organization.—The raiding force is subdivided into smaller groups, each organized and equipped to accomplish a specific purpose. Groups may include assault parties for accomplishing missions within the hostile position, parties to provide security for the assault parties, parties for the handling of prisoners or removing captured material, and a reserve party for use in emergency. Advance and flank security parties are provided to deal with hostile patrols to the front and protect the flanks. The exact organization varies with each situation. Tactical unity is maintained insofar as practicable; however, each party should be organized for the specific mission it is expected to accomplish.

d. Equipment.—(1) The battalion commander prescribes the equipment to be carried. For night raids, similar equipment and means of identification to those for night attacks are prescribed.

(2) Measures are taken to make the appearance of the troops blend with the terrain. White cloth may be worn over the uniform to match snow; at other times, both the clothing and the face and hands may be smeared with mud, pot black, or charcoal.

(3) Equipment carried during rehearsals will be the same equipment prescribed for the raid.

e. Training and rehearsals.—Time is often available for rehearsals. At least one daylight rehearsal and, for night raids, an additional night rehearsal should be held whenever possible. These rehearsals should be conducted on ground that is similar to the area to be raided.

SECTION VI

COMBAT IN BUILT-UP AREAS

	Par.	Page
Defense, general.....	11-37	487
Defensive plan.....	11-38	487
Defensive position.....	11-39	487
Civilian control.....	11-40	488
Supply.....	11-41	488
Communication.....	11-42	489
Distribution of troops.....	11-43	489
Battalion headquarters company.....	11-44	489
Distribution of rifle companies.....	11-45	489
Tactical employment, rifle platoon.....	11-46	489
Defense of buildings.....	11-47	490
Rifle squad and individual.....	11-48	490
Preparation of individual buildings for defense.....	11-49	490
Offense, general.....	11-50	492
Phases of attack.....	11-51	492
Principles of the attack.....	11-52	492
Planning the attack.....	11-53	493
Coordination between attacking units.....	11-54	494
Infantry battalion.....	11-55	494
Battalion reserve.....	11-56	494
Rifle company.....	11-57	496
Supporting units and special equipment.....	11-58	496
Rifle platoon.....	11-59	496
Conduct of attack.....	11-60	496
Rifle squad.....	11-61	496
Attacking a building.....	11-62	497
Miscellaneous.....	11-63	498

11-37 DEFENSE, GENERAL.—a. A thorough knowledge of the principles applicable to the defense of cities is essential to the formulation of sound plans for the conduct of the defense of a built-up area, as well as for the conduct of the attack of built-up areas.

b. The tactics and technique of defensive combat as described in Chapter 10 have application to the defense of cities, towns, and villages. The purpose of this section is to describe certain features of defensive combat that are peculiar to the defense of built-up areas.

c. Cities, towns, and villages constructed of inflammable materials afford little protection. Those of masonry construction can be developed into well-fortified islands of resistance which offer opportunities for a strong defense. The

advantage is on the side of the defender. Each block and each building is a potential fort which provides such concealment that the attacker is unable to tell which is strongly defended and which lightly held, causing him to disperse his fires and waste his ammunition. The attacker's bombardment serves to increase the camouflage of the defensive position by creating rubble and debris.

11-38 DEFENSIVE PLAN.—a. The numerical weakness of naval landing parties will normally limit their operations to the fixed defense of vital localities which include public utilities, government buildings, and other installations particularly adapted for defensive purpose because of their construction and location. With the organization of key positions along the defensive line as a basis, other defensive measures are developed by arranging mutually protecting and supporting fires; by the construction of obstacles; and by the employment of security patrols. Areas lying outside the protected area are defended by fire or counterattack. In general, no attempt should be made to prevent hostile penetration into the city, but the enemy must be promptly ejected when his presence is discovered.

b. Irregulars seldom attack a large, well-garrisoned city, but such attacks have occurred, and every naval landing party occupying a city must have a defensive plan. The defense may be assigned to a single tactical unit, and subsectors assigned to subordinate tactical units so stationed as to be mutually supporting. Divided responsibility results in uncertainty and indecision. In any event, the whole defensive operation should rest with a single commander.

11-39 DEFENSIVE POSITION.—a. The defense of a built-up area is comparable to the defense of any battle position in that the plan for the defense must insure covering the front and flanks by fire, and provide depth, mutual

support, all around protection, and maximum weapon support.

b. The main line of resistance may be either inside or outside the built-up area, but is never along a clearly defined edge. The nearer edge of a built-up area is a convenient registration point for artillery and is likely to be subjected to the most concentrated fire. In the usual situation, the main line of resistance may best be located in suburban districts so as to command avenues of hostile approach and take full advantage of observation, fields of fire, and opportunities for flanking fire against attacking forces. The holding garrison consists of a series of unit defense areas with supporting weapons attached, each occupying a separate tactical locality (one or more buildings or blocks of buildings), permitting small-unit control. These defense areas are distributed laterally and in depth in such a manner that the defensive fires cross the front and flanks of adjacent elements. Boundaries are usually located in streets and limiting points at street intersections, as these features provide unmistakable locations and facilitate mutual coordination between adjacent units.

c. Preparations must be made to resist the initial attack from all approaches by the use of defended road blocks, barricades, and with small defense areas at all advantageous locations.

d. The number and kind of obstacles that may be used are limited only by time, materials, equipment, labor available, and the ingenuity of the defender. However, obstacles may interfere with maneuver, supply and evacuation of friendly troops, and may disclose details of the position to the enemy. The type and priority of construction of obstacles are usually ordered by higher authority. Tank barriers may be improvised by blowing large craters, demolishing walls, overturning street or railway cars, and by use of steel rails, beams, and rubble obtained from demolished buildings. Such barriers should be reinforced with mines, protected by wire, and by small-arms firing from locations in nearby buildings. Such barriers will serve the dual purpose of furnishing protection from mechanized attack and attack by foot elements.

e. Because of the lack of available troops, the

defense of the city may be impossible. In such case, only such positions are occupied as may be readily defended. It may be possible to occupy a hill which commands the city, leaving the city unoccupied except by patrols to keep it clear of the enemy and to maintain order. Usually, however, it will be necessary to fortify some buildings or streets to guard against sudden attack and to prevent looting.

f. The final defense of the city should be based on the organization of one or more strong points, located in solid, well-constructed buildings which afford good fields of mutually supporting fire. Such buildings should be connected by protected, covered routes in order to make it difficult or impossible to cut them off. They constitute the bases from which counterattacks are launched for the recapture of the city.

g. Men should be quartered as near as possible to their battle stations. Each station must be under the command of a petty officer. Men must know their battle stations, the general plan of defense, the parts of the front and flanks to be covered, and the location of other friendly detachments.

h. Plans to provide for counterattack under any likely development of the situation and for cutting off the retreat of hostile groups should be provided.

11-40 CIVILIAN CONTROL.—Defense of a built-up area necessitates timely and effective disposition of all persons unwilling or unable to contribute to the defensive effort. It also necessitates the control of essential utilities. Where practicable, friendly inhabitants should be incorporated into defensive forces, because such individuals usually have the will to resist and, if placed in a good position, can stop forces of superior military training, particularly when fighting for their own homes. Brassards or other forms of identification must be provided.

11-41 SUPPLY.—All types of supplies should be dispersed and stocked sufficiently to sustain each tactical locality, however small, for a prolonged period in case the locality becomes isolated. Ammunition, food, water, and other critical items must be securely stored in bombproof, fireproof, and gasproof shelters. The supply and distribution of water for personnel and fire fighting may become a major problem because of contamination or destruction of

local sources of water supply. Supply plans should include plans for replenishment by aircraft and hand-carrying parties. Activities pertaining to supply and evacuation usually will be carried on at night.

11-42 COMMUNICATION.—All communication equipment should be located in well-protected places, in or near the headquarters of the using unit. Radio service will usually be found less subject to interruption than the telephone. Civilians may be expected to report attacks to other friendly organizations within a few hours. Friendly natives are better messengers than members of the landing party, as they can pass through the hostile lines in the guise of peaceful citizens or even as enemy soldiers.

11-43 DISTRIBUTION OF TROOPS.—*a. Landing party battalion.*—A battalion occupying a defense area will usually be assigned a frontage of four to eight city blocks, depending on the defensive strength of the locality. The depth of the defensive area may vary from three to six city blocks. The battalion is responsible for the all-around defense of its assigned area and all installations of the battalion contained therein.

b. The battalion commander usually places two rifle companies on the main line of resistance and holds one in reserve. All or part of the crew-served weapons may be attached to rifle companies. As soon as possible, obstacles are constructed, supplies are brought up, and the area is fully organized for defense. Small holding detachments are provided by the reserve company for its defense areas.

c. Battalion reserve.—The reserve usually organizes its position in the rear portion of the defending units' area so as to complete the all-around defense of the sector. After completing the organization of its assigned defense areas, the reserve (less small holding garrisons left in each defense area) usually is assembled in bombproof shelters prepared to counter-attack any penetration of the defensive sector or to occupy its previously prepared positions. Elements of the reserve may be employed initially on security missions or, in certain situations, held in readiness outside the built-up area to prevent encirclement.

11-44 BATTALION HEADQUARTERS

COMPANY.—Battalion intelligence personnel will establish a system of protected observation posts from which the front and flanks of the battalion area may be observed. Advantage should be taken of high buildings for this purpose. The probable effect of enemy shelling and bombing, and limitation of visibility by smoke must be considered, and a number of alternate observation posts prepared. The battalion communication system should be established so as to make the maximum use of signal equipment available. All men available for use as messengers must be familiar with the battalion areas and protected routes to and from the battalion command post.

11-45 DISTRIBUTION OF RIFLE COMPANIES.—*a. Front line companies.*—(1) Usually two rifle platoons are assigned defense areas on the main line of resistance and one rifle platoon in the company support area. Platoon defense areas are located so as to be mutually supporting and capable of all-around defense. Additional machine guns are attached to the front line companies and are usually held under company control.

(2) A rifle company occupying a defense area on the main line of resistance in a built-up area usually will be assigned a frontage of two to four city blocks, depending on the defensive strength of the locality. The depth of the company area may vary from two to three city blocks.

(3) Each front line company should decentralize its supply plans by distributing ample quantities of all critical items to each defense area.

11-46 TACTICAL EMPLOYMENT, RIFLE PLATOON.—*a. Defense area.*—In the defense of a built-up area, a rifle platoon, with machine guns attached, may be employed to organize and defend a tactical locality on the main line of resistance, in the company support area, or in the battalion reserve area. It normally occupies one defense area. For an illustration of a typical rifle platoon defense area, see figure 4.

b. Organization of platoon area.—(1) A rifle platoon defending a tactical locality assigns each rifle squad to a clearly defined area of responsibility. The platoon area is systematically organized into a fortified position for an

all-around defense by skillfully emplacing the attached machine guns; improving local fields of fire; constructing obstacles to both mechanized attack and attack by enemy foot troops; preparing bombproof and gasproof shelters; storing quantities of ammunition, food, water, medical supplies, and equipment for a prolonged defense; and establishing a reliable system of communication with adjacent and higher units. Having organized the defense, the available personnel are then divided into two reliefs, with one relief constantly on duty while the other relief is resting. During an alert the position is fully manned.

(2) Sentries should be posted outside a building whenever possible, especially at night. They should be on the ground level and on the roof if the latter is accessible to the enemy. From the outside, they will be in a better position to listen for and investigate any movement.

11-47 DEFENSE OF BUILDINGS.—In preparing buildings for defense, the first consideration is the selection of buildings of solid construction suitably located for the accomplishment of the tactical mission. Buildings which are so located or so inflammable as to weaken the defensive position may be demolished or burned, if such action will not unduly disclose to the enemy the details of the position. If extensive demolition is required, the approval of higher authority should be obtained. The next step is the organization of each selected building for all-around defense by the disposition of squads and individuals; the assignment of primary, alternate and supplementary positions to attached machine guns; improvement of fields of fire by removal of fences, hedges, and outbuildings that obstruct the view; and by the construction of obstacles. Machine guns assigned to close-defense missions are emplaced on or near the ground level so as to command the avenues of approach; those given antiaircraft or long-range fire missions are usually located on the roof. Antipersonnel mines and booby traps should be installed in buildings which are not occupied or from which the defenders are withdrawing.

11-48 RIFLE SQUAD AND INDIVIDUAL.—*a. General.*—The platoon commander's defense order assigns to the rifle squad the building or buildings to be occupied and de-

fended, the obstacles to be constructed, a specific area of responsibility, and general locations and principal directions of fire for the automatic rifleman. The location and sector of fire of members of the squad and the assignment of individuals to reliefs and duties are functions of the squad leader.

b. Position of squad.—During an alert the squad defenses are manned by all available personnel and weapons. At other times, the squad is divided into two reliefs with one relief on duty while the other relief is resting.

11-49 PREPARATION OF INDIVIDUAL BUILDINGS FOR DEFENSE.—*a.* Each building should be so organized and defended that the enemy is prevented from getting above the defenders and fighting his way down.

b. Primary, alternate, and supplementary loopholes for riflemen and for all weapons should be prepared, reinforced, and camouflaged. Loopholes for riflemen may be made high so that the firer can fire from a platform, or low so that he can fire from the prone position. Low loopholes are blocked with sandbags when not in use. It is a good practice to fire successive shots from different loopholes, if practicable. Dummy loopholes and dummy heads may be used to draw the enemy's fire.

c. Great care must be used in the selection of firing positions. Firing should be from unexpected places. Weapons which are to be fired from windows or large openings should be located well back in the shadows of the room. The area in front of the weapon should be wet to prevent dust and consequent disclosure of position by muzzle blast. The muzzle of a weapon should not be allowed to project from the covered position.

d. Window panes should be removed to prevent injury from flying glass. Openings, including the chimney, should be screened or closed in order to exclude grenades. Curtains should be placed over the upper portion of openings to darken the room and prevent observation by the enemy.

e. Every precaution must be taken to guard against surprise, demolition, and fires. Trip or barbed wires with tin cans attached may give timely warning of enemy approach. The floor over the basement dugouts or occupied rooms should be reinforced and fireproofed with

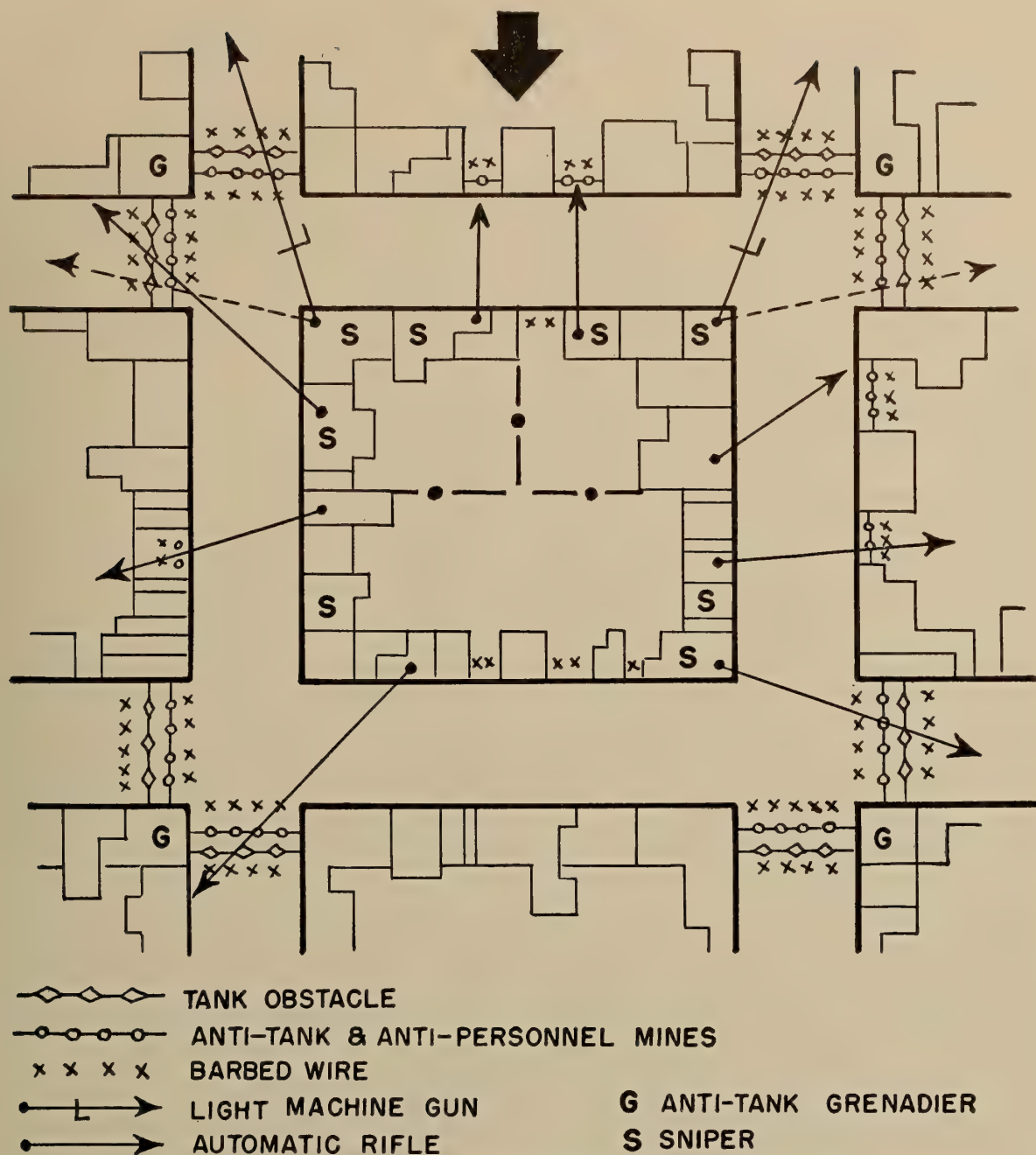


FIGURE 4.—Defense area of rifle platoon reinforced in built-up area—schematic diagram.

wet earth or masonry. Some fire fighting equipment should be kept in readiness.

f. One or more well-camouflaged and sand-bagged observation posts in the attic or upper story should be prepared. These positions may also be used to prevent enemy infiltration over the roof and for sniping.

g. If the enemy has previously occupied the

building, special precautions to detect and avoid booby traps must be taken.

h. One exit should always be kept available. The walls of interior rooms can be breached in concealed places, such as behind heavy furniture, under stairs, or other places not easily discovered by the enemy.

i. All openings should be barricaded. Doors

required for use should be bulletproofed by placing sandbags behind them, and restricting the opening to the minimum necessary for passage. The opening should be so located that the enemy cannot see into the room. In some cases it may be necessary to rehang the door to effect this safety precaution.

j. Defenders should keep an empty room between them and the enemy if the enemy is attempting to breach the wall of the building being defended. This prevents casualties caused by the demolition blast. Immediately after the explosion, positions should be taken to fire through the hole at the same time keeping alert for any hand grenades thrown through the opening.

k. Downspouts, or anything which the enemy could use as an aid in climbing the side of the building should be removed.

11-50 OFFENSE, GENERAL.—*a.* The tactics and technique of offensive combat as described in chapters 9 and 10 have application to the attack and occupation of built-up areas. The purpose of this section is to state the application of the fundamental doctrine and tactical principles of offensive combat in operations involving the attack of towns, cities and villages.

b. A naval landing party may be called upon to occupy a built-up area which is held by hostile forces for the following reasons:

- (1) To use as a base for further operations.
- (2) To suppress disorder.
- (3) To establish a neutral zone of refuge for the protection of life and property.
- (4) To evict irregular forces.

c. Ample provisions should be made to accomplish the occupation with speed even should unexpected resistance develop. A considerable show of force is often sufficient to overawe the irregulars and permit a peaceful, unopposed occupation of the area.

d. Surprise may best be effected by an attack at daybreak. In certain instances opposition may thus be avoided. Unexpected, prompt, firm action is, in a psychological sense, a surprise.

e. Whenever practicable, all buildings should be searched, particularly for weapons. To prevent sniping, this search should be conducted as the advance progresses through the city.

11-51 PHASES OF ATTACK.—When the attack of a defended built-up area has been decided upon, plans must cover two distinct phases as follows:

a. Phase 1.—The capture of an initial position within the built-up area, the possession of which will eliminate hostile fields of fire, reduce the effectiveness of hostile long-range flat-trajectory fires, and limit enemy observation from outside the area.

b. Phase 2.—The advance through the built-up area. Plans for this phase must provide for the following:

(1) Decentralization of control to subordinate units.

(2) Regaining of control at stated times or on designated positions. Control will be facilitated by frequent reports from subordinate units, either periodically or upon reaching predetermined objectives.

(3) An organized mopping-up of hostile resistance. In strongly defended areas it may be necessary for the leading elements to mop up as they advance. In lightly defended areas, it may be possible for the leading elements to push forward rapidly, leaving the mopping-up activities to support and reserve units.

(4) Steps to insure the maintenance of communications between supporting units, adjacent units, and from front to rear.

11-52 PRINCIPLES OF THE ATTACK.—Village fighting is a specialized operation and requires a specialized technique. Some of the principles governing this specialized operation are:

a. Attacking units are organized into small groups capable of independent action. Control by higher unit commanders will be practically non-existent when units are committed to action. Units as small as squads and even fire teams, operate independently and under the command of their own leaders. Members of the same unit will often lose contact with one another. These conditions are imposed by one difficulties of communication while fighting among buildings.

b. The plan of attack is based on precise, accurate, and complete information. The plan of the city should be known. Often it is more difficult to find out where these strong points

are, than it is to reduce them once they are discovered. Sources of information are:

(1) Standard travel publications such as guide books, road maps, city maps, industrial reports, newspapers, and magazines.

(2) Special summaries obtained through normal intelligence channels.

(3) Information from local inhabitants regarding hostile activities and dispositions, and recent changes that have occurred in structures within the area of interest.

(4) Aerial reconnaissance, aerial photographs, and maps.

(5) Aggressive reconnaissance, including especially organized raiding parties employed to secure specific information or to capture prisoners.

(6) Prisoners.

c. In the attack plans, instructions must be kept clear and simple. Complicated maneuvers, such as one involving a change of direction are to be avoided.

d. Action must be swift and aggressive in order to achieve surprise. If the enemy has any warning of the attack, he will quickly try to turn almost every house into a fortress. Speed is essential. The attackers can succeed only by giving the opponent no time to be prepared, giving them no rest in retreat, and no chance to reorganize and reassure themselves.

e. In advancing through a built-up area, streets are used only when absolutely necessary. Movement along the streets is more rapid, but it also provides better targets for snipers and automatic weapons firing zone fires. Back yards, gardens, rooftops, and routes through buildings should be used to reach the far end of a town, if possible.

f. No movement is made without covering fire. This is discussed in detail in paragraph 11-61.

g. Objectives must not only be limited, but also definite. Frontages must be narrow for all attacking units. The area must be attacked systematically, section by section. Adherence to this principle will help eliminate the possibility of missing groups of defenders and leaving hostile centers of resistance in the rear. An example of a limited and definite objective for one platoon in the attack would be the clearing of the buildings facing a single street.

11-53 PLANNING THE ATTACK.—

a. Points to remember in formulating a plan:

(1) Although the objective may be surrounded prior to the attack, an avenue of retreat is left open to the hostile forces. Along this apparent avenue of retreat an ambushing force should be in position.

(2) The enemy-occupied area should be attacked with the object of dividing it. Assault groups isolate areas into as many pockets as possible so as to deny the enemy freedom of movement. Groups of fortified buildings which compose a stronghold are reduced and then the attack continued to the next objective.

b. Factors affecting choice of plan.—(1) The disposition, strength, and attitude of the enemy fundamentally affect the choice of plan. Rarely will the enemy be in sufficient force to garrison every building, and seldom will it be to his advantage to do so. Before an attack can be planned, it must be determined what buildings he occupies, whether these are strongly or lightly held, and whether he intends to conduct a suicidal defense of each strongpoint, or merely a delaying action to retard the attackers' advance.

(2) The nature of the terrain surrounding the town will dictate the methods of approach.

(3) The location of the public utilities may influence the plan. If the attackers plan to use the town, they will want to seize the power station, radio station, telephone exchange, the gas works, and the fire stations early in the attack to prevent their destruction by the defenders.

(4) The time available for the attack must be considered.

(5) The construction of the buildings must be taken into consideration, as the reduction of reinforced concrete or stone buildings presents complications and difficulties not encountered in attacking buildings made of wood.

(6) The weather is an important factor since fog, heavy rain, or snow will hamper the enemy's observation and provide the attacking forces with better concealment than they could expect on a bright, sunny day.

(7) The attitude of the civilians who may be found in or near the town will influence the plan. Civilians hostile to the enemy can give the attackers valuable assistance.

11-54 COORDINATION BETWEEN ATTACKING UNITS.—It is essential that, prior to the attack, definite plans be made for maintaining coordination between all attacking units. There must be coordination within the ranks of the forward rifle troops, and equally close coordination between these forward rifle troops and the supporting weapons. Methods of establishing coordination are:

- a. Use of intermediate objectives at which each unit will reorganize briefly and wait for further orders before continuing the attack. These intermediate objectives may be cross streets, canals, ditches, alleys, the near edge of a park, or any other easily designated landmark.
- b. Time schedule.

c. Visual signals.

d. A combination of methods.

11-55 BATTALION.—*Plan of attack.*—

a. *Formation.*—(1) The formation to be adopted and the zones of advance of companies in the attack are determined by:

- (a) Strength of enemy resistance expected.
- (b) Width of the battalion zone.
- (c) Density and size of buildings within the zone.
- (d) Depth of advance required.

(2) When the width of the battalion zone exceeds two blocks, two rifle companies are usually assigned to the attacking echelon. (See fig. 5.) Normally, a rifle company is not assigned more than two blocks.

(3) When the built-up area consists of blocks of buildings, such as the business section of towns or cities, where the buildings must be attacked block by block, streets are usually designated as boundaries. The buildings are the immediate objectives and their capture must be made the responsibility of a single commander.

(4) In a built-up area, where the density of buildings does not require a block-by-block attack, it may be desirable to designate boundaries within the blocks in order that houses on both sides of the street will be included in the zone of one attacking unit. Such an attack is designed to clear a street and the street must be made the responsibility of a single commander. (See fig. 6.)

b. Successive objectives are assigned attacking rifle companies, with plans made to continue the attack from each. Suitable objectives are streets, rivers, and railroads crossing the line of advance. Reports are required from the companies as each objective is reached, and reports are made to regiment when the battalion objective is reached.

11-56 BATTALION RESERVE.—The battalion reserve is kept well forward, usually being from one to three blocks in rear of the assaulting companies. Its normal missions will be to protect the flanks; to repel counterattacks; to envelop the flanks of hostile resistance holding up the advance of the battalion; to mop up or consolidate captured areas; and to relieve attacking units by a passage of lines.

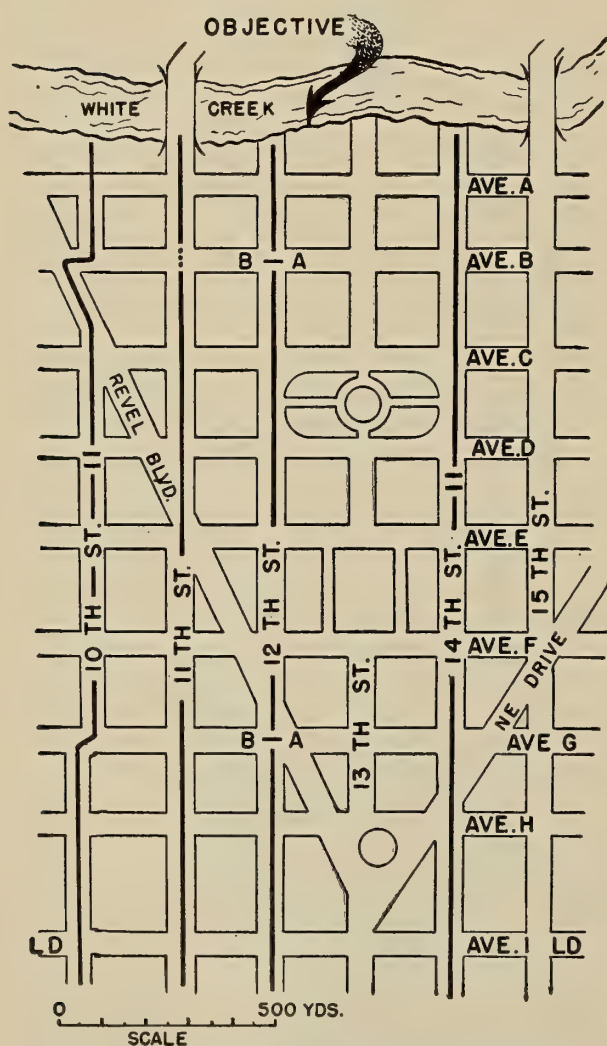


FIGURE 5.—Battalion zone of action for attack through a built-up area where a block-by-block reduction is necessary—schematic diagram.

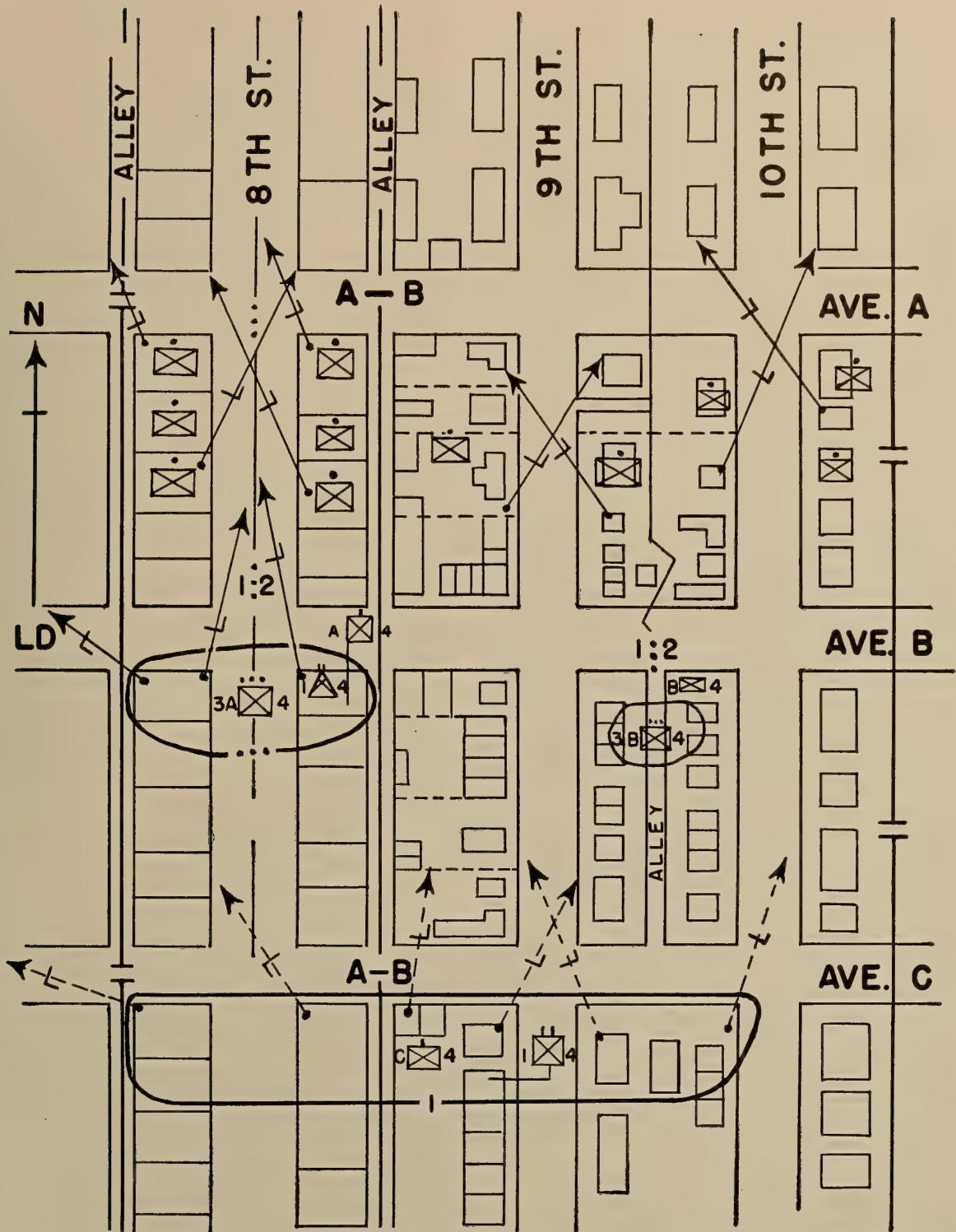


FIGURE 6.—Disposition of attacking platoons, supports, and reserves of a battalion attacking in a built-up area, where a block-by-block attack is required only in the zone of the left company—schematic diagram.

11-57 RIFLE COMPANY.—*Plan of attack.*—*a.* In attacking through a built-up area, the formation adopted by the rifle company will depend upon the number of blocks in its zone of action, the density and size of buildings, the strength of resistance expected, and the depth of the advance required. (See fig. 6).

b. The mission assigned each attacking platoon is to gain its objective, clearing all houses in its assigned zone of advance.

c. The initial objective for the platoon(s) may be the initial company objective assigned by the battalion order, or, when strong resistance is expected, one or more intermediate objectives may be assigned. Subsequent platoon objectives may be the successive cross streets, depending upon the nature of the anticipated resistance. Platoons will be required to report promptly their arrival at each objective.

11-58 SUPPORTING UNITS AND SPECIAL EQUIPMENT.—*a.* When two platoons are attacking abreast, the company commander may attach machine guns to the attacking platoon(s), one section of guns to each platoon. Machine guns not attached to the attacking platoons are retained under company control.

b. The support platoon is held close behind attacking platoons to mop up bypassed enemy elements, or to pass through a depleted or disorganized platoon.

c. When the company has been reinforced with special equipment such as demolitions, this equipment may be allotted to the assault platoons.

11-59 RIFLE PLATOON.—*Plan of attack.*—*a. Objective.*—A rifle platoon in the attack of a strongly defended built-up area is ordinarily assigned not more than one block. (See fig. 5.) It may be assigned a cross street, exclusive, as its initial objective and directed to be prepared to continue the attack on order. It immediately reports its arrival on the objective.

b. Formation.—Suitable formations for a platoon attacking through a built-up area where a block-by-block reduction is not required is two squads forward, one on each side of the street clearing the buildings on their side. The third squad is held in support to the rear of the assault squads. The support squad is usually

split and placed on each side of the street, just to the rear of the assault squads, to give close support to the attacking squads.

11-60 CONDUCT OF ATTACK.—*a. The advance.*—The block-by-block attack of a rifle platoon requires alert, aggressive leadership on the part of the platoon commander. After the attack has been launched, he maintains close contact with his leading squads and promptly supplies covering fire and support when needed. When he observes that smoke grenades or additional supporting fire will facilitate the advance, particularly across open areas, he promptly employs them. When the platoon must attack on both sides of a street, the platoon commander uses his platoon sergeant or platoon guide to conduct the advance on the side of the street where least resistance is expected, while he takes the other side. When an attacking squad is held up, the support squad is used promptly to maintain the impetus of the attack. When an objective is captured, the platoon commander notifies the company commander, reorganizes his platoon if necessary, and prepares to resume the attack.

b. Supporting arms.—If the machine guns are attached to the platoon, they may be used initially to cover the entry of the attacking squads into the first buildings of the block being cleared, and to cover the streets and open areas. Thereafter, they are displaced by the platoon commander as the situation dictates.

11-61 RIFLE SQUAD.—*a. General.*—Combat in built-up areas requires the exercise of the highest degree of initiative, skill, cunning, and courage on the part of the rifle squad leader and the individuals of the squad. Because of partially destroyed buildings and excessive amounts of debris which are ever present in street fighting, control of an attacking echelon is difficult. In many situations, squads and fire teams will operate independently in their assigned zones of action.

b. Methods of attack.—(1) When the enemy is making a determined defense of a built-up area using a series of interlocking fire positions, the attacking force must fight from house to house.

(2) When scattered groups of enemy are present in a built-up area, the "mopping up" method of attack is employed. Using this

method, the attacking squads move in the streets until fired upon by the enemy. Formation will be a column of files on each side of the street. Each individual in the squad moves from one covered position to another. Scouting fire teams should be out in front, but close enough to be controlled by the squad leader. When the squad is fired upon, all men take cover and prepare to attack the located enemy resistance.

c. Covering fire.—Covering fire is laid down on located or suspected enemy positions by a portion of the squad to pin the enemy down and thus support the movement of the remainder of the squad. Covering fire must be used to cover all movements. If the wind is favorable, smoke may be used in conjunction with covering fire.

d. Organization for the attack.—The squad leader organizes his unit into two groups for attacking a built-up area. These groups are:

(1) The searching party, usually one fire team, makes the initial entrance and searches the building under attack. If the building is too large for one fire team to search, an additional searching party may be used. When more than one searching party is operating in a building at the same time, each must be given a definite area of responsibility. This is necessary to avoid conflict between searching parties.

(2) The covering party, usually two fire teams, provides covering fire to support the advance of the searching party.

11-62 ATTACKING A BUILDING.—*a. General.*—A building should be attacked from the top down; in this way the enemy will not be trapped in the upper floors. A trapped enemy will fight more stubbornly than one that has an avenue of escape left open to him. The enemy occupying a building should be driven down and out, then eliminated by fire on the outside of the building. Another advantage of attacking from the top down is the assistance of the force of gravity. It is easier to work down through a building than it is to climb up; it is likewise easier to throw a grenade down than it is to pitch it up.

b. Killing zones.—Killing zones are areas cut off by lanes of automatic fire. Lanes of fire from automatic weapons, placed around a

building under attack to prevent all movement in or out of the building, make that building a killing zone. Such zones should be established before the attack commences and maintained until the building is secured.

c. Attack blind side of building.—The blind side of a building is that side without windows or doors. Whenever possible, the attack should be directed toward the blind side of the building.

d. Methods of entering buildings.—(1) *Climbing side of building.*—(a) *Push-up method.*—Two men face each other; the man to be lifted stands between them, facing the wall, and puts his hands against the wall. Each man lifting, bends over and puts one hand under the instep of the foot nearest him and with the other hand braces the knee. The two men lifting then straighten up. When the man being lifted is about two feet off the ground, each lifter shifts his hand from the knee to the foot and continues to lift and push up. The man being lifted keeps his feet together and his legs stiff and straight. His feet are kept away from the wall so that weight will be placed on his hands as he is lifted. This helps him to maintain his balance. The weapon of the man being lifted should be carried in his hand.

(b) *Pull-up method.*—Two men on a roof or a high wall can pull up a man by the use of ropes. Two ropes are used, each having an open loop at the end into which the man to be lifted puts his feet. One foot is placed in each loop so that the bottom of the loop rests against his instep. The other ends of the ropes are held by two men on the roof. The man to be lifted then calls out "right," and at the same time lifting his right foot up and taking the weight from his right hand. All of his weight is, at this point, on the left side of his body. The man on the roof then pulls up the slack on the right rope. The man to be lifted then shifts his weight to the right side of his body and calls out "left." The slack is then taken up on the left rope. By this method, the man can be lifted rapidly and the ropes dropped for another man.

(2) *Use of explosives.*—When the entrance of a building is blocked, or movement within the building is stopped by blank walls, demolitions may be employed to effect an entrance. Several blocks of TNT, taped or tied to a stick,

will make an effective pole charge which can be used to make a "mouse hole" through a wall. The pole charge is used so as to place the explosive charge in a position where the force of the explosion will be against the wall and not absorbed by the ground.

e. Attack systematically.—Once the attack has penetrated a building held by the enemy, it should be continued systematically. After reaching the top of the building, the search should be conducted room by room down through the entire building. The search includes the roof and basement.

f. Searching a building.—(1) The men in the searching fire team are paired into two teams. One team is composed of the riflemen and assistant automatic rifleman. The second team is composed of the automatic rifleman and the fire team leader. This system provides mutual support within the team. When one man enters an opening or searches a room, the other man covers him.

(2) *Technique of searching.*—A minimum number of men should be used to search a building. One two-man team is sufficient to search a room. Too many men get in one another's way. Entrance into a room should be preceded by a grenade. The explosion of the grenade is followed closely to take advantage of the concussion and fragmentation effect on the enemy. The first man into the room puts his back to the nearest wall and covers the room; the second man enters and searches the room.

g. Security of captured buildings.—Once a building is cleared of the enemy, all-around security must be effected, and an immediate defense set up against counterattack.

h. Marking captured buildings.—Each build-

ing that is cleared of the enemy must be marked as friendly. Chalk marks or rags can be placed on the side of the building away from the enemy so that adjacent units and troops following in the attacker's zone of advance will not fire at movement in the building.

11-63 MISCELLANEOUS.—*a. Looting.*—Built-up areas offer many opportunities for looting. The acquisition of loot is likely to lead to the discarding of equipment, with a resultant loss of efficiency. Regardless of how well disciplined a unit may be, unless precautions are taken in advance, looting will begin on a small scale and tend to increase. All leaders must see that instructions against looting are obeyed, and that violators are promptly and properly punished.

b. Civilian control.—The problem of controlling and administering the civilian inhabitants will normally be encountered, and may be complicated by a flow of refugees into built-up areas. The degree of assistance and cooperation that may be expected from the civilian inhabitants will vary greatly. Within an enemy country itself, the population will inevitably be hostile. Little assistance or cooperation may be expected, but maximum assistance should be obtained from any elements that are friendly. Arrangements are made for the sudden movement either into an area or out of it. Bombing tends to drive the inhabitants out of a town, while the ground action that follows on the outskirts may drive them in again.

c. Prisoners.—The handling of prisoners of war is normal but should be expedited. Leading units must not permit an accumulation of prisoners to interfere with their progress.

SECTION VII

POLICE FUNCTIONS

	Par.	Page
General.....	11-64	499
Mission.....	11-65	499
Functions.....	11-66	500
Ordinances enforced.....	11-67	500
General nature of military police activity in occupied territory.....	11-68	500
Forces of disorder.....	11-69	500
Security.....	11-70	500
Subversive activity.....	11-71	500
Reprisals.....	11-72	500
Use of firearms.....	11-73	501
Supervision of civil police.....	11-74	501
Prisoners of war, general.....	11-75	501
Capture.....	11-76	501
Traffic control, general.....	11-77	502

11-64 GENERAL.—*a.* Personnel to be assigned shore patrol or military police duties should, if possible, be mature men. They should be trained in the nature of their special duties and they should demonstrate all of the high qualities of neatness, politeness, firmness, skill, tact, and common sense that are necessary in shore patrol or military police functions. As they represent the authority and prestige of the naval service, their appearance and deportment must be exemplary.

b. The mission, organization, operation, and jurisdiction of the U. S. Navy shore patrol and beach guard is set forth in the U. S. Navy Shore Patrol Manual, June, 1945.

c. In addition to the policy therein prescribed for the supervision or protection of naval personnel ashore, the following is to be used as a guide and aid to the functioning of navy landing party elements charged with carrying out police functions ashore in occupied or enemy territories and in domestic disturbances, or national disasters.

d. The establishment of martial law or military or naval government in an area occupied by our forces initiates the functioning of military police (shore patrols) who enforce the ordinances of the naval commander, protect lives and property, and restore law and order.

11-65 MISSION.—The mission of military police, under martial law or in occupied territory, is to maintain law, order, and good discipline, to protect the property and inhabitants of the area to which they are assigned, and to enforce the ordinances of the naval commander. They will:

a. Occupy important areas, through which combat units have advanced, that are having civil disturbances or are suffering from a form of disaster.

b. Wipe out isolated islands of military resistance.

c. Prevent pillage and pilfering.

d. Clear the area of guerillas and bandits.

e. Seize and secure such property, records, and installations as may be directed by competent authority.

f. Act as a security force against attack by hostile troops.

g. Begin energetic preventive policing of the area.

h. Administer jails and prisons. (See Ch. 5.)

i. Assist in the reorganization of the civil police system.

j. Investigate crimes committed by and against naval personnel.

k. Assist in the suppression of prostitution.

l. Control the circulation of individuals, both civil and military.

m. Exercise such control over public and private transportation as may be directed by competent authority.

n. Maintain close contact with intelligence sources in matters relating to circulation and flow of the population and controlling fifth column activities.

o. Enforce food regulations in order to prevent black marketing.

p. Supervise the care and feeding of refugees and local inhabitants when required.

g. Work in close cooperation with civil affairs officers.

11-66 FUNCTIONS.—The functions of military police in occupied territory, or under martial law vary greatly with the locality and individual situation. If the civil police force is operating effectively, the functions of the military police become largely supervisory. Without such support from the civil police, military police enforcement becomes direct, more detailed, and more complex.

11-67 ORDINANCES ENFORCED.—The military police enforce the ordinances issued by the naval commander. The contents of the ordinances vary according to the education, laws, customs, and history of the people of the occupied territory, the geography of the area, and the strategic and tactical situation.

11-68 GENERAL NATURE OF MILITARY POLICE ACTIVITIES IN OCCUPIED TERRITORY.—The military police, upon assuming control in an occupied territory, are frequently confronted with many situations which vary so greatly in their nature and intensity that no hard and fast regulations will cover every case. The military policeman must depend not only upon approved doctrine but to a large extent upon his own common sense. He must often be guided by certain general principles rather than by definite regulations. He will frequently be required to reconcile military action with political conditions.

11-69 FORCES OF DISORDER.—*a.* Military police in occupied territory generally are confronted with forces of disorder which fall into the following classes:

(1) Revolutionary movements organized and designed to overthrow established government.

(2) Rioting and lawlessness arising from local or widespread grievances against the military or local government.

(3) Racial, religious, or political disturbances, not necessarily directed against the military.

b. The military police prevent or suppress these disorders. They capture or destroy lawless bands and their leaders, protect administrative officials and law-abiding people, and prevent the extension of disorders.

11-70 SECURITY.—*a.* The military police secure such places as are essential to the conduct of the military naval control, and make

plans for the use of their forces in event of an emergency. If hostile forces are encountered, every method and weapon necessary for their defeat or capture is used, but punitive measures and reprisals are avoided.

b. The employment of the minimum amount of force, coupled with firm and timely action, will be interpreted as strength, discourage further disorder, and eliminate the necessity for instituting more severe measures. Delay or hesitation in the use of force will usually be interpreted as weakness. Exceptionally drastic action may be ordered only by higher authority.

11-71 SUBVERSIVE ACTIVITY.—*a.* Leaders of subversive movements, who have oratorical ability and the capacity for political organization, gradually assert themselves, learn the best means to counter government measures, and arouse the populace. Men of this type must be apprehended speedily. Such leaders are particularly dangerous and as a rule should be kept in confinement, for upon release they will emerge more hostile than ever and often with new plans conceived while in confinement.

b. University and other students in the occupied territory are often followers of these leaders. Upon receipt of the news that their leaders have been arrested, these students may become aroused and attempt to urge the people to violence. Sabotage and destruction of property may begin. Government property, utilities, and lines of communication may be destroyed and attacks made on military officials.

c. Information of subversive activity is obtained through intelligence, police agencies, and friendly persons. The inhabitants must be made to realize fully that concealment of information is a punishable offense; and every precaution must be taken not to expose the informers to terrorism or acts of reprisal by the subversive element.

d. Communication of information to the enemy must be severely and promptly dealt with.

e. Strong measures must be taken against outbreaks of sabotage.

11-72 REPRISALS.—It is the duty of the military police to maintain order in an occupied area, and not to avenge the wrongful acts of the inhabitants. A policy of reprisals is always

dangerous as partisan warfare is likely to result. The chief sufferers of partisan warfare are apt to be defenseless civilians. Inability on the part of the military to give them adequate protection will discredit the occupation forces. If reprisals are undertaken upon orders of competent authority, the reasons for so doing should be publicly stated.

11-73 USE OF FIREARMS.—Military police are justified in the use of firearms under the following conditions:

- a. To protect property.
- b. To prevent the escape of prisoners.
- c. To prevent individuals from falling into the hands of a mob.
- d. To disperse rioters when other means have proved ineffective.
- e. To protect their own lives when seriously endangered by attack.

11-74 SUPERVISION OF CIVIL POLICE.—a. Economy of effort by military police is achieved principally by the use of local police personnel and facilities. Many members of the civilian police because of their devotion to duty as civil servants, their indifference to the nature of the political regime, or their active loyalty to the military, may be permitted to continue the performance of their normal functions.

b. Selected civil police who have demonstrated their loyalty may be used to assist the military police because of their familiarity with the language, customs, and geography of the occupied territory. Every use should be made of existing civil machinery consistent with the policies established by the military government.

11-75 PRISONERS OF WAR, GENERAL.—a. The treatment of prisoners of war is governed by the Geneva Prisoners of War and Red Cross Conventions of 1929, both of which have been officially adopted by the United States and most of the other nations of the world. The Prisoners of War Convention states who are considered prisoners of war and regulates in detail their treatment, including care, food and clothing, internal discipline and punishment, labor and pay, external relations, representation, prisoner information, and termination of captivity. The term "prisoners of war" includes primarily all persons, whether combatants or noncombatants, belonging to

the armed forces of a belligerent nation when captured by the enemy in the course of military operations. Militia, volunteer corps, and, under some circumstances, citizens resisting invaders and certain followers of the armed forces are also considered to be prisoners of war when captured. The Red Cross Convention includes directions on the treatment of medical and sanitary personnel, chaplains, and other "protected personnel" who have been captured.

b. It is important for all military personnel to be fully informed of these provisions as a protection in the event of their own capture.

c. Violation of any of these provisions is not only a violation of the laws of the United States, but may also result in retaliation by the enemy against our own prisoners of war, and may subject this nation to unfavorable criticism in the public opinion of people throughout the world. A course of instruction in the applicable provisions of these conventions should be given by all officers whose command may have any responsibility for the treatment of prisoners of war, and no opportunity should be lost to emphasize the importance of a thorough comprehension of such provisions.

d. The Prisoners of War Convention provides: (1) Article 2:

(a) "Prisoners of war are in the power of the hostile power, but not of the individuals or corps who have captured them.

(b) "They must at all times be humanely treated and protected, particularly against acts of violence, insults, and public curiosity.

(c) "Measures of reprisal against them are prohibited."

(2) Article 3:

(a) "Prisoners of war have the right to have their person and their honor respected. Women shall be treated with all the regard due their sex.

(b) "Prisoners retain their full civil status."

11-76 CAPTURE.—a. *Disarming.*—Immediately upon capture, enemy personnel or suspicious characters are disarmed and searched for concealed weapons.

b. *Segregation.*—Immediately after capture, or as soon thereafter as possible, enemy officers, noncommissioned officers, privates, deserters, and civilians are segregated and delivered in

that manner to the landing force collecting point.

c. Interrogation.—(1) When interrogation teams are employed with units in contact with the enemy, the search of prisoners for documents is conducted under the supervision of team personnel.

(2) When no interrogation team personnel are attached, the battalion intelligence officer supervises the search. Documents and articles required for intelligence purposes, removed from the person of a prisoner, are marked with his name and identification number and turned over to the prisoner escort. Thus, documents are available, with the prisoner on whom they were found, to interrogators at higher echelons.

(3) Until such time as the prisoners can be searched by qualified personnel, guards must be on the alert to prevent the destruction of documents.

d. Information.—Prisoners of war are required to give only their name, rank, and serial number.

e. Coercion.—Coercion will not be used on prisoners or other personnel to obtain information relative to the state of their military forces or country. Prisoners or others who refuse to answer such questions may not be threatened, insulted, or unnecessarily exposed to unpleasant treatment of any kind. The examination of prisoners or others is not prohibited and provisions will always be made for such examination.

f. Personal effects.—The personal effects of prisoners of war remain their property and will not be taken from them as souvenirs or otherwise. Prisoners of war are permitted to retain in their possession clothing, insignia, identification tags or cards, decorations, and when necessary, helmets and gas masks.

g. Documents.—Whenever practicable, documents, except personal identification cards, will be collected by the capturing unit, identified with the prisoner of war from whom they were taken, and transmitted to the rear with the prisoner. Documents identifying enemy personnel as protected personnel under the Red Cross Convention will not be taken from the person of the prisoner of war, nor will his insignia be taken from him.

h. Escorts.—The commander of the escort is

provided with a memorandum stating the time, place, and circumstances of capture, and the unit making the capture. Sufficient troops, from reserve units whenever possible, are detailed to escort prisoners to the rear. These troops should be familiar with the circumstances of capture. Troops detailed as escorts will:

- (1) Prevent escapes.
- (2) Maintain segregation of prisoners at all times.
- (3) Prevent prisoners from discarding or destroying any document or insignia.
- (4) Prevent anyone other than authorized interrogators from talking to the prisoners.
- (5) Prevent anyone from giving prisoners food, drink, or cigarettes prior to interrogation.
- (6) Enforce silence among prisoners at all times.
- (7) Deliver prisoners to the designated collecting point as soon as possible.
- (8) Collect any documents dropped by the prisoners.

i. Evacuation.—Routes of evacuation for prisoners of war usually follow the lines of evacuation of wounded. Prisoners of war not wounded may be used as litter bearers for their own and our more severely wounded personnel. Our slightly wounded personnel are used when possible as prisoner escorts.

11-77 TRAFFIC CONTROL, GENERAL.—

a. In operations of any great scale or under martial law in the vicinity of urban areas, the movement and control of military as well as civilian vehicles will often affect the mobility and efficiency of our forces.

b. The shore patrol or military police of the landing party are responsible for the orderly control of traffic within the zone of operations.

c. In operations involving vehicles in any number, traffic-control plans, routes, and circulation systems must be worked out by the force S-4 and supervised by the commander, shore patrol, or the unit provost marshal.

d. The general responsibility of the shore patrol or military police for the execution of the traffic plan involves many specific functions. The manner in which traffic police operate and the relative importance of their various responsibilities vary with the conditions under which control is exercised and the type and degree of

control in effect. Thus, in a combat zone their primary duty is to keep traffic moving in accordance with tactical requirements, and ability to act quickly and effectively in emergencies is of prime importance.

e. The success of a traffic-circulation plan rests directly on the quality of its execution, which in turn, depends on the quality of the control plan and the work of every man engaged in its execution. It must be remembered that the responsibility of the military police is to provide good traffic operations; this calls for more than routine supervision of the execution of a circulation plan as it automatically develops. Few plans work out as anticipated; effective modification by military police is often necessary.

f. Duties of military police handling traffic include the following:

- (1) Regulating traffic at points of actual or

potential conflict such as bottlenecks and intersections.

- (2) Enforcing traffic regulations and orders.
- (3) Patrolling routes.
- (4) Furnishing information.
- (5) Rerouting of traffic when necessary.
- (6) Handling traffic accidents.
- (7) Clearing traffic jams.
- (8) Reporting necessary road maintenance.
- (9) Recommending traffic control and road improvements.

g. Successful performance of these duties required knowledge and skill, alertness and constant attention to duty, and a proper concept of the purpose of the job. Effective traffic regulation is not easy but can be accomplished if these requirements are met.

h. For additional information on the functions of military police see War Department publications; FM 19-5, Military Police, and FM 19-10, Military Police in Towns and Cities.

SECTION VIII

RIOT DUTY

	Par.	Page
General.....	11-78	504
Definitions of crowds and mobs.....	11-79	504
Crowd tactics.....	11-80	504
Mob tactics.....	11-81	505
Formations.....	11-82	505
Platoon triangular formation for riot duty.....	11-83	506
Segregation of affected areas.....	11-84	507
Intelligence.....	11-85	507
Planning.....	11-86	507
Civil disputes.....	11-87	507

11-78 GENERAL.—*a.* Federal forces will be called upon to perform riot duty only where the disorder is serious and widespread and the civil authorities and state troops are unable to handle the situation. In the case of riot and disorder, however, they cannot be employed, except for the protection of government property, unless so ordered by the President of the United States.

b. In case of wholesale and universal disorder in a town, city, or district, Federal forces properly ordered will, in general, be required to carry out the tactics prescribed for the occupation of hostile towns and cities, or at least a modified form of these tactics. No exact rules can be prescribed; each case must be handled separately. The severity of the measures and precautions taken to obtain the desired result should be such as to reestablish law and order in the shortest practicable time, with a minimum of violence and bloodshed.

11-79 DEFINITIONS OF CROWDS AND MOBS.—*a.* Mobs develop from crowds which in most cases could be broken up by the proper application of crowd tactics. A crowd lacks organization and unity of purpose, and, if it is on mischief bent, requires only a leader to convert it into a mob. If it is compelled to move on and break up, there is usually little danger.

b. A crowd assembled for an unlawful purpose hesitates to commit itself to a course of un-

restrained violence. Some of its members may be guilty of violent acts, when they think they have little chance of being apprehended and punished. It may be noisy and threatening and should be kept well in hand, because if left to its own devices it is very likely to commit assaults and depredations which will excite it to the mob pitch. A crowd may be converted into a mob by:

(1) An apparent weakening of the forces holding a crowd in check, even though it be but momentary.

(2) A single piece of audacious violence successfully carried through.

(3) A few minutes' harangue by a fiery leader.

(4) The appearance on the street of a conspicuous and hated figure.

c. It is the business of the officials, civil and military, to see that this transformation does not take place, for the formation of a mob usually means bloodshed before order is restored.

d. A crowd is a group or a number of separate groups which is, or may be, disorderly and inclined to violence, but which has not as yet lost its collective sense of fear. A mob, on the other hand, is distinguished by the fact that, under the stimulus of intense excitement, its members have actually lost all sense of fear of the law and can only be brought to their senses by an overpowering demonstration of force.

11-80 CROWD TACTICS.—*a.* As a rule, rifle fire should be used against a crowd only as a last resort.

b. For psychological effect, it should be evident to the crowd that there is a commander, that he has a plan, that he has the courage to act vigorously, and that he intends to use whatever force is necessary.

(1) Normally, the first step in dispersing a crowd is the display of military strength. At this time, the military commander or, in his

absence, the commanding officer of troops at the scene will call upon members of the assemblage, in the name of the President of the United States, to disperse and go to their homes immediately. A proclamation will be issued by the military commander to advise the people residing within the community of the rules and orders they are to obey and the reasons for such rules. This proclamation by the military commander is not to be confused with the Presidential Proclamation.

c. Having broken up the crowd, it is necessary to keep it moving. Patrols should be detailed to follow it and prevent small groups from collecting again. If any person or persons stand out as prospective leaders, and seem to be trying to excite the crowd, they should be arrested.

d. The men must be made to understand that in dealing with citizens they must be courteous, yet firm, in carrying out their instructions; that they must pay no attention whatever, nor appear to hear, insults or epithets from the crowd.

11-81 MOB TACTICS.—*a.* The methods to be employed against mobs differ from those required against crowds. Less dispersion of forces is allowed, more force must be used and must be held well in hand, and sterner measures must be adopted.

b. In cases where military force is used for the protection of government property or instrumentalities, the military commander who does not command the mob to disperse, and allow sufficient time for it to do so before taking life, will be very derelict in his duty. A mob should not be harangued, bullied, or bluffed, and above all it should not be threatened or dared.

c. A mob usually should be attacked on one flank, depending upon the direction it is desired to drive it. When those in front would like to retreat but, because of the pressure from behind, are unable to do so, the mob should be attacked in the rear.

d. When rifle fire is resorted to, the aim

should be low, so as to prevent shots going over the heads of the mob and injuring innocent persons that cannot get away. The number of rifles used in the firing should be no greater than is absolutely necessary. If there is firing from the rear of the mob, a few marksmen should be so placed as to be able to return the fire. A few good marksmen should be detailed to fire on windows or roofs from which firing comes or from which missiles are thrown. Care should always be taken to avoid firing into a group of innocent persons from which some rioter has fired.

e. Blank cartridges should not be used when combating a mob bent on violence, nor should a volley be fired over the heads of rioters even if there is little danger of hurting persons in rear. Such action will be regarded as an admission of weakness, or as an attempt to bluff, and may do much more harm than good.

f. Bayonets are effective when used against rioters who are able to retreat, but they should not be used against men who are prevented by those behind from retreating even if they wished to do so. The appearance of fixed bayonets has a psychological value against rioters that should not be overlooked.

g. Tear gas grenades employed by military forces equipped with gas masks are a most effective method of dispersing a mob. Tear gas grenades should be projected to the windward side of the rioters.

h. Avoid the danger of hand-to-hand clashes and close-in fighting. Here the mob, because of its superior numbers, has all of the advantage, and personnel of the armed force are liable to be overpowered, disarmed, and injured. Keep the mob at such distance that personnel can employ their weapons and use their training and discipline to the best advantage.

i. A reserve should always be held out.

11-82 FORMATIONS.—*a.* If it should become necessary to charge a mob or move against it, a suitable formation should be taken which will depend somewhat upon the direction it is desired to drive the mob.

b. The following formations are suggested:

(1) Marching in parallel columns, heads of columns abreast, as indicated:



FIGURE 7.

In this case the mob will be driven directly in front with a chance for them to disperse to the flanks.

(2) Marching in parallel columns with the columns in echelon as indicated:



FIGURE 8.

In this case the mob will retreat in an oblique direction from that of the march, the direction being away from the most advanced column. The formation has the advantage of enabling the more advanced columns to assist the others by flanking movements.

(3) Marching in parallel columns, those columns on each side of the center being echeloned to the rear so as to form a wedge, as indicated:

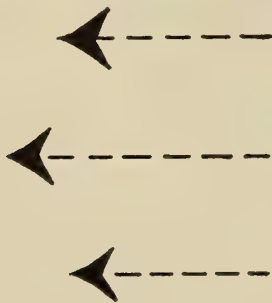


FIGURE 9.

This formation has the effect of dividing the mob into two parts and may be of advantage when it is desired to handle the parts separately. It may be that the mob will thus be forced out into the open where they may be attacked from several directions at the same time.

(4) Marching in any formation which permits the force to take the mob in flank and rear. Being fired into from a flank or from the rear is trying to the morale of the best-disciplined troops, and it has a demoralizing effect upon a mob.

11-83 PLATOON TRIANGULAR FORMATION FOR RIOT DUTY.—*a.* The triangular formation indicated in figure 10 is recommended when it is necessary for a platoon to march through streets occupied by small isolated groups of rioters. In recommending this particular formation it is assumed that the rioters are not employing firearms and that the display of force or shock power (as differing from fire power) of an intact unit of marching men will disperse the small disorganized groups of rioters. In the event the rioters are employing firearms the advance through the streets will necessitate the employment of a regular combat formation.

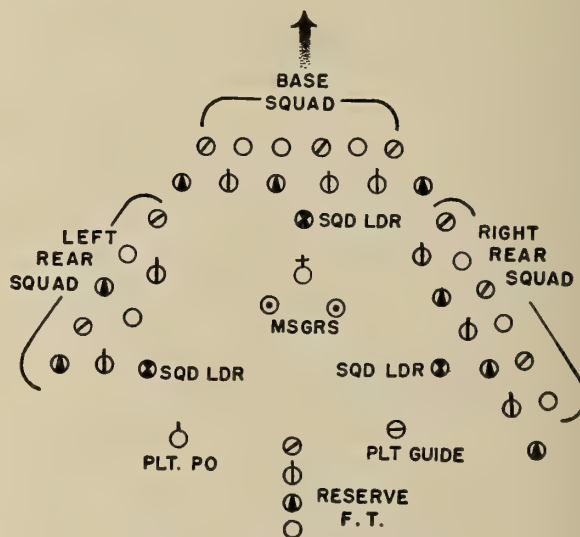


FIGURE 10.—Platoon triangular formation.

b. As far as practicable the formation should be in two ranks. Men in the front rank should be close enough together to prevent members of the mob from penetrating the interval between them and at the same time have enough space

for the free use of their weapons. Men in the rear rank engage any members of the mob who may penetrate the intervals in the front rank, and replace casualties in the front rank.

c. Organization commanders will specify whether weapons are to be carried loaded or unloaded, and whether bayonets are to be fixed or not. Rifles are carried at the high port. If bayonets are not fixed, the riflemen use the butt strokes or, in an emergency, use the rifle as a club. Automatic riflemen may be used to observe the mob for the possible appearance of men equipped with firearms, and to engage snipers who fire from buildings.

d. The leading squad is the base squad and rear squads regulate their movements on it.

11-84 SEGREGATION OF AFFECTED AREAS.—*a.* If the disorder is confined to a particular locality or district, this section must be segregated. Once segregated, all gatherings must be immediately broken up, and individuals on the streets be required to keep moving. The streets must be constantly covered by patrols and supports established at proper points. Special guards will be established at plants or buildings which may become the object of the mob's activities. All saloons and disorderly houses should be closed, and hardware stores containing firearms and ammunition must be closed and guarded.

b. Particular attention must be paid to the lighting system, telephone system, and water supply. Their sources and connections must be carefully guarded against interruption or destruction.

c. Fires must be particularly guarded against.

d. No person will be permitted to pass in or out of the segregated district without proper authority.

11-85 INTELLIGENCE.—*a.* An intelligence service will be established, and qualified civilians, or officers and petty officers in civilian clothes, must be freely employed for obtaining all needed

information. Activities in other parts of the city must be carefully watched and care must be taken to prevent disorders or meetings which may develop into riots.

b. Police and other civilian law enforcement agencies are usually the most dependable sources of information. Records and knowledge possessed by these agencies of local individuals, organizations, and businesses should be utilized to the maximum.

11-86 PLANNING.—Plans must be made which will enable the military authorities to move quickly and efficiently to any part of the city in anticipation of disorders. These plans must be based upon information being received on the local situations. Surprise, mobility, and firmness of purpose displayed by the military will often prevent disorders from developing into riots.

11-87 CIVIL DISPUTES.—*a.* Where the disorders and riots are due to trouble between opposing factions (as in labor disputes), the attitude of the military authorities must be one of strict impartiality. The object of the military authorities is to reestablish law and order and not to become partisans of any faction or organization, and this purpose should be clearly impressed on all concerned.

b. In order to inculcate military personnel with a strictly impartial, military, and professional attitude towards any factions involved in domestic disputes, the officers and men of the military forces must be well oriented and schooled on the situation and their duties as representatives of the national government. Only by means of training, a high standard of discipline, and under enlightened leadership will officers and men be able to cope with the great difficulties, the emotional appeals, the loyalties, and the prejudices that are involved in domestic disorders. It puts the military to one of its severest tests.

SECTION IX

NATIONAL DISASTERS

	Par.	Page
National disasters.....	11-88	508

11-88 NATIONAL DISASTERS.—*a.* A national disaster implies that immediate and effective assistance must be furnished the local authorities and citizens. Circumstances will indicate the form of assistance to be rendered.

b. Depending on the extent of the disaster, the military may be called upon to take complete control or merely to assist local authority. In cases of disaster, the express order of the President of the United States is not necessary to secure the aid of the military, and in such cases the military is subordinate to the local authorities. Even if the local authorities have ceased to function, the state authorities still exist, and the greatest tact must be exercised by the commander of the relief forces in his dealings with civilians. The military forces will always cooperate with the local authorities and be assisted by the Red Cross and civilian relief organizations.

c. In the event of foreign disasters, the situation may be handled by our own forces present, or by those of a combination of friendly nations until taken over by the forces of the nation concerned.

d. All members of the landing party assisting in the relief of a national or foreign disaster must be kept well informed and oriented on all phases of the situation and the extent of their duties.

e. For administrative purposes, a city should be divided into districts and each district assigned to an organization.

f. All possible civilian organizations such as church, business, veteran, and fraternal organizations, should be contacted and put on a working basis under their own leaders. Unorganized civilians should be grouped under these organizations and put to work.

g. Among the first steps to be taken are the

guarding of federal buildings, the banking district, and the prevention of looting. Ghouls and looters should be dealt with summarily. In the event of a threatened food shortage, guards should be placed over food supplies in warehouses, wharves, railroad yards, and in transit through the city.

h. Working parties should be organized to succor the wounded and bury the dead. Civilians working in the ruins should be provided with distinguishing marks or brassards and carry written authority.

i. Fire-fighting parties should be organized. If no water supply is available, the spread of the fire can be checked by demolitions and backfires. Explosives for demolition purposes should be of a type that will not start fires upon detonation. Dynamite with an inert base is particularly suitable for this purpose. The specific sanction of the local authorities should be obtained, in writing, if possible, before buildings are demolished.

j. The water supply should be carefully tested and guarded against contamination. If the supply is in any way damaged, immediate steps should be taken for its early restoration.

k. Provision should be made to shelter and feed the homeless and destitute. All available tents should be erected in camps under military control. Tents, ponchos, blankets, and shoes will be the principal articles required. Proper camp sanitation is of vital importance. (See Ch. 7.)

l. Issuing stations for rations should be established. They should be under the most experienced help available. Whether or not it is possible or advisable to issue cooked food to civilians depends upon the situation. Past experience indicates that when uncooked rations are issued free, civilians tend to accumulate large quantities by "repeating." As soon as opportunity permits, establish means for keep-

ing accurate account of all stores or meals issued, to prevent such repetition as well as to insure a conservation of food supplies. When civilian restaurants are reopened, arrangements can be made to issue meal tickets at a low cost or free of charge. Ration-issuing stations should be scattered over the city not more than a mile apart.

m. Military telegraph and telephone lines should be installed where required, principally to connect district command posts with headquarters. Radio communication should be established as the situation requires and every effort made to reestablish outside commercial telegraph and telephone lines.

n. Local printing facilities should be utilized to print signs as needed, such as:

- (1) "Dangerous area."
- (2) "Restricted area."
- (3) "Relief station."
- (4) "Latrines."

- (5) "Shelter."
- (6) "Approved water."
- (7) "Food center."
- (8) "Information center."
- (9) "Fire control center."
- (10) "First-aid station."

o. An information bureau should be set up to gather and coordinate information from hospitals and burial details pertaining to deceased and missing persons.

p. Transportation should be hired or obtained from volunteer offers. As a last resort, it may be requisitioned or seized.

q. Relief forces should include a medical detachment comensurate with the situation and forces available. This force should be composed of medical officers and hospital corpsmen, with necessary medical supplies. All sanitary measures should be given wide publicity and strictly enforced.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 12 PHYSICAL DRILL

CHAPTER 12
PHYSICAL DRILL

	Par.	Page
Section I. GENERAL-----	12-1	515
II. FORMATIONS-----	12-2	516
III. PHYSICAL DRILL WITHOUT ARMS-----	12-3	517
IV. PHYSICAL DRILL WITH ARMS-----	12-4	518
		513

SECTION I
GENERAL

	Par.	Page
General.....	12-1	515

12-1 GENERAL.—Physical drill in ranks may be conducted with or without arms. The advantages of conducting physical drill in ranks are multiple: comparatively large numbers of men can exercise at the same time, the space required is small, and the time required is relatively short. Further physical conditioning

may be achieved by the utilization of improvisations aboard ship, such as obstacle courses, rope climbing, etc. The methods outlined herein are set forth as a guide, to be adjusted and adapted to the space and facilities available. Physical drill should be conducted by an individual of good voice and physique, who will execute all exercises correctly, vigorously, and enthusiastically.

SECTION II

FORMATIONS

	Par.	Page
Formations.	12-2	516

12-2 FORMATIONS.—*a.* The formation recommended for the conduct of physical drill is simple and compact, yet flexible enough to be adapted to most space limitations.

b. Without arms.—(1) The unit or group to be drilled is formed in columns of twos, threes, or fours, depending on the space available.

(2) At the command: 1. TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT, 2. MARCH, the right squad (file) stands fast, each man extends arms sideward (shoulder height), palms of hand down, fingers extended and joined. The center and left squads (files) face left, move two and four paces respectively, and face to the front; each man extends arms sideward (shoulder height), in the same manner as the right squad.

(3) At the command: 1. ARMS, 2. DOWN, the arms are lowered smartly to the side. The men in each file are now covering in column at normal distance.

(4) To extend to the interval between files, at the command: 1. EVEN NUMBERS TO THE RIGHT, 2. MOVE, each even-numbered man moves to the right, to the middle of the interval between files; this he does by swinging his right

leg sideward, jumping from his left foot and lighting on his right foot, and bringing the left foot smartly into position alongside the right foot. Men are now formed to conduct the exercise.

(5) To assemble, the instructor commands: 1. ASSEMBLE, 2. MARCH; all men return to their original position on the double.

c. With arms.—(1) The unit or group to be drilled is formed in the same manner as in physical drill without arms. (See par. 12-2*b* (1).)

(2) At the command: 1. TAKE INTERVAL TO THE LEFT, 2. MARCH, the right squad (file) stands fast, extends arms sideward (shoulder height), right hand holding the rifle, left hand palm down fingers extended and joined. The center and left squads (files) (carrying the rifle at the trail position) face left, move two and four paces respectively, and face to the front, extend arms sideward (shoulder height), right hand holding the rifle, left hand palm down, in a manner similar to that of the right squad.

(3) To lower arms, to extend to intervals between files, and to assemble, see par. 12-2*b* (3), (4), (5).

SECTION III

PHYSICAL DRILL WITHOUT ARMS

	Par.	Page
Physical drill without arms.....	12-3	517

12-3 PHYSICAL DRILL WITHOUT ARMS.—For physical drill without arms and for conditioning exercises not involving formal drill, see Physical Fitness Manual for the U. S. Navy.

SECTION IV

PHYSICAL DRILL WITH ARMS

	Par.	Page
General.....	12- 4	518
Come to ready.....	12- 5	518
Down and forward.....	12- 6	518
Forward and up.....	12- 7	519
Up and shoulders.....	12- 8	520
Side pushes.....	12- 9	520
Diagonal lunges.....	12-10	520
Forward lunges.....	12-11	520
Front sweeps.....	12-12	520
Overhead twists.....	12-13	521
Side twists.....	12-14	521

12-4 GENERAL.—*a.* With the exception of **come to ready** all movements in physical drill with arms are done in four counts and performed four times.

b. The exercises may be executed by command, to music, or silently (following the motions of the leader), and may be discontinued by the command **HALT**, at which time the ready will be assumed.

12-5 COME TO READY.—At the command: 1. **COME TO READY**, 2. **ONE**, 3. **TWO**, 4. **THREE**.

ONE—Raise the piece with the right hand, grasp it with the left hand at the height of the right shoulder, knuckles toward the body. The right hand grasps the small of the stock, forefinger under the trigger guard (see figure 1).

TWO—Lower the piece in front of the body to a horizontal position, sling down, keeping the body erect (see figure 2).

THREE—Raise the piece horizontally to the height of the shoulders, sling up; at the same time move the left foot to the left about 12 inches. Keep the chest out and the shoulders well back. This position is **READY**, and is the starting point of all movements in physical drill with arms. (See fig. 3.)

12-6 DOWN AND FORWARD.—To exer-

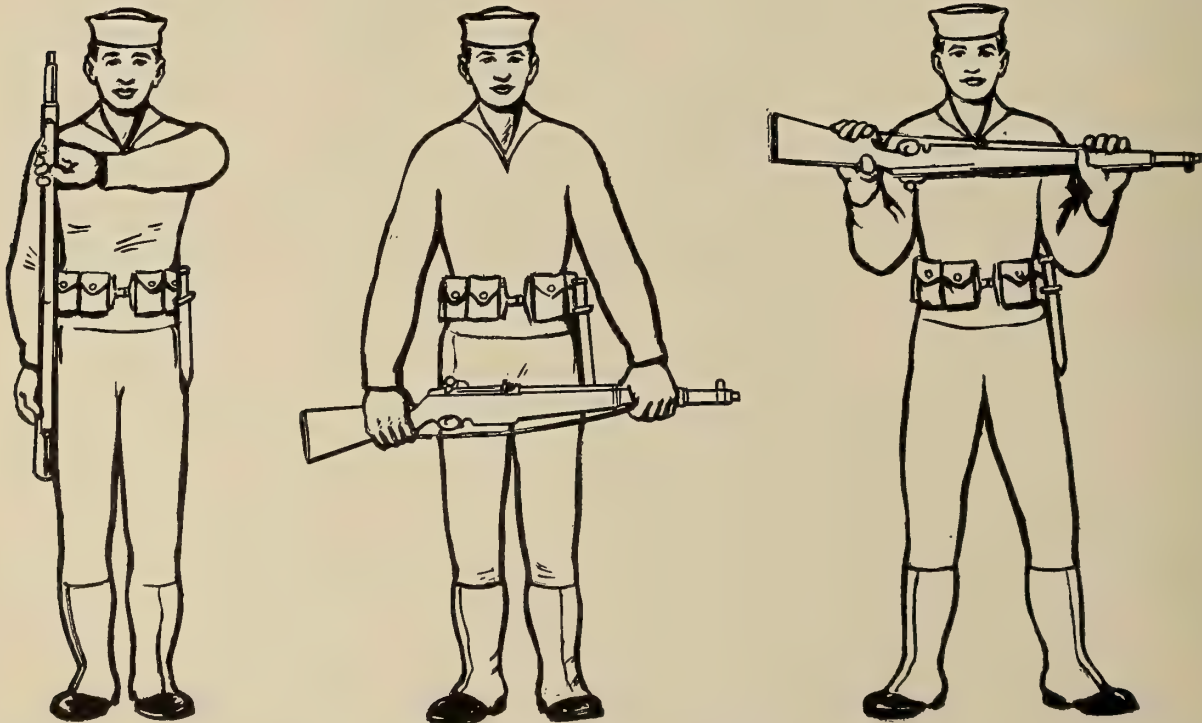


FIGURE 1.—Come to ready. End of first count. FIGURE 2.—Come to ready. End of second count. FIGURE 3.—Come to ready. End of third count.

cise the muscles of the hips, back, and arms. At the command: 1. DOWN AND FORWARD, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.

ONE—From READY, lower the piece horizontally to the instep, keeping arms and knees straight. (See fig. 4.)

TWO—Back to READY.

THREE—Push the piece horizontally forward. (See fig. 5.)

FOUR—Back to READY.



FIGURE 4.—Down and forward. End of first count.



FIGURE 5.—Down and forward. End of third count.

12-7 FORWARD AND UP.—To exercise the muscles of the arms and side walls of the chest. At the command: 1. FORWARD AND UP, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE 5. FOUR.

ONE—From READY, push the piece horizontally forward. (See fig. 5.)

TWO—Back to READY.

THREE—Push the piece horizontally over-



FIGURE 6.—Forward and up. End of third count.



FIGURE 7.—Up and shoulders. End of second count.

head, arms extended and chest expanded. (See fig. 6.)

FOUR—Back to READY.

12-8 UP AND SHOULDERS.—To exercise the muscles of the arms, and of the side and front walls of the chest. At the command: 1. UP AND SHOULDERS, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.

ONE—From READY, push the piece horizontally overhead. (See fig. 6.)

TWO—Lower piece to back of shoulders, head up, elbows well back. (See fig. 7.)

THREE—Up again horizontally overhead.

FOUR—Back to READY.

12-9 SIDE PUSHES.—To exercise the rotary muscles of the body, thighs, and the loin. At the command: 1. SIDE PUSHES, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.

ONE—From READY, push the piece horizontally to right side, twisting the body, keeping the eyes on the piece, and keeping the heels firmly on the ground. (See fig. 8.)

TWO—Back to READY.

THREE—Push the piece to the left side, as in ONE above.

FOUR—Back to READY.

12-10 DIAGONAL LUNGES.—To exercise the muscles of the arms, back, and legs. At the command: 1. DIAGONAL LUNGES, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.

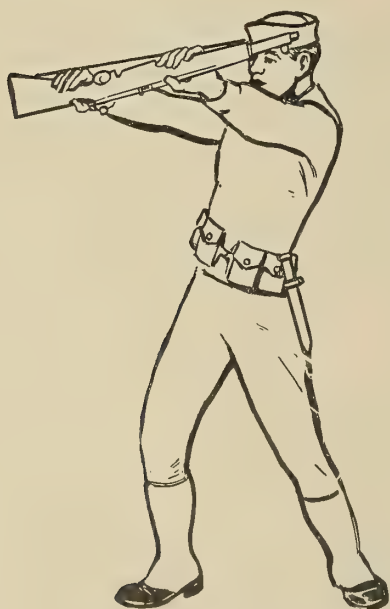


FIGURE 8.—Side pushes. End of first count.

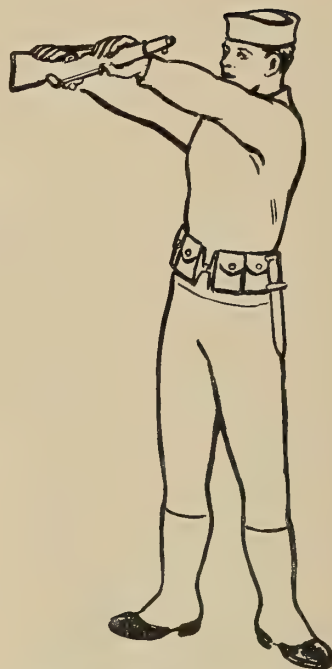


FIGURE 9.—Diagonal lunges. End of first count.

ONE—From READY, lunge about 36 inches diagonally to the right, landing on the right foot; at the same time push the piece out horizontally and direct the eyes toward the piece. Keep the left foot flat. (See fig. 9.)

TWO—Back to READY.

THREE—Lunge to the left, landing on the left foot, as in ONE above.

FOUR—Back to READY.

12-11 FORWARD LUNGES.—To exercise the muscles of the arms and legs, and the side walls of the chest. At the command: 1. FORWARD LUNGES, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.

ONE—From READY, lunge about 36 inches directly to the front, landing on the right foot; at the same time push the piece horizontally overhead and direct the eyes toward the piece. Keep the left foot flat. (See fig. 10.)

TWO—Back to READY.

THREE—Lunge to the front with left foot, as in ONE above.

FOUR—Back to READY.

12-12 FRONT SWEEPS.—To exercise all the principal posterior muscles of the body. At the command: 1. FRONT SWEEPS, SLOW, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.



FIGURE 10.—Forward lunges. End of first count.

ONE—From READY, raise the piece horizontally overhead, keeping the chest well out and emphasizing the up-stretch. (See fig. 6.)

TWO—Lower the piece slowly in a front semicircle to insteps, keeping the arms straight

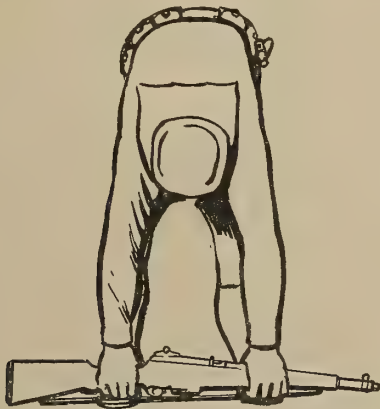


FIGURE 11.—Front sweeps.

and emphasizing the out-reach. (See figs. 11 and 12.)

THREE—Raise the piece slowly in a front

semicircle to vertical (position ONE, above).

FOUR—Lower the piece to READY.



FIGURE 12.—Front sweeps. End of second count.

12-13 OVERHEAD TWISTS.—To exercise the rotary muscles of the upper part of the body. At the command: 1. OVERHEAD TWISTS, 2. BUTT (MUZZLE) FRONT, 3. ONE, 4. TWO, 5. THREE, 6. FOUR.

BUTT FRONT:

ONE—From READY, raise the piece overhead; at the same time twist it until the butt points directly forward. Keep the piece horizontal. (See fig. 13.)

TWO—Twist the piece to the right until the muzzle points directly forward. Hold the hips firmly forward, confining the movement to the upper part of the body. (See fig. 14.)

THREE—Twist back until the butt points directly forward.

FOUR—Lower the piece to READY.

MUZZLE FRONT:

ONE—From READY, raise the piece overhead; at the same time twist it until the muzzle points directly forward. (See fig. 14.)

TWO—Twist the piece to the left until the butt points directly forward. (See fig. 13.)

THREE—Twist back until the muzzle points forward.

FOUR—Lower the piece to READY.

12-14 SIDE TWISTS.—*a.* To exercise the muscles of the sides, loins, and small of the back. At the command: 1. SIDE TWISTS, 2. ONE, 3. TWO, 4. THREE, 5. FOUR.

ONE—From READY, drop the piece horizontally in front to position TWO of COME TO READY. (See fig. 2.)

TWO—Lifting the butt up, carry the piece

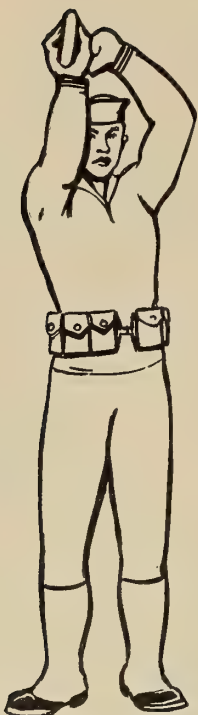


FIGURE 13.—Overhead twist. Butt front.



FIGURE 14.—Overhead twist. Muzzle front.

smartly to the left side and out, muzzle pointing directly down. Keep the hips firm. (See fig. 15.)

THREE—Same as for ONE above.

FOUR—Lifting the muzzle, carry the piece smartly to the right side and out, muzzle pointing directly up. (See fig. 16.)

ONE—Same as for ONE above.

b. At the end of this exercise come to ORDER ARMS.



FIGURE 15.—Side twist. End of second count.



FIGURE 16.—Side twist. End of fourth count.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 13

SMALL-ARMS MARKSMANSHIP

523

CHAPTER 13

SMALL ARMS MARKSMANSHIP

	Par.	Page
Section I. SMALL ARMS GENERAL.....	13-1	527
II. PREPARATORY MARKSMANSHIP EXERCISES.....	13-10	534
III. NOMENCLATURE; SIGHTING AND AIMING.....	13-24	538
IV. POSITIONS.....	13-31	542
V. TRIGGER SQUEEZE.....	13-42	547
VI. RAPID FIRE.....	13-47	549
VII. ELEVATION AND WINDAGE; SAFETY PRECAUTIONS; EXAMINATION ON PREPARATORY EXERCISES.....	13-53	553
VIII. COURSES QUALIFICATIONS AND EXPERT MEDALS.....	13-61	556
IX. RANGE PROCEDURE.....	13-69	562
X. CARE AND CLEANING M1 RIFLE.....	13-82	567
XI. THE PISTOL.....	13-89	570
XII. MISCELLANEOUS WEAPONS.....	13-111	577
XIII. COMPETITION RULES; TROPHIES, MEDALS AND QUALIFICATIONS.....	13-117	578
XIV. RECORDS, REPORTS, AND FORMS.....	13-132	586
XV. TARGET MATERIALS; INSTRUCTION SCHEDULES.....	13-139	592

SECTION I

SMALL ARMS—GENERAL

	Par.	Page
Object.....	13-1	527
Scope.....	13-2	527
Ships and stations that fire.....	13-3	527
Training stations.....	13-4	527
Personnel to be trained.....	13-5	527
Methods to be followed.....	13-6	528
Marines.....	13-7	528
Small-arms year.....	13-8	528
Arms.....	13-9	528

13-1 OBJECT.—The object of the exercises prescribed herein is to prepare the Navy for the most effective use in war of all of the service small arms. In order that this may be accomplished it is essential that the correct firing habits become so fixed that the proper method of firing becomes the most natural method. Men in the excitement of battle will then do the correct thing, although they may be unconscious of having done so. This primary object of the exercises must be kept in mind by all officers. No details of organization or of training will be introduced which do not assist in attaining this object.

13-2 SCOPE.—The term “small-arms exercises” includes all the forms of practices and competitions fired with small arms and listed herein. The present publication covers only individual instruction and firing at bull’s-eye targets and at known ranges. This limitation in scope is imposed by the limited time available for small-arms training. Collective firing, or firing under conditions which simulate battle, removes the firer from the immediate supervision of the instructor, and for this reason cannot be profitably employed until after the individual instruction has been completed. It is considered that time and facilities available will ordinarily not permit individual instruction at ranges greater than 500 yards. Advantage should, however, be taken of opportunities to gain greater experience by firing at the longer ranges, provided that the firing can be done

under proper supervision and without exceeding the ammunition allowance.

13-3 SHIPS AND SHORE ACTIVITIES THAT FIRE.—All vessels in a commissioned or operative status shall carry out small arms exercises as prescribed by type commanders. All shore activities shall carry out such small arms exercises as, in the discretion of the commanding officer, are permitted by the time available.

13-4 TRAINING STATIONS.—Recruits at training stations will be given a thorough course in rifle marksmanship training. This instruction will be as complete as the requirements of the recruit training schedule permits and will include record firing.

13-5 PERSONNEL TO BE TRAINED.—Under ordinary conditions there will be insufficient opportunity to give a thorough course of small-arms training to the entire complement of a ship or shore activity. Since training which stops short of thoroughness is very largely wasted, the number required to be trained should be restricted to the number that can be trained thoroughly. Modification of this principle should be accepted as demanded by contingencies of the service and available ammunition allowances. In general, all officers should be familiar with the rifle or carbine and pistol and all enlisted men with the rifle or carbine since training with these weapons is basic to training with the others. The following provisions are intended as guides:

(1) All cadet, new officer, and officer candidate training should include a thorough course in rifle and pistol marksmanship.

(2) All officers should fire rifle and pistol courses when practicable but not oftener than once a year. In addition, all officers and enlisted men should fire an annual practice with the weapon with which normally armed.

(3) All enlisted men first entering the service should be given a thorough course in rifle marks-

manship during recruit training or at the first opportunity thereafter.

(4) All enlisted men whose presumptive duties as members of a landing party, a naval emergency ground defense force (NEGDF) or as security watch standers require them to be armed, or who are normally armed in the course of their duties (as aviation and construction battalion personnel), should fire an annual practice with the weapon with which armed.

(5) Where no landing party or NEGDF has been prescribed, 20 percent of the complement of a ship or the security watch standers ashore is considered a suitable proportion to receive small-arms training.

13-6 METHODS TO BE FOLLOWED.—

The methods prescribed have been thoroughly tested and are known to produce excellent results when properly carried out. Having due regard for the special conditions existing in the Navy, they conform closely to the methods in use in the Army and Marine Corps. In an organization such as the Navy, where training is subject to interruption by special demands of the service, it is essential that the methods of training be uniform. Where more than one method is used, even if these methods be equally good, a great loss of time and effort will be caused by transfers from one method to the other. For this reason the prescribed methods are made mandatory.

13-7 MARINES.—Officers and enlisted men of the Marine Corps will be governed by Marine Corps regulations for marksmanship and will fire Navy courses only when facilities are not available for Marine Corps courses. Navy medals will not be awarded to Marines for qualification in Navy courses.

13-8 SMALL-ARMS YEAR.—The small-arms year is from 1 July to 30 June.

13-9 ARMS.—Unless otherwise stated, all exercises will be conducted with the standard service small arms provided by the Bureau of Ordnance. The weapons used in practice firing, record firing, and in the competitions will be the service weapons, issued as a regular part of the ordnance equipment of a ship or shore activity. The arms must be in their designed operating condition, without additions or subtractions. No alterations are permitted. The replacement of worn or broken parts, the smoothing of

roughened bearing surfaces, and the relieving of the barrel from the pressure of a warped or swollen stock are considered to be repairs. Such repairs are permissible when done for the purpose of restoring the arm to its designed operating condition. It is incumbent on all officers and men to see that the spirit of these regulations is not violated.

UNITED STATES RIFLE, CALIBER .30, M1.—This rifle is commonly called the "M1".—

(a) *Use.*—Ship's landing parties, NEGDF, drill and marksmanship training at officer and recruit activities; Naval training stations and other training stations of the Navy. It is the service rifle of the Navy.

(b) *General data:*

Operation-----	Semiautomatic, gas operated, clip loaded, air cooled.
Caliber-----	0.30 inches.
Over-all length-----	43.6 inches.
Clip capacity-----	8 rounds.
Weight-----	10.3 pounds (w/sling).
Muzzle velocity-----	2,600 ft./sec. (M1 ball ammo.)
Muzzle velocity-----	2,800 ft./sec. (M2 ball ammo.)
Practical rate of aimed fire*	12 shots per/min.
Maximum effective range--	500 yards.

*Dependent on existing circumstances.

(c) *Reference:*

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual, U. S. Rifle, Caliber .30, M1 (FM 23-5) c 1, 2.

(2) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance, U. S. Rifle, Caliber .30, M1, TM 9-1275, c. 1.

UNITED STATES CARBINE, CALIBER .30, M1 and M1A1.—(a) *Use.*—This weapon is used as a replacement weapon or in lieu of the pistol.

It is the basic arm of construction battalions, and used as a security weapon aboard ships and in the NEGDF at shore stations.

(b) *General data:*

Operation-----	Semiautomatic, gas operated, magazine, fed, air cooled.
Length of barrel-----	18 inches.
Over-all length-----	35.5 inches.
Magazine capacity-----	15 rounds.
Weight with sling-----	5.25 pounds.
Muzzle velocity-----	2,000 ft./sec.
Bullet weight-----	193 grains.
Practical rate of aimed fire*	10 shots per/min.
Maximum effective range-----	300 yards.

*Dependent on existing circumstances.



FIGURE 1.—The U. S. rifle .30, M1.



FIGURE 2.—The U. S. carbine, caliber .30, M1.

(c) Reference:

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual, U. S. Carbine, Caliber .30, M1 and M1A1 (FM 23-7) c 1, 2.

(2) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance TM 9-1276.

THOMPSON SUBMACHINE GUN, CALIBER .45, M1A1.—(a) *Use.*—Security weapon for ships and shore stations in special instances

(b) General data:

Operation..... Recoil operated, magazine fed, air cooled, automatic or semi-automatic.

Caliber..... 0.45 inches.
Over-all length..... 31.9 inches.
Magazine capacity, box..... 20 rounds.
Weight, without magazine..... 10 pounds.
Muzzle velocity..... 802 ft./sec.
Bullet weight..... 234 grains.

Practical rate of aimed fire:

Automatic..... 100 shots per/min.
Semiautomatic..... 40 shots per/min.

Maximum effective range:

Slow fire..... 200 yards.
Automatic..... 25 yards.

NOTE.—The 1928A1, the M1, and the M1A1 are issued interchangeably.

(c) Reference:

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual,

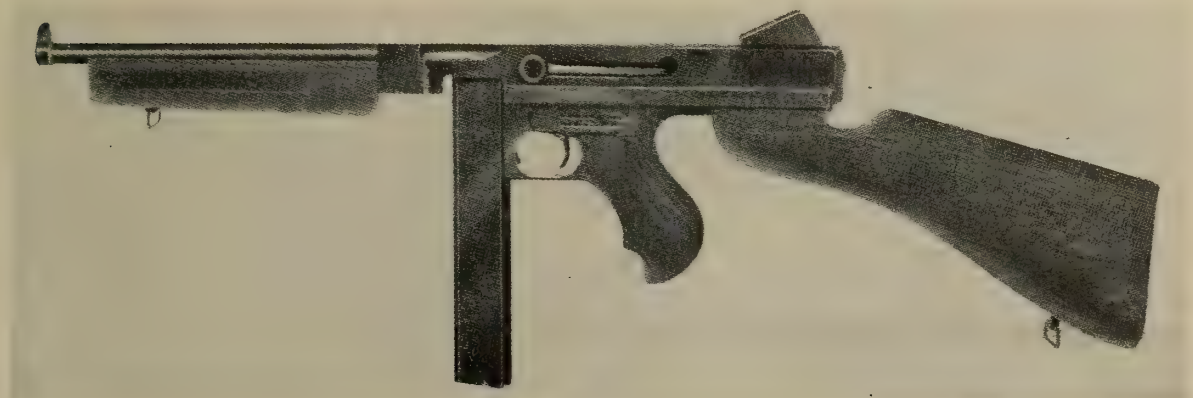


FIGURE 3.—The Thompson submachine gun, caliber .45, M1A1.

Thompson Submachine Gun, Caliber .45, M1928A1 (FM 23-40) c 1, 2, 3, 4.

(2) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance, Thompson Submachine Gun, Caliber .45, M1928A1 (TM 9-1215) c 1.

SUBMACHINE GUN, CALIBER .45 M3 and M3A1.—(a) *Use.*—Security weapon in special instances; construction battalions.

(b) *General data:*

Operation.....	Air cooled, blowback operated, magazine fed.
Caliber.....	0.45 inches.
Over-all length.....	29.8 inches.
Magazine capacity.....	30 rounds.
Muzzle velocity.....	900 ft./sec.
Maximum effective range.....	200 yards.
Cyclic rate of fire.....	450 shots per/min.
Overall weight (full magazine).....	10.25 pounds.

NOTE.—This weapon fires full automatic but with practice the shooter may fire sileng rounds.

(c) *Reference:*

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual, Submachine Gun, Caliber .45, M3 (FM 23-41) c 1, 2, 3,

(2) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance TM 9-1217.

BROWNING AUTOMATIC RIFLE, CALIBER .30, M1918A2.—(a) *Use.*—Ships' landing party; construction battalions; reserve equipment for NEGDF.

(b) *General data:*

Operation.....	Gas operated, air cooled, magazine fed, and automatic or semiautomatic.
Caliber.....	0.30 inches.
Over-all length.....	47 inches.
Magazine capacity.....	20 rounds.
Weight (complete).....	19.4 pounds.
Practical rate of aimed fire.....	40 shots per/min.
Maximum effective range.....	600 yards.

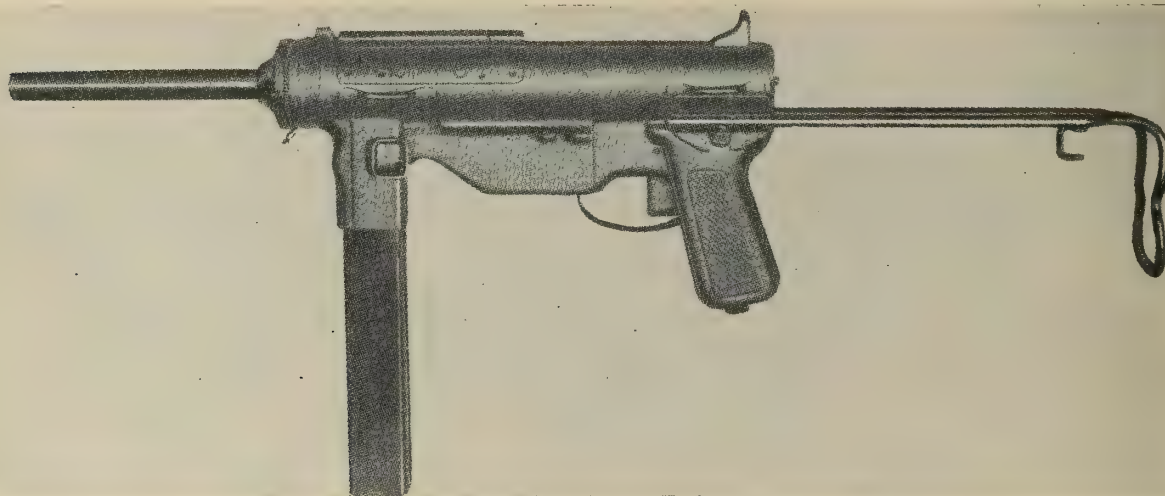


FIGURE 4.—The submachine gun, caliber .45, M3A1.

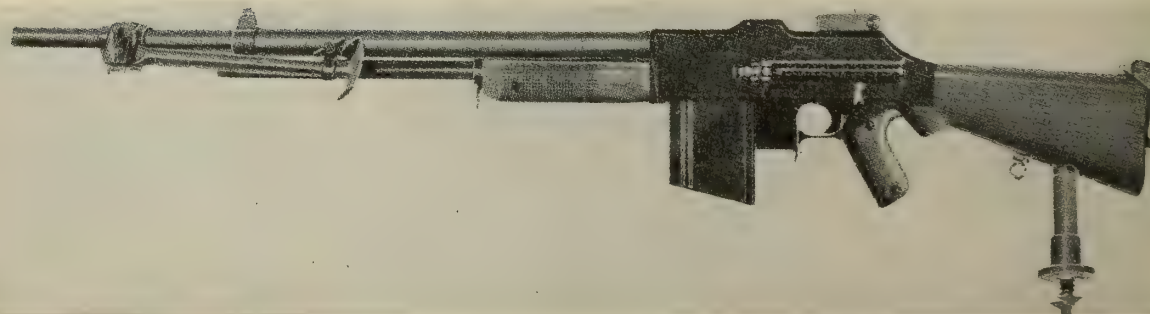


FIGURE 5.—The Browning automatic rifle, caliber .30, M1918A2.

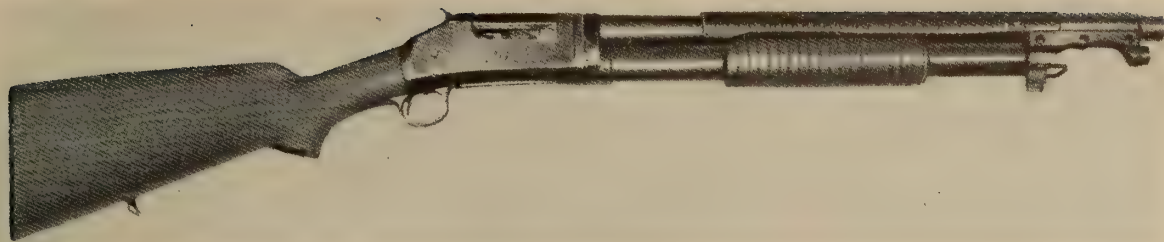


FIGURE 6.—Shotgun, riot type.

(c) Reference:

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual
Browning Automatic Rifle, Caliber .30,
M1918A2 with bipod (FM 23-15) c 1, 2.

(2) War Department Technical Manual,
Ordnance Maintenance, Browning Automatic
Rifle, Caliber .30, all types (TM 9-1211).

SHOTGUNS.—Shotguns are used as security
weapons in special instances on ships and shore
stations. Various types are provided, therefore
no descriptions are given here. Instruction
should cover familiarization firing and famili-
arity with safety precautions.

Reference:

(1) War Department Technical Manual,
Ordnance Maintenance, Shotguns, all types
(TM 9-1285).

**AUTOMATIC PISTOL, CALIBER .45 M1911
and M1911A1.**—(a) *Use.*—This pistol is the
standard service pistol in the Navy. It is used
as a side arm for officers and certain petty
officers. It is a defensive weapon.

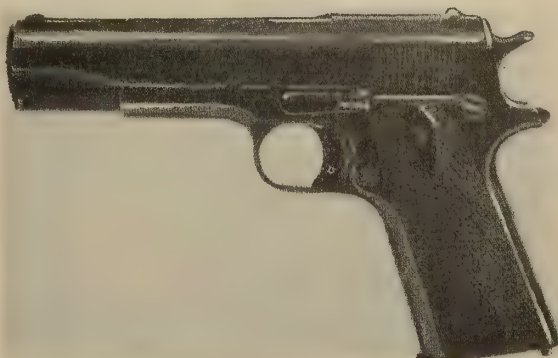
(b) General data:

Operation.....	Recoil, semiauto- matic.
Caliber.....	0.45 inches.
Length of barrel.....	5.03 inches.
Over-all length.....	8.6 inches.
Weight with magazine.....	2.437 pounds.
Muzzle velocity.....	802 ft./sec.
Bullet weight.....	230 grains.
Practical rate of aimed fire.....	10 shots per/min.
Maximum effective range.....	50 yards.

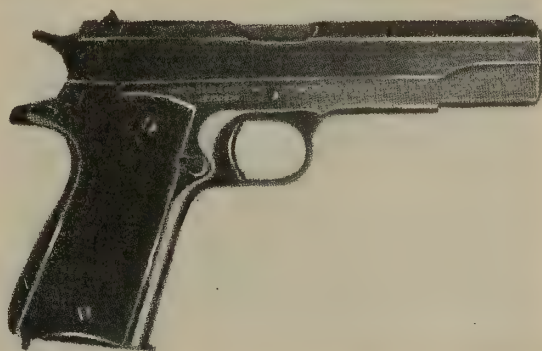
(c) Reference:

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual
(FM 23-35) 30 April 1940, Automatic Pistol,
Caliber .45, M1911, and M1911A1, c 1, 2.

(2) War Department Technical Manual,
Ordnance Maintenance, Pistols, and Revolvers
(TM 9-1295).



a. Left side view.



b. Right side view.

FIGURE 7.—Automatic pistol, caliber .45.

**REVOLVER, SMITH & WESSON, CAL-
IBER .38.**—(a) *Use.*—This revolver was adopted
as a substitute weapon for the pistol. It is the
standard side arm for aviation personnel only.

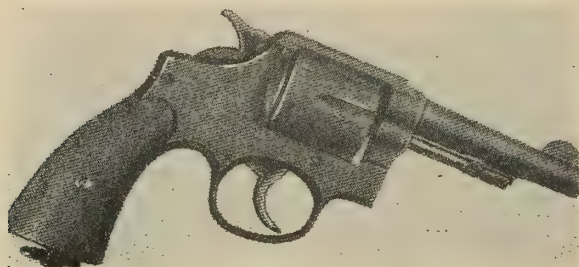
(b) General data:

Operation.....	Manual, single or double action.
Caliber.....	0.38 inches.
Length of barrel.....	4.0 inches.
Over-all length.....	9.125 inches.
Weight.....	29 ounces.
Muzzle velocity.....	847 ft./sec.
Bullet weight.....	158 grains.
Practical rate of aimed fire.....	6 shots per/min.
Maximum effective range.....	50 yards.

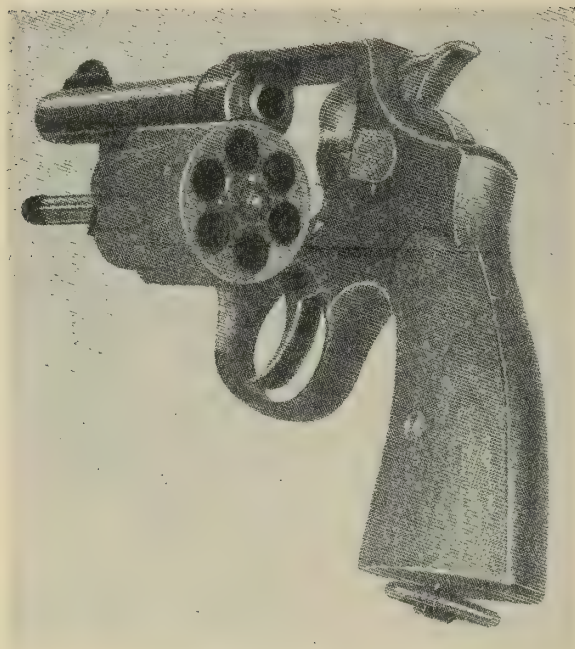
(c) Reference:

No government manual is published on this weapon but the instructions contained in the following are applicable:

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual, Revolver, Colt, Caliber .45, M1917, and Revolver, Smith & Wesson, Caliber .45, M1917, c 1, 2. (FM 23-36).



a. Right side view.



b. Left side view, cylinder open.

FIGURE 8.—Revolver, Smith & Wesson, caliber .38.

(2) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance, Pistols and Revolvers (TM 9-1295).

PISTOL, CALIBER .22, COLT, SERVICE ACE.

(a) Use.—Preliminary small arms marksmanship training.

(b) General data:

(The characteristics of this weapon, except for caliber, are similar to the U. S. Automatic Pistol, caliber .45.)



FIGURE 9.—The pistol, caliber .22, Colt, Service Ace.

UNITED STATES RIFLE, CALIBER .22.—

(a) Use.—Preliminary Small Arms Marksmanship training.

(b) General data: (Described for the Rifle, caliber .22, "Mossberg," U. S. 44)

Operation.....	Bolt, repeating, magazine fed.
Over-all length.....	40 inches.
Length of barrel.....	26 inches.
Weight.....	8 pounds.
Maximum effective range.....	100 yards.
Magazine capacity.....	7 rounds.

NOTE.—Short, long, or long rifle rounds may be fired, but the latter are preferred.

(c) Reference:

(1) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance, Caliber .22 Rifles, all types (TM 9-280).

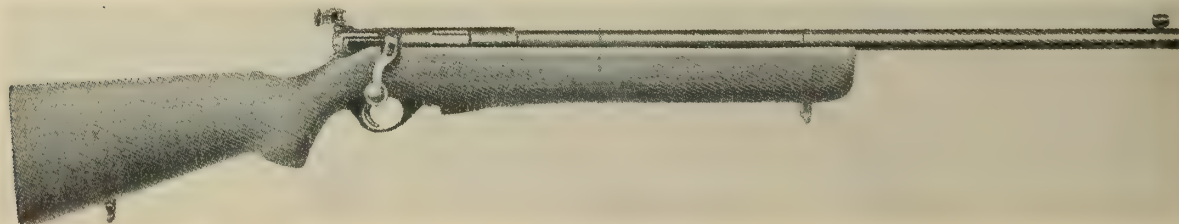


FIGURE 10.—The U. S. rifle, caliber .22.

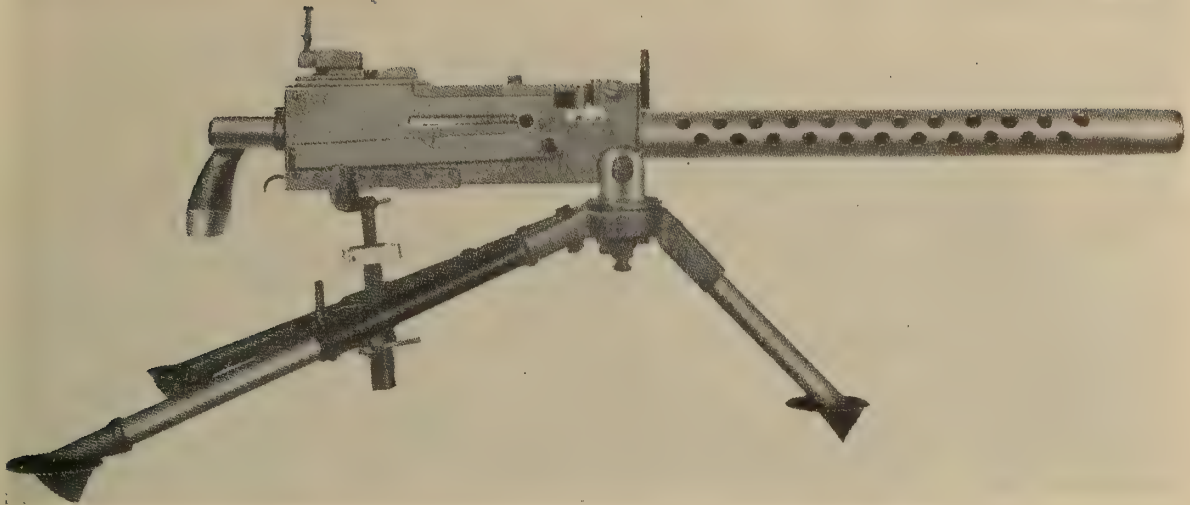


FIGURE 11.—The Browning machine gun, caliber .30, H. B., M1919A4, ground.

BROWNING MACHINE GUN, CALIBER .30, M1919A4, GROUND.—(a) *Use.*—Ships' landing parties; reserve weapon for NEGDF construction battalions; amphibious craft.

(b) *General data:*

Operation.....	Recoil operated, belt fed, air cooled.
Caliber.....	0.30 inches.
Weight:	
Gun.....	31.5 pounds.
Tripod Mount (M-2).....	16.5 pounds.
Length of barrel.....	24 inches.
Over-all length.....	41.11 inches.
Muzzle velocity (M-2 ball ammo.).....	2800 ft./sec.
Muzzle velocity (M-1 ball ammo.).....	2600 ft./sec.
Cyclic rate of fire.....	450-625 rounds per min.

(c) *Reference:*

(1) War Department Basic Field Manual, Browning Machine Guns, Cal. .30, M1917A1, M1919A4, and M1919A6 (FM 23-55).

(2) War Department Technical Manual, Ordnance Maintenance, Browning Machine Gun, Caliber .30, all types, and Ground Mounts (TM 9-1205) c 1.

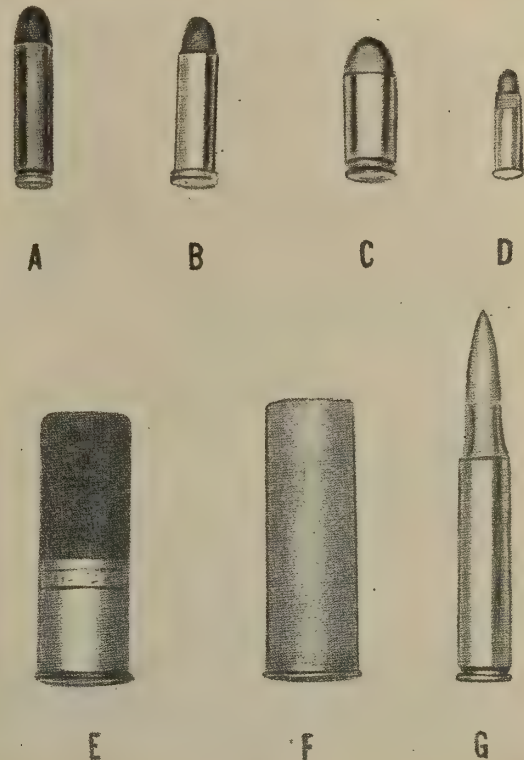


FIGURE 12.—Types of small arms ammunition.

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| A. Cartridge, carbine, cal. .30. | F. Shell, shotgun. |
| B. Cartridge, revolver, cal. .38. | F. Shell, shotgun, riot. |
| C. Cartridge, ball, cal. .45. | G. Cartridge, ball, cal. .30. |
| D. Cartridge, ball, cal. .22. | |

SECTION II

PREPARATORY MARKSMANSHIP EXERCISES

	Par.	Page
Steps in preparatory exercises.....	13-10	534
Steps in small-arms instruction.....	13-11	534
Thorough training essential.....	13-12	534
Duration of instruction periods.....	13-13	535
Interval between periods.....	13-14	535
Continuity of training.....	13-15	535
Process of slow fire.....	13-16	535
Amount of practice required.....	13-17	535
Quality of instruction.....	13-18	536
Coach-and-pupil method.....	13-19	536
Division into groups.....	13-20	536
Group instructors.....	13-21	536
Officer in charge of instruction.....	13-22	537
Method of instruction.....	13-23	537

13-10 STEPS IN PREPARATORY EXERCISES.—In the preparatory exercises each of the three essential operations is taken up in order. The men are first taught to align their sights correctly. As soon as their education has reached a point where they do this, without the operation absorbing their whole attention, they are taught the proper method of holding, and to combine holding with aiming. When they can aim and hold, without having to give these combined operations their whole attention, they are taught the proper method of squeezing the trigger, and to combine this operation with aiming and holding. Each operation is thus added to what has gone before. During the first step the men are taught to aim correctly. During the second step they are taught to hold while aiming. During the third step they are taught to squeeze the trigger while aiming and holding. During the fourth step men are taught to manipulate the piece so as to enable them to repeat the three essential operations without loss of time between shots. The fourth, or rapid-fire, step is followed by an examination, which is of sufficient importance to be considered as a step in itself. During the examination, or fifth step, the instructor assures himself that each of the men under instruction understands, and can explain in his

own words, all of the points which have been covered in the instruction; and also that each man is proficient in the performance of the essential operations. No man will be permitted to proceed with the range firing until he has satisfactorily passed this examination. Instruction in safety precautions, nomenclature, care, sight changes, and use of the score book will be given, at times within the discretion of the instructor, prior to the examination.

13-11 STEPS IN SMALL-ARMS INSTRUCTION.—In teaching men to shoot, the instruction is divided into two parts:

Preparatory exercises.

Range firing.

In the preparatory exercises the men are taught the principles of good shooting and are drilled in the correct performance of the essential operations. In range firing the men are taught to apply the principles, which they have been taught, to the actual firing of ball cartridges. The combined practice effect of both the preparatory exercises and the range firing is necessary for the formation of correct shooting habits. A thorough course in the preparatory exercises must be completed before range firing is commenced.

13-12 THOROUGH TRAINING ESSENTIAL.—The training must be thorough and must proceed to the point where correct shooting habits are formed. Merely telling a man how to shoot is not sufficient. This could be done, to the complete understanding of anyone of average intelligence, within the space of a few minutes. The men must not only know how to shoot but must also be drilled in the actual performance of the operations of shooting until the correct performance becomes habitual. Habit formation, involving as it does the training and coordination of several groups of muscles, cannot be done in a day. Not less than two weeks of continued practice is necessary for

the formation of correct shooting habits. Even this amount of practice will be found insufficient for a considerable percentage of the men under instruction. Habits once formed, however, are tenacious and will remain active over long periods of time without further practice. Training which stops short of habit formation is very largely wasted, and the effects of such incomplete training will almost entirely disappear within the space of a few months. When the training is carried to the point where the correct shooting habits are well fixed there will be little loss of skill within the course of one year.

13-13 DURATION OF INSTRUCTION PERIODS.—The length of the practice period is limited by the ability of the instructor to maintain the interest and attention of the men under instruction. The monotony of repeating a simple operation in exactly the same way each time will exhaust the average attention in about 15 or 20 minutes. However, it has been found by experience that only minor changes in procedure are necessary to reawaken the interest and to sharpen the attention. By the careful introduction of such changes, the work done by each man can be varied at frequent intervals, and interest and attention sustained. With a well-laid-out schedule and with careful supervision, the practice period may be profitably extended to four hours for one period per day or two three-hour periods during the same day.

13-14 INTERVAL BETWEEN PERIODS.—The interval between practice periods should be as short as is practicable in order that as much as possible of the effect of one practice period may be carried over to the next. The loss of practice effect is progressive throughout the interval but in something less than a direct ratio to its length. This loss must of course be made up in the succeeding period before any further gain can be made. Consideration of economy in the time spent in training requires that practice be held at least once each day during the training period and that if practicable two practice periods be held each day. Where the training period extends over the weekend, at least one practice period should be held on Saturday. A training period which is to extend over the parts of two weeks should be started on Monday, as otherwise the smaller amount of training received before the weekend combined

with the length of that interruption will cause a disproportionally large loss in the effect of the training.

13-15 CONTINUITY OF TRAINING.—The training must be continuous and the range firing follow immediately after the completion of the preparatory exercises. While the manner of correct performance of the essential operations has been taught during the preparatory exercises, the habit of correct performance of these operations does not become fixed until after a week or more of practice in range firing. The training being incomplete at the end of the period of preparatory exercises, a break in the training will cause a great loss of practice effect. The time spent in preparatory exercises is thus largely wasted if these exercises are not immediately followed by the range firing.

13-16 PROCESS OF SLOW FIRE.—The process of firing slow fire with any form of small arm consists of the performance of three simple mechanical operations:

- (1) Aligning the sights with each other and with the point of aim.
- (2) Holding the weapon so that the sights remain in correct alignment while the trigger is being squeezed.
- (3) Squeezing the trigger in such a manner as not to disturb the sight alignment before the piece is fired.

While these are three distinct operations, it must be understood that they are not separated in time, but are performed concurrently. Thus, the operation of holding must be begun as soon as the operation of aligning the sights. While it is possible to delay the beginning of the operation of squeezing the trigger until after the sight alignment is completed, to do so will cause an unnecessary increase in the time and the effort required to fire the shot. It is preferable to start squeezing the trigger before the aim is complete, so that there is a very considerable pressure on the trigger by the time the sights are correctly aligned.

13-17 AMOUNT OF PRACTICE REQUIRED.—From 22 to 30 hours' preparatory exercises, including all .22 cal. firing, concentrated within the period of one week and followed immediately by one week of range firing, should produce something better than 90 percent of qualifications. This schedule requires

that two practice periods be held on each week day and one period on Saturday. If conditions prevent the holding of more than one period per day, then the number of hours spent on the preparatory exercises should be increased to about 36. Including the time on the range, the total number of practice hours required to attain 90-percent qualifications is from 60 to 75 hours. With the same time spent on preparatory exercises, two weeks of range firing should produce something better than 95 percent of qualifications. The effect of increasing the time spent on the range is more beneficial than is shown by the increased percentage of qualifications. Many men who qualify in the shorter period do so with their shooting habits still in the formative stage. Without the added effect of the increased range practice, these men would lose much of their skill prior to the next target season. Reduction of the time spent on the range to less than one week will produce a disproportionately large decrease in the percentage of qualifications.

13-18 QUALITY OF INSTRUCTION.—

The quality of the instruction should be of the highest. No pains should be spared in requiring the men under instruction to perform the essential operations in a precise and exact manner. Men under instruction inevitably reflect the attitude of the instructor. If he evinces a lack of interest and a disposition to accept a mediocre performance, the men are certain to show the same lack of interest and to acquire sloven habits. Excellent instruction is required to avoid waste of time and to reduce the time required for proper training. No degree of excellence in instruction, however, can reduce the time to a point below that which is necessary for habit formation.

13-19 COACH-AND-PUPIL METHOD.—

For purposes of instruction the men work together in pairs. One man, the "firer," performs the operation in question while the other man, the "coach," watches the performance, calling attention to defects noted. After a short interval of practice, the two men will, at the direction of the instructor, exchange places so that he who was "firer" now becomes "coach" and vice versa. The two men continue to alternate in this manner, under the direction of the instructor, until the end of the practice period.

The alternation of duties so brought about serves four useful purposes:

(1) It provides the frequent slight changes in procedure which are necessary to prevent loss of interest due to monotony and fatigue.

(2) It provides constant personal supervision of the training, and prevents the formation of faulty habits by the correction of minor errors as soon as they occur.

(3) It furnishes the coach an opportunity to see the bad effects caused by faulty performance and better enables him to avoid such mistakes.

(4) It tends to develop the ability of the men as instructors.

13-20 DIVISION INTO GROUPS.—Men under instruction are divided into groups of convenient size, usually of eight or ten men. The landing party or NEGDF squad makes a convenient group. Each group is under the direct supervision of a group instructor, who will ordinarily be a petty officer from the same division as the men under instruction. For the landing party or NEGDF squad, the squad petty officer should act as the group instructor, provided, of course, that he has the necessary qualifications. The work of the pairs of the various groups must be laid out so that no one is idle during the period of instruction. Nothing is more destructive to interest and attention than standing around with nothing to do.

13-21 GROUP INSTRUCTORS.—The first requisite of the group instructor is that he be a good teacher. He must have the ability to require a correct and wholehearted performance of the exercises by the men of his group. Second, he must be well grounded in the essentials of good shooting and the methods of instruction. Third, he must be able to recognize good performance when he sees it and be able to analyze a poor performance so as to determine its cause. Fourth, he must be able to talk to the men of his group in such a manner as will make his meaning clear to them and to convey the conviction of the truthfulness of his statements. The ability to shoot well is not essential to the qualifications of an instructor, but will ordinarily follow from his possession of the other qualifications. The reputation of being an excellent shot is an asset to the instructor, as it gives weight to his statements and inclines the men to accept them without question. This

fact, however, makes it all the more important to see that all instructors, and especially those who are experts shots, thoroughly understand the prescribed methods of instruction.

13-22 OFFICER IN CHARGE OF INSTRUCTION.—The officer in charge of instruction, assisted by such officer instructors as he has available, will lay out the course of instruction, make allotments of time to the various steps, and assign the subjects to be taken up at each instruction period. He, with his assistants, will supervise the work of the group instructors, keeping informed of the progress of each man and making such changes in time allotment as become necessary as the training progresses. The officer in charge of instruction and his assistants will usually participate in the explanation and demonstration with which each step is opened, and give personal assistance in backward cases.

13-23 METHOD OF INSTRUCTION.—The schedule of instruction for each step is as follows:

- (1) Explanation to the assembled men under instruction.
- (2) A demonstration of the work to be covered in the step.
- (3) Exercise in the work laid out for the step.

The explanation must be carefully prepared ahead of time so that the officer giving it will

know exactly what he is going to say. It must not, however, be reduced to the reading of a written lecture. The explanation should be brief and confined to the step under immediate consideration. The language should be strongly affirmative. The object of the explanation is to tell the men what they must do rather than to tell them what they should avoid. The necessity for exactness in the performance of all operations must be stressed.

The demonstration of the work for each step is made by taking one group and showing just how the exercise is carried on. The group is divided into pairs, the pairs assigned a number and a routine established by which the various pairs and the men in these pairs alternate in the performance of the exercises. The work of the group must be organized so that all men are kept busy all of the time.

The exercises are carried on by the groups, each under its own group instructor, in the same manner as has been demonstrated to them. The officer in charge and the officer instructors supervise the work of the group instructors; see that the groups are properly organized so that each man is busy; see that instructions are correctly interpreted; and that the exercises are carried on in a careful and precise manner.

SECTION III

NOMENCLATURE: SIGHTING AND AIMING

	Par.	Page
Nomenclature.....	13-24	538
Disassembly of main groups.....	13-25	538
Importance of sighting and aiming.....	13-26	539
Correct method of aiming.....	13-27	540
Correct sight alignment.....	13-28	540
Instruction in sighting and aiming.....	13-29	540
Blackening sights.....	13-30	541

13-24 NOMENCLATURE.—Instruction in nomenclature is given shortly after the men are issued the rifle. The use of wall charts, film strips, and movies are excellent training aids in putting over the subject of nomenclature. Assembly and disassembly by groups under instruction are excellent methods of teaching nomenclature simultaneously.

Disassembly of the U. S. Rifle, cal. .30 M1 is broken down in three main groups; i. e. (1) Stock Group, (2) Barrel and Receiver Group, and (3) Trigger Housing Group. To disassemble the three main groups proceed as follows:

THE RIFLE IS COMPOSED OF THREE MAIN GROUPS:

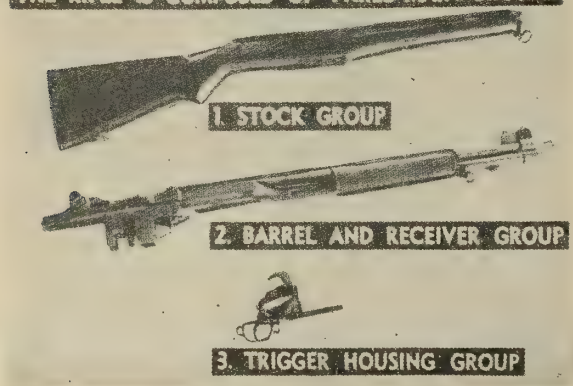


FIGURE 13.—Main groups of the rifle.

13-25 DISASSEMBLY OF MAIN GROUPS.—Grasp rifle with left hand so that base of trigger housing is included in the grip. Place butt of rifle against left thigh. Grasp rear portion of trigger guard with thumb and

finger of right hand and exert enough pressure toward the butt to unlatch trigger guard from trigger housing. Then swing trigger guard away from trigger housing to extreme opened position. Pull out trigger housing group and place on clean flat surface. Grasp rifle over rear of the receiver with left hand, muzzle to left. Strike and grasp small of stock with right hand so as to separate stock group from barrel and receiver group.

Disassembly of barrel and receiver group.—Place group with the sights down and muzzle to the left. Grasp follower rod with left thumb and forefinger and disengage it from the follower arm by pressure toward muzzle. Withdraw follower rod and operating rod spring to the right. When follower rod and operating rod spring are attached, do not separate.

Push follower arm pin from its seat by start-

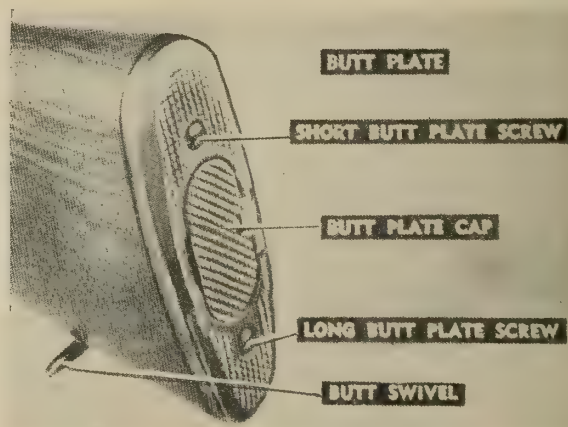


FIGURE 14.—Butt plate.

ing it with the drift or combination tool held in right hand and applied on side of receiver farthest from body. Pull out pin from rear side with left hand. Grasp bullet guide, follower arm, and operating rod catch assembly and pull to the left until these parts are disen-

gaged. Lift out and separate these three parts. Do not remove accelerator from operating rod-catch assembly since accelerator pin is riveted in its seat. Lift out follower with follower slide attached. Do not separate follower from follower slide.

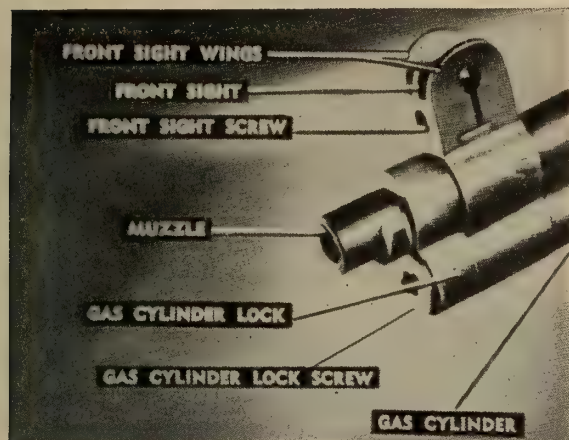


FIGURE 15.—Gas cylinder lock and screw.

Grasp barrel and receiver group with left hand and operating rod handle with right hand. Move operating rod slowly to the rear, pulling operating rod handle upward and away from receiver. This will disengage operating rod from bolt when lug on operating rod slides up into dismount notch of operating rod guide groove in receiver. When operating rod is thus disengaged, remove it with a downward and rearward movement.

Disassembly of trigger housing group.—Close and latch trigger guard. Release hammer to fired position and hold group in right hand with right thumb on sear, forefinger pulling back on trigger, base of trigger housing braced against a firm support, and press on sear with right thumb to relieve tension on trigger pin. Start trigger pin from its seat with point of bullet or combination tool held in left hand, then remove it. Release pressure of right thumb and forefinger, gradually permitting hammer spring to extend to its full length, at the same time steadying hammer spring housing with fingers of left hand. Remove trigger assembly but do not remove sear pin or sear. Remove hammer spring housing, hammer spring, and hammer spring plunger, and separate these parts. Push out hammer pin from left side and remove

hammer. To remove safety, push its stud out from left side of trigger housing until stud snaps out of its seat; then lift safety from slot in trigger housing.

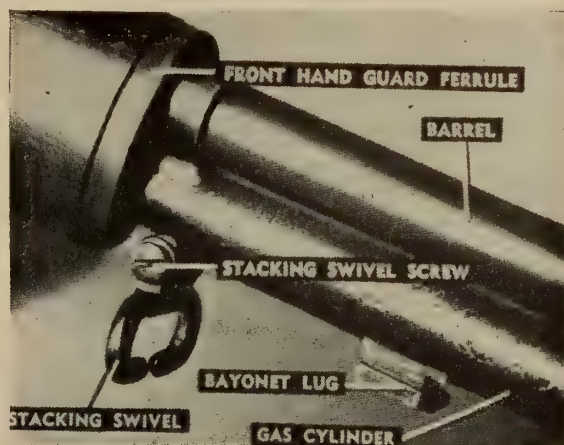


FIGURE 16.—Gas cylinder and bayonet lug.

Hold trigger housing in left hand, base of trigger housing down and away from body. Swing trigger guard to open position with right hand. Slide trigger guard toward body until hammer pin holes are over the center of safety slot. Rotate trigger guard to right and upward with right hand until wings of the trigger guard clear edge of trigger housing. Remove the trigger guard.

Hold trigger housing in left hand, right side down, rear end resting on a solid surface. Insert point of a bullet or combination tool in dismounting hole in left side of housing and push out clip ejector.

Disassembly of bolt assembly.—Grasp bolt by operating lug and while sliding it from rear to front, lift it up and out to the right front with a slight rotary motion. Grasp bolt in left hand, holding firing pin in place with little finger, extractor to right, front end up, thumb on front end of bolt to prevent ejector from flying out. Insert point of bullet or combination tool between lower edge of extractor and cartridge seat flange on bolt and pry extractor.

13-26 IMPORTANCE OF SIGHTING AND AIMING.—The exact alignment of the sights with each other and with the aiming point is necessary for accurate shooting. Due to the short distance between the sights a small error in aligning the sights causes a considerable error

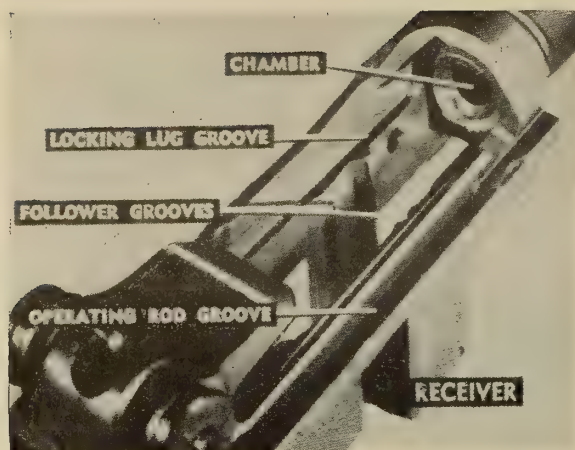


FIGURE 17.—Receiver.

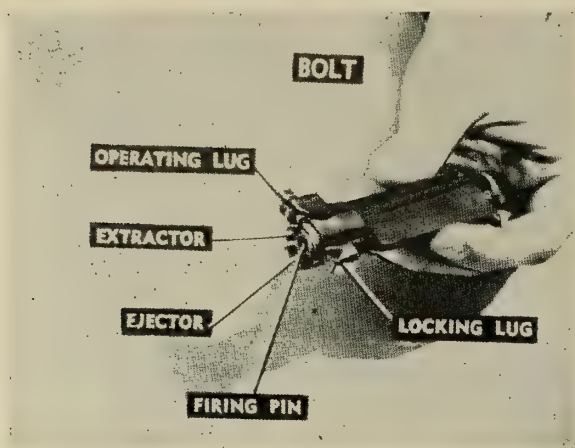


FIGURE 18.—Bolt.

at the target. Fortunately, however, the correct method of sighting is easily learned and very accurate results can be obtained with a small amount of thorough training. With men who have been given the preparatory exercises prescribed herein, poor shooting is seldom, if ever, caused by faulty aiming.

13-27 CORRECT METHOD OF AIMING.

a. With the peep sight the eye looks through the peep without focussing on it. The outline of the peep is blurred but the center of it is clear. The tip of the front sight is brought to the center of this clear space. Keeping the two sights so aligned, both sights are moved together until the tip of the front sight is just under the bull's-eye as will allow the bull's-eye to be seen as a full clear circle without blurring or distortion. The appearance of the properly aligned sights and bull's-eye is impressed on the

memory so that any error of alignment is instantly recognized.

b. With the open sight more attention must be paid to the appearance of the rear sight. The firer must look at the rear sight as well as at the front sight and at the bull's-eye. With somewhat more practice than is required for the peep sight, the correct appearance of the open sights may be memorized so that errors of alignment are readily apparent.

13-28 CORRECT SIGHT ALIGNMENT.

Service small arms are fitted with two types of sights, the peep and the open sight. Where the peep sight is fitted it should be used for all firing.

a. The peep sight.—The correct alignment of the peep sight is shown in figure 19. It will be noted that the tip of the front sight is in the center of the peep. The bull's-eye is wholly within the upper half of the peep.

b. The open sight.—The correct alignment of the open sight is shown in figure 19. It will be noted that the tip of the front sight is level with the top of the open sight bar. The bull's-eye is wholly above the bar.



Open sight.



Peep sight.

FIGURE 19.—Correct sight alignment.

13-29 INSTRUCTION IN SIGHTING AND AIMING.

—The correct method of aligning the sights is explained and is illustrated by the use of diagrams and the Instructional Sighting Device. The use of the sighting device is



FIGURE 19A.—Instructional sighting device.

demonstrated. The men under instruction are exercised in the use of the sighting device until they are familiar with the appearance of the sights when correctly aligned on the bull's-eye. Not more than two full instruction periods are required for the separate instruction in sighting and aiming. Aiming instruction is, however, continued in conjunction with the position and trigger squeeze exercises. This is done by

providing a series of small aiming bull's-eyes conveniently located for aiming in each of the three positions. These small aiming bull's-eyes should be at least 20 feet from the firers and preferably at a greater distance.

13-30 BLACKENING SIGHTS.—Blackening sights should be done in the first preparatory exercises. Sights, both rear and front, can be blackened with a carbide lamp, kerosene lamp, candle, or small pine stick. Oil should be removed before blackening.



FIGURE 20.—Instructional sighting device in operation.

SECTION IV

POSITIONS

	Par.	Page
Use of the sling.....	13-31	542
Instruction in the use of sling.....	13-32	542
Correct sling adjustment.....	13-33	542
Importance of good position.....	13-34	542
Standard positions.....	13-35	543
Considerations applicable to all positions.....	13-36	543
Instruction in position.....	13-37	544
Prone position.....	13-38	544
Sitting position.....	13-39	544
Standing position.....	13-40	545
Kneeling position.....	13-41	546

13-31 USE OF THE SLING.—The sling is an important aid to steady holding in the prone and sitting positions. With the elbows resting on the ground or on the knees, the use of the sling permits the rifle to be propped into position with little or no muscular effort. With the muscles properly relaxed, the whole position would collapse if it were not tied together by the sling. The tension on the sling is that due to the weight which it supports. This weight includes the weight of the left forearm, the rifle, the head, and a considerable portion of the weight of the upper part of the body. Increasing the tension beyond that necessary to support these weights requires an unnecessary and undesirable expenditure of muscular effort. To one who is accustomed to its use the properly adjusted sling causes no discomfort. Untrained men, however, always believe that the properly adjusted sling is too tight. This is due to the fact that they have not learned to relax properly and are opposing the stricture of the sling by hardening the muscles of the left arm. For this reason the instructor must be the judge of the length of the sling to be used by the untrained man. It will be found that there is surprisingly little difference in the lengths of the slings required by men of different builds. In the standing position, where the left elbow is unsupported, the use of the sling is prohibited.

13-32 INSTRUCTION IN THE USE OF SLING.—The principal instruction in the use of the sling is given at the beginning of the first period of instruction in positions. After the usual explanation and demonstration, the men under instruction are required to make repetitions of the adjustment of the length of the sling and its proper adjustment on the left arm. Each of these trials starts with the sling in the parade position. Subsequent instruction in the use of the sling is given in conjunction with the instruction in positions and the methods of assuming them.

13-33 CORRECT SLING ADJUSTMENT.—To adjust the sling for use in the prone and sitting positions—

(1) Disengage the hook of the short strap from the long strap and hook it into its own part.

(2) Adjust the free loop of the long strap so that when it is pulled back taut the end of the loop comes even with the comb of the stock.

(3) The keeper on the sling should be placed so that it is situated between the hook of the long strap and the free end of the loop.

(4) Bending the left hand back at right angles to the wrist, insert it, from the right side, into the free loop of the long strap.

(5) With the right hand adjust the loop well up on the left upper arm, and push the keeper back against the left upper arm.

(6) With the rifle held approximately horizontally, pass the left hand to the left, then over both parts of the long strap and grasp the stock with the left hand near the lower band swivel.

(7) Slide the left hand out against the pressure of the sling as far as it will go toward the lower band.

13-34 IMPORTANCE OF GOOD POSITION.—A good position is a requisite to the best results in rifle shooting. The better the

position the easier it is to hold, and consequently the less the attention is distracted from the all-important operation of squeezing the trigger while the sights are properly aligned. No degree of excellence in the position will, however, compensate for a lack of practice. The time available for rifle training should be devoted to practice and not to a search for minor variations in positions to suit individual peculiarities.

13-35 STANDARD POSITIONS.—The standard positions prescribed in these rules are four in number: Prone, sitting, kneeling, and standing. These positions have been selected as a result of experience and have been found to produce excellent results with men of all physical types. The untrained man will at first have some difficulty in assuming these positions, but this difficulty will disappear with practice. The initial difficulties experienced by the untrained men produce a tendency to depart from the standard positions and in some cases to a continual experimentation with variations

in position. These tendencies should be immediately checked and all men required to use the standard positions. A good position with adequate training is preferable to a better position with less training.

13-36 CONSIDERATIONS APPLICABLE TO ALL POSITIONS.—*a.* No rifle supported by the body of the firer is ever perfectly still. In general, the unsteadiness increases with the number of muscles involved in holding the rifle. Propping the rifle in position with rigid bony framework of the body increases the steadiness of holding.

b. In any position, with the attention relaxed, the involuntary movement of the body will cause corresponding movements of the rifle. If these movements are observed through the sights, it will be seen that the line of sight moves irregularly back and forth over a definite area of the target. A conscious effort is required to direct the sights at a point outside of this area. When the firer concentrates on squeezing the trigger the conscious effort of holding is somewhat relaxed. This results in the rifle and the shot being deflected toward the area on which the sights align when the attention is relaxed. The position is then correct only when the desired aiming point lies well within the area on which the sights align when the attention is relaxed. The correctness of the position may be checked by closing the eyes for a few seconds, and then, upon opening them, noting the part of the target on which the sights are aligned. If this is not the desired aiming point, the whole body should be moved until the sights align naturally on or near to the desired aiming point.

c. The pulsation of the firer's body and the trembling of his muscles have little effect on the accuracy of the fire. The resulting total displacement of the rifle is small and is such that the barrel remains parallel to its correct position. The parallel movements of the rifle cause only minor deviations in the fall of the shot. Canting the rifle has no appreciable effect at 200 yards.

d. The firer's balance should be sufficiently stable as not to be seriously disturbed by the force of the recoil.

e. The position of the firer's hands and arms should be such that—

(1) He has full control of the rifle at all times.

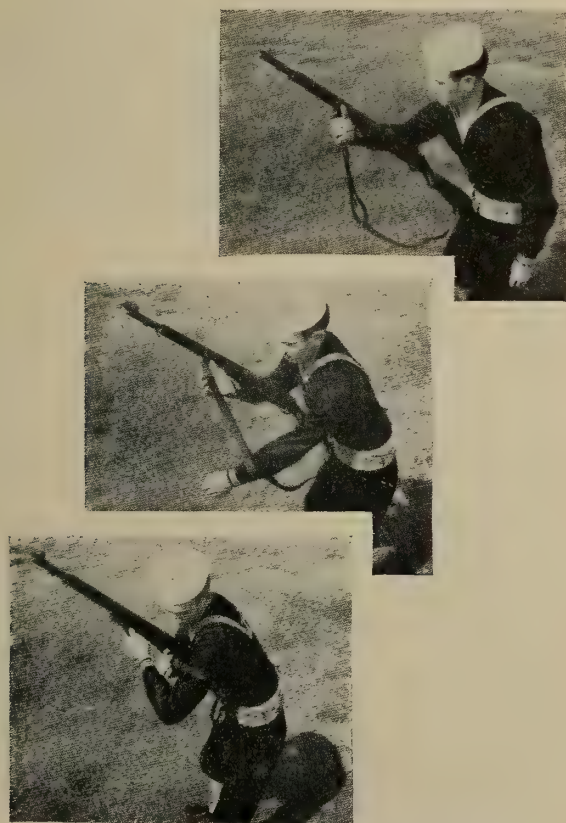


FIGURE 21.—3 Steps in getting into the sling correctly.

(2) He can reload with facility without any major change of position.

f. The position should be comfortable and one which can be maintained without strain.

g. A conscious effort should be made to relax as much as practicable before concentrating on the squeezing of the trigger.

h. The slack in the trigger should be taken up as soon as the position has been assumed and during the time that the sights are being aligned.

i. During the final operation of squeezing the trigger the breath should be held. The correct method of doing this is to:

- (1) Take an ordinary breath.
- (2) Let out somewhat less than half of it.
- (3) Hold the rest by closing the throat and not by muscular effort. The muscles of the diaphragm should be relaxed.

13-37 INSTRUCTION IN POSITION.—

a. The officer in charge of instruction starts with an explanation of the subject matter of paragraph 19-36. One of the instruction groups is used to demonstrate the methods of instruction and to illustrate—

- (1) The method of controlling the breathing.
- (2) The method of taking up the slack.
- (3) The sling adjustment and use of the sling.
- (4) The method of assuming the prone position.
- (5) The prone position.
- (6) The sitting position.
- (7) The kneeling position.
- (8) The standing position.
- (9) The instruction for the first and second periods should cover items (1) through (3), and (4) through (8).

After the demonstration of the items to be covered during the period, the group instructors proceed with the instruction of their groups.

b. The individual instruction consists of—

- (1) Requiring each man of a pair to repeatedly perform the various operations in the prescribed manner; and
- (2) Requiring each man of a pair to observe the manner in which the other member of his pair performs the same operations.

It should be remembered that the amount of training will depend on the number of times each operation is repeated rather than on the amount of time spent in each repetition.

The instruction in sling adjustment is followed by instruction in the prone position and the method of assuming it. With the loop sling loose and adjusted to the correct length, the men are required to get into the sling and to assume the position in the prescribed manner. This includes the taking up of the slack, aiming, breath control, and proper relaxation. Instruction in the sitting, kneeling, and standing should follow in a similar manner.

13-38 PRONE POSITION.—*a. Method of assuming.*—In order to avoid the formation of wasteful habits a routine method of assuming the prone position should be used from the beginning of the instruction. The following method differs from that used in the other services, but it is equally as rapid and is more suited for practicing on the steel or wooden decks of ships. The procedure is as follows:

- (1) Adjust the sling as described in paragraph 13-33.
- (2) Select the spot on which it is desired to place the left elbow.



FIGURE 22.—Prone position.

- (3) Kneel on the right knee, with knee a few inches to the right and rear of the selected spot.
- (4) Place left elbow on the selected spot and at the same time let the left leg slide to the rear.
- (5) Throw the weight of the body on the left elbow and slide both feet to the rear on the bent toes.
- (6) Bring rifle to the shoulder and place right elbow on the ground.

b. Description.—This is the most steady of all the positions where no artificial rest is used. In this position a trained man can for a few seconds at a time hold so steadily that there is no perceptible motion of the sights.

13-39 SITTING POSITION.—*a.* The sling is adjusted as explained in paragraph 13-33. The body faces about 45° to the right of the line of fire. The buttocks and the bottoms of the feet only rest on the ground. The heels are dug into the ground slightly to prevent



FIGURE 23.—Sitting position.



FIGURE 24.—Sitting position (alternate).

slipping. The legs are spread apart to a comfortable extent and the elbows are supported by the knees and legs. Some slight experimentation will be required to find the best position for the elbows. The back of the right elbow is supported by the inner side of the right leg. The body should lean far enough forward so that the balance is not disturbed by the recoil, but not so far as to cause difficulty in aligning the sights on the target. The muscles cannot be relaxed to as great an extent in the sitting position as is the case in the prone position. Unnecessary hardening of the muscles must, however, be guarded against. The head is supported by the stock with neck muscles relaxed. The body is propped in position by the rifle, which in turn is held by the sling.

b. The front sight is centered in the peep and the forefinger of the right hand takes up the slack of the trigger. As far as practicable the muscles are relaxed. The breath is held as described in paragraph 13-36 (*i*). The right eye is now closed for a few seconds and then opened. The point on the target at which the sights are directed is noted when the eye opens. If this point is not the desired point of aim, the whole body is moved until the sights line up naturally on the desired point of aim.

13-40 STANDING POSITION.—*a.* This is the least steady of the four standard positions. In the standing position even the most expert shot will have difficulty in holding the sights in correct alignment for more than a few seconds at a time. The body is faced almost at right angles to the line of fire and is erect with weight equally distributed on both legs. The feet are placed about 15 inches apart, no effort being made to turn the toes either in or out. The left hand grasps the stock lightly between the rear sight and the lower band. The left elbow is under the rifle. The right hand grasps the small of the stock firmly and pulls the stock back hard against the shoulder. The right elbow is at about the height of the shoulder or above it. Most of the weight of



FIGURE 25.—Standing position.

the rifle is supported by the pull of the right hand, while the left hand, supporting little of the weight, acts more as a guide. The head rests naturally on the stock with neck muscles relaxed.

b. The front sight is centered in the peep and the right forefinger takes up the slack of the trigger. The right eye is closed for a few

seconds and when opened the point at which the sights are directed is noted.

13-41 KNEELING POSITION.—*a.* The sling is adjusted as prescribed in paragraph 13-33. The position is taken by half facing to the right and dropping to the right knee. The left foreleg is nearly vertical and the left knee is under the rifle with the right leg about parallel to the firing line. The left foot is on a vertical line midway between right foot and right knee with the buttocks resting on inside of right foot or right heel. The left elbow is extended over the left knee, left hand out to swivel, cheek against stock taut, and body inclined forward.

b. On assuming the kneeling position the front sight is centered in the peep and the forefinger of the right hand takes up the slack of the trigger. As far as practicable the muscles are relaxed. Proper breathing is necessary as described in paragraph 13-36 (*i*). The right eye is closed for a few seconds, reopened, and the point on the target at which the sights are directed is noted. If this point is not the point of aim shift the body until the sights line up naturally on the desired aiming point.



FIGURE 26.—Kneeling position.

SECTION V

TRIGGER SQUEEZE

	Par.	Page
Importance of trigger squeeze.....	13-42	547
Correct method of trigger squeeze.....	13-43	547
Flinching.....	13-44	547
Methods of preventing flinching.....	13-45	547
Instruction in trigger squeeze.....	13-46	548

13-42 IMPORTANCE OF TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—The correct trigger squeeze is the most important part of small-arms shooting. Men who have mastered the correct method of squeezing the trigger are able to make excellent scores under even the most adverse conditions. Those who have not mastered the correct method of squeezing the trigger are unable to make good scores under any conditions. An incorrect method of squeezing the trigger is the cause of most poor shooting. A man who has mastered the correct method of squeezing in any position will have little difficulty in any other position.

13-43 CORRECT METHOD OF TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—The mechanical operation of the correct trigger squeeze is a very simple one. The pressure on the trigger is applied straight back, in a line parallel to the bore. If there is any sidewise pressure on the trigger, the release of the sear will result in an unbalanced pressure, which will cause a sidewise deflection of the shot. The pressure on the trigger is increased gradually until it is sufficient to release the sear. Sudden, jerky increases of pressure disturb the aim and make it impossible to hold on. So long as the increases of pressure are applied smoothly and without jerks, there need be no limit on the rapidity with which they are applied. The whole operation of squeezing the trigger should not take more than 2 or 3 seconds and with practice can readily be reduced to less than 1 second.

13-44 FLINCHING.—*a. Cause and effect.*—Flinching is caused by the involuntary, spasmodic, hardening of the muscles in order to withstand the shock of recoil. The bad effect

of flinching is due to the fact that the recoil is anticipated. The spasmodic bracing of the body takes place just before the piece is fired, resulting in a serious disturbance of the aim.

b. Flinching a natural reaction.—All men instinctively try to avoid the consequences of an expected blow.* A lifetime of habit has strengthened this natural impulse. The man may be perfectly aware that the expected blow is not a serious one, but nevertheless will, unless otherwise trained, brace himself to withstand it. The impulse to flinch is so natural and so habitual that men who flinch are seldom aware of the fact that they do so. The movement due to the recoil ordinarily masks the movement due to the flinch which immediately precedes it.

c. Flinching demonstrated.—It is sometimes difficult to make men believe that they flinch. With such men, nothing can be done until they are convinced of their fault. This is difficult, as men seldom flinch with a rifle or pistol which they know to be unloaded. The best procedure in these cases is for the instructor to load the magazine with a mixture of live and dummy cartridges. The derangement of the aim, due to flinching, will be readily apparent to the firer when he snaps on the dummy cartridges.

d. Flinching detected.—In flinching the firer invariably closes the sighting eye before the shot is fired. In order to detect flinching, the coach need only watch the firer's eye. If the firer's eye can be seen to close, it is a sure indication that he is flinching.

13-45 METHODS OF PREVENTING FLINCHING.—Careful instruction is necessary, both in the preparatory exercises and in the range instruction, if the habit of flinching is to be overcome. Without this careful instruction the beginner will not improve, but will get worse the more he fires. The best method of overcoming the habit of flinching is to train the

man to fire under conditions which make it difficult for him to flinch. These conditions are—

a. The muscles relaxed.—If the muscles are kept relaxed until the sear is released, it is impossible to flinch in time to disturb the fall of the shot. It is, however, very difficult to keep the muscles perfectly relaxed in an unfamiliar or uncomfortable position. For this reason, the men must become accustomed to the position, and be able to assume it easily, before instruction in trigger squeeze is given. In order that the instruction in trigger squeeze may not be too long delayed, it should be given first in the steadiest and most comfortable position.

b. Firer required to call the shot.—The firer is instructed to continue the aim until the shot is fired. He is required to designate the part of the target on which the sights were aligned at the instant of discharge. The inability to do this indicates that he closed his eye, *i. e.*, flinched, just before firing. The persistent effort of the firer to see the sights right up to the instant of discharge will assist in preventing flinching.

c. The instructor squeezes the trigger.—For the first few trials during the preparatory exercises and for the first few shots on the range, the instructor squeezes the trigger while the firer aims. The purpose of this is to show the firer how to apply the pressure on the trigger, and to demonstrate to him that there is no derangement of the aim when the trigger is properly squeezed. The instructor takes position alongside of the firer, resting his weight on the right elbow, and supporting the right wrist with the left hand. The instructor's right thumb is placed over the firer's forefinger, which rests on the trigger. The instructor's forefinger is placed in rear of the trigger guard. The instructor squeezes the trigger with a pinching action of the thumb and forefinger. While squeezing the trigger, the instructor watches the back of the firer to note his breathing. When the firer holds his breath, it is an

indication that he is aiming and that the sights are properly aligned.

d. The gradual squeeze.—When the instructor squeezes the trigger there is no disturbance of the aim. This is due to two reasons: First, the pressure is applied straight back in a line parallel to the bore, so that there is no unbalanced pressure when the sear is released. Second, the pressure is gradually applied so that the firer does not know exactly when the discharge will take place. The discharge coming unexpectedly, does not give the firer time to brace himself. He does not flinch because he does not know when to do so. In order that a similar effect may be produced when the firer himself squeezes the trigger, he is instructed to increase the pressure gradually. When the trigger is squeezed with a gradually increasing pressure, the firer cannot foretell the exact instant when there will be enough pressure to release the sear, and consequently does not know when to flinch. The firer then squeezes the trigger in such a manner that he does not know exactly when the rifle will be fired.

13-46 INSTRUCTION IN TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—The instructor explains the importance of the trigger squeeze and the correct method of performing it. He then selects one pair from the men to be instructed and demonstrates the method of detecting flinching by watching the firer's eye, and the method in which the coach squeezes the trigger while the firer aims. The "firers" and "coaches" are then required to assume their correct positions, and the instructor assures himself that these positions are correct before the individual instruction is allowed to proceed. Succeeding periods are begun in a similar manner with an explanation and a demonstration. During the second period the instruction should be confined to the prone position only. In subsequent periods the first instruction is given in the prone position followed by instruction in the sitting, kneeling, and standing positions.

SECTION VI

RAPID FIRE

	Par.	Page
Rapid fire.....	13-47	549
Cadence exercises.....	13-48	550
Second rapid-fire exercises.....	13-49	551
Reloading the rifle.....	13-50	551
Third rapid-fire exercise.....	13-51	551
Instruction steps.....	13-52	552

13-47 RAPID FIRE.—Rapid fire is the uninterrupted sequence of shots delivered without loss of time. Time is gained by rapidly assuming the position, taking up the slack of the trigger quickly, and reloading the weapon with no loss of time or motion.

Rapidly assuming positions.—

a. Prone.—Take the correct prone position and mark the spots on the ground where the elbows will rest and the point just immediately below where the butt of the rifle rests. Rise, first to the knees, then to the feet keeping feet in place.

The best practice for assuming the prone position rapidly is doing it by the numbers in five counts:

(1) Being at the ready with loop sling adjusted, the left hand just below the stock ferrule swivel and the right hand at the heel of the butt, bend both knees to the ground and lean back slightly.

(2) Place the toe of the butt of the rifle on the ground in the place previously marked.

(3) Place the left elbow on the ground in the place previously marked.

(4) Place the butt of the rifle against the right shoulder with the heel of the hand against the butt plate.

(5) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand, place the right elbow on the ground in the place previously marked and assume the aiming position.

b. Sitting.—Take the correct sitting position. Mark and prepare positions of the heels. Mark the spot for the buttocks and then rise keeping



FIGURE 27.—Assuming prone position rapidly.

the feet in place. To get in this position rapidly:

(1) Sit down in the spot marked for the buttocks, breaking the fall with the right hand.

(2) Place the left arm in position.

(3) With the heel of the right hand on the butt, place the butt against the shoulder.

(4) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand and assume the aiming position.

c. Kneeling position.—Take the correct kneeling position. Mark the position of the left foot

and right knee. Rise with the right toe in its marked place and left foot in its proper place. To assume the position rapidly:

(1) Kneel with the right knee in its marked place.

(2) Put the left arm in position.

(3) With the heel of the right hand on the butt place the butt against the shoulder.

(4) Grasp the small of the stock with the right hand and assume the aiming position.

After several practices of assuming the positions rapidly by the numbers, the pupils then assume the positions individually until they

can perform the operation quickly and smoothly. In each instance after taking the aiming position, the pupil checks his position by lining up his sights with the target, closes his eye, and then reopens his eye to see whether his sights are still on the target. If they are not, correct the position of the entire body, not merely the arm.

13-48 CADENCE EXERCISES.—One important consideration in rapid fire is proper timing. This is accomplished by timing or cadence exercises. Before beginning these exercises the instructor explains and demonstrates: (a) the correct position; (b) correct method of aiming; (c) how to strike the operating rod handle sharply, straight to the rear, to cock the rifle, and then releases his hand quickly to allow the operating rod handle to go forward; (d) the correct trigger squeeze; (e) explains what is meant by proper timing; and (f) how the speed is increased with skill until 4 seconds per shot is attained.

Cadence exercises are conducted in all positions (except standing) in the following manner:

a. The pupil takes position and aims at the target.

b. The coach takes a position where he can observe the shooter's eye and trigger finger—also in such position to strike the operating rod handle sharply in order to cock the rifle.

c. Upon a prearranged signal, the coach strikes the operating rod handle, the pupil takes up the slack quickly and continues the pressure until the hammer falls. The instructor repeats the signal at 6-second intervals for one minute with one minute rest between exercises. After the pupils have mastered the 6-second time interval, intervals are progressively reduced until finally the exercises are conducted



FIGURE 28.—Assuming the sitting position rapidly.



FIGURE 29.—Cadence exercises in the prone . . .



FIGURE 30.— . . . and sitting positions.

with the instructor giving the signal "bolt" at 4-second intervals.

13-49 SECOND RAPID-FIRE EXERCISES.—After positions and cadence drills have been mastered, the pupils are given simulated firing on the firing line in the following manner. The instructor commands: 1. LOCK. 2. EIGHT ROUNDS, SIMULATE LOAD. 3. READY ON THE RIGHT. 4. READY ON THE LEFT. 5. READY ON THE FIRING LINE. 6. TARGETS.

At the command "READY ON THE FIRING LINE" the rifles are unlocked. At the command "TARGETS" all riflemen drop into position and simulate firing eight rounds with the coach beside them striking the bolt as in cadence exercises. Reloading is simulated and eight more rounds are squeezed off. The instructor keeps the group informed as to passage of time by announcing "first shot," "second shot," etc., "half-time," and "cease firing." This is practiced for all positions until the students are proficient in this phase of rapid fire.

NOTES

1. In sitting and kneeling rapid fire, 60 seconds are allowed for firing 16 rounds. This allows 3 seconds per shot, 7 seconds for assuming the position, and 5 seconds for reloading.

2. In prone rapid fire 65 seconds are allowed for firing 16 rounds. This allows 3 seconds per shot, 10 seconds for assuming the position, and 7 seconds for reloading.

3. Although 3 seconds per round are allowed in actual firing, 4 seconds per shot are allowed in dry firing to compensate for the manual operation of the operating rod by the coach.

4. In all cadence exercises a wooden block fitted into an M-1 clip will permit free movement of the bolt.

The wooden block must be grooved at the top and bottom to permit free movement of the bolt.

13-50 RELOADING THE RIFLE.—In the prone and sitting positions the rifle is reloaded by holding the rifle firmly with the left hand, the toe of the butt being placed on the ground. In the kneeling position the butt should be placed on the thigh. It also may be put on the thigh in the sitting position if more easily and comfortably done by the shooter.

The clip is taken from the belt and placed in the receiver, using the thumb, with the fingers joined and pointed downward, pushing down the clip into the receiver until it engages the clip latch. The closing and locking of the bolt may often be aided by striking the operating-rod handle sharply with the heel of the right hand.



FIGURE 31.—Reloading in sitting . . .



FIGURE 32.— . . . and prone positions.

13-51 THIRD RAPID-FIRE EXERCISE.—This phase of rapid-fire instruction includes the

use of dummy cartridges and insures practice in reloading. The pupils are placed on the 200-yard firing line with the coaches. Sights are set at 200 yards and the commands by the instructor are the same as used in the actual firing of rapid fire. The use of continuously exposed targets requires the last command of the instructor prior to firing to be **TARGETS**.

When the pupil receives the command **LOCK** he locks his weapon—**LOAD** he inserts first clip of dummy cartridges—**READY ON THE FIRING LINE** he unlocks the safety—and when he receives the word **TARGETS** he assumes the position rapidly and squeezes off eight rounds with the coach operating the operating rod—reloads a second clip of dummy cartridges—squeezes off the second clip of eight rounds,

finishing the last round just as the instructor announces "cease firing."

13-52 INSTRUCTION STEPS.—The coaches should particularly note the following:

- (1) That the sling is properly adjusted.
 - (2) That the correct position is assumed.
 - (3) That the firer does not close his eye in firing.
 - (4) That the second clip is properly loaded.
- The instructor explains the sight adjustments and shows, by actually firing, how changing the sight moves the shot on the target. The instructor points out how the force and direction of the wind may be estimated, by:
- (1) The range flags.
 - (2) Movement of grass and branches of trees.
 - (3) The drift of smoke, or of grass or bits of paper thrown into the air.

SECTION VII

ELEVATION AND WINDAGE; SAFETY PRECAUTIONS; EXAMINATION ON PREPARATORY EXERCISES

	Par.	Page
Scales.....	13-53	553
Elevation rule.....	13-54	553
Wind-gage rule.....	13-55	553
Wind clock.....	13-56	553
Wind correction.....	13-57	553
Zero of the rifle.....	13-58	554
Safety precautions.....	13-59	554
Examination.....	13-60	554

13-53 SCALES.—(a) *Range.*—Range changes may be made by turning the elevating knob of the rear sight. The elevating knob has graduations of 200, 400, 600, 800, 1,000, and 1,200 yards of range. Index lines between these graduations indicate the odd hundreds of range; i. e., 100, 300, 500, etc.

(b) *Windage.*—Adjustment for windage may be made by turning the windage knob. Each windage graduation represents an angular adjustment of 4 minutes. Each “click” represents 1 minute of angle or 1 inch change on target for each 100 yards of range.

13-54 ELEVATION RULE.—The elevation rule states that “one click of the elevating knob moves the strike of the bullet one inch on the target for each 100 yards of range.”

13-55 WIND-GAGE RULE.—“One click of the windage knob moves the strike of the bullet 1 inch on the target for each 100 yards of range.” Right windage moves the strike of the bullet to the right and left windage moves it to the left, as shown by the arrows and letters on the windage knob. At 300 yards one click moves the strike of the bullet 3 inches; at 500 yards, 5 inches.

13-56 WIND CLOCK.—The horizontal wind clock is used in describing the direction of the wind. Visualize the shooter standing in the center of a huge clock facing north. A wind from the south would be a 6 o'clock wind, from the west a 9 o'clock wind, etc. The velocity of the wind is described in miles per hour. Velocity may be determined by throwing up dry grass, paper, dust, etc., and watching

how fast it travels. Range flags are often indicative. The velocity of wind can best be judged by experienced shooters and when on

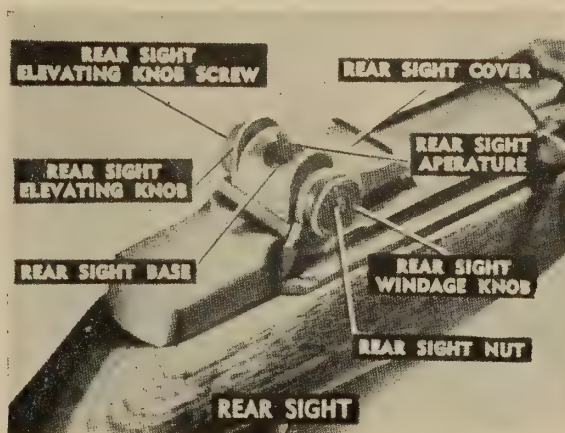


FIGURE 33.—The rear sight.

the range it is best to ask than to guess. A light breeze is a 5- to 8-mile wind; a strong breeze 10- to 12-mile wind; a 20-mile-an-hour wind is described as strong.

13-57 WIND CORRECTION.—To make a correction after ascertaining the wind speed proceed with the following formula:

$$\frac{\text{Range (in hundreds)} \times \text{wind velocity}}{10} = \text{Number of clicks}$$

Example: At 300 yards, if 12-mile wind at 3 o'clock

$$\frac{3 \times 12}{10} = 3.6 \text{ or } 4 \text{ clicks}$$

Since the wind is coming from the right, the rear sight is moved to the right, **into the wind**, to counteract the force of the wind.

No changes in windage are necessary for 6 and 12 o'clock winds since these winds do not blow the bullet off its path.

13-58 ZERO OF THE RIFLE.—The zero of a rifle for each range is the point at which the rear sight must be placed for both elevation and windage in order to hit the center of the bull's-eye on a normal day with no wind.

This zero may not conform to the marks on the elevation or windage knobs. The rifle's zero may differ with each man that fires it, the result of different holding or aiming. The rifle is best zeroed on a calm day. After arriving at the zero of the rifle on any particular range (300 yards is best) proceed as follows:

a. Loosen the screw in the elevating knob and pull the elevating knob away from the receiver until the teeth are disengaged and then set the 300-yard mark on the knob exactly opposite the index line on the sight base.

b. Tighten the screw. Run the aperture all the way down *remembering the number of clicks*. This is the zero for 300 yards. Record it. To better tighten the screw, run the aperture all the way up and tighten. Then apply the zero for 300 yards on the rifle by using the knob setting and see it correspond to the number of clicks at which the bullet hit the center of the bull's-eye at 300 yards.

To set some other range; i. e., 400 yards, use the knob graduations without any reference to the clicks—the shot should be in the center of the bull's-eye; however, if the shooter has to make 1 or 2 click changes, record it as "for 400 yards, 400+1."

13-59 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.—Safety precautions should be explained to the men and should be frequently emphasized as the instruction progresses. The following precautions are the most important:

(1) Never point a rifle at anyone you do not intend to shoot, nor in a direction where accidental discharge may do harm.

(2) On leaving the firing line open the chamber and keep it open.

(3) Never leave a loaded rifle or one with cartridges in the magazine where it can be picked up by others.

(4) Immediately upon taking up a rifle make sure by personal examination that it is not loaded.

(5) On the firing line, if the rifle is loaded, keep it locked until you are ready to shoot, and

do not turn around on the line with a loaded rifle in your hands.

13-60 EXAMINATION ON PREPARATORY EXERCISES. After the completion of the preparatory exercises and before starting range instruction the men are given an examination along the following lines:

a. Sighting and aiming.—

Q. In aiming with the peep sight, where is the tip of the front sight?

A. In the center of peep.

Q. In aiming with the open sight, where is the tip of the front sight?

A. In the same place. The top of the circle is removed, so that the top of the front sight just comes even with the top of the rear sight bar.

Q. In aiming with either open or peep sight, where is the bottom of the bull's-eye?

A. Just touching the top of the front sight. The whole bull's-eye is in the upper half of the peep or above the bar of the open sight.

b. Positions.—

Q. How do you breathe while aiming?

A. Take a normal breath, let out a half of it, and hold the rest by closing the throat.

Q. When do you take up the slack of the trigger?

A. As soon as I am in position and while I am aligning the sights.

Q. Show me how you get into the sling. (Verified by the instructor.)

Q. Assume the prone position, the sitting position, the kneeling, and the standing position. (Verified by the instructor.)

c. Trigger squeeze.—

Q. How do you squeeze the trigger?

A. I squeeze the trigger with such a gradual increase of pressure that I do not know the exact instant that the rifle will go off.

Q. What do you know while squeezing the trigger?

A. I know that the sights are lined on the bull's-eye.

Q. What do you try to do just before squeezing the trigger?

A. I try to relax as much as possible.

Q. What do you try to see just as the rifle goes off?

A. I try to see just where the sights are pointing so that I can call the shot.

Q. How do you squeeze the trigger in rapid fire?

A. In the same way as in slow fire.

Q. Do you have to hurry the trigger squeeze in rapid fire?

A. No.

d. Rapid fire.—

Q. Show me how you load the second clip in rapid fire; prone; kneeling; sitting. (Verified by the instructor.)

e. Sight setting.—

Q. When you move the rear sight, which way does it move the shot on the target?

A. In the same direction as the rear sight is moved.

Q. How much change on the target is caused by moving the wind gauge one point?

A. One inch for each hundred yards of range.

Q. How much change on the target is caused by moving the sight 100 yards in elevation?

A. One inch for each 100 yards of range.

Q. I place this spotter here on this target. The range is 500 yards. Your sights are now set for 500 yards and zero wind. Change your sights to move the shot to the center. (Verified by the instructor.)

Q. What is a 5 o'clock wind?

A. A wind 15° on my starboard quarter when I am facing the target.

Q. What effect does a 5 o'clock wind have?

A. It blows the bullet to the left half the distance that the same strength wind from 3 o'clock would blow it.

f. Care.—

Q. How do you clean the rifle?

A. I first swab the bore with rags saturated with hot soapy water or bore cleaner; I then dry the bore with dry rags; I oil the bore with a light film of oil to prevent rust.

g. Safety precautions.—

Q. How do you know that the rifle is unloaded?

A. I look in the chamber and in the magazine as soon as I pick it up.

Q. How do you carry the rifle when not on the firing line?

A. In the unlocked position.

Q. At what things do you point the rifle?

A. I point the rifle only at those things that I want to shoot.

SECTION VIII

COURSES QUALIFICATIONS AND EXPERT MEDALS

	Par.	Page
Those who fire.....	13-61	556
Courses to be fired.....	13-62	556
Course K, .22 cal. rifle.....	13-62	556
Course L, .22 cal. pistol.....	13-62	556
Course A, rifle marksman.....	13-62	557
Course B, rifle expert.....	13-62	557
Course C, carbine.....	13-62	557
Course D, pistol marksman.....	13-62	558
Course E, pistol expert.....	13-62	558
Course F, revolver expert.....	13-62	558
Course G, submachine gun.....	13-63	558
Course H, ground machine gun.....	13-64	559
Course I, automatic rifle.....	13-64	559
Course J, boat machine gun.....	13-65	559
Proficiency.....	13-66	550
Qualification for expert medals.....	13-67	560
Duration of qualification.....	13-68	561

13-61 THOSE WHO FIRE.—In paragraph 13-6 are listed the officers and men to whom small arms training should be given. Officers and men who have previously qualified as ex-

pert riflemen are not required to fire the rifle marksman's course. With this exception, officers and men who satisfactorily complete the prescribed course of preparatory exercises will fire appropriate courses as prescribed herein.

13-62 COURSES TO BE FIRED.—*a. Instruction practice.*—The instruction and marksman courses are intended to serve as guides in the range instruction. The amount of instruction practice in each position and at each range may be varied at the discretion of the officer in charge of the instruction, provided the ammunition allowances are not exceeded.

b. Record practice.—Record firing will be conducted in accordance with the rules prescribed in section 13-79. Once the record firing of any course is commenced it will be fired to completion. The record firing of any one course must be completed the same day.

COURSE K.—.22 caliber rifle

Range (feet)	Time limit	Shots	Target	Position	Sling
50	No limit.....	4	SB-A-2	Standing.....	Hasty.
	do.....	4	SB-A-2	Sitting.....	Loop or hasty.
	do.....	4	SB-A-2	Kneeling.....	Do.
	do.....	8	SB-A-2	Prone.....	Loop.
	40 seconds—8 shots.....	16	SB-D-2	Sitting from standing.....	Loop or hasty.
	do.....	16	SB-D-2	Kneeling from standing.....	Do.
	45 seconds—8 shots.....	16	SB-D-2	Prone from standing.....	Loop.

Total shots, each firing.....	63
Total shots, two firings.....	126

NOTE.—This course is the record .30-caliber course B in miniature.

COURSE L.—.22-caliber pistol

Range (feet)	Kind of fire	Time limit	Position	Target	Shots
50	Slow—4 strings of 5.....	None.....	Standing.....	B-2	} 20
	Time—4 strings of 5.....	20 seconds for 5 shots.....	do.....	B-3	

Total shots.....	40
Maximum score.....	400
Qualifying score.....	220

COURSE A.—*Rifle marksman*

Range (yards)	Time limit	Shots	Target	Position	Sling
200	None.....	4	A	Standing.....	Hasty.
	do.....	4	A	Sitting.....	Loop or hasty.
	do.....	4	A	Kneeling.....	Do.
	do.....	8	A	Prone.....	Loop.
	30 seconds.....	8	D	Sitting from standing.....	Loop or hasty.
	35 seconds.....	8	D	Prone from standing.....	Loop.

Total shots record firing.....	36
Maximum score.....	180
Qualifying score (no medal awarded).....	130

NOTE.—This course may be fired once for practice and the second time for record. It is only intended as a preliminary course prior to firing the expert course (Course B).

COURSE B.—*Rifle expert*

Range (yards)	Time limit	Shots	Target	Position	Sling
200	None.....	4	A	Standing.....	Hasty.
	do.....	4	A	Sitting.....	Loop or hasty.
	do.....	4	A	Kneeling.....	Do.
	60 seconds.....	16	D	Sitting from standing.....	Do.
	do.....	16	D	Kneeling from standing.....	Do.
	65 seconds.....	16	D	Prone from standing.....	Loop.
300	None.....	8	B	Prone.....	Loop.
500	None.....	8	B	Prone.....	Loop.

Total shots record firing.....	68
Maximum score.....	340
Expert (medal awarded).....	306
Sharpshooter.....	292
Marksman.....	268

NOTE.—In the rapid-fire stages the firer is required to remain standing, with the rifle at the "Ready" until the targets appear.

Carbine—*Instruction practice*

Range (yards)	Time limit	Shots	Target	Position
100	None.....	10	A	Prone.
200	do.....	10	B	Do.

Carbine—*Instruction practice*

Range (yards)	Time limit	Shots	Target	Position
100	None.....	5	A	Sitting.
100	do.....	5	A	Kneeling.
100	do.....	5	A	Standing.
200	do.....	5	B	Prone.
200	do.....	5	B	Sitting.
200	do.....	5	B	Kneeling.
200	do.....	5	B	Standing.

COURSE C.—*Carbine record practice*

Range (yards)	Time (seconds)	Shots	Target	Position
100	40	8 (2 magazines, 4 each).....	A	Fire 4 rounds standing; reload, take sitting position and fire 4 rounds.
100	40	do.....	A	Fire 4 rounds standing; reload, take kneeling position and fire 4 rounds.
200	40	do.....	B	Fire 4 rounds standing; reload, take sitting position and fire 4 rounds.
200	40	do.....	B	Fire 4 rounds standing; reload, take kneeling position and fire 4 rounds.
200	40	do.....	B	Standing to prone, fire 4 rounds, reload, fire 4 more rounds.

The above is fired once for preliminary record practice.

Total shots, instruction practices.....	170
Total shots, record practice.....	40
Maximum score for record.....	200
Qualifying score:	
Expert (medal awarded).....	180
Sharpshooter.....	165
Marksman.....	140

NOTE.—The sling is not used for firing.

COURSE D.—*Pistol marksman (.45 caliber automatic)*

Range (yards)	Type of fire	Time limit	Target	Shots
25	Slow	None	25-yard standard American	10
25	Timed	20 seconds 5 shots	do	10
15	Rapid	10 seconds 5 shots	do	10

Possible score 300
 Qualifying score 165

COURSE E.—*Pistol expert (.45 caliber automatic)*

Range (yards)	Type of fire	Time limit	Target	Position	Shots
25	Slow	None	25-yard standard American	Standing	10
25	Timed	20 seconds 5 shots	do	do	10
15	Rapid	10 seconds 5 shots	do	do	10
25	do	do	do	do	10
	Total				40

Possible score 400
 Expert (medal awarded) 300
 Sharpshooter 280
 Marksman 220

COURSE F.—*Revolver expert (.38 caliber revolver)*

Range (yards)	Type of fire	Time limit	Target	Position	Shots
25	Slow	None	25-yard standard American	Standing	10
25	Timed	20 seconds 5 shots	do	do	10
15	Rapid	10 seconds 5 shots	do	do	10
25	do	do	do	do	10
	Total				40

Possible score 400
 Expert (medal awarded) 320
 Sharpshooter 300
 Marksman 280

NOTES

1. To fire a marksman course with .38-caliber revolver fire the above Course D, and increase the qualifying score to 200.

2. If the expert pistol shot medal has been awarded for expert qualification with .45-caliber pistol no addi-

tional medal will be awarded for expert qualification in Course F above.

13-63 SUBMACHINE GUN COURSE.—

The following course should be fired twice for instruction and once for record.

COURSE G.—*Submachine gun*

Range (yards)	Kind of fire	Time limit	Target	Position	Shots
200	Slow	None	B	Prone	10
100	Semiautomatic	25 seconds	1 3 A	Standing to sitting	10
25	Automatic	10 seconds	2 3 A	Standing; gun at hip until commence firing	15
	Total				35

¹ Three targets, rifle, A, 10 feet apart. No hit outside the 4 ring is scored. Fire should be distributed; deduct 10 points for any target not hit inside the 4 ring. In applying penalty, no score shall be less than zero at any one range.

² Three targets, rifle, A, 5 feet apart. Same scoring and penalties as above.

Total shots, instruction practice 70
 Total shots, record practice 35
 Maximum score, record practice 175
 Qualifying score 100

13-64 GROUND MACHINE GUN AND AUTOMATIC RIFLE COURSES.—Instruction practice is not specified but should be con-

ducted, within the ammunition allowances, at the discretion of the officer in charge of the practice.

COURSE H.—*Ground machine gun*

[Record practice]

Range (yards)	Kind of fire	Time limit	Target	Shots
200	Bursts of 3 to 5.....	None.....	B	10
200	do.....	35 seconds.....	B	20
200	do.....	20 seconds.....	B	20
500	do.....	None.....	B	10
500	do.....	40 seconds.....	B	20
500	do.....	20 seconds.....	B	20
Total shots.....				100
Maximum score.....				500
Qualifying score.....				200

COURSE I.—*Automatic rifle*

[Record practice]

Range (yards)	Kind of fire	Time limit	Position	Target	Shots
200	Single shots.....	None.....	Prone with sandbag rest.....	B	10.
200	Semiautomatic.....	20 seconds.....	Prone.....	B	10.
200	do.....	25 seconds for 10 shots.....	Sitting.....	B	3 strings of 10 shots each.
500	Single shots.....	None.....	Prone.....	B	10.
500	Semiautomatic.....	1 minute, 20 seconds.....	do.....	B	40.
Total shots.....					100
Maximum score.....					500
Qualifying score.....					300

13-65 BOAT MACHINE GUN COURSE.—

This course is designed as an instruction practice for gunners of machine guns mounted in landing craft. It is appropriate for both caliber .30 and caliber .50 machine guns. Proper distribution of fire during the approach to the beach is the most important feature of the course.

The course should be preceded by mechanical training and instruction in the manipulation of the gun, and by at least one firing of Course H ashore for familiarization.

No record practice or qualifying score is prescribed pending the receipt of sufficient reports, comments, or recommendations upon which to base an analysis.

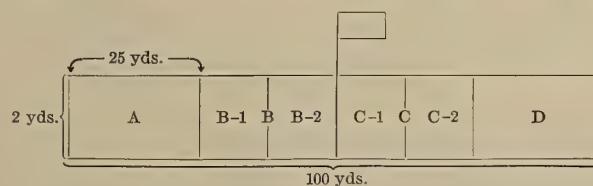
COURSE J.—*Boat machine gun*

Range (yards)	Type of fire	Target	Time (seconds)	Shots
1,000-800.....	Bursts of automatic.....	A-B-C-D distributed.....	30	50
800-600.....	do.....	do.....	30	50
600-400.....	do.....	do.....	30	50
400-200.....	do.....	B-C.....	30	50
200 to beach.....	do.....	D distributed.....	20	50

Target.—The target will consist of a strip of target cloth 100 yards long by 2 yards high set up parallel to the beach and supported by vertical stakes, guyed where necessary in order to present a flat surface without wrinkles.

The target will be subdivided into sections as shown in diagram by vertical black strips 2 inches wide.

Two D targets will be set up from 100 to 200 yards to one flank and, if practicable, hooded



from view from the approaching boats until they reach a point 200 yards offshore.

Firing.—When a red flag is hoisted by the officer on the beach in charge of scoring, the boat will start the run at least 1,100 yards from the beach and will maintain a steady course at a speed of 6 knots, guiding on two range flags, one set in the center of the target and the other a sufficient distance in rear (or front) of the target to assure steering a straight course. Only one man will fire during each run but a nonfiring gun may be set up in the alternate cockpit for a dummy run for the next man to fire. It is desirable that the course be buoyed or otherwise marked at even 200-yard intervals from the beach to designate the range for beginning each stage. The officer controlling the firing will be in the boat and will give the command to load prior to each stage and will signal "commence firing" and "cease firing" by whistle. This officer will also be responsible for the observance of all necessary safety precautions. No more than 50 rounds may be fired at any stage and ammunition unexpended at the expiration of the time limit for each stage will not be fired on any succeeding stage.

Scoring.—In order to facilitate scoring, bullets fired in the first three stages will be painted a different color for each stage. Bullets fired in the last two stages will be unpainted. Each stage will be scored separately according to the following formula:

Stages 1, 2, and 3.—10 points for each space (A, B, C, and D) hit plus 2 points for each hit.

Stage 4.—10 points for each space (B-1, B-2, C-1, and C-2) hit plus 2 points for each hit in these spaces. Hits on spaces A and D do not count.

13-66.—PROFICIENCY.—Officers and enlisted personnel are graded in rifle and pistol, according to proficiency attained in record practices as experts, sharpshooters, marksmen, and unqualified; The unqualified includes all those who have never fired and qualified during a record practice and all who have fired but have failed to qualify within the current small arms year.

13-67. QUALIFICATION FOR EXPERT MEDALS—*a. Expert Rifleman Medal.* One expert rifleman medal will be awarded to each

officer or enlisted man who qualifies as an expert rifleman or carbine expert by firing the appropriate courses and attaining the proficiency indicated in paragraph 13-62 above. Requests for individual medals should be submitted by the commanding officers concerned as a part of the annual report of small arms firing. The request should give full name, rank or rate, and the service or file number of the person or persons for whom medals are requested. An accomplished Small Arms Sheet 2 submitted as a part of the annual report will support the request for medals. The Chief of Naval Personnel will issue the medal to those who have earned the award. Medals should not be requested for men who have received them by previous qualification. Medals will be awarded to Navy personnel for qualification in Navy courses only; however, awards will be made to Navy personnel who qualify as expert in a Marine Corps rifle (caliber .30), carbine or pistol (caliber .45) course which, under the provisions of the current Marine Corps order fulfills the following conditions:

(1) Qualification as expert established for the course, and

(2) Expert badge or bar is awarded by the Marine Corps to Marine personnel for expert qualification in the course. It is desired that Navy personnel fire Navy courses; they should fire Marine Courses only when it is impractical or inconvenient to fire Navy courses. Marine Corps commanding officers may apply for Navy Expert medals for navy personnel under their command who have fired small arms and qualified as expert under current Marine Corps orders. Such a request will justify the firing of the Navy personnel and support the request by submitting a Small Arms Sheet 2 appropriately accomplished.

b. Expert pistol medal.—One expert pistol shot medal will be awarded to each officer or man who qualifies as an expert by firing the pistol expert course (.45 calibre automatic) or the revolver expert (.38 calibre revolver) and attains the proficiency required in paragraph 13-62 above. The procedure and provisions of subparagraph above also apply to the award of the expert pistol shot medal.

13-68 DURATION OF QUALIFICATION.—The duration of qualification as expert rifleman, carbine expert, expert pistol shot or expert revolver shot is 4 years. If an individual fails to requalify as expert at the end of the 4-year period he will cease to wear the ribbon or medal. If he fires for record during

the 4-year period and fails to requalify as expert, he will cease to wear the ribbon or medal; however, he should retain the medal in his possession in the event of future qualification as expert since only one medal is ever awarded to an individual.

SECTION IX

RANGE PROCEDURE

	Par.	Page
Nature of range firing.....	13-69	562
Organization for range instruction.....	13-70	562
Range officer.....	13-71	562
Permanent details.....	13-72	563
Temporary details.....	13-73	563
Responsibility of officers.....	13-74	563
General rules.....	13-75	563
Procedure in the pits for rapid and timed fire.....	13-76	564
Procedure on the firing line for rapid and timed fire.....	13-77	565
Telephones.....	13-78	565
Record firing.....	13-79	565
Scoring.....	13-80	565
Ammunition.....	13-81	566

13-69 NATURE OF RANGE FIRING.—

Range firing follows immediately upon the completion of the preparatory exercises. Unless the training during the period of the preparatory exercises has been thorough, range firing will do more harm than good. Without careful preparation and supervision, instinctive bad shooting habits will be strengthened and progress rendered extremely difficult. The instruction during range firing is progressive, starting with the shortest ranges and the most steady positions. Firing is continued under the least difficult conditions until the men under instruction are capable of making good groups under those conditions. Especial care is required at this first stage of the range firing in order to overcome the natural tendency to flinch when squeezing the trigger. When the men under instruction are capable of making good groups under one set of conditions they are advanced to the next in the order of difficulty. Men who show a tendency to flinch should be returned to firing under the least difficult conditions until this tendency has been corrected. Once the habit of flinching has been definitely overcome, progress will be rapid and qualification assured.

13-70 ORGANIZATION FOR RANGE INSTRUCTION.—

a. Range instruction shall not

be commenced until thorough instruction in the preparatory exercises has been completed. Range instruction should, however, follow immediately after completion of the preparatory exercises and should immediately precede the record practice.

b. During range instruction the men to be trained are divided into relays. The number in each relay is determined by dividing the total number of men by the number of targets available. From four to six relays can be readily handled during the range instruction. Eight relays can be handled with difficulty and more than eight relays cannot be handled satisfactorily. Employment of the various relays is prescribed in paragraph 13-73. Details for the various relays, special details, courses to be fired, etc., should be prepared before arrival at the firing line. The pit detail should be started out ahead of time and should be well supplied with paste, pasters, spotters, extra target centers, stop watches, pit record sheets, and pencils. The telephones should be tested well ahead of time. Men going to the pit should carry filled canteens. The relay designated as scorers is provided with record sheets, pencils, blackboards, and chalk. The target assignment should be made in sufficient time to allow firing to start promptly at the designated time. Rifles are assigned to men by number and a record kept of the number and of the men to whom assigned. The elevations and zero used in firing at the various ranges are also kept on this record.

13-71 RANGE OFFICER.—At all ranges a range officer will be appointed who will be charged with the care and police of the range, the necessary repairs to targets, shelters, pits, and firing points, the supervision of permanent details, the condition of the telephone service, and the supply of all materials such as disks, spotters, targets, pasters, paste, etc., necessary

to the conduct of the fire. He will not be responsible for the details of the instruction of firing parties which use the range but will have general supervision of the firing. He will maintain order, regulate the distribution of targets and ranges to firing parties; prevent infractions of the regulations; take necessary precautions for the protection of firers, scorers, markers, spectators, and passers-by; and in general assist by every proper means to secure efficient and accurate service from the working of the range. Where necessary he will post guards to prevent persons or animals crossing the range, provide means of signaling from the guards to the pits in case it becomes necessary to cease firing and see the necessary danger signals flown as a warning to individuals that firing is in progress.

13-72 PERMANENT DETAILS.—Such officers, chief petty officers, and enlisted personnel should be detailed permanently to the range, at least for the practice season, as the commanding officer sees fit. These details should be organized under the range officer in such a way as will best serve the purpose in hand. An officer or chief petty officer should be in general charge of each pit. It will be his duty to see that targets are ready for firing; that they are serviceable; that target details are provided as soon as they report, with proper flags, disks, paste, pasters, spotters, etc.; that order is maintained in the pits and that the pit details perform their duties properly. A permanent telephone detail is essential.

13-73 TEMPORARY DETAILS.—Commanding officers concerned will furnish such temporary details as are necessary to expedite the firing. Upon receiving the target assignment from the range officer, the officer in charge of the firing party will divide his detachment into relays. Two relays go to the pits, one relay does the scoring, and remaining relays successively go on the firing line. One relay may be employed as coaches on the firing line in the absence of a sufficient number of regular coaches. When one or more relays have fired, details are rotated until all have fired. This system serves to keep the targets and men fully occupied. Officers who are firing may be grouped or distributed at the discretion of the officer in charge of the firing

party. The relays will be organized with a leading man in charge of each to march them to and from the pits and supervise their work in the pits.

13-74 RESPONSIBILITY OF OFFICERS.—Officers in charge of firing parties are responsible for the equipment of their units with the necessary arms, ammunition, field glasses, etc.; for the organization, administration, discipline, and instruction of their units; and for carrying out the safety precautions. They should report to the range officer upon arrival at the range, obtain the target assignments from him, and deal with him in all matters pertaining to his province as range officer.

13-75 GENERAL RULES.—The following general rules will be enforced:

(1) No sighting shots will be allowed in record firing. Instruction shots fired by an officer or coach will be permitted in instruction practice only.

(2) In slow fire if the target is withdrawn from the firing position just as the shot is fired, the shot will not be considered and another will be fired.

(3) All shots fired by the firer after he has taken his place on the point, the target being fully exposed, will be counted even though the discharge may have been accidental.

(4) Shots fired on the wrong target will be entered upon the score of the firer as misses.

(5) When a target has more than the authorized number of hits in rapid or timed fire, the target will not be marked. The man firing on that target will be given an opportunity to re-fire, except when all hits have the same value, in which case the target will be marked and he will be given that value for each shot fired by him.

(6) In all record firing, except team matches, men will fire singly and not in pairs.

(7) The value of a shot will be indicated to the firing point as follows: a five, with a white disk; a four, with a red disk; a three, with a black and white disk; a two, with a black disk; a miss by waving the danger flag across the target; a ricochet hit, by displaying the disk and danger flag at the same time. Ricochet hits shall be scored as misses.

(8) A shot hole, the leaded edge of which

comes in contact with a scoring ring, is given the higher value.

(9) In slow fire if two shots strike the target at about the same time, the firer will be awarded the shot of highest value.

(10) In all rifle record firing, a commissioned or warrant officer will be detailed as chief pit officer. A pit record of scores will be kept under his supervision. The score will also be kept at the firing point, but in any case where score at firing line is questioned, the pit score will govern. In pistol record firing, pits are not mandatory, but when used the same rules as above will apply.

(11) In record firing, additional pit officers or, at least, chief petty officers will be assigned at the rate of one for every four targets. They will carefully supervise the scoring and keeping of the pit record. The pit record does not show the man's name, but it does show the date, the number of the target, and the order of the firing (relay). The record at the firing point will show the date, the man's name, the number of the target, and the order of the relay.

(12) In record practice officers and men in the pit should not know who is firing on any particular target. This may be easily accomplished without confusion as follows: make up the assignments of targets, relays, and firers in advance; assign the pit detail for duty for the full day or half day; when the targets are ready for firing announce a "key number" to be added by each man to the number of the target to which he is assigned; have the firers shift to the new number resulting from adding the key number to the original assignment. Thus, assume 10 targets are available and the key number is announced as 3. No. 1 shifts to No. 4 and No. 10 to No. 3. The firing then begins.

(13) In all slow firing, spotters will be used. They will not be used in record rapid fire or timed fire. The disks will be placed over the center of the shot holes to indicate the value and location of the hits.

(14) When the pit score shows that a man has completed his record score the target will be placed at half mast as a signal to the firing point. It will not be again run up until the order is received from the firing point to commence a new string.

(15) In record practice an officer in the pits will verify every miss before it is signaled and will closely observe the marking of his targets to prevent errors or fraud on the part of markers.

(16) In slow fire the hits will be spotted and marked after each shot. In rapid fire and timed fire the hits will be disked at the end of each string, marking the highest values first.

(17) As each shot is signaled from the pits, it is announced by the scorer at the firing line. For example, a score of 16 shots is announced as follows as each shot is marked: Target 22—1 five, 2 fives, 3 fives, 4 fives, 5 fives, 6 fives, 7 fives, 1 four, 2 fours, 3 fours, 4 fours, 5 fours, 6 fours, 1 two, 2 twos, 1 miss.

(18) In scoring pistol fire the name of the firer will not be used, but instead the number of the target will be announced. This is to avoid men in the pits knowing the name of the competitor.

(19) If at rapid fire a man fails to fire at all, he will be given another opportunity. If he fires any shots, his score will stand. If the rifle or pistol becomes disabled through no fault of his own, he will be given another chance to fire, but the breaking of the clip in loading will not entitle him to another chance. If there is a misfire with the rifle in slow fire or in a string of rapid fire, another attempt to fire shall be made. If it fails to fire on this second attempt another shot shall be given at slow fire or another string at rapid fire. If a misfire occurs with a pistol another shot at slow fire or another string of rapid or timed fire shall be allowed without further attempt to fire the defective round.

(20) When stationary targets are used for pistol firing, the officer in charge of the firing line shall himself closely examine the targets on record firing and ascertain the scores made, if another officer is not assigned to perform these duties. If the officer in charge of the firing line fires for record, his performance must be observed and score marked by another officer.

13-76 PROCEDURE IN THE PITS FOR RAPID AND TIMED FIRE.—In this class of fire the time is regulated in the pits by the chief pit officer. The targets being ready, they are fully withdrawn and the danger flag is

displayed at the center target. When word is received from the firing line, **READY ON THE FIRING LINE**, the flag is waved and lowered. Five seconds thereafter the targets are run up simultaneously, being fully exposed for the time allotted that range. The chief pit officer gives the commands, **STAND BY, UP—STAND BY, DOWN**, to make certain that the movement of the targets is simultaneous. When the targets are down they are examined, the pit record entered, and the targets run up and marked. They are then pulled down, the shot holes pasted, and the target made ready for further firing.

13-77 PROCEDURE ON THE FIRING LINE FOR RAPID AND TIMED FIRE.—

As soon as a set of targets is marked the officer in charge on the firing line commands, ----- **RELAY ON THE LINE—LOAD, AND LOCK**. When the **READY IN THE PITS** signal appears, the commands, **READY ON THE RIGHT—READY ON THE LEFT** are given. If any man is not ready he reports. When all are ready the command, **READY ON THE FIRING LINE** is given and is transmitted by telephone to the pits. At the command, **READY ON THE FIRING LINE** pieces are unlocked and the position of **READY** assumed. As soon as the targets start up the firer takes the prescribed position, except at 500 yards, in which case he is already in position, and fires or attempts to fire the prescribed number of shots. As soon as the targets are withdrawn the officer in charge commands: **UNLOAD**. All unfired cartridges are removed from the piece and the bolts or slides are left open. Men remain in position on the firing line until they are ordered off by the officer in charge.

13-78 TELEPHONES.—One telephone to a group of from 10 to 15 targets is sufficient. In general, overhead wiring is more satisfactory, since trouble can be located and corrected better than with the underground system. Messages to the pits should be brief and explicit. If a target is to be pulled and marked, say "Mark No. -----." If it is to be pulled and re-examined, having been pulled once, say "Reexamine No. -----." When a hit is to be disked or disked a second time without pulling the target, say "Disk" or "Redisk No. -----." Irritating messages to the pits only result in poorer service. If a certain target gives

consistently bad service, the proper procedure is to call the one in charge of the pits to the telephone and report the circumstances.

13-79 RECORD FIRING.—Record firing will take place in accordance with the rules laid down in this section. An officer or man may fire any particular course for qualification but once in one small-arms year,¹ unless he fails to qualify as marksman or better in that course. In that event one additional record firing may be permitted, provided his ammunition allowance is not exceeded. An officer or man who qualifies on the authorized firing of the marksman's course is given an opportunity to fire the expert's course for qualification and medal. Once a record firing is commenced it must be completed the same day. An uncompleted record firing will be counted as the authorized record firing unless the firer is incapacitated by illness. The object of record practice is twofold: first, to afford a measure of the proficiency of the individual; and, second, to afford an opportunity to qualify for medals. All men must fire under the same rules, and precautions must be taken to avoid unfairness.

13-80 SCORING.—Scores should be marked on a scoreboard behind each firing point, in plain view of everyone. No score should be erased until it is necessary to do so. Before erasure, the total for each range and class of fire will be recorded by the officer in charge of the firing line on a rough copy of Small-Arms Sheet 2. As soon as the pit records are available, he compares them with firing line records, investigates and adjusts discrepancies, and announces the standing and qualifications. This announcement should be made immediately after the close of the firing and before the men have left the range. When he has recorded the results from the blackboards, he indicates this fact by drawing a line through the recorded portion. The record of shots, except the total for that stage, may then be erased. The record of the scores for the small-arms year shall be retained by commanding officers, subject to call from the Navy Department, until the close of the following small-arms year. See Section XIV for

¹ Example: If a man fires course B and qualifies as marksman with a score of 270, he cannot fire again for record until the next small-arms year.

detailed instructions relative to manner of keeping the records.

13-81 AMMUNITION.—The ammunition allowance is limited. This fact makes it all the more necessary that the preliminary training be carried out with the utmost thoroughness. Sighting shots have been eliminated because they are unnecessary if proper use is made of the information gained in practice firing. The ammunition used for practice firing, record firing, and unless otherwise authorized for competitions will be the regular ammunition issued to the ship and designated for such use by the Bureau of Ordnance. As there are a number of lots and makes of ammunition issued for target practice, care should be taken to see that each man fires for record with the same kind and lot of ammunition that he used in practice. In competitions the element of fairness can only be preserved by requiring all competitors to use the same kind and lot of ammunition. In their annual report of small-arms firing, ships are required to state the average number of rounds per man used in the preparation for and the firing of each qualification course. Attention is called to the fact that there is a definite relation between the

thoroughness of preliminary instruction and the average number of rounds required for qualification.

The standard training allowances of ammunition for marksmanship are as follows:

	<i>Rounds</i>
COURSE A—Rifle marksman and course B—rifle expert.....	400
COURSE C—Carbine.....	210
COURSE D or E—Pistol.....	200
COURSE F—Revolver.....	240
COURSE G—Submachine gun.....	105
COURSE H—Ground machine gun (300 ball, 100 tracer).....	400
COURSE I—Automatic rifle or semiautomatic rifle.....	300
COURSE J—Boat machine gun (400 ball, 100 tracer).....	500
COURSE K—Caliber .22 rifle.....	150
COURSE L—Caliber .22 pistol.....	60

NOTE.—Current letters of instruction must be consulted for actual amounts authorized to be expended. Competitions are not included in the above.

A report of the expenditure of ammunition under each of the above headings shall be included in the annual report. Marine detachments firing the Marine Corps courses shall observe the requirements of current Marine Corps orders as regards ammunition allowances.

SECTION X

CARE AND CLEANING M1 RIFLE

	Par.	Page
Care and cleaning.....	13-82	567
Cleaning before firing.....	13-83	567
Cleaning after firing.....	13-84	567
On range or during operations.....	13-85	568
Preparing rifles for storage.....	13-86	568
Cleaning weapons received from storage.....	13-87	569
Cleaning racks.....	13-88	569

13-82 CARE AND CLEANING.—The pupil will be taught to clean the rifle properly and be required to clean his weapon daily during the range period under the supervision of the instructor.

Materials.—No abrasives will be used to clean the rifle. The following are the only materials necessary to clean, lubricate, and preserve the rifle:

- Patches.
- Soap.
- Water.
- Cleaner, rifle bore.
- Oil, lubricating, preservative, light.
- Grade II, thin film preservative.
- Solvent, dry cleaning.
- Oil, linseed.
- Oil, Neat's-foot.
- Grease, rifle.
- Various decontaminating agents.
- Cleaning rods.

13-83 CLEANING BEFORE FIRING.—Break down the rifle into main groups and—

(a) Clean the bore and chamber—**do not** oil the chamber.

(b) Remove any carbon on piston head and gas cylinder lock screw.

(c) Clean remainder of weapon and apply a light preservative oil lightly on all metal parts which **do not** come in contact with the ammunition.

(d) Apply a thin coat of light oil to the following parts:

1. Bolt lugs.
2. Bolt guides.

3. Cocking cam on bolt.
4. Contact surface of barrel and operating rod.
5. Operating rod guide groove on side of receiver.
6. Operating rod spring.
7. Cammed surface in hump of operating rod.

13-84 CLEANING AFTER FIRING.—Cleaning after firing will be performed after range firing for that day. Under no circumstances will they be left to the following day. If the rifle is not to be fired for a while cleaning will be repeated for three successive days.

Hold the rifle with sights down so no rifle bore cleaner enters the gas port. Run several patches into the muzzle and saturated with rifle bore cleaner. Use hot soapy water if bore cleaner is not available. Remove slotted tip from cleaning rod and substitute wire brush. Run the rod through the length of bore several times. Remove the brush and replace slotted tip. Run several more patches saturated with bore cleaner or hot soapy water removing patches from breech end. Begin using dry patches and continue until patches come out dry and clean. Examine bore; if not clean repeat above process. If clean, apply a light film of preservative oil in the bore by using a saturated patch, turning the rifle so that some oil **will enter** the gas port.

If the rifle is to be fired the following day, repeat the process outlined in cleaning before firing.

If the rifle is not to be fired during the next few days, a complete cleaning of the weapon is undertaken in the following manner:

1. *Chamber.*—

Remove primer salts in the chamber by using either bore cleaner or hot soapy water. The patch is inserted in the chamber cleaning tool and rolled completely around the tool. Insert

the patch covered tool in the chamber and revolve slowly several times. Dry the chamber as described above, using successive dry patches. Inspect the chamber visually and by testing with little finger, if no evidence of primer salts, apply a light coat of light preservative oil. **Remove this oil before firing.**

2. Gas cylinder and gas cylinder lock screw (plug)—

Remove carbon from these parts with wire brush or screw driver blade of combination tool.

a. Spline type.—To remove carbon from gas cylinder, remove the lock screw and scrape out carbon with screw driver blade of combination tool. The gas cylinder lock may be removed and the lock screw reinserted in the gas cylinder and threaded in enough to loosen carbon. At conclusion of firing, the inside of gas cylinder should be cleaned and oiled.

b. Screw-on-type.—After firing, scrape the carbon from the exposed surface of front of gas cylinder, gas cylinder plug, and piston head. Clean the gas cylinder plug and the grooves in the gas cylinder to insure correct seating of plug. A sharp-bladed instrument should be used to remove carbon from gas cylinder plug and piston head.

c. Both types.—If firing to continue next day, tip the muzzle down, place a few drops of light preservative oil into the gas cylinder and manipulate the operating rod a few times. Wipe clean the exterior of the gas cylinder, operating rod, and front sight, then oil lightly.

If no firing is contemplated in next few weeks, remove operating rod and the gas cylinder lock screw, leaving the cylinder open at both ends. Clean the cylinder with a rod and patches similar to cleaning the bore. Hold the rifle so that no water will enter gas port. Do not remove the gas cylinder for cleaning. Clean the piston head and operating rod with cleaner or water. Dry thoroughly. Oil the operating rod and cylinder before reassembling. Carbon may be removed at this time. Care should be taken that the corners of the screw (or plug) or piston head are not rounded.

3. *Exterior surfaces.*—Wipe off exterior of rifle to remove dampness, dirt and perspiration. Wipe all metal parts with light preservative oil. Oil the stock and hand guards with raw linseed oil, and oil the sling with neats-foot oil.

4. The face of the bolt should first be cleaned with a wet patch. It should be dried and given a coat of light preservative oil.

13-85 ON RANGE OR DURING OPERATIONS.—The following points should be watched carefully.

a. Clean bore.—Never fire a rifle with dust, dirt, mud or snow in the bore.

b. Clean chamber.—Keep the chamber free from oil and dirt.

c. Obstructions.—Never leave a patch, plug, or other obstruction in the chamber or bore.

d. Excessive friction.—If the rifle shows signs of excessive friction due to lack of lubrication, apply additional oil to the parts listed in paragraph 13-83. Friction can be ascertained if cases are ejected to the right rear or if action of the bolt is sluggish. Oil applied is the remedy.

e. Use of rifle grease.—If the rifle is exposed to severe conditions of rain or **sea-water spray**, the bolt may fail to open. Under these conditions it is essential that such surfaces be coated with a rifle grease. In such cases the following is prescribed:

(1) Apply oil to parts listed in paragraph 13-83.

(2) Dismount three main groups and with a clean dry cloth wipe the following parts clean and cover lightly with rifle grease:

(a) Cammed surface in the hump of operating rod.

(b) Under lip of the receiver above the bolt.

(c) Locking recesses in the receiver.

(d) Bolt camming lug on the face of the hammer.

No rifle grease applied to any other parts.

(3) Assemble rifle and work bolt to spread grease.

f. Keep a thin coating of light preservative oil on all metal parts.

g. Remove carbon from gas cylinder lock screw and piston head when necessary.

h. Generally it will not be necessary to remove any parts of the rifle except the trigger housing group and gas cylinder lock screw. However, if very dirty, the rifle should be disassembled into its three main groups for necessary cleaning and lubrication.

13-86 PREPARING RIFLES FOR STORAGE.—Light preservative oil is suitable for

short periods of rifle stowage from two to six weeks. Inspections weekly should be made to renew oil if necessary. For longer periods of stowage, light rust preventative should be used.

Preliminary to stowage, all rifles are thoroughly cleaned and dried completely. All metal parts should then be coated with either light preservative oil (for short stowage period) or Grade II, thin film preservative (over 6 weeks' stowage). Application of the thin film preservative to the bore of the rifle is best done by dipping the cleaning brush into the compound and then running it through the bore several times. The brush must be clean before it is used. Before placing the rifle in the packing chest, see that the bolt is in its forward position and that the hammer is released. Then, handling the rifle by the stock and hand guards only, it should be placed in the packing chest—the wooden supports having previously been coated with rust preventative compound.

Do not place a rifle in stowage inside a cloth, with cloth, or with a plug in the bore. Such practice causes rust.

13-87 CLEANING WEAPONS RECEIVED FROM STORAGE.—Clean off preservative completely with dry cleaning solvent. After thoroughly removing all preservative, dry all parts with a cloth.

13-88 CLEANING RACKS.—Cleaning racks should always be provided near the firing points. These may readily be improvised from boxes or such lumber as may be available. A simple yet effective one can be made up by cutting to a convenient length 2 x 4 or 2 x 6 and laying them on edge. They should then be notched at intervals great enough to give room for cleaning and deep enough to take a rifle. They are then laid parallel to one another at such a distance apart that when the trigger guard of the rifle is just inside the near one the forward edge of the upper band is just inside the far one. They should be secured in this position by ties across the ends, and raised above the ground on corner posts so that the rear notches are at about the height of a man's waist and the forward ones somewhat lower. If the rack is rigidly secured and the rifle is properly placed in the notches, no motion of the rifle will result when the rod is being worked back and forth in the bore.

Well behind the firing line should be located racks and tables for cleaning with patches, hot soapy water, oil, rods, grease, etc., immediately available. The presence of an armorer with an armorer's kit and a spare-parts box insures minor repairs to weapons.

SECTION XI

THE PISTOL

Requirements for accurate pistol shooting.....	Par. 13- 89	Page 570
Methods of pistol instruction.....	13- 90	570
Nomenclature.....	13- 91	570
Grasping the pistol.....	13- 92	570
Instruction in grasping pistol.....	13- 93	571
Sighting and aiming.....	13- 94	571
Position of the body.....	13- 95	571
Instruction in position.....	13- 96	572
Correct method of breathing.....	13- 97	572
Trigger squeeze.....	13- 98	572
First instruction in trigger squeeze.....	13- 99	572
Second instruction in trigger squeeze.....	13-100	572
Third instruction in trigger squeeze.....	13-101	573
Fourth instruction in trigger squeeze.....	13-102	573
Timed fire.....	13-103	574
Instruction in timed fire.....	13-104	574
Rapid fire.....	13-105	574
Instruction in rapid fire.....	13-106	574
Care and preservation.....	13-107	574
Safety precautions.....	13-108	575
Examination.....	13-109	575
Instruction steps, pistol course.....	13-110	575

13-89 REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCURATE PISTOL SHOOTING.—*a.* Accurate pistol shooting requires that:

- (1) The pistol be properly grasped by the hand.
- (2) The sights be properly aligned with each other and with the bull's-eye.
- (3) The pistol be so held that the sight alignment is maintained while the trigger is squeezed.
- (4) The trigger be squeezed in such a manner as not to cause a derangement of the aim.

b. The preparatory exercises in pistol shooting take up the above requirements in order. Additional exercises are then given in timed and rapid fire. Instruction in safety precautions, nomenclature, care, and preservation are given during the course of the preparatory exercises, at the discretion of the officer in charge of the instruction, but prior to the examination or the range firing.

13-90 METHODS OF PISTOL INSTRUCTION.—The methods of instruction follow

closely the methods prescribed for the rifle instruction in preceding chapters. The men to be instructed are divided into groups of convenient size and a group instructor appointed for each group. The men of each group work together in pairs, one man going through the exercises as the firer while the other man acts as coach. At frequent intervals the members of the pairs are required to exchange places so that they alternate as firer and coach. Each period of the instruction begins with an explanation and a demonstration of the work for the period. The men then proceed with the prescribed exercises under the supervision of the instructors.

13-91 NOMENCLATURE.—Only such instruction in nomenclature as is necessary to enable the men to follow instructions need be given. No special period need be devoted to this subject; it can be taught simultaneously with field stripping when cleaning. The instructor, from time to time points out and names such parts as are necessary for a complete understanding of the work at hand. For details of nomenclature and functioning see FM 23-35.

13-92 GRASPING THE PISTOL.—The hand is as high up on the stock as it will go. The barrel is in the prolongation of the arm. The thumb, including the submerged joint, is entirely to the left of the pistol. The thumb is straight and is parallel or above the bore of the pistol. This position of the hand feels somewhat awkward at first, and new men must be watched to see that they do not place the thumb across the rear of the stock. The pressure of the hand on the stock is firm but not hard. The correct pressure is best illustrated by the instructor grasping the hand of the men under instruction. The handclasp should be about that used in greeting a friend. Too great a pressure causes a tremor of the muscles and tires the firer unnecessarily. Too light a pres-

sure allows the pistol when fired to change its position in the hand and causes a loss of time in firing a second accurately aimed shot.

13-93 INSTRUCTION IN GRASPING PISTOL.—The instructor explains the correct method of grasping the pistol and demonstrates it. The firers are then required to take up the pistols and to fit them into their right hands, in the correct manner. The firer's left hand should be used to assist in settling the pistol well back into the fork of the hand. As soon as the firer's grasp is seen to be correct, he is required to lay the pistol down, and to again place it properly in his hand. This practice is continued until each firer is familiar with the correct method of grasping the pistol. The coach and firer of each pair then exchange places. This alternation is continued.



FIGURE 34.—Pistol—correct grasp, top view. Note space between right forefinger and receiver.

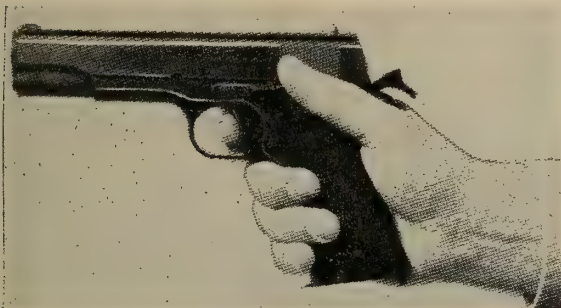


FIGURE 35.—Pistol—correct grasp, left side view. Note position of thumb.



FIGURE 36.—Revolver—correct grasp, left side view. Note position of thumb.

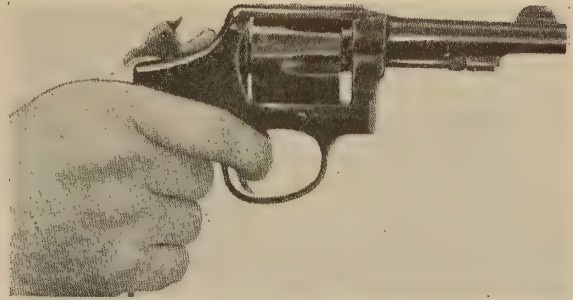


FIGURE 37.—Revolver—correct grasp, right side view.

13-94 SIGHTING AND AIMING.—The instructor starts by explaining the correct alignment of the sights and demonstrates the correct alignment by means of diagrams, using the open sight. The correct alignment of the open sight is illustrated in Figure 39. During the explanations and demonstrations of following periods, the instructor should emphasize the necessity for the correct aim and should illustrate it by means of a diagram.

13-95 POSITION OF THE BODY.—The firer faces nearly at right angles to the line of fire. The feet are placed about 15 inches apart. The weight is equally distributed on both legs. The hips are slightly forward and muscles of the diaphragm relaxed. No effort is made to hold in the abdomen. The right arm is fully extended, and the right shoulder slightly raised. The head is turned so as to see the target through the sights. The ease with which the head can be turned to see the sights determines how far the body is faced to the left. There should be no strain on the neck muscles. The head is balanced on the neck in upright position. The whole position with the exception of the right arm is one which can be maintained with the least muscular effort. The body is balanced rather than held in position. The muscles of the right shoulder and arm are necessarily somewhat tightened in order to sustain the weight of the pistol and to maintain the correct pressure of the hand. Excess tightening of the muscles should, however, be avoided. Whatever tension there is on the muscles of the right arm and hand should be maintained, even after the hammer falls. This will be found to assist in getting off a second shot quickly. The left hand may be placed at the waist or may hang naturally at the side.

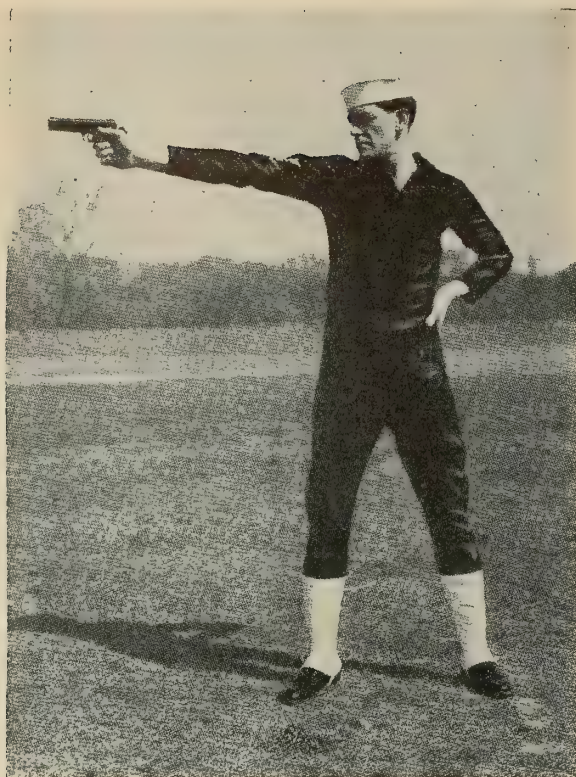


FIGURE 38.—Position of the body.

13-96 INSTRUCTION IN POSITION.—

The instructor explains the positions of the various parts of the firer's body and illustrates this by himself assuming the position. The men are then required to take the position and are coached until their positions are correct. As soon as the position is correct the firer is required to lay down the pistol, and then to repeat the taking of the position.

13-97 CORRECT METHOD OF BREATHING.—*a.* When firing slow fire the following procedure is followed for each shot:

(1) When in position and the sights approximately aligned on the bull's-eye take a normal breath.

(2) Hold this breath by closing the throat, and without effort of the muscles of the diaphragm.

b. In rapid fire, the breath is held as above but all shots of the string are fired on one breath.

c. In timed fire the first three shots are fired on one breath. After the third shot a second, shorter breath is taken and held as in (*a*) above.

13-98 TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—*a.* *Impor-*

tance.—This is the most important part of the process of pistol shooting.

The pressure on the trigger is applied straight back in a line parallel to the bore, and is applied gradually, without jerks. The fact that the pressure is a gradually increasing one does not mean that the increases are applied slowly, but that they are applied smoothly, and in such a manner that the firer will not know the exact instant that the pistol will fire. During the squeezing of the trigger there should be little if any increase in the pressure applied by the last three fingers of the hand grasping the pistol. The thumb, which is extended along the frame, is pressed firmly against the side of the frame. The sidewise pressure of the thumb may be slightly increased (or decreased) during the squeeze to counteract any observed tendency of the sights to move out of alignment.

13-99 FIRST INSTRUCTION IN TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—

The instructor explains the correct trigger squeeze and demonstrates it by himself going through the exercise. He then illustrates the method of applying the pressure on the trigger by grasping the left hand of the man under instruction. The first three fingers of the man's hand are grasped as if they were the stock of the pistol. The instructor's forefinger is placed outside of the man's fourth finger which represents the trigger. The instructor's thumb presses against the palm of the man's hand. The instructor now simulates the squeezing of the trigger. Care should be used to see that the correct, firm grip is obtained first, and that then after a definite pause the trigger pressure is applied.

13-100 SECOND INSTRUCTION IN TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—

The instructor takes the firing position with the pistol properly grasped and, aiming at the sky or other blank background, squeezes the trigger while keeping the sights aligned with each other. The firers and coaches are each provided with pistols and alternate with each other in this procedure. The firer looks only at his sights, which should be outlined against the sky or other blank background. The firer endeavors to squeeze the trigger in such a manner that there is no disturbance of the sights when the hammer falls. The coach watches the firer's eye to see if it closes before the hammer clicks. No limit is

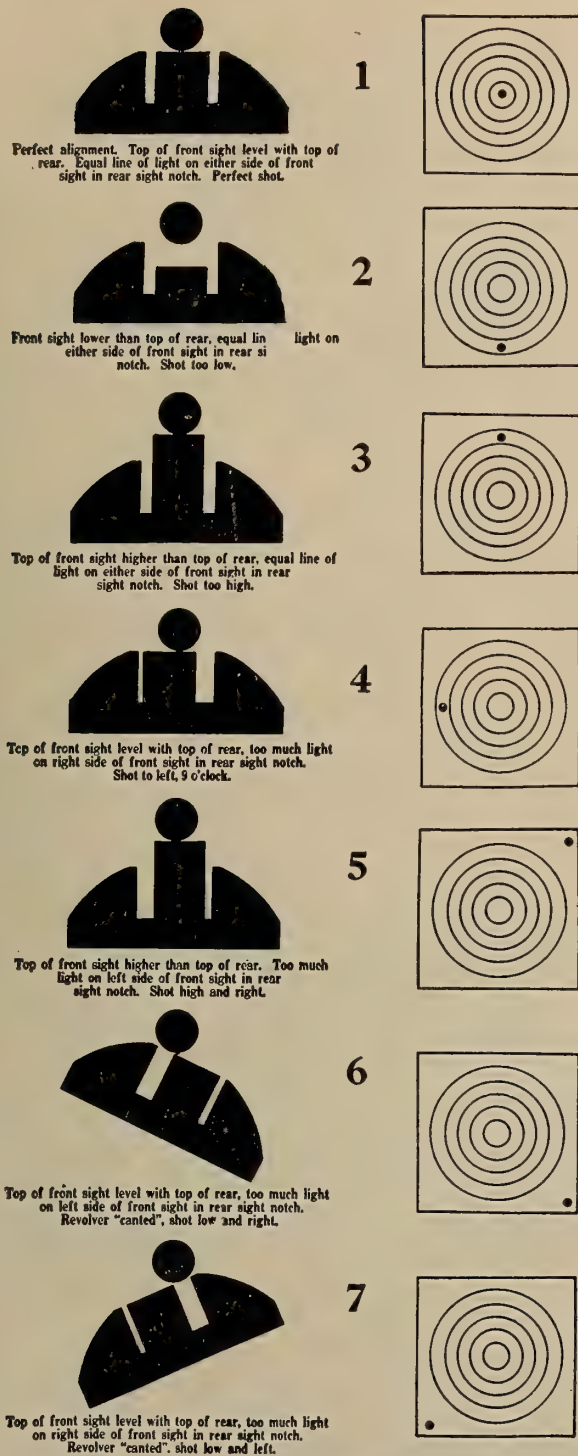


FIGURE 39.—Effect of correct and incorrect alignments of the sights, pistol and revolver.

placed on the time required to squeeze the trigger. The firer and coach alternate after each shot, and the exercise is continued until each has simulated 20 shots.

13-101 THIRD INSTRUCTION IN TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—A number of aiming targets are provided. These targets must be large enough so that there is little difficulty in holding on them. The instructor now explains to the men under instruction that they are to keep their sights in line with each other while the trigger is being squeezed but are not to try to keep on the bull's-eye. The object of the practice is to be able to call the shot after the hammer has fallen. The instructor then demonstrates the method of grasping the pistol, taking the firing position, aiming, and squeezing the trigger. The firers take up the pistols, obtain the proper grasp, assume the position and aim at the target. While the sights are being aligned, a light firm pressure is applied on the trigger. The firer now gives his attention to squeezing the trigger with a gradually increasing pressure. While squeezing the trigger, the firer disregards the unsteadiness of his hand, and continues increasing the pressure so long as the two sights are properly aligned with each other. The pressure on the trigger being gradually applied, the firer does not know the exact instant the hammer will fall. When it does fall, the firer notes the point on the target at which the sights are aligned and calls the position of the shot. No effort is made to keep the sights pointed at the bull's-eye. The firer merely notes the point on which the sights are aligned, so that he may be able to call the shot. During the trial, the coach notes the firer's grasp, position, and particularly his method of squeezing the trigger.

13-102 FOURTH INSTRUCTION IN TRIGGER SQUEEZE.—The same aiming targets are provided as in paragraph 13-101. The instructor explains that in this exercise the object is to squeeze the trigger while the sights are aligned on some part of the bull's-eye. The usual demonstration is given by the instructor and the exercise begins. The firer now gives

his attention to squeezing the trigger and continues to gradually increase the pressure on the trigger so long as the sights are aligned on any part of the bull's-eye. Small vibrations of the sights are disregarded. When the sights move off of the bull's-eye, the pressure on the trigger is held. When the sights again come on, the pressure is again increased.

13-103 TIMED FIRE.—In timed fire with the pistol, the firer proceeds as in slow fire until the first shot is fired. The tension of the muscles of the arm and hand is maintained during the recoil, and the flexing of the elbow and wrist resisted thereby. The whole arm moves up with the recoil, with some unavoidable bending of the wrist. As soon as possible after the shot, the firer releases the trigger, starts bringing the sights on the bull's-eye by the shortest route, and again starts to apply pressure on the trigger. By the time the sights are again aligned there should be considerable pressure on the trigger. Exactness of the aim should not be required in the early exercises. Emphasis is placed on the correct trigger squeeze. The two sights must, however, be properly aligned with each other and the firer must be able to call the shots.

13-104 INSTRUCTION IN TIMED FIRE.—Each man is provided with a piece of strong cord four feet long. One end of this cord is tied to the hammer of the pistol and the other end is held in the left hand. The instructor explains the exercise and demonstrates the use of the cord. The aiming position is assumed and the trigger squeezed as for the first shot. The instructor now gives a strong jerk on the cord with the left hand. This re-cocks the pistol and disturbs the aim, in somewhat the same manner as does the recoil. The instructor now brings the sights on for the next shot and continues the procedure until five shots have been simulated. The firers take up the pistols and carry out the exercise. The alternation of firer and coach should take place after two strings of 5 shots each. No time limit is placed on the firing of any one string. Men who have difficulty in getting the shots off quickly should, at first, be permitted to complete a trial with less than 5 shots.

13-105 RAPID FIRE.—This is essentially the same as timed fire. The method of firing is the same. Men should not be advanced to the

practice of rapid fire until they have acquired considerable facility in timed fire. As in timed fire the emphasis is placed on the correct trigger squeeze and the sight alignment. Exactness of alignment on the bull's-eye should not at first be required. In rapid fire, the breath is held throughout the firing of the 5-shot string. The tension of the muscles of right arm and hand is maintained throughout the string. As soon as one shot is fired the trigger is released and the squeeze for the next shot begun while the aim is being perfected. By the time the sights are on the bull's-eye there should be almost enough pressure on the trigger to fire the pistol.

13-106 INSTRUCTION IN RAPID FIRE.—The instruction in rapid fire is similar to that for timed fire. The only differences being the increased rate of fire and the fact that all shots of a string are fired on one breath. Rapid-fire instruction follows naturally after timed-fire instruction. The instructor must avoid trying to advance the men too quickly to the rapid-fire stage. Considerable harm may be done by requiring the men to take up the rapid-fire exercises before they acquire facility in timed fire.



FIGURE 40.—Cocking the revolver in rapid or timed fire. Side method.

13-107 CARE AND PRESERVATION.—The pistol should be dismounted after firing and all parts thoroughly cleaned. The bore is cleaned with hot soapy water or powder solvent, thoroughly dried, and given a light coat of oil. All working surfaces are coated with light oil and the pistol reassembled. Men should be instructed in the proper way to disassemble and assemble the pistol, but need not be required to

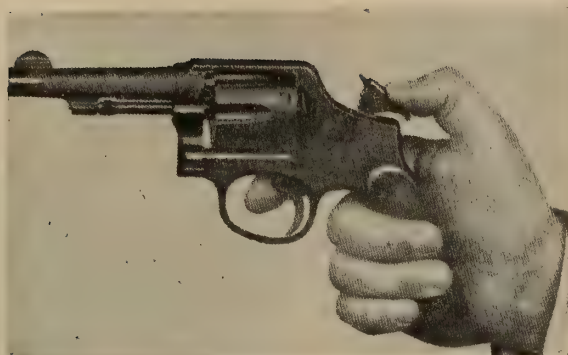


FIGURE 41.—Cocking the revolver in rapid or timed fire. Straight back method.

learn the names of all the various parts. In order to guard against possible eye injuries, men will be instructed always to exercise special care to keep the pistol pointed away from themselves and all other persons when removing or replacing the recoil spring and plug. For details of care and preservation see FM 23-35.

13-108 SAFETY PRECAUTIONS.—*a.* A long list of safety precautions should be avoided. The few precautions ordered should, however, be rigidly enforced. The following precautions are sufficient:

(1) On taking up a pistol examine it to see if it is loaded. To do this, first remove the magazine then draw back the slide.

(2) Never lay down a loaded pistol. Always remove magazine and lock slide open.

(3) Never turn around on the firing line until the pistol has been unloaded and the slide locked open.

(4) On the range keep the slide open until on the firing line and ready to shoot.

(5) In cleaning a jam, always remove the magazine first.

(6) Never point the pistol at anything unless you want to shoot it.

b. When the pistol is carried on ordinary occasions, as at drill, it will be carried in the holster completely unloaded (with empty magazine and empty chamber). When the nature of the duty requires a moderate degree of readiness for action the pistol may be ordered carried unloaded but with filled magazine (hammer lowered on an empty chamber and then a filled magazine inserted.) On emergency duty requiring a high degree of readiness, it may be carried fully loaded (chamber loaded, hammer

back, safety lock engaged, and six rounds in magazine). When carried fully loaded a tendency for the safety lock to become disengaged during withdrawal may be anticipated. This tendency may be reduced by rotating the stock of the pistol away from the leg during the operation of withdrawal.

13-109 EXAMINATION.—The examination of the men under instruction with the pistol is to a considerable extent a visual inspection by the instructor. The instructor assures himself, by observing the men, that they grasp the pistol properly and that they assume the proper position. The men are required to simulate the firing of the various stages. During this simulated fire the instructor particularly notes the firer's eye and the motion of the pistol as the hammer falls. In the oral examination the men are required to explain:

(1) The correct method of breathing.

(2) The correct method of aiming and aligning the sights.

(3) How to care for the pistol.

(4) The safety precautions.

13-110 INSTRUCTION STEPS, PISTOL COURSE.—*a. First instruction.*—The organization and methods are the same as for the range instruction for the rifle. Pistols are assigned to men by number and a record kept of the aiming points used at the different ranges. The instructor first repeats the safety precautions. The instructor then explains and demonstrates how to blacken the sights and the firing of slow fire. The instructor sees that all men have cotton for their ears and use it. The men are instructed to concentrate on the trigger squeeze and to keep their sights in line. No attempt is made to keep the shots in the center of the target. The first relay blackens the sights and fires 10 shots. The coach stands on the left of the firer and loads the magazine used by the firer. The coach introduces occasional dummies into the magazine without the firer knowing the order in which they are loaded.

b. Second instruction.—The instructor explains that the object of the exercise is to practice the trigger squeeze and not to make a high score. The first relay is instructed to fire 10 shots slow fire at 25 yards. They are instructed to concentrate on the trigger squeeze and not to try for a good score. So long as they can call the

shots accurately the object of the practice is accomplished. The coach takes position on the left of the firer and loads the magazines. The coach introduces an occasional dummy cartridge into the magazine.

c. Third instruction.—The first relay fires 10 shots slow fire at 25 yards.

d. Fourth instruction.—The instructor explains and demonstrates the firing of timed fire. The first relay is instructed not to try for too great accuracy at first, but to keep the sights

lined with each other and to concentrate on the trigger squeeze. The coach is on the left. The first relay fires two strings.

e. Fifth instruction.—The instructor explains and demonstrates the firing at rapid fire. The first relay makes several dummy runs with an increased time allowance. The first relay fires two strings with an increased time allowance. The firers are told to concentrate on the trigger squeeze and not to try for too great accuracy at first.

SECTION XII

MISCELLANEOUS WEAPONS

	Par.	Page
Scope-----	13-111	577
Sighting and aiming-----	13-112	577
Positions-----	13-113	577
Instructions in positions-----	13-114	577
Sight setting instruction-----	13-115	577
Effect of sight changes-----	13-116	577

13-111 SCOPE.—These instructions cover only the methods of aiming, the positions and the firing at fixed targets. Prior to receiving the instruction herein prescribed, the men under instruction shall be trained in the methods of:

- (1) Stripping, assembling, and, in the case of machine guns, head-space adjustment.
- (2) Care, cleaning, and points to be observed before and after firing.
- (3) Immediate action.
- (4) Functioning.
- (5) Stoppages.
- (6) The preparatory exercises for the service rifle.

13-112 SIGHTING AND AIMING.—*a.* With the machine gun the correct method of aiming is the same as that described for the rifle. (See par. 13-27.)

b. With the automatic rifle the sights are aligned with each other in the same manner as that described for the rifle (13-28). Since the automatic rifle is not provided with a wind gage, it will usually be necessary to hold to one side of the point that it is desired to hit. The tip of the front sight should, however, always be kept in the center of the peep.

13-113 POSITIONS.—*a. Machine gun.*—The sitting position will be used in firing the machine-gun course of these instructions. The gunner takes position directly behind the piece. The sitting position used is similar to the sitting position for firing the rifle (par. 13-39). The gunner's elbows are braced against the inner sides of the legs. The gunner's left hand rests lightly on the top of the grip and the right hand

grasps the stock lightly with the forefinger on the trigger. The pressure exerted by the hands on the stock is only that necessary to press the trigger properly. The weight of the arms must be supported by the legs and not by the gun or mount. The gunner does not attempt to prevent the vibration of the gun when firing.

b. Automatic rifle.—Only two positions are prescribed:

(1) *Prone position.*—This position is the same as the prone position with the rifle (par. 13-38) except that, due to the shorter stock of the automatic rifle, the firer lies at a lesser angle to the line of fire. The sling is used as with the rifle.

(2) *Sitting position.*—This position and the use of the sling is the same as that used with the rifle (par. 13-39).

13-114 INSTRUCTION IN POSITIONS.—The instructor explains and demonstrates each position. The firers are required to assume the position repeatedly, each being coached by the other member of his pair. After several trials the coach and firer exchange places.

13-115 SIGHT SETTING INSTRUCTION.—The instructor explains the use of the sight and demonstrates the various settings. The firers are each required to make several settings of the sights as directed by the instructor. The coaches and firers then alternate for the next settings.

13-116 EFFECT OF SIGHT CHANGES.—*a. Machine gun.*—For all practical purposes the effects of sight changes on the machine gun are the same as similar changes on the sights of the rifle.

b. Automatic rifle.—The effects of sight changes in elevation are the same for the automatic rifle as for the rifle. The effect of the wind on the bullet is the same as for the rifle; but since there is no wind gage, the automatic rifle must be aimed to one side in order to correct for the effect of the wind.

SECTION XIII

COMPETITIONS, TROPHIES, AND MEDALS

	Par.	Page
Competitions and matches.....	13-117	578
Organization and training.....	13-118	578
Arms.....	13-119	579
Courses and ammunition allowances....	13-120	579
Individual training and match shooting..	13-121	580
Interunit competitions.....	13-122	580
Local competitions.....	13-123	580
Intertype and interdistrict competitions..	13-124	580
Fleet competition.....	13-125	580
U. S. Navy competition.....	13-126	581
Competition rules.....	13-127	581
Fleet trophies.....	13-128	583
U. S. Navy trophies.....	13-129	583
United States Fleet trophies, place medals..	13-130	583
Team medals, distinguished marksman and distinguished pistol shot.....	13-131	584

13-117 COMPETITIONS AND MATCHES.—*a.* All commanding officers are encouraged to conduct rifle and pistol competitions to the fullest extent that time, facilities, and ammunition allowances will permit. The object of such competition is to extend the scope of regular small arms training, stimulate a greater interest in that phase of training, to provide a morale factor comparable to the athletic competitions and to select and develop individuals and teams to represent the Navy in National and International Competitions. Competitions should be conducted in such a manner as to provide recreation and at the same time promote maximum efficiency in the use of small arms.

b. The officer ordering a competition or match will designate the chief range officer and necessary assisting officials and will provide for all the range services required for conduct of the matches. The chief range officer of a competition will be charged with conduct of the matches. He will supervise the officials and the preparation of record and reports and will be in charge of range operations during the firing of the matches. On questions of procedure or interpretation of the rules, the de-

cision of the chief range officer is final, except that a written protest corroborating an oral one made during the match will be considered by the officer ordering the match after the chief range officer has commented on such protest.

c. A small-arms match consists of two or more individuals or teams firing the same class of small-arms weapons over the same marksmanship course under as nearly as possible the same physical conditions and time limitations. The purpose is to determine the relative proficiency of the individuals or groups of the individuals (listed as team members) as may be determined by aggregate scores. A small-arms competition is a series of matches.

13-118. ORGANIZATION AND TRAINING.—*a.* Each separate command or unit afloat or ashore such as ships, aircraft squadrons, naval base, station or shore activity should, within the limits of time facilities available, organize and train teams authorized in the table below. In small ships or stations where only limited personnel are available a division, squadron or base commander may combine the personnel of those units for the purpose of rifle-and-pistol team organization and training.

b. The number of individuals or teams which may be organized and trained within a command, unit or activity for individual or team competitions shall be based on the current personnel strength as follows:

Team authorized in weapon class	Teams per unit or activity strength (officer and enlisted)					Team strength	
	100 or less	100 to 500	500 to 1,000	1,000 to 1,500	1,500 to 2,500	Firing	Alter- nate
(a) Pistol .22 caliber.	1	1	2	3	4	4	2
(b) Rifle .22 caliber.	1	1	2	3	4	8	2
(c) Carbine .30 caliber.	(1) or	1	1	2	3	8	2
(d) Rifle .30 caliber.	(1)	1	2	3	4	8	2
(e) Revolver .38 caliber.	(1)	1	1	2	3	4	2
(f) Pistol .45 caliber.	(1)	1	2	3	4	4	2

c. A team shall consist of the number of personnel indicated in the table above and shall include a team captain and a team coach either or both of whom may be firing members or alternates. The alternates are not required in order to maintain a team but no team may enter a match with less than the number of firing members indicated. Not more than two Marines or more than two officers (Navy or Marine) may be firing members of a Navy rifle team. Not more than one Marine or more than one officer (Navy or Marine) may be firing members of a Navy pistol team. Marine personnel competing in either the Marine Corps Division Matches or Marine Corps Matches are ineligible to compete in Navy Matches during the same competition year. Individuals shall be selected to represent the Navy in National and International matches solely on ability, regardless of rank, officer or enlisted status. The team to represent a shore station or activity or unit afloat will be determined by matching the teams or individuals in inter-department or interdivision competitions. The results of small arms training conducted during the training of landing party organizations or NEGDF units along with previous records may serve as an initial guide in the selection of individuals for entry into competitions to determine team membership.

13-119 ARMS.—*a.* The arms utilized by teams and individuals in Navy matches will be standard Navy ordnance equipment. It is desirable that arms used by individuals and teams in match firing be especially serviced to insure optimum performance. To this end the Bureau of Ordnance will make available especially serviced weapons for Fleet, U. S. Navy and Navy National Match shooters. The replacement of worn or broken parts, the smoothing of roughened bearing surfaces, the adjustment of trigger pulls, the tightening of abnormally loose mechanisms, the relieving of rifle barrels from the pressure of warped or swollen stocks are considered to be repairs and are permissible to improve the designed operation of the arm. No repairs shall be made that will interfere with the functioning of the safety devices or that will reduce the trigger pull below the minimum required weight as follows: .30-caliber rifle M1, 4½ pounds; .45-caliber

pistol, 4 pounds; .38-caliber revolver, 2½ pounds. The arms used in Fleet and U. S. Navy competitions must conform to current National Match regulations.

b. Nothing in the above regulations shall be construed as prohibiting Navy individuals and teams from using any arm permitted by the regulations governing other than Navy conducted competitions.

13-120 COURSES AND AMMUNITION ALLOWANCES.—*a.* The courses to be fired in competitions and the annual allowances of ammunition per team member for training and matches are indicated in the table as follows:

Weapon class	Course	Ammunition allowances (rounds)	
		Elimination and training	Each match per individual firing
Pistol, .22-caliber	L	2,400	40
Rifle, .22-caliber	K	6,800	70
Carbine, .30-caliber	C	2,850	40
Rifle, .30-caliber	B	5,200	70
Revolver, .38 caliber	F	2,880	40
Do	National match		30
Pistol, .45-caliber	E	2,400	40
Do	National match		30

b. The Fleet and U. S. Navy individual and pistol team matches will be fired over the National Match Course:

Range (yards)	Type of fire	Time limit	Target	Rounds
50	Slow	1 minute per shot	50 yards Standard American.	10
25	Timed	20 seconds per string of 5.	25 yards Standard American.	10
25	Rapid	10 seconds per string of 5.	do	10
Total				30

c. The Fleet and U. S. Navy individual rifle and rifle team matches will be fired over the National Match Course. Where no 1,000-yard range is available, the 1,000 yard stage may be fired at 600 yards.

d. The number of matches to be fired by any individual shooter or team should be limited only by the ammunition allowance for match firing made available annually by the Bureau of Ordnance. This allowance should normally provide for 12-team matches and six individual matches based on the personnel tables indicated in paragraph 13-118 *b* above.

e. The Bureau of Ordnance will provide for

the annual ammunition allowance for individual and team training and match firing. Ammunition required for Fleet Matches, U. S. Navy Matches, National Matches and National Rifle Association Matches should be provided for separately and the expenditure in those matches should not count against the allowance provided for training and other Navy Matches.

f. Nothing in these regulations shall be construed as prohibiting Navy personnel from using commercial or hand-loaded ammunition in matches conducted by organizations other than the Navy and where such ammunition is permitted.

13-121 INDIVIDUAL TRAINING AND MATCH SHOOTING.—*a.* In commands where there are an insufficient number of personnel interested in rifle and pistol match shooting or where the numbers required cannot be made available to form teams as specified in paragraph 13-118 above, but where there are individuals who are interested and who can be made available for training and match shooting, ammunition may be provided in proportion to the amounts allowed for teams in paragraph 13-120.

b. All competitions will normally include team matches and individual matches employing the same classes of weapons utilized in the team matches.

c. Members of teams shall be permitted to enter individual matches.

d. Provisions should be made in all individual matches for the entry of personnel who are highly qualified, but who are not stationed where opportunity is afforded to be a team member.

13-122 INTERUNIT COMPETITIONS.—Each commander that organizes and trains teams as authorized in paragraph 13-118 may, within the limits of the ammunition allowance authorized in paragraph 13-120, conduct such training as desired for the purpose of selecting team members and developing one team to represent the command. The commander may conduct competitions matching individuals or teams in each weapon class as desired to stimulate the competitive spirit and interest in the small-arms training. Reports will be rendered in accordance with Section XIV, when match shooting is conducted. Reports

of team training and expenditures of ammunition connected therewith will be made in accordance with Section XIV.

13-123 LOCAL COMPETITIONS.—*a.* Commanding Officers of units or activities that develop rifle and pistol teams or individual shooters as authorized in paragraphs 13-118 and 13-121 above are encouraged to arrange competitions with other armed services and reserve components, law enforcement agencies, and with civilian rifle and pistol clubs in their vicinity. It is suggested that such matches should where possible be held under the regulations governing the National Rifle Association of America. Navy shooters and teams entered in matches held under other than Navy jurisdiction will conform to the rules and regulations of the host organization in regard to eligibility, conduct of the matches, courses to be fired, arms, ammunition and composition of teams. Ammunition from the unit or activity competition allowance may be utilized by Navy shooters entered in such matches.

b. Navy shooters and teams should be provided opportunities where possible to enter various local and regional rifle and pistol matches held under sponsorship of the National Rifle Association and its affiliated clubs.

13-124 INTERTYPE AND INTERDISTRICT COMPETITIONS.—Type commanders, district or river command commandants, or the senior officer present when ships are operating in close proximity may conduct small arms competitions matching teams in each weapon class from the units afloat and/or activities ashore. It is intended that the teams in each weapon class developed by the units in interunit or local competition provided for in paragraphs 13-122 and 13-123 above be afforded the opportunity to compete with teams from other naval commands. A commander or commandant conducting such a competition may invite commanding officers within a reasonable proximity to make team or individual entries from their respective commands. Competitions between teams from units of different types and between teams from shore activities should be conducted by arrangement through the appropriate type commanders and district commandants.

13-125 FLEET COMPETITION.—The

Commander-in-Chief of each Fleet of the Navy is authorized to hold annually one Fleet Competition matching individuals and teams from the various units of the Fleet and shore activities within or adjacent to the Fleet area. Such competition shall conform to applicable United States Navy athletic regulations for Fleet Competitions. The Fleet Competitions should consist of:

(1) An individual pistol (.45-caliber automatic) match.

(2) An individual rifle (.30-caliber M-1) match.

(3) A pistol (.45-caliber M-1) team match.

(4) A rifle (.30-caliber M-1) team match.

It is intended that the best individuals and teams developed in interunit and local competitions and which may have further demonstrated marksmanship ability in intertype or interdistrict match be provided with the opportunity to compete in the Fleet Competition. The Commander-in-Chief ordering the Fleet Rifle and Pistol Competition will select the individuals and teams to be invited to enter the matches from the pertinent records of the individuals and teams nominated by commanding officers afloat and ashore. The Fleet Competition will not include an individual match (rifle or pistol) where there are less than 30 individuals available for match firing. The Fleet Competition will not include a team match (rifle or pistol) where there are less than 5 teams available for match firing.

13-126 U. S. NAVY COMPETITION.—The Chief of Naval Personnel is authorized to conduct an annual U. S. Navy Competition matching individuals and teams representing the various fleets and shore activities. Representation and eligibility shall be in accordance with current directives for U. S. Navy athletic competitions and for competition in the National Trophy Rifle and Pistol Matches. The U. S. Navy Rifle and Pistol Competition should consist of:

(1) An individual pistol (.45-caliber automatic) match.

(2) An individual rifle (.30-caliber M-1) match.

(3) A pistol (.45-caliber automatic) team match.

(4) A rifle (.30-caliber M-1) match.

It is intended that the best rifle and pistol individual shooters and teams developed in interunit, local and fleet match shooting be provided the opportunity to compete for the U. S. Navy championship. The Chief of Naval Personnel will select the individuals and teams to be invited to enter the U. S. Navy matches from the pertinent records of the individuals and teams nominated by Commanding Officers and recommended by appropriate Fleet Commander or District Commandant.

Eligibles for U. S. Navy individual competition will be:

(a) Officers and men who have been awarded a medal (leg) in a Fleet Competition during the current competition year.

(b) Distinguished Shots who placed in a Fleet Competition during the current competition year.

(c) Personnel of teams eligible to fire in the U. S. Navy Competition who do not qualify under the provisions of (a) or (b) above, may fire for score only.

As the result of the U. S. Navy Competition the Chief of Naval Personnel will designate the U. S. Navy champion individual and team for the rifle and the pistol and will select and enter individuals and teams in the annual National Rifle Association Matches and National Trophies Matches.

13-127 COMPETITION RULES.—The following rules are applicable to all competitions in which all competing teams are from the U. S. Navy. The conduct of the range during competitions shall be as prescribed in Section IX except as modified by the rules for the competition.

a. In special competitions arranged by mutual agreement with teams outside the U. S. Navy, variations from the rules herein prescribed are permitted, but these variations should be reduced to writing before the competition and each team furnished with a copy of the changes agreed upon. None of the trophies, awards, or prize money allowed under these rules will be awarded as a result of such special competitions.

b. In all competitions the commanding officer of the organization from which the team is

selected will certify as to the eligibility of the team members.

c. In all team competitions coaching is permitted. Any member of the team may act as coach on the firing line. Coaching from behind the firing line will not be permitted. The coach may be changed at the discretion of the team captain but must be withdrawn from the line while the change is being effected. Coaches and members on the firing line will occupy their normal positions and will not so dispose themselves as to shield the firer from the effects of the wind, light, or weather. In addition to the team coach, each pair that is firing may have not more than one coach on the line with them.

d. In all rifle team competitions the competitors on each team fire slow fire in pairs, the members of the pair firing alternately and the man on the right firing first.

e. In all pistol competitions the competitors fire singly or may fire slow fire in pairs as above.

f. In all competitions the markers and officials in the pits shall be kept in ignorance of the identity of the competitor or the team firing at any particular target.

g. In rifle competitions the use of pads or gloves to protect the firer will be permitted, but only when such pads or gloves do not afford an artificial support.

h. In rifle competitions the competitors are allowed the use of a micrometer or vernier for setting the sights, the use of a telescope or binocular, and the use of a scorebook.

i. In all competitions the competitors are permitted to blacken the sights, but the use of special sunshades on the sights is prohibited.

j. In pistol competitions the competitor is allowed the use of adhesive tape or other protection on the hand, or the use of a glove, provided that the protective device does not afford any artificial support.

k. In all competition the time allowed for slow fire shall be at the rate of one minute per shot plus three minutes for each change of pairs or competitors on the firing line. The time allowed for a team is the total time computed as above. In team competition the times of the individual shots or the times for the individual competitors need not be recorded. It is only necessary that the whole team complete its firing within the total allowed time.

l. Additional time may be allowed for slow target service or for interruptions. Claim for additional time must be made to the range officer as soon as the interruption occurs or in sufficient time for the range officer to personally note the condition for which the claim is made. Claims made only at the expiration of the time allowance will not be allowed.

m. Shots fired after the expiration of the time allowance will be recorded but will be "ringed" and will not be recorded on the official score card unless the additional time allowance is granted.

n. Scores shall be recorded both in the pit and on the firing line. If score at firing line is questioned, the pit score will govern. On the firing line, scores shall be recorded on a scoreboard as soon as the values of the shots are signaled. The record shall be visible to the competitors. The team captain shall initial the official score card after the scores are entered.

o. Competitors must call attention to any errors of scoring as they occur. The value of any shot signaled or recorded on the board may be challenged, provided that no subsequent shot is fired at the target before the challenge is made. If a subsequent shot has been fired the challenge will not be allowed.

p. The officer ordering the match will designate the ammunition to be used in the match. This designation should be made at least 10 days prior to the date set for the match in order that all teams may have an opportunity to sight in with the ammunition designated.

q. The ammunition used in the match will be served out to competitors on the firing line. Any competitor having other ammunition in his possession on the firing line will be disqualified, and his score will not be counted.

r. In rifle competitions standard positions only may be used. These are defined as follows:

(1) *Standing*.—Firer stands erect on both feet, rifle supported by hands and shoulder of the firer, without body or artificial rest. Both elbows must be clear of the body. The use of the sling is not permitted.

(2) *Sitting*.—Firer's body is supported by both feet and the buttocks. No other portion of the body may rest on the ground. The use of the sling is permitted when adjusted as described in paragraph 13-33.

(3) *Kneeling*.—Right knee on ground with right buttock resting directly on right heel. Left elbow extended over left knee. Sling permitted as described in paragraph 13-33.

(4) *Prone*.—Lower part of body rests on the ground. Firer's head is toward the target, and upper part of the body is supported by the elbows, which rest on the ground. No part of either arm below the elbow shall rest on the ground. No artificial support is permitted. The sling is permitted when adjusted as described in paragraph 13-33.

s. In pistol competitions the standing position only shall be used. No artificial support is permitted and only one hand may be used in supporting the pistol.

t. All teams shall designate two alternates on the Commanding Officer's certificate of eligibility. In case of injury to a member of a team during the competition firing, an alternate may be substituted to continue the firing from and including the range on which the principal was injured, provided such substitution is authorized by the chief range officer. However, once having been so substituted, the alternate must finish the match unless he also is injured.

u. Ties in rifle competitions are decided in favor of the team or individual:

(1) Having the highest aggregate score at longest range rapid fire or if tied there then at the next stage taking the stages in order; 200 yards rapid fire sitting from standing; 200 yards rapid fire kneeling from standing; 200 yards slow fire standing, sitting, and kneeling; then longest slow fire range. If still tied then by:

(2) Having the fewest misses in all classes of fire or the fewest number of shots of lowest value, etc.

(3) Having the fewest misses, shots of lowest value, etc., in the various stages considered in the order given above.

(4) Having the first shot of higher value when the slow fire shots are considered in the inverse order in which they are fired.

y. Ties in pistol competition are decided in favor of the team or individual:

(1) Having the highest aggregate score at the following stages taken in order: 25 yards rapid fire; 25 yards timed fire; slow fire. If still tied then by:

(2) Having the fewest misses in all classes of

fire or the fewest number of shots of lowest value, etc.

(3) Having the fewest misses, shots of lowest value, etc., in the various stages considered in the order given above.

(4) Having the first shot of higher value when the slow fire shots are considered in the inverse order in which they are fired.

13-128 FLEET TROPHIES.—The Commander-in-Chief of each Fleet will award Fleet trophies to the team making the highest aggregate score in the Fleet Rifle Match and Fleet Pistol Match. The name of the winning ship, unit, base or station will be engraved on the trophy as soon as practicable after its receipt. The commanding officer concerned will request an allotment of funds from the Chief of Naval Personnel to cover the cost of the engraving. The trophies will be retained by the winning unit until 30 days prior to the next Fleet Competition when they will be returned to Commander-in-Chief for future award.

13-129 U. S. NAVY TROPHIES.—The Chief of Naval Personnel will award to the team making the highest aggregate score in each U. S. Navy Rifle Match and U. S. Navy Pistol Match a U. S. Navy Trophy. The U. S. Navy Rifle and Pistol Trophies will be transferred upon completion of the matches for which they are awarded to the appropriate flagship or naval district headquarters of the winning team. The name of the winning Fleet, Naval District, or River Command will be engraved on the trophy. Trophies will be retained by the winning flagship or headquarters until 30 days prior to the next U. S. Navy Matches when they will be returned to the Chief of Naval Personnel for future award.

13-130 PLACE MEDALS.—Suitably engraved medals shall be awarded by the commander in chief ordering the competition to the leading individuals for places in each individual rifle and individual pistol match in each Fleet Competition. These medals will be provided and engraved by the Chief of Naval Personnel and forwarded for presentation after receipt of the official scorings from the officer ordering the competition. Standards for medals for the match will be adjudicated by the Chief of Naval Personnel in the same manner as provided for medals in the U. S. Navy Competitions. The

Chief of Naval Personnel will award suitably engraved medals to the leading individuals for places in each individual rifle match and individual pistol match fired in U. S. Navy Competitions. The competitors shall be ranked in the order of their individual aggregate attained while firing in the individual matches named above. The Chief of Naval Personnel may set standards for the above matches in order that mediocre scorings may not be awarded medals (legs) toward distinguished medals and also that weather conditions and ammunition grades be considered in determining standards for the match. The number of place medals awarded in rifle and pistol matches shall be in the following proportions:

<i>Competitors (enlisted)</i>	<i>Gold</i>	<i>Silver</i>	<i>Bronze</i>
30 or more -----	1	2	3
35 -----	1	2	4
40 -----	1	2	5
45 -----	1	3	5
50 -----	2	3	5
55 -----	2	3	6
60 -----	2	4	6
65 -----	2	4	7
70 -----	2	4	8
75 -----	2	5	8
80 -----	2	5	9
85 -----	2	5	10
90 -----	2	6	10
95 -----	3	6	10
100 -----	3	6	11
105 -----	3	7	12
110 -----	3	7	12
115 -----	3	7	13
120 -----	3	8	13
125 -----	3	8	14
130 -----	3	8	15
135 -----	3	9	15
140 -----	4	9	15
145 -----	4	9	16
150 -----	4	10	16
155 -----	4	10	17
160 -----	4	10	18
165 -----	4	11	18
170 -----	4	11	19
175 -----	4	11	20
180 -----	4	12	20

Officers and Warrant Officers will be awarded medals according to their position on a consolidated list. In this way enlisted men compete only against enlisted for prizes, but officers and warrant officers compete against both themselves and enlisted men. Persons designated distinguished are not eligible to compete for medals but will compete for place only in the

Fleet or U. S. Navy Competitions with the arm in which they are distinguished.

13-131 DISTINGUISHED MARKSMAN AND DISTINGUISHED PISTOL SHOT.—

a. In order to qualify for the designation as distinguished marksman and the award of a Navy Distinguished Marksman Medal the applicant must have attained three major rifle marksmanship awards (legs) as follows:

1. One or more of the legs may have been attained from either or both of the following sources: (*a*) Place Medal won in a national trophy individual rifle match while a member of the United States Naval Reserve, or while a member of the United States Navy, active or retired, (*b*) Team Medal received as a shooting member of a United States Navy rifle team which won a place award in a national trophy rifle team match.

2. One leg may be recognized which was attained while not a member of the United States Navy or Naval Reserve as follows: (*a*) Place Medal or Team Medal won in a national trophy individual rifle match or national trophy rifle team match; (*b*) medal won while member of United States Marine Corps for which the Marine Corps has given credit as a leg toward distinguished marksman; (*c*) medal or award won for other outstanding rifle marksmanship attainment which may be accepted as worthy by the Chief of Naval Operations.

3. One, two or three legs may have been attained by place medals won in an annual Fleet or U. S. Navy Individual Rifle Match subsequent to 1 July 1931.

b. In order to qualify for the designation as a distinguished pistol shot and the award of a Navy Distinguished Pistol Shot Medal the applicant must have attained three major pistol marksmanship awards (legs) as follows:

1. One or more of the legs may have been attained from either or both of the following sources:

(*a*) Place Medal won in a national individual pistol match while a member of the United States Naval Reserve or while a member of the United States Navy active or retired.

(*b*) Team Medal received as a shooting member of a United States Navy pistol team which won a place award in a national pistol team match.

2. One leg may be recognized which was attained while not a member of the United States Navy or Naval Reserve as follows:

(a) Place Medal or team medal won in a national individual pistol match or a national pistol team match.

(b) Medal won while a member of the United States Marine Corps for which the Marine Corps has given credit as a leg toward distinguished pistol shot.

(c) Medal or award won for other outstanding pistol marksmanship attainment which may be accepted as worthy by the Chief of Naval Operations.

3. One, two or three legs may have been attained by place medal won in an annual Fleet or U. S. Navy Individual Pistol Match subsequent to 1 July 1931.

c. Nothing in this article shall be construed as cancelling or declaring ineligible such leg(s) toward distinguished marksman or pistol shot as have been previously awarded. An individual who has been awarded three (3) medals (legs) will automatically be designated distinguished by the Chief of Naval Personnel and a suitably engraved distinguished medal will be awarded.

SECTION XIV

RECORDS, REPORTS, AND FORMS

	Par.	Page
Annual small arms report.....	13-132	586
Report of rifle and pistol matches.....	13-133	586
Pit record.....	13-134	586
Firing line records.....	13-135	586
Report of scores.....	13-136	587
Entries in service records.....	13-137	587
Forms.....	13-138	587
Score board.....		587
Pit card.....		588
Small arms sheet No. 1.....		588
Small arms sheet No. 2.....		589
Small arms sheet No. 3.....		590
Small arms sheet No. 4.....		591

13-132 ANNUAL SMALL ARMS REPORT.—Each command, ship or shore activity that conducts any small arms firing shall submit an annual report immediately upon completion of the small arms year to the Chief of Naval Personnel, with one copy to the Chief of Naval Operations. The report shall consist of an accomplished Small Arms Sheet 1 tabulating all record firing and a Small Arms Sheet 2 accomplished for all officers and men who qualified as expert during the year forwarded as enclosures to a letter which shall cover the following points.

a. Request for the award and issue of expert medals.

b. Comment on methods of training and any items of interest or appropriate recommendation in connection with small arms firing.

c. Report of ammunition expended in regular training and in team training.

d. Reports of Navy small arms practices fired by Marine detachments afloat will be submitted as a part of the ship's report, and an additional copy will be furnished the Commandant of the Marine Corps.

13-133 REPORT OF RIFLE AND PISTOL MATCHES.—Immediately upon completion of an inter-unit, local, inter-type or District, Fleet or U. S. Navy rifle and pistol competition, the officer ordering the competition shall sub-

mit to the Chief of Naval Personnel, with one copy to the Chief of Naval Operations a form report (Small Arms Sheet 3 and 4) for each match fired giving the following information:

a. Date and place of each match.

b. Name, unit or organization of winning team and aggregate score.

c. Name, rank or rate and aggregate score of each team member of the winning or placing teams in team matches. Name, rank or rate and aggregate score of each individual medal winner in individual matches.

d. List name, unit or station of other competing teams, their aggregate scores and standing in team matches.

e. The form reports shall be forwarded as an enclosure to a letter which shall request team and place medals, comment upon the conduct of the competition, report ammunition expended and provide any item of interest in regard to small arms training and team organization.

13-134 PIT RECORD.—In the record practice a rough copy of the report of scores (Small-Arms Sheet 2) will be kept in ink or indelible pencil in the pits by the chief pit officer. This copy is known as the pit record and will be kept by relays. Names of firers will not be entered but identification will be by relay and target number. Scores are then entered by the chief pit officer in the pit record in a manner similar to the method prescribed for the firing line. (See par. 13-75.) Pit cards will be used one for each target for each string. These will be collected by the chief pit officer and the data transferred to the pit record.

13-135 FIRING LINE RECORDS.—In record practice another rough copy of the report of scores (Small-Arms Sheet 2) will be kept in ink or indelible pencil at the firing line by the officer in charge of the firing line. This copy is known as the firing line record and will be kept by relays. Each firer will be identified

by name as well as relay and target number. The data for this record is obtained from the score boards, by the officer in charge of the firing line, in the manner prescribed in paragraph 13-80. Score boards will be in the form of portable blackboards at the firing line, one for each target. Scores will be checked against the pit record before announcement of qualifications and before preparation of the smooth copy of Small-Arms Sheet 2 (par. 13-136.) In order that the pit record may be kept properly, the order of the relays must be maintained. If the officer in charge of the firing line fires for record his performance must be observed and score kept by another officer at the firing line, who will submit a separate report of scores in his case.

13-136 REPORT OF SCORES.—Instructions for use of the report of scores (Small-Arms Sheet 2) are printed on its back. Immediately after the close of each record practice, the officer in charge of the firing line will prepare and submit to each commanding officer concerned a smooth copy typewritten or in ink (in quadruplicate) of Small-Arms Sheet 2). Each copy will be certified, in the spaces provided, by both the chief pit officer and the officer in charge of the firing line. This smooth copy is compiled from the pit record and the firing line record (pars. 13-134 and 13-135). In case of disagreement

between the two records the **pit record will control.**

13-137 ENTRIES IN SERVICE RECORDS.—Entries in service records of enlisted men are made by the commanding officer upon receipt of Small-Arms Sheet 2 (report of scores). The entries should simply show the name of the ship or station, the date and the nature of the qualification. If an enlisted man fires record practice but fails to qualify, this fact should also be entered since it affects his eligibility to fire again. The record would then read:

U. S. S. *Alaska*, 3/2/50, qualified as expert rifleman (or as the case may be):

Signature

or

U. S. S. *Alaska*, 3/2/50, unqualified at record rifle (pistol) practice:

Signature

In the case of officers this information is forwarded to Chief of Naval Personnel for eventual inclusion in the officers' file jackets.

13-138 FORMS.—Forms may be obtained from the Chief of Naval Operations or may be prepared from the samples shown herein. Samples of score board, pit card, and Small-Arms Sheets 1, 2, 3, and 4 follow herewith:

SCORE BOARD

Target No. —

Name and relay	Shot No.																	Course						Total	
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	Total	Slow fire				Rapid fire			
																		S 200	Sit 200	K 200	P 500	Sit 200	K 200		P 300
1																									
2																									
3																									
4																									
5																									

Qualification -----

FIGURE 42.—Sample score board.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL

PIT CARD

Target No.	Shot No.																Total	Relay	Range and kind of fire
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16			

NOTE.—The pit card is not furnished by the Department.

U. S. N., Pit Officer

FIGURE 43.—Sample pit card.

SMALL ARMS—SHEET 1
OPNAV-34-121 (Rev. 1950)

Ship or station

, 19

From: Commanding officer.

To: Chief of Naval Personnel (Pers-B41).

Subject: Annual report of small-arms practice.

1. The following are the results attained by this command for the small-arms year ending June 30, 19

Table of officers and men who fired, with qualifications

Number firing (A)	Course	Number qualified as (B)	Percent: (B) ÷ (A)
	Course A	Rifle marksman Unqualified	
	Course B	Rifle marksman Rifle sharpshooter Rifle expert Unqualified	
	Course C	Carbine marksman Carbine sharpshooter Carbine expert Unqualified	
	Course D	Pistol marksman Unqualified	
	Course E	Pistol marksman Pistol sharpshooter Pistol expert Unqualified	
	Course F	Revolver marksman Revolver sharpshooter Revolver expert Unqualified	
	Course G	Submachine gun	
	Course H	Ground machine gun	
	Course I	Automatic rifle	

Landing party or NEGDF complement officers enlisted.

Authorized allowance officers enlisted.

Copy to: CNO (OP34)

Signature

, Commanding.

NOTE.—In Courses G, H, and I, use qualifying score to determine percentage qualified.

Small Arms—Sheet 2
OPNAV-34-122 (Revised 1950)

Report of scores

(See instructions on reverse of this sheet)

Ship or station ----- Division or activity -----
Place ----- Date -----, 19-----
Weapon fired ----- Course fired -----

Target No.	Name	Rank or rate	Scores					Total	Qualification
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----
-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

I certify that the above record practice was conducted in accordance with regulations.

Name -----
-----, U. S. Navy.
Rank ----- Chief Pit Officer.

Name -----
-----, U. S. Navy.
Rank -----
----- Officer in Charge of Firing Line.

Number of sheets in this report -----

This is sheet -----

Copy to: CNO (OP34)

[Reverse of small arms sheet 2]

INSTRUCTIONS

1. This Report of Scores is to be kept both on the firing line by the officer in charge of the firing line and in the pit by the chief pit officer.

2. In subcolumns, under "Scores," enter ranges fired showing type of fire by abbreviations (Slow fire—S. F.; Rapid fire—R. F.; Timed fire—T. F.; Semiautomatic—S. A.; Automatic—A.) and distance. Example: 500 yards slow fire—S. F. 500; 300 yards rapid fire—R. F. 300.

3. Data for the Report of Scores are obtained from two sources, viz:

(a) From the scoreboards on the firing line by the officer in charge of the firing line, who enters the name of the officer or man firing in the space opposite the number of the target on which such officer or man fired.

(b) From the pit cards in the pit by the chief pit officer who enters the score made on a target in the space opposite the number of the target.

The relay number shall always be entered on the Report of Scores. All entries on the Report of Scores shall be typewritten or in ink. It is desirable to group men from the same division or activity, ship or station together on one sheet. If this is not done, the firer's station or ship and division or activity should be shown with his name.

4. At the close of the firing the officer in charge of the firing line announces the results to the firers before they leave the range. He then transmits a smooth copy of the Report of Scores, free from erasures and interlineations to the commanding officer concerned. This smooth copy shall be appropriately certified by the chief pit officer and the officer in charge of the firing line.

5. This report is to be kept by commanding officers until the close of the small-arms year following.

6. Use abbreviations as follows: E, Expert; S, Sharpshooter; M, Marksman; U, Unqualified.

7. If pit cards are used, they may be sent to the firing line in place of the Report of Scores; but the Report of Scores must be kept, as it constitutes the official record.

8. The Report of Scores is designed to be kept in suitable binders. Copies of the form will be furnished on application to the Chief of Naval Operations.

9. One signed copy of Sheet 2 will accompany a request for medals for qualifications when such request is submitted separate from the annual report. Address to Chief of Naval Personnel (Pers. B41).

10. One copy of Sheet 2 for all officers and men who qualified as experts during the year shall be submitted with the annual report.

Report of small arms team match

Date_____

Location of range..... Weapon fired.....

Course fired_____

In competition ordered by _____

1. Winning team or place -----
(Name of ship, station, activity or unit, and address)

[illegible]

Certified by: (1) Score taker _____ (2) Team captain _____

2. Other teams in competition, their scores, and standing:

[illegible]

Forwarded by chief range officer _____ USN Date _____
Name Rank

Forwarded to BuPers by officer ordering competition_____

Name	Rank	USN
------	------	-----

Copy to: CNO (OP34)

Report of Small Arms Individual Match

Date _____

Weapon fired

Course fired _____

In competition ordered by -----

[illegible]

Certified by: (1) Score taker _____ (2) Team captain _____

Forwarded by Chief Range Officer _____ USN Date _____

Name	Rank
------	------

Forwarded to BuPers by officer ordering competition.....			USN
	Name	Rank	
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			
11			
12			
13			
14			
15			
16			
17			
18			
19			
20			
21			
22			
23			
24			
25			
26			
27			
28			
29			
30			
31			
32			
33			
34			
35			
36			
37			
38			
39			
40			
41			
42			
43			
44			
45			
46			
47			
48			
49			
50			
51			
52			
53			
54			
55			
56			
57			
58			
59			
60			
61			
62			
63			
64			
65			
66			
67			
68			
69			
70			
71			
72			
73			
74			
75			
76			
77			
78			
79			
80			
81			
82			
83			
84			
85			
86			
87			
88			
89			
90			
91			
92			
93			
94			
95			
96			
97			
98			
99			
100			

Copy to: CNO (OP34)

SECTION XV

TARGET MATERIALS; INSTRUCTION SCHEDULES

	Par.	Page
Target materials.....	13-139	592
Targets.....	13-140	592
Shooting pads.....	13-141	593
Schedules.....	13-142	593

13-139 TARGET MATERIALS.—The Navy stocks certain standard items of target material which may be requisitioned, without charge, on request addressed to (a) Supply Officer in Command, Ordnance Supply Depot, NSC, Norfolk, Va. (b) Supply Officer in Command, Ordnance Supply Depot, NSC, Oakland, Calif., or (c) Supply Officer in Command, Ordnance Supply Depot, NSC, Pearl Harbor, T. H. Activities requesting nonstandard items must obtain approval of request addressed to Chief of Naval Operations.

STANDARD MATERIALS STOCKED IN NAVY SUPPLY DEPOTS

CENTER, REPAIR TARGET, A-C (For Carbine Marksmanship)
 CENTER, REPAIR TARGET, B-C (For Carbine Marksmanship)
 CENTER, REPAIR TARGET, D-C (Repair Rifle D Target)
 CLOTH, TARGET, 72", yards
 DISK, TARGET SPOTTER, 3"
 DISK, TARGET SPOTTER, 5"
 DISK, TARGET SPOTTER, 10"
 FRAME, TARGET, 6 x 6 ft., COMPLETE
 MARKER, TARGET, SHORT RANGE, COMPLETE
 MARKER, TARGET, MID RANGE, COMPLETE
 PASTE, TARGET, DRY, LBS
 PASTER, TARGET, BLACK, ENVELOPE OF 10,000
 PASTER, TARGET, BUFF, ENVELOPE OF 10,000
 SPINDLE, TARGER SPOTTER
 TARGET, PISTOL, L
 TARGET, PISTOL, 25 YARD, STANDARD AMERICAN
 TARGET, PISTOL, 50 YARD, STANDARD AMERICAN
 TARGET, RIFLE A
 TARGET, RIFLE B
 TARGET, RIFLE D

SMALL BORE TARGETS

[For preparatory marksmanship training]

TARGET, GALLERY RIFLE, SB-A-2 (miniature A Target)
 TARGET, GALLERY RIFLE, SB-D-2 (miniature D Target)
 TARGET, GALLERY RIFLE, OFFICIAL 50 FT.
 TARGET, GALLERY PISTOL, OFFICIAL 50 FT. B-2 (Slow Fire)
 TARGET, GALLERY PISTOL, OFFICIAL 50 FT. B-3 (Rapid Fire)

13-140 TARGETS.—The specifications of dimensions of some targets, together with the values of the hits in their divisions, are as follows:

a. Target, Rifle A, 10-inch black aiming bull's-eye, rings as follows:

10 inches diameter.....	Value 5.
26 inches diameter.....	Value 4.
46 inches diameter.....	Value 3.
Remainder of target 6 feet high and 4 feet wide.....	Value 2.

b. Target, Rifle B, 20-inch black aiming bull's-eye, rings as follows:

20 inches diameter.....	Value 5.
37 inches diameter.....	Value 4.
53 inches diameter.....	Value 3.
Remainder of target 6 feet by 6 feet.....	Value 2.

c. Target, Rifle D, used for rapid fire in .30-caliber rifle firing at 200 and 300 yards, rings as follows:

26" x 19" silhouette.....	Value 5.
34" x 37" silhouette.....	Value 4.
51" x 51" silhouette.....	Value 3.
Remainder of target 6' x 6' rectangle.....	Value 2.

e. Target, gallery rifle, official 50 feet, used for small-bore rifle firing; a rectangle having ten bull's-eye, thereon. The 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 rings are in the black. The dimensions of the

various rings are as follows:—

0.150 inch.....	Value 10.
0.483 inch.....	Value 9.
0.817 inch.....	Value 8.
1.150 inches.....	Value 7.
1.483 inches.....	Value 6.
1.817 inches.....	Value 5.

f. Target, gallery rifle, SB-A-2 (miniature A target), used at 50 feet for .22-caliber rifle fire.

0.83 inch.....	Value 5.
2.17 inches.....	Value 4.
3.87 inches.....	Value 3.
4' x 6' rectangle.....	Value 2.

g. Target, gallery rifle, SB-D-2 (miniature D target), used at 50 feet for .22-caliber rifle, rapid firing.

2.16' x 1.59' silhouette.....	Value 5.
2.80' x 3.08' silhouette.....	Value 4.
4.16' x 4.25' silhouette.....	Value 3.
6' x 6' rectangle.....	Value 2.

h. Target, gallery pistol, official 50 feet, B-2 (slow fire).

0.90 inch.....	Value 10.
1.54 inches.....	Value 9.
2.23 inches.....	Value 8.
3.07 inches.....	Value 7.
4.16 inches.....	Value 6.
5.56 inches.....	Value 5.
7.33 inches.....	Value 4.

Only 10, 9, 8, and 7 rings blacked in.

i. Target, gallery pistol, official 50 feet, B-3 (rapid fire).

1.80 inches.....	Value 10.
3.06 inches.....	Value 9.
4.46 inches.....	Value 8.
6.14 inches.....	Value 7.
8.32 inches.....	Value 6.

Only 10 and 9 rings are blacked in.

13-141 SHOOTING PADS.—*a.* The use of padding on the elbows and on the shoulder is essential for men who are to be instructed in firing the rifle. Shooting coats can be made by adding padding in the correct places to dungaree shirts or coats. For men firing the automatic rifle, the shoulder padding is not needed. For men firing the pistol the use of a small piece of surgeon's plaster may be permitted in order to protect the hand from the rebound of the hammer. The use of a light glove on the left hand may be permitted to men firing the rifle. Men should be instructed in the kinds of padding to be used and should be required to have

a padded uniform prepared before the instruction in positions is given. During the preparatory exercises the men under instruction are required to wear the same padding that they will use during the range firing. This is necessary in order to accustom the men to holding and manipulating the rifle when the pads are worn. If this is not done in the preparatory exercises a part of the limited time on the range will be wasted.

b. Elbow pads should be only of sufficient thickness to prevent skinning or bruising the elbows. The firer should be able to feel the ground through the pads and be able to utilize small depressions as supports for the points of the elbows. The great majority of elbow pads are entirely too thick; they form large rounded surfaces which allow the elbows to slip easily. A suitable pad may be made from a piece of sheepskin from which the wool has been clipped to within one-quarter of an inch of the skin. Soft wash leather together with one thickness of bath toweling also makes a suitable elbow pad.

c. Shoulder pads should not be too thick. Two or three thicknesses of bath toweling are sufficient. If sheepskin is used, the wool should be clipped to within about one-half of an inch from the skin.

13-142 INSTRUCTION SCHEDULES.—The schedules which follow have been used with excellent results. They are printed as a guide to instructors and may be modified as conditions warrant.

a. Preparatory exercise.—First 5 days.

b. Range firing.—Second 5 days.

(1) Two periods per day available.

(2) A total of 80 hours included.

(3) Instruction in both M-1 rifle and automatic pistol is covered.

FIRST DAY

Hours	Subject
1	Draw M-1 rifles, shooting coats, score books.
½	General on M-1 rifle and outline of schedule.
½	Training Film—TF-7-969 "Sighting and Aiming."
1½	Sighting and aiming exercises (Using sight pictures and sighting device).
2	Nomenclature—Assembly and disassembly.
1	Blackening sights—Safety precautions.
1	Care and cleaning—Demonstration and application.

SECOND DAY

- 1 Training Film—TF-7-652 "Positions."
- 2½ Position Exercises and Use of Sling.
- 2 Sighting and Aiming Exercises (Triangulation Exercise).
- 1 Position Exercises.
- 1 Care and Cleaning.

THIRD DAY

- ½ "Relief" Movie.
 - ½ Training Film—TF-7-1094 "Trigger Squeeze."
 - ½ Trigger Squeeze Exercises (snapping in).
 - 2 Position Exercises.
 - ½ General on .22 Rifle and Why Used.
 - 3½ Fire Up to Rapid Fire Stage of "K" Course with .22 Rifle.
- Note: Idle relays review morning exercises.

FOURTH DAY

- ½ Training Film—TF-7-1062 "Rapid Fire."
 - 1½ Rapid Fire Exercises (Cadence Exercise); Assuming Positions Quickly.
 - 1½ Fire Rapid Fire Stage of "L" Course with .22 Rifle.
- Note: Idle relays review cadence drills.
- ½ "Relief" Film.
 - ½ Training Film—"Elevation and Windage."
 - 1 Lecture on Windage Rule, Light, Elevation Rule.
 - 2 Rapid Fire Exercises.

FIFTH DAY

- ½ Training Film—TF-7-1101 "Zeroing and Use of Score Book."
 - 1 Lecture on Zeroing and Use of Scorebook.
 - 1 Rapid Fire Exercises and Snapping In.
 - 1 Written Examination Sighting and Aiming, Positions, Trigger Squeeze and Rapid Fire.
 - 4 Fire Complete "K" Course with .22 Rifle.
- Note: Idle Relays Review Cadence Exercises and Snapping in.

SIXTH DAY

- 4½ Lecture on Range Operation and discipline; Butt Operation; Safety Precautions; Zero .30 Caliber Rifle.
- Fire:
- 4 Rds. Sighters, Prone, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Sighters, Prone, Target D, SF 300 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Sighters, Prone, Target B, SF 500 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Standing, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Sitting, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Kneeling, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 8 Rds. Sitting from Standing, Target D, 35 secs. RF 200 yds.

- 3 Fire:
 - 16 Rds. Kneeling from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 8 Rds. Prone from Standing, Target D, 35 secs. RF 300 yds.
 - 8 Rds. Prone, Target B, SF 500 yds.
- 1 Cleaning M-1 Rifle by Shooters.

SEVENTH DAY

- 4½ Fire:
 - 4 Rds. Standing, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Sitting from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Kneeling from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Prone from Standing, Target D, 65 secs. RF 300 yds.
 - 8 Rds. Prone, Target B, SF 500 yds.
- 1½ Lecture and Demonstration Firing .45 Caliber Pistol, .30 Caliber Carbine, TSMG, Sub-machine Gun M-3, and BAR.
- 2½ Fire .22 Caliber Pistol "L" Course.

EIGHTH DAY

- 4½ Fire:
 - 4 Rds. Standing Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Sitting from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Kneeling from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Prone from Standing, Target D, 65 secs. RF 300 yds.
 - 8 Rds. Prone, Target B, SF 500 yds.
- 1 Lecture on .45 Caliber Pistol.
- 3 Fire:
 - Pistol Marksman Course with .45 Caliber Pistol for Preliminary Qualification.

NINTH DAY

- ½ Fire:
 - Pistol Marksman Course for Qualification; Care and Cleaning .45 Caliber Pistol—Field Stripping.
- 4 Fire:
 - Course "B" for Preliminary Record.

TENTH DAY

- ½ Fire:
 - RECORD PRACTICE—Course "B"—
 - 4 Rds. Standing Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Sitting, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 4 Rds. Kneeling, Target A, SF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Sitting from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Kneeling from Standing, Target D, 60 secs. RF 200 yds.
 - 16 Rds. Prone from Standing, Target D, 65 secs. RF 300 yds.
 - 8 Rds. Prone, Target B, SF 500 yds.
- 4

Text references:

- (1) Chapter 13, Landing Party Manual.
- (2) U. S. Rifle, Caliber .30, M-1 (FM 23-5.)
- (3) Automatic Pistol Caliber .45 M1911 and M1911 A1 (FM 23-35.)

Training aids:

- (1) Training Chart Series 9-2 (1-11) (War Department).

- (2) Rifle Marksmanship with the M-1 Rifle, Preparatory Training.
TF-7-969—Sighting and Aiming.
TF-7-652—Positions.
TF-7-1094—Trigger Squeeze.
TF-7-1062—Rapid Fire.
TF-7-1100—Elevation and Windage.
TF-7-1101—Zeroing and Use of the Score Book.
- (3) Instructional Sighting Device.

LANDING PARTY MANUAL
UNITED STATES NAVY

1950

CHAPTER 14
GLOSSARY

GLOSSARY

14-1 This chapter contains brief definitions of the most commonly used military words and terms utilized in the Landing Party Manual. A working knowledge of the expressions included herein is necessary for the understanding and correct application of the various principles and techniques covered in previous chapters.

Action, shock.—(a) Actual hand-to-hand combat between opposing troops.

(b) An offensive movement by fast-moving troops in which they tend to overrun the enemy by the force of their own momentum.

Action, zone of.—A geographical area within which a military unit is to act, and for which it is responsible.

Advance by bounds.—An advance controlled by the assignment of successive objectives, usually from one terrain line to the next.

Advance by echelon.—An advance of a unit by successive movement of its component elements.

Alinement.—A straight line on which several elements are formed or are to be formed; the formation in a straight line of several elements; the dressing of a group of men or units upon a straight line.

Approach march.—See "March, approach."

Area, dispersion.—A rectangular, horizontal area, with its center at the center of impact of a shot pattern, within which 100 percent of a series of shots are assumed to fall.

Area, rear.—A general term designating the area in the rear of a combat or forward area.

Area, target.—An area assigned to a unit or to a weapon to cover by fire. The limits of the area are prescribed by the commander assigning the area. Firing positions are selected to engage any targets appearing in the area.

Assault.—The final phase of the attack; the rush to close combat with the enemy and to drive him out in hand-to-hand combat, with the extensive use of the bayonet and grenades.

Base of fire.—See "Fire, base of."

Base unit.—The element on which a movement or formation is regulated; the unit or organization in a tactical operation around which a movement or maneuver is planned and performed.

Bridgehead.—The position occupied by advance troops for the purpose of protecting the remainder of the command during their passage of a river or defile.

Commander of the guard.—The senior officer detailed for duty with the guard. He is responsible for the instruction, discipline, and performance of duty of the guard. If no officer is detailed for duty with the guard, the sergeant of the guard (senior petty officer) performs the duties of the commander of the guard.

Communications.—(a) The means, methods, and routes of sending messages; such as telephone and telegraph, radio, or signal systems.

(b) The routes and transportation for moving troops and supplies, especially in a theater of operations.

Concealment.—Any object affording protection from observation by the enemy.

Connecting files.—See "Files, connecting."

Corporal of the guard.—A petty officer of the guard, officially known as the corporal of the guard, detailed for duty in charge of a relief.

Cover.—(a) Natural or artificial protection or shelter from enemy fire.

(b) The alinement of units or individuals from front to rear in column or file.

Dead space.—The area within the maximum range of a weapon which cannot be covered by fire from a particular position because of intervening obstacles, or because of the nature of the ground.

Debouch (debouchment).—To emerge from cover into an open area. Also to emerge from a defile into a wider, more open area.

Defiladed.—A position protected from hos-

tile-ground observation and fire, by a mask.

Defile.—Any narrow place or space, such as a mountain pass, a ford, or a bridge that restricts the advance of a force on a wide front, or its movement to the sides.

Departure, line of (LD).—A line designated to coordinate the departure of attack elements.

Development.—(a) The breaking up of a command from a mass or marching formation into a number of smaller columns or groups, in preparation for action.

(b) The seizing and organizing of terrain in preparation for action.

Dispersion area.—See "Area, dispersion."

Displacement.—The movement of supporting weapons from one firing-position area to another.

Double time.—See "Time, double."

Dump.—An area employed for the temporary storage and disbursing of military supplies.

Echelon.—A fraction of a unit in the direction of depth. A formation in which the subdivisions are placed one behind the other and slightly to the right or left.

Envelopment.—An attack made on one or both of the enemy's flanks or rear, usually accompanied by an attack on his front.

Evacuation.—(a) Moving casualties from a battlefield, and subsequently moving them through every medical installation from aid station to general hospital.

(b) The withdrawal of personnel, animals, or material from any place or position.

File.—A single column of men or elements, one behind another.

Files, connecting.—Individual infantrymen moving in the spaces between marching units, whose mission it is to keep in sight-contact with each other and to maintain contact between the units.

Final protective line (FPL).—A predetermined line along which, in order to stop enemy assaults, interlocking fire is placed from all available weapons, fixed in direction and elevation, and capable of delivery under any condition of visibility.

Fire and movement.—The close coordination of the movement of a unit with its own fire which enables a portion of the unit to move forward while the remaining portion covers the forward movement by fire, the rate of which is increased to make up for the fire lost by that

portion of the unit which is moving forward. When the forward portion of the unit gets into position it takes up the fire and thus covers the advance of that portion of the unit in the rear. This covering fire can be delivered by adjacent units or by supporting weapons. Examples: the fire of two squads covering the movement of a third. Naval gunfire and air covering the movement of a battalion.

Fire, base of.—One or more units that give supporting fire to an attacking unit. A base of fire covers and protects the advance of other units with its fire, and serves as the base around which attack operations are carried out.

Fire unit.—A unit whose fire is under the immediate and effective control of one leader. The rifle squad is one fire unit in the infantry.

Formation, wedge.—A tactical formation in the form of a V with the point toward the enemy; a formation with elements in echelon to the right and left rear.

Formation, V.—A tactical formation in the form of a V with the point away from the enemy; a formation with elements in echelon to the right and left front.

Guards—(a) *Full guard*.—The ship's guard, less members excused by proper authority.

(b) *Guard of the day*.—That part of the ship's guard on duty for the day.

(c) *Guard patrol*.—One or more men detailed for special duty with the guard, such as making the rounds between sentry posts to increase security.

(d) *Special guard*.—That portion of the interior guard designated to perform guard duty of a special nature.

Infiltrate.—To pass troops in relatively small numbers through openings in the enemy position or his field of fire or through territory occupied by other troops or organizations.

Initial point (IP).—A place at which the various subdivisions of a command are required to arrive at the proper time to join a marching column.

Interdiction.—Fire delivered in certain areas or routes to prevent or hinder their use.

Limiting point.—The point along a line of resistance where the responsibility of one unit stops and that of another begins.

Line of departure.—See "Departure, line of."

Line of resistance, main (MLR).—A line along

which an enemy attack is met by organized resistance, including the coordinated fire of infantry weapons, artillery, and naval guns.

Line of resistance, outpost (OPLR).—A line selected for effective coordination of outpost fire and the fire of supporting weapons; a line selected to be held, in case of attack, until the main body can prepare for action.

Line, phase.—A line of conspicuous terrain features at which units may be halted for control, coordination, or further orders.

Listening post.—See "Post, listening."

Main line of resistance.—See "Line of resistance, main."

March, approach.—The advance toward the enemy from the point where the zone of hostile artillery or other distant fire is entered, up to the point where it becomes necessary for the advancing infantry units to return the enemy fire in order to continue without undue losses.

March, route.—The advance in column on roads.

Mask.—Any natural or artificial obstruction which affords shelter from or interferes with view of fire.

Mass formation.—The formation of a company or larger unit in which the squads in column are abreast of one another.

Mob.—An organized and purposeful gathering with leaders bent on unlawful actions.

Naval emergency ground defense force (NEGDF).—A force of naval personnel taken from the regular complement of a shore station and organized as infantry or military police. The NEGDF is trained to act as ground forces during emergencies resulting from catastrophies or acts of unlawful violence.

Naval landing party.—Naval personnel organized from a ship's complement for the conduct of ground-force operations ashore.

Obstacles.—Any barrier that stops or slows down an advance. Obstacles may be natural: deserts, rivers, swamps, or mountains; or they may be artificial: barbed-wire entanglements, pits, concrete or metal antitank traps, and the like. Obstacles may be fixed or portable, and they may be constructed in the field.

Officer of the day.—An officer who, as the direct representative of the commanding officer, is responsible on a particular day, for the performance of the guard, the preservation of

order, the protection of property, the enforcement of inspection regulations, and the security of prisoners.

Officer of the guard.—Any officer detailed for duty with the guard.

Outpost line of resistance.—See "Line of resistance, outpost."

Orders, combat.—Oral, dictated, or written orders issued by a superior to a subordinate unit, covering any phase of operations in the field. Combat orders are classified as operations orders, administrative orders, and letters of instruction.

Organic.—Permanently assigned to and forming an integral part of.

Outguard.—The most forward security unit posted by an outpost.

Outpost.—A stationary body of troops placed at some distance from the main body, while at a halt or in a defensive position, to protect the main body from surprise, observation or annoyance by enemy ground forces.

Passage of lines.—A rearrangement of units in which the rear unit moves forward through the already established line, while the replaced unit remains in position or moves to the rear.

Piece.—Any firearm. A machine gun, or an individual firearm such as a rifle, carbine, etc., is a piece.

Point.—The patrol or reconnaissance detachment which forms the leading element of an advanced guard, or the rear element of the rear guard.

Point of rest.—The point at which a formation begins. Specifically the point toward which units are alined in successive movements.

Post, listening.—A one or two man post located forward of the main defensive positions for the purpose of listening for enemy activity.

Quick time.—See "Time, quick."

Retirement.—A retirement is a retrograde movement in which a force seeks to regain freedom of action.

Retrograde movement.—Any tactical movement to the rear; withdrawal either as a retreat or a retirement.

Route march.—See "March, route."

Security.—All measures taken by a unit to protect itself from observation, annoyance, or surprise attack by an enemy.

Sentry.—A man assigned to duty as a member

of a guard, to keep watch, maintain order, protect persons or places against surprise, or warn of enemy attack; sentinel.

Sergeant of the guard.—The senior petty officer of the guard officially known as the sergeant of the guard.

Shock action.—See "Action, shock."

Skirmishers, as.—A line of troops in extended order during a tactical exercise or attack.

Terrain compartment.—An area of terrain inclosed on at least two sides by critical terrain

features such as ridge lines, woods, water courses that protect it from hostile observation and flat trajectory fire from outside the compartment.

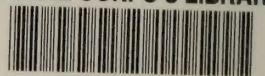
Time, double.—Cadence at the rate of 180 steps per minute, the length of the step being 36 inches.

Time, quick.—Cadence at the rate of 120 steps per minute, the length of the step being 30 inches.

Zone of action.—See "Action, zone of."

#01012272

MARINE CORPS U LIBRARY



3000136848